

THIEME FLEXIBOOK

Agamemnon Despopoulos  
Stefan Silbernagl

Color Atlas of

# Physiology

5th edition, completely revised and expanded



# At a Glance

1	Fundamentals and Cell Physiology	2
2	Nerve and Muscle, Physical Work	42
3	Autonomic Nervous System (ANS)	78
4	Blood	88
5	Respiration	106
6	Acid–Base Homeostasis	138
7	Kidneys, Salt, and Water Balance	148
8	Cardiovascular System	186
9	Thermal Balance and Thermoregulation	222
10	Nutrition and Digestion	226
11	Hormones and Reproduction	266
12	Central Nervous System and Senses	310
13	Appendix	372
	Further Reading	391
	Index	394



# Color Atlas of Physiology

5th edition, completely revised  
and expanded

Agamemnon Despopoulos, M.D.

Professor  
Formerly: Ciba Geigy  
Basel

Stefan Silbernagl, M.D.

Professor  
Head of Department  
Institute of Physiology  
University of Wuerzburg  
Wuerzburg, Germany

186 color plates by  
Ruediger Gay and  
Astried Rothenburger

Thieme  
Stuttgart · New York





## Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

is available from the publisher

1st German edition 1979  
2nd German edition 1983  
3rd German edition 1988  
4th German edition 1991  
5th German edition 2001

1st English edition 1981  
2nd English edition 1984  
3rd English edition 1986  
4th English edition 1991

1st Dutch edition 1981  
2nd Dutch edition 2001

1st Italian edition 1981  
2nd Italian edition 2001

1st Japanese edition 1982  
2nd Japanese edition 1992

1st Spanish edition 1982  
2nd Spanish edition 1985  
3rd Spanish edition 1994  
4th Spanish edition 2001

1st Czech edition 1984  
2nd Czech edition 1994

1st French edition 1985  
2nd French edition 1992  
3rd French edition 2001

1st Turkish edition 1986  
2nd Turkish edition 1997

1st Greek edition 1989

1st Chinese edition 1991

1st Polish edition 1994

1st Hungarian edition 1994  
2nd Hungarian edition 1996

1st Indonesian edition 2000

This book is an authorized translation of the 5th German edition published and copyrighted 2001 by Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart, Germany.

Title of the German edition:  
Taschenatlas der Physiologie

Translated by Suzyon O'Neal Wandrey, Berlin, Germany

Illustrated by Atelier Gay + Rothenburger, Sternfels, Germany

© 1981, 2003 Georg Thieme Verlag  
Rüdigerstraße 14, D-70469 Stuttgart, Germany  
<http://www.thieme.de>  
Thieme New York, 333 Seventh Avenue,  
New York, N.Y. 10001, U.S.A.  
<http://www.thieme.com>

Cover design: Cyclus, Stuttgart  
Typesetting by: Druckhaus Götz GmbH,  
Ludwigsburg, Germany  
Printed in Germany by: Appl Druck  
GmbH & Co. KG, Wemding, Germany

ISBN 3-13-545005-8 (GTV)  
ISBN 1-58890-061-4 (TNY)

1 2 3 4 5

**Important Note:** Medicine is an ever-changing science undergoing continual development. Research and clinical experience are continually expanding our knowledge, in particular our knowledge of proper treatment and drug therapy. Insofar as this book mentions any dosage or application, readers may rest assured that the authors, editors, and publishers have made every effort to ensure that such references are in accordance with **the state of knowledge at the time of production of the book.**

Nevertheless, this does not involve, imply, or express any guarantee or responsibility on the part of the publishers in respect to any dosage instructions and forms of applications stated in the book. **Every user is requested to examine carefully** the manufacturers' leaflets accompanying each drug and to check, if necessary in consultation with a physician or specialist, whether the dosage schedules mentioned therein or the contraindications stated by the manufacturers differ from the statements made in the present book. Such examination is particularly important with drugs that are either rarely used or have been newly released on the market. Every dosage schedule or every form of application used is entirely at the user's own risk and responsibility. The authors and publishers request every user to report to the publishers any discrepancies or inaccuracies noticed.

Some of the product names, patents, and registered designs referred to in this book are in fact registered trademarks or proprietary names even though specific reference to this fact is not always made in the text. Therefore, the appearance of a name without designation as proprietary is not to be construed as a representation by the publisher that it is in the public domain.

This book, including all parts thereof, is legally protected by copyright. Any use, exploitation, or commercialization outside the narrow limits set by copyright legislation, without the publisher's consent, is illegal and liable to prosecution. This applies in particular to photostat reproduction, copying, mimeographing or duplication of any kind, translating, preparation of microfilms, and electronic data processing and storage.

# Preface to the Fifth Edition

The base of knowledge in many sectors of physiology has grown considerably in magnitude and in depth since the last edition of this book was published. Many advances, especially the rapid progress in sequencing the human genome and its gene products, have brought completely new insight into cell function and communication. This made it necessary to edit and, in some cases, enlarge many parts of the book, especially the chapter on the fundamentals of cell physiology and the sections on neurotransmission, mechanisms of intracellular signal transmission, immune defense, and the processing of sensory stimuli. A list of physiological reference values and important formulas were added to the appendix for quick reference. The extensive index now also serves as a key to abbreviations used in the text.

Some of the comments explaining the connections between pathophysiological principles and clinical dysfunctions had to be slightly truncated and set in smaller print. However, this base of knowledge has also grown considerably for the reasons mentioned above. To make allowances for this, a similarly designed book, the *Color Atlas of Pathophysiology* (S. Silbernagl and F. Lang, Thieme), has now been introduced to supplement the well-established *Color Atlas of Physiology*.

I am very grateful for the many helpful comments from attentive readers (including my son Jakob) and for the welcome feedback from my peers, especially Prof. H. Antoni, Freiburg,

Prof. C. von Campenhausen, Mainz, Dr. M. Fischer, Mainz, Prof. K.H. Plattig, Erlangen, and Dr. C. Walther, Marburg, and from my colleagues and staff at the Institute in Würzburg. It was again a great pleasure to work with Rüdiger Gay and Astrid Rothenburger, to whom I am deeply indebted for revising practically all the illustrations in the book and for designing a number of new color plates. Their extraordinary enthusiasm and professionalism played a decisive role in the materialization of this new edition. To them I extend my sincere thanks. I would also like to thank Suzyon O'Neal Wandrey for her outstanding translation. I greatly appreciate her capable and careful work. I am also indebted to the publishing staff, especially Marianne Mauch, an extremely competent and motivated editor, and Gert Krüger for invaluable production assistance. I would also like to thank Katharina Völker for her ever observant and conscientious assistance in preparing the index.

I hope that the 5th Edition of the *Color Atlas of Physiology* will prove to be a valuable tool for helping students better understand physiological correlates, and that it will be a valuable reference for practicing physicians and scientists, to help them recall previously learned information and gain new insights in physiology.

Würzburg, December 2002  
Stefan Silbernagl\*

---

\* e-mail: stefan.silbernagl@mail.uni-wuerzburg.de

## Preface to the First Edition

In the modern world, visual pathways have outdistanced other avenues for informational input. This book takes advantage of the economy of visual representation to indicate the simultaneity and multiplicity of physiological phenomena. Although some subjects lend themselves more readily than others to this treatment, inclusive rather than selective coverage of the key elements of physiology has been attempted.

Clearly, this book of little more than 300 pages, only half of which are textual, cannot be considered as a primary source for the serious student of physiology. Nevertheless, it does contain most of the basic principles and facts taught in a medical school introductory course. Each unit of text and illustration can serve initially as an overview for introduction to the subject and subsequently as a concise review of the material. The contents are as current as the publishing art permits and include both classical information for the beginning students as well as recent details and trends for the advanced student.

A book of this nature is inevitably derivative, but many of the representations are new and, we hope, innovative. A number of people have contributed directly and indirectly to the completion of this volume, but none more than *Sarah Jones*, who gave much more than editorial assistance. Acknowledgement of helpful criticism and advice is due also to Drs. *R. Greger*, *A. Ratner*, *J. Weiss*, and *S. Wood*, and Prof. *H. Seller*. We are grateful to *Joy Wieser* for her help in checking the proofs. *Wolf-Rüdiger* and *Barbara Gay* are especially recognized, not only for their art work, but for their conceptual contributions as well. The publishers, Georg Thieme Verlag and Deutscher Taschenbuch Verlag, contributed valuable assistance based on extensive experience; an author could wish for no better relationship. Finally, special recognition to Dr. *Walter Kumpmann* for inspiring the project and for his unquestioning confidence in the authors.

Basel and Innsbruck, Summer 1979  
*Agamemnon Despopoulos*  
*Stefan Silbernagl*

## From the Preface to the Third Edition

The first German edition of this book was already in press when, on November 2nd, 1979, *Agamennon Despopoulos* and his wife, *Sarah Jones-Despopoulos* put to sea from Bizerta, Tunisia. Their intention was to cross the Atlantic in their sailing boat. This was the last that was ever heard of them and we have had to abandon all hope of seeing them again.

Without the creative enthusiasm of *Agamennon Despopoulos*, it is doubtful whether this book would have been possible; without his personal support it has not been easy to continue with the project. Whilst keeping in mind our original aims, I have completely revised the book, incorporating the latest advances in the field of physiology as well as the welcome suggestions provided by readers of the earlier edition, to whom I extend my thanks for their active interest.

Würzburg, Fall 1985  
*Stefan Silbernagl*



Dr. Agamennon Despopoulos

Born 1924 in New York; Professor of Physiology at the University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, USA, until 1971; thereafter scientific adviser to CIBA-GEIGY, Basel.



# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Fundamentals and Cell Physiology</b>	<b>2</b>
	The Body: an Open System with an Internal Environment ... 2	
	Control and Regulation ... 4	
	The Cell ... 8	
	Transport In, Through, and Between Cells ... 16	
	Passive Transport by Means of Diffusion ... 20	
	Osmosis, Filtration, and Convection ... 24	
	Active Transport ... 26	
	Cell Migration ... 30	
	Electrical Membrane Potentials and Ion Channels ... 32	
	Role of $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ in Cell Regulation ... 36	
	Energy Production and Metabolism ... 38	
<b>2</b>	<b>Nerve and Muscle, Physical Work</b>	<b>42</b>
	Neuron Structure and Function ... 42	
	Resting Membrane Potential ... 44	
	Action Potential ... 46	
	Propagation of Action Potentials in Nerve Fiber ... 48	
	Artificial Stimulation of Nerve Cells ... 50	
	Synaptic Transmission ... 50	
	Motor End-plate ... 56	
	Motility and Muscle Types ... 58	
	Motor Unit of Skeletal Muscle ... 58	
	Contractile Apparatus of Striated Muscle ... 60	
	Contraction of Striated Muscle ... 62	
	Mechanical Features of Skeletal Muscle ... 66	
	Smooth Muscle ... 70	
	Energy Supply for Muscle Contraction ... 72	
	Physical Work ... 74	
	Physical Fitness and Training ... 76	
<b>3</b>	<b>Autonomic Nervous System (ANS)</b>	<b>78</b>
	Organization of the Autonomic Nervous System ... 78	
	Acetylcholine and Cholinergic Transmission ... 82	
	Catecholamine, Adrenergic Transmission and Adrenoceptors ... 84	
	Adrenal Medulla ... 86	
	Non-cholinergic, Non-adrenergic Transmitters ... 86	

- Composition and Function of Blood ... 88
- Iron Metabolism and Erythropoiesis ... 90
- Flow Properties of Blood ... 92
- Plasma, Ion Distribution ... 92
- Immune System ... 94
- Hypersensitivity Reactions (Allergies) ... 100
- Blood Groups ... 100
- Hemostasis ... 102
- Fibrinolysis and Thromboprotection ... 104

- Lung Function, Respiration ... 106
- Mechanics of Breathing ... 108
- Purification of Respiratory Air ... 110
- Artificial Respiration ... 110
- Pneumothorax ... 110
- Lung Volumes and their Measurement ... 112
- Dead Space, Residual Volume, and Airway Resistance ... 114
- Lung–Chest Pressure–Volume Curve, Respiratory Work ... 116
- Surface Tension, Surfactant ... 118
- Dynamic Lung Function Tests ... 118
- Pulmonary Gas Exchange ... 120
- Pulmonary Blood Flow, Ventilation–Perfusion Ratio ... 122
- CO<sub>2</sub> Transport in Blood ... 124
- CO<sub>2</sub> Binding in Blood ... 126
- CO<sub>2</sub> in Cerebrospinal Fluid ... 126
- Binding and Transport of O<sub>2</sub> in Blood ... 128
- Internal (Tissue) Respiration, Hypoxia ... 130
- Respiratory Control and Stimulation ... 132
- Effects of Diving on Respiration ... 134
- Effects of High Altitude on Respiration ... 136
- Oxygen Toxicity ... 136

- pH, pH Buffers, Acid–Base Balance ... 138
- Bicarbonate/Carbon Dioxide Buffer ... 140
- Acidosis and Alkalosis ... 142
- Assessment of Acid–Base Status ... 146

- Kidney Structure and Function ... 148
- Renal Circulation ... 150
- Glomerular Filtration and Clearance ... 152
- Transport Processes at the Nephron ... 154
- Reabsorption of Organic Substances ... 158

Excretion of Organic Substances ...	160
Reabsorption of Na <sup>+</sup> and Cl <sup>-</sup> ...	162
Reabsorption of Water, Formation of Concentrated Urine ...	164
Body Fluid Homeostasis ...	168
Salt and Water Regulation ...	170
Diuresis and Diuretics ...	172
Disturbances of Salt and Water Homeostasis ...	172
The Kidney and Acid–Base Balance ...	174
Reabsorption and Excretion of Phosphate, Ca <sup>2+</sup> and Mg <sup>2+</sup> ...	178
Potassium Balance ...	180
Tubuloglomerular Feedback, Renin–Angiotensin System ...	184

8

**Cardiovascular System**

186

Overview ...	186
Blood Vessels and Blood Flow ...	188
Cardiac Cycle ...	190
Cardiac Impulse Generation and Conduction ...	192
Electrocardiogram (ECG) ...	196
Excitation in Electrolyte Disturbances ...	198
Cardiac Arrhythmias ...	200
Ventricular Pressure–Volume Relationships ...	202
Cardiac Work and Cardiac Power ...	202
Regulation of Stroke Volume ...	204
Venous Return ...	204
Arterial Blood Pressure ...	206
Endothelial Exchange Processes ...	208
Myocardial Oxygen Supply ...	210
Regulation of the Circulation ...	212
Circulatory Shock ...	218
Fetal and Neonatal Circulation ...	220

9

**Thermal Balance and Thermoregulation**

222

Thermal Balance ...	222
Thermoregulation ...	224

10

**Nutrition and Digestion**

226

Nutrition ...	226
Energy Metabolism and Calorimetry ...	228
Energy Homeostasis and Body Weight ...	230
Gastrointestinal (GI) Tract: Overview, Immune Defense and Blood Flow ...	232
Neural and Hormonal Integration ...	234
Saliva ...	236
Deglutition ...	238
Vomiting ...	238
Stomach Structure and Motility ...	240
Gastric Juice ...	242
Small Intestinal Function ...	244

XI



Pancreas ...	246
Bile ...	248
Excretory Liver Function—Bilirubin ...	250
Lipid Digestion ...	252
Lipid Distribution and Storage ...	254
Digestion and Absorption of Carbohydrates and Protein ...	258
Vitamin Absorption ...	260
Water and Mineral Absorption ...	262
Large Intestine, Defecation, Feces ...	264

11

**Hormones and Reproduction**

266

Integrative Systems of the Body ...	266
Hormones ...	268
Humoral Signals: Control and Effects ...	272
Cellular Transmission of Signals from Extracellular Messengers ...	274
Hypothalamic—Pituitary System ...	280
Carbohydrate Metabolism and Pancreatic Hormones ...	282
Thyroid Hormones ...	286
Calcium and Phosphate Metabolism ...	290
Biosynthesis of Steroid Hormones ...	294
Adrenal Cortex and Glucocorticoid Synthesis ...	296
Oogenesis and the Menstrual Cycle ...	298
Hormonal Control of the Menstrual Cycle ...	300
Estrogens ...	302
Progesterone ...	302
Prolactin and Oxytocin ...	303
Hormonal Control of Pregnancy and Birth ...	304
Androgens and Testicular Function ...	306
Sexual Response, Intercourse and Fertilization ...	308

12

**Central Nervous System and Senses**

310

Central Nervous System ...	310
Cerebrospinal Fluid ...	310
Stimulus Reception and Processing ...	312
Sensory Functions of the Skin ...	314
Proprioception, Stretch Reflex ...	316
Nociception and Pain ...	318
Polysynaptic Reflexes ...	320
Synaptic Inhibition ...	320
Central Conduction of Sensory Input ...	322
Motor System ...	324
Hypothalamus, Limbic System ...	330
Cerebral Cortex, Electroencephalogram (EEG) ...	332
Sleep—Wake Cycle, Circadian Rhythms ...	334
Consciousness, Memory, Language ...	336
Glia ...	338
Sense of Taste ...	338
Sense of Smell ...	340

XII

Sense of Balance ...	342
Eye Structure, Tear Fluid, Aqueous Humor ...	344
Optical Apparatus of the Eye ...	346
Visual Acuity, Photosensors ...	348
Adaptation of the Eye to Different Light Intensities ...	352
Retinal Processing of Visual Stimuli ...	354
Color Vision ...	356
Visual Field, Visual Pathway, Central Processing of Visual Stimuli ...	358
Eye Movements, Stereoscopic Vision, Depth Perception ...	360
Physical Principles of Sound—Sound Stimulus and Perception ...	362
Conduction of Sound, Sound Sensors ...	364
Central Processing of Acoustic Information ...	368
Voice and Speech ...	370

13

## Appendix

372

Dimensions and Units ...	372
Powers and Logarithms ...	380
Graphic Representation of Data ...	381
The Greek Alphabet ...	384
Reference Values in Physiology ...	384
Important Equations in Physiology ...	388

## Further Reading

391

## Index

394

“... If we break up a living organism by isolating its different parts, it is only for the sake of ease in analysis and by no means in order to conceive them separately. Indeed, when we wish to ascribe to a physiological quality its value and true significance, we must always refer it to the whole and draw our final conclusions only in relation to its effects on the whole.”

Claude Bernard (1865)

## The Body: an Open System with an Internal Environment

The existence of unicellular organisms is the epitome of life in its simplest form. Even simple protists must meet two basic but essentially conflicting demands in order to survive. A unicellular organism must, on the one hand, isolate itself from the seeming disorder of its inanimate surroundings, yet, as an “open system” (→ p. 40), it is dependent on its environment for the exchange of heat, oxygen, nutrients, waste materials, and information.

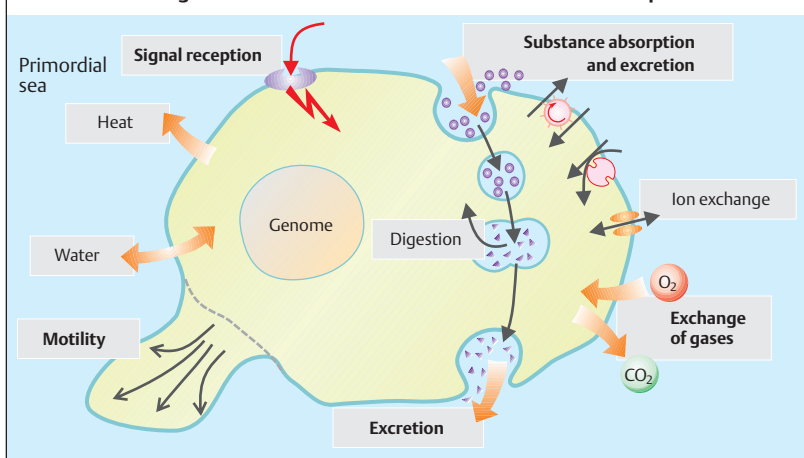
“Isolation” is mainly ensured by the cell membrane, the hydrophobic properties of which prevent the potentially fatal mixing of hydrophilic components in watery solutions inside and outside the cell. Protein molecules within the cell membrane ensure the permeability of the membrane barrier. They may exist in the form of *pores* (*channels*) or as more complex transport proteins known as *carriers* (→ p. 26 ff.). Both types are selective for certain substances, and their activity is usually regulated. The cell membrane is relatively well permeable to hydrophobic molecules such as gases. This is useful for the exchange of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> and for the uptake of lipophilic signal substances, yet exposes the cell to poisonous gases such as carbon monoxide (CO) and lipophilic noxae such as organic solvents. The cell membrane also contains other proteins—namely, receptors and enzymes. *Receptors* receive signals from the external environment and convey the information to the interior of the cell (signal transduction), and *enzymes* enable the cell to metabolize extracellular substrates.

Let us imagine the primordial sea as the external environment of the unicellular organism (→ A). This milieu remains more or less constant, although the organism absorbs nutrients from it and excretes waste into it. In spite of its simple structure, the unicellular or-

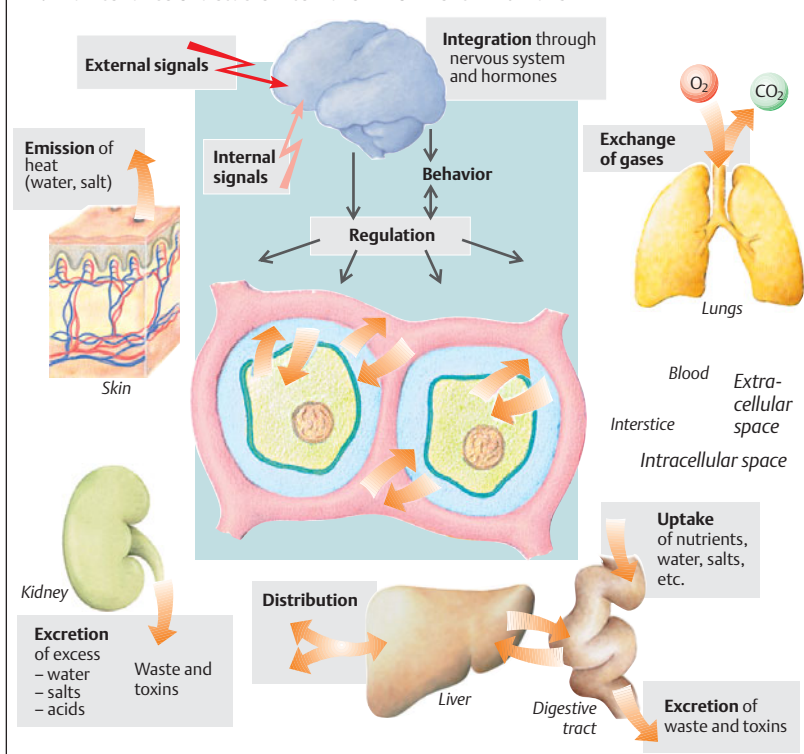
ganism is capable of eliciting motor responses to signals from the environment. This is achieved by moving its pseudopodia or flagella, for example, in response to changes in the food concentration.

The evolution from unicellular organisms to multicellular organisms, the transition from specialized cell groups to organs, the emergence of the two sexes, the coexistence of individuals in social groups, and the transition from water to land have tremendously increased the efficiency, survival, radius of action, and independence of living organisms. This process required the simultaneous development of a complex infrastructure within the organism. Nonetheless, the individual cells of the body still need a milieu like that of the primordial sea for life and survival. Today, the **extracellular fluid** is responsible for providing constant environmental conditions (→ B), but the volume of the fluid is no longer infinite. In fact, it is even smaller than the intracellular volume (→ p. 168). Because of their metabolic activity, the cells would quickly deplete the oxygen and nutrient stores within the fluids and flood their surroundings with waste products if organs capable of maintaining a **stable internal environment** had not developed. This is achieved through **homeostasis**, a process by which physiologic self-regulatory mechanisms (see below) maintain steady states in the body through coordinated physiological activity. Specialized organs ensure the continuous absorption of nutrients, electrolytes and water and the excretion of waste products via the urine and feces. The *circulating blood* connects the organs to every inch of the body, and the exchange of materials between the blood and the intercellular spaces (*interstices*) creates a stable environment for the cells. Organs such as the digestive tract and liver absorb nutrients and make them available by processing, metabolizing and distributing

**A. Unicellular organism in the constant external environment of the primordial sea**



**B. Maintenance of a stable internal environment in humans**



them throughout the body. The lung is responsible for the exchange of gases (O<sub>2</sub> intake, CO<sub>2</sub> elimination), the liver and kidney for the excretion of waste and foreign substances, and the skin for the release of heat. The kidney and lungs also play an important role in regulating the internal environment, e.g., water content, osmolality, ion concentrations, pH (kidney, lungs) and O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> pressure (lungs) (→ B).

The specialization of cells and organs for specific tasks naturally requires **integration**, which is achieved by convective transport over long distances (circulation, respiratory tract), humoral transfer of information (hormones), and transmission of electrical signals in the nervous system, to name a few examples. These mechanisms are responsible for supply and disposal and thereby maintain a stable internal environment, even under conditions of extremely high demand and stress. Moreover, they control and regulate functions that ensure survival in the sense of **preservation of the species**. Important factors in this process include not only the timely development of reproductive organs and the availability of fertilizable gametes at sexual maturity, but also the control of erection, ejaculation, fertilization, and nidation. Others include the coordination of functions in the mother and fetus during pregnancy and regulation of the birth process and the lactation period.

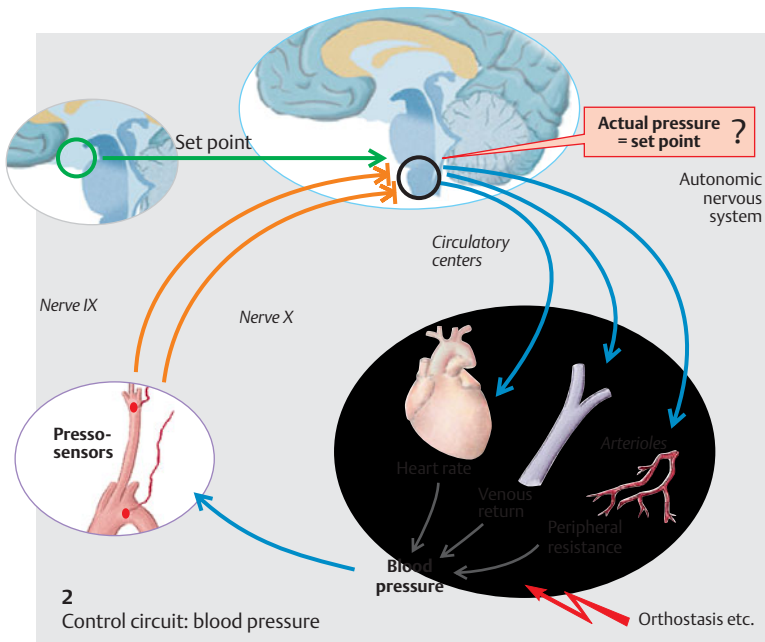
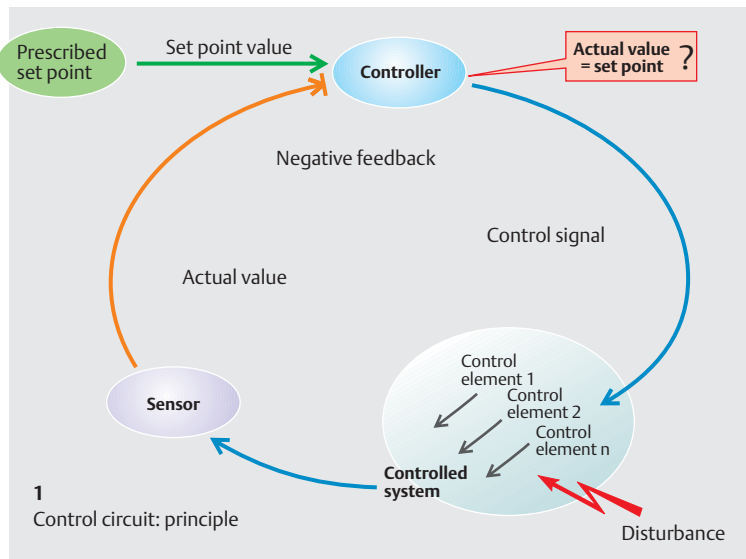
The **central nervous system (CNS)** processes signals from peripheral sensors (single sensory cells or sensory organs), activates outwardly directed effectors (e.g., **skeletal muscles**), and influences the endocrine **glands**. The CNS is the focus of attention when studying human or animal **behavior**. It helps us to locate food and water and protects us from heat or cold. The central nervous system also plays a role in partner selection, concern for offspring even long after their birth, and integration into social systems. The CNS is also involved in the development, expression, and processing of emotions such as desire, listlessness, curiosity, wishfulness, happiness, anger, wrath, and envy and of traits such as creativeness, inquisitiveness, self-awareness, and responsibility. This goes far beyond the scope of physiology—which in the narrower sense is the study of the functions of the body—and, hence, of this book.

Although behavioral science, sociology, and psychology are disciplines that border on physiology, true bridges between them and physiology have been established only in exceptional cases.

## Control and Regulation

In order to have useful cooperation between the specialized organs of the body, their functions must be adjusted to meet specific needs. In other words, the organs must be subject to control and regulation. **Control** implies that a *controlled variable* such as the blood pressure is subject to selective external modification, for example, through alteration of the heart rate (→ p.218). Because many other factors also affect the blood pressure and heart rate, the controlled variable can only be kept constant by continuously measuring the current blood pressure, comparing it with the reference signal (*set point*), and continuously correcting any deviations. If the blood pressure drops—due, for example, to rapidly standing up from a recumbent position—the heart rate will increase until the blood pressure has been reasonably adjusted. Once the blood pressure has risen above a certain limit, the heart rate will decrease again and the blood pressure will normalize. This type of *closed-loop control* is called a **negative feedback control system** or a **control circuit** (→ C1). It consists of a *controller* with a programmed *set-point* value (target value) and *control elements (effectors)* that can adjust the *controlled variable* to the set point. The system also includes *sensors* that continuously measure the actual value of the controlled variable of interest and report it (feedback) to the controller, which compares the actual value of the controlled variable with the set-point value and makes the necessary adjustments if disturbance-related discrepancies have occurred. The control system operates either from within the organ itself (*autoregulation*) or via a *superordinate organ* such as the central nervous system or hormone glands. Unlike simple control, the elements of a control circuit can work rather imprecisely without causing a deviation from the set point (at least on average). Moreover, control circuits are capable of responding to unexpected dis-

C. Control circuit



turbances. In the case of blood pressure regulation (→ C2), for example, the system can respond to events such as orthostasis (→ p. 204) or sudden blood loss.

The type of control circuits described above keep the controlled variables constant when **disturbance variables** cause the controlled variable to deviate from the set point (→ D2). Within the body, the set point is rarely invariable, but can be “shifted” when requirements of higher priority make such a change necessary. In this case, it is the **variation of the set point** that creates the discrepancy between the nominal and actual values, thus leading to the activation of regulatory elements (→ D3). Since the regulatory process is then triggered by variation of the set point (and not by disturbance variables), this is called **servocontrol** or **servomechanism**. Fever (→ p. 224) and the adjustment of muscle length by muscle spindles and  $\gamma$ -motor neurons (→ p. 316) are examples of servocontrol.

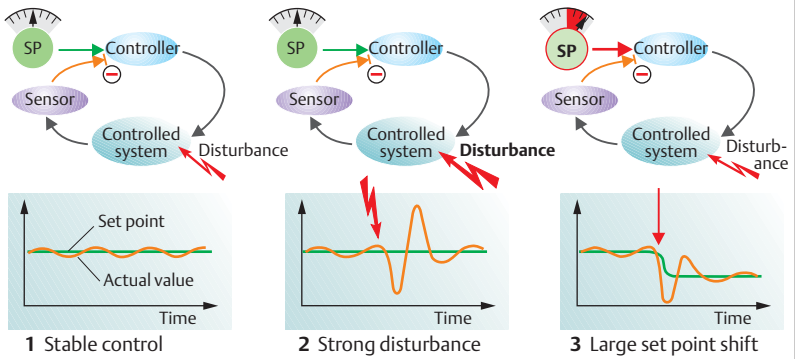
In addition to relatively simple variables such as blood pressure, cellular pH, muscle length, body weight and the plasma glucose concentration, the body also regulates complex sequences of events such as fertilization, pregnancy, growth and organ differentiation, as well as sensory stimulus processing and the motor activity of skeletal muscles, e.g., to maintain equilibrium while running. The regulatory process may take parts of a second (e.g., purposeful movement) to several years (e.g., the growth process).

In the control circuits described above, the controlled variables are kept constant on average, with variably large, wave-like deviations. The sudden emergence of a disturbance variable causes larger deviations that quickly normalize in a stable control circuit (→ E, test subject no. 1). The **degree of deviation** may be slight in some cases but substantial in others. The latter is true, for example, for the blood glucose concentration, which nearly doubles after meals. This type of regulation obviously functions only to prevent extreme rises and falls (e.g., hyper- or hypoglycemia) or chronic deviation of the controlled variable. More precise maintenance of the controlled variable requires a higher level of regulatory sensitivity (*high amplification factor*). However, this ex-

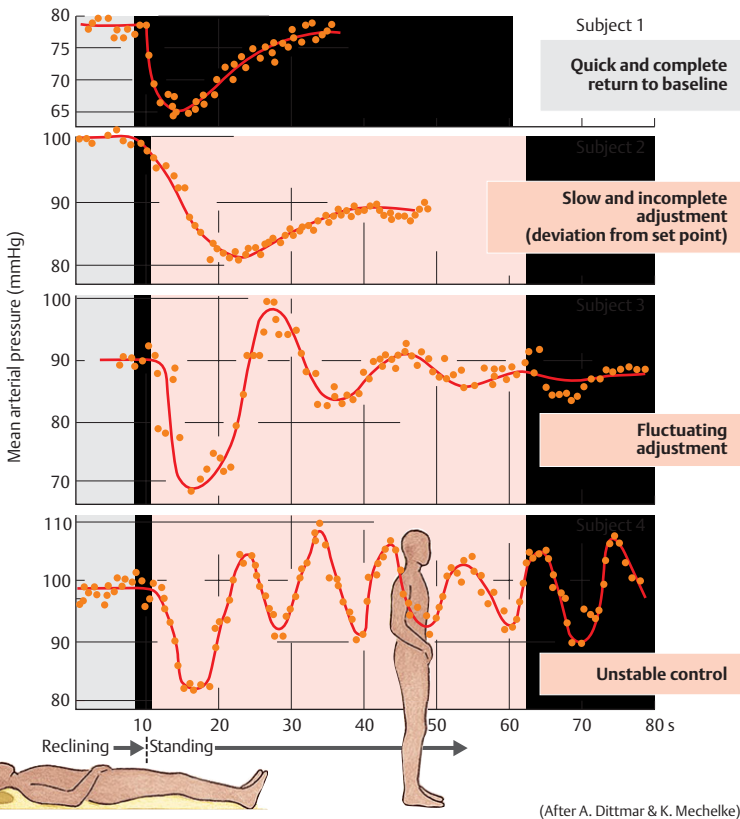
tends the settling time (→ E, subject no. 3) and can lead to regulatory instability, i.e., a situation where the actual value oscillates back and forth between extremes (*unstable oscillation*, → E, subject no. 4).

**Oscillation** of a controlled variable in response to a disturbance variable can be *attenuated* by either of two mechanisms. First, sensors with differential characteristics (*D sensors*) ensure that the intensity of the sensor signal increases in proportion with the **rate of deviation** of the controlled variable from the set point (→ p. 312 ff.). Second, **feedforward control** ensures that information regarding the expected intensity of disturbance is reported to the controller *before* the value of the controlled variable has changed at all. Feedforward control can be explained by example of physiologic thermoregulation, a process in which cold receptors on the skin trigger counterregulation before a change in the controlled value (core temperature of the body) has actually occurred (→ p. 224). The disadvantage of having *only* D sensors in the control circuit can be demonstrated by example of arterial pressorsensors (= pressoreceptors) in acute blood pressure regulation. Very slow but steady changes, as observed in the development of arterial hypertension, then escape regulation. In fact, a rapid drop in the blood pressure of a hypertensive patient will even cause a counterregulatory increase in blood pressure. Therefore, other control systems are needed to ensure proper long-term blood pressure regulation.

**D. Control circuit response to disturbance or set point (SP) deviation**



**E. Blood pressure control after suddenly standing erect**



(After A. Dittmar & K. Mechelke)



## The Cell

The cell is the smallest functional unit of a living organism. In other words, a cell (and no smaller unit) is able to perform essential vital functions such as metabolism, growth, movement, reproduction, and hereditary transmission (W. Roux) (→ p. 4). Growth, reproduction, and hereditary transmission can be achieved by *cell division*.

**Cell components:** All cells consist of a cell membrane, cytosol or cytoplasm (ca. 50 vol.%), and membrane-bound subcellular structures known as *organelles* (→ **A, B**). The organelles of eukaryotic cells are highly specialized. For instance, the genetic material of the cell is concentrated in the cell nucleus, whereas “digestive” enzymes are located in the lysosomes. Oxidative ATP production takes place in the mitochondria.

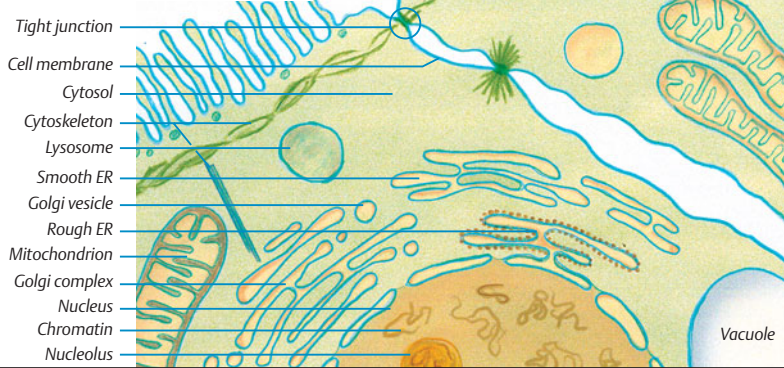
The **cell nucleus** contains a liquid known as karyolymph, a nucleolus, and chromatin. Chromatin contains deoxyribonucleic acids (**DNA**), the carriers of genetic information. Two strands of DNA forming a *double helix* (up to 7 cm in length) are twisted and folded to form chromosomes 10 μm in length. Humans normally have 46 chromosomes, consisting of 22 autosomal pairs and the chromosomes that determine the sex (XX in females, XY in males). DNA is made up of a strand of three-part molecules called *nucleotides*, each of which consists of a pentose (deoxyribose) molecule, a phosphate group, and a base. Each sugar molecule of the monotonic sugar-phosphate backbone of the strands (...deoxyribose – phosphate–deoxyribose...) is attached to one of four different bases. The sequence of bases represents the **genetic code** for each of the roughly 100 000 different proteins that a cell produces during its lifetime (**gene expression**). In a DNA double helix, each base in one strand of DNA is bonded to its complementary base in the other strand according to the rule: adenine (A) with thymine (T) and guanine (G) with cytosine (C). The base sequence of one strand of the double helix (→ **E**) is always a “mirror image” of the opposite strand. Therefore, one strand can be used as a template for making a new complementary strand, the information content of which is identical to that of the orig-

inal. In cell division, this process is the means by which duplication of genetic information (**replication**) is achieved.

Messenger RNA (**mRNA**) is responsible for code transmission, that is, passage of coding sequences from DNA in the nucleus (base sequence) for protein synthesis in the cytosol (amino acid sequence) (→ **C1**). mRNA is formed in the nucleus and differs from DNA in that it consists of only a single strand and that it contains ribose instead of deoxyribose, and uracil (U) instead of thymine. In DNA, each amino acid (e.g., glutamate, → **E**) needed for synthesis of a given protein is coded by a set of three adjacent bases called a *codon* or *triplet* (C–T–C in the case of glutamate). In order to transcribe the DNA triplet, mRNA must form a complementary codon (e.g., G–A–G for glutamate). The relatively small transfer RNA (**tRNA**) molecule is responsible for reading the codon in the ribosomes (→ **C2**). tRNA contains a complementary codon called the *anticodon* for this purpose. The anticodon for glutamate is C–U–C (→ **E**).

**RNA synthesis** in the nucleus is controlled by *RNA polymerases* (types I–III). Their effect on DNA is normally blocked by a *repressor protein*. Phosphorylation of the polymerase occurs if the repressor is eliminated (de-repression) and the *general transcription factors* attach to the so-called promoter sequence of the DNA molecule (T–A–T–A in the case of polymerase II). Once activated, it separates the two strands of DNA at a particular site so that the code on one of the strands can be read and transcribed to form mRNA (**transcription**, → **C1a, D**). The heterogeneous nuclear RNA (**hnRNA**) molecules synthesized by the polymerase have a characteristic “cap” at their 5′ end and a polyadenine “tail” (A–A–A...) at the 3′ end (→ **D**). Once synthesized, they are immediately “enveloped” in a protein coat, yielding heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein (**hnRNP**) particles. The *primary RNA* or *pre-mRNA* of hnRNA contains both coding sequences (*exons*) and non-coding sequences (*introns*). The exons code for amino acid sequences of the proteins to be synthesized, whereas the introns are not involved in the coding process. Introns may contain 100 to 10 000 nucleotides; they are removed from the

**A. Cell organelles (epithelial cell)**



**B. Cell structure (epithelial cell) in electron micrograph**

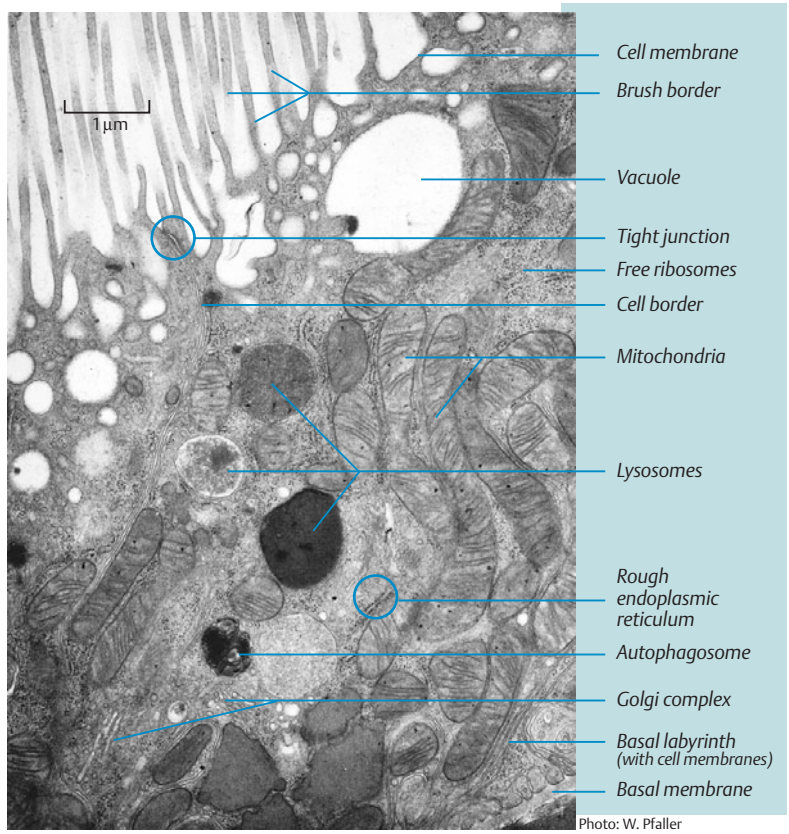


Photo: W. Pfaller

primary mRNA strand by **splicing** ( $\rightarrow$  **C1b, D**) and then degraded. The introns, themselves, contain the information on the exact splicing site. Splicing is ATP-dependent and requires the interaction of a number of proteins within a ribonucleoprotein complex called the *spliceosome*. Introns usually make up the lion's share of pre-mRNA molecules. For example, they make up 95% of the nucleotide chain of coagulation factor VIII, which contains 25 introns. mRNA can also be modified (e.g., through methylation) during the course of **posttranscriptional modification**.

RNA now exits the nucleus through **nuclear pores** (around 4000 per nucleus) and enters the cytosol ( $\rightarrow$  **C1c**). Nuclear pores are high-molecular-weight protein complexes (125 MDa) located within the nuclear envelope. They allow large molecules such as transcription factors, RNA polymerases or cytoplasmic steroid hormone receptors to pass into the nucleus, nuclear molecules such as mRNA and tRNA to pass out of the nucleus, and other molecules such as ribosomal proteins to travel both ways. The (ATP-dependent) passage of a molecule in either direction cannot occur without the help of a specific signal that guides the molecule into the pore. The above-mentioned *5' cap* is responsible for the exit of mRNA from the nucleus, and one or two specific sequences of a few (mostly cationic) amino acids are required as the signal for the entry of proteins into the nucleus. These sequences form part of the peptide chain of such *nuclear proteins* and probably create a peptide loop on the protein's surface. In the case of the cytoplasmic receptor for glucocorticoids ( $\rightarrow$  p. 278), the *nuclear localization signal* is masked by a chaperone protein (heat shock protein 90, hsp90) in the absence of the glucocorticoid, and is released only after the hormone binds, thereby freeing hsp90 from the receptor. The "activated" receptor then reaches the cell nucleus, where it binds to specific DNA sequences and controls specific genes.

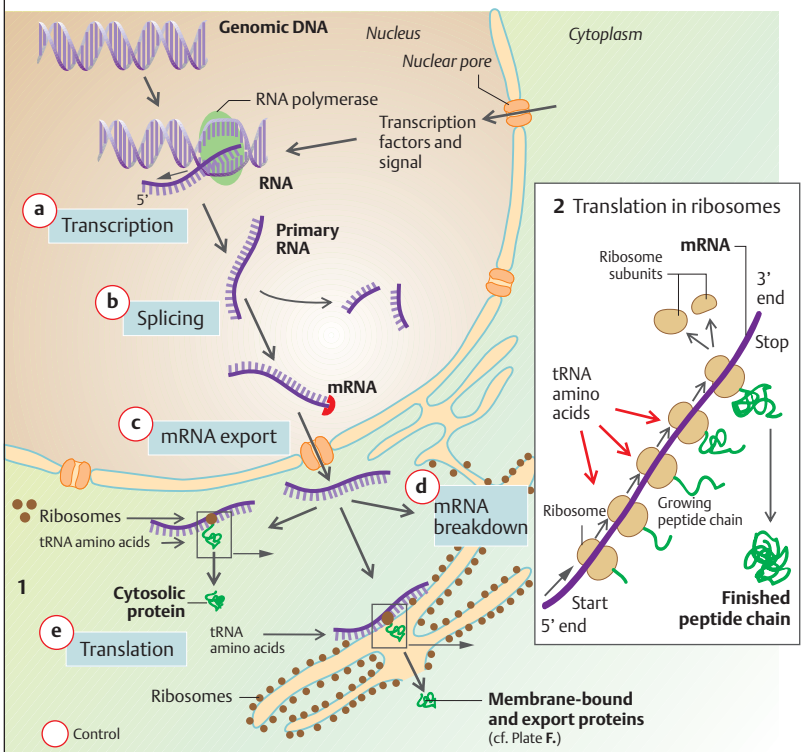
The **nuclear envelope** consists of two membranes (=two phospholipid bilayers) that merge at the nuclear pores. The two membranes consist of different materials. The external membrane is continuous with the mem-

brane of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), which is described below ( $\rightarrow$  **F**).

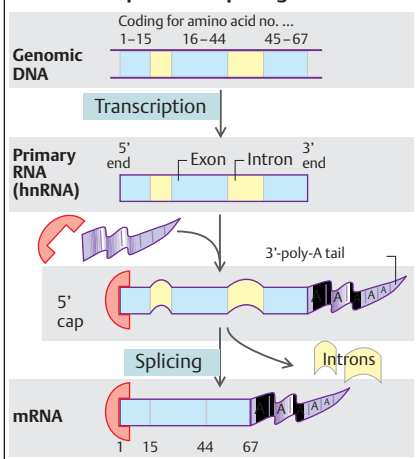
The mRNA exported from the nucleus travels to the **ribosomes** ( $\rightarrow$  **C1**), which either float freely in the cytosol or are bound to the cytosolic side of the endoplasmic reticulum, as described below. Each ribosome is made up of dozens of proteins associated with a number of structural RNA molecules called *ribosomal RNA (rRNA)*. The two subunits of the ribosome are first transcribed from numerous rRNA genes in the **nucleolus**, then separately exit the cell nucleus through the nuclear pores. Assembled together to form a ribosome, they now comprise the biochemical "machinery" for **protein synthesis (translation)** ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**). Synthesis of a peptide chain also requires the presence of specific tRNA molecules (at least one for each of the 21 proteinogenous amino acids). In this case, the target amino acid is bound to the C–A end of the tRNA molecule (same in all tRNAs), and the corresponding anticodon that recognizes the mRNA codon is located at the other end ( $\rightarrow$  **E**). Each ribosome has two tRNA binding sites: one for the last incorporated amino acid and another for the one beside it (not shown in **E**). Protein synthesis begins when the *start codon* is read and ends once the *stop codon* has been reached. The ribosome then breaks down into its two subunits and releases the mRNA ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**). Ribosomes can add approximately 10–20 amino acids per second. However, since an mRNA strand is usually translated simultaneously by many ribosomes (*polyribosomes* or *polysomes*) at different sites, a protein is synthesized much faster than its mRNA. In the bone marrow, for example, a total of around  $5 \times 10^{14}$  hemoglobin copies containing 574 amino acids each are produced per second.

The **endoplasmic reticulum (ER,  $\rightarrow$  **C, F**)** plays a central role in the *synthesis of proteins and lipids*; it also serves as an intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  store ( $\rightarrow$  p. 17 A). The ER consists of a net-like system of interconnected branched channels and flat cavities bounded by a membrane. The enclosed spaces (*cisterns*) make up around 10% of the cell volume, and the membrane comprises up to 70% of the membrane mass of a cell. *Ribosomes* can attach to the cytosolic surface of parts of the ER, forming a **rough endo-**

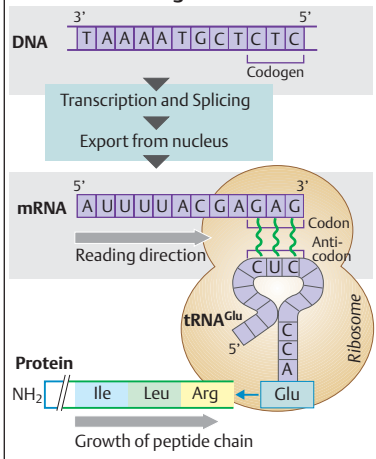
**C. Transcription and translation**



**D. Transcription and splicing**



**E. Protein coding in DNA and RNA**



**plasmic reticulum (RER).** These ribosomes synthesize export proteins as well as transmembrane proteins ( $\rightarrow$  G) for the plasma membrane, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi apparatus, lysosomes, etc. The start of protein synthesis (at the amino end) by such ribosomes (still unattached) induces a *signal sequence* to which a signal recognition particle (SRP) in the cytosol attaches. As a result, (a) synthesis is temporarily halted and (b) the ribosome (mediated by the SRP and a SRP receptor) attaches to a ribosome receptor on the ER membrane. After that, synthesis continues. In *export protein synthesis*, a translocator protein conveys the peptide chain to the cisternal space once synthesis is completed. *Synthesis of membrane proteins* is interrupted several times (depending on the number of membrane-spanning domains ( $\rightarrow$  G2) by translocator protein closure, and the corresponding (hydrophobic) peptide sequence is pushed into the phospholipid membrane. The **smooth endoplasmic reticulum (SER)** contains no ribosomes and is the *production site of lipids* (e.g., for lipoproteins,  $\rightarrow$  p. 254 ff.) and other substances. The ER membrane containing the synthesized membrane proteins or export proteins forms vesicles which are transported to the Golgi apparatus.

The Golgi complex or **Golgi apparatus** ( $\rightarrow$  F) has sequentially linked functional compartments for further processing of products from the endoplasmic reticulum. It consists of a *cis-Golgi network* (entry side facing the ER), stacked flattened cisternae (Golgi stacks) and a *trans-Golgi network* (sorting and distribution). Functions of the Golgi complex:

- ◆ polysaccharide synthesis;
- ◆ protein processing (**posttranslational modification**), e.g., glycosylation of membrane proteins on certain amino acids (in part in the ER) that are later borne as glycocalyxes on the external cell surface (see below) and  $\gamma$ -carboxylation of glutamate residues ( $\rightarrow$  p. 102 );
- ◆ phosphorylation of sugars of glycoproteins (e.g., to mannose-6-phosphate, as described below);
- ◆ “packaging” of proteins meant for export into *secretory vesicles* (secretory granules), the contents of which are exocytosed into the extracellular space; see p. 246, for example.

Hence, the Golgi apparatus represents a central **modification, sorting and distribution center** for proteins and lipids received from the endoplasmic reticulum.

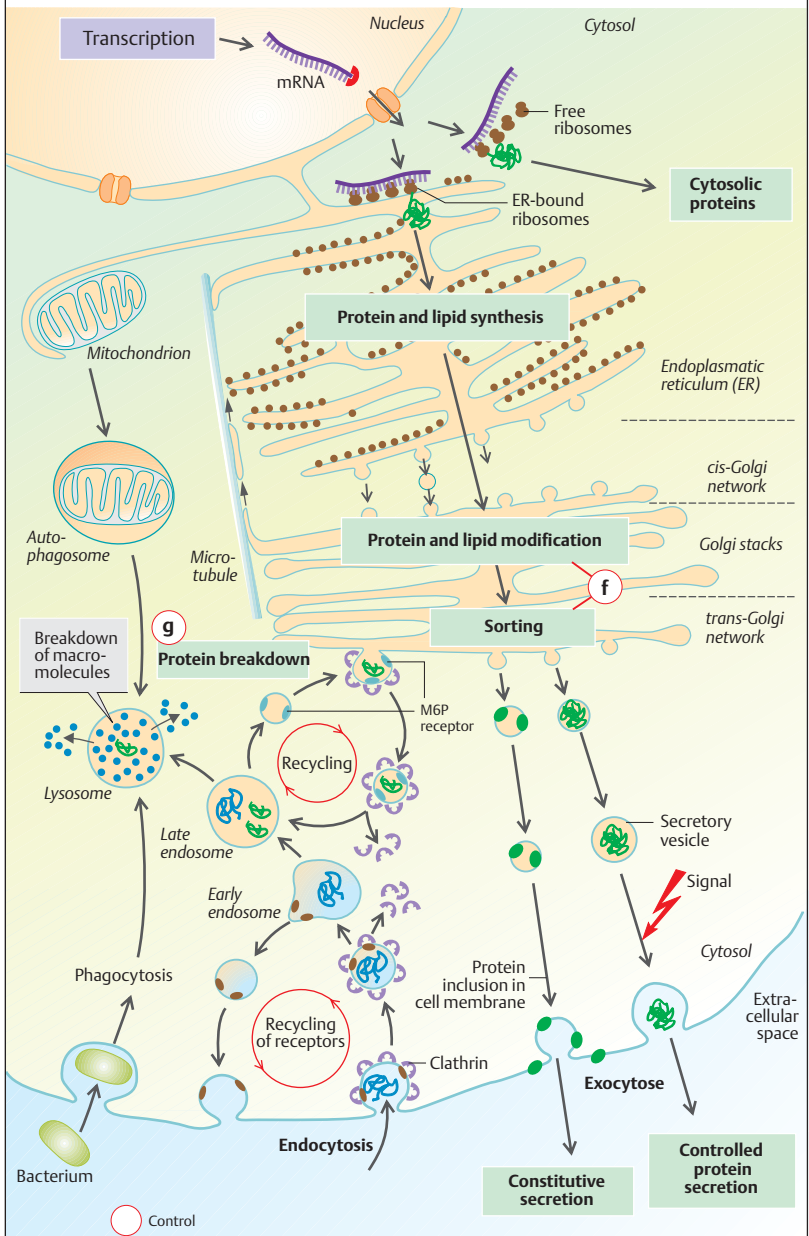
**Regulation of gene expression** takes place on the level of transcription ( $\rightarrow$  C1a), RNA modification ( $\rightarrow$  C1b), mRNA export ( $\rightarrow$  C1c), RNA degradation ( $\rightarrow$  C1d), translation ( $\rightarrow$  C1e), modification and sorting ( $\rightarrow$  F,f), and protein degradation ( $\rightarrow$  F,g).

The **mitochondria** ( $\rightarrow$  A, B; p. 17 B) are the site of oxidation of carbohydrates and lipids to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and associated  $\text{O}_2$  expenditure. The Krebs cycle (citric acid cycle), respiratory chain and related ATP synthesis also occur in mitochondria. Cells intensely active in metabolic and transport activities are rich in mitochondria—e.g., hepatocytes, intestinal cells, and renal epithelial cells. Mitochondria are enclosed in a double membrane consisting of a smooth outer membrane and an inner membrane. The latter is deeply infolded, forming a series of projections (cristae); it also has important transport functions ( $\rightarrow$  p. 17 B). Mitochondria probably evolved as a result of symbiosis between aerobic bacteria and anaerobic cells (*symbiosis hypothesis*). The mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) of bacterial origin and the double membrane of mitochondria are relicts of their ancient history. Mitochondria also contain ribosomes which synthesize all proteins encoded by mtDNA.

**Lysosomes** are vesicles ( $\rightarrow$  F) that arise from the ER (via the Golgi apparatus) and are involved in the intracellular digestion of macromolecules. These are taken up into the cell either by *endocytosis* (e.g., uptake of albumin into the renal tubules;  $\rightarrow$  p. 158) or by *phagocytosis* (e.g., uptake of bacteria by macrophages;  $\rightarrow$  p. 94 ff.). They may also originate from the degradation of a cell's own organelles (autophagia, e.g., of mitochondria) delivered inside autophagosomes ( $\rightarrow$  B, F). A portion of the endocytosed membrane material recycles (e.g., receptor recycling in receptor-mediated endocytosis;  $\rightarrow$  p. 28). *Early and late endosomes* are intermediate stages in this *vesicular transport*. Late endosomes and lysosomes contain acidic hydrolases (proteases, nucleases, lipases, glycosidases, phosphatases, etc., that are active only under acidic conditions). The



## F. Protein synthesis, sorting, recycling, and breakdown



membrane contains an  $H^+$ -ATPase that creates an acidic (pH 5) interior environment within the lysosomes and assorted *transport proteins* that (a) release the products of digestion (e.g., amino acids) into the cytoplasm and (b) ensure charge compensation during  $H^+$  uptake ( $Cl^-$  channels). These enzymes and transport proteins are delivered in *primary lysosomes* from the Golgi apparatus. Mannose-6-phosphate (M6P) serves as the "label" for this process; it binds to M6P receptors in the Golgi membrane which, as in the case of receptor-mediated endocytosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 28), cluster in the membrane with the help of a clathrin framework. In the acidic environment of the lysosomes, the enzymes and transport proteins are separated from the receptor, and M6P is dephosphorylated. The M6P receptor returns to the Golgi apparatus (recycling,  $\rightarrow$  F). The M6P receptor no longer recognizes the dephosphorylated proteins, which prevents them from returning to the Golgi apparatus.

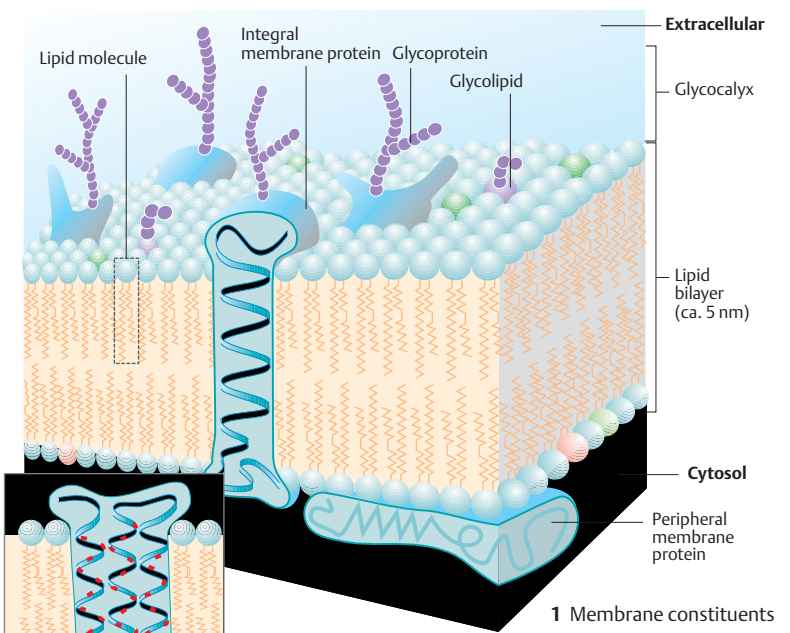
**Peroxisomes** are microbodies containing enzymes (imported via a signal sequence) that permit the oxidation of certain organic molecules ( $R-H_2$ ), such as amino acids and fatty acids:  $R-H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow R + H_2O_2$ . The peroxisomes also contain catalase, which transforms  $2 H_2O_2$  into  $O_2 + H_2O$  and oxidizes toxins, such as alcohol and other substances.

Whereas the membrane of organelles is responsible for intracellular compartmentalization, the main job of the **cell membrane** ( $\rightarrow$  G) is to separate the cell interior from the extracellular space ( $\rightarrow$  p. 2). The cell membrane is a phospholipid bilayer ( $\rightarrow$  G1) that may be either smooth or deeply infolded, like the brush border or the basal labyrinth ( $\rightarrow$  B). Depending on the cell type, the cell membrane contains variable amounts of *phospholipids*, *cholesterol*, and *glycolipids* (e.g., cerebrosides). The phospholipids mainly consist of phosphatidylcholine ( $\rightarrow$  G3), phosphatidylserine, phosphatidylethanolamine, and sphingomyelin. The hydrophobic components of the membrane face each other, whereas the hydrophilic components face the watery surroundings, that is, the extracellular fluid or cytosol ( $\rightarrow$  G4). The lipid composition of the two layers of the membrane differs greatly. Glycolipids are present only in the external layer, as described

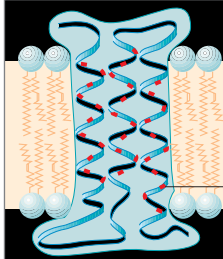
below. Cholesterol (present in both layers) reduces both the fluidity of the membrane and its permeability to polar substances. Within the two-dimensionally fluid phospholipid membrane are proteins that make up 25% (myelin membrane) to 75% (inner mitochondrial membrane) of the membrane mass, depending on the membrane type. Many of them span the entire lipid bilayer once ( $\rightarrow$  G1) or several times ( $\rightarrow$  G2) (*transmembrane proteins*), thereby serving as ion channels, carrier proteins, hormone receptors, etc. The proteins are anchored by their lipophilic amino acid residues, or attached to already anchored proteins. Some proteins can move about freely within the membrane, whereas others, like the anion exchanger of red cells, are anchored to the cytoskeleton. The cell surface is largely covered by the *glycocalyx*, which consists of sugar moieties of glycoproteins and glycolipids in the cell membrane ( $\rightarrow$  G1,4) and of the extracellular matrix. The glycocalyx mediates cell-cell interactions (surface recognition, cell docking, etc.). For example, components of the glycocalyx of neutrophils dock onto endothelial membrane proteins, called *selectins* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94).

The **cytoskeleton** allows the cell to maintain and change its shape (during cell division, etc.), make selective movements (migration, cilia), and conduct intracellular transport activities (vesicle, mitosis). It contains *actin filaments* as well as *microtubules* and *intermediate filaments* (e.g., vimentin and desmin filaments, neurofilaments, keratin filaments) that extend from the centrosome.

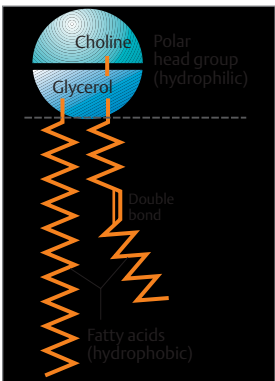
**G. Cell membrane**



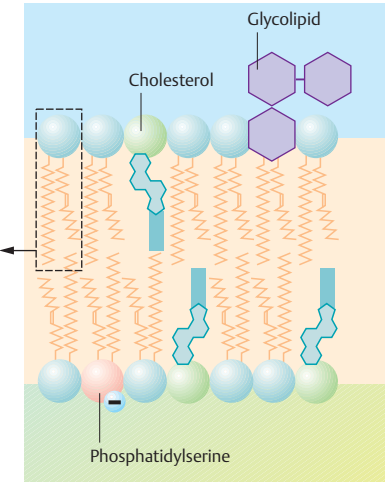
**1 Membrane constituents**



**2 Multiple membrane-spanning integral protein**



**3 Phospholipid (phosphatidylcholine)**



**4 Membrane lipids**



## Transport In, Through and Between Cells

The lipophilic cell membrane protects the cell interior from the extracellular fluid, which has a completely different composition (→ p. 2). This is imperative for the creation and maintenance of a *cell's internal environment* by means of metabolic energy expenditure. Channels (pores), carriers, ion pumps (→ p. 26ff.) and the process of cytosol transport (→ p. 28) allow **transmembrane transport** of selected substances. This includes the import and export of metabolic substrates and metabolites and the selective transport of ions used to create or modify the *cell potential* (→ p. 32), which plays an essential role in excitability of nerve and muscle cells. In addition, the effects of substances that readily penetrate the cell membrane in most cases (e.g., water and CO<sub>2</sub>) can be mitigated by selectively transporting certain other substances. This allows the cell to compensate for undesirable changes in the cell volume or pH of the cell interior.

### Intracellular Transport

The cell interior is divided into different compartments by the organelle membranes. In some cases, very broad intracellular spaces must be crossed during transport. For this purpose, a variety of specific intracellular transport mechanisms exist, for example:

- ◆ Nuclear pores in the nuclear envelope provide the channels for RNA export out of the nucleus and protein import into it (→ p. 11 C);
- ◆ *Protein transport* from the rough endoplasmic reticulum to the Golgi complex (→ p. 13 F);
- ◆ *Axonal transport* in the nerve fibers, in which distances of up to 1 meter can be crossed (→ p. 42). These transport processes mainly take place along the filaments of the cytoskeleton. Example: while expending ATP, the microtubules set dynein-bound vesicles in motion in the one direction, and kinesin-bound vesicles in the other (→ p. 13 F).

### Intracellular Transmembrane Transport

Main sites:

- ◆ *Lysosomes*: Uptake of H<sup>+</sup> ions from the cytosol and release of metabolites such as amino acids into the cytosol (→ p. 12);

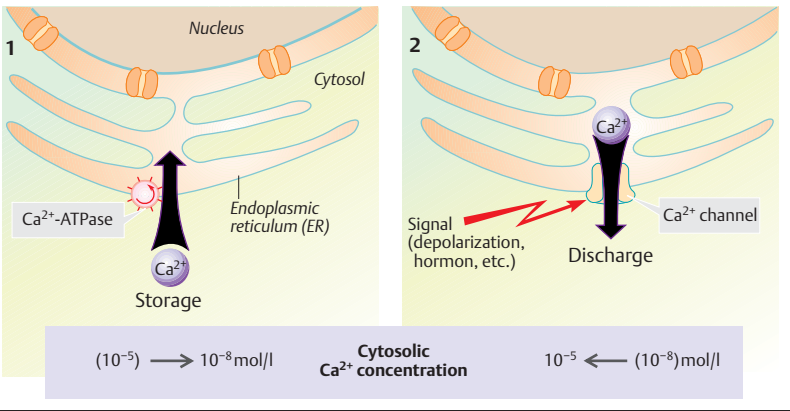
- ◆ *Endoplasmic reticulum (ER)*: In addition to a translocator protein (→ p. 10), the ER has two other proteins that transport Ca<sup>2+</sup> (→ A). Ca<sup>2+</sup> can be pumped from the cytosol into the ER by a Ca<sup>2+</sup>-ATPase called *SERCA* (sarcoplasmic endoplasmic reticulum Ca<sup>2+</sup>-transporting ATPase). The resulting Ca<sup>2+</sup> stores can be released into the cytosol via a Ca<sup>2+</sup> *channel* (ryanodine receptor, RyR) in response to a triggering signal (→ p. 36).

- ◆ *Mitochondria*: The outer membrane contains large pores called *porins* that render it permeable to small molecules (< 5 kDa), and the inner membrane has high concentrations of specific carriers and enzymes (→ B). Enzyme complexes of the *respiratory chain* transfer electrons (e<sup>-</sup>) from high to low energy levels, thereby pumping H<sup>+</sup> ions from the matrix space into the intermembrane space (→ B1), resulting in the formation of an H<sup>+</sup> *ion gradient* directed into the matrix. This not only drives ATP synthetase (ATP production; → B2), but also promotes the inflow of pyruvate<sup>-</sup> and anorganic phosphate, P<sub>i</sub><sup>-</sup> (symport; → B2b,c and p. 28). Ca<sup>2+</sup> *ions* that regulate Ca<sup>2+</sup>-sensitive mitochondrial enzymes in muscle tissue can be pumped into the matrix space with ATP expenditure (→ B2), thereby allowing the mitochondria to form a sort of Ca<sup>2+</sup> buffer space for protection against dangerously high concentrations of Ca<sup>2+</sup> in the cytosol. The inside-negative *membrane potential* (caused by H<sup>+</sup> release) drives the uptake of ADP<sup>3-</sup> in exchange for ATP<sup>4-</sup> (potential-driven transport; → B2a and p. 22).

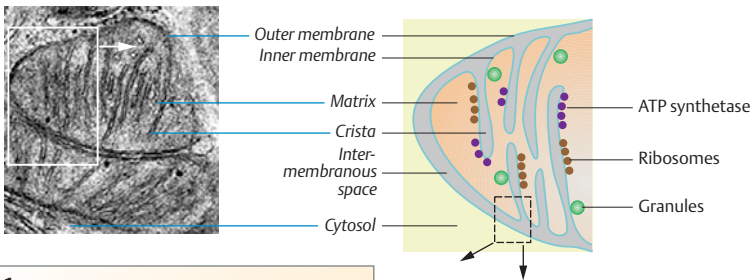
### Transport between Adjacent Cells

In the body, transport between adjacent cells occurs either via diffusion through the extracellular space (e.g., paracrine hormone effects) or through channel-like connecting structures (**connexons**) located within a so-called **gap junction** or **nexus** (→ C). A connexon is a hemichannel formed by six connexin molecules (→ C2). One connexon docks with another connexon on an adjacent cell, thereby forming a common channel through which substances with molecular masses of up to around 1 kDa can pass. Since this applies not only for ions such as Ca<sup>2+</sup>, but also for a number of organic substances such as ATP, these types of cells are

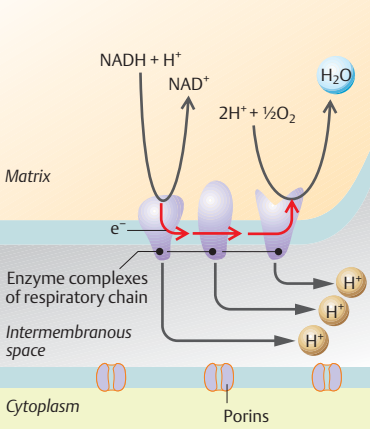
**A. Ca<sup>2+</sup> transport through the ER membrane**



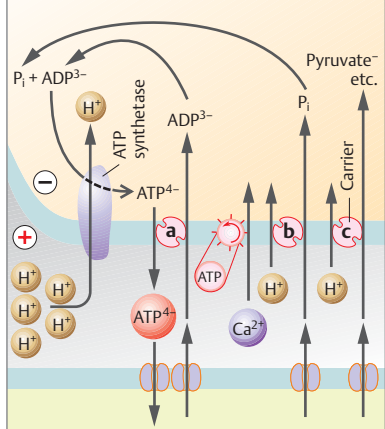
**B. Mitochondrial transport**



**1 Formation of H<sup>+</sup> gradient**



**2 H<sup>+</sup> gradient driving ATP synthesis and carriers**



united to form a close electrical and metabolic unit (**syncytium**), as is present in the epithelium, many smooth muscles (single-unit type, → p.70), the myocardium, and the glia of the central nervous system. Electric coupling permits the transfer of excitation, e.g., from excited *muscle cells* to their adjacent cells, making it possible to trigger a wave of excitation across wide regions of an organ, such as the stomach, intestine, biliary tract, uterus, ureter, atrium, and ventricles of the heart. Certain neurons of the retina and CNS also communicate in this manner (*electric synapses*). Gap junctions in the glia (→ p.338) and epithelia help to distribute the stresses that occur in the course of transport and barrier activities (see below) throughout the entire cell community. However, the connexons close when the concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (in an extreme case, due to a hole in cell membrane) or  $\text{H}^+$  concentration increases too rapidly (→ C3). In other words, the individual (defective) cell is left to deal with its own problems when necessary to preserve the functionality of the cell community.

### Transport through Cell Layers

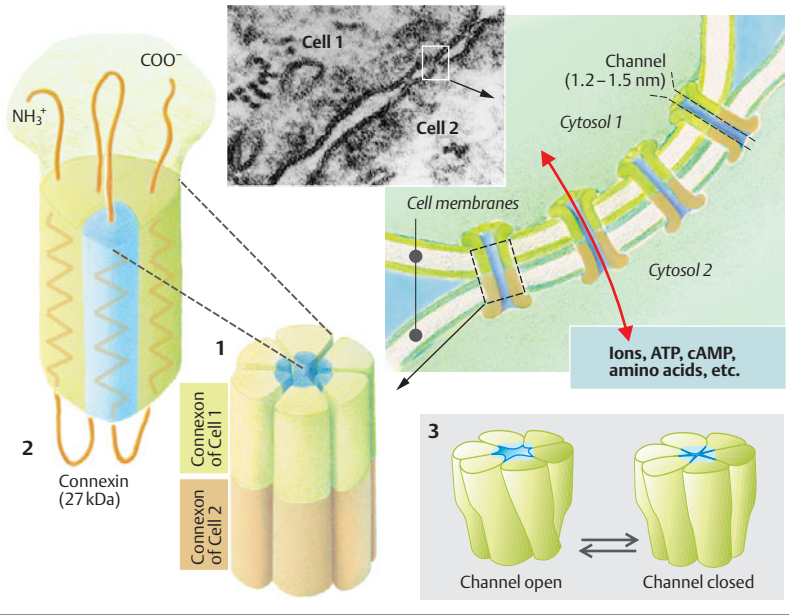
Multicellular organisms have *cell layers* that are responsible for separating the “interior” from the “exterior” of the organism and its larger compartments. The *epithelia* of skin and gastrointestinal, urogenital and respiratory tracts, the *endothelia* of blood vessels, and *neuroglia* are examples of this type of extensive barrier. They separate the immediate extracellular space from other spaces that are greatly different in composition, e.g., those filled with air (skin, bronchial epithelia), gastrointestinal contents, urine or bile (tubules, urinary bladder, gallbladder), aqueous humor of the eye, blood (endothelia) and cerebrospinal fluid (blood–cerebrospinal fluid barrier), and from the extracellular space of the CNS (blood–brain barrier). Nonetheless, certain substances must be able to pass through these cell layers. This requires selective **transcellular transport** with import into the cell followed by export from the cell. Unlike cells with a completely uniform plasma membrane (e.g., blood cells), epi- and endothelial cells are *polar cells*, as defined by

their structure (→ p.9A and B) and transport function. Hence, the *apical membrane* (facing exterior) of an epithelial cell has a different set of transport proteins from the *basolateral membrane* (facing the blood). Tight junctions (described below) at which the outer phospholipid layer of the membrane folds over, prevent lateral mixing of the two membranes (→ D2).

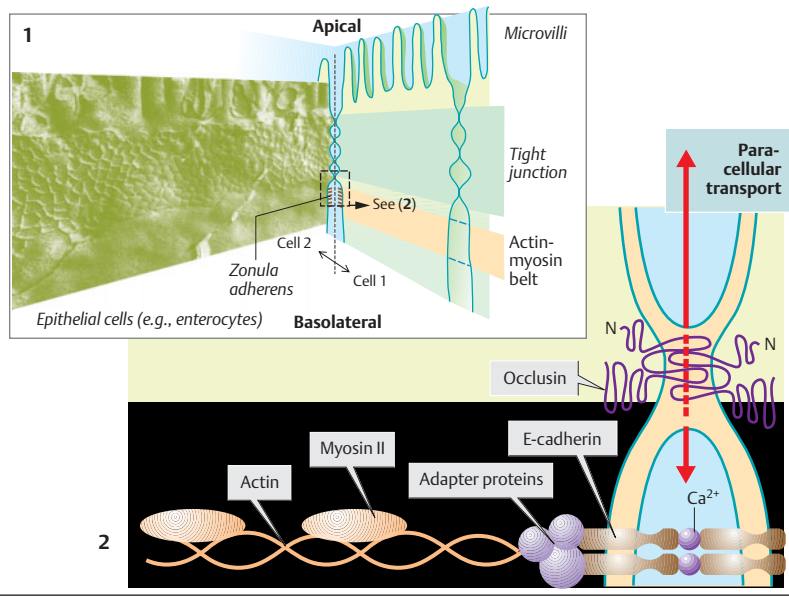
Whereas the apical and basolateral membranes permit transcellular transport, **paracellular transport** takes place between cells. Certain *epithelia* (e.g., in the small intestinal and proximal renal tubules) are relatively permeable to small molecules (leaky), whereas others are less leaky (e.g., distal nephron, colon). The degree of permeability depends on the strength of the *tight junctions* (*zonulae occludentes*) holding the cells together (→ D). The paracellular pathway and the extent of its permeability (sometimes cation-specific) are essential functional elements of the various epithelia. Macromolecules can cross the barrier formed by the *endothelium* of the vessel wall by transcytosis (→ p.28), yet paracellular transport also plays an essential role, especially in the fenestrated endothelium. Anionic macromolecules like albumin, which must remain in the bloodstream because of its colloid osmotic action (→ p.208), are held back by the wall charges at the intercellular spaces and, in some cases, at the fenestra.

**Long-distance transport** between the various organs of the body and between the body and the outside world is also necessary. *Convection* is the most important transport mechanism involved in long-distance transport (→ p.24).

**C. Gap junction**



**D. Apical functional complex**



Photos: H. Lodish. Reproduced with permission from Scientific American Books, New York, 1995.

## Passive Transport by Means of Diffusion

**Diffusion** is movement of a substance owing to the random thermal motion (brownian movement) of its molecules or ions ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) in all directions throughout a solvent. *Net diffusion* or selective transport can occur only when the solute concentration at the starting point is higher than at the target site. (Note: unidirectional fluxes also occur in absence of a concentration gradient—i.e., at equilibrium—but net diffusion is zero because there is equal flux in both directions.) The driving force of diffusion is, therefore, a **concentration gradient**. Hence, diffusion equalizes concentration differences and requires a driving force: **passive transport** (= downhill transport).

Example: When a layer of  $O_2$  gas is placed on water, the  $O_2$  quickly diffuses into the water along the initially high gas pressure gradient ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). As a result, the partial pressure of  $O_2$  ( $P_{O_2}$ ) rises, and  $O_2$  can diffuse further downward into the next  $O_2$ -poor layer of water ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**). (Note: with gases, partial pressure is used in lieu of concentration.) However, the steepness of the  $P_{O_2}$  profile or gradient ( $dP_{O_2}/dx$ ) decreases (exponentially) in each subsequent layer situated at distance  $x$  from the  $O_2$  source ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Therefore, diffusion is only feasible for transport across short distances within the body. Diffusion in liquids is slower than in gases.

The diffusion rate,  $J_{diff}$  ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ), is the amount of substance that diffuses per unit of time. It is proportional to the area available for diffusion ( $A$ ) and the absolute temperature ( $T$ ) and is inversely proportional to the viscosity ( $\eta$ ) of the solvent and the radius ( $r$ ) of the diffused particles.

According to the *Stokes–Einstein equation*, the *coefficient of diffusion* ( $D$ ) is derived from  $T$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $r$  as

$$D = \frac{R \cdot T}{N_A \cdot 6\pi \cdot r \cdot \eta} [\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}], \quad [1.1]$$

where  $R$  is the general gas constant ( $8.3144 \text{ J} \cdot \text{K}^{-1} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ) and  $N_A$  Avogadro's constant ( $6.022 \cdot 10^{23} \text{ mol}^{-1}$ ). In Fick's first law of diffusion (Adolf Fick, 1855), the diffusion rate is expressed as

$$J_{diff} = A \cdot D \cdot \left( \frac{dC}{dx} \right) [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.2]$$

where  $C$  is the molar concentration and  $x$  is the distance traveled during diffusion. Since the *driving "force"*—i.e., the concentration gradient ( $dC/dx$ )—decreases with distance, as was explained above, the *time* required for diffusion increases exponentially with the distance traveled ( $t \sim x^2$ ). If, for example, a molecule travels the first  $\mu\text{m}$  in 0.5 ms, it will require 5 s to travel 100  $\mu\text{m}$  and a whopping 14 h for 1 cm.

Returning to the previous example ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**), if the above-water partial pressure of free  $O_2$  diffusion ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**) is kept constant, the  $P_{O_2}$  in the water and overlying gas layer will eventually equalize and net diffusion will cease (*diffusion equilibrium*). This process takes place within the body, for example, when  $O_2$  diffuses from the alveoli of the lungs into the bloodstream and when  $CO_2$  diffuses in the opposite direction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120).

Let us imagine two spaces, a and b ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**) containing different concentrations ( $C_a > C_b$ ) of an uncharged solute. The membrane separating the solutions has pores  $\Delta x$  in length and with total cross-sectional area of  $A$ . Since the pores are permeable to the molecules of the dissolved substance, the molecules will diffuse from a to b, with  $C^a - C^b = \Delta C$  representing the concentration gradient. If we consider only the spaces a and b (while ignoring the gradients  $dC/dx$  in the pore, as shown in B2, for the sake of simplicity), **Fick's first law of diffusion** (Eq. 1.2) can be modified as follows:

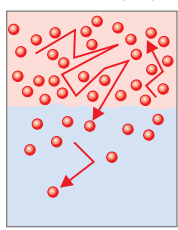
$$J_{diff} = A \cdot D \cdot \frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x} [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]. \quad [1.3]$$

In other words, the rate of diffusion increases as  $A$ ,  $D$ , and  $\Delta C$  increase, and decreases as the thickness of the membrane ( $\Delta x$ ) decreases.

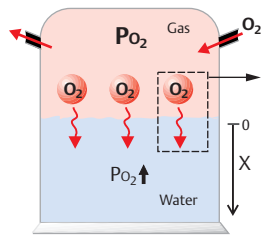
When diffusion occurs through the **lipid membrane** of a cell, one must consider that hydrophilic substances in the membrane are sparingly soluble (compare intramembrane gradient in **C1** to **C2**) and, accordingly, have a hard time penetrating the membrane by means of "*simple*" diffusion. The *oil-and-water partition coefficient* ( $k$ ) is a measure of the lipid solubility of a substance ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).

**A. Diffusion in homogeneous media**

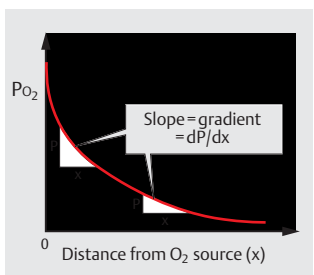
1 Brownian particle movement (~T)



2 Passive transport

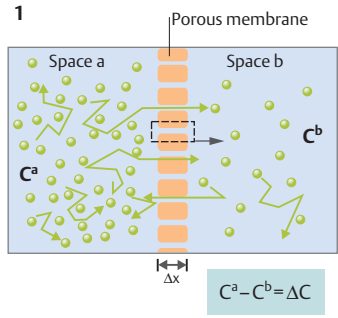


3 P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> profile

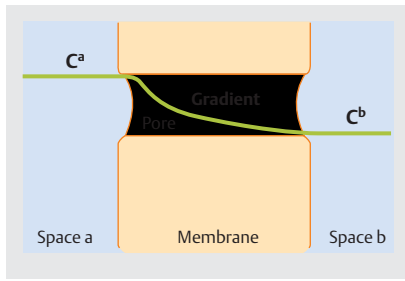


**B. Diffusion through porous membranes**

1

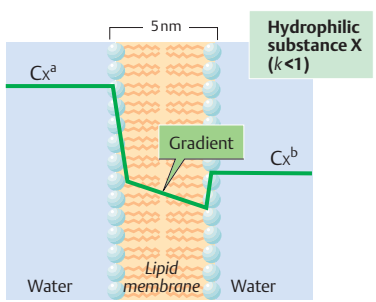


2

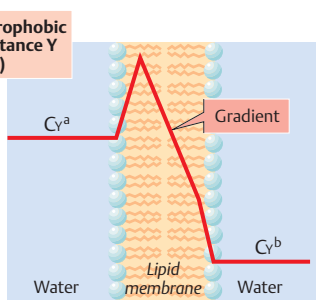


**C. Diffusion through lipid membranes**

1



2



$$k = \frac{\text{Equilibrium concentration in olive oil}}{\text{Equilibrium concentration in water}}$$

(Partly after S.G. Schultz)

The higher the  $k$  value, the more quickly the substance will diffuse through a pure phospholipid bilayer membrane. Substitution into Eq. 1.3 gives

$$J_{\text{diff}} = k \cdot A \cdot D \cdot \frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x} \quad [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.4]$$

Whereas the molecular radius  $r$  ( $\rightarrow$  Eq. 1.1) still largely determines the magnitude of  $D$  when  $k$  remains constant (cf. diethylmalonamide with ethylurea in **D**),  $k$  can vary by many powers of ten when  $r$  remains constant (cf. urea with ethanol in **D**) and can therefore have a decisive effect on the permeability of the membrane.

Since the value of the variables  $k$ ,  $D$ , and  $\Delta x$  within the body generally cannot be determined, they are usually summarized as the *permeability coefficient*  $P$ , where

$$P = k \cdot \frac{D}{\Delta x} \quad [\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.5]$$

If the diffusion rate,  $J_{\text{diff}}$  [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ], is related to area  $A$ , Eq. 1.4 is transformed to yield

$$\frac{J_{\text{diff}}}{A} = P \cdot \Delta C \quad [\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.6]$$

The quantity of substance (net) diffused per unit area and time is therefore proportional to  $\Delta C$  and  $P$  ( $\rightarrow$  **E**, blue line with slope  $P$ ).

When considering the **diffusion of gases**,  $\Delta C$  in Eq. 1.4 is replaced by  $\alpha \cdot \Delta P$  (solubility coefficient times partial pressure difference;  $\rightarrow$  p. 126) and  $J_{\text{diff}}$  [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ] by  $\dot{V}_{\text{diff}}$  [ $\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ].  $k \cdot \alpha \cdot D$  is then summarized as diffusion conductance, or *Krogh's diffusion coefficient*  $K$  [ $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{Pa}^{-1}$ ]. Substitution into Fick's first diffusion equation yields

$$\frac{\dot{V}_{\text{diff}}}{A} = K \cdot \frac{\Delta P}{\Delta x} \quad [\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.7]$$

Since  $A$  and  $\Delta x$  of alveolar gas exchange ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120) cannot be determined in living organisms,  $K \cdot F/\Delta x$  for  $\text{O}_2$  is often expressed as the  $\text{O}_2$  *diffusion capacity* of the lung,  $D_L$ :

$$\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2, \text{diff}} = D_L \cdot \Delta P_{\text{O}_2} \quad [\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.8]$$

**Nonionic diffusion** occurs when the uncharged form of a weak base (e.g., ammonia =  $\text{NH}_3$ ) or acid (e.g., formic acid,  $\text{HCOOH}$ ) passes through a membrane more readily than the charged form ( $\rightarrow$  **F**). In this case, the membrane would be more permeable to  $\text{NH}_3$  than to  $\text{NH}_4^+$

( $\rightarrow$  p. 176 ff.). Since the pH of a solution determines whether these substances will be charged or not (pK value;  $\rightarrow$  p. 378), the diffusion of weak acids and bases is clearly dependent on the pH.

The previous equations have not made allowances for the diffusion of electrically charged particles (**ions**). In their case, the **electrical potential difference** at cell membranes must also be taken into account. The electrical potential difference can be a driving force of diffusion (*electrodifussion*). In that case, positively charged ions (cations) will then migrate to the negatively charged side of the membrane, and negatively charged ions (anions) will migrate to the positively charged side. The prerequisite for this type of transport is, of course, that the membrane contain ion channels ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.) that make it permeable to the transported ions. Inversely, every ion diffusing along a concentration gradient carries a charge and thus creates an electric *diffusion potential* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.).

As a result of the electrical charge of an ion, the permeability coefficient of the ion  $x$  ( $= P_x$ ) can be transformed into the **electrical conductance** of the membrane for this ion,  $g_x$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32):

$$g_x = \cdot P_x \cdot z_x^2 \cdot F^2 \cdot R^{-1} \cdot T^{-1} \cdot \bar{c}_x \quad [\text{S} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}] \quad [1.9]$$

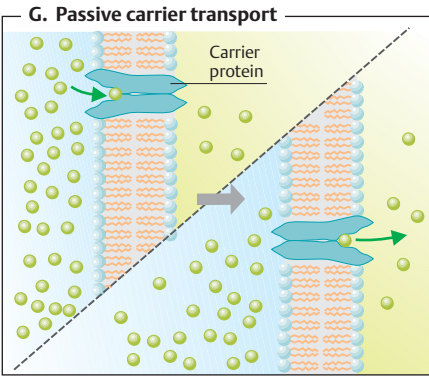
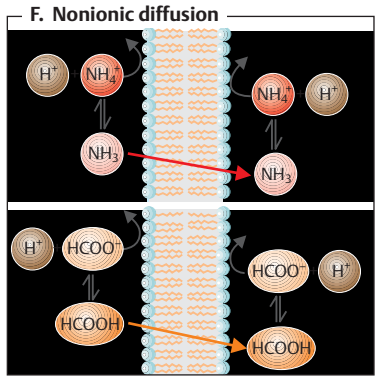
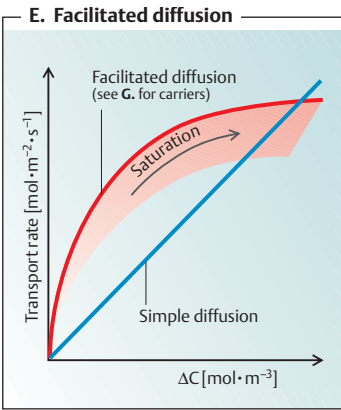
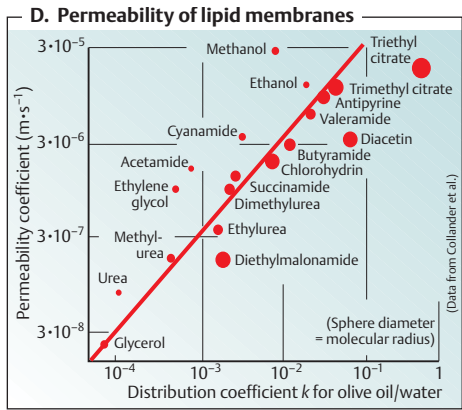
where  $R$  and  $T$  have their usual meaning (explained above) and  $z_x$  equals the charge of the ion,  $F$  equals the *Faraday constant* ( $9,65 \cdot 10^4 \text{ A} \cdot \text{s} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ), and  $\bar{c}_x$  equals the mean ionic activity in the membrane. Furthermore,

$$\bar{c} = \frac{c_1 - c_2}{\ln c_1 - \ln c_2} \quad [1.10]$$

where index 1 = one side and index 2 = the other side of the membrane. Unlike  $P$ ,  $g$  is *concentration-dependent*. If, for example, the extracellular  $\text{K}^+$  concentration rises from 4 to 8 mmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (cytosolic concentration remains constant at 160 mmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ),  $\bar{c}$  will rise, and  $g$  will increase by 20%.

Since most of the biologically important substances are so polar or lipophobic (*small k value*) that simple diffusion of the substances through the membrane would proceed much too slowly, other membrane transport proteins called **carriers** or transporters exist in addition to ion channels. Carriers bind the target molecule (e.g., glucose) on one side of the membrane and detach from it on the other side





(after a conformational change) ( $\rightarrow$  G). As in simple diffusion, a concentration gradient is necessary for such carrier-mediated transport (passive transport), e.g., with GLUT uniporters for glucose ( $\rightarrow$  p. 158). On the other hand, this type of “facilitated diffusion” is subject to *saturation*

and is *specific* for structurally similar substances that may *competitively inhibit* one another. The carriers in both passive and active transport have the latter features in common ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26).



## Osmosis, Filtration and Convection

*Water flow* or *volume flow* ( $J_V$ ) across a membrane, in living organisms is achieved through *osmosis* (diffusion of water) or *filtration*. They can occur only if the membrane is water-permeable. This allows osmotic and hydrostatic pressure differences ( $\Delta\pi$  and  $\Delta P$ ) across the membrane to drive the fluids through it.

**Osmotic flow** equals the hydraulic conductivity ( $K_f$ ) times the osmotic pressure difference ( $\Delta\pi$ ) ( $\rightarrow A$ ):

$$J_V = K_f \cdot \Delta\pi \quad [1.11]$$

The **osmotic pressure difference** ( $\Delta\pi$ ) can be calculated using *van't Hoff's law*, as modified by *Staverman*:

$$\Delta\pi = \sigma \cdot R \cdot T \cdot \Delta C_{\text{osm}}, \quad [1.12]$$

where  $\sigma$  is the reflection coefficient of the particles (see below),  $R$  is the universal gas constant ( $\rightarrow$  p. 20),  $T$  is the absolute temperature, and  $\Delta C_{\text{osm}}$  [ $\text{osm} \cdot \text{kgH}_2\text{O}^{-1}$ ] is the difference between the lower and higher particle concentrations,  $C_{\text{osm}}^a - C_{\text{osm}}^b$  ( $\rightarrow A$ ). Since  $\Delta C_{\text{osm}}$ , the *driving force for osmosis*, is a negative value,  $J_V$  is also negative (Eq. 1.11). The water therefore flows against the concentration gradient of the solute particles. In other words, the higher concentration,  $C_{\text{osm}}^b$ , *attracts* the water. When the *concentration of water* is considered in osmosis, the  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  concentration in **A,a**,  $C_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}^a$ , is greater than that in **A,b**,  $C_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}^b$ .  $C_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}^a - C_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}^b$  is therefore the *driving force for  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  diffusion* ( $\rightarrow A$ ). Osmosis also cannot occur unless the reflection coefficient is greater than zero ( $\sigma > 0$ ), that is, unless the membrane is less permeable to the solutes than to water.

**Aquaporins (AQP)** are *water channels* that permit the passage of water in many cell membranes. A chief cell in the renal collecting duct contains a total of ca. 107 water channels, comprising AQP2 (regulated) in the luminal membrane, and AQP3 and 4 (permanent?) in the basolateral membrane. The permeability of the epithelium of the renal collecting duct to water ( $\rightarrow A$ , right panel) is controlled by the *insertion and removal of AQP2*, which is stored in the membrane of intracellular vesicles. In the presence of the antidiuretic hormone ADH ( $V_2$  receptors, cAMP;  $\rightarrow$  p. 274), water channels are inserted in the luminal membrane within minutes, thereby increasing the water permeability of the membrane to around  $1.5 \times 10^{-17} \text{ L s}^{-1}$  per channel.

In **filtration** ( $\rightarrow B$ ),

$$J_V = K_f \cdot \Delta P - \Delta\pi \quad [1.13]$$

Filtration occurs through *capillary walls*, which allow the passage of small ions and molecules ( $\sigma = 0$ ; see below), but not of plasma proteins ( $\rightarrow B$ , molecule  $x$ ). Their concentration difference leads to an oncotic pressure difference ( $\Delta\pi$ ) that opposes  $\Delta P$ . Therefore, filtration can occur only if  $\Delta P > \Delta\pi$  ( $\rightarrow B$ , p. 152, p. 208).

**Solvent drag** occurs when solute particles are carried along with the water flow of osmosis or filtration. The amount of solvent drag for solute  $X$  ( $J_X$ ) depends mainly on osmotic flow ( $J_V$ ) and the mean *solute activity*  $\bar{a}_x$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 376) at the site of penetration, but also on the degree of particle reflection from the membrane, which is described using the **reflection coefficient** ( $\sigma$ ). Solvent drag for solute  $X$  ( $J_X$ ) is therefore calculated as

$$J_X = J_V (1 - \sigma) \bar{a}_x [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.14]$$

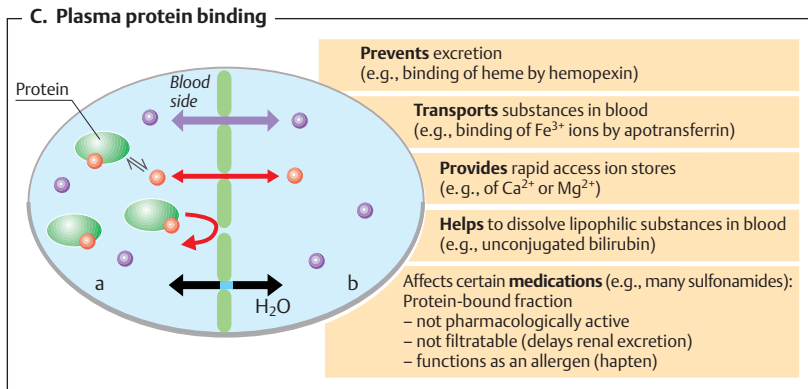
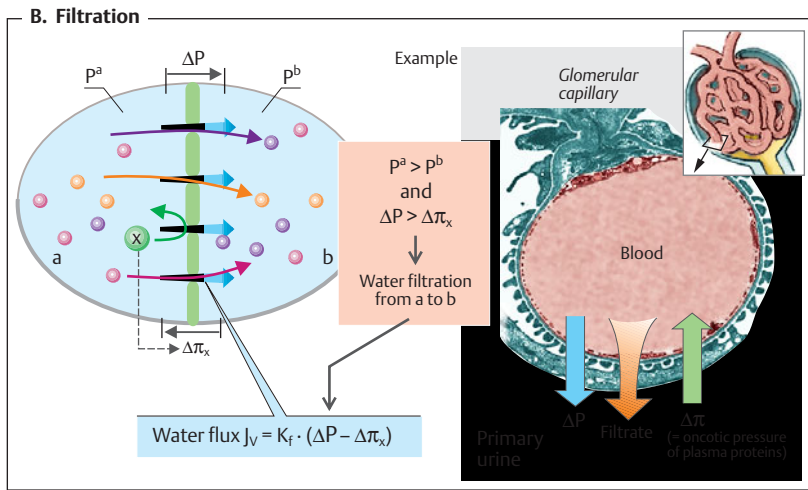
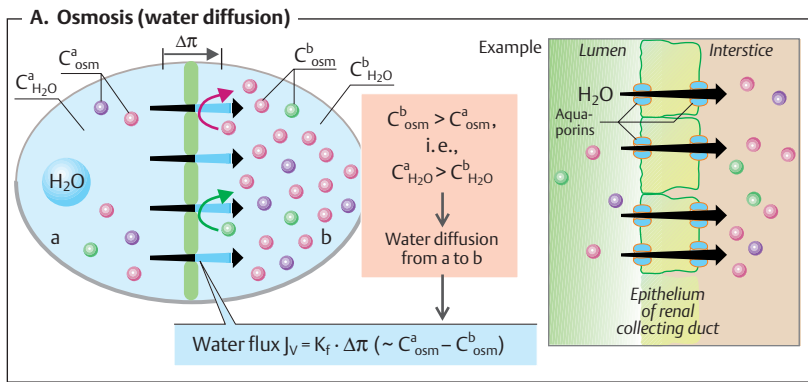
Larger molecules such as proteins are entirely reflected, and  $\sigma = 1$  ( $\rightarrow B$ , molecule  $X$ ). Reflection of smaller molecules is lower, and  $\sigma < 1$ . When urea passes through the wall of the proximal renal tubule, for example,  $\sigma = 0.68$ . The value  $(1 - \sigma)$  is also called the *sieving coefficient* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 154).

**Plasma protein binding** occurs when small-molecular substances in plasma bind to proteins ( $\rightarrow C$ ). This hinders the free penetration of the substances through the endothelium or the glomerular filter ( $\rightarrow$  p. 154 ff.). At a glomerular filtration fraction of 20%, 20% of a freely filterable substance is filtered out. If, however, 9/10 of the substance is bound to plasma proteins, only 2% will be filtered during each renal pass.

**Convection** functions to transport solutes over *long distances*—e.g., in the circulation or urinary tract. The solute is then carried along like a piece of driftwood. The quantity of solute transported over time ( $J_{\text{conv}}$ ) is the product of volume flow  $J_V$  (in  $\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ) and the solute concentration  $C$  ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ):

$$J_{\text{conv}} = J_V \cdot C [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}] \quad [1.15]$$

The flow of gases in the respiratory tract, the transmission of heat in the blood and the release of heat in the form of warmed air occurs through convection ( $\rightarrow$  p. 222).



## Active Transport

Active transport occurs in many parts of the body when solutes are transported against their concentration gradient (*uphill transport*) and/or, in the case of ions, against an electrical potential ( $\rightarrow$  p. 22). All in all, active transport occurs against the *electrochemical gradient* or *potential* of the solute. Since passive transport mechanisms represent “downhill” transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 20 ff.), they are not appropriate for this task. Active transport requires the **expenditure of energy**. A large portion of chemical energy provided by foodstuffs is utilized for active transport once it has been made readily available in the form of ATP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 41). The energy created by ATP hydrolysis is used to drive the transmembrane transport of numerous ions, metabolites, and waste products. According to the laws of thermodynamics, the energy expended in these reactions produces *order* in cells and organelles—a prerequisite for survival and normal function of cells and, therefore, for the whole organism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 38 ff.).

In **primary active transport**, the energy produced by hydrolysis of ATP goes *directly* into ion transport through an ion pump. This type of ion pump is called an **ATPase**. They establish the electrochemical gradients rather slowly, e.g., at a rate of around  $1 \mu\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$  of membrane surface area in the case of  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase. The gradient can be exploited to achieve *rapid ionic currents* in the opposite direction after the permeability of ion channels has been increased ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.).  $\text{Na}^+$  can, for example, be driven into a nerve cell at a rate of up to  $1000 \mu\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$  during an action potential.

**ATPases** occur ubiquitously in cell membranes ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase) and in the endoplasmic reticulum and plasma membrane ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase), renal collecting duct and stomach glands ( $\text{H}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase), and in lysosomes ( $\text{H}^+$ -ATPase). They transport  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{H}^+$ , respectively, by primarily active mechanisms. All except  $\text{H}^+$ -ATPase consist of 2  $\alpha$ -subunits and 2  $\beta$ -subunits (P-type ATPases). The  $\alpha$ -subunits are phosphorylated and form the ion transport channel ( $\rightarrow$  A1).

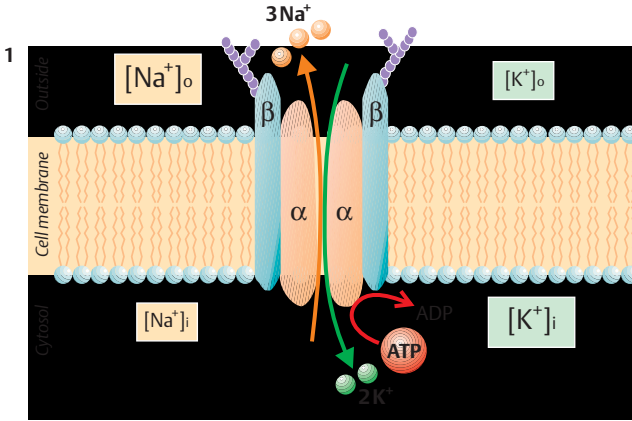
$\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase is responsible for maintenance of *intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  homeostasis*

and, thus, for maintenance of the *cell membrane potential*. During each transport cycle ( $\rightarrow$  A1, A2), 3  $\text{Na}^+$  and 2  $\text{K}^+$  are “pumped” out of and into the cell, respectively, while 1 ATP molecule is used to phosphorylate the carrier protein ( $\rightarrow$  A2b). Phosphorylation first changes the conformation of the protein and subsequently alters the affinities of the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  binding sites. The conformational change is the actual ion transport step since it moves the binding sites to the opposite side of the membrane ( $\rightarrow$  A2b–d). Dephosphorylation restores the pump to its original state ( $\rightarrow$  A2e–f). The  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$  pumping rate increases when the cytosolic  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration rises—due, for instance, to increased  $\text{Na}^+$  influx, or when the extracellular  $\text{K}^+$  rises. Therefore,  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -*activatable* ATPase is the full name of the pump.  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase is inhibited by *ouabain* and *cardiac glycosides*.

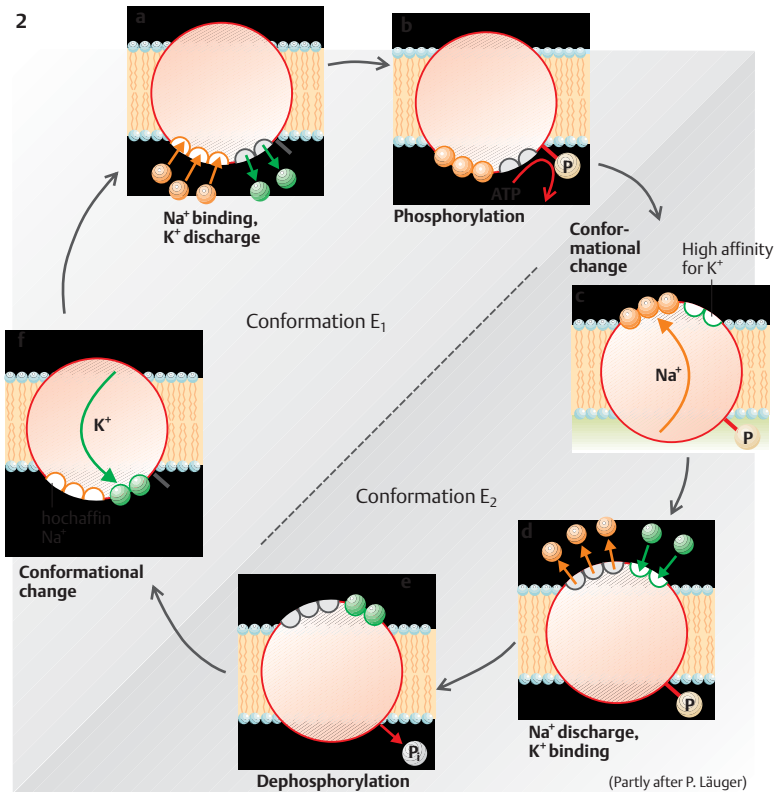
**Secondary active transport** occurs when uphill transport of a compound (e.g., glucose) via a carrier protein (e.g., sodium glucose transporter type 2, SGLT2) is coupled with the passive (downhill) transport of an ion (in this example  $\text{Na}^+$ ;  $\rightarrow$  B1). In this case, the electrochemical  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient into the cell (created by  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase at another site on the cell membrane;  $\rightarrow$  A) provides the driving force needed for secondary active uptake of glucose into the cell. Coupling of the transport of two compounds across a membrane is called **cotransport**, which may be in the form of symport or antiport. **Symport** occurs when the two compounds (i.e., compound and driving ion) are transported across the membrane in the same direction ( $\rightarrow$  B1–3). **Antiport** (countertransport) occurs when they are transported in opposite directions. Antiport occurs, for example, when an electrochemical  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient drives  $\text{H}^+$  in the opposite direction by secondary active transport ( $\rightarrow$  B4). The resulting  $\text{H}^+$  gradient can then be exploited for *tertiary active symport* of molecules such as peptides ( $\rightarrow$  B5).

**Electroneutral transport** occurs when the net electrical charge remains balanced during transport, e.g., during  $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$  antiport ( $\rightarrow$  B4) and  $\text{Na}^+/\text{Cl}^-$  symport ( $\rightarrow$  B2). Small charge separation occurs in **electrogenic (rheogenic) transport**, e.g., in  $\text{Na}^+$ -glucose<sup>0</sup> symport ( $\rightarrow$  B1),  $\text{Na}^+$ -amino acid<sup>0</sup> symport ( $\rightarrow$  B3),

A.  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ -ATPase



2



2 Na<sup>+</sup>-amino acid<sup>-</sup> symport, or H<sup>+</sup>-peptide<sup>0</sup> symport (→ B5). The chemical Na<sup>+</sup> gradient provides the sole driving force for electroneutral transport (e.g., Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> antiport), whereas the negative membrane potential (→ p. 32 ff.) provides an additional driving force for electrogenication-coupled cotransport into the cell. When secondary active transport (e.g., of glucose) is coupled with the influx of not one but two Na<sup>+</sup> ions (e.g., SGLT1 symporter), the driving force is doubled. The aid of ATPases is necessary, however, if the required “uphill” concentration ratio is several decimal powers large, e.g., 10<sup>6</sup> in the extreme case of H<sup>+</sup> ions across the luminal membrane of parietal cells in the stomach. ATPase-mediated transport can also be electrogenic or electroneutral, e.g., Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase (3 Na<sup>+</sup>/2 K<sup>+</sup>; cf. p. 46) or H<sup>+</sup>/K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase (1 H<sup>+</sup>/1 K<sup>+</sup>), respectively.

Characteristics of active transport:

- ◆ It can be saturated, i.e., it has a limited *maximum capacity* ( $J_{\max}$ ).
  - ◆ It is more or less *specific*, i.e., a carrier molecule will transport only certain chemically similar substances which inhibit the transport of each other (*competitive inhibition*).
  - ◆ Variable quantities of the similar substances are transported at a given concentration, i.e., each has a different *affinity* ( $\sim 1/K_M$ ) to the transport system.
  - ◆ Active transport is inhibited when the *energy supply* to the cell is disrupted.
- All of these characteristics except the last apply to passive carriers, that is, to uniporter-mediated (facilitated) diffusion (→ p. 22).

The **transport rate** of saturable transport ( $J_{\text{sat}}$ ) is usually calculated according to Michaelis-Menten kinetics:

$$J_{\text{sat}} = J_{\max} \cdot \frac{C}{K_M + C} \quad [1.16]$$

where C is the concentration of the substrate in question,  $J_{\max}$  is its maximum transport rate, and  $K_M$  is the substrate concentration that produces one-half  $J_{\max}$  (→ p. 383).

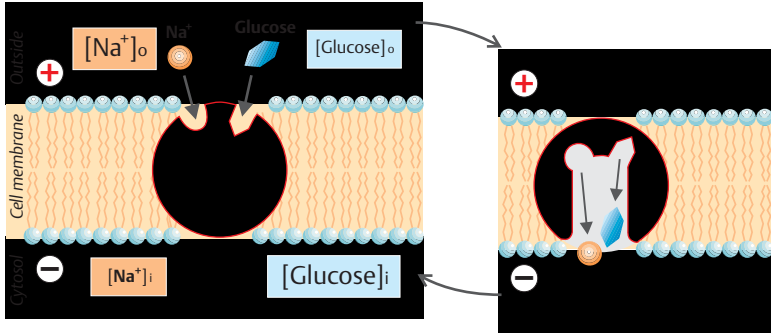
**Cytosis** is a completely different type of active transport involving the formation of membrane-bound vesicles with a diameter of 50–400 nm. **Vesicles** are either pinched off from the plasma membrane (*exocytosis*) or incorporated into it by invagination (*endocytosis*)

in conjunction with the expenditure of ATP. In cytosol, the uptake and release of *macromolecules* such as proteins, lipoproteins, polynucleotides, and polysaccharides into and out of a cell occurs by specific mechanisms similar to those involved in intracellular transport (→ p. 12 ff.).

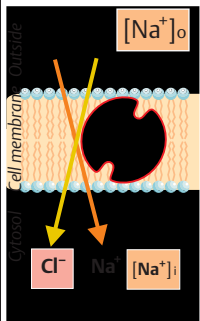
**Endocytosis** (→ p. 13) can be broken down into different types, including pinocytosis, receptor-mediated endocytosis, and phagocytosis. **Pinocytosis** is characterized by the continuous unspecific uptake of extracellular fluid and molecules dissolved in it through relatively small vesicles. **Receptor-mediated endocytosis** (→ C) involves the selective uptake of specific macromolecules with the aid of receptors. This usually begins at small depressions (*pits*) on the plasma membrane surface. Since the insides of the pits are often densely covered with the protein *clathrin*, they are called *clathrin-coated pits*. The **receptors** involved are integral cell membrane proteins such as those for low-density lipoprotein (LDL; e.g., in hepatocytes) or intrinsic factor-bound cobalamin (e.g., in ileal epithelial cells). Thousands of the same receptor type or of different receptors can converge at coated pits (→ C), yielding a tremendous increase in the efficacy of ligand uptake. The endocytosed vesicles are initially coated with clathrin, which is later released. The vesicles then transform into *early endosomes*, and most of the associated receptors circulate back to the cell membrane (→ C and p. 13). The endocytosed ligand is either exocytosed on the opposite side of the cell (*transcytosis*, see below), or is digested by *lysosomes* (→ C and p. 13). **Phagocytosis** involves the endocytosis of particulate matter, such as microorganisms or cell debris, by phagocytes (→ p. 94 ff.) in conjunction with lysosomes. Small digestion products, such as amino acids, sugars and nucleotides, are transported out of the lysosomes into the cytosol, where they can be used for cellular metabolism or secreted into the extracellular fluid. When certain hormones such as *insulin* (→ p. 282) bind to receptors on the surface of target cells, hormone-receptor complexes can also enter the coated pits and are endocytosed (*internalized*) and digested by lysosomes. This reduces the density of receptors available for hormone bind-

## B. Secondary and tertiary active transport

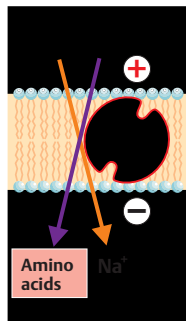
### 1 Electrochemical $\text{Na}^+$ gradient drives secondary active glucose transport



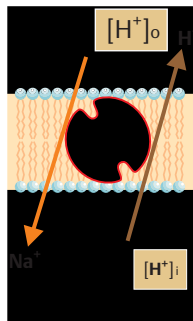
### 2 Electroneutral symport



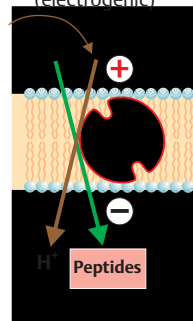
### 3 Electrogenic symport



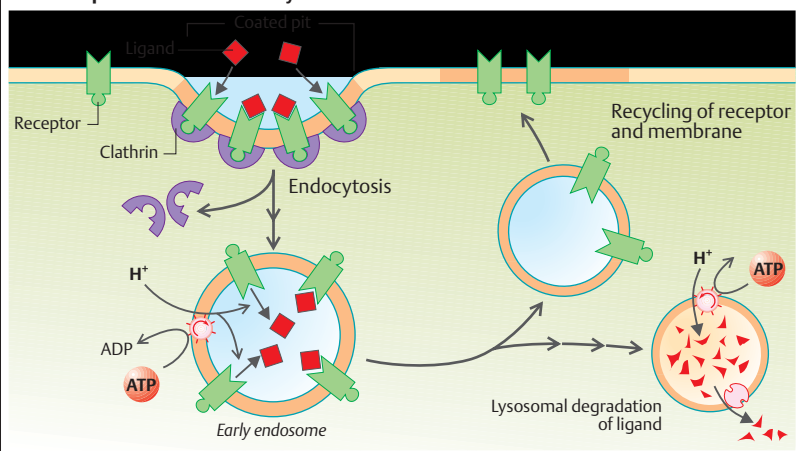
### 4 Electroneutral antiport



### 5 Tertiary active symport (electrogenic)



## C. Receptor-mediated endocytosis



ing. In other words, an increased hormone supply *down-regulates* the receptor density.

**Exocytosis** (→ p. 13) is a method for selective export of macromolecules out of the cell (e.g., pancreatic enzymes; → p. 246 ff.) and for release of many hormones (e.g., posterior pituitary hormone; → p. 280) or neurotransmitters (→ p. 50 ff.). These substances are kept “packed” and readily available in (clathrin-coated) *secretory vesicles*, waiting to be released when a certain signal is received (increase in cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$ ). The “packing material” (vesicle membrane) is later re-endocytosed and *recycled*. Exocytotic membrane fusion also helps to insert vesicle-bound proteins into the plasma membrane (→ p. 13). The liquid contents of the vesicle then are automatically emptied in a process called **constitutive exocytosis** (→ D).

In constitutive exocytosis, the protein complex *coatamer* (coat assembly protomer) takes on the role of clathrin (see above). Within the Golgi membrane, GNRP (guanine nucleotide-releasing protein) phosphorylates the GDP of the ADP-ribosylation factor (ARF) to GTP (→ D1), resulting in the dispatch of vesicles from the trans-Golgi network. ARF-GTP complexes then anchor on the membrane and bind with coatamer (→ D2), thereby producing **coatamer-coated vesicles** (→ D3). The membranes of the vesicles contain v-SNAREs (vesicle synaptosome-associated protein receptors), which recognize t-SNAREs (target-SNAREs) in the target membrane (the plasma membrane, in this case). This results in cleavage of ARF-GTP, dissociation of ARF-GDP and coatamer molecules and, ultimately, to membrane fusion and exocytosis (→ D4, D5) to the extracellular space (ECS).

**Transcytosis** is the uptake of macromolecules such as proteins and hormones by endocytosis on one side of the cell, and their release on the opposite side. This is useful for *transcellular transport of the macromolecules* across cell layers such as endothelia.

## Cell Migration

Most cells in the body are theoretically able to move from one place to another or *migrate* (→ E), but only a few cell species actually do so. The *sperm* are probably the only cells with a special propulsion mechanism. By waving their whip-like tail, the sperm can travel at

speeds of up to around 2000  $\mu\text{m}/\text{min}$ . Other cells also migrate, but at much slower rates. *Fibroblasts*, for example, move at a rate of around 1.2  $\mu\text{m}/\text{min}$ . When an injury occurs, fibroblasts migrate to the wound and aid in the formation of scar tissue. Cell migration also plays a role in *embryonal development*. Chemotactically attracted *neutrophil granulocytes* and *macrophages* can even migrate through vessel walls to attack invading bacteria (→ p. 94 ff.). Cells of some tumors can also migrate to various tissues of the body or *metastasize*, thereby spreading their harmful effects.

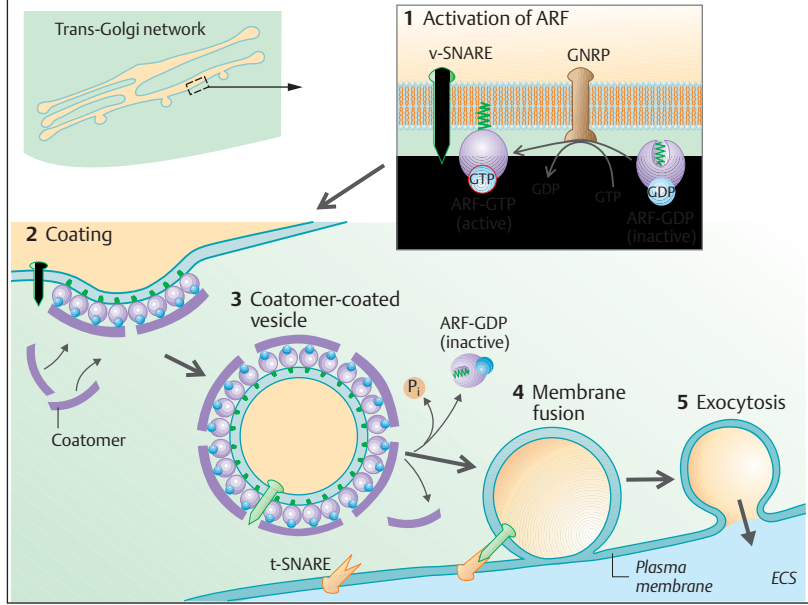
Cells migrate by “crawling” on a stable surface (→ E1). The following activities occur during cell migration:

- ◆ **Back end of the cell:** (a) Depolymerization of actin and tubulin in the cytoskeleton; (b) endocytosis of parts of the cell membrane, which are then propelled forward as endocytotic vesicles to the front of the cell, and (c) release of ions and fluids from the cell.
- ◆ **Front end of the cell (lamellipodia):** (a) Polymerization of actin monomers is achieved with the aid of profilin (→ E2). The monomers are propelled forward with the help of plasma membrane-based myosin I (fueled by ATP); (b) reinsertion of the vesicles in the cell membrane; (c) uptake of ions and fluids from the environment.

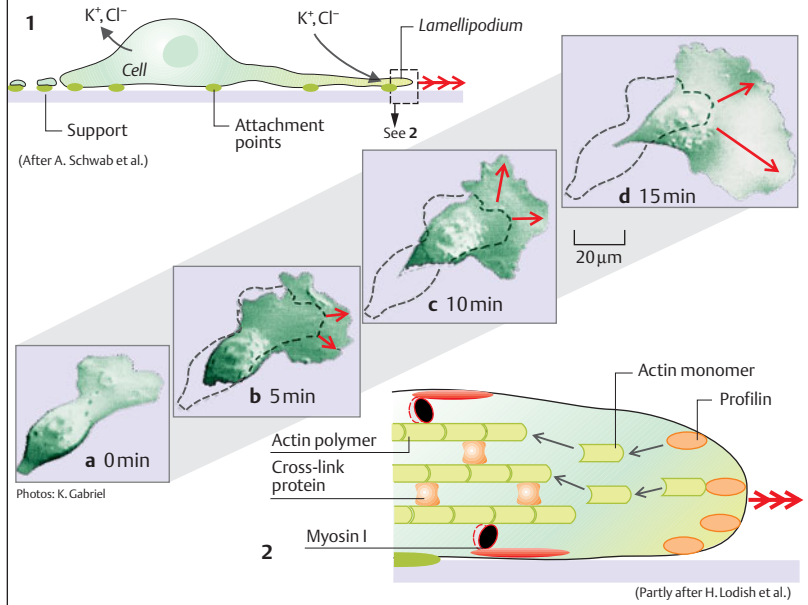
Parts of the cell membrane that are not involved in cytoskeleton are conveyed from front to back, as on a track chain. Since the cell membrane is attached to the stable surface (primarily fibronectin of the extracellular matrix in the case of fibroblasts), the cell moves forward relative to the surface. This is achieved with the aid of specific receptors, such as fibronectin receptors in the case of fibroblasts.



**D. Constitutive exocytosis**



**E. Cell migration**





## Electrical Membrane Potentials and Ion Channels

An **electrical potential difference** occurs due to the *net movement of charge during ion transport*. A **diffusion potential** develops for instance, when ions (e.g.,  $K^+$ ) diffuse (down a chemical gradient;  $\rightarrow$  p.20ff.) out of a cell, making the cell interior negative relative to the outside. The rising diffusion potential then drives the ions back into the cell (potential-driven ion transport;  $\rightarrow$  p.22). Outward  $K^+$  diffusion persists until equilibrium is reached. At equilibrium, the two opposing forces become equal and opposite. In other words, the sum of the two or the **electrochemical gradient** (and thereby the electrochemical potential) equals zero, and there is no further net movement of ions (*equilibrium concentration*) at a certain voltage (*equilibrium potential*).

The **equilibrium potential** ( $E_x$ ) for any species of ion X distributed inside (i) and outside (o) a cell can be calculated using the Nernst equation:

$$E_x = \frac{R \cdot T}{F \cdot z_x} \cdot \ln \frac{[X]_o}{[X]_i} \quad [V] \quad [1.17]$$

where R is the universal gas constant ( $=8.314 \text{ J} \cdot \text{K}^{-1} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ), T is the absolute temperature ( $310^\circ\text{K}$  in the body), F is the Faraday constant or charge per mol ( $=9.65 \times 10^4 \text{ A} \cdot \text{s} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ), z is the valence of the ion in question (+1 for  $K^+$ , +2 for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , -1 for  $\text{Cl}^-$ , etc.), ln is the natural logarithm, and [X] is the effective concentration = activity of the ion X ( $\rightarrow$  p.376).  $R \cdot T/F = 0.0267 \text{ V}^{-1}$  at body temperature ( $310^\circ\text{K}$ ). It is sometimes helpful to convert  $\ln([X]_o/[X]_i)$  into  $-\ln([X]_i/[X]_o)$ , V into mV and ln into log before calculating the equilibrium potential ( $\rightarrow$  p.380). After insertion into Eq. 1.17, the **Nernst equation** then becomes

$$E_x = -61 \cdot \frac{1}{z_x} \cdot \log \frac{[X]_i}{[X]_o} \quad [\text{mV}] \quad [1.18]$$

If the ion of species X is  $K^+$ , and  $[K^+]_i = 140$ , and  $[K^+]_o = 4.5 \text{ mmol/kg H}_2\text{O}$ , the equilibrium potential  $E_K = -61 \cdot \log_{31} \text{ mV}$  or  $-91 \text{ mV}$ . If the cell membrane is permeable only to  $K^+$ , the **membrane potential** ( $E_m$ ) will eventually reach a value of  $-91 \text{ mV}$ , and  $E_m$  will equal  $E_K$  ( $\rightarrow$  A1).

At equilibrium potential, the chemical gradient will drive just as many ions of species X in the one direction as the electrical potential does in the opposite direction. The **electrochemical potential** ( $E_m - E_x$ ) or so-called electrochemical driving "force", will equal zero, and the sum of ionic inflow and outflow or the **net flux** ( $I_x$ ) will also equal zero.

**Membrane conductance** ( $g_x$ ), a concentration-dependent variable, is generally used to describe the permeability of a cell membrane to a given ion instead of the permeability coefficient P (see Eq. 1.5 on p.22 for conversion). Since it is relative to membrane surface area,  $g_x$  is expressed in siemens ( $S = 1/\Omega$ ) per  $\text{m}^2$  ( $\rightarrow$  p.22, Eq. 1.9). **Ohm's law** defines the net ion current ( $I_x$ ) per unit of membrane surface area as

$$I_x = g_x \cdot (E_m - E_x) \quad [\text{A} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}] \quad [1.19]$$

$I_x$  will therefore differ from zero when the prevailing membrane potential,  $E_m$ , does not equal the equilibrium potential,  $E_x$ . This occurs, for example, after strong transient activation of  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+ - \text{ATPase}$  (electrogenic;  $\rightarrow$  p.26): hyperpolarization of the membrane ( $\rightarrow$  A2), or when the cell membrane conducts more than one ion species, e.g.,  $K^+$  as well as  $\text{Cl}^-$  and  $\text{Na}^+$ : depolarization ( $\rightarrow$  A3). If the membrane is permeable to different ion species, the **total conductance** of the membrane ( $g_m$ ) equals the sum of all parallel conductances ( $g_1 + g_2 + g_3 + \dots$ ). The **fractional conductance** for the ion species X ( $f_x$ ) can be calculated as

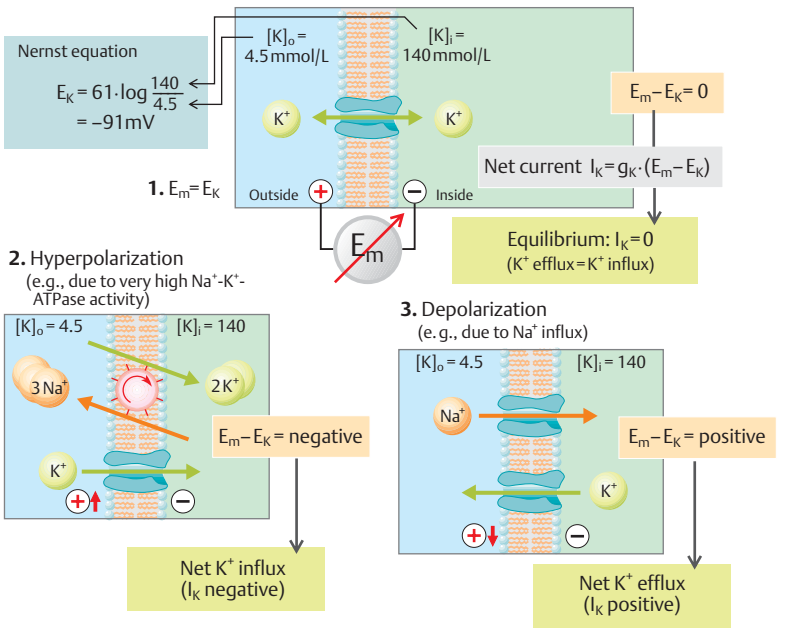
$$f_x = g_x/g_m \quad [1.20]$$

The membrane potential,  $E_m$ , can be determined if the fractional conductances and equilibrium potentials of the conducted ions are known (see Eq. 1.18). Assuming  $K^+$ ,  $\text{Na}^+$ , and  $\text{Cl}^-$  are the ions in question,

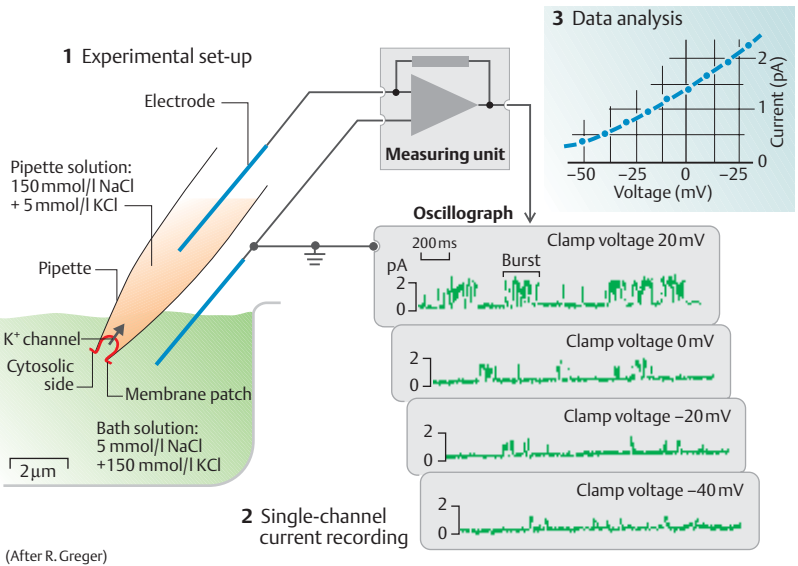
$$E_m = (E_K \cdot f_K) + (E_{\text{Na}} \cdot f_{\text{Na}}) + (E_{\text{Cl}} \cdot f_{\text{Cl}}) \quad [1.21]$$

Realistic values in *resting nerve cells* are:  $f_K = 0.90$ ,  $f_{\text{Na}} = 0.03$ ,  $f_{\text{Cl}} = 0.07$ ;  $E_K = -90 \text{ mV}$ ,  $E_{\text{Na}} = +70 \text{ mV}$ ,  $E_{\text{Cl}} = -83 \text{ mV}$ . Inserting these values into equation 1.21 results in an  $E_m$  of  $-85 \text{ mV}$ . Thus, the driving forces (=electrochemical potentials =  $E_m - E_x$ ), equal  $+5 \text{ mV}$  for  $K^+$ ,  $-145 \text{ mV}$  for  $\text{Na}^+$ , and  $-2 \text{ mV}$  for  $\text{Cl}^-$ . The driv-

**A. Electrochemical potential ( $E_m - E_K$ ) and ionic currents**



**B. Single-channel recording (patch-clamp technique)**



ing force for  $K^+$  efflux is therefore low, though  $g_K$  is high. Despite a high driving force for  $Na^+$ ,  $Na^+$  influx is low because the  $g_{Na}$  and  $f_{Na}$  of resting cells are relatively small. Nonetheless, the sodium current,  $I_{Na}$ , can rise tremendously when large numbers of  $Na^+$  channels open during an action potential ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46).

**Electrodiffusion.** The potential produced by the transport of one ion species can also drive other cations or anions through the cell membrane ( $\rightarrow$  p. 22), provided it is permeable to them. The  $K^+$  diffusion potential leads to the efflux of  $Cl^-$ , for example, which continues until  $E_{Cl} = E_m$ . According to Equation 1.18, this means that the cytosolic  $Cl^-$  concentration is reduced to 1/25 th of the extracellular concentration (*passive distribution* of  $Cl^-$  between cytosol and extracellular fluid). In the above example, there was a small electrochemical  $Cl^-$  potential driving  $Cl^-$  out of the cell ( $E_m - E_{Cl} = -2$  mV). This means that the cytosolic  $Cl^-$  concentration is higher than in passive  $Cl^-$  distribution ( $E_{Cl} = E_m$ ). Therefore,  $Cl^-$  ions must have been actively taken up by the cell, e.g., by a  $Na^+-Cl^-$  symport carrier ( $\rightarrow$  p. 29 B); *active distribution* of  $Cl^-$ .

To achieve ion transport, membranes have a variable number of **channels** (pores) specific for different ion species ( $Na^+$ ,  $Ca^{2+}$ ,  $K^+$ ,  $Cl^-$ , etc.). The conductance of the cell membrane is therefore determined by the type and number of ion channels that are momentarily open. *Patch-clamp techniques* permit the direct measurement of *ionic currents through single ion channels* ( $\rightarrow$  B). Patch-clamp studies have shown that the conductance of a membrane does not depend on the change of the pore diameter of its ion channels, but on their average frequency of opening. The ion permeability of a membrane is therefore related to the **open-probability** of the channels in question. Ion channels open in frequent bursts ( $\rightarrow$  B2). Several ten thousands of ions pass through the channel during each individual burst, which lasts for only a few milliseconds.

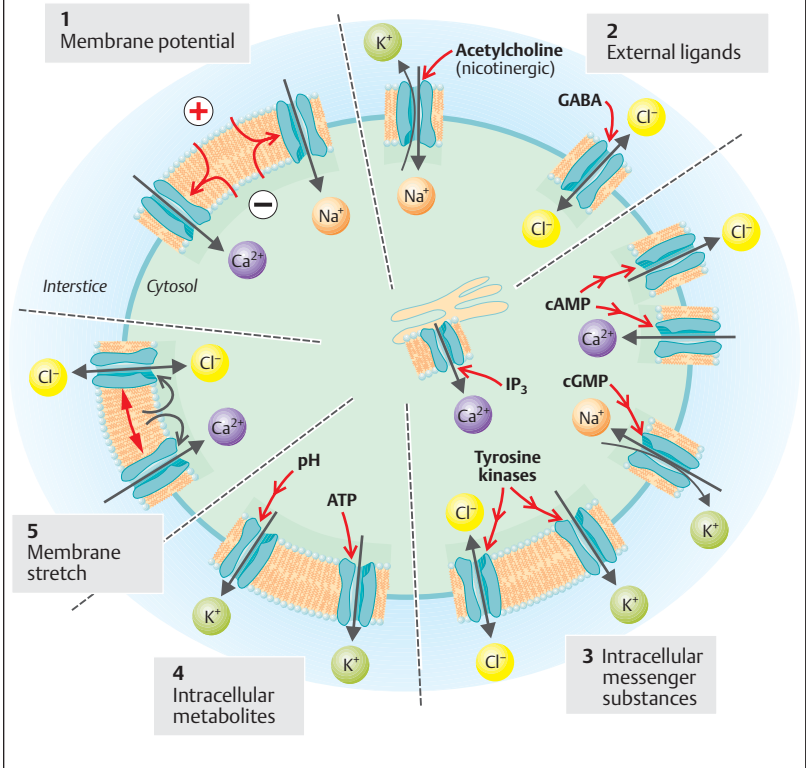
During a **patch-clamp recording**, the opening (0.3–3  $\mu$ m in diameter) of a glass electrode is placed over a cell membrane in such a way that the opening covers only a small part of the membrane (*patch*) containing only one or a small number of ion channels. The whole cell

can either be left intact, or a membrane patch can excised for isolated study ( $\rightarrow$  B1). In *single-channel recording*, the membrane potential is kept at a preset value (*voltage clamp*). This permits the measurement of ionic current in a single channel. The measurements are plotted ( $\rightarrow$  B3) as current ( $I$ ) over voltage ( $V$ ). The slope of the *I/V curve* corresponds to the conductance of the channel for the respective ion species (see Eq. 1.18). The *zero-current potential* is defined as the voltage at which the *I/V curve* intercepts the x-axis of the curve ( $I = 0$ ). The ion species producing current  $I$  can be deduced from the zero-current potential. In example B, the zero-current potential equals  $-90$  mV. Under the conditions of this experiment, an electrochemical gradient exists only for  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$ , but not for  $Cl^-$  ( $\rightarrow$  B). At these gradients,  $E_K = -90$  mV and  $E_{Na} = +90$  mV. As  $E_K$  equals the zero-current potential, the channel is exclusively permeable to  $K^+$  and does not allow other ions like  $Na^+$  to pass. The channel type can also be determined by adding specific channel blockers to the system.

**Control of ion channels** ( $\rightarrow$  C). Channel open-probability is controlled by five main factors:

- ◆ *Membrane potential*, especially in  $Na^+$ ,  $Ca^{2+}$  and  $K^+$  channels in nerve and muscle fibers ( $\rightarrow$  C1; pp. 46 and 50).
- ◆ *External ligands* that bind with the channel ( $\rightarrow$  C2). This includes acetylcholine on the postsynaptic membrane of nicotinic synapses (cation channels), glutamate (cation channels), and glycine or GABA ( $Cl^-$  channels).
- ◆ *Intracellular messenger substances* ( $\rightarrow$  C3) such as:
  - cAMP (e.g., in  $Ca^{2+}$  channels in myocardial cells and  $Cl^-$  channels in epithelial cells);
  - cGMP (plays a role in muscarinic effects of acetylcholine and in excitation of the retinal rods);
  - IP3 (opening of  $Ca^{2+}$  channels of intracellular  $Ca^{2+}$  stores);
  - Small G-proteins ( $Ca^{2+}$  channels of the cell membrane);
  - Tyrosine kinases ( $Cl^-$  and  $K^+$  channels during apoptosis);
  - $Ca^{2+}$  (affects  $K^+$  channels and degree of activation of rapid  $Na^+$  channels;  $\rightarrow$  p. 46).

### C. Control of ion channels



- ◆ *Intracellular metabolites* ( $\rightarrow$  C4) such as ATP (e.g., in  $\text{K}^+$  channels in the heart and B cells in pancreatic islets) or  $\text{H}^+$  ions (e.g., in  $\text{K}^+$  channels in renal epithelial cells);
- ◆ *Membrane stretch* ( $\rightarrow$  C5), the direct or indirect (?) effects of which play a role in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels of smooth muscle fibers and generally in normal  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  channels in swelling cells.

## Role of $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ in Cell Regulation

The **cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration,  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$** , (ca. 0.1 to 0.01  $\mu\text{mol/L}$ ) is several decimal powers lower than the extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  **$[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$**  (ca. 1.3  $\text{mmol/L}$ ). This is because  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is continuously pumped from the cytosol into **intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  stores** such as the endoplasmic and sarcoplasmic reticulum ( $\rightarrow$  p. 17 A), vesicles, mitochondria and nuclei (?) or is *transported out of the cell*. Both processes occur by primary active transport ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPases) and, in the case of efflux, by additional secondary active transport through  $\text{Ca}^{2+}/\text{Na}^{+}$  antiporters ( $\rightarrow$  A1).

To **increase the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels** conduct  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from intracellular stores and the extracellular space into the cytosol ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The frequency of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel opening in the cell membrane is increased by

- ◆ **Depolarization** of the cell membrane (nerve and muscle cells);

- ◆ **Ligands** (e.g., via  $G_o$  proteins;  $\rightarrow$  p. 274);
- ◆ **Intracellular messengers** (e.g.,  $\text{IP}_3$  and cAMP;  $\rightarrow$  p. 274ff.);

- ◆ **Stretching or heating** of the cell membrane.

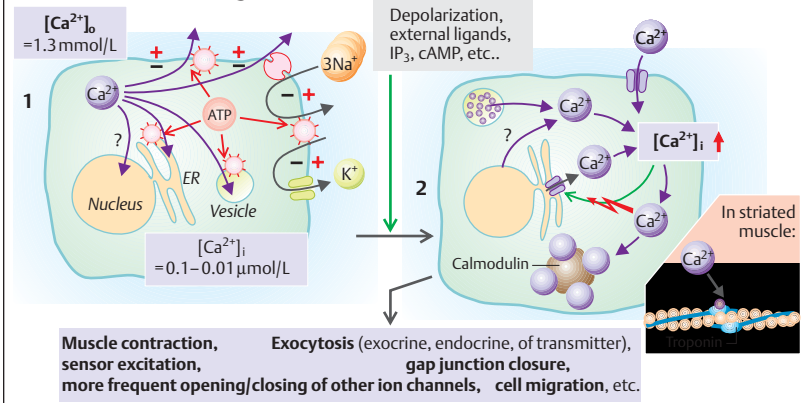
The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels of the endoplasmic and sarcoplasmic reticulum open more frequently in response to signals such as a rise in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  (influx of external  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  works as the “spark” or trigger) or inositol *tris*-phosphate ( $\text{IP}_3$ ;  $\rightarrow$  A2 and p. 276).

A **rise in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  is a signal** for many important cell functions ( $\rightarrow$  A), including myocyte contraction, exocytosis of neurotransmitters in presynaptic nerve endings, endocrine and exocrine hormone secretion, the excitation of certain sensory cells, the closure of gap junctions in various cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 19 C), the opening of other types of ion channels, and the migration of leukocytes and tumor cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 30) as well as thrombocyte activation and sperm mobilization. Some of these activities are mediated by **calmodulin**. A calmodulin molecule can bind up to 4  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions when the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  rises ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The  **$\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -calmodulin complexes** activate a number of different enzymes, including calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II (CaM-kinase II) and myosin light chain kinase (MLCK), which is involved in smooth muscle contraction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 70).

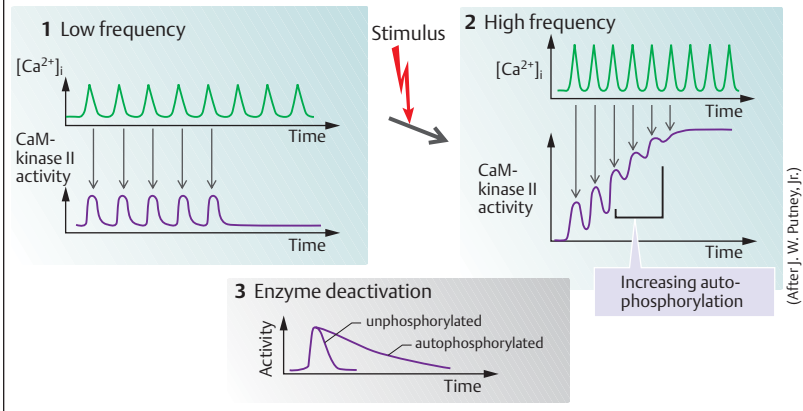
**$[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillation** is characterized by multiple brief and regular  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  increases ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spikes) in response to certain stimuli or hormones ( $\rightarrow$  B). The frequency, not amplitude, of  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillation is the quantitative signal for cell response. When low-frequency  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillation occurs, CaM-kinase II, for example, is activated and phosphorylates only its target proteins, but is quickly and completely deactivated ( $\rightarrow$  B1, B3). High-frequency  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillation results in an increasing degree of auto-phosphorylation and progressively delays the deactivation of the enzyme ( $\rightarrow$  B3). As a result, the activity of the enzyme decays more and more slowly between  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  signals, and each additional  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  signal leads to a summation of enzyme activity ( $\rightarrow$  B2). As with action potentials ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46), this frequency-borne, digital *all-or-none* type of signal transmission provides a much clearer message than the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  amplitude, which is influenced by a number of factors.

**$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors.** The extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$  plays an important role in blood coagulation and bone formation as well as in nerve and muscle excitation.  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$  is tightly controlled by hormones such as PTH, calcitriol and calcitonin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 290), and represents the feedback signal in this control circuit ( $\rightarrow$  p. 290). The involved  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors are membrane proteins that detect **high  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$  levels** on the cell surface and dispatch  $\text{IP}_3$  and DAG (diacylglycerol) as intracellular second messengers with the aid of a  $G_q$  protein ( $\rightarrow$  C1 and p. 274ff.).  $\text{IP}_3$  triggers an increase in the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  of parafollicular C cells of the thyroid gland. This induces the exocytosis of calcitonin, a substance that **reduces  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$**  ( $\rightarrow$  C2). In parathyroid cells, on the other hand, a high  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$  reduces the secretion of PTH, a hormone that increases the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_o$ . This activity is mediated by DAG and PKC (protein kinase C) and, perhaps, by a ( $G_i$  protein-mediated;  $\rightarrow$  p. 274) reduction in the cAMP concentration ( $\rightarrow$  C3).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors are also located on osteoclasts as well as on renal and intestinal epithelial cells.

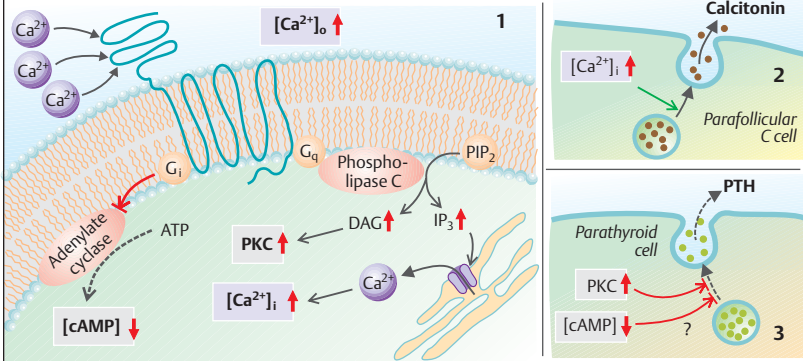
**A. Role of Ca<sup>2+</sup> in cell regulation**



**B. Ca<sup>2+</sup> oscillation**



**C. Ca<sup>2+</sup> sensor**



## Energy Production and Metabolism

*Energy* is the ability of a system to perform work; both are expressed in joules (J). A **potential difference** (potential gradient) is the so-called *driving "force"* that mobilizes the matter involved in the work. Water falling from height X (in meters) onto a power generator, for example, represents the potential gradient in mechanical work. In electrical and chemical work, potential gradients are provided respectively by voltage (V) and a change in free enthalpy  $\Delta G$  ( $\text{J} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ). The amount of work performed can be determined by multiplying the potential difference (*intensity factor*) by the corresponding *capacity factor*. In the case of the water fall, the work equals the height the water falls (m) times the force of the falling water (in N). In the other examples, the amount work performed equals the voltage (V) times the amount of charge (C). Chemical work performed =  $\Delta G$  times the amount of substance (mol).

Living organisms cannot survive without an adequate supply of energy. Plants utilize solar energy to convert atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  into oxygen and various organic compounds. These, in turn, are used to fill the energy needs of humans and animals. This illustrates how energy can be converted from one form into another. If we consider such a transformation taking place in a **closed system** (exchange of energy, but not of matter, with the environment), energy can neither appear nor disappear spontaneously. In other words, when energy is converted in a closed system, the total energy content remains constant. This is described in the **first law of thermodynamics**, which states that the change of internal energy (= change of energy content,  $\Delta U$ ) of a system (e.g. of a chemical reaction) equals the sum of the work absorbed (+W) or performed (-W) by a system and the heat lost (-Q) or gained (+Q) by the system. This is described as:

$$\Delta U = \text{heat gained (Q)} - \text{work performed (W) [J]} \quad [1.22]$$

$$\Delta U = \text{work absorbed (W)} - \text{heat lost (Q) [J]} \quad [1.23]$$

(By definition, the signs indicate the direction of flow with respect to the system under consideration.)

**Heat** is transferred in all chemical reactions. The amount of heat produced upon conversion of a given substance into product X is the same, *regardless of the reaction pathway* or whether the system is closed or open, as in a biological system. For caloric values, see p. 228.

**Enthalpy change ( $\Delta H$ )** is the heat gained or lost by a system at constant pressure and is related to work, pressure, and volume ( $\Delta H = \Delta U + p \cdot \Delta V$ ). Heat is lost and  $\Delta H$  is negative in **exothermic** reactions, while heat is gained and  $\Delta H$  is positive in **endothermic** reactions. The **second law of thermodynamics** states that the total disorder (randomness) or entropy (S) of a closed system increases in any spontaneous process, i.e., **entropy change ( $\Delta S$ )**  $> 0$ . This must be taken into consideration when attempting to determine how much of  $\Delta H$  is freely available. This free energy or free enthalpy ( $\Delta G$ ) can be used, for example, to drive a chemical reaction. The heat produced in the process is the product of absolute temperature and entropy change ( $T \cdot \Delta S$ ).

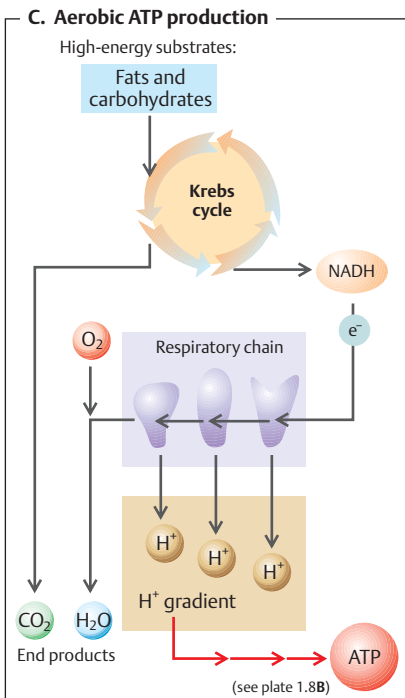
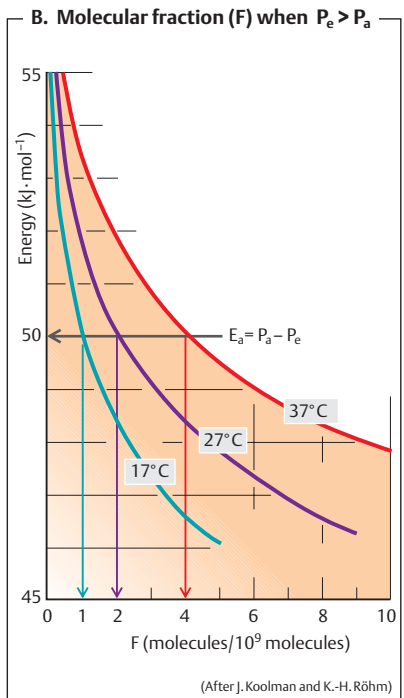
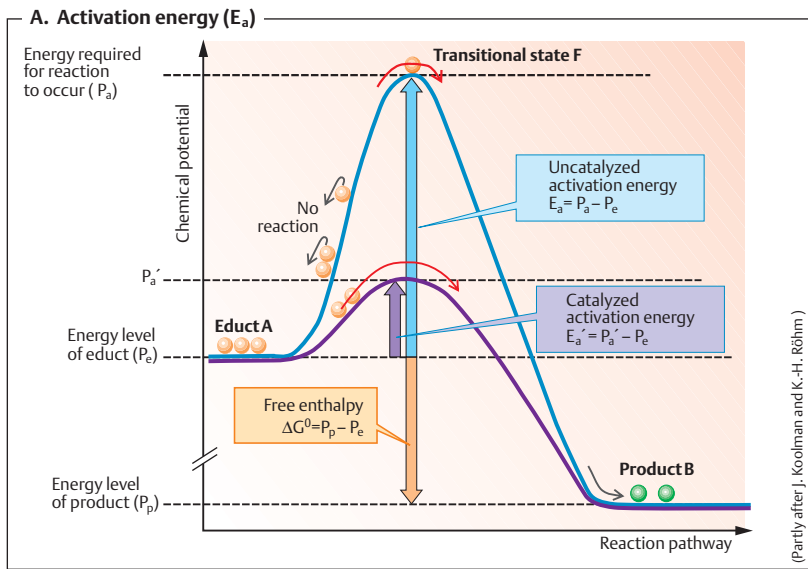
**Free enthalpy ( $\Delta G$ )** can be calculated using the Gibbs-Helmholtz equation:

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T \cdot \Delta S. \quad [1.24]$$

$\Delta G$  and  $\Delta H$  are approximately equal when  $\Delta S$  approaches zero. The maximum chemical work of glucose in the body can therefore be determined based on heat transfer,  $\Delta H$ , measured during the combustion of glucose in a calorimeter (see p.228 for caloric values). Equation 1.24 also defines the conditions under which chemical reactions can occur. **Exergonic** reactions ( $\Delta G < 0$ ) are characterized by the release of energy and can proceed spontaneously, whereas **endergonic** reactions ( $\Delta G > 0$ ) require the absorption of energy and are not spontaneous. An endothermic reaction ( $\Delta H > 0$ ) can also be exergonic ( $\Delta G < 0$ ) when the entropy change  $\Delta S$  is so large that  $\Delta H - T \cdot \Delta S$  becomes negative. This occurs, for example, in the endothermic dissolution of crystalline NaCl in water.

Free enthalpy,  $\Delta G$ , is a concentration-dependent variable that can be calculated from the change in **standard free enthalpy ( $\Delta G^0$ )** and the prevailing concentrations of the substances in question.  $\Delta G^0$  is calculated assuming for all reaction partners that concentration = 1 mol/L, pH = 7.0, T = 298 K, and p = 1013 hPa.







Given the reaction



where A is the educt and B and C are the products,  $\Delta G^0$  is converted to  $\Delta G$  as follows:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^0 + R \cdot T \cdot \ln \frac{[B] + [C]}{[A]} \quad [1.26]$$

or, at a temperature of 37 °C,

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^0 + 8.31 \cdot 310 \cdot 2.3 \cdot \log \frac{[B] + [C]}{[A]} \text{ [J} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}] \quad [1.27]$$

Assuming the  $\Delta G^0$  of a reaction is +20 kJ · mol<sup>-1</sup> (endergonic reaction),  $\Delta G$  will be exergonic (<0) if  $[B] \cdot [C]$  is 10<sup>4</sup> times smaller than A:

$$\Delta G = 20000 + 5925 \cdot \log 10^{-4} = -3.7 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}. \quad [1.28]$$

In this case, A is converted to B and C and reaction 1.25 proceeds to the right.

If  $[B] \cdot [C]/[A] = 4.2 \times 10^{-4}$ ,  $\Delta G$  will equal zero and the reaction will come to equilibrium (no net reaction). This numeric ratio is called the **equilibrium constant ( $K_{eq}$ )** of the reaction.  $K_{eq}$  can be converted to  $\Delta G^0$  and vice versa using Equation 1.26:

$$0 = \Delta G^0 + R \cdot T \cdot \ln K_{eq} \text{ or} \\ \Delta G^0 = -R \cdot T \cdot \ln K_{eq} \text{ and} \quad [1.29]$$

$$K_{eq} = e^{-\Delta G^0/(R \cdot T)}. \quad [1.30]$$

Conversely, when  $[B] \cdot [C]/[A] > 4.2 \times 10^{-4}$ ,  $\Delta G$  will be > 0, the net reaction will proceed backwards, and A will arise from B and C.

$\Delta G$  is therefore a measure of the direction of a reaction and of its *distance from equilibrium*. Considering the concentration-dependency of  $\Delta G$  and assuming the reaction took place in an open system (see below) where reaction products are removed continuously, e.g., in subsequent metabolic reactions, it follows that  $\Delta G$  would be a large negative value, and that the reaction would persist without reaching equilibrium.

The magnitude of  $\Delta G^0$ , which represents the difference between the energy levels (chemical potentials) of the product  $P_p$  and educt  $P_e$  ( $\rightarrow A$ ), does not tell us anything about the **rate of the reaction**. A reaction may be very slow, even if  $\Delta G^0 < 0$ , because the reaction rate also depends on the energy level ( $P_a$ ) needed *transiently* to create the necessary transitional state.  $P_a$  is higher than  $P_e$  ( $\rightarrow A$ ). The additional amount of energy required to reach this level is

called the **activation energy ( $E_a$ )**:  $E_a = P_a - P_e$ . It is usually so large ( $\approx 50 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ) that only a tiny fraction ( $F \approx 10^{-9}$ ) of the educt molecules are able to provide it ( $\rightarrow A, B$ ). The energy levels of these individual educt molecules are incidentally higher than  $P_e$ , which represents the mean value for all educt molecules. The size of **fraction F** is temperature-dependent ( $\rightarrow B$ ). A 10 °C decrease or rise in temperature lowers or raises F (and usually the reaction rate) by a factor of 2 to 4, i.e. the **Q<sub>10</sub> value** of the reaction is 2 to 4.

Considering the high  $E_a$  values of many non-catalyzed reactions, the development of **enzymes** as biological catalysts was a very important step in evolution. Enzymes enormously accelerate reaction rates by lowering the activation energy  $E_a$  ( $\rightarrow A$ ). According to the Arrhenius equation, the **rate constant k** ( $s^{-1}$ ) of a unimolecular reaction is proportional to  $e^{-E_a/(R \cdot T)}$ . For example, if a given enzyme reduces the  $E_a$  of a unimolecular reaction from 126 to 63 kJ · mol<sup>-1</sup>, the rate constant at 310 °K (37 °C) will rise by  $e^{-63000/(8.31 \cdot 310)}/e^{-126000/(8.31 \cdot 310)}$ , i.e., by a factor of  $4 \cdot 10^{10}$ . The enzyme would therefore reduce the time required to metabolize 50% of the starting materials ( $t'_{1/2}$ ) from, say, 10 years to 7 msec! The forward rate of a reaction ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ) is related to the product of the rate constant ( $s^{-1}$ ) and the starting substrate concentration ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ).

The second law of thermodynamics also implies that a continuous loss of free energy occurs as the total disorder or entropy (S) of a closed system increases. A living organism represents an **open system** which, by definition, can absorb energy-rich nutrients and discharge end products of metabolism. While the entropy of a closed system (organism + environment) increases in the process, an open system (organism) can either maintain its entropy level or reduce it using free enthalpy. This occurs, for example, when ion gradients or hydraulic pressure differences are created within the body. A closed system therefore has a maximum entropy, is in a true state of chemical equilibrium, and can perform work only once. An open system such as the body can *continuously* perform work while producing only a minimum of entropy. A true state of equilibrium is achieved in only a very few

processes within the body, e.g., in the reaction  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{HCO}_3^- + \text{H}^+$ . In most cases (e.g. metabolic pathways, ion gradients), only a *steady state* is reached. Such metabolic pathways are usually *irreversible* due, for example, to excretion of the end products. The thought of reversing the “reaction” germ cell  $\rightarrow$  adult illustrates just how impossible this is.

At **steady state**, the *rate* of a reaction is more important than its equilibrium. The regulation of body functions is achieved by controlling reaction rates. Some reactions are so slow that it is impossible to achieve a sufficient reaction rate with enzymes or by reducing the concentration of the reaction products. These are therefore endergonic reactions that require the input of outside energy. This can involve “activation” of the educt by attachment of a high-energy phosphate group to raise the Pe.

**ATP** (adenosine triphosphate) is the universal carrier and transformer of free enthalpy within the body. ATP is a nucleotide that derives its chemical energy from energy-rich nutrients ( $\rightarrow$  C). Most ATP is produced by **oxidation** of energy-rich biological molecules such as glucose. In this case, oxidation means the removal of electrons from an electron-rich (reduced) donor which, in this case, is a carbohydrate.  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  are the end products of the reaction. In the body, oxidation (or electron transfer) occurs in several stages, and a portion of the liberated energy can be simultaneously used for ATP synthesis. This is therefore a **coupled reaction** ( $\rightarrow$  C and p. 17 B). The standard free enthalpy  $\Delta G^0$  of **ATP hydrolysis**,



is  $-30.5 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ . According to Eq. 1.27, the  $\Delta G$  of reaction 1.31 should increase when the ratio  $([\text{ADP}] \cdot [\text{P}_i])/[\text{ATP}]$  falls below the equilibrium constant  $K_{\text{eq}}$  of ATP hydrolysis. The fact that a high cellular ATP concentration does indeed yield a  $\Delta G$  of approximately  $-46$  to  $-54 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$  shows that this also applies in practice.

Some substances have a much higher  $\Delta G^0$  of hydrolysis than ATP, e.g., *creatine phosphate* ( $-43 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ). These compounds react with ADP and  $\text{P}_i$  to form ATP. On the other hand, the energy of ATP can be used to synthesize other compounds such as UTP, GTP and glucose-6-phosphate. The energy content of these sub-

stances is lower than that of ATP, but still relatively high.

The free energy liberated upon hydrolysis of ATP is used to drive hundreds of reactions within the body, including the active transmembrane transport of various substances, protein synthesis, and muscle contraction. According to the laws of thermodynamics, the expenditure of energy in all of these reactions leads to increased order in living cells and, thus, in the organism as a whole. Life is therefore characterized by the continuous reduction of entropy associated with a corresponding increase in entropy in the immediate environment and, ultimately, in the universe.

### Neuron Structure and Function

An excitable cell reacts to stimuli by altering its membrane characteristics (→ p. 32). There are two types of excitable cells: *nerve cells*, which transmit and modify impulses within the nervous system, and *muscle cells*, which contract either in response to nerve stimuli or autonomously (→ p. 59).

The human nervous system consists of more than  $10^{10}$  nerve cells or neurons. The **neuron** is the *structural and functional unit of the nervous system*. A typical neuron (motor neuron, → A1) consists of the *soma* or cell body and two types of processes: the *axon* and *dendrites*. Apart from the usual intracellular organelles (→ p. 8 ff.), such as a nucleus and mitochondria (→ A2), the neuron contains *neurofibrils* and *neurotubules*. The neuron receives *afferent signals* (excitatory and inhibitory) from a few to sometimes several thousands of other neurons via its **dendrites** (usually arborescent) and sums the signals along the cell membrane of the soma (*summation*). The **axon** arises from the axon hillock of the soma and is responsible for the transmission of efferent neural signals to nearby or distant *effectors* (muscle and glandular cells) and adjacent neurons. Axons often have branches (*collaterals*) that further divide and terminate in swellings called *synaptic knobs* or *terminal buttons*. If the summed value of potentials at the axon hillock exceeds a certain threshold, an **action potential** (→ p. 46) is generated and sent down the axon, where it reaches the next synapse via the **terminal buttons** (→ A1,3) described below.

Vesicles containing materials such as proteins, lipids, sugars, and transmitter substances are conveyed from the Golgi complex of the soma (→ p. 13 F) to the terminal buttons and the tips of the dendrites by **rapid axonal transport** (40 cm/day). This type of *anterograde* transport along the neurotubules is promoted by *kinesin*, a myosin-like protein, and the energy required for it is supplied by ATP (→ p. 16). Endogenous and exogenous substances such as nerve growth factor (NGF), herpes virus, poliomyelitis virus, and tetanus toxin are conveyed by *retrograde* transport from the peripheral regions to the soma at a

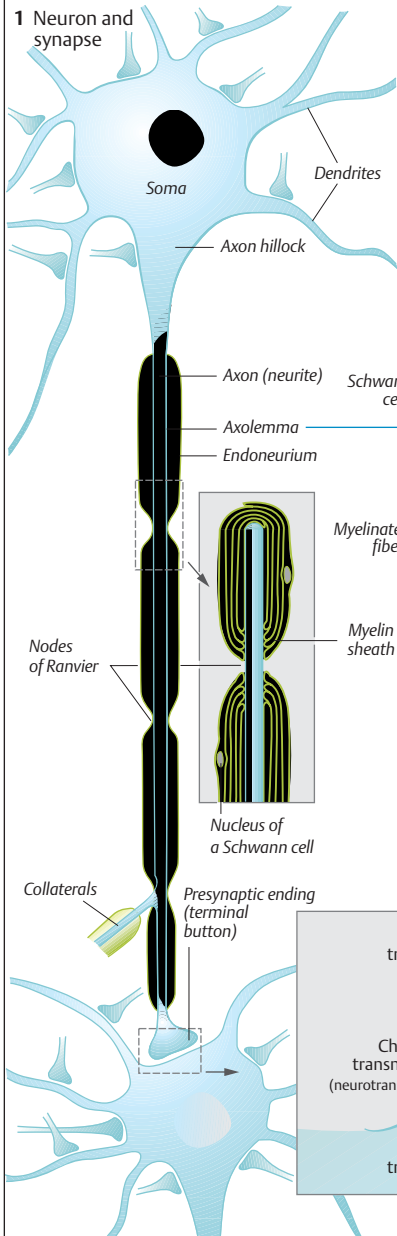
rate of ca. 25 cm/day. *Slow axon transport* (ca. 1 mm/day) plays a role in the regeneration of severed neurites.

Along the axon, the plasma membrane of the soma continues as the axolemma (→ A1,2). The axolemma is surrounded by **oligodendrocytes** (→ p. 338) in the central nervous system (CNS), and by **Schwann cells** in the peripheral nervous system (→ A1,2). A **nerve fiber** consists of an axon plus its sheath. In some neurons, Schwann cells form multiple concentric double phospholipid layers around an axon, comprising the **myelin sheath** (→ A1,2) that insulates the axon from ion currents. The sheath is interrupted every 1.5 mm or so at the **nodes of Ranvier** (→ A1). The *conduction velocity* of myelinated nerve fibers is much higher than that of unmyelinated nerve fibers and increases with the diameter of the nerve fiber (→ p. 49 C).

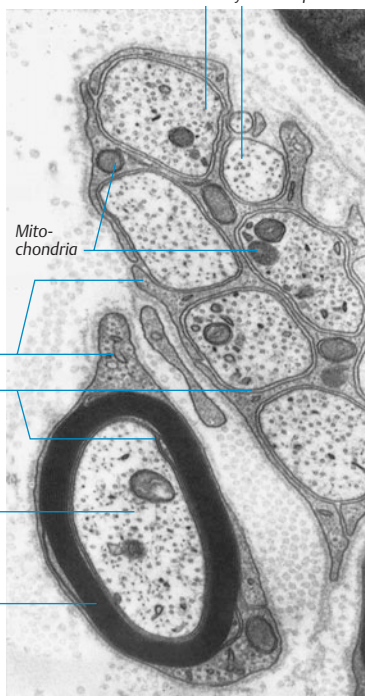
A **synapse** (→ A3) is the site where the axon of a neuron communicates with effectors or other neurons (see also p. 50 ff.). With very few exceptions, **synaptic transmissions** in mammals are mediated by chemicals, not by electrical signals. In response to an electrical signal in the axon, vesicles (→ p. 1.6) on the **presynaptic membrane** release transmitter substances (**neurotransmitters**) by exocytosis (→ p. 30). The transmitter diffuses across the **synaptic cleft** (10–40 nm) to the postsynaptic membrane, where it binds to receptors effecting new electrical changes (→ A3). Depending on the type of neurotransmitter and postsynaptic receptor involved, the transmitter will either have an excitatory effect (e.g., acetylcholine in skeletal muscle) or inhibitory effect (e.g., glycine in the CNS) on the postsynaptic membrane. Since the postsynaptic membrane normally does not release neurotransmitters (with only few exceptions), nerve impulses can pass the synapse in one direction only. The synapse therefore acts like a *valve* that ensures the orderly transmission of signals. Synapses are also the sites at which neuronal signal transmissions can be *modified* by other (excitatory or inhibitory) neurons.

**A. Nerve cell structure and function**

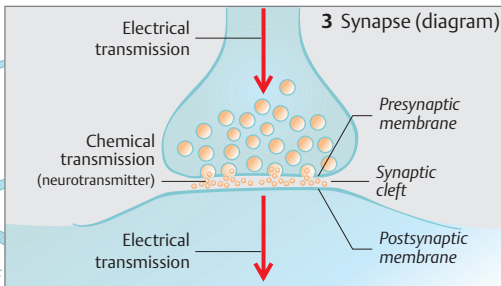
**1 Neuron and synapse**



**2 Myelinated and unmyelinated nerve fibers**



Electron microscopic view, 1:22000 magnification. Photograph courtesy of Dr. Lauren A. Langford



## Resting Membrane Potential

An electrical potential difference, or **membrane potential** ( $E_m$ ), can be recorded across the plasma membrane of living cells. The potential of unstimulated muscle and nerve cells, or **resting potential**, amounts to  $-50$  to  $-100$  mV (cell interior is negative). A resting potential is caused by a slightly unbalanced distribution of ions between the intracellular fluid (ICF) and extracellular fluid (ECF) ( $\rightarrow$  B). The following factors are involved in establishing the membrane potential (see also p. 32 ff.).

◆ **Maintenance of an unequal distribution of ions:** The  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26) continuously “pumps”  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the cell and  $\text{K}^+$  into it ( $\rightarrow$  A2). As a result, the intracellular  $\text{K}^+$  concentration is around 35 times higher and the intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration is roughly 20 times lower than the extracellular concentration ( $\rightarrow$  B). As in any active transport, this process requires energy, which is supplied by ATP. Lack of energy or inhibition of the  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$  results in flattening of the ion gradient and breakdown of the membrane potential.

Because anionic proteins and phosphates present in high concentrations in the cytosol are virtually unable to leave the cell, purely passive mechanisms (*Gibbs-Donnan distribution*) could, to a slight extent, contribute to the unequal distribution of diffusible ions ( $\rightarrow$  A1). For reasons of electroneutrality,  $[\text{K}^+\text{+Na}^+]_{\text{ICF}} > [\text{K}^+\text{+Na}^+]_{\text{ECF}}$  and  $[\text{Cl}^-]_{\text{ICF}} < [\text{Cl}^-]_{\text{ECF}}$ . However, this has practically no effect on the development of resting potentials.

◆ **Low resting  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conductance,  $g_{\text{Na}}$ ,  $g_{\text{Ca}}$ :** The membrane of a resting cell is only very slightly permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and the resting  $g_{\text{Na}}$  comprises only a small percentage of the total conductance ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.). Hence, the  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration difference ( $\rightarrow$  A3–A5) cannot be eliminated by immediate passive diffusion of  $\text{Na}^+$  back into the cell.

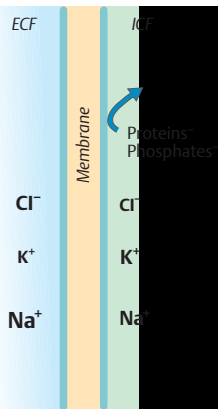
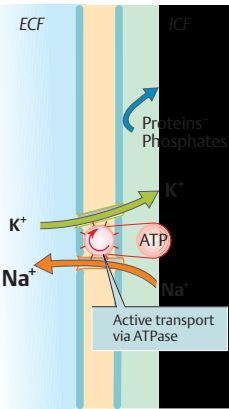
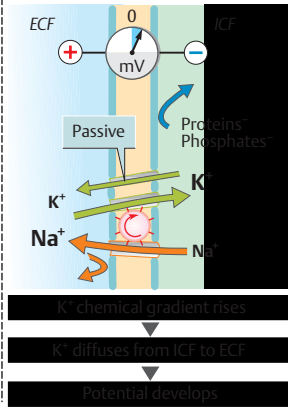
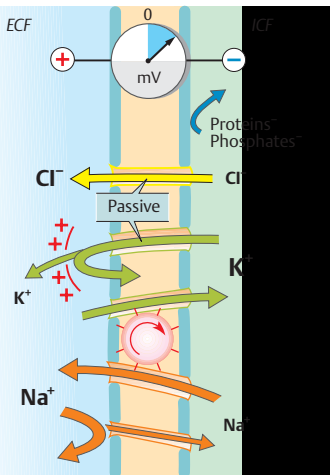
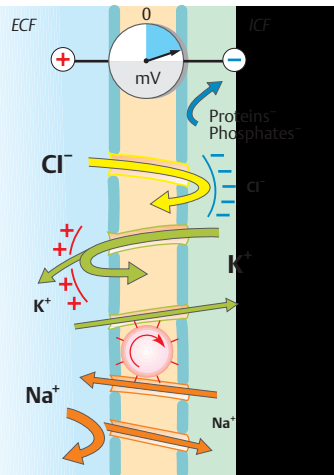
◆ **High  $\text{K}^+$  conductance,  $g_{\text{K}}$ :** It is relatively easy for  $\text{K}^+$  ions to diffuse across the cell membrane ( $g_{\text{K}} \approx 90\%$  of total conductance;  $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.). Because of the steep concentration gradient ( $\rightarrow$  point 1),  $\text{K}^+$  ions diffuse from the ICF to the ECF ( $\rightarrow$  A3). Because of their positive charge, the diffusion of even small amounts of  $\text{K}^+$  ions leads to an electrical potential (*diffusion potential*) across the membrane. This (inside nega-

tive) diffusion potential drives  $\text{K}^+$  back into the cell and rises until large enough to almost completely compensate for the  $\text{K}^+$  concentration gradient driving the  $\text{K}^+$ -ions out of the cell ( $\rightarrow$  A4). As a result, the membrane potential,  $E_m$ , is approximately equal to the  $\text{K}^+$  equilibrium potential  $E_{\text{K}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32).

◆  **$\text{Cl}^-$  distribution:** Since the cell membrane is also conductive to  $\text{Cl}^-$  ( $g_{\text{Cl}}$  greater in muscle cells than in nerve cells), the membrane potential (electrical driving “force”) expels  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions from the cell ( $\rightarrow$  A4) until the  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration gradient (chemical driving “force”) drives them back into the cell at the same rate. The intracellular  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration,  $[\text{Cl}^-]_{\text{i}}$ , then continues to rise until the  $\text{Cl}^-$  equilibrium potential equals  $E_m$  ( $\rightarrow$  A5).  $[\text{Cl}^-]_{\text{i}}$  can be calculated using the *Nernst equation* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32, Eq. 1.18). Such a “passive” distribution of  $\text{Cl}^-$  between the intra- and extracellular spaces exists only as long as there is no active  $\text{Cl}^-$  uptake into the cell ( $\rightarrow$  p. 34).

◆ **Why is  $E_m$  less negative than  $E_{\text{K}}$ ?** Although the conductances of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  are very low in resting cells, a few  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions constantly enter the cell ( $\rightarrow$  A4, 5). This occurs because the equilibrium potential for both types of ions extends far into the positive range, resulting in a high outside-to-inside electrical and chemical driving “force” for these ions ( $\rightarrow$  B;  $\rightarrow$  p. 32 f.). This cation influx depolarizes the cell, thereby driving  $\text{K}^+$  ions out of the cell ( $1 \text{ K}^+$  for each positive charge that enters). If  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$  did not restore these gradients continuously ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  indirectly via the  $3 \text{ Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger;  $\rightarrow$  p. 36), the intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentrations would increase continuously, whereas  $[\text{K}^+]_{\text{i}}$  would decrease, and  $E_{\text{K}}$  and  $E_m$  would become less negative.

All living cells have a (resting) membrane potential, but only excitable cells such as nerve and muscle cells are able to greatly change the ion conductance of their membrane in response to a stimulus, as in an *action potential* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46).

**A. Causes and effects of resting membrane potentials**
**1 Passive ion distribution**

**2 Active Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-pump**

**3 K<sup>+</sup> diffusion potential**

**4 Potential drives Cl<sup>-</sup> from ICF to ECF**

**5 End state: Resting membrane potential**

**B. Typical "effective" concentrations and equilibrium potentials of important ions in skeletal muscle (at 37°C)**

	"Effective" concentration (mmol/kg H <sub>2</sub> O)		Equilibrium potential
	Interstice (ECF)	Cell (ICF)	
K <sup>+</sup>	4.5	160	-95mV
Na <sup>+</sup>	144	7	+80mV
Ca <sup>2+</sup>	1.3	0.0001-0.00001	+125 to +310mV
H <sup>+</sup>	4·10 <sup>-5</sup> (pH 7.4)	10 <sup>-4</sup> (pH 7.0)	-24mV
Cl <sup>-</sup>	114	7	-80mV
HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	28	10	-27mV

(After Conway)

## Action Potential

An action potential is a signal passed on through an axon or along a muscle fiber that influences other neurons or induces muscle contraction. **Excitation** of a neuron occurs if the membrane potential,  $E_m$ , on the axon hillock of a motor neuron, for example ( $\rightarrow$  p. 42), or on the motor end-plate of a muscle fiber changes from its resting value ( $\rightarrow$  p. 44) to a less negative value (slow *depolarization*,  $\rightarrow$  **A1**). This depolarization may be caused by neurotransmitter-induced opening of postsynaptic cation channels ( $\rightarrow$  p. 50) or by the (electronic) transmission of stimuli from the surroundings ( $\rightarrow$  p. 48). If the  $E_m$  of a stimulated cell comes close to a critical voltage or **threshold potential** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**), "rapid" voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are activated ( $\rightarrow$  **B4** and **B1**  $\Rightarrow$  **B2**). This results in *increased  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance*,  $g_{\text{Na}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32), and the entry of  $\text{Na}^+$  into the cell ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). If the threshold potential is not reached, this process remains a *local (sub-threshold) response*.

Once the threshold potential is reached, the cell responds with a fast **all-or-none** depolarization called an **action potential, AP** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**). The AP follows a pattern typical of the specific cell type, regardless of the magnitude of the stimulus that generated it. Large numbers of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are activated, and the influxing  $\text{Na}^+$  accelerates depolarization which, in turn, increases  $g_{\text{Na}}$  and so on (positive feedback). As a result, the  $E_m$  rapidly collapses (0.1 ms in nerve cells; fast **depolarization phase** or up-sweep) and temporarily reaches positive levels (*overshooting*, +20 to +30 mV). The  $g_{\text{Na}}$  drops before overshooting occurs ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**) because the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are *inactivated* within 0.1 ms ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**  $\Rightarrow$  **B3**). The potential therefore reverses, and restoration of the resting potential, the **repolarization phase** of the action potential, begins. Depolarization increases (relatively slowly) the open-probability of voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels. This increases the potassium conductance,  $g_{\text{K}}$ , thereby accelerating repolarization.

In many cases, potassium conductance,  $g_{\text{K}}$  is still increased after the original resting potential has been restored ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**), and  $E_m$  temporarily approaches  $E_{\text{K}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 44 and 32 ff.),

resulting in a hyperpolarizing **afterpotential** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**). Increased  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$  pumping rates (electrogenic;  $\rightarrow$  p. 28) can contribute to this afterpotential.

Very long trains of action potentials can be generated (up to 1000/s in some nerves) since the quantity of ions penetrating the membrane is very small (only ca. 1/100 000 th the number of intracellular ions). Moreover, the  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-ATPase}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26) ensures the continuous restoration of original ion concentrations ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46).

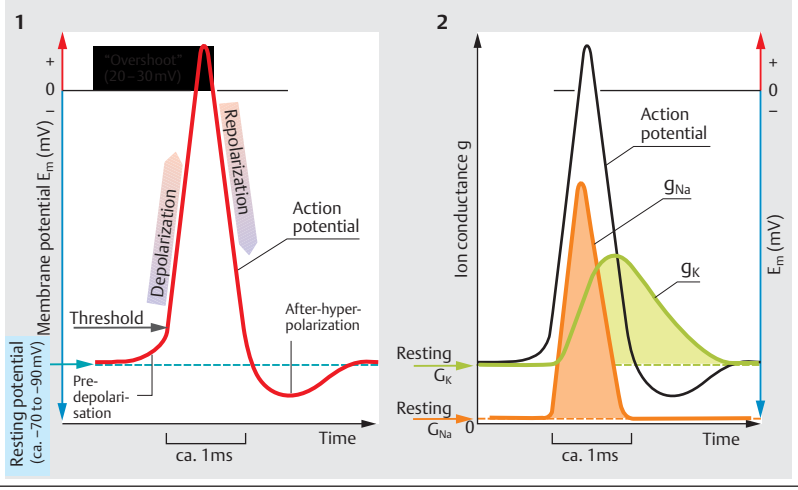
During an action potential, the cell remains unresponsive to further stimuli; this is called the **refractory period**. In the *absolute refractory period*, no other action potential can be triggered, even by extremely strong stimuli, since  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in depolarized membranes cannot be activated ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**). This is followed by a *relative refractory period* during which only action potentials of smaller amplitudes and rates of rise can be generated, even by strong stimuli. The refractory period ends once the membrane potential returns to its resting value ( $\rightarrow$  e.g. p. 59 A).

The extent to which  $\text{Na}^+$  channels can be activated and, thus, the strength of the  $\text{Na}^+$  current,  $I_{\text{Na}}$ , depends on the pre-excitatory resting potential, not the duration of depolarization. The activation of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels reaches a maximum at resting potentials of ca. -100 mV and is around 40% lower at -60 mV. In mammals,  $\text{Na}^+$  channels can no longer be activated at potentials of -50 mV and less negative values ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**). This is the reason for the absolute and relative refractory periods (see above) and the non-excitability of cells after the administration of continuously depolarizing substances such as saxamethonium ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56). An increased extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration makes it more difficult to stimulate the cell because the threshold potential becomes less negative. On the other hand, excitability increases (lower threshold) in hypocalcemic states, as in muscle spasms in *tetany* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 290).

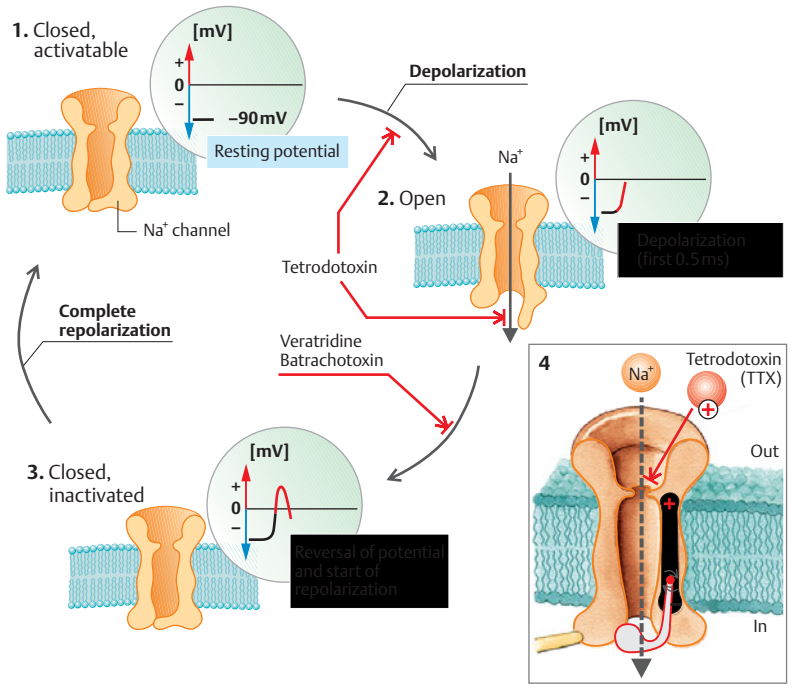
The special features of action potentials in cardiac and smooth muscle fibers are described on pages 192, 70 and 59 A.



**A. Action potential (1) and ion conductivity (2) (nerve and skeletal muscle)**



**B. Voltage-gated  $Na^+$  channel**





## Propagation of Action Potentials in Nerve Fiber

Electrical current flows through a *cable* when voltage is applied to it. The metal wire inside the cable is well insulated and has very low-level resistance, reducing current loss to a minimum. As a result, it can conduct electricity over long distances. *Nerve fibers*, especially unmyelinated ones ( $\rightarrow$  p. 42), have a much greater internal longitudinal resistance ( $R_i$ ) and are not well insulated from their surroundings. Therefore, the cable-like, **electrotonic transmission** of neural impulses dwindles very rapidly, so the conducted impulses must be continuously “refreshed” by generating new **action potentials** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46).

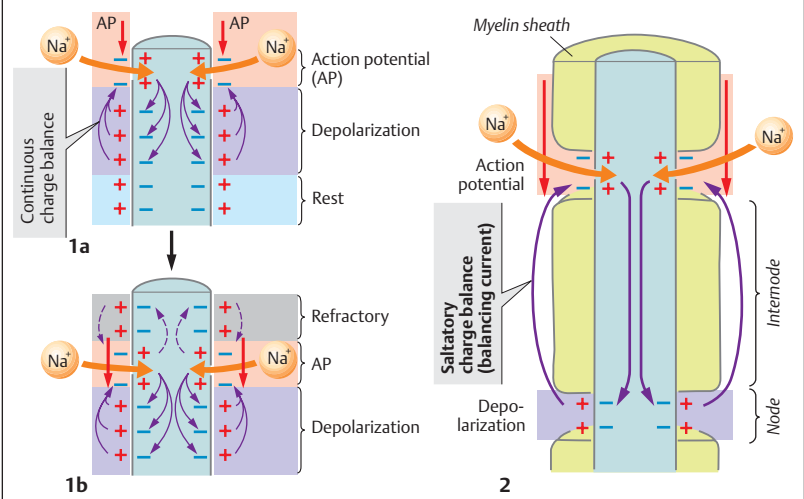
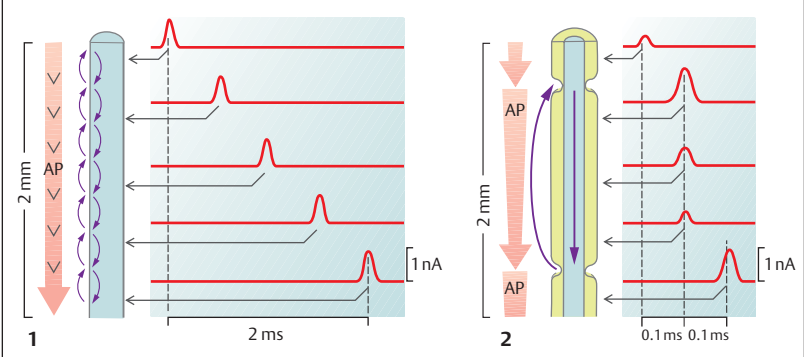
**Propagation of action potentials:** The start of an action potential is accompanied by a brief influx of  $\text{Na}^+$  into the nerve fiber ( $\rightarrow$  A1a). The cell membrane that previously was inside negative now becomes positive (+20 to +30 mV), thus creating a longitudinal potential difference with respect to the adjacent, still unstimulated nerve segments (internal -70 to -90 mV;  $\rightarrow$  p. 44). This is followed by a passive *electrotonic withdrawal of charge* from the adjacent segment of the nerve fiber, causing its *depolarization*. If it exceeds threshold, another action potential is created in the adjacent segment and the action potential in the previous segment dissipates ( $\rightarrow$  A1b).

Because the membrane acts as a *capacitor*, the withdrawal of charge represents a capacitating (depolarizing) flow of charge that becomes smaller and rises less steeply as the spatial distance increases. Because of the relatively high  $R_i$  of nerve fiber, the outward loops of current cross the membrane relatively close to the site of excitation, and the longitudinal current decreases as it proceeds towards the periphery. At the same time, depolarization increases the driving force ( $= E_m - E_K$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 32) for  $\text{K}^+$  outflow.  $\text{K}^+$  fluxing out of the cell therefore accelerates repolarization. Hence, distal action potentials are restricted to distances from which the capacitative current suffices to depolarize the membrane quickly and strongly enough. Otherwise, the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels will be deactivated before the threshold potential is reached ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46).

Action potentials normally run forward (orthodromic) because each segment of nerve fiber becomes refractory when an action potential passes ( $\rightarrow$  A1b and p. 46). If, however, the impulses are conducted backwards (antidromic) due, for example, to electrical stimulation of nerve fibers from an external source ( $\rightarrow$  p. 50), they will terminate at the next synapse (valve-like function,  $\rightarrow$  p. 42).

Although the continuous generation of action potentials in the immediately adjacent fiber segment guarantees a refreshed signal, this process is rather time-consuming ( $\rightarrow$  B1). The **conduction velocity**,  $\theta$ , in unmyelinated (type C) nerve fibers ( $\rightarrow$  C) is only around 1 m/s. Myelinated (types A and B) nerve fibers ( $\rightarrow$  C) conduct much faster (up to 80 m/s = 180 mph in humans). In the *internode regions*, a *myelin sheath* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 42) insulates the nerve fibers from the surroundings; thus, longitudinal currents strong enough to generate action potentials can travel further down the axon (ca. 1.5 mm) ( $\rightarrow$  A2). This results in more rapid conduction because the action potentials are generated only at the unmyelinated *nodes of Ranvier*, where there is a high density of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. This results in rapid, jump-like passage of the action potential from node to node (**saltatory propagation**). The saltatory length is limited since the longitudinal current (1 to 2 nA) grows weaker with increasing distance ( $\rightarrow$  B2). Before it drops below the threshold level, the signal must therefore be refreshed by a new action potential, with a time loss of 0.1 ms.

Since the internal resistance,  $R_i$ , of the nerve fiber limits the spread of depolarization, as described above, the **axon diameter** ( $2r$ ) also affects the conduction velocity,  $\theta$  ( $\rightarrow$  C).  $R_i$  is proportional to the cross-sectional area of the nerve fiber ( $\pi r^2$ ), i.e.,  $R_i \sim 1/r^2$ . Thick fibers therefore require fewer new APs per unit of length, which is beneficial for  $\theta$ . Increases in fiber diameter are accompanied by an increase in both fiber circumference ( $2\pi r$ ) and membrane capacity,  $K(K \sim r)$ . Although  $\theta$  decreases, the beneficial effect of the smaller  $R_i$  predominates because of the quadratic relationship.

**A. Continuous (1a, 1b) and saltatory propagation (2) of action potentials**

**B. Pulse propagation (action currents) in myelinated and unmyelinated nerve fibers**

**C. Classification of nerve fibers (in humans)**

Fiber type	Function according to fiber type (Lloyd and Hunt types I–IV)	Diameter ( $\mu\text{m}$ )	Conduction rate (m/s)
A $\alpha$	Skeletal muscle efferent, afferents in muscle spindles (Ib) and tendon organs (Ib)	11–16	60–80
A $\beta$	Mechanoafferents of skin (II)	6–11	30–60
A $\gamma$	Muscle spindle efferents	1–6	2–30
A $\delta$	Skin afferents (temperature and „fast“ pain) (III)		
B	Sympathetic preganglionic; visceral afferents	3	3–15
C	Skin afferents („slow“ pain); sympathetic postganglionic afferents (IV)	0.5–1.5 (unmyelinated)	0.25–1.5

(After Erlanger and Gasser)

## Artificial Stimulation of Nerve Cells

When an electrical stimulus is applied to a nerve cell from an external source, current flows from the positive stimulating electrode (anode) into the neuron, and exits at the negative electrode (cathode). The nerve fiber below the cathode is depolarized and an action potential is generated there if the threshold potential is reached.

The **conduction velocity** of a nerve can be measured by placing two electrodes on the skin along the course of the nerve at a known distance from each other, then stimulating the nerve (containing multiple neurons) and recording the time it takes the summated action potential to travel the known distance. The conduction velocity in humans is normally 40 to 70 m · s<sup>-1</sup>. Values below 40 m · s<sup>-1</sup> are considered to be pathological.

**Accidental electrification.** Exposure of the body to high-voltage electricity, especially low-frequency alternating current (e.g., in an electrical outlet) and low contact resistance (bare feet, bathtub accidents), primarily affects the conduction of impulses in the heart and can cause ventricular fibrillation (→ p.200).

Direct current usually acts as a stimulus only when switched on or off: High-frequency alternating current (> 15 kHz), on the other hand, cannot cause depolarization but heats the body tissues. **Diathermy** works on this principle.

## Synaptic Transmission

*Synapses* connect nerve cells to other nerve cells (also applies for certain muscle cells) as well as to sensory and effector cells (muscle and glandular cells).

**Electrical synapses** are direct, ion-conducting cell-cell junctions through channels (*connexons*) in the region of *gap junctions* (→ p.16f.). They are responsible for the conduction of impulses between neighboring smooth or cardiac muscle fibers (and sometimes between neurons in the retina and in the CNS) and ensure also communication between neighboring epithelial or glial cells.

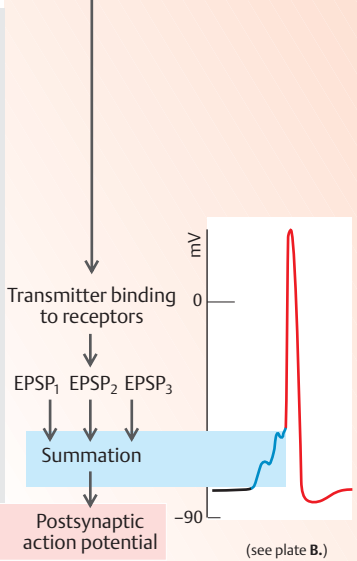
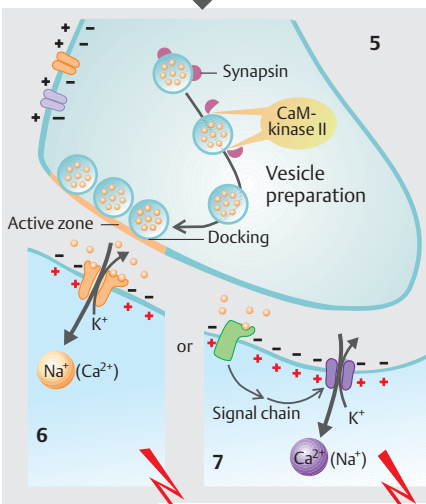
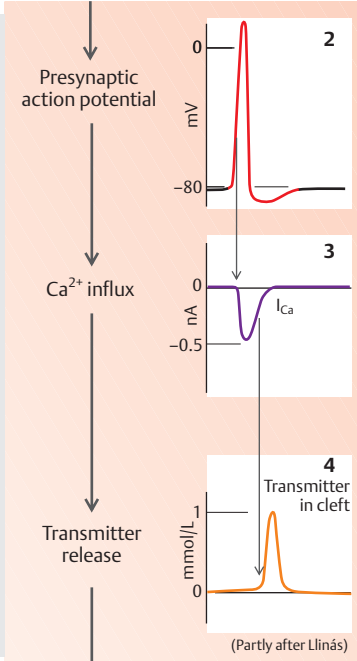
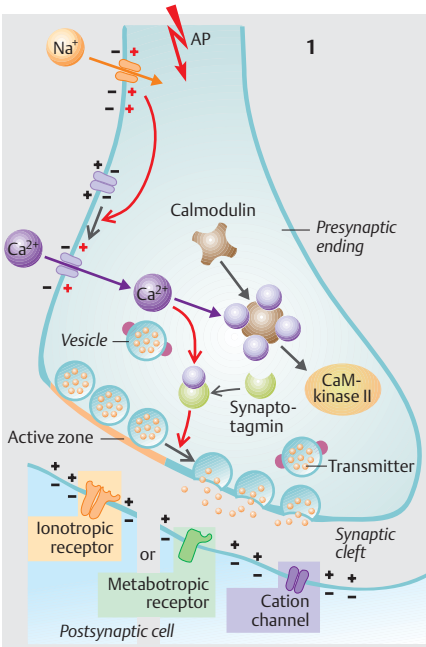
**Chemical synapses** utilize (**neuro**)**transmitters** for the transmission of information and

provide not only simple 1:1 connections, but also serve as switching elements for the nervous system. They can facilitate or inhibit the neuronal transmission of information or process them with other neuronal input. At the chemical synapse, the arrival of an action potential (AP) in the axon (→ **A1,2** and p.48) triggers the release of the transmitter from the presynaptic axon terminals. The transmitter then diffuses across the narrow synaptic cleft (ca. 30 nm) to bind postsynaptically to **receptors** in the *subsynaptic membrane* of a neuron or of a glandular or muscle cell. Depending on the type of transmitter and receptor involved, the effect on the *postsynaptic membrane* may either be excitatory or inhibitory, as is described below.

**Transmitters are released** by regulated *exocytosis* of so-called *synaptic vesicles* (→ **A1**). Each vesicle contains a certain *quantum* of neurotransmitters. In the case of the motor end-plate (→ p.56), around 7000 molecules of acetylcholine (ACh) are released. Some of the vesicles are already docked on the membrane (*active zone*), ready to exocytose their contents. An incoming action potential functions as the signal for transmitter release (→ **A1,2**). The higher the action potential *frequency* in the axon the more vesicles release their contents. An action potential increases the open probability of *voltage-gated Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels* in the presynaptic membrane (sometimes oscillating), thereby leading to an increase in the cytosolic Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration, [Ca<sup>2+</sup>]<sub>i</sub> (→ **A1, 3** and p.36). Extracellular Mg<sup>2+</sup> inhibits this process. Ca<sup>2+</sup> binds to *synaptotagmin* (→ **A1**), which triggers the interaction of *syntaxin* and *SNAP-25* on the presynaptic membrane with *synaptobrevin* on the vesicle membrane, thereby triggering exocytosis of already docked vesicles (approximately 100 per AP) (→ **A1, 4**). On the other hand, Ca<sup>2+</sup> activates calcium-calmodulin-dependent protein kinase-II (*CaM-kinase-II*; → **A5**, and p.36), which activates the enzyme *synapsin* at the presynaptic terminal. As a result, vesicles dock anew on the active zone.

**Synaptic facilitation (= potentiation).** If an action potential should arrive at the presynaptic terminal immediately after another AP (AP frequency > approx. 30 Hz), the cytosolic Ca<sup>2+</sup>

**A. Chemical synapse**



concentration will not yet drop to the resting value, and residual  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  will accumulate. As a result, the more recent rise in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  builds on the former one.  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  rises to a higher level after the second stimulus than after the first, and also releases more transmitters. Hence, the first stimulus *facilitates* the response to the second stimulus. Muscle strength increases at high stimulus frequencies for similar reasons ( $\rightarrow$  p. 67 A).

Among the many substances that act as **excitatory transmitters** are acetylcholine (ACh) and glutamate (Glu). They are often released together with *co-transmitters* which modulate the transmission of a stimulus (e.g., ACh together with substance P, VIP or galanin; Glu with substance P or enkephalin). If the transmitter's receptor is an ion channel itself (*ionotropic receptor* or *ligand-gated ion channel*;  $\rightarrow$  A6 and F), e.g., at the N-cholinergic synapse ( $\rightarrow$  p. 82), the channels open more often and allow a larger number of cations to enter ( $\text{Na}^+$ , sometimes  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) and leave the cell ( $\text{K}^+$ ). Other, so-called *metabotropic receptors* influence the channel via *G proteins* that control channels themselves or by means of "second messengers" ( $\rightarrow$  A7 and F). Because of the high electrochemical  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32), the number of incoming  $\text{Na}^+$  ions is much larger than the number of exiting  $\text{K}^+$  ions.  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can also enter the cell, e.g., at the glutamate-NMDA receptor ( $\rightarrow$  F). The net influx of cations leads to depolarization: **excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP)** (maximum of ca. 20 mV;  $\rightarrow$  B). The EPSP begins approx. 0.5 ms after the arrival of an action potential at the presynaptic terminal. This *synaptic delay* (latency) is caused by the relatively slow release and diffusion of the transmitter.

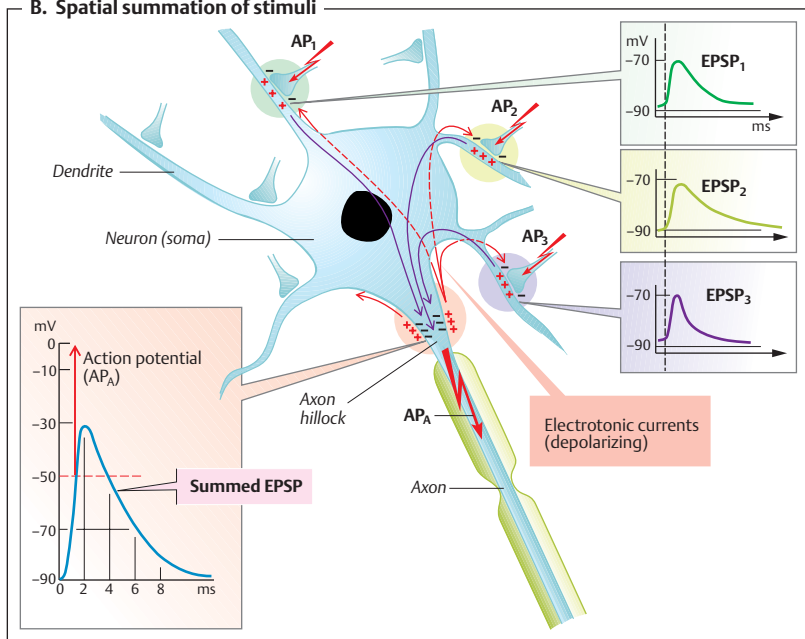
A single EPSP normally is not able to generate a postsynaptic (axonal) action potential ( $\text{AP}_A$ ), but requires the triggering of a large number of local depolarizations in the dendrites. Their depolarizations are transmitted electrotonically across the soma ( $\rightarrow$  p. 48) and summed on the axon hillock (**spatial summation**;  $\rightarrow$  B). Should the individual stimuli arrive at different times (within approx. 50 ms of each other), the prior depolarization will not have dissipated before the next one arrives, and summation will make it easier to reach

threshold. This type of **temporal summation** therefore increases the excitability of the postsynaptic neuron ( $\rightarrow$  C).

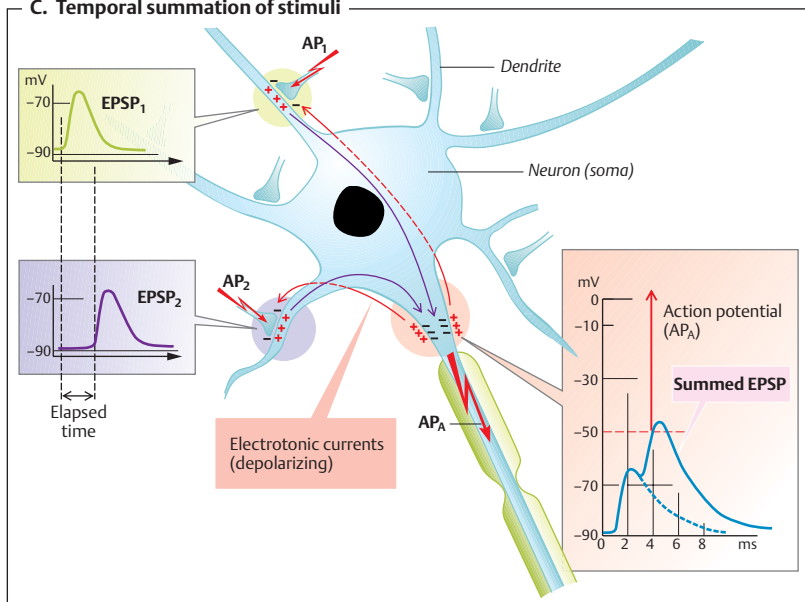
**Inhibitory transmitters** include substances as glycine, GABA ( $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid), and acetylcholine (at M2 and M3 receptors;  $\rightarrow$  p. 82). They increase the conductance, g, of the subsynaptic membrane only to  $\text{K}^+$  (e.g., the metabotropic GABA<sub>B</sub> receptor.) or  $\text{Cl}^-$  (e.g., the ionotropic glycine and GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors;  $\rightarrow$  F). The membrane usually becomes hyperpolarized in the process (ca. 4 mV max.). Increases in  $g_{\text{K}}$  occur when  $E_m$  approaches  $E_{\text{K}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 44). However, the main effect of this *inhibitory postsynaptic potential IPSP* ( $\rightarrow$  D) is not hyperpolarization—which works counter to EPSP-related depolarization (the IPSP is sometimes even slightly depolarizing). Instead, the IPSP-related increase in membrane conductance short circuits the electrotonic currents of the EPSP (high  $g_{\text{K}}$  or  $g_{\text{Cl}}$  levels). Since both  $E_{\text{K}}$  and  $E_{\text{Cl}}$  are close to the resting potential ( $\rightarrow$  p. 44), stabilization occurs, that is, the EPSP is cancelled out by the high  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  short-circuit currents. As a result, EPSP-related depolarization is reduced and stimulation of postsynaptic neurons is inhibited ( $\rightarrow$  D).

**Termination of synaptic transmission** ( $\rightarrow$  E) can occur due to *inactivation* of the cation channels due to a conformational change in the channel similar to the one that occurs during an action potential ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46). This very rapid process called *desensitization* also functions in the presence of a transmitter. Other terminating pathways include the rapid *enzymatic decay* of the transmitter (e.g., acetylcholine) while still in the synaptic cleft, the *re-uptake* of the transmitter (e.g., noradrenaline) into the presynaptic terminal or *uptake* into extraneuronal cells (e.g., in glial cells of the CNS), endocytotic *internalization* of the receptor ( $\rightarrow$  p. 28), and binding of the transmitter to a receptor on the presynaptic membrane (autoceptor). In the latter case, a rise in  $g_{\text{K}}$  and a drop in  $g_{\text{Ca}}$  can occur, thus inhibiting transmitter release, e.g., of GABA via GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors or of noradrenaline via  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  F and p. 86).

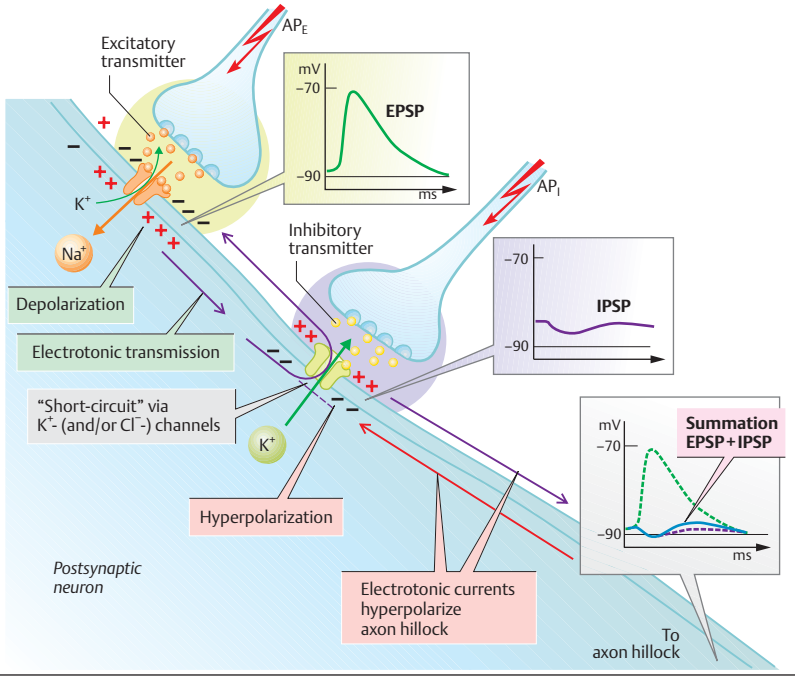
**B. Spatial summation of stimuli**



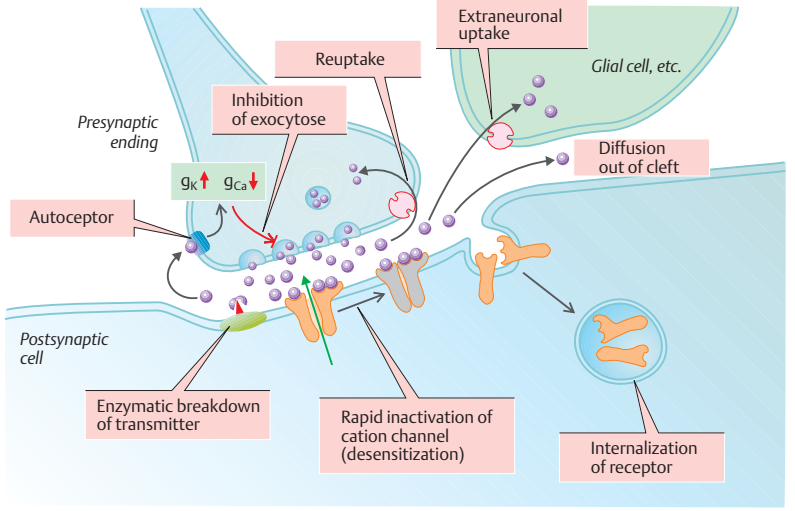
**C. Temporal summation of stimuli**



**D. Effect of IPSP on postsynaptic stimulation**



**E. Termination of transmitter action**



## F. Neurotransmitters in the central nervous system

Transmitter	Receptor subtypes	Receptor types	Effect					
			Ion conductance				Second messenger	
			Na <sup>+</sup>	K <sup>+</sup>	Ca <sup>2+</sup>	Cl <sup>-</sup>	cAMP	IP <sub>3</sub> /DAG
Acetylcholine	Nicotinic Muscarinic: M1, M2, M3	● ●●●●	↑	↑	↑			↑
ADH (= vasopressin)	V1 V2	●●●●					↑	↑
CCK (= cholecystokinin)	CCK <sub>A-B</sub>	●●●●						↑
Dopamine	D1, D5 D2	●●●●		↑	↓		↑	↑
GABA (= γ-aminobutyric acid)	GABA <sub>A</sub> , GABA <sub>C</sub> GABA <sub>B</sub>	● ●●●●		↑	↓	↑	↓	
Glutamate (aspartate)	AMPA Kainat NMDA m-GLU	●●●● ●●●●	↑↑↑↑	↑↑↑↑	↑		↓	↑
Glycine	–	●				↑		
Histamine	H <sub>1</sub> H <sub>2</sub>	●●●●					↑	↑
Neurotensin	–	●●●●					↓	↑
Norepinephrine, epinephrine	α <sub>1</sub> (A-D) α <sub>2</sub> (A-C) β <sub>1-3</sub>	●●●● ●●●●		↑	↓		↓	↑
Neuropeptide Y (NPY)	Y 1–2	●●●●		↑	↓		↓	
Opioid peptides	μ, δ, κ	●●●●		↑	↓		↓	
Oxytocin	–	●●●●						↑
Purines	P <sub>1</sub> : A <sub>1</sub> A <sub>2a</sub> P <sub>2X</sub> P <sub>2Y</sub>	● ●●●●	↑	↑	↑		↓	↑
Serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine)	5-HT <sub>1</sub> 5-HT <sub>2</sub> 5-HT <sub>3</sub> 5-HT <sub>4-7</sub>	● ●●●●	↑	↑	↓		↓	↑
Somatostatin (= SIH)	SRIF	●●●●		↑	↓		↓	
Tachykinin	NK 1–3	●●●●						↑

Amino acids	
Catecholamines	
Peptides	
Others	

(Modified from F. E. Bloom)



## Motor End-plate

The transmission of stimuli from a motor axon to a skeletal muscle fiber occurs at the motor end-plate, MEP ( $\rightarrow$  A), a type of chemical synapse ( $\rightarrow$  p. 50 ff.). The transmitter involved is **acetylcholine (ACh)**, ( $\rightarrow$  cf. p. 82), which binds to the N(nicotinic)-cholinoceptors of the subsynaptic muscle membrane ( $\rightarrow$  A3). **N-cholinoceptors** are ionotropic, that is, they also function as *ion channels* ( $\rightarrow$  A4). The N-cholinoceptor of the MEP (type  $N_M$ ) has 5 subunits ( $2\alpha$ ,  $1\beta$ ,  $1\gamma$ ,  $1\delta$ ), each of which contains 4 membrane-spanning  $\alpha$ -helices ( $\rightarrow$  p. 14).

The channel opens briefly ( $\rightarrow$  B1) (for approx. 1 ms) when an ACh molecule binds to the two  $\alpha$ -subunits of an N-cholinoceptor ( $\rightarrow$  A4). Unlike voltage-gated  $Na^+$ -channels, the open-probability  $p_o$  of the  $N_M$ -cholinoceptor is not increased by depolarization, but is determined by the *ACh concentration in the synaptic cleft* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 50 ff.).

The channel is *specific to cations* such as  $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ , and  $Ca^{2+}$ . Opening of the channel at a resting potential of ca.  $-90$  mV leads mainly to an *influx of  $Na^+$  ions* (and a much lower outflow of  $K^+$ ;  $\rightarrow$  pp. 32 ff. and 44). Depolarization of the subsynaptic membrane therefore occurs: **end-plate potential (EPP)**. *Single-channel currents* of 2.7 pA ( $\rightarrow$  B1) are summated to yield a *miniature end-plate current* of a few nA when spontaneous exocytosis occurs and a vesicle releases a quantum of ACh activating thousands of  $N_M$ -cholinoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  B2). Still, this is not enough for generation of a postsynaptic action potential unless an action potential transmitted by the motor neuron triggers exocytosis of around a hundred vesicles. This opens around 200,000 channels at the same time, yielding a *neurally induced end-plate current* ( $I_{EP}$ ) of ca. 400 nA ( $\rightarrow$  B3). **End-plate current,  $I_{EP}$** , is therefore dependent on:

- ◆ the number of open channels, which is equal to the total number of channels ( $n$ ) times the open-probability ( $p_o$ ), where  $p_o$  is determined by the concentration of ACh in the synaptic cleft (up to 1 mmol/L);
- ◆ the single-channel conductance  $\gamma$  (ca. 30 pS);
- ◆ and, to a slight extent, the membrane potential,  $E_m$ , since the electrical driving

"force" ( $= E_m - E_{Na,K}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 32 ff.) becomes smaller when  $E_m$  is less negative.

$E_{Na,K}$  is the common equilibrium potential for  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  and amounts to approx. 0 mV. It is also called the **reversal potential** because the direction of  $I_{EP}$  ( $= I_{Na} + I_K$ ), which enters the cell when  $E_m$  is negative ( $Na^+$  influx  $>$   $K^+$  outflow), reverses when  $E_m$  is positive ( $K^+$  outflow  $>$   $Na^+$  influx). As a result,

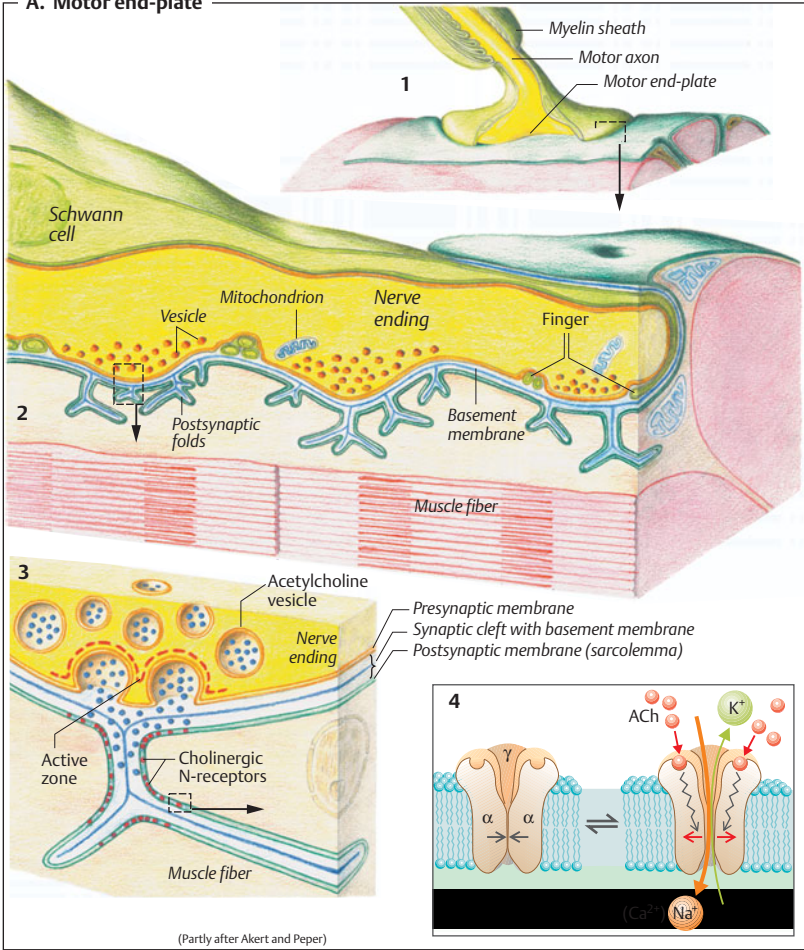
$$I_{EP} = n \cdot p_o \cdot \gamma \cdot (E_m - E_{Na,K}) [A] \quad [2.1]$$

Because **neurally induced EPPs** in skeletal muscle are much larger (depolarization by ca. 70 mV) than neuronal EPSPs (only a few mV;  $\rightarrow$  p. 50 ff.), single motor axon action potentials are above threshold. The EPP is transmitted electrotonically to the adjacent sarcolemma, where muscle action potentials are generated by means of voltage-gated  $Na^+$  channels, resulting in muscle contraction.

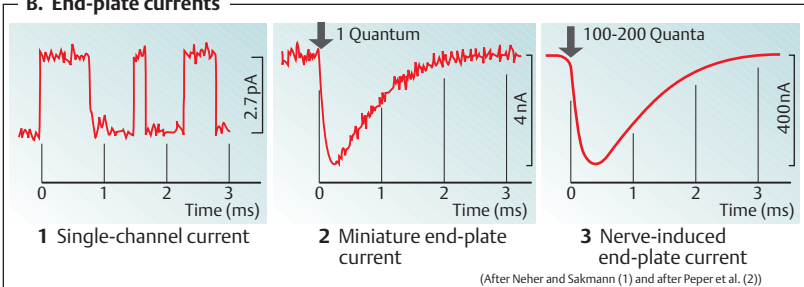
**Termination** of synaptic transmission in MEPs occurs (1) by rapid degradation of ACh in the synaptic cleft by *acetylcholinesterase* localized at the subsynaptic basal membrane, and (2) by diffusion of ACh out of the synaptic cleft ( $\rightarrow$  p. 82).

A motor end-plate can be blocked by certain **poisons and drugs**, resulting in muscular weakness and, in some cases, *paralysis*. *Botulinum neurotoxin*, for example, inhibits the discharge of neurotransmitters from the vesicles, and  *$\alpha$ -bungarotoxin* in cobra venom blocks the opening of ion channels. Curare-like substances such as (+)-tubocurarine are used as **muscle relaxants** in surgical operations. They displace ACh from its binding site (*competitive inhibition*) but do not have a depolarizing effect of their own. Their inhibitory effect can be reversed by *cholinesterase inhibitors* such as neostigmine (decurarization). These agents increase the concentration of ACh in the synaptic cleft, thereby displacing curare. Entry of anticholinesterase agents into intact synapses leads to an increase in the ACh concentration and, thus, to *paralysis due to permanent depolarization*. ACh-like substances such as suxamethonium have a similar depolarizing effect, but decay more slowly than ACh. In this case, paralysis occurs because permanent depolarization also permanently inactivates  $Na^+$  channels near the motor end-plate on the sarcolemma ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46).

**A. Motor end-plate**



**B. End-plate currents**



## Motility and Muscle Types

Active motility (ability to move) is due to either the **interaction of** energy-consuming **motor proteins** (fueled by ATPase) such as myosin, kinesin and dynein with other proteins such as actin or the **polymerization** and depolymerization of actin and tubulin. Cell division (cytokinesis), cell migration (→ p. 30), intracellular vesicular transport and cytosin (→ p. 12f.), sperm motility (→ p. 306f.), axonal transport (→ p. 42), electromotility of hair cells (→ p. 366), and ciliary motility (→ p. 110) are examples of cell and organelle motility.

The muscles consist of cells (fibers) that contract when stimulated. **Skeletal muscle** is responsible for locomotion, positional change, and the convection of respiratory gases. **Cardiac muscle** (→ p. 190 ff.) is responsible for pumping the blood, and **smooth muscle** (→ p. 70) serves as the motor of internal organs and blood vessels. The different muscle types are distinguished by several functional characteristics (→ A).

## Motor Unit of Skeletal Muscle

Unlike some types of smooth muscle (single-unit type; → p. 70) and cardiac muscle fibers, which pass electric stimuli to each other through gap junctions or nexus (→ A; p. 16f.), **skeletal muscle** fibers are not stimulated by adjacent muscle fibers, but by *motor neurons*. In fact, muscle paralysis occurs if the nerve is severed.

One motor neuron together with all muscle fibers innervated by it is called a **motor unit** (MU). Muscle fibers belonging to a single motor unit can be distributed over large portions (1 cm<sup>2</sup>) of the muscle cross-sectional area. To supply its muscle fibers, a motor neuron splits into collaterals with terminal branches (→ p. 42). A given motor neuron may supply only 25 muscle fibers (mimetic muscle) or well over 1000 (temporal muscle).

Two **types of skeletal muscle fibers** can be distinguished: **S** – slow-twitch fibers (type 1) and **F** – fast-twitch fibers (type 2), including two subtypes, **FR** (2 A) and **FF** (2 B). Since each motor unit contains only one type of fiber, this classification also applies to the motor unit.

**Slow-twitch fibers** are the least fatigable and are therefore equipped for *sustained performance*. They have high densities of capillaries and mitochondria and high concentrations of fat droplets (high-energy substrate reserves) and the red pigment myoglobin (short-term O<sub>2</sub> storage). They are also rich in oxidative enzymes (→ p. 72). **Fast-twitch fibers** are mainly responsible for brief and rapid contractions. They are quickly fatigued (FF > FR) and are rich in glycogen (FF > FR) but contain little myoglobin (FF < FR).

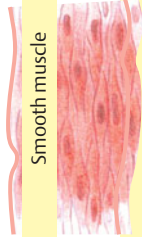
The **fiber type distribution** of a muscle depends on the muscle type. Motor units of the **S type** predominate in “red” muscles such as the soleus muscle, which helps to maintain the body in an upright position, whereas the **F type** predominates in “white” muscles such as the gastrocnemius muscle, which is involved in running activity. Each fiber type can also be *converted* to the other type. If, for example, the prolonged activation of fast-twitch fibers leads to a chronic increase in the cytosolic Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration, fast-twitch fibers will be converted to slow-twitch fibers and vice versa.

**Graded muscle activity** is possible because a variable number of motor units can be recruited as needed. The more motor units a muscle has, the more finely graded its contractions. Contractions are much finer in the external eye muscles, for example, which have around 2000 motor units, than in the lumbrical muscles, which have only around 100 motor units. The larger the **number of motor units recruited**, the stronger the contraction. The number and type of motor units recruited depends on the type of movement involved (fine or coarse movement, intermittent or persistent contraction, reflex activity, voluntary or involuntary movement, etc.). In addition, the strength of each motor unit can be increased by increasing the **frequency of neuronal impulses**, as in the *tetanzation* of skeletal muscle (→ p. 67 A).

## A. Structure and function of heart, skeletal and smooth muscle

### Structure and function

Motor end-plates	None	None	None
Fibers	Fusiform, short ( $\leq 0.2$ mm)	Branched	Cylindrical, long ( $\leq 15$ cm)
Mitochondria	Few	Many	Few (depending on muscle type)
Nucleus per fiber	1	1	Multiple
Sarcomeres	None	Some (single-unit type)	Yes, length $\leq 3.65 \mu\text{m}$
Electr. coupling	Little developed	Yes (functional syncytium)	No
Sarcoplasmic reticulum	Little developed	Moderately developed	Highly developed
Ca <sup>2+</sup> "switch"	Calmodulin/caldesmon	Troponin	Troponin
Pacemaker	Some spontaneous rhythmic activity ( $1\text{s}^{-1} - 1\text{h}^{-1}$ )	Yes (sinus nodes ca. $1\text{s}^{-1}$ )	No (requires nerve stimulus)
Response to stimulus	Change in tone or rhythm frequency	All or none	Graded
Tetanizable	Yes	No	Yes
Work capacity	Length-force curve is variable	In rising length-force curve (see 2.15E)	At peak of length-force curve (see 2.15E)



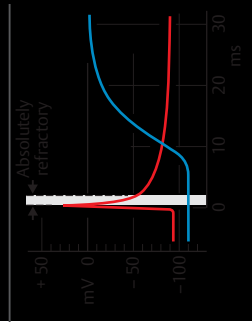
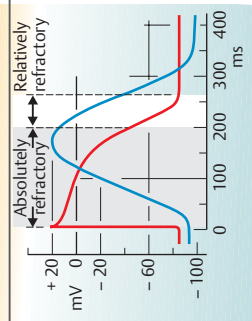
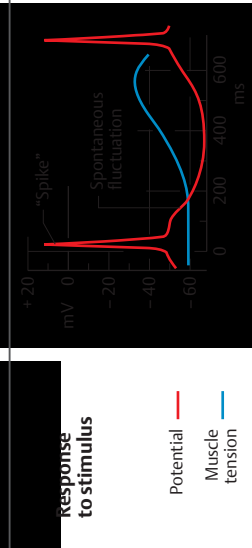
Smooth muscle



Cardiac muscle (striated)



Skeletal muscle (striated)



## Contractile Apparatus of Striated Muscle

The **muscle cell** is a fiber ( $\rightarrow$  A2) approximately 10 to 100  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Skeletal muscles fibers can be as long as 15 cm. Meat “fibers” visible with the naked eye are actually bundles of muscle fibers that are around 100 to 1000  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter ( $\rightarrow$  A1). Each striated muscle fiber is invested by a cell membrane called the *sarcolemma*, which surrounds the *sarcoplasm* (cytoplasm), several cell nuclei, mitochondria (*sarcosomes*), substances involved in supplying  $\text{O}_2$  and energy ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72), and several hundreds of *myofibrils*.

So-called Z lines or, from a three-dimensional aspect, Z *plates* (plate-like proteins;  $\rightarrow$  B) subdivide each **myofibril** ( $\rightarrow$  A3) into approx. 2  $\mu\text{m}$  long, striated compartments called **sarcomeres** ( $\rightarrow$  B). When observed by (two-dimensional) microscopy, one can identify alternating light and dark bands and lines (hence the name “striated muscle”) created by the thick **myosin II filaments** and thin **actin filaments** ( $\rightarrow$  B; for myosin I, see p. 30). Roughly 2000 actin filaments are bound medially to the Z plate. Thus, half of the filament projects into two adjacent sarcomeres ( $\rightarrow$  B). The region of the sarcomere proximal to the Z plate contains only actin filaments, which form a so-called *I band* ( $\rightarrow$  B). The region where the actin and myosin filaments overlap is called the *A band*. The *H zone* solely contains myosin filaments (ca. 1000 per sarcomere), which thicken towards the middle of the sarcomere to form the M line (*M plate*). The (actin) filaments are anchored to the sarcolemma by the protein *dystrophin*.

Each myosin filament consists of a bundle of ca. 300 **myosin-II molecules** ( $\rightarrow$  B). Each molecule has two globular heads connected by flexible necks (head and neck = subfragment S1; formed after proteolysis) to the filamentous tail of the molecule (two intertwined  $\alpha$ -helices = subfragment S2) ( $\rightarrow$  C). Each of the heads has a *motor domain* with a *nucleotide binding pocket* (for ATP or ADP +  $\text{P}_i$ ) and an *actin binding site*. Two light protein chains are located on each neck of this heavy molecule (220 kDa): one is regulatory (20 kDa), the other essential (17 kDa). Conformational

changes in the head-neck segment allow the myosin head to “tilt” when interacting with actin (*sliding filaments*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 62).

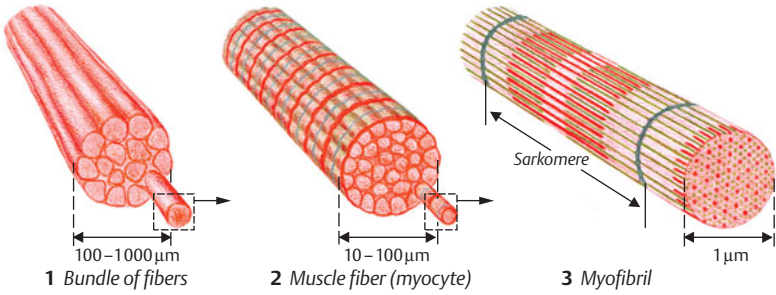
**Actin** is a globular protein molecule (G-actin). Four hundred such molecules join to form F-actin, a beaded polymer chain. Two of the twisted protein filaments combine to form an **actin filament** ( $\rightarrow$  B), which is positioned by the equally long protein *nebulin*.

**Tropomyosin** molecules joined end-to-end (40 nm each) lie adjacent to the actin filament, and a **troponin** (TN) molecule is attached every 40 nm or so ( $\rightarrow$  B). Each troponin molecule consists of three subunits: *TN-C*, which has two regulatory bindings sites for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  at the amino end, *TN-I*, which prevents the filaments from sliding when at rest ( $\rightarrow$  p. 62), and *TN-T*, which interacts with *TN-C*, *TN-I*, and actin.

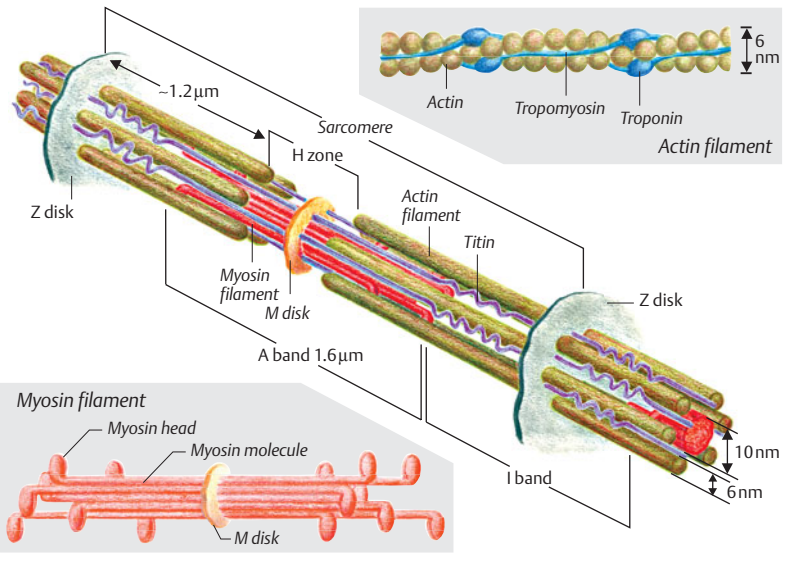
The sarcomere also has another system of filaments ( $\rightarrow$  B) formed by the filamentous protein **titin** (connectin). Titin is more than 1000 nm in length and has some 30 000 amino acids ( $M_r > 3000$  kDa). It is the longest known polypeptide chain and comprises 10% of the total muscle mass. Titin is anchored at its carboxyl end to the M plate and, at the amino end, to the Z plate ( $\rightarrow$  p. 66 for functional description).

The sarcolemma forms a T system with several **transverse tubules** (tube-like invaginations) that run perpendicular to the myofibrils ( $\rightarrow$  p. 63 A). The endoplasmic reticulum ( $\rightarrow$  p. 10 ff.) of muscle fibers has a characteristic shape and is called the **sarcoplasmic reticulum** (SR;  $\rightarrow$  p. 63 A). It forms closed chambers without connections between the intra- and extracellular spaces. Most of the chambers run lengthwise to the myofibrils, and are therefore called *longitudinal tubules* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 63 A). The sarcoplasmic reticulum is more prominently developed in skeletal muscle than in the myocardium and serves as a  **$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  storage space**. Each T system separates the adjacent longitudinal tubules, forming *triads* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 63 A, B).

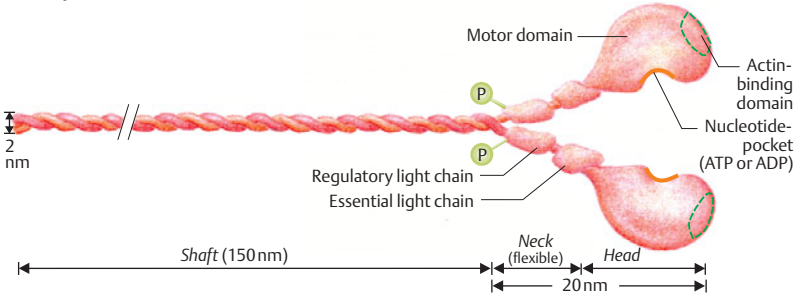
**A. Ultrastructure of striated muscle fibers**



**B. Sarcomere structure**



**C. Myosin II molecule**



(After D.M. Warshaw)



## Contraction of Striated Muscle

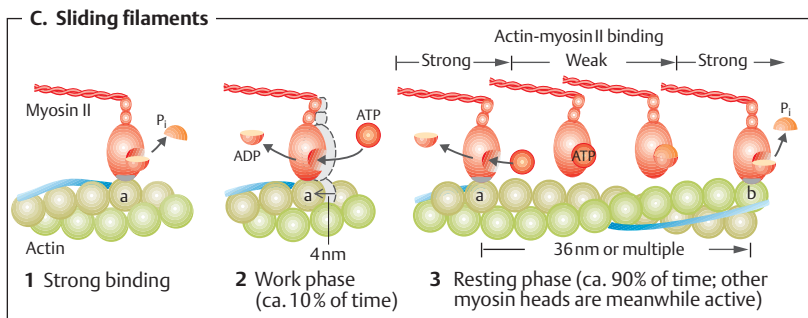
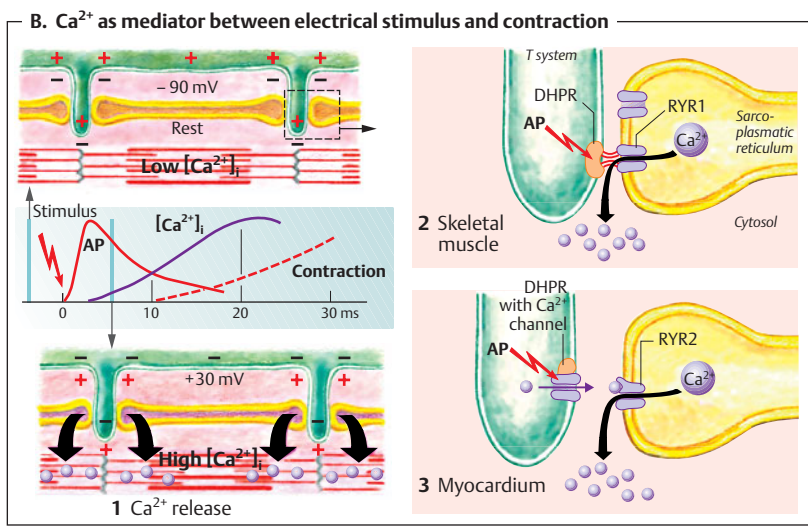
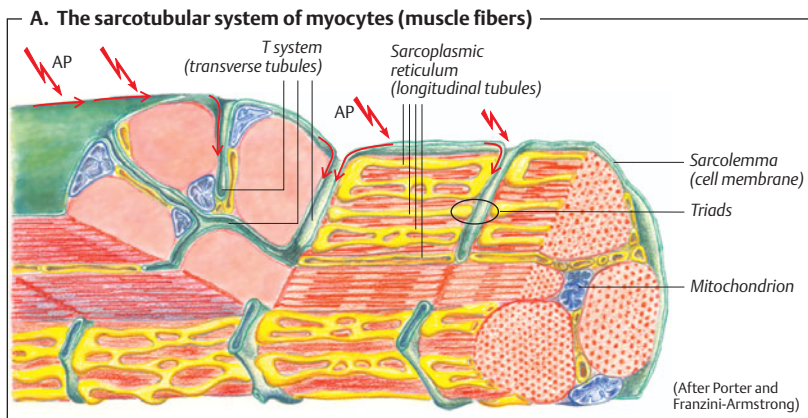
**Stimulation of muscle fibers.** The release of *acetylcholine* at the motor end-plate of skeletal muscle leads to an *end-plate current* that spreads electrotonically and activates voltage-gated  $Na^+$  channels in the sarcolemma ( $\rightarrow$  p.56). This leads to the firing of **action potentials (AP)** that travel at a rate of 2 m/s along the sarcolemma of the entire muscle fiber, and penetrate rapidly into the depths of the fiber along the T system ( $\rightarrow$  A).

The conversion of this excitation into a contraction is called **electromechanical coupling** ( $\rightarrow$  B). In the *skeletal muscle*, this process begins with the action potential exciting voltage-sensitive *dihydropyridine receptors* (DHPR) of the sarcolemma in the region of the triads. The DHPR are arranged in rows, and directly opposite them in the adjacent membrane of the sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) are rows of  $Ca^{2+}$  channels called *ryanodine receptors* (type 1 in skeletal muscle: RYR1). Every other RYR1 is associated with a DHPR ( $\rightarrow$  B2). RYR1 open when they directly “sense” by mechanical means an AP-related conformational change in the DHPR. In the *myocardium*, on the other hand, each DHPR is part of a *voltage-gated  $Ca^{2+}$  channel* of the sarcolemma that opens in response to an action potential. Small quantities of extracellular  $Ca^{2+}$  enter the cell through this channel, leading to the opening of myocardial RYR2 (so-called *trigger effect* of  $Ca^{2+}$  or  *$Ca^{2+}$  spark*;  $\rightarrow$  B3).  $Ca^{2+}$  ions stored in the SR now flow through the opened RYR1 or RYR2 into the cytosol, increasing the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration  $[Ca^{2+}]_i$  from a resting value of ca. 0.01  $\mu$ mol/L to over 1  $\mu$ mol/L ( $\rightarrow$  B1). In skeletal muscle, DHPR stimulation at a single site is enough to trigger the coordinated opening of an entire group of RYR1, thereby increasing the reliability of impulse transmission. The increased cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration saturates the  $Ca^{2+}$  binding sites on **troponin-C**, thereby canceling the troponin-mediated inhibitory effect of tropomyosin on filament sliding ( $\rightarrow$  D). It is still unclear whether this type of disinhibition involves actin–myosin binding or the detachment of ADP and  $P_i$ , as described below.

ATP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72) is essential for **filament sliding** and, hence, for muscle contraction. Due to their ATPase activity, the myosin heads ( $\rightarrow$  p. 60) act as the *motors* (motor proteins) of this process. The myosin-II and actin filaments of a sarcomere ( $\rightarrow$  p. 60) are arranged in such a way that they can slide past each other. The myosin heads connect with the actin filaments at a particular angle, forming so-called *cross-bridges* ( $\rightarrow$  C1). Due to a *conformational change* in the region of the nucleotide binding site of myosin-II ( $\rightarrow$  p.61 C), the spatial extent of which is increased by concerted movement of the neck region, the myosin head tilts down, drawing the thin filament a length of roughly 4 nm ( $\rightarrow$  C2). The second myosin head may also move an adjacent actin filament. The head then detaches and “tenses” in preparation for the next “oarstroke” when it binds to actin anew ( $\rightarrow$  C3).

Kinesin, another motor protein ( $\rightarrow$  pp.42 u. 58), independently advances on the microtubule by incremental movement of its two heads (8 nm increments), as in tug-of-war. In this case, fifty percent of the cycle time is “work time” (**duty ratio** = 0.5). Between two consecutive interactions with actin in *skeletal muscle*, on the other hand, myosin-II “jumps” 36 nm (or multiples of 36, e.g. 396 nm or more in rapid contractions) to reach the next (or the 11th) suitably located actin binding site ( $\rightarrow$  C3, jump from a to b). Meanwhile, the other myosin heads working on this particular actin filament must make at least another 10 to 100 oarstrokes of around 4 nm each. The duty ratio of a myosin-II head is therefore 0.1 to 0.01. This division of labor by the myosin heads ensures that a certain percentage of the heads will always be ready to generate rapid contractions.

When filament sliding occurs, the Z plates approach each other and the overlap region of thick and thin filaments becomes larger, but the length of the filaments remains unchanged. This results in shortening of the I band and H zone ( $\rightarrow$  p. 60). When the ends of the thick filaments ultimately bump against the Z plate, maximum muscle shortening occurs, and the ends of the thin filaments overlap ( $\rightarrow$  p. 67 C). Shortening of the sarcomere therefore occurs at both ends of the myosin bundle, but in opposite directions.





**Contraction cycle** ( $\rightarrow$  C and D). Each of the two myosin heads (M) of a myosin-II molecule bind one ATP molecule in their nucleotide binding pocket. The resulting M-ATP complex lies at an approx.  $90^\circ$  angle to the rest of the myosin filament ( $\rightarrow$  D4). In this state, myosin has only a weak affinity for actin binding. Due to the influence of the *increased cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration* on the troponin – tropomyosin complex, *actin (A) activates myosin's ATPase*, resulting in hydrolysis of ATP ( $ATP \rightarrow ADP + P_i$ ) and the formation of an A-M-ADP- $P_i$  complex ( $\rightarrow$  D1). Detachment of  $P_i$  (inorganic phosphate) from the complex results in a conformational change of myosin that increases the actin–myosin association constant by four powers of ten (binding affinity now strong). The myosin heads consequently tilt to a  $40^\circ$  angle ( $\rightarrow$  D2a), causing the actin and myosin filaments to slide past each other. The release of ADP from myosin ultimately brings the myosin heads to their final position, a  $45^\circ$  angle ( $\rightarrow$  D2b). The remaining A-M complex (*rigor complex*) is stable and can again be transformed into a weak bond when the myosin heads bind ATP anew (“*softening effect*” of ATP). The high flexibility of the muscle at rest is important for processes such as cardiac filling or the relaxing of the extensor muscles during rapid bending movement. If a new ATP is bound to myosin, the subsequent weakening of the actin–myosin bond allows the realignment of the myosin head from  $45^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$  ( $\rightarrow$  D3, 4), the position preferred by the M-ATP complex. If the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration remains  $> 10^{-6}$  mol/L, the D1 to D4 cycle will begin anew. This depends mainly on whether subsequent action potentials arrive. Only a portion of the myosin heads that pull actin filaments are “on duty” (low duty ratio; see p. 62) to ensure the smoothness of contractions.

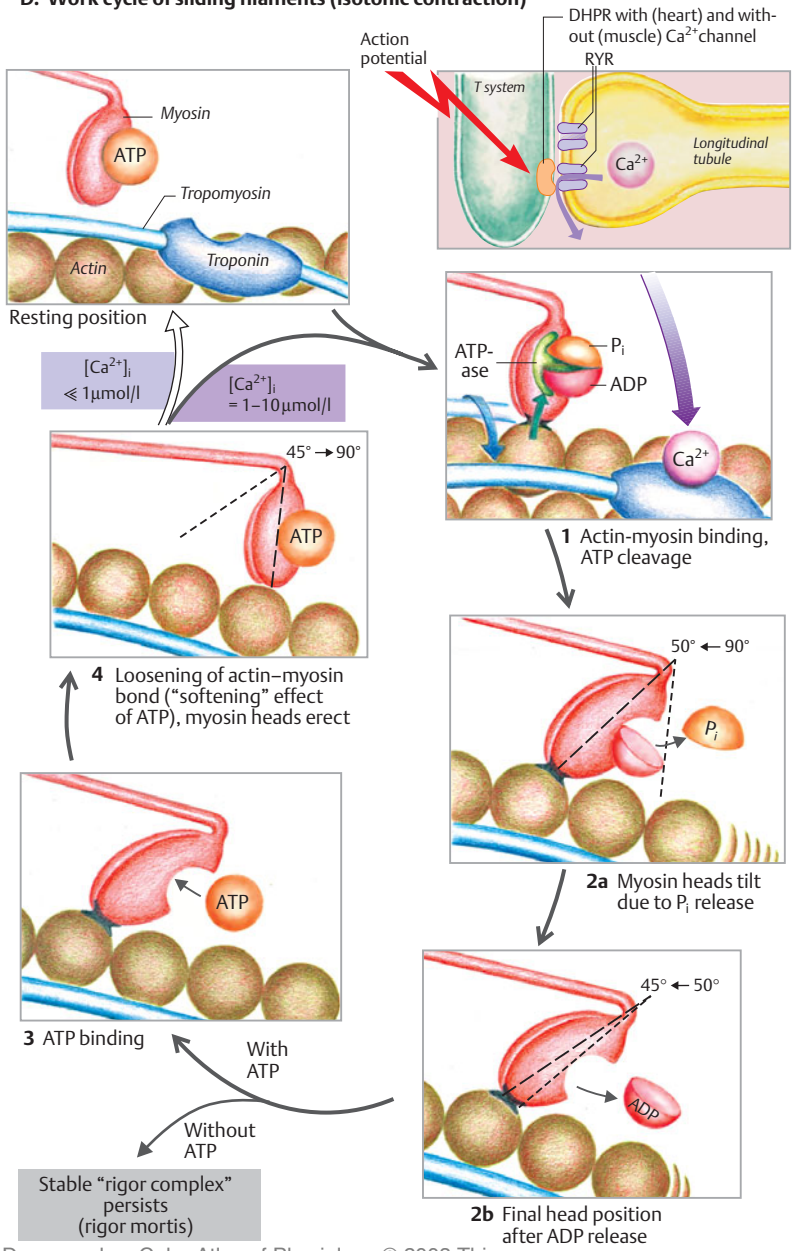
The  $Ca^{2+}$  ions released from the sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) are continuously pumped back to the SR due to active transport by  $Ca^{2+}$ -ATPase ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 17 A and 26), also called SERCA ( $\rightarrow$  p. 16). Thus, if the RYR-mediated release of  $Ca^{2+}$  from the SR is interrupted, the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration rapidly drops below  $10^{-6}$  mol/L and filament sliding ceases (*resting position*;  $\rightarrow$  D, upper left corner).

**Parvalbumin**, a protein that occurs in the cytosol of fast-twitch muscle fibers ( $\rightarrow$  type F; p. 58), accelerates muscle relaxation after short contractions by binding cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  in exchange for  $Mg^{2+}$ . Parvalbumin's binding affinity for  $Ca^{2+}$  is higher than that of troponin, but lower than that of SR's  $Ca^{2+}$ -ATPase. It therefore functions as a “slow”  $Ca^{2+}$  buffer.

The course of the filament sliding cycle as described above mainly applies to **isotonic contractions**, that is, to contractions where muscle shortening occurs. During strictly **isometric contractions** where muscular tension increases but the muscle length remains unchanged, the sliding process tenses elastic components of a muscle, e.g. titin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 66), and then soon comes to a halt. Afterwards, the A-M-ATP complex ( $\rightarrow$  D3) probably transforms directly into A-M-ADP- $P_i$  ( $\rightarrow$  D1).

The muscle fibers of a dead body do not produce any ATP. This means that, after death,  $Ca^{2+}$  is no longer pumped back into the SR, and the ATP reserves needed to break down stable A-M complexes are soon depleted. This results in stiffening of the dead body or **rigor mortis**, which passes only after the actin and myosin molecules in the muscle fibers decompose.

**D. Work cycle of sliding filaments (isotonic contraction)**



## Mechanical Features of Skeletal Muscle

Action potentials generated in muscle fibers increase the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration [ $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ], thereby triggering a contraction (skeletal muscle; → p. 36 B; myocardium; → p. 194). In skeletal muscles, **gradation of contraction force** is achieved by variable *recruitment* of motor units (→ p. 58) and by changing the *action potential frequency*. A single stimulus always leads to maximum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release and, thus, to a maximum single twitch of skeletal muscle fiber if above threshold (**all-or-none response**). Nonetheless, a single stimulus does not induce maximum shortening of muscle fiber because it is too brief to keep the sliding filaments in motion long enough for the end position to be reached. Muscle shortening continues only if a second stimulus arrives before the muscle has completely relaxed after the first stimulus. This type of stimulus repetition leads to incremental **mechanical summation** or **superposition** of the individual contractions (→ A). Should the frequency of stimulation become so high that the muscle can no longer relax at all between stimuli, sustained maximum contraction of the motor units or **tetanus** will occur (→ A). This occurs, for example, at 20 Hz in slow-twitch muscles and at 60–100 Hz in fast-twitch muscles (→ p. 58). The muscle force during tetanus can be as much as four times larger than that of single twitches. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, which decreases to some extent between superpositioned stimuli, remains high in tetanus.

**Rigor** (→ p. 2.13) as well as **contracture**, another state characterized by persistent muscle shortening, must be distinguished from tetanus. Contracture is not caused by action potentials, but by *persistent local depolarization* due, for example, to increased extracellular  $\text{K}^+$  concentrations ( $\text{K}^+$  contracture) or drug-induced intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, e.g., in response to caffeine. The contraction of so-called **tonus fibers** (specific fibers in the external eye muscles and in muscle spindles; → p. 318) is also a form of contracture. Tonus fibers do not respond to stimuli according to the all-or-none law, but contract in proportion

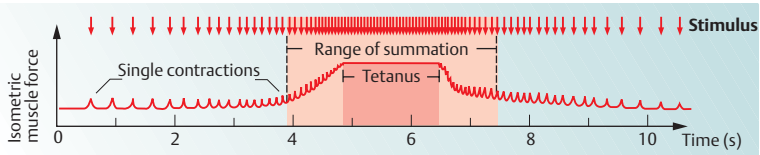
with the magnitude of depolarization. The magnitude of contraction of tonus fibers is regulated by *variation of the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration* (not by action potentials!)

In contrast, the general **muscle tone** (*reflex tone*), or the tension of skeletal muscle at rest, is attributable to the arrival of normal action potentials at the individual motor units. The individual contractions cannot be detected because the motor units are alternately (asynchronously) stimulated. When apparently at rest, muscles such as the postural muscles are in this involuntary state of tension. Resting muscle tone is regulated by reflexes (→ p. 318 ff.) and increases as the state of attentiveness increases.

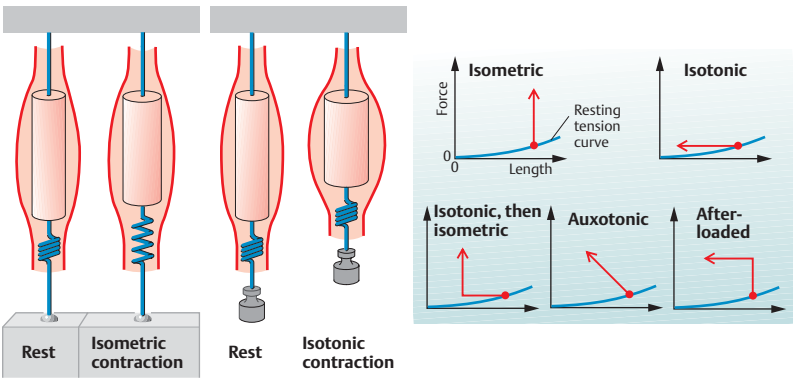
**Types of contractions** (→ B). There are different types of muscle contractions. In **isometric contractions**, muscle force (“tension”) varies while the length of the muscle remains constant. (In cardiac muscle, this also represents *isovolumetric contraction*, because the muscle length determines the atrial or ventricular volume.) In **isotonic contractions**, the length of the muscle changes while muscle force remains constant. (In cardiac muscle, this also represents *isobaric contraction*, because the muscle force determines the atrial or ventricular pressure.) In **auxotonic contractions**, muscle length and force both vary simultaneously. An isotonic or auxotonic contraction that builds on an isometric one is called an **afterloaded contraction**.

**Muscle extensibility.** A resting muscle containing ATP can be stretched like a rubber band. The force required to start the stretching action (→ D, E; extension force at rest) is very small, but increases exponentially when the muscle is under high elastic strain (see *resting tension curve*, → D). A muscle’s *resistance to stretch*, which keeps the sliding filaments in the sarcomeres from separating, is influenced to a small extent by the fascia (fibrous tissue). The main factor, however, is the giant filamentous elastic molecule called **titin** (or *connectin*; 1000 nm long,  $M_r = 3$  to 3.7 MDa) which is incorporated in the sarcomere (6 titin molecules per myosin filament). In the A band region of the sarcomere (→ p. 61 B), titin lies adjacent to a myosin filament and helps to keep it in the center of the sarcomere. Titin molecules in the

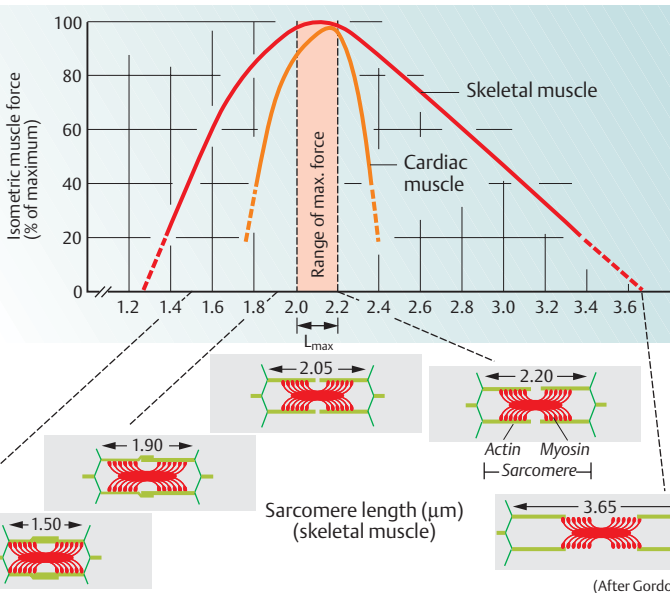
**A. Muscle strength at increasing and decreasing stimulus frequencies**



**B. Types of contractions**



**C. Isometric muscle force relative to sarcomere length**



(After Gordon et al.)

I band region are flexible and function as “elastic bands” that counteract passive stretching of a muscle and influence its shortening velocity.

The **extensibility of titin molecules**, which can stretch to up to around ten times their normal length in skeletal muscle and somewhat less in cardiac muscle, is mainly due to frequent repetition of the *PEVK motif* (proline-glutamate-valine-lysine). In very strong muscle extension, which represents the steepest part of the resting extensibility curve ( $\rightarrow$  **D**), globular chain elements called immunoglobulin C2 domains also unfold. The quicker the muscle stretches, the more sudden and crude this type of “shock absorber” action will be.

The **length (L)** and **force (F)** or “tension” of a muscle are closely related ( $\rightarrow$  **C, E**). The total force of a muscle is the sum of its active force and its extension force at rest, as was explained above. Since the active force is determined by the magnitude of all potential actin-myosin interactions, it varies in accordance with the initial sarcomere length ( $\rightarrow$  **C, D**). Skeletal muscle can develop maximum active (isometric) force ( $F_0$ ) from its resting length ( $L_{\max}$ ; sarcomere length ca. 2 to 2.2  $\mu\text{m}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  **C**). When the sarcomeres shorten ( $L < L_{\max}$ ), part of the thin filaments overlap, allowing only forces smaller than  $F_0$  to develop ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). When L is 70% of  $L_{\max}$  (sarcomere length: 1.65  $\mu\text{m}$ ), the thick filaments make contact with the Z disks, and F becomes even smaller. In addition, a greatly pre-extended muscle ( $L > L_{\max}$ ) can develop only restricted force, because the number of potentially available actin-myosin bridges is reduced ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). When extended to 130% or more of the  $L_{\max}$ , the extension force at rest becomes a major part of the total muscle force ( $\rightarrow$  **E**).

The length–force curve corresponds to the **cardiac pressure–volume diagram** in which ventricular filling volume corresponds to muscle length, and ventricular pressure corresponds to muscle force;  $\rightarrow$  p. 202. Changes in the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration can modify the pressure–volume relationship by causing a change in *contractility* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 203 B2).

Other important functional **differences between cardiac muscle and skeletal muscle** are listed below (see also p. 59 A):

Since skeletal muscle is more extensible than the cardiac muscle, the passive extension

force of cardiac muscle at rest is greater than that of skeletal muscle ( $\rightarrow$  **E1, 2**).

Skeletal muscle normally functions in the plateau region of its length–force curve, whereas cardiac muscle tends to operate in the ascending limb (below  $L_{\max}$ ) of its length–force curve without a plateau ( $\rightarrow$  **C, E1, 2**). Hence, the ventricle responds to increased diastolic filling loads by increasing its force development (**Frank–Starling mechanism**;  $\rightarrow$  p. 204). In cardiac muscle, extension also affects troponin’s sensitivity to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , resulting in a steeper curve ( $\rightarrow$  **E2**).

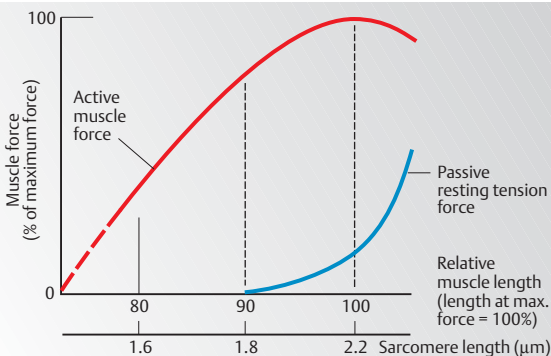
**Action potentials** in cardiac muscle are of much longer duration than those in skeletal muscle ( $\rightarrow$  p. 59 A) because  $g_{\text{K}}$  temporarily decreases and  $g_{\text{Ca}}$  increases for 200 to 500 ms after rapid inactivation of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. This allows the slow influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , causing the action potential to reach a *plateau*. As a result, the refractory period does not end until a contraction has almost subsided ( $\rightarrow$  p. 59 A). Therefore, *tetanus cannot be evoked in cardiac muscle*.

Unlike skeletal muscle, *cardiac muscle has no motor units*. Instead, the stimulus spreads across all myocardial fibers of the atria and subsequently of the ventricles generating an *all-or-none contraction* of both atria and, thereafter, both ventricles.

In cardiac muscle but not in skeletal muscle, the duration of an action potential can change the force of contraction, which is controlled by the variable influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the cell.

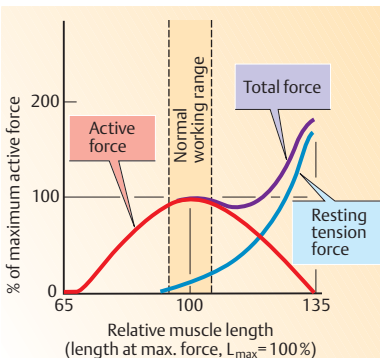
The greater the force (load), the lower the **velocity** of an (isotonic) contraction (see velocity–force diagram, **F1**). Maximal force and a small amount of heat will develop if shortening does not occur. The maximal velocity (biceps: ca. 7 m/s) and a lot of heat will develop in muscle without a stress load. Light loads can therefore be picked up more quickly than heavy loads ( $\rightarrow$  **F2**). The total amount of energy consumed for work and heat is greater in isotonic contractions than in isometric ones. **Muscle power** is the product of force and the shortening velocity:  $\text{N} \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} = \text{W}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **F1**, colored areas).

**D. Active and passive components of muscle force (skeletal muscle)**

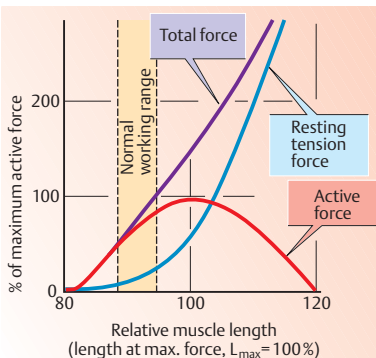


**E. Length-force curve for skeletal and cardiac muscle**

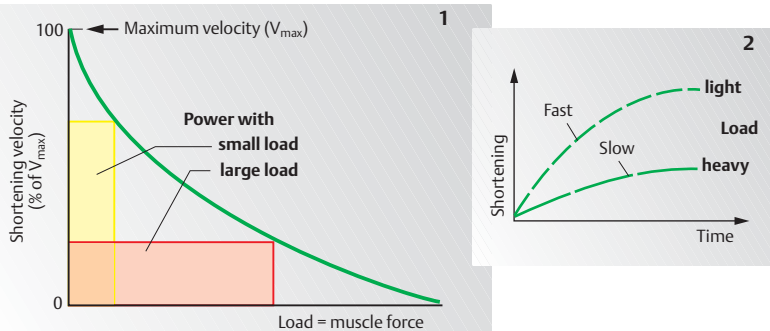
**1 Striated muscle**



**2 Cardiac muscle**



**F. Muscle force (or load) and shortening velocity**



## Smooth Muscle

Smooth muscle (SmM) consists of multiple layers of spindle-shaped cells. It is involved in the function of many organs (stomach, intestine, gall bladder, urinary bladder, uterus, bronchi, eyes, etc.) and the blood vessels, where it plays an important role in circulatory control. SmM contains a special type of F-actin-tropomyosin and myosin II filaments ( $\rightarrow$  p.60), but lacks troponin and myofibrils. Furthermore, it has no distinct tubular system and no sarcomeres (nonstriated). It is therefore called smooth muscle because of this lack of striation (see p.59A for further differences in the muscle types). SmM filaments form a loose contractile apparatus arranged approximately longitudinally within the cell and attached to discoid plaques (see **B** for model), which also provide a mechanical means for cell-cell binding of SmM. Smooth muscle can shorten much more than striated muscle.

The **membrane potential** of the SmM cells of many organs (e.g., the intestine) is not constant, but fluctuates rhythmically at a low frequency (3 to 15  $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) and amplitude (10 to 20 mV), producing *slow waves*. These waves trigger a burst of action potentials (spikes) when they exceed a certain threshold potential. The longer the slow wave remains above the threshold potential, the greater the number and frequency of the action potentials it produces. A relatively sluggish contraction occurs around 150 ms after a spike ( $\rightarrow$  p. 59 A, left panel). *Tetanus* occurs at relatively low spike frequencies ( $\rightarrow$  p.66). Hence, SmM is constantly in a state of a more or less strong contraction (**tonus** or tone). The action potential of SmM cells of some organs has a plateau similar to that of the cardiac action potential ( $\rightarrow$  p. 59 A, middle panel).

There are two types of smooth muscles ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). The cells of **single-unit SmM** are electrically coupled with each other by *gap junctions* ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 18 and 50). Stimuli are passed along from cell to cell in organs such as the stomach, intestine, gallbladder, urinary bladder, ureter, uterus, and some types of blood vessels. Stimuli are generated autonomously from within the SmM, partly by pacemaker cells). In other words, the stimulus is innervation-inde-

pendent and, in many cases, spontaneous (*myogenic tonus*). The second type, **multi-unit SmM**, contracts primarily due to stimuli from the autonomic nervous system (*neurogenic tonus*). This occurs in structures such as the arterioles, spermatic ducts, iris, ciliary body, and the muscles at the roots of the hair. Since these SmM cells generally are not connected by gap junctions, stimulation remains localized, as in the motor units of the skeletal muscle.

**Smooth muscle tonus is regulated** by the degree of depolarization (e.g., through stretch or pacemaker cells) as well as by transmitter substances (e.g., acetylcholine or noradrenaline) and numerous hormones (e.g., estrogens, progesterone and oxytocin in the uterus and histamine, angiotensin II, adiuoretin, serotonin and bradykinin in vascular muscle). An increase in tonus will occur if any of these factors directly or indirectly increases the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration to more than  $10^{-6}$  mol/L. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx comes mainly from extracellular sources, but a small portion comes from intracellular stores ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions bind to calmodulin (CM) ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**), and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -CM promotes contraction in the following manner.

**Regulation at myosin II** ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**): The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -CM complex activates myosin light chain kinase (MLCK), which phosphorylates myosin's regulatory light chain (RLC) in a certain position, thereby enabling the myosin head to interact with actin ( $\rightarrow$  **B6**).

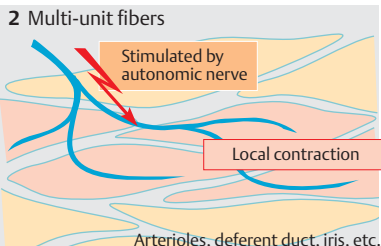
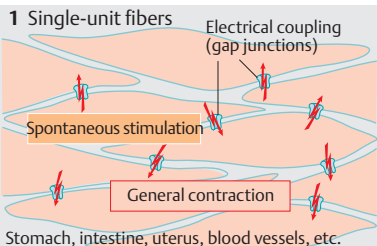
**Regulation at the actin level** ( $\rightarrow$  **B4**). The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -CM complex also binds with caldesmon (CDM), which then detaches from the actin-tropomyosin complex, thus making it available for filament sliding ( $\rightarrow$  **B6**). Phosphorylation of CDM by protein kinase C (PK-C) also seems to be able to induce filament sliding ( $\rightarrow$  **B5**).

Factors that lead to a **reduction of tonus** are: reduction of the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration to less than  $10^{-6}$  mol/L ( $\rightarrow$  **B7**), phosphatase activity ( $\rightarrow$  **B8**), and PK-C if it phosphorylates another position on the RLC ( $\rightarrow$  **B9**).

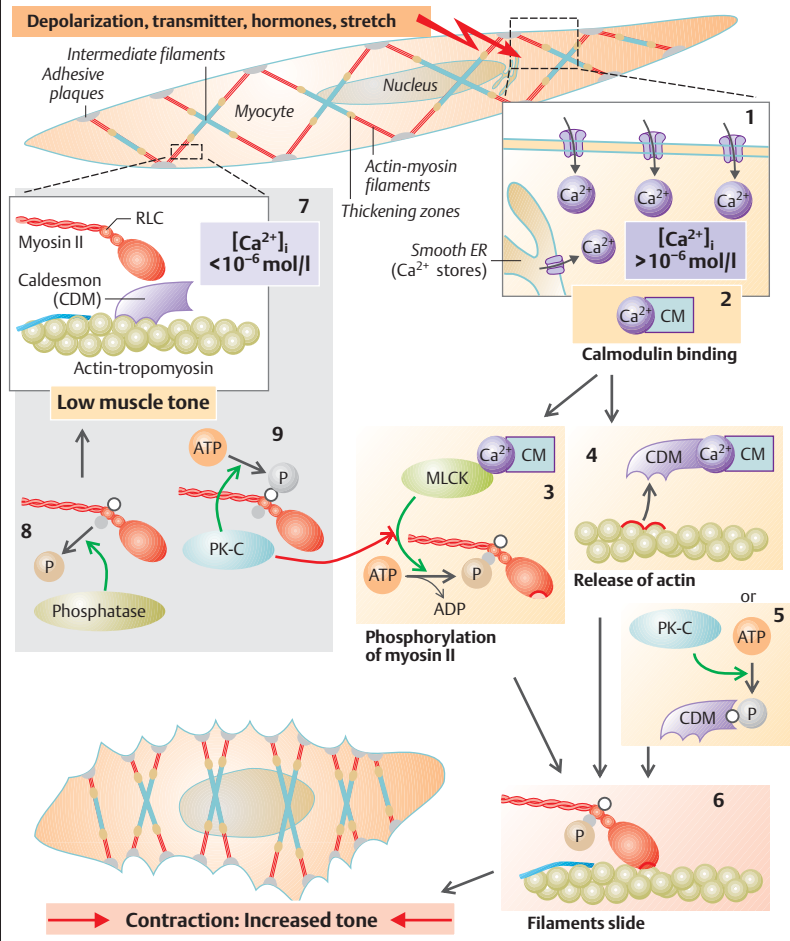
When length-force curves are recorded for smooth muscle, the curve shows that muscle force decreases continuously while muscle length remains constant. This property of a muscle is called **plasticity**.



**A. Smooth muscle fibers according to type of stimulation**



**B. Regulation of smooth muscle contraction**





## Energy Supply for Muscle Contraction

**Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)** is a direct source of chemical energy for muscle contraction (→ A, pp. 40 and 64). However, a muscle cell contains only a limited amount of ATP—only enough to take a sprinter some 10 to 20 m or so. Hence, spent ATP is continuously regenerated to keep the intracellular ATP concentration constant, even when large quantities of it are needed. The three routes of **ATP regeneration** are (→ B):

1. Dephosphorylation of creatine phosphate
  2. Anaerobic glycolysis
  3. Aerobic oxidation of glucose and fatty acids.
- Routes 2 and 3 are relatively slow, so **creatine phosphate (CrP)** must provide the chemical energy needed for *rapid ATP regeneration*. ADP derived from metabolized ATP is immediately transformed to ATP and creatine (Cr) by mitochondrial creatine kinase (→ B1 and p. 40). The CrP reserve of the muscle is sufficient for short-term high-performance bursts of 10–20 s (e.g., for a 100-m sprint).

**Anaerobic glycolysis** occurs later than CrP dephosphorylation (after a maximum of ca. 30 s). In anaerobic glycolysis, *muscle glycogen* is converted via glucose-6-phosphate to lactic acid (→ lactate + H<sup>+</sup>), yielding 3 ATP molecules for each glucose residue (→ B2). During *light exercise*, lactate<sup>-</sup> is broken down in the heart and liver whereby H<sup>+</sup> ions are used up. **Aerobic oxidation** of glucose and fatty acids takes place approx. 1 min after this less productive anaerobic form of ATP regeneration. If aerobic oxidation does not produce a sufficient supply of ATP during *strenuous exercise*, anaerobic glycolysis must also be continued.

In this case, however, glucose must be imported from the liver where it is formed by glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis (see also p. 282f.). Imported glucose yields only two ATP for each molecule of glucose, because one ATP is required for 6-phosphorylation of glucose.

**Aerobic regeneration of ATP** from glucose (2 + 34 ATP per glucose residue) or fatty acids is required for *sustained exercise* (→ B3). The cardiac output (= heart rate × stroke volume) and total ventilation must therefore be increased to meet the increased metabolic requirements of the muscle; the heart rate then becomes

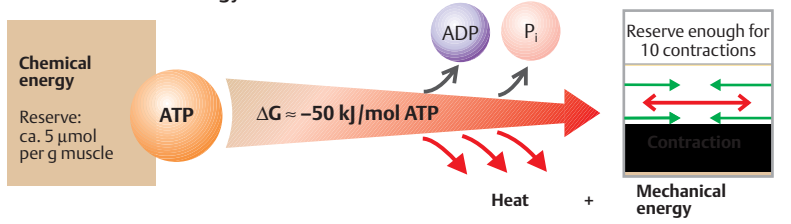
constant (→ p. 75 B). The several minutes that pass before this *steady state* is achieved are bridged by anaerobic energy production, *increased O<sub>2</sub> extraction* from the blood and depletion of short-term O<sub>2</sub> reserves in the muscle (*myoglobin*). The interim between the two phases is often perceived as the “*low point*” of physical performance.

The O<sub>2</sub> affinity of **myoglobin** is higher than that of hemoglobin, but lower than that of respiratory chain enzymes. Thus, myoglobin is normally saturated with O<sub>2</sub> and can pass on its oxygen to the mitochondria during brief arterial oxygen supply deficits.

The **endurance limit**, which is some 370 W (≈ 0.5 HP) in top athletes, is mainly dependent on the speed at which O<sub>2</sub> is supplied and on how fast aerobic oxidation takes place. When the endurance limit is exceeded, steady state cannot occur, the heart rate then rises continuously (→ p. 75 B). The muscles can temporarily compensate for the energy deficit (see above), but the H<sup>+</sup>-consuming lactate metabolism cannot keep pace with the persistently high level of anaerobic ATP regeneration. An excess of lactate and H<sup>+</sup> ions, i.e. *lactacidosis*, therefore develops. If an individual exceeds his or her endurance limit by around 60%, which is about equivalent to maximum O<sub>2</sub> consumption (→ p. 74), the **plasma lactate** concentration will increase sharply, reaching the so-called *anaerobic threshold* at 4 mmol/L. No significant increase in performance can be expected after that point. The systemic drop in pH results in increasing inhibition of the chemical reactions needed for muscle contraction. This ultimately leads to an ATP deficit, rapid muscle **fatigue** and, finally, a stoppage of muscle work.

CrP metabolism and anaerobic glycolysis enable the body to achieve three times the performance possible with aerobic ATP regeneration, albeit for only about 40 s. However, these processes result in an **O<sub>2</sub> deficit** that must be compensated for in the post-exercise recovery phase (**O<sub>2</sub> debt**). The body “pays off” this debt by regenerating its energy reserves and breaking down the excess lactate in the liver and heart. The O<sub>2</sub> debt after strenuous exercise is much larger (up to 20 L) than the O<sub>2</sub> deficit for several reasons.

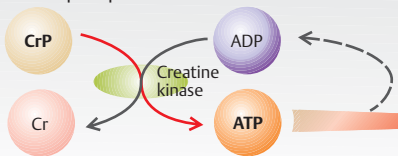
**A. ATP as a direct energy source**



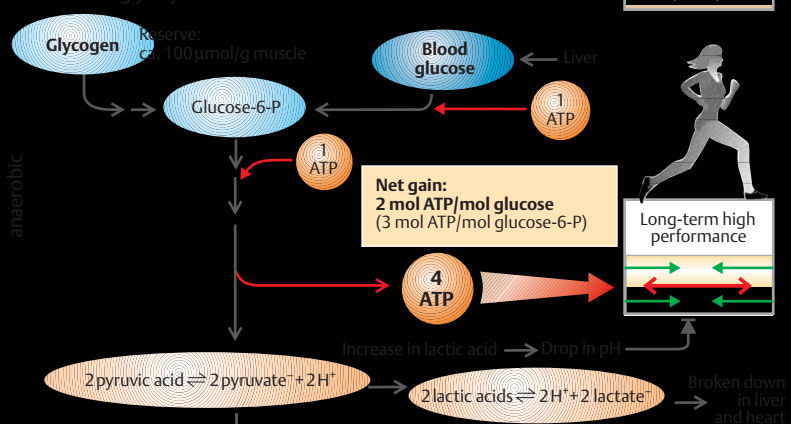
**B. Regeneration of ATP**

**1 Cleavage of creatine phosphate**

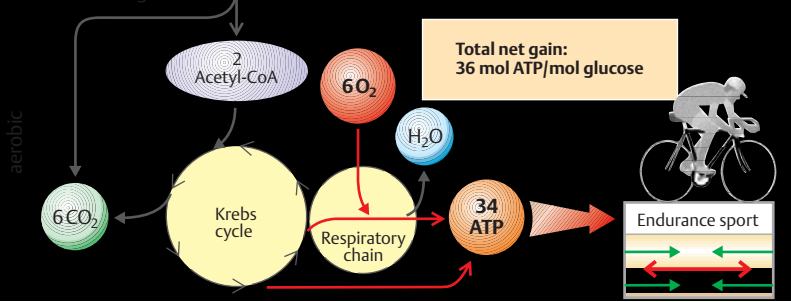
Reserve: ca. 25  $\mu\text{mol}$  per g muscle



**2 Anaerobic glycolysis**



**3 Oxidation of glucose**



## Physical Work

There are three types of muscle work:

- ◆ **Positive dynamic work**, which requires to muscles involved to alternately contract and relax (e.g., going uphill).
  - ◆ **Negative dynamic work**, which requires the muscles involved to alternately extend while braking (*braking work*) and contract without a load (e.g., going downhill).
  - ◆ **Static postural work**, which requires continuous contraction (e.g., standing upright).
- Many activities involve a combination of two or three types of muscle work. Outwardly directed mechanical work is produced in dynamic muscle activity, but not in purely postural work. In the latter case, force  $\times$  distance = 0. However, chemical energy is still consumed and completely transformed into a form of heat called *maintenance heat* (= muscle force times the duration of postural work).

In *strenuous exercise*, the muscles require up to 500 times more  $O_2$  than when at rest. At the same time, the muscle must rid itself of metabolic products such as  $H^+$ ,  $CO_2$ , and **lactate** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72). Muscle work therefore requires drastic cardiovascular and respiratory changes.

In untrained subjects (UT), the cardiac output (CO;  $\rightarrow$  p. 186) rises from 5–6 L/min at rest to a maximum of 15–20 L/min during exercise ( $\rightarrow$  p. 77C). Work-related **activation of the sympathetic nervous system** increases the heart rate up to ca. 2.5 fold and the stroke volume up to ca. 1.2 fold (UT). In *light to moderate exercise*, the heart rate soon levels out at a new constant level, and no fatigue occurs. *Very strenuous exercise*, on the other hand, must soon be interrupted because the heart cannot achieve the required long-term performance ( $\rightarrow$  B). The increased CO provides more blood for the muscles ( $\rightarrow$  A) and the skin (*heat loss*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 222.). The blood flow in the kidney and intestine, on the other hand, is reduced by the sympathetic tone below the resting value ( $\rightarrow$  A). The systolic **blood pressure** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 206) rises while the diastolic pressure remains constant, yielding only a moderate increase in the mean pressure.

The smaller the muscle mass involved in the work, the higher the increase in blood pressure. Hence, the blood pressure increase in arm activity (cutting hedges) is higher than that in leg activity (cycling). In patients with coronary artery disease or cerebrovascular sclerosis, arm activity is therefore more dangerous than leg activity due to the risk of myocardial infarction or brain hemorrhage.

**Muscular blood flow.** At the maximum work level, the blood flow in 1 kg of active muscle rises to as much as 2.5 L/min ( $\rightarrow$  p. 213 A), equivalent to 10% of the maximum cardiac output. Hence, no more than 10 kg of muscle ( $< 1/3$  the total muscle mass) can be fully active at any one time. Vasodilatation, which is required for the higher blood flow, is mainly achieved through *local chemical influences* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 212). In purely postural work, the increase in blood flow is prevented in part by the fact that the continuously contracted muscle squeezes its own vessels. The muscle then *fatigues* faster than in rhythmic dynamic work.

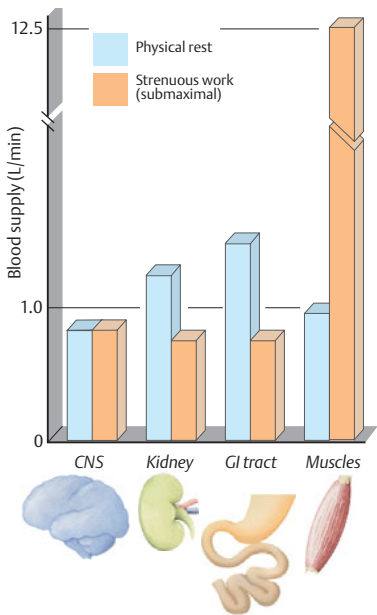
During physical exercise ( $\rightarrow$  C1), the **ventilation** ( $\dot{V}_E$ ) increases from a resting value of ca. 7.5 L/min to a maximum of 90 to 120 L/min ( $\rightarrow$  C3). Both the respiratory rate (40–60  $\text{min}^{-1}$  max;  $\rightarrow$  C2) and the tidal volume (ca. 2 L max.) contribute to this increase. Because of the high  $\dot{V}_E$  and increased CO, oxygen consumption ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ) can increase from ca. 0.3 L/min at rest to a maximum ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  max) of ca. 3 L/min in UT ( $\rightarrow$  C4 and p. 76). Around 25 L of air has to be ventilated to take up 1 L of  $O_2$  at rest, corresponding to a *respiratory equivalent* ( $\dot{V}_E/\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ) of 25. During physical exercise,  $\dot{V}_E/\dot{V}_{O_2}$  rises beyond the endurance limit to a value of 40–50.

Increased  **$O_2$  extraction** in the tissues also contributes to the large increase in  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  during exercise. The decreasing pH and increasing temperature shift the  $O_2$  binding curve towards the right ( $\rightarrow$  p. 129 B).  $O_2$  extraction is calculated as the arteriovenous difference in  $O_2$  concentration (av $\dot{D}O_2$  in L/L blood) times the blood flow in L/min. The **maximum  $O_2$  consumption** ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  max) is therefore defined as:

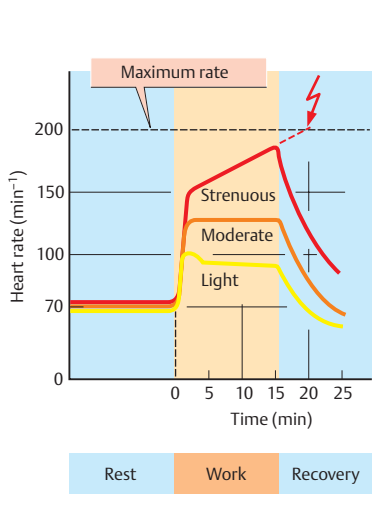
$$\dot{V}_{O_2} \text{ max} = \text{HRmax} \cdot \text{SVmax} \cdot \text{av}\dot{D}O_2 \text{ max}$$

where HR is the heart rate and SV is the stroke volume.  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  max per body weight is an ideal measure of *physical exercise capacity* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 76).

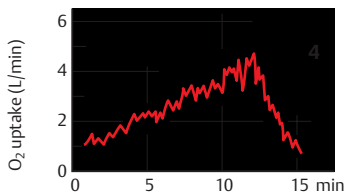
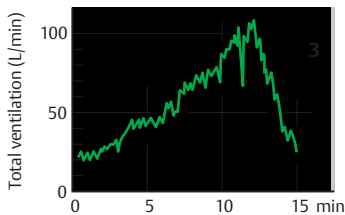
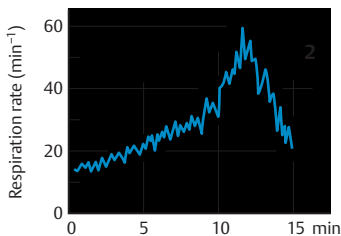
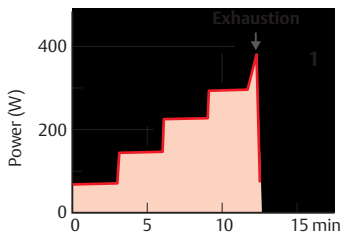
**A. Blood supply in organs at rest and during physical work**



**B. Heart rate during physical work**



**C. Respiration during physical work**



(After J. Stegemann)

## Physical Fitness and Training

The **physical exercise capacity** can be measured using simple yet standardized techniques of **ergometry**. This may be desirable in athletes, for example, to assess the results of training, or in patients undergoing rehabilitation therapy. Ergometry assesses the effects of exercise on physiological parameters such as  $O_2$  consumption ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ), respiration rate, heart rate ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74), and the plasma lactate concentration ( $\rightarrow$  A). The measured physical power (performance) is expressed in watts (W) or W/kg body weight (BW).

In *bicycle ergometry*, a brake is used to adjust the watt level. In "uphill" ergometry on a *treadmill* set at an angle  $\alpha$ , exercise performance in watts is calculated as a factor of body mass (kg)  $\times$  gravitational acceleration  $g$  ( $m \cdot s^{-2}$ )  $\times$  distance traveled (m)  $\times$   $\sin \alpha \times 1/\text{time required}$  ( $s^{-1}$ ). In the *Margaria step test*, the test subject is required to run up a staircase as fast as possible after a certain starting distance. Performance is then measured as body mass (kg)  $\times$   $g$  ( $m \cdot s^{-2}$ )  $\times$  height/time ( $m \cdot s^{-1}$ ).

**Short-term performance tests** (10–30 s) measure performance achieved through the rapidly available energy reserves (creatine phosphate, glycogen). **Medium-term performance tests** measure performance fueled by anaerobic glycolysis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72). The **maximum  $O_2$  consumption** ( $\dot{V}_{O_2, \max}$ ) is used to measure longer term aerobic exercise performance achieved through oxidation of glucose and free fatty acids ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74).

In strenuous exercise (roughly 2/3 the maximum physical capacity or more), the aerobic mechanisms do not produce enough energy, so anaerobic metabolism must continue as a parallel energy source. This results in lactacidosis and a sharp increase in the plasma lactate concentration ( $\rightarrow$  A). **Lactate concentrations** of up to 2 mmol/L (*aerobic threshold*) can be tolerated for prolonged periods of exercise. Lactate concentrations above 4 mmol/L (*anaerobic threshold*) indicate that the performance limit will soon be reached. Exercise must eventually be interrupted, not because of the increasing lactate concentration, but because of the increasing level of acidosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74).

**Physical training** raises and maintains the physical exercise capacity. There are three

types of physical training strategies, and most training programs use a combination of them.

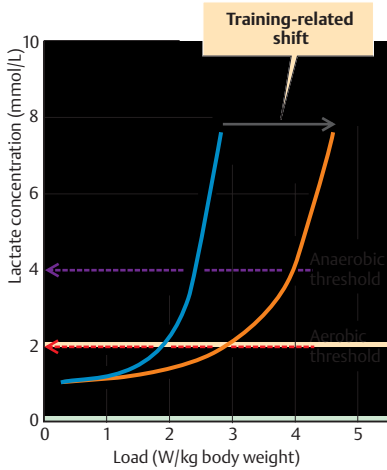
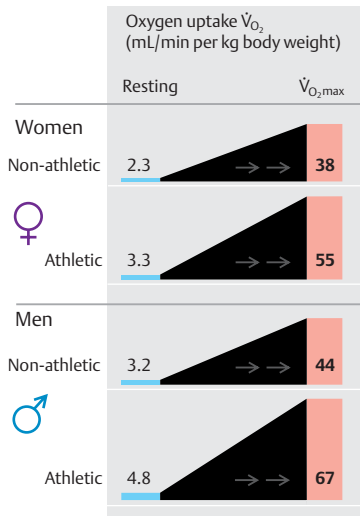
**Motor learning**, which increases the rate and accuracy of motor skills (e.g., typewriting). These activities primarily involve the CNS.

**Endurance training**, which improves submaximal long-term performance (e.g., running a marathon). The main objectives of endurance training are to increase the oxidative capacity of slow-twitch motor units ( $\rightarrow$  p. 58), e.g., by increasing the mitochondrial density, increase the cardiac output and, consequently, to increase  $\dot{V}_{O_2, \max}$  ( $\rightarrow$  B, C). The resulting increase in heart weight allows higher stroke volumes ( $\rightarrow$  C) as well as higher tidal volumes, resulting in very low resting heart rates and respiratory rates. Trained athletes can therefore achieve larger increases in cardiac output and ventilation than untrained subjects ( $\rightarrow$  C). The  $\dot{V}_{O_2, \max}$  of a healthy individual is limited by the cardiovascular capacity, not the respiratory capacity. In individuals who practice endurance training, the exercise-related rise in the lactate concentration is also lower and occurs later than in untrained subjects ( $\rightarrow$  A).

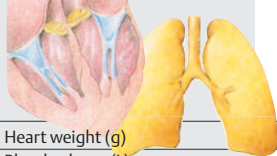
**Strength training** improves the maximum short-term performance level (e.g., in weight lifting). The main objectives are to increase the muscle mass by increasing the size of the muscle fibers (hypertrophy) and to increase the glycolytic capacity of type motor units ( $\rightarrow$  p. 58).

Excessive physical exercise causes **muscle soreness and stiffness**. The underlying cause is not lactic acid accumulation, but sarcomere microtrauma, which leads to muscle swelling and pain. The muscle ache, is a sign of microinflammation ( $\rightarrow$  D).

**Muscle fatigue** may be peripheral or central. *Peripheral fatigue* is caused by the exhaustion of energy reserves and the accumulation of metabolic products in the active muscle. This is particularly quick to occur during postural work ( $\rightarrow$  p. 66). *Central fatigue* is characterized by work-related pain in the involved muscles and joints that prevents the continuation of physical exercise or decreased the individual's motivation to continue the exercise.

**A. Lactate concentration (phys. exercise)**

**B. Maximum O<sub>2</sub> uptake**

**C. Comparison of non-athletic individuals and endurance athletes**

Physiological parameters  
(2 men, age 25, 70 kg)



Non-athletes

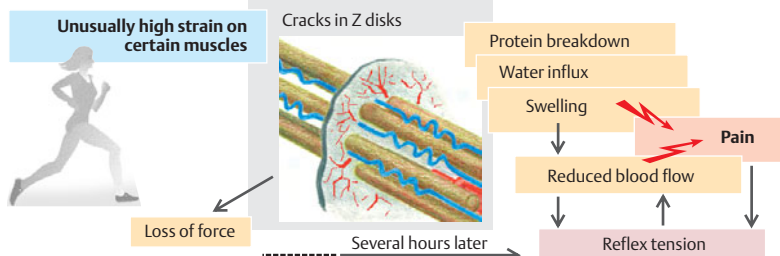


Endurance athletes



Physiological parameters	Non-athletes		Endurance athletes	
	Resting	Maximum	Resting	Maximum
Heart weight (g)		300		500
Blood volume (L)		5.6		5.9
Heart rate ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )	80	→ → 180	90	→ → 180
Stroke volume (mL)	70	→ → 100	140	→ → 190
Cardiac output (L/min)	5.6	→ → 18	12.6	→ → 35
Total ventilation (L/min)	3.0	→ → 100	3.0	→ → 200
O <sub>2</sub> uptake (L/min)	1.3	→ → 2.8	0.3	→ → 5.2

(Data partly from H.-J. Ulmer)

**D. Post-exercise muscle ache**


### Organization of the Autonomic Nervous System

In the *somatic nervous system*, nerve fibers extend to and from the skeletal muscles, skin and sense organs. They usually emit impulses in response to stimuli from the outside environment, as in the *withdrawal reflex* (→ p. 320). Much somatic nervous activity occurs *consciously* and under *voluntary control*. In contrast, the **autonomic nervous system (ANS)** is mainly concerned with **regulation of circulation and internal organs**. It responds to changing outside conditions by triggering orthostatic responses, work start reactions, etc. to regulate the body's **internal environment** (→ p. 2). As the name implies, most activities of the ANS are not subject to voluntary control.

For the most part, the autonomic and somatic nervous systems are anatomically and functionally separate in the periphery (→ A), but closely connected in the central nervous system, CNS (→ p. 266). The *peripheral ANS is efferent*, but most of the nerves containing ANS fibers hold also afferent neurons. These are called *visceral afferents* because their signals originate from visceral organs, such as the esophagus, gastrointestinal (GI) tract, liver, lungs, heart, arteries, and urinary bladder. Some are also named after the nerve they accompany (e.g., vagal afferents).

Autonomic nervous activity is usually regulated by the **reflex arc**, which has an afferent limb (visceral and/or somatic afferents) and an efferent limb (autonomic and/or somatic efferents). The *afferent fibers* convey stimuli from the skin (e.g. nociceptive stimuli; → p. 316) and nociceptors, mechanosensors and chemosensors in organs such as the lungs, gastrointestinal tract, bladder, vascular system and genitals. The ANS provides the autonomic *efferent fibers* that convey the reflex response to such afferent information, thereby inducing smooth muscle contraction (→ p. 70) in organs such as the eye, lung, digestive tract and bladder, and influencing the function of the heart (→ p. 194) and glands. Examples of *somatic nervous system* involvement are afferent stimuli from the skin and sense organs (e.g., light stimuli) and efferent impulses to the skeletal muscles (e.g., coughing and vomiting).

Simple reflexes can take place *within an organ* (e.g., in the gut, → p.244), but complex reflexes are controlled by **superordinate autonomic centers** in the CNS, primarily in the *spinal cord* (→ A). These centers are controlled by the *hypothalamus*, which incorporates the ANS in the execution of its programs (→ p. 330). The *cerebral cortex* is an even higher-ranking center that integrates the ANS with other systems.

The **peripheral ANS** consists of a *sympathetic division* and a *parasympathetic division* (→ A) which, for the most part, are separate entities (→ also p. 80ff.). The autonomic centers of the sympathetic division lie in the *thoracic and lumbar* levels of the spinal cord, and those of the parasympathetic division lie in the brain stem (eyes, glands, and organs innervated by the vagus nerve) and sacral part of the spinal cord (bladder, lower parts of the large intestine, and genital organs). (→ A). *Preganglionic fibers* of both divisions of the ANS extend from their centers to the **ganglia**, where they terminate at the *postganglionic neurons*.

**Preganglionic sympathetic neurons** arising from the spinal cord terminate either in the *paravertebral ganglionic chain*, in the *cervical or abdominal ganglia* or in so-called terminal ganglia. Transmission of stimuli from preganglionic to postganglionic neurons is *cholinergic*, that is, mediated by release of the neurotransmitter *acetylcholine* (→ p. 82). Stimulation of all effector organs except sweat glands by the postganglionic sympathetic fibers is *adrenergic*, i.e., mediated by the release of *norepinephrine* (→ A and p. 84ff.).

**Parasympathetic ganglia** are situated near or within the effector organ. Synaptic transmissions in the parasympathetic ganglia and at the effector organ are *cholinergic* (→ A).

Most organs are innervated by sympathetic and parasympathetic nerve fibers. Nonetheless, the organ's response to the two systems can be either antagonistic (e.g., in the heart) or complementary (e.g., in the sex organs).

The **adrenal medulla** is a ganglion and hormone gland combined. Preganglionic sympathetic fibers in the adrenal medulla release acetylcholine, leading to the secretion of *epinephrine* (and some norepinephrine) *into the bloodstream* (→ p. 86).

**A. Schematic view of autonomic nervous system (ANS)**

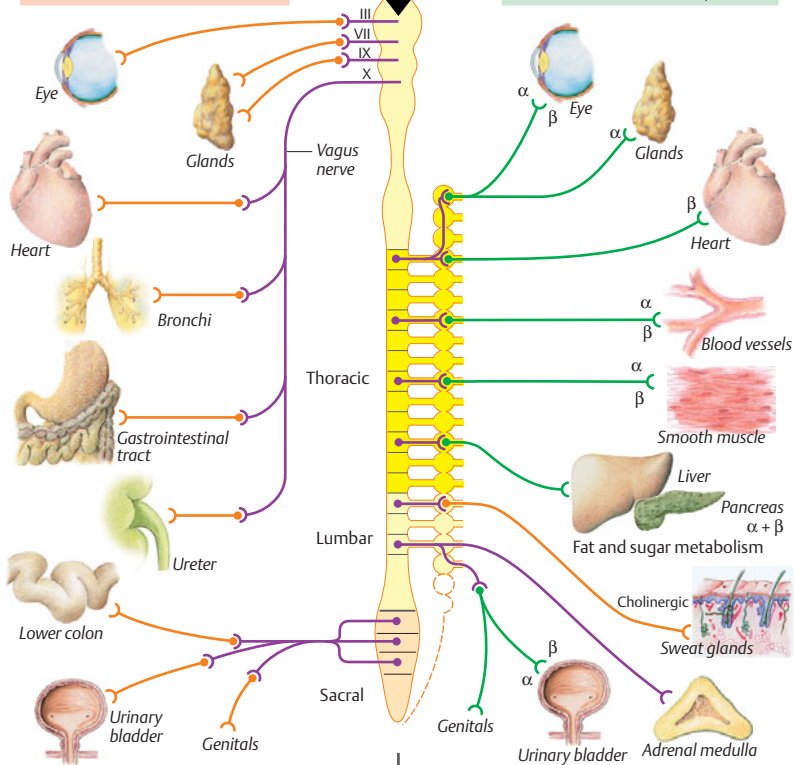
**Parasympathetic division**  
(Craniosacral centers)

Transmitter substances:  
Preganglionic: Acetylcholine  
Postganglionic: Acetylcholine

Controlled by superordinate centers

**Sympathetic division**

(Thoracic and lumbar centers)  
Transmitter substances:  
Preganglionic: Acetylcholine  
Postganglionic: Norepinephrine  
(Exception: Sweat glands, some muscular blood vessels)



**Cholinoceptors**

Nicotinic receptors:  
– All postganglionic, autonomic ganglia cells and dendrites  
– Adrenal medulla  
Muscarinic receptors:  
– All target organs innervated by postganglionic parasympathetic nerve fibers (and sweat glands innervated by sympathetic fibers)

**Adrenoceptors:**

$\alpha$  Usually excitatory (except in GI tract, where they are indirect relaxants)  
 $\beta$  Usually inhibitory (except in heart, where they are excitatory)  
 $\beta_1$  mainly in heart  
 $\beta_2$  in bronchi, urinary bladder, uterus, gastrointestinal tract, etc.

— Postganglionic: Cholinergic    — Preganglionic: Cholinergic    — Postganglionic: Adrenergic

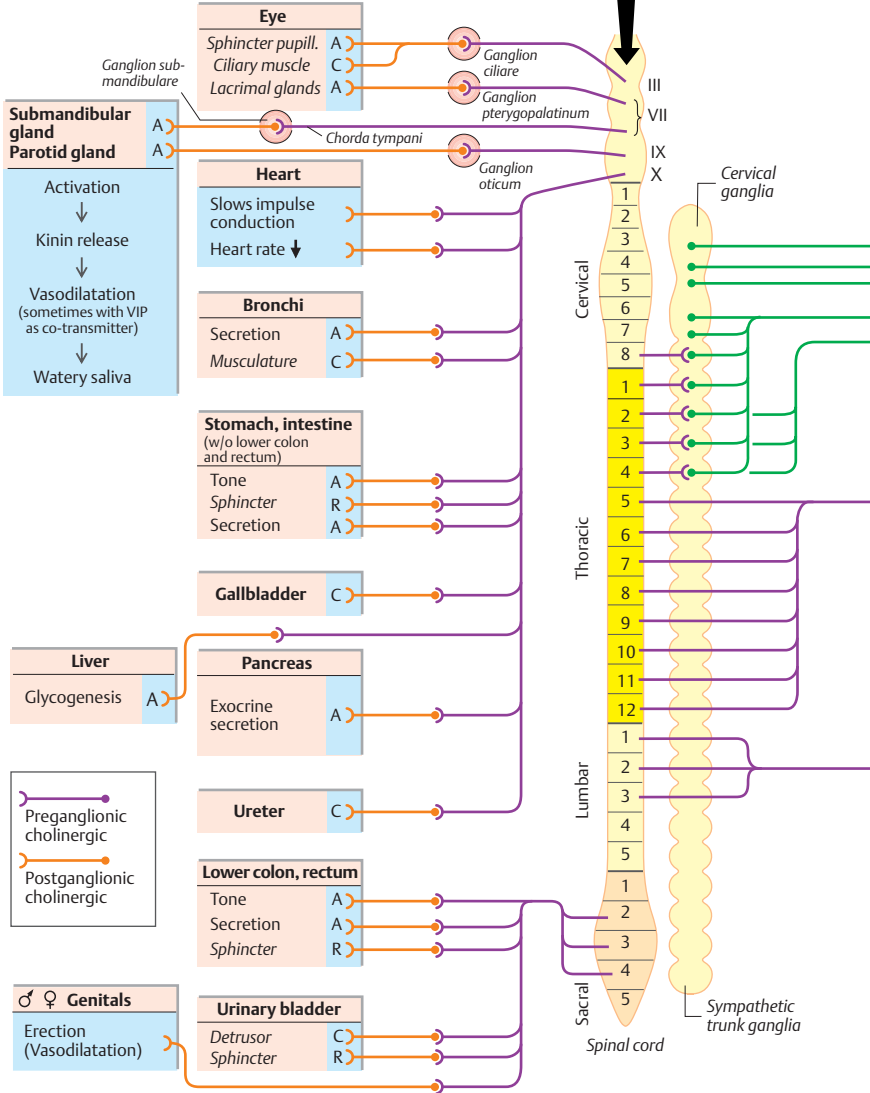


**A. Functions of the autonomic nervous system (ANS)**

**Parasympathetic division (cholinergic)**

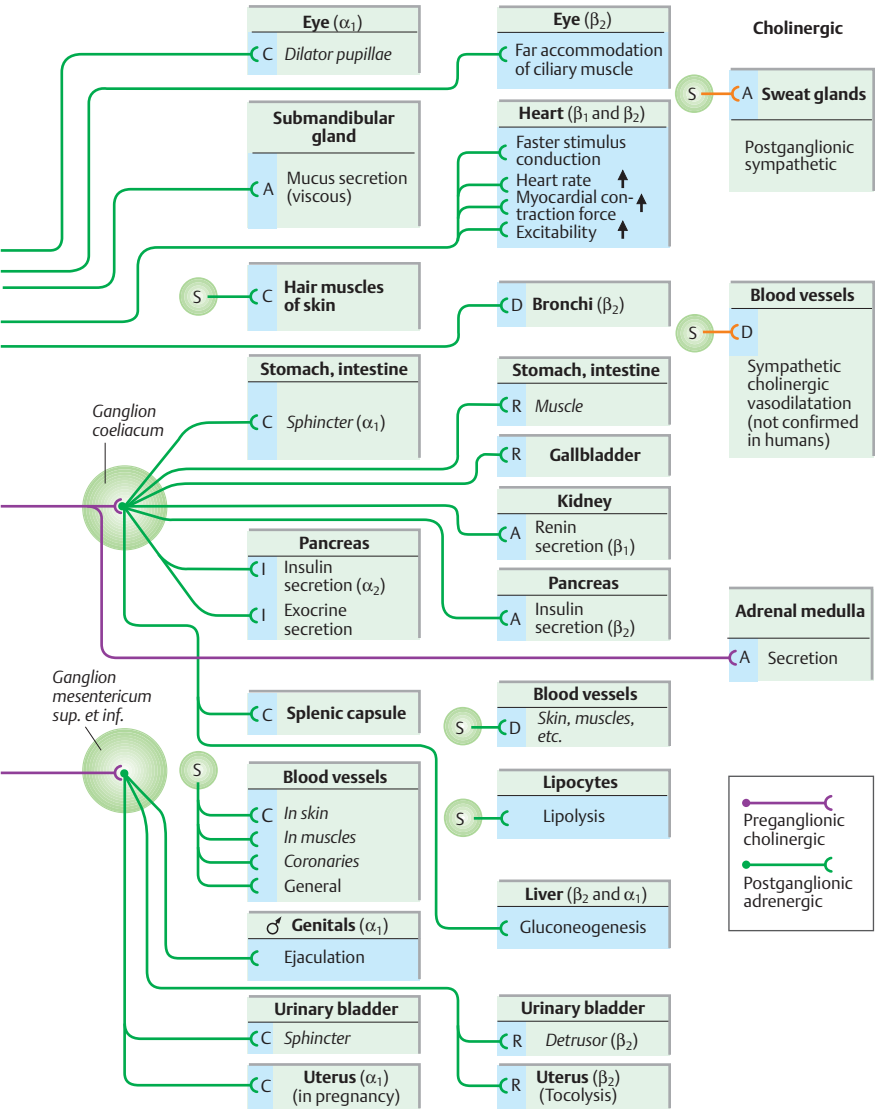
Ganglia:  $N_N$  and  $M_1$  receptors  
 Target organ:  $M_2$  oder  $M_3$  receptors

Controlled by superordinate centers (e.g., hypothalamus)



**Sympathetic division** (Preganglionic cholinergic:  $N_N$  and  $M_1$  receptors, postganglionic mainly adrenergic)

$\alpha$  receptors ( $\alpha_1$ :  $IP_3 + DAG \uparrow$ ;  $\alpha_2$ :  $cAMP \downarrow$ )  $\beta$  receptors ( $cAMP \uparrow$ )



S = Efferents from affiliated CNS segment

— Preganglionic cholinergic  
— Postganglionic adrenergic

## Acetylcholine and Cholinergic Transmission

Acetylcholine (ACh) serves as a neurotransmitter not only at motor end plates ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56) and in the central nervous system, but also in the **autonomic nervous system, ANS** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 78ff.), where it is active

- ◆ in all preganglionic fibers of the ANS;
- ◆ in all parasympathetic postganglionic nerve endings;
- ◆ and in some sympathetic postganglionic nerve endings (sweat glands).

**Acetylcholine synthesis.** ACh is synthesized in the cytoplasm of nerve terminals, and acetyl coenzyme A (acetyl-CoA) is synthesized in mitochondria. The reaction  $\text{acetyl-CoA} + \text{choline}$  is catalyzed by *choline acetyltransferase*, which is synthesized in the soma and reaches the nerve terminals by axoplasmic transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 42). Since choline must be taken up from extracellular fluid by way of a carrier, this is the rate-limiting step of ACh synthesis.

**Acetylcholine release.** Vesicles on presynaptic nerve terminals empty their contents into the synaptic cleft when the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration rises in response to incoming action potentials (AP) ( $\rightarrow$  A, p. 50ff.). Epinephrine and norepinephrine can *inhibit ACh release* by stimulating presynaptic  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 84). In postganglionic parasympathetic fibers, ACh blocks its own release by binding to presynaptic autoreceptors (M-receptors; see below), as shown in B.

ACh binds to postsynaptic **cholinergic receptors** or **cholinoceptors** in autonomic ganglia and organs innervated by parasympathetic fibers, as in the heart, smooth muscles (e.g., of the eye, bronchi, ureter, bladder, genitals, blood vessels, esophagus, and gastrointestinal tract), salivary glands, lacrimal glands, and (sympathetically innervated) sweat glands ( $\rightarrow$  p. 80ff.). Cholinoceptors are nicotinic (N) or muscarinic (M). **N-cholinoceptors** (*nicotinic*) can be stimulated by the alkaloid nicotine, whereas *M-cholinoceptors* (*muscarinic*) can be stimulated by the alkaloid mushroom poison muscarine.

Nerve-specific  $\text{N}_\text{N}$ -cholinoceptors on autonomic ganglia ( $\rightarrow$  A) differ from muscle-specific  $\text{N}_\text{M}$ -cholinoceptors on motor end plates ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56) in that they are formed by

different subunits. They are similar in that they are both *ionotropic receptors*, i.e., they act as cholinoceptors and cation channels at the same time. ACh binding leads to rapid  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx and in early (rapid) excitatory postsynaptic potentials (EPSP;  $\rightarrow$  p. 50ff.), which trigger postsynaptic action potentials (AP) once they rise above threshold ( $\rightarrow$  A, left panel).

**M-cholinoceptors** ( $\text{M}_1$ – $\text{M}_5$ ) indirectly affect synaptic transmission through G-proteins (*metabotropic receptors*).

**$\text{M}_1$ -cholinoceptors** occur mainly on *autonomic ganglia* ( $\rightarrow$  A), CNS, and *exocrine gland cells*. They activate phospholipase C $\beta$  (PLC $\beta$ ) via  $\text{G}_q$  protein in the postganglionic neuron, and inositol tris-phosphate ( $\text{IP}_3$ ) and diacylglycerol (DAG) are released as second messengers ( $\rightarrow$  p. 276) that stimulate  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx and a *late EPSP* ( $\rightarrow$  A, middle panel). Synaptic signal transmission is modulated by the late EPSP as well as by co-transmitting peptides that trigger *peptidergic EPSP* or *IPSP* ( $\rightarrow$  A, right panel).

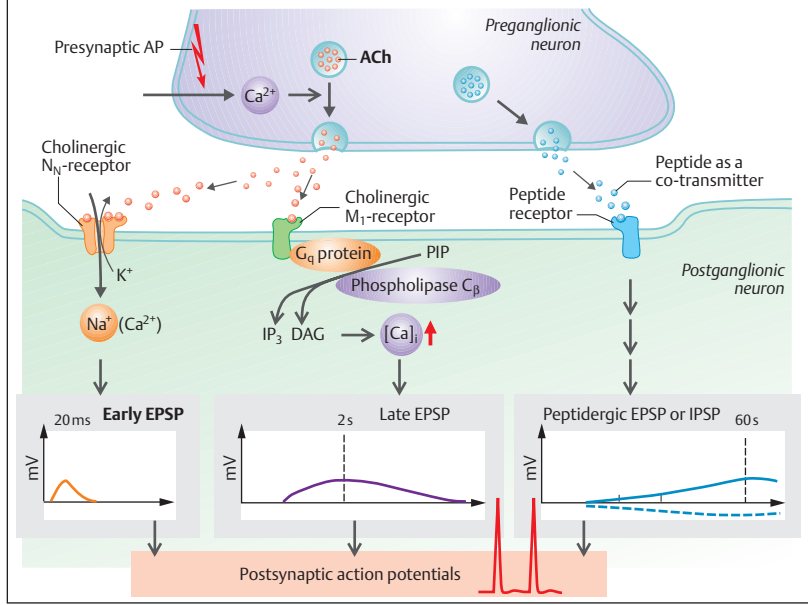
**$\text{M}_2$ -cholinoceptors** occur in the *heart* and function mainly via a  $\text{G}_i$  protein ( $\rightarrow$  p. 274 ff.). The  $\text{G}_i$  protein *opens specific  $\text{K}^+$  channels* located mainly in the sinoatrial node, atrioventricular (AV) node, and atrial cells, thereby exerting negative chronotropic and dromotropic effects on the heart ( $\rightarrow$  B). The  $\text{G}_i$  protein also *inhibits adenylate cyclase*, thereby reducing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**$\text{M}_3$ -cholinoceptors** occur mainly in *smooth muscles*. Similar to  $\text{M}_1$ -cholinoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  A, middle panel),  $\text{M}_3$ -cholinoceptors trigger contractions by stimulating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx ( $\rightarrow$  p. 70). However, they can also induce relaxation by activating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent NO synthase, e.g., in *endothelial cells* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 278).

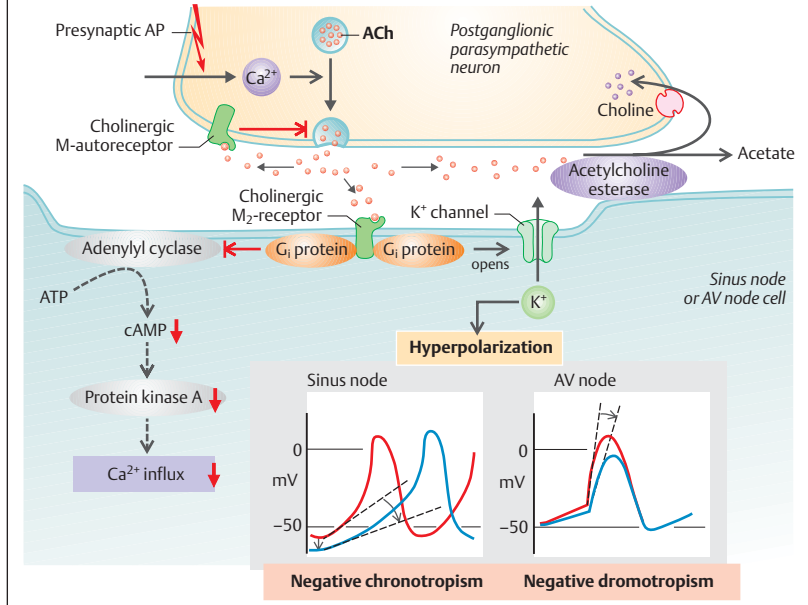
**Termination of ACh action** is achieved by *acetylcholinesterase*-mediated cleavage of ACh molecules in the synaptic cleft ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56). Approximately 50% of the liberated choline is reabsorbed by presynaptic nerve endings ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**Antagonists.** *Atropine* blocks all M-cholinoceptors, whereas *pirenzepine* selectively blocks  $\text{M}_1$ -cholinoceptors, *tubocurarine* blocks  $\text{N}_\text{M}$ -cholinoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 56), and *trimetaphan* blocks  $\text{N}_\text{N}$ -cholinoceptors.

**A. Neurotransmission in autonomic ganglia**



**B. Cholinergic transmission in the heart**



## Catecholamine, Adrenergic Transmission and Adrenoceptors

Certain neurons can enzymatically produce *L-dopa* (*L*-dihydroxyphenylalanine) from the amino acid *L*-tyrosine. *L-dopa* is the parent substance of dopamine, norepinephrine, and epinephrine—the three natural **catecholamines**, which are enzymatically synthesized in this order. Dopamine (**DA**) is the final step of synthesis in neurons containing only the enzyme required for the first step (the *aromatic L-amino acid decarboxylase*). Dopamine is used as a transmitter by the dopaminergic neurons in the **CNS** and by autonomic neurons that innervate the *kidney*.

**Norepinephrine (NE)** is produced when a second enzyme (*dopamine- $\beta$ -hydroxylase*) is also present. In most *sympathetic postganglionic nerve endings* and noradrenergic central neurons, NE serves as the neurotransmitter along with the *co-transmitters* adenosine triphosphate (ATP), somatostatin (SIH), or neuropeptide Y (NPY).

Within the adrenal medulla (see below) and adrenergic neurons of the medulla oblongata, *phenylethanolamine N-methyltransferase* transforms norepinephrine (NE) into **epinephrine (E)**.

The endings of unmyelinated sympathetic postganglionic neurons are knobby or *varicose* ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). These knobs establish synaptic contact, albeit not always very close, with the effector organ. They also serve as sites of **NE synthesis** and **storage**. *L*-tyrosine ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) is actively taken up by the nerve endings and transformed into dopamine. In adrenergic stimulation, this step is accelerated by protein kinase A-mediated (PKA;  $\rightarrow$  **A2**) phosphorylation of the responsible enzyme. This yields a larger dopamine supply. Dopamine is transferred to chromaffin vesicles, where it is transformed into NE ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Norepinephrine, the end product, inhibits further dopamine synthesis (negative feedback).

**NE release.** NE is exocytosed into the synaptic cleft after the arrival of action potentials at the nerve terminal and the initiation of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx ( $\rightarrow$  **A4** and p. 50).

**Adrenergic receptors** or **adrenoceptors** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Four main types of adrenoceptors ( $\alpha_1$ ,

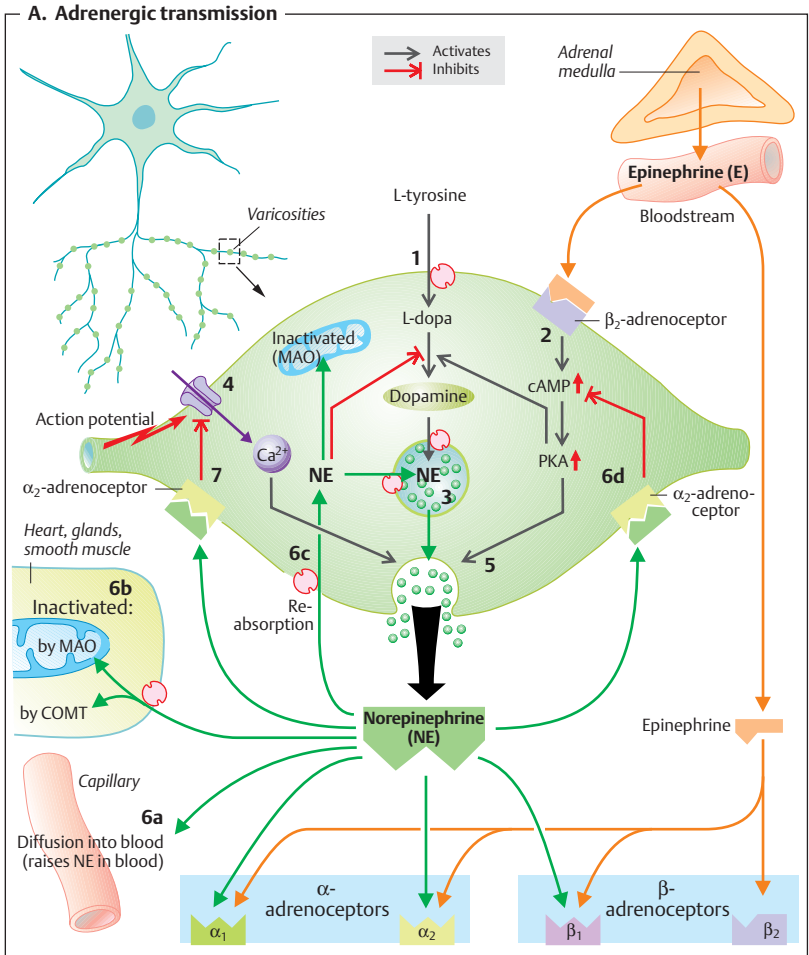
$\alpha_2$ ,  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$ ) can be distinguished according to their affinity to E and NE and to numerous agonists and antagonists. All adrenoceptors respond to E, but NE has little effect on  $\beta_2$ -adrenoceptors. Isoproterenol (isoprenaline) activates only  $\beta$ -adrenoceptors, and phenolamine only blocks  $\alpha$ -adrenoceptors. The activities of all adrenoceptors are mediated by G proteins ( $\rightarrow$  p. 55).

Different subtypes ( $\alpha_{1A}$ ,  $\alpha_{1B}$ ,  $\alpha_{1D}$ ) of  **$\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors** can be distinguished ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**). Their location and function are as follows: **CNS** (sympathetic activity  $\uparrow$ ), salivary glands, liver (glycogenolysis  $\uparrow$ ), kidneys (alters threshold for renin release;  $\rightarrow$  p. 184), and smooth muscles (trigger contractions in the arterioles, uterus, deferent duct, bronchioles, urinary bladder, gastrointestinal sphincters, and dilator pupillae).

Activation of  $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**), mediated by *G<sub>q</sub> proteins* and *phospholipase C $\beta$*  (PLC $\beta$ ), leads to formation of the second messengers *inositol tris-phosphate* (IP $_3$ ), which increases the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, and *diacylglycerol* (DAG), which activates protein kinase C (PKC; see also p. 276). *G<sub>q</sub>* protein-mediated  $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptor activity also activates  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent *K<sup>+</sup> channels*. The resulting  $\text{K}^+$  outflow hyperpolarizes and relaxes target smooth muscles, e.g., in the gastrointestinal tract.

Three subtypes ( $\alpha_{2A}$ ,  $\alpha_{2B}$ ,  $\alpha_{2C}$ ) of  **$\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors** ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**) can be distinguished. Their location and action are as follows: **CNS** (sympathetic activity  $\downarrow$ , e.g., use of the  $\alpha_2$  agonist clonidine to lower blood pressure), salivary glands (salivation  $\downarrow$ ), pancreatic islets (insulin secretion  $\downarrow$ ), lipocytes (lipolysis  $\downarrow$ ), platelets (aggregation  $\uparrow$ ), and neurons (presynaptic autoreceptors, see below). Activated  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**) link with *G<sub>i</sub> protein* and inhibit (via  $\alpha_i$  subunit of *G<sub>i</sub>*) adenylate cyclase (*cAMP synthesis*  $\downarrow$ ,  $\rightarrow$  p. 274) and, at the same time, increase (via the  $\beta\gamma$  subunit of *G<sub>i</sub>*) the open-probability of voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels (*hyperpolarization*). When coupled with *G<sub>0</sub>* proteins, activated  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors also inhibit voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels ( $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$   $\downarrow$ ).

All  **$\beta$ -adrenoceptors** are coupled with a *G<sub>s</sub>* protein, and its  $\alpha_s$  subunit releases cAMP as a second messenger. cAMP then activates pro-



tein kinase A (PKA), which phosphorylates different proteins, depending on the target cell type (→ p. 274).

NE and E work via **β<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptors** (→ B3) to open L-type Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels in cardiac cell membranes. This increases the [Ca<sup>2+</sup>]<sub>i</sub> and therefore produces *positive chronotropic, dromotropic, and inotropic effects*. Activated G<sub>s</sub> protein can also directly increase the open-

probability of voltage-gated Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels in the heart. In the *kidney*, the basal renin secretion is increased by β<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptors.

Activation of **β<sub>2</sub>-adrenoceptors** by epinephrine (→ B4) increases cAMP levels, thereby lowering the [Ca<sup>2+</sup>]<sub>i</sub> (by a still unclear mechanism). This *dilates* the bronchioles and blood vessels of skeletal muscles and *relaxes* the muscles of the uterus, deferent duct, and

gastrointestinal tract. Further effects of  $\beta_2$ -adrenoceptor activation are *increased insulin secretion* and *glycogenolysis* in liver and muscle and *decreased platelet aggregation*. Epinephrine also enhances NE release in noradrenergic fibers by way of presynaptic  $\beta_2$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, **A5**).

Heat production is increased via  **$\beta_3$ -adrenoceptors** on brown lipocytes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 222).

NE in the synaptic cleft is **deactivated** by ( $\rightarrow$  **A6 a – d**):

- ◆ *diffusion* of NE from the synaptic cleft into the blood;
- ◆ *extraneuronal NE uptake* (in the heart, glands, smooth muscles, glia, and liver), and subsequent intracellular degradation of NE by catecholamine-O-methyltransferase (COMT) and monoamine oxidase (MAO);
- ◆ *active re-uptake of NE* (70%) by the presynaptic nerve terminal. Some of the absorbed NE enters intracellular vesicles ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**) and is re-used, and some is inactivated by MAO;
- ◆ stimulation of presynaptic  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors (*autoreceptors*;  $\rightarrow$  **A 6d**, **7**) by NE in the synaptic cleft, which inhibits the further release of NE.

Presynaptic  $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors can also be found on cholinergic nerve endings, e.g., in the gastrointestinal tract (motility  $\downarrow$ ) and cardiac atrium (negative dromotropic effect), whereas presynaptic M-cholinoceptors are present on noradrenergic nerve terminals. Their mutual interaction permits a certain degree of peripheral ANS regulation.

## Adrenal Medulla

After stimulation of preganglionic sympathetic nerve fibers (cholinergic transmission;  $\rightarrow$  p. 81), 95% of all cells in the adrenal medulla secrete the endocrine hormone **epinephrine (E)** into the blood by exocytosis, and another 5% release norepinephrine (NE). Compared to noradrenergic neurons (see above), *NE synthesis* in the adrenal medulla is similar, but most of the NE leaves the vesicle and is enzymatically metabolized into E in the cytoplasm. Special vesicles called *chromaffin bodies* then actively store E and get ready to release it and co-transmitters (enkephalin, neuropeptide Y) by exocytosis.

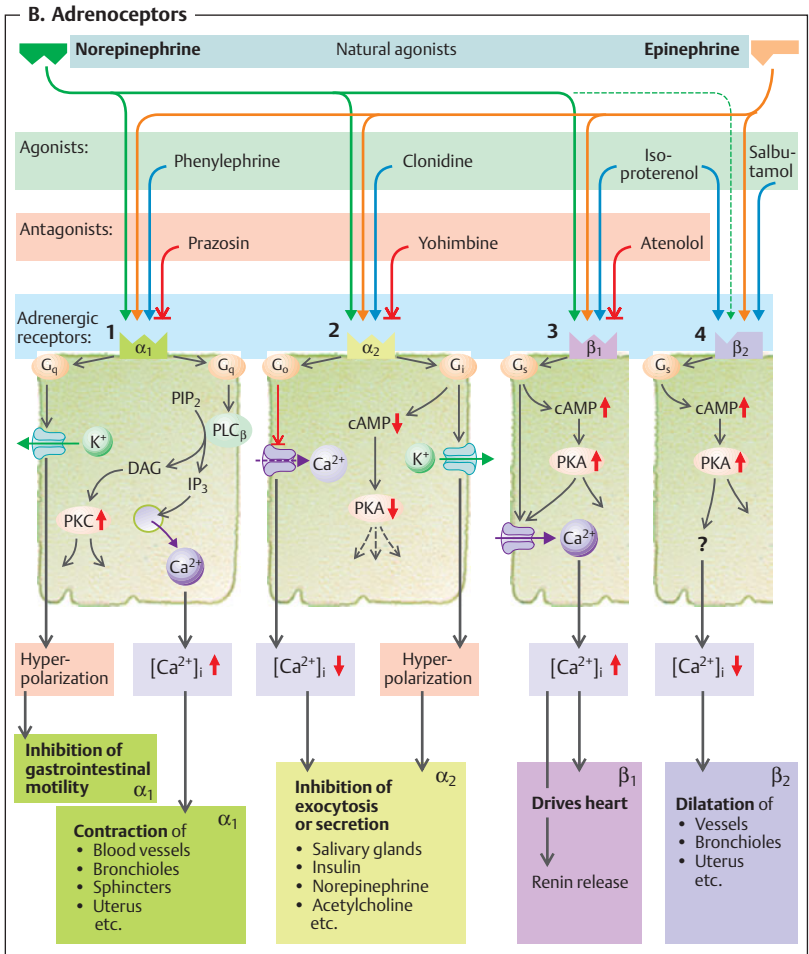
In **alarm reactions**, secretion of E (and some NE) from the adrenal medulla increases substantially in response to physical and mental or emotional stress. Therefore, cells not sympathetically innervated are also activated in such stress reactions. E also increases neuronal NE release via presynaptic  $\beta_2$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). Epinephrine secretion from the adrenal medulla (mediated by increased sympathetic activity) is stimulated by certain **triggers**, e.g., *physical work*, cold, heat, anxiety, anger (stress), *pain*, *oxygen deficiency*, or a *drop in blood pressure*. In severe hypoglycemia ( $< 30$  mg/dL), for example, the plasma epinephrine concentration can increase by as much as 20-fold, while the norepinephrine concentration increases by a factor of only 2.5, resulting in a corresponding rise in the E/NE ratio.

The **main task of epinephrine** is to mobilize stored chemical energy, e.g., through *lipolysis* and *glycogenolysis*. Epinephrine enhances the uptake of glucose into skeletal muscle ( $\rightarrow$  p. 282) and activates enzymes that accelerate glycolysis and lactate formation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72ff.). To enhance the blood flow in the muscles involved, the body increases the cardiac output while curbing gastrointestinal blood flow and activity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 75 A). Adrenal epinephrine and neuronal NE begin to stimulate the secretion of hormones responsible for replenishing the depleted energy reserves (e.g., ACTH;  $\rightarrow$  p. 297 A) while the alarm reaction is still in process.

## Non-cholinergic, Non-adrenergic Transmitters

In humans, gastrin-releasing peptide (GRP) and vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP) serve as co-transmitters in *preganglionic sympathetic fibers*; neuropeptide Y (NPY) and somatostatin (SIH) are the ones involved in *postganglionic fibers*. Postganglionic **parasympathetic fibers** utilize the peptides enkephalin, substance P (SP) and/or NPY as co-transmitters.

**Modulation of postsynaptic neurons** seems to be the primary goal of preganglionic peptide secretion. There is substantial evidence demonstrating that **ATP** (adenosine triphosphate), **NPY** and **VIP** also function as independent neu-



rotransmitters in the autonomic nervous system. VIP and acetylcholine often occur jointly (but in separate vesicles) in the parasympathetic fibers of blood vessels, exocrine glands, and sweat glands. Within the gastrointestinal tract, VIP (along with nitric oxide) induces the slackening of the circular muscle layer and sphincter muscles and (with the co-transmitters dynorphin and galanin) enhances intesti-

nal secretion. **Nitric oxide (NO)** is liberated from nitrergic neurons ( $\rightarrow$  p. 278)



**Composition and Function of Blood**

The **blood volume** of an adult correlates with his or her (fat-free) body mass and amounts to ca. 4–4.5 L in women (♀) and 4.5–5 L in men of 70 kg BW (♂; → table). The **functions of blood** include the *transport* of various molecules (O<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>, nutrients, metabolites, vitamins, electrolytes, etc.), heat (regulation of body temperature) and *transmission of signals* (hormones) as well as *buffering* and immune *defense*. The blood consists of a fluid (*plasma*) *formed elements*: **Red blood cells** (RBCs) transport O<sub>2</sub> and play an important role in pH regulation. **White blood cells** (WBCs) can be divided into *neutrophilic*, *eosinophilic* and *basophilic granulocytes*, *monocytes*, and *lymphocytes*. Neutrophils play a role in nonspecific immune defense, whereas monocytes and lymphocytes participate in specific immune responses. **Platelets (thrombocytes)** are needed for hemostasis. **Hematocrit (Hct)** is the volume ratio of red cells to whole blood (→ C and Table). **Plasma** is the fluid portion of the blood in which electrolytes, nutrients, metabolites, vitamins, hormones, gases, and proteins are dissolved.

**Plasma proteins** (→ Table) are involved in humoral immune defense and maintain oncotic pressure, which helps to keep the blood volume constant. By *binding to plasma proteins*, compounds insoluble in water can be transported in blood, and many substances

**Blood volume** in liters relative to body weight (BW)  
♂  $0.041 \times \text{BW (kg)} + 1.53$ , ♀  $0.047 \times \text{BW (kg)} + 0.86$

**Hematocrit** (cell volume/ blood volume):  
♂ 0.40–0.54 Females: 0.37–0.47

**Erythrocytes** ( $10^{12}/\text{L}$  of blood =  $10^6/\mu\text{L}$  of blood):  
♂ 4.6–5.9 ♀ 4.2–5.4

**Hemoglobin** (g/L of blood):  
♂ 140–180 ♀ 120–160

**MCH, MCV, MCHC**—mean corpuscular (MC), hemoglobin (Hb), MC volume, MC Hb concentration → C

**Leukocytes** ( $10^9/\text{L}$  of blood =  $10^3/\mu\text{L}$  of blood):  
3–11 (64% granulocytes, 31% lymphocytes, 6% monocytes)

**Platelets** ( $10^9/\text{L}$  of blood =  $10^3/\mu\text{L}$  of blood):  
♂ 170–360 ♀ 180–400

**Plasma proteins** (g/L of serum):  
66–85 (including 55–64% albumin)

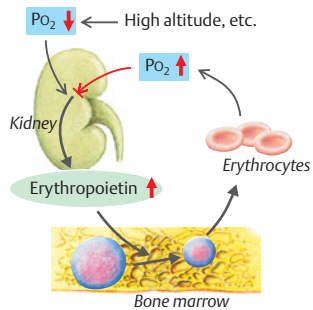
(e.g., heme) can be protected from breakdown and renal excretion. The binding of small molecules to plasma proteins reduces their osmotic efficacy. Many plasma proteins are involved in blood clotting and fibrinolysis. **Serum** forms when fibrinogen separates from plasma in the process of blood clotting.

The **formation of blood cells** occurs in the red bone marrow of flat bone in adults and in the spleen and liver of the fetus. Hematopoietic tissues contain pluripotent **stem cells** which, with the aid of hematopoietic growth factors (see below), develop into myeloid, erythroid and lymphoid precursor cells. Since pluripotent stem cells are autoreproductive, their existence is ensured throughout life. In *lymphocyte development*, lymphocytes arising from lymphoid precursor cells first undergo special differentiation (in the thymus or bone marrow) and are later formed in the spleen and lymph nodes as well as in the bone marrow. All other precursor cells are produced by *myelocytopenesis*, that is, the entire process of proliferation, maturation, and release into the bloodstream occurs in the bone marrow. Two hormones, erythropoietin and thrombopoietin, are involved in myelopoiesis. *Thrombopoietin* (formed mainly in the liver) promotes the maturation and development of megakaryocytes from which the platelets are split off. A number of other growth factors affect blood cell formation in bone marrow via paracrine mechanisms.

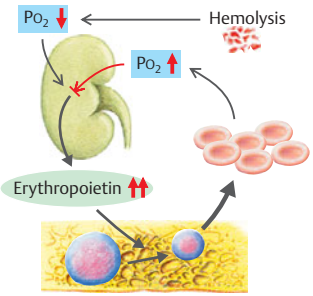
*Erythropoietin* promotes the **maturation and proliferation of red blood cells**. It is secreted by the liver in the fetus, and chiefly by the kidney (ca. 90%) in postnatal life. In response to an oxygen deficiency (due to high altitudes, hemolysis, etc.; → A), erythropoietin secretion increases, larger numbers of red blood cells are produced, and the fraction of reticulocytes (young erythrocytes) in the blood rises. The **life span** of a red blood cell is around 120 days. Red blood cells regularly exit from arterioles in the splenic pulp and travel through small pores to enter the splenic sinus (→ B), where old red blood cells are sorted out and destroyed (*hemolysis*). Macrophages in the spleen, liver, bone marrow, etc. engulf and break down the cell fragments. *Heme*, the iron-containing group of hemoglobin (Hb) released during hemolysis, is broken down into bilirubin (→ p. 250), and the iron is recycled (→ p. 90).

**A. Regulation of RBC production**

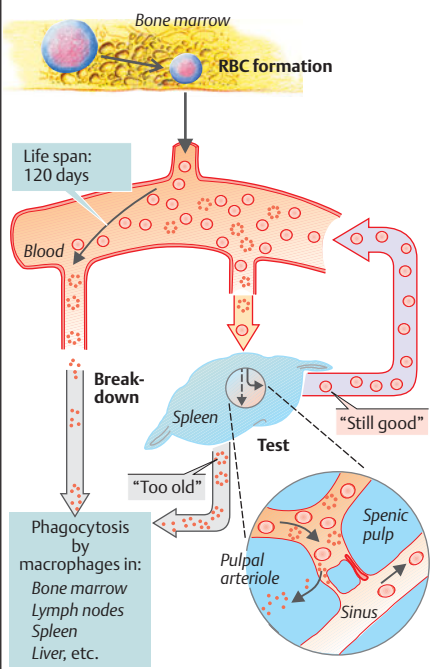
**1 Hypoxia**



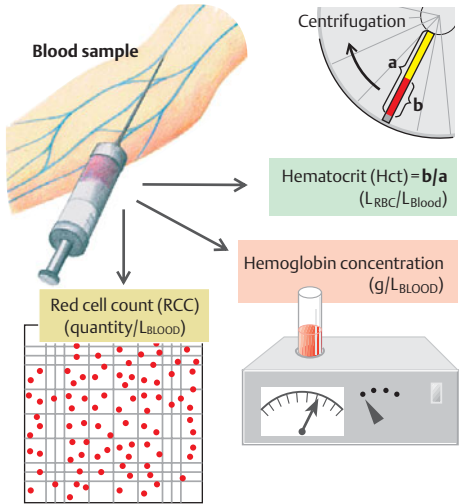
**2 Hemolysis**



**B. Life cycle of red blood cells**



**C. Erythrocyte parameters MCH, MCV and MCHC**



<b>MCH (mean Hb mass/RBC)</b>	
$= \frac{Hb\ conc.}{red\ cell\ count}$ (g/RBC)	Normal: 27 – 32 pg
<b>MCV (mean volume of one RBC)</b>	
$= \frac{Hct}{red\ cell\ count}$ (L/RBC)	Normal: 80 – 100 fl
<b>MCHC (mean Hb conc. in RBCs)</b>	
$= \frac{Hb\ conc.}{Hct}$ (g/L <sub>RBC</sub> )	Normal: 320 – 360 g/L

## Iron Metabolism and Erythropoiesis

Roughly  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the body's **iron pool** (ca. 2 g in women and 5 g in men) is bound to **hemoglobin** (Hb). About  $\frac{1}{4}$  exists as **stored iron** (ferritin, hemosiderin), the rest as **functional iron** (myoglobin, iron-containing enzymes). **Iron losses** from the body amount to about 1 mg/day in men and up to 2 mg/day in women due to menstruation, birth, and pregnancy. **Iron absorption** occurs mainly in the duodenum and varies according to need. The absorption of iron supplied by the diet usually amounts to about 3 to 15% in healthy individuals, but can increase to over 25% in individuals with iron deficiency ( $\rightarrow$  A1). A minimum daily **iron intake** of at least 10–20 mg/day is therefore recommended (women > children > men).

**Iron absorption** ( $\rightarrow$  A2). Fe(II) supplied by the diet (hemoglobin, myoglobin found chiefly in meat and fish) is absorbed relatively efficiently as a **heme-Fe(II)** upon protein cleavage. With the aid of **heme oxygenase**, Fe in mucosal cells cleaves from heme and oxidizes to Fe(III). The triferric form either remains in the mucosa as a ferritin-Fe(III) complex and returns to the lumen during cell turnover or enters the bloodstream. **Non-heme-Fe** can only be absorbed as Fe<sup>2+</sup>. Therefore, non-heme Fe(III) must first be reduced to Fe<sup>2+</sup> by **ferrereductase** (FR;  $\rightarrow$  A2) and ascorbate on the surface of the luminal mucosa ( $\rightarrow$  A2). Fe<sup>2+</sup> is probably absorbed through secondary active transport via an Fe<sup>2+</sup>-H<sup>+</sup> symport carrier (DCT1) (competition with Mn<sup>2+</sup>, Co<sup>2+</sup>, Cd<sup>2+</sup>, etc.). A **low chymous pH** is important since it (a) increases the H<sup>+</sup> gradient that drives Fe<sup>2+</sup> via DCT1 into the cell and (b) frees dietary iron from complexes. The absorption of iron into the bloodstream is regulated by the **intestinal mucosa**. When an iron deficiency exists, **aconitase** (an iron-regulating protein) in the cytosol binds with ferritin-mRNA, thereby inhibiting mucosal ferritin translation. As a result, larger quantities of absorbed Fe(II) can enter the bloodstream. Fe(II) in the blood is oxidized to Fe(III) by ceruloplasmin (and copper). It then binds to **apotransferrin**, a protein responsible for **iron transport in plasma** ( $\rightarrow$  A2, 3). **Transferrin** (=apotransferrin loaded with 2 Fe(III)), is taken up by endocytosis into erythroblasts and cells of the liver, placenta, etc. with the aid of

**transferrin receptors**. Once iron has been released to the target cells, apotransferrin again becomes available for uptake of iron from the intestine and macrophages (see below).

**Iron storage and recycling** ( $\rightarrow$  A3). **Ferritin**, one of the chief forms in which iron is stored in the body, occurs mainly in the intestinal mucosa, liver, bone marrow, red blood cells, and plasma. It contains binding pockets for up to 4500 Fe<sup>3+</sup> ions and provides rapidly available stores of iron (ca. 600 mg), whereas iron mobilization from **hemosiderin** is much slower (250 mg Fe in macrophages of the liver and bone marrow). Hb-Fe and heme-Fe released from malformed erythroblasts (so-called inefficient erythropoiesis) and hemolyzed red blood cells bind to haptoglobin and hemopexin, respectively. They are then engulfed by macrophages in the bone marrow or in the liver and spleen, respectively, resulting in 97% iron recycling ( $\rightarrow$  A3).

An **iron deficiency** inhibits Hb synthesis, leading to hypochromic microcytic anemia: MCH < 26 pg, MCV < 70 fL, Hb < 110 g/L. The primary causes are:

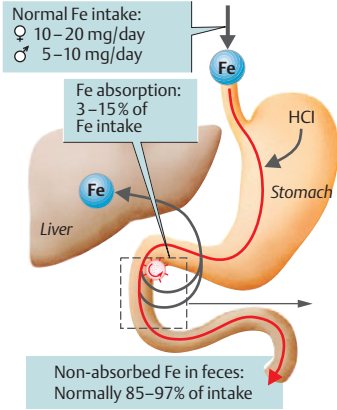
- ◆ blood loss (most common cause); 0.5 mg Fe are lost with each mL of blood;
- ◆ insufficient iron intake or absorption;
- ◆ increased iron requirement due to growth, pregnancy, breast-feeding, etc.;
- ◆ decreased iron recycling (due to chronic infection);
- ◆ apotransferrin defect (rare cause).

**Iron overload** most commonly damages the liver, pancreas and myocardium (hemochromatosis). If the iron supply bypasses the intestinal tract (iron injection), the transferrin capacity can be exceeded and the resulting quantities of free iron can induce iron poisoning.

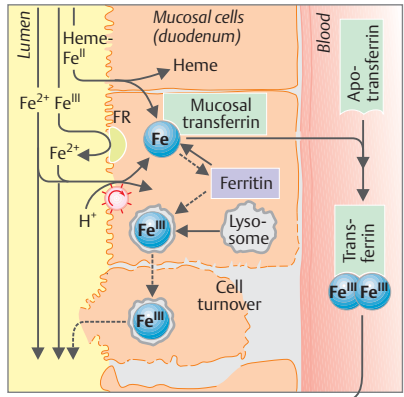
**B<sub>12</sub> vitamin (cobalamins) and folic acid** are also required for erythropoiesis ( $\rightarrow$  B). Deficiencies lead to **hyperchromic anemia** (decreased RCC, increased MCH). The main causes are lack of intrinsic factor (required for cobalamin resorption) and decreased folic acid absorption due to malabsorption (see also p.260) or an extremely unbalanced diet. Because of the large stores available, decreased cobalamin absorption does not lead to symptoms of deficiency until many years later, whereas folic acid deficiency leads to symptoms within a few months.

**A. Iron intake and metabolism**

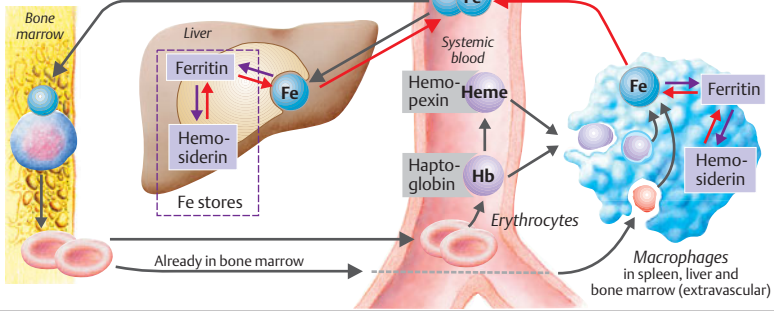
**1 Iron intake**



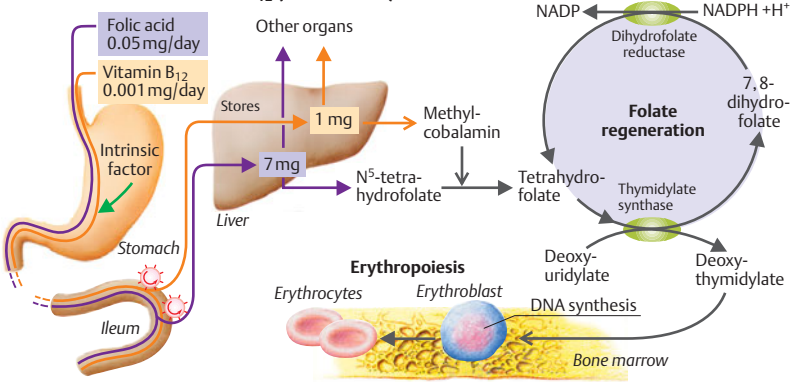
**2 Fe absorption**



**3 Fe storage and Fe recycling**



**B. Folic acid and vitamin B<sub>12</sub> (cobalamins)**



## Flow Properties of Blood

The **viscosity** ( $\eta$ ) of blood is higher than that of plasma due to its erythrocyte (RBC) content. Viscosity ( $\eta$ ) = 1/fluidity = shearing force ( $\tau$ )/shearing action ( $\dot{\gamma}$ ) [ $\text{Pa} \cdot \text{s}$ ]. The viscosity of blood rises with increasing *hematocrit* and decreasing *flow velocity*. Erythrocytes lack the major organelles and, therefore, are highly deformable. Because of the low viscosity of their contents, the liquid film-like characteristics of their membrane, and their high surface/volume ratio, the blood behaves more like an emulsion than a cell suspension, especially when it flows rapidly. The viscosity of *flowing* blood ( $\eta_{\text{blood}}$ ) passing through small arteries ( $\varnothing$  20  $\mu\text{m}$ ) is about 4 relative units (RU). This is twice as high as the viscosity of plasma ( $\eta_{\text{plasma}} = 2$  RU; water: 1 RU = 0.7 mPa  $\cdot$  s at 37  $^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

Because they are *highly deformable*, normal RBCs normally have no problem passing through capillaries or pores in the splenic vessels (see p. 89 B), although their diameter ( $\varnothing$  < 5  $\mu\text{m}$ ) is smaller than that of freely mobile RBCs (7  $\mu\text{m}$ ). Although the slowness of flow in small vessels causes the blood viscosity to increase, this is partially compensated for ( $\eta_{\text{blood}} \downarrow$ ) by the passage of red cells in single file through the center of small vessels (diameter < 300  $\mu\text{m}$ ) due to the **Fåhræus-Lindqvist effect** ( $\rightarrow$  A). Blood viscosity is only slightly higher than plasma viscosity in arterioles ( $\varnothing \approx 7 \mu\text{m}$ ), but rises again in capillaries ( $\varnothing \approx 4 \mu\text{m}$ ). A *critical increase* in blood viscosity can occur a) if blood flow becomes too sluggish and/or b) if the fluidity of red cells decreases due to hyperosmolality (resulting in crenation), cell inclusion, hemoglobin malformation (e.g., sickle-cell anemia), changes in the cell membrane (e.g., in old red cells), and so forth. Under such circumstances, the RBCs undergo aggregation (*rouleaux formation*), increasing the blood viscosity tremendously (up to 1000 RU). This can quickly lead to the cessation of blood flow in small vessels ( $\rightarrow$  p. 218).

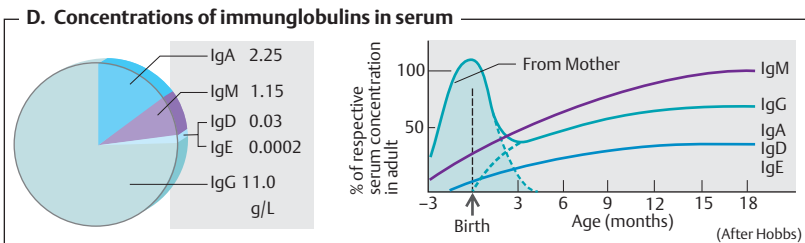
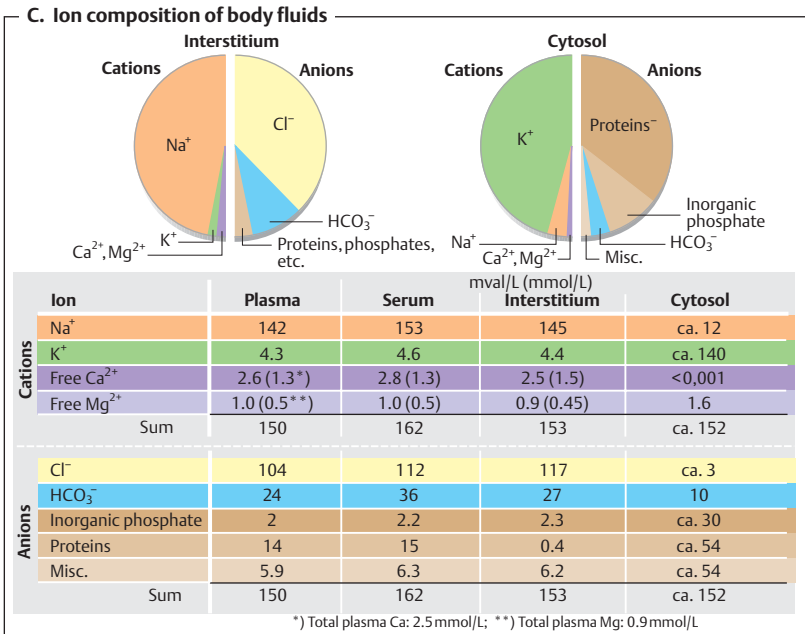
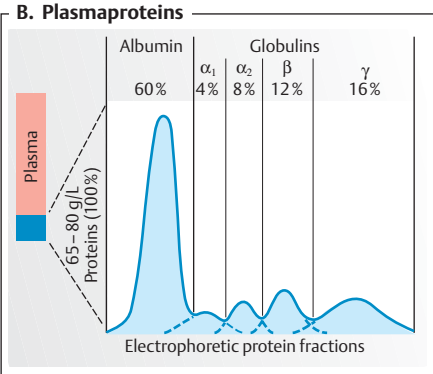
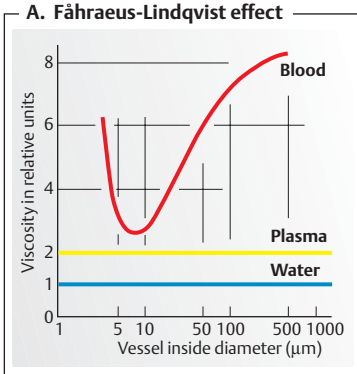
## Plasma, Ion Distribution

Plasma is obtained by preventing the blood from clotting and extracting the formed elements by centrifugation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 89 C). High

molecular weight proteins ( $\rightarrow$  B) as well as ions and non-charged substances with low molecular weights are dissolved in plasma. The sum of the concentrations of these particles yields a *plasma osmolality* of 290 mOsm/kgH<sub>2</sub>O ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 164, 377). The most abundant cation in plasma is Na<sup>+</sup>, and the most abundant anions are Cl<sup>-</sup> and HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>. Although plasma proteins carry a number of anionic net charges ( $\rightarrow$  C), their osmotic efficacy is smaller because the number of particles, not the ionic valency, is the determining factor.

The fraction of proteins able to leave the blood vessels is small and varies from one organ to another. Capillaries in the liver, for example, are much more permeable to proteins than those in the brain. The composition of *interstitial fluid* therefore differs significantly from that of plasma, especially with respect to protein content ( $\rightarrow$  C). A completely different composition is found in the *cytosol*, where K<sup>+</sup> is the prevailing cation, and where phosphates, proteins and other organic anions comprise the major fraction of anions ( $\rightarrow$  C). These fractions vary depending on cell type.

Sixty percent of all **plasma protein** ( $\rightarrow$  B) is albumin (35–46 g/L). Albumin serves as a vehicle for a number of substances in the blood. They are the main cause of colloidal osmotic pressure or, rather, *oncotic pressure* ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 208, 378), and they provide a protein reserve in times of protein deficiency. The  $\alpha_1$ ,  $\alpha_2$  and  $\beta$  globulins mainly serve to transport lipids (apolipoproteins), hemoglobin (haptoglobin), iron (apotransferrin), cortisol (transcortin), and cobalamins (transcobalamin). Most plasma factors for coagulation and fibrinolysis are also proteins. Most plasma *immunoglobulins* (Ig,  $\rightarrow$  D) belong to the group of  $\gamma$  globulins and serve as defense proteins (antibodies). IgG, the most abundant immunoglobulin (7–15 g/L), can cross the placental barrier (maternofetal transmission;  $\rightarrow$  D). Each Ig consists of two group-specific, heavy protein chains (IgG:  $\gamma$  chain, IgA:  $\alpha$  chain, IgM:  $\mu$  chain, IgD:  $\delta$  chain, IgE:  $\epsilon$  chain) and two light protein chains ( $\lambda$  or  $\kappa$  chain) linked by disulfide bonds to yield a characteristic Y-shaped configuration (see p. 95 A).



## Immune System

### Fundamental Principles

The body has *nonspecific (innate) immune defenses* linked with *specific (acquired) immune defenses* that counteract bacteria, viruses, fungi, parasites and foreign (non-self) macromolecules. They all function as **antigens**, i.e., substances that stimulate the specific immune system, resulting in the activation of antigen-specific **T lymphocytes (T cells)** and **B lymphocytes (B cells)**. In the process, B lymphocytes differentiate into *plasma cells* that secrete antigen-specific **antibodies (immunoglobulins, Ig)** (→ C). Ig function to neutralize and opsonize antigens and to activate the complement system (→ p.96). These mechanisms ensure that the respective antigen is *specifically recognized*, then eliminated by relatively nonspecific means. Some of the T and B cells have an *immunologic memory*.

*Precursor lymphocytes* without an antigen-binding receptor are *preprocessed* within the *thymus (T)* or *bone marrow (B)*. These organs produce up to  $10^8$  monospecific T or B cells, each of which is directed against a specific antigen. *Naive* T and B cells which have not previously encountered antigen circulate through the body (blood → peripheral lymphatic tissue → lymph → blood) and undergo **clonal expansion and selection** after contact with its specific antigen (usually in lymphatic tissue). The lymphocyte then begins to divide rapidly, producing numerous monospecific daughter cells. The progeny differentiates into plasma cells or “armed” T cells that initiate the elimination of the antigen.

**Clonal deletion** is a mechanism for eliminating lymphocytes with receptors directed against autologous (self) tissue. After first contact with their specific self-antigen, these lymphocytes are eliminated during the early stages of development in the thymus or bone marrow. Clonal deletion results in **central immunologic tolerance**. The ability of the immune system to distinguish between endogenous and foreign antigens is called **self/nonself recognition**. This occurs around the time of birth. All substances encountered by that time are recognized as endogenous (self); others are identified as foreign (nonself). The inability to distinguish self from nonself results in *autoimmune disease*.

At first contact with a virus (e.g., measles virus), the nonspecific immune system usually cannot prevent the viral proliferation and the development of the measles. The specific immune system, with its T-killer cells (→ B2) and Ig (first IgM, then IgG; → C3), responds slowly: **primary immune response or sensitization**. Once activated, it can eliminate the pathogen, i.e., the individual recovers from the measles. **Secondary immune response**: When infected a second time, specific IgG is produced much more rapidly. The virus is quickly eliminated, and the disease does not develop a second time. This type of protection against infectious disease is called **immunity**. It can be achieved by vaccinating the individual with a specific antigen (*active immunization*). *Passive immunization* can be achieved by administering ready-made Ig (immune serum).

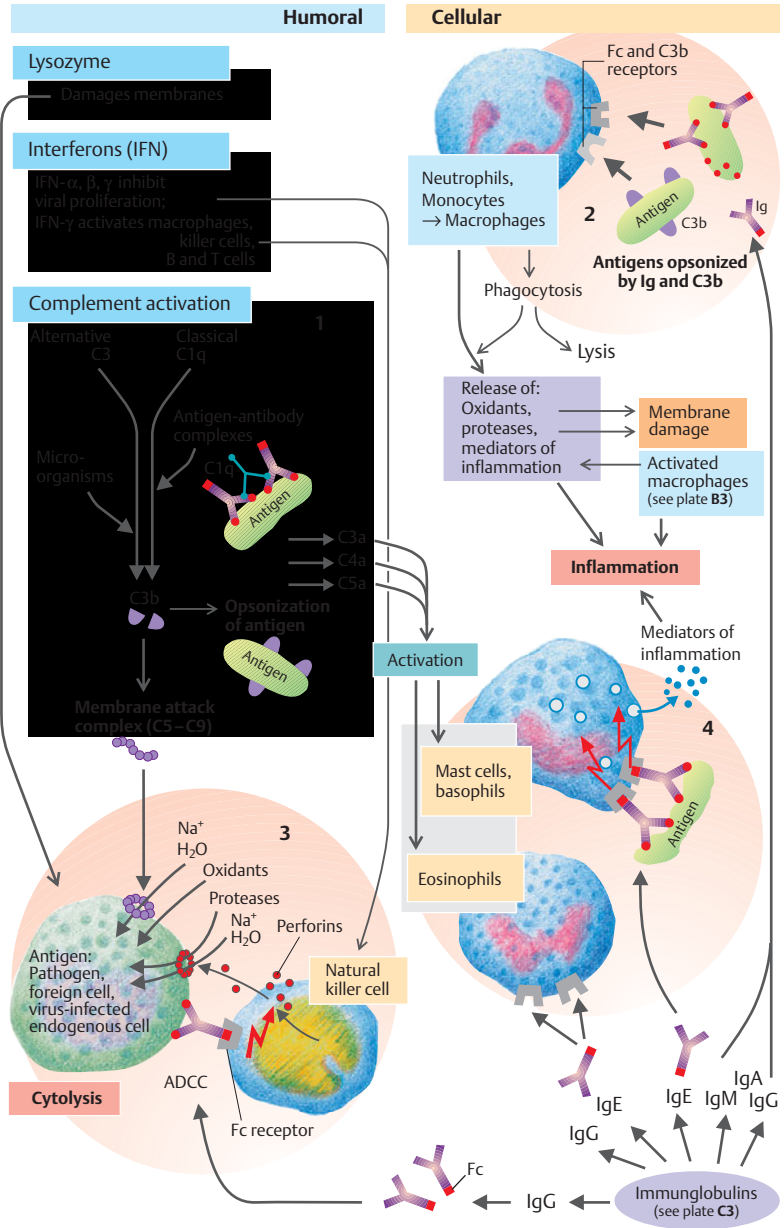
### Nonspecific Immunity

*Lysozyme* and *complement factors* dissolved in plasma (→ A1) as well as *natural killer cells (NK cells)* and phagocytes, especially *neutrophils* and *macrophages* that arise from *monocytes* that migrate into the tissues (→ A2) play an important role in nonspecific immunity. Neutrophils, monocytes, and eosinophils circulate throughout the body. They have chemokine receptors (e.g., CXCR1 and 2 for IL-8) and are attracted by various *chemokines* (e.g., IL-8) to the sites where microorganisms have invaded (*chemotaxis*). These cells are able to migrate. With the aid of selectins, they dock onto the endothelium (*margination*), penetrate the endothelium (*diapedesis*), and engulf and damage the microorganism with the aid of *lysozyme*, *oxidants* such as  $H_2O_2$ , oxygen radicals ( $O_2^-$ ,  $OH^-$ ,  $^1O_2$ ), and *nitric oxide* (NO). This is followed by digestion (lysis) of the microorganism with the aid of lysosomal enzymes. If the antigen (parasitic worm, etc.) is too large for digestion, other substances involved in nonspecific immunity (e.g., proteases and cytotoxic proteins) are also exocytosed by these cells.

Reducing enzymes such as catalase and superoxide dismutase usually keep the oxidant concentration low. This is often discontinued, especially when macrophages are activated (→ below and B3), to fully exploit the bactericidal effect of the oxidants. However,



**A. Nonspecific immune defenses enhanced by specific antibodies**





the resulting *inflammation* (→ **A2, 4**) also damages cells involved in nonspecific defense and, in some cases, even other endogenous cells.

**Oponization** (→ **A1, 2**) involves the binding of *opsonins*, e.g., IgG or complement factor C3b, to specific domains of an antigen, thereby enhancing phagocytosis. It is the only way to make bacteria with a polysaccharide capsule phagocytosable. The phagocytes have **receptors** on their surface for the (antigen-independent) Fc segment of IgG as well as for C3b. Thus, the antigen-bound IgG and C3b bind to their respective receptors, thereby linking the rather unspecific process of phagocytosis with the specific immune defense system. Carbohydrate-binding proteins (lectins) of plasma, called *collectins* (e.g. *mannose-binding protein*), which dock onto microbial cell walls, also acts as unspecific opsonins.

The **complement cascade** is activated by antigens opsonized by Ig (classical pathway) as well as by non-opsonophilic antigens (alternative pathway) (→ **A1**). Complement components C3a, C4a and C5a activate basophils and eosinophils (→ **A4**). Complement components C5–C9 generate the *membrane-attack complex* (MAC), which perforates and kills (Gram-negative) bacteria by **cytolysis** (→ **A3**). This form of defense is assisted by **lysozyme** (= muramidase), an enzyme that breaks down murein-containing bacterial cell walls. It occurs in granulocytes, plasma, lymph, and secretions.

**Natural killer (NK) cells** are large, granular lymphocytes specialized in nonspecific defense against viruses, mycobacteria, tumor cells etc. They recognize infected cells and tumor cells on “foreign surfaces” and dock via their Fc receptors on IgG-opsonized surface antigens (*antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity*, **ADCC**; → **A3**). *Perforins* exocytosed by NK cells form pores in target cell walls, thereby allowing their subsequent lysis (*cytolysis*). This not only makes the virus unable to proliferate (enzyme apparatus of the cell), but also makes it (and other intracellular pathogens) subject to attack from other defense mechanisms.

Various **interferons (IFNs)** stimulate NK cell activity: IFN- $\alpha$ , IFN- $\beta$  and, to a lesser degree, IFN- $\gamma$ . IFN- $\alpha$  and IFN- $\beta$  are released mainly from leukocytes and fibro-

blasts, while IFN- $\gamma$  is liberated from activated T cells and NK cells. Virus-infected cells release large quantities of IFNs, resulting in heightened viral resistance in non-virus-infected cells. **Defensins** are cytotoxic peptides released by phagocytes. They can exert unspecific cytotoxic effects on pathogens resistant to NK cells (e.g., by forming ion channels in the target cell membrane).

**Macrophages** arise from monocytes that migrate into the tissues. Some macrophages are freely mobile (*free macrophages*), whereas others (*fixed macrophages*) remain restricted to a certain area, such as the hepatic sinus (Kupffer cells), the pulmonary alveoli, the intestinal serosa, the splenic sinus, the lymph nodes, the skin (Langerhans cells), the synovia (synovial A cells), the brain (microglia), or the endothelium (e.g., in the renal glomeruli). The **mononuclear phagocytic system (MPS)** is the collective term for the circulating monocytes in the blood and macrophages in the tissues. Macrophages recognize relatively unspecific carbohydrate components on the surface of bacteria and ingest them by phagocytosis. The macrophages have to be activated if the pathogens survive within the phagosomes (→ below and **B3**).

#### Specific Immunity: Cell-Mediated Immune Responses

Since specific cell-mediated immune responses through “armed” T effector cells need a few days to become effective, this is called *delayed-type immune* response. It requires the participation of **professional antigen-presenting cells (APCs)**: dendritic cells, macrophages and B cells. APCs process and present antigenic peptides to the T cells in association with *MHC-I* or *MHC-II proteins*, thereby delivering the co-stimulatory signal required for activation of naive T cells. (The gene loci for these proteins are the class I (MHC-I) and class II (MHC-II) major histocompatibility complexes (MHC)), **HLA (human leukocyte antigen)** is the term for MHC proteins in humans. Virus-infected dendritic cells, which are mainly located in lymphatic tissue, most commonly serve as APCs. Such HLA-restricted antigen presentation (→ **B1**) involves the insertion of an antigen in the binding pocket of an HLA protein. An *ICAM* (intercellular adhesion molecule) on the surface of the APC then binds to

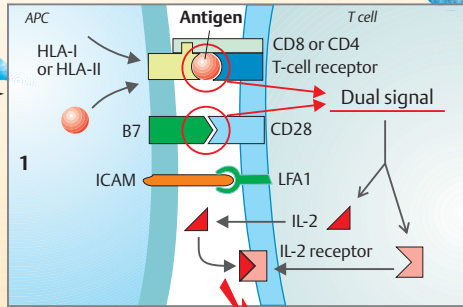
## B. Specific immunity: T-cell activation

### Antigen-presenting cells:

- Macrophages
- Dendritic cells
- B cells

Example:  
Dendritic cell

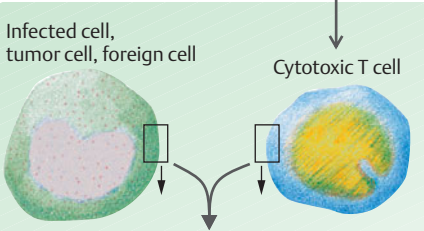
**T lymphocytes**  
 CD8<sup>+</sup> T cells recognize antigen in HLA (MHC)-I  
 CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells recognize antigen in HLA (MHC)-II



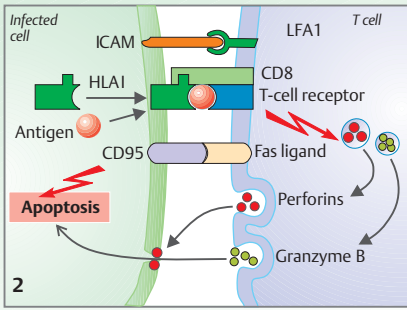
**T-cell proliferation**  
(clonal expansion and differentiation)

CD8/HLA-I

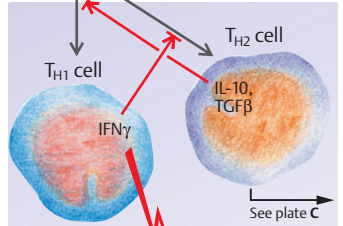
CD4/HLA-II



Cytotoxic T cell



2



See plate C

**Macrophage activation**

3

**Inflammation**

**LFA1** (lymphocyte function-associated antigen 1) on the T cell membrane. When a T cell specific for the antigen in question docks onto the complex, the bond is strengthened and the **APC dual signal** stimulates the activation and clonal selection of the T cell (→ **B1**).

The **APC dual signal** consists of **1) recognition of the antigen** (class I or class II HLA-restricted antigen) by the *T cell receptor* and its *co-receptor* and **2) a costimulatory signal**, that is, the binding of the B7 protein (on the APC) with the CD28 protein on the T cell (→ **B1**). CD8 molecules on T cytotoxic cells ( $T_c$  cells = T-killer cells) and CD4 molecules on T helper cells ( $T_H$  cells) function as the co-receptors. When antigen binding occurs without co-stimulation (e.g., in the liver, where there are no APCs), the lymphocyte is inactivated, i.e., it becomes **anergic**, and *peripheral immunologic tolerance* develops.

The T cell can receive APC dual signals from infected macrophages or B cells, provided their receptors have bound the antigen in question (e.g., insect or snake venom or allergens). The APC dual signal induces the T cell to express *interleukin-2 (IL-2)* and to bind the respective *IL-2 receptor* (→ **B1**). IL-2 is the actual *signal for clonal expansion* of these monospecific T cells. It functions through autocrine and paracrine mechanisms. Potent *immunosuppression*, e.g., for organ transplantation, can be achieved with IL-2 inhibitors like *cyclosporin A*.

During clonal expansion, the T cells differentiate into three "armed" subtypes, i.e., *T cytotoxic cells (T<sub>c</sub> cells or T killer cells)* and *T helper cells type 1 (T<sub>H1</sub> cells)* and type 2 (**T<sub>H2</sub> cells**). These cells no longer require costimulation and express a different type of adhesion molecule (VLA-4 instead of L-selectins) by which they now dock onto the endothelium of inflamed tissues (rather than to lymphatic tissue like their naïve precursors).

**T killer cells** develop from naïve CD8-containing (CD8<sup>+</sup>) T cells after HLA-I-restricted antigen presentation (→ **B2**). **Endogenous antigen presentation** occurs when the HLA-I protein takes up the antigen (virus, cytosolic protein) from the cytosol of the APC, which is usually the case. With its CD8-associated T-cell receptor, the T killer cell is able to recognize HLA-I-restricted antigens on (virus) infected endogenous cells and tumor cells as well as on cells of transplanted organs. It subsequently drives the cells into **apoptosis** (programmed cell death) or **necrosis**. Binding of the *Fas lig-*

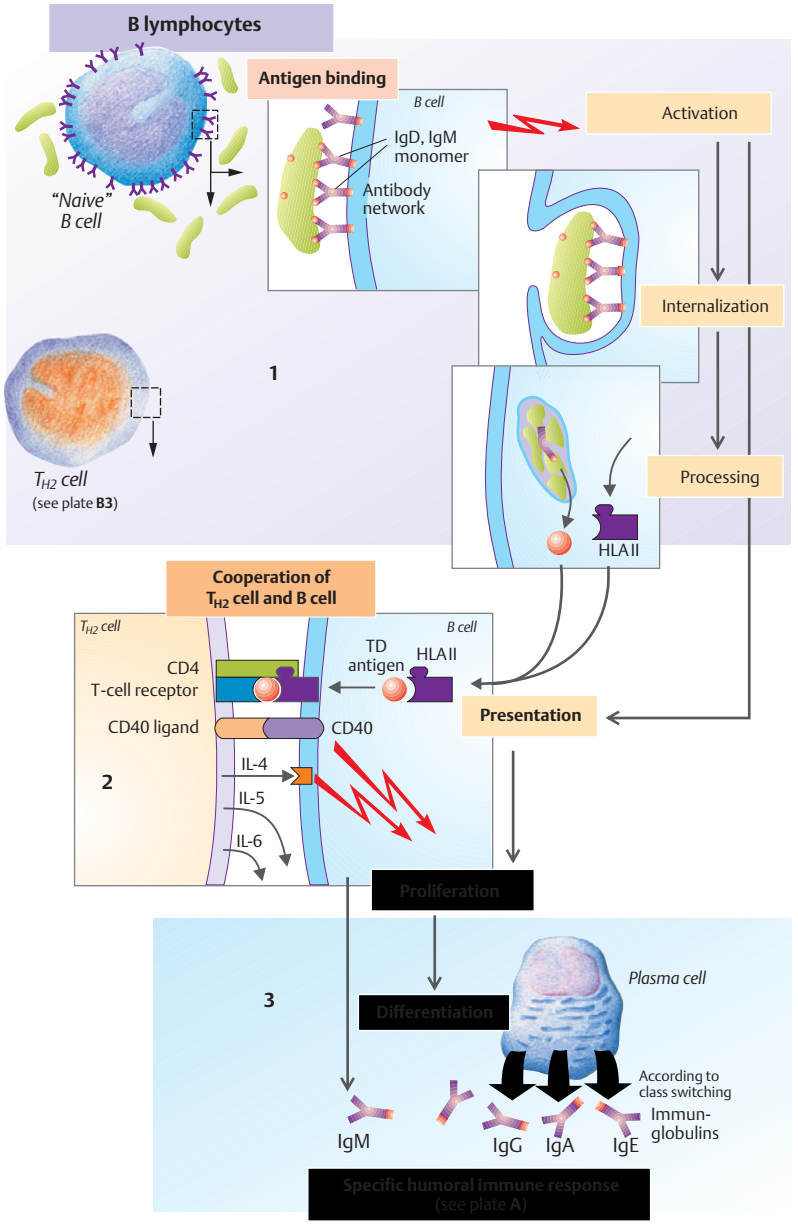
*and* to CD95 (=Fas) plays a role, as does granzyme B (protease), which enters the cell through pores created by exocytosed *perforins* (→ **B2**).

Once **HLA-II-restricted presentation** (→ **B1**) of antigens from intracellular vesicles (e.g., phagocytosed bacteria or viral envelope proteins = **exogenous antigen presentation**) has occurred, naïve CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells transform into immature T helper cells (*T<sub>H0</sub>*), which differentiate into *T<sub>H1</sub>* or *T<sub>H2</sub>* cells. **T<sub>H1</sub> cells** induce *inflammatory responses* and promote the activation of macrophages with the aid of IFN- $\gamma$  (→ **B3**), while **T<sub>H2</sub> cells** are required for *B-cell activation* (→ **C2**). *T<sub>H1</sub>* and *T<sub>H2</sub>* cells mutually *suppress* each other, so only one of the two types will predominate in any given cell-mediated immune response (→ **B3**).

#### Specific Immunity: Humoral Immune Responses

**Humoral immunity** arise from **B cells** (→ **C1**). Numerous *IgD* and *IgM monomers* anchored onto the B-cell surface bind with the respective antigen (dissolved IgM occurs in pentameric form). A resulting network of antigen-bound Ig leads to *internalization* and *processing of the antigen-antibody complex* in B cells. However, **B-cell activation** requires a second signal, which can come directly from a thymus-independent (TI) antigen (e.g., bacterial polysaccharide) or indirectly from a **T<sub>H2</sub> cell** in the case of a thymus-dependent (TD) antigen. In the latter case, the B cell presents the HLA-II-restricted TD antigen to the *T<sub>H2</sub>* cell (→ **C2**). If the *CD4-associated T-cell receptor (TCR)* of the *T<sub>H2</sub>* cell recognizes the antigen, *CD40 ligands* are expressed on the *T<sub>H2</sub>* surface (CD40 ligands bind with CD40 proteins on B cells) and **IL-4** is secreted. The CD40 ligand and IL-4 (later also IL-5 and IL-6) stimulate the B cell to undergo *clonal selection*, IgM secretion, and differentiation into **plasma cells** (→ **C3**). Before differentiation, **class switching** can occur, i.e., a different type of Ig heavy chain (→ p.92) can be expressed by altered DNA splicing (→ p.8f.). In this manner, IgM is converted into IgA, IgG or IgE (→ p.92). All Ig types arising from a given B-cell clone remain monospecific for the same antigen. The plasma cells formed after class switching produce only a single type of Ig.

C. Specific immunity: B-cell activation



## Hypersensitivity Reactions (Allergies)

Allergy is a specific, exaggerated immune response to a (usually harmless) foreign substance or antigen ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.). **Allergens** are antigens that induce allergies. Small molecules conjugated to endogenous proteins can also have antigenic effects. In this case, they are referred to as incomplete antigens or **haptens**. The heightened immune response to secondary antigen contact ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.) normally has a protective effect. In allergies, however, the first contact with an antigen induces sensitization (allergization), and subsequent exposure leads to the destruction of healthy cells and intact tissue. This can also result in damage to endogenous proteins and *autoantibody* production. *Inflammatory reactions* are the main causes of damage.

**Types of hypersensitivity reactions:** **Type I** reactions are common. On first contact, the allergen internalized by B cells is presented to  $T_{H2}$  cells. The B cell then proliferates and differentiates into plasma cells (see p. 98), which release *immunoglobulin E (IgE)*. The Fc fragment of IgE binds to *mast cells* and *basophils*. On subsequent contact, the antigens bind to the already available IgE-linked mast cells ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). Due to the rapid release of mostly vasoactive mediators of inflammation such as histamine, leukotrienes and platelet-activating factor (PAF), an immediate reaction (*anaphylaxis*) occurs within seconds or minutes: **immediate type hypersensitivity**. This is the mechanism by which allergens breathed into the lungs trigger hay fever and asthma attacks. The vasodilatory effect of a generalized type I reaction can lead to *anaphylactic shock* (see p. 218).

In **type II** reactions, the immune system mainly attacks cells with antigenic properties. This can be attributable to the transfusion of the erythrocytes of the wrong blood group or the binding of *haptens* (e.g., medications) to endogenous cells. The binding of haptens to platelets can, for example, result in thrombocytopenia.

**Type III** reactions are caused by antigen-antibody complexes. If more antigen than antibody is available, *soluble antigen-antibody complexes* circulate in blood for a long time ( $\rightarrow$  **B**) and settle mainly in the capillaries, making the capillary wall subject to attack

by the complement system. This leads to the development of **serum sickness** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**), the main symptoms of which are joint pain and fever.

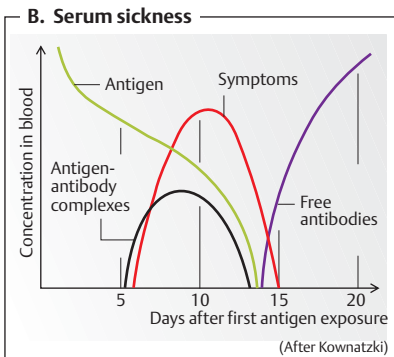
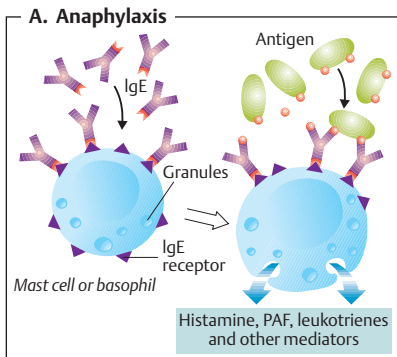
**Type IV** reactions are mainly mediated by  $T_{H1}$  cells,  $T_C$  cells, and macrophages. Since symptoms peak 2 to 4 days after antigen contact, this is called **delayed type hypersensitivity**. The main triggers are mycobacteria (e.g. Tbc), other foreign proteins, and haptens, such as medications and plant substances, such as poison ivy. Primary *transplant rejection* is also a type IV hypersensitivity reaction. *Contact dermatitis* is also a type IV reaction caused by various haptens (e.g., nickel in jewelry).

## Blood Groups

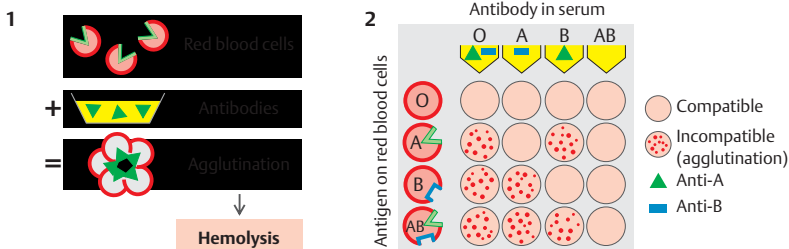
A person's blood group is determined by the type of antigen (certain glycolipids) present on the red blood cells (RBCs). In the **ABO system**, the antigens are A and B ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). In blood type A, antigen A (on RBC) and anti-B antibody (in serum) are present; in type B, B and anti-A are present; in type AB, A and B are present, no antibody; in type O (zero), no antigen but anti-A and anti-B are present.

When giving a **blood transfusion**, it is important that the blood groups of donor and recipient match, i.e. that the RBCs of the donor (e.g. A) do not come in contact with the respective antibodies (e.g. anti-A) in the recipient. If the donor's blood is the wrong type, *agglutination* (cross-linking by IgM) and *hemolysis* (bursting) of the donor's RBCs will occur ( $\rightarrow$  **C1**). Donor and recipient blood types must therefore be determined and *cross-matched* ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**) prior to a blood transfusion. Since ABO antibodies belong to the IgM class, they usually do not cross the placenta.

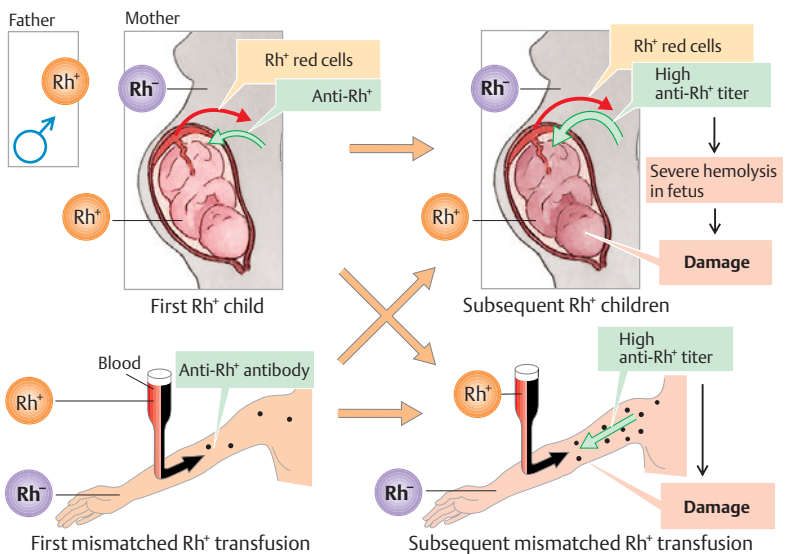
In the **Rh system**, antibodies against rhesus antigens (C, D, E) on RBCs do not develop unless *prior sensitization* has occurred. D is by far the most antigenic. A person is Rh-positive (Rh+) when D is present on their RBCs (most people), and Rh-negative (Rh-) when D is absent. Anti-D antibodies belong to the IgG class of immunoglobulins, which are capable of crossing the placenta ( $\rightarrow$  p. 93 D). Rh- individuals can form anti-Rh+ (= anti-D) antibodies, e.g., after sensitization by a mismatched blood transfusion or of an Rh- mother by an Rh+ fetus. Subsequent exposure to the mismatched blood leads to a severe antigen-antibody reaction characterized by intravascular agglutination and hemolysis ( $\rightarrow$  **D**).



### C. ABO blood group incompatibility



### D. Rh sensitization of mother by child or by Rh-mismatched transfusion



## Hemostasis

The hemostatic system stops bleeding. *Thrombocytes (platelets)*, *coagulation (or clotting) factors in plasma* and *vessel walls* interact to seal leaks in blood vessels. The damaged vessel constricts (release of endothelin), and platelets aggregate at the site of puncture (and attract more platelets) to seal the leak by a *platelet plug*. The time required for sealing (ca. 2 to 4 min) is called the *bleeding time*. Subsequently, the coagulation system produces a fibrin meshwork. Due to covalent cross-linking of fibrin, it turns to a *fibrin clot* or *thrombus* that retracts afterwards, thus reinforcing the seal. Later recanalization of the vessel can be achieved by fibrinolysis.

**Platelets** ( $170\text{--}400 \cdot 10^3$  per  $\mu\text{L}$  of blood; half-life  $\approx 10$  days) are small non-nucleated bodies that are pinched off from megakaryocytes in the bone marrow. When an endothelial injury occurs, platelets adhere to subendothelial collagen fibers ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) bridged by **von Willebrand's factor** (vWF), which is formed by endothelial cells and circulates in the plasma complexed with factor VIII. Glycoprotein complex GP Ib/IX on the platelets are vWF receptors. This *adhesion* activates **platelets** ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). They begin to release substances ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**), some of which promote platelet adhesiveness (vWF). Others like serotonin, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and thromboxane  $A_2$  (TXA $_2$ ) promote vasoconstriction. Vasoconstriction and platelet *contraction* slow the blood flow. Mediators released by platelets enhance platelet activation and attract and activate more platelets: ADP, TXA $_2$ , platelet-activating factor (PAF). The shape of activated platelets change drastically ( $\rightarrow$  **A4**). Discoid platelets become spherical and exhibit pseudopodia that intertwine with those of other platelets. This *platelet aggregation* ( $\rightarrow$  **A5**) is further enhanced by thrombin and stabilized by GP IIb/IIIa. Once a platelet changes its shape, GP IIb/IIIa is expressed on the platelet surface, leading to fibrinogen binding and platelet aggregation. GP IIb/IIIa also increases the adhesiveness of platelets, which makes it easier for them to stick to subendothelial fibronectin.

I	Fibrinogen	Half-life (h): 96
II <sup>K</sup>	Prothrombin	72
III	Tissue thromboplastin	
IV	Ionized calcium (Ca <sup>2+</sup> )	
V	Proaccelerin	20
VII <sup>K</sup>	Proconvertin	5
VIII	Antihemophilic factor A	12
IX <sup>K</sup>	Antihemophilic factor B; plasma thromboplastin component (PTC); Christmas factor	24
X <sup>K</sup>	Stuart–Prower factor	30
XI	Plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA)	48
XII	Hageman factor	50
XIII	Fibrin-stabilizing factor (FSF)	250
–	Prekallikrein (PKK); Fletcher factor	
–	High-molecular-weight kininogen (HMK); Fitzgerald factor	

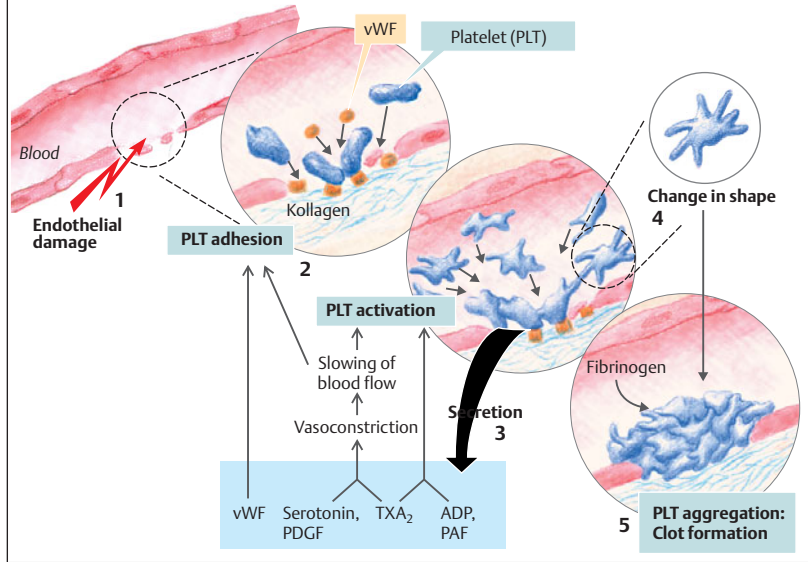
Several **coagulation factors** are involved in the clotting process. Except for Ca<sup>2+</sup>, they are proteins formed in the *liver* ( $\rightarrow$  **B** and Table). Factors labeled with a “K” in the table (as well as protein C and protein S, see below) are produced with **vitamin K**, an essential cofactor in posttranslational  $\gamma$ -carboxylation of glutamate residues of the factors. These  $\gamma$ -carboxyglutamyl groups are chelators of Ca<sup>2+</sup>. They are required for Ca<sup>2+</sup>-mediated complex formation of factors on the surface of phospholipid layers (PL), particularly on the platelet membrane (platelet factor 3). Vitamin K is oxidized in the reaction and has to be re-reduced by liver epoxide reductase (*vitamin K recycling*). **Ca<sup>2+</sup> ions** are required for several steps in the clotting process ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). When added to blood samples in vitro, citrate, oxalate, and EDTA bind with Ca<sup>2+</sup> ions, thereby preventing the blood from clotting. This effect is desirable when performing various blood tests.

**Activation of blood clotting** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Most coagulation factors normally are not active, or *zymogenic*. Their activation requires a cascade of events (An “a” added to the factor number means “activated”). Thus, even small amounts of a trigger factor lead to rapid blood clotting. The trigger can be endogenous (within a vessel) or exogenous (external). **Endogenous activation** ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**) occurs at an *endothelial defect*. XII is activated to XIIa by the contact with

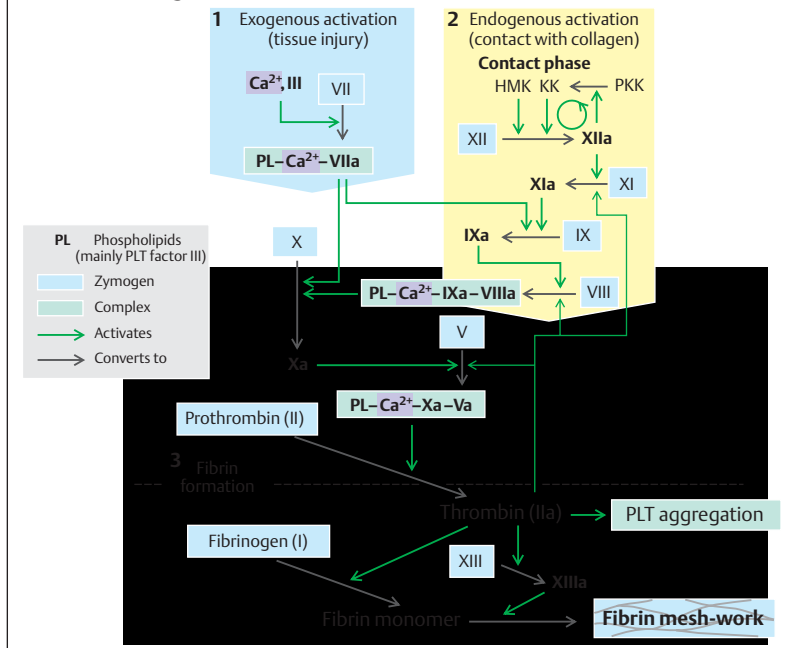




**A. Platelet-mediated hemostasis**



**B. Blood clotting**





negative charges of subendothelial collagen and sulfatide groups. This stimulates the conversion of prekallikrein (PKK) to kallikrein (KK), which enhances XII activation (positive feedback). Next, XIIa activates XI to XIa, which converts IX to IXa and, subsequently, VIII to VIIIa. Complexes formed by conjugation of IXa and VIIIa with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on phospholipid (PL) layers activate X. **Exogenous activation** now merges with endogenous activation ( $\rightarrow$  B1). In relatively large injuries, *tissue thrombokinase* (factor III), present on of nonvascular cells, is exposed to the blood, resulting in activation of VII. VII forms complexes with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and phospholipids, thereby activating X (and IX).

**Fibrin formation ( $\rightarrow$  B3).** After activation of X to Xa by endogenous and/or exogenous activation (the latter is faster), Xa activates V and conjugates with Va and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on the surface of membranes. This complex, called *prothrombinase*, activates prothrombin (II) to **thrombin** (IIa). In the process,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binds with phospholipids, and the N-terminal end of prothrombin splits off. The thrombin liberated in the process now activates (a) fibrinogen (I) to **fibrin** (Ia), (b) fibrin-stabilizing factor (XIII), and (c) V, VIII and XI (positive feedback). The single (monomeric) fibrin threads form a soluble meshwork (*fibrin<sub>s</sub>*, “s” for *soluble*) which XIIIa ultimately stabilizes to *insoluble fibrin* (*fibrin<sub>i</sub>*). XIIIa is a transamidase that links the side chains of the fibrin threads via covalent bonds.

## Fibrinolysis and Thromboprotection

To prevent excessive clotting and occlusion of major blood vessels (*thrombosis*) and *embolisms* due to clot migration, fibrin<sub>s</sub> is re-dissolved (fibrinolysis) and inhibitory factors are activated as soon as vessel repair is initiated.

**Fibrinolysis** is mediated by **plasmin** ( $\rightarrow$  C). Various factors in blood (plasma kallikrein, factor XIIa), tissues (tissue plasminogen activator, tPA, endothelial etc.), and urine (urokinase) activate *plasminogen* to plasmin. Streptokinase, staphylokinase and tPA are used therapeutically to activate plasminogen. This is useful for dissolving a fresh thrombus located, e.g., in a coronary artery. Fibrin is split into fibrinopeptides which inhibit thrombin

formation and polymerization of fibrin to prevent further clot formation. *Alpha<sub>2</sub>-antiplasmin* is an endogenous inhibitor of fibrinolysis. *Tranexamic acid* is administered therapeutically for the same purpose.

**Thromboprotection. Antithrombin III**, a serpin, is the most important thromboprotective plasma protein ( $\rightarrow$  D).

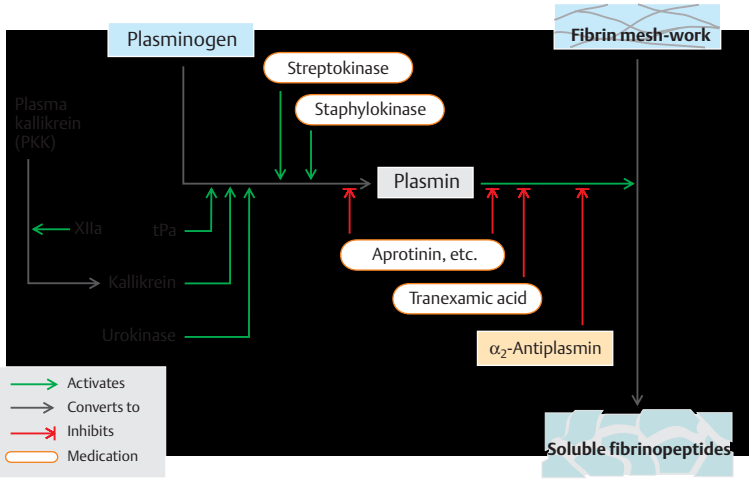
It inactivates the protease activity of thrombin and factors IXa, Xa, XIa and XIIa by forming complexes with them. This is enhanced by **heparin** and heparin-like endothelial glucosaminoglycans. Heparin is produced naturally by mast cells and granulocytes, and synthetic heparin is injected for therapeutic purposes.

The binding of thrombin with endothelial **thrombomodulin** provides further thromboprotection. Only in this form does thrombin have anticoagulant effects ( $\rightarrow$  D, negative feedback). Thrombomodulin activates protein C to Ca which, after binding to protein S, deactivates coagulation factors Va and VIIIa. The synthesis of proteins C and S is vitamin K-dependent. Other plasma proteins that inhibit thrombin are  **$\alpha_2$ -macroglobulin** and  **$\alpha_1$ -antitrypsin** ( $\rightarrow$  D). Endothelial cells secrete **tissue thromboplastin inhibitor**, a substance that inhibits exogenous activation of coagulation, and **prostacyclin** (= prostaglandin I<sub>2</sub>), which inhibits platelet adhesion to the normal endothelium.

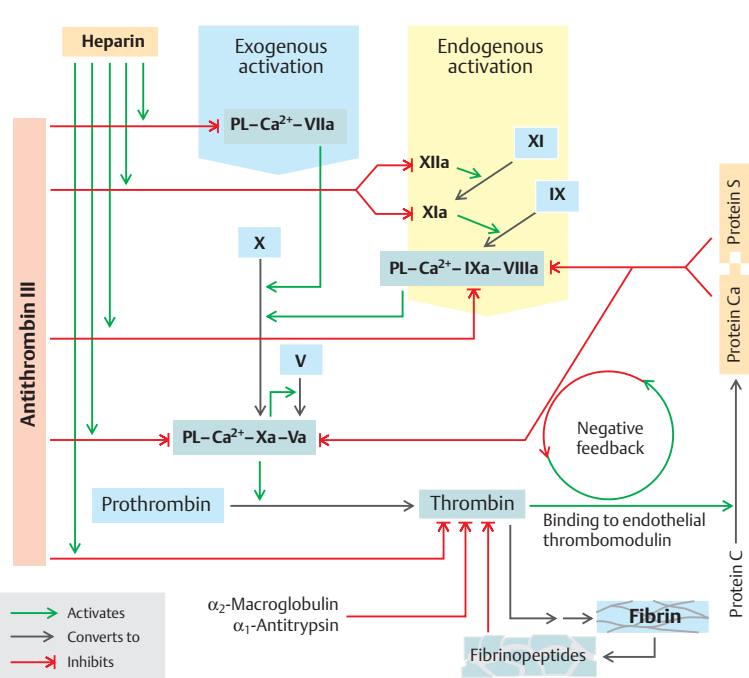
**Anticoagulants** are administered for thromboprotection in patients at risk of blood clotting. Injected **heparin** has immediate action. Oral coumarin derivatives (phenprocoumon, warfarin, acenocoumarol) are **vitamin K antagonists** that work by inhibiting liver epoxide reductase, which is necessary for vitamin D recycling. Therefore, these drugs do not take effect until the serum concentration of vitamin K-dependent coagulation factors has decreased. **Cyclooxygenase inhibitors**, such as aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid), inhibit platelet aggregation by blocking thromboxane A<sub>2</sub> (TXA<sub>2</sub>) synthesis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 269).

**Hemorrhagic diatheses** can have the following causes: a) Congenital deficiency of certain coagulation factors. Lack of VIII or IX, for example, leads to *hemophilia A* or *B*, respectively. b) Acquired deficiency of coagulation factors. The main causes are liver damage as well as vitamin K deficiency due to the destruction of vitamin K-producing intestinal flora or intestinal malabsorption. c) Increased consumption of coagulation factors, by *disseminated intravascular coagulation*. d) Platelet deficiency (thrombocytopenia) or platelet defect (thrombocytopathy). e) Certain vascular diseases, and f) excessive fibrinolysis.

C. Fibrinolysis



D. Suppression of coagulation



## Lung Function, Respiration

The lung is mainly responsible for respiration, but it also has *metabolic functions*, e.g. conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II ( $\rightarrow$  p. 184). In addition, the pulmonary circulation *buffers the blood volume* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 204) and *filters* out small blood clots from the venous circulation before they obstruct the arterial circulation (heart, brain!).

External **respiration** is the **exchange of gases** between the body and the environment. (*Internal* or *tissue respiration* involves nutrient oxidation,  $\rightarrow$  p. 228). **Convection (bulk flow)** is the means by which the body transports gases over long distances ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24) along with the flow of air and blood. Both flows are driven by a pressure difference. **Diffusion** is used to transport gases over short distances of a few  $\mu\text{m}$ —e.g., through cell membranes and other physiological barriers ( $\rightarrow$  p. 20ff.). The exchange of gas between the atmosphere and alveoli is called **ventilation**. Oxygen ( $\text{O}_2$ ) in the inspired air is convected to the alveoli before diffusing across the alveolar membrane into the bloodstream. It is then transported via the bloodstream to the tissues, where it diffuses from the blood into the cells and, ultimately, to the intracellular mitochondria. *Carbon dioxide* ( $\text{CO}_2$ ) produced in the mitochondria returns to the lung by the same route.

The **total ventilation per unit time**,  $\dot{V}_T$  (also called *minute volume*) is the volume ( $V$ ) of air inspired or expired per time. As the expiratory volume is usually measured, it is also abbreviated  $\dot{V}_E$ . (The dot means “per unit time”). At rest, the body maintains a  $\dot{V}_E$  of about  $8\text{ L/min}$ , with a corresponding **oxygen consumption rate** ( $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ ) of about  $0.3\text{ L/min}$  and a  **$\text{CO}_2$  elimination rate** ( $\dot{V}_{\text{CO}_2}$ ) of about  $0.25\text{ L/min}$ . Thus, about  $26\text{ L}$  of air have to be inspired and expired to supply  $1\text{ L}$  of  $\text{O}_2$  (*respiratory equivalent* = 26). The **tidal volume** ( $V_T$ ) is the volume of air moved in and out during one respiratory cycle.  $\dot{V}_E$  is the product of  $V_T$  (ca.  $0.5\text{ L}$  at rest) and **respiration rate**  $f$  (about  $16/\text{min}$  at rest) (see p. 74 for values during physical work). Only around  $5.6\text{ L/min}$  (at  $f = 16\text{ min}^{-1}$ ) of the  $\dot{V}_E$  of  $8\text{ L/min}$  reaches the alveoli; this is known as **alveolar ventilation** ( $\dot{V}_A$ ). The rest fills airways space not contributing to gas exchange (**dead space ventilation**,  $\dot{V}_D$ ;  $\rightarrow$  pp. 114 and 120).

The human body contains around 300 million **alveoli**, or thin-walled air sacs (ca.  $0.3\text{ mm}$  in diameter) located on the terminal branches of the bronchial tree. They are surrounded by a dense network of **pulmonary capillaries** and have a total surface area of about  $100\text{ m}^2$ . Because of this and the small air/blood diffusion distances of only a few  $\mu\text{m}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 22, Eq. 1.7), sufficient quantities of  $\text{O}_2$  can **diffuse** across the alveolar wall into the blood and  $\text{CO}_2$  towards the alveolar space ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120ff.), even at a tenfold increased  $\text{O}_2$  demand ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74). The oxygen-deficient “venous” blood of the pulmonary artery is thus oxygenated (“arterialized”) and pumped back by the left heart to the periphery.

The **cardiac output (CO)** is the volume of blood pumped through the pulmonary and systemic circulation per unit time ( $5\text{--}6\text{ L/min}$  at rest). CO times the *arterial-venous  $\text{O}_2$  difference* ( $\text{avDO}_2$ )—i.e., the difference between the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  fraction in the aorta and in mixed venous blood of the right atrium (ca.  $0.05\text{ L}$  of  $\text{O}_2$  per  $\text{L}$  of blood)—gives the  *$\text{O}_2$  volume transported per unit time from the lungs to the periphery*. At rest, it amounts to  $(6 \times 0.05 = ) 0.3\text{ L/min}$ , a value matching that of  $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$  (see above). Inversely, if  $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$  and  $\text{avDO}_2$  have been measured, CO can be calculated (**Fick's principle**):

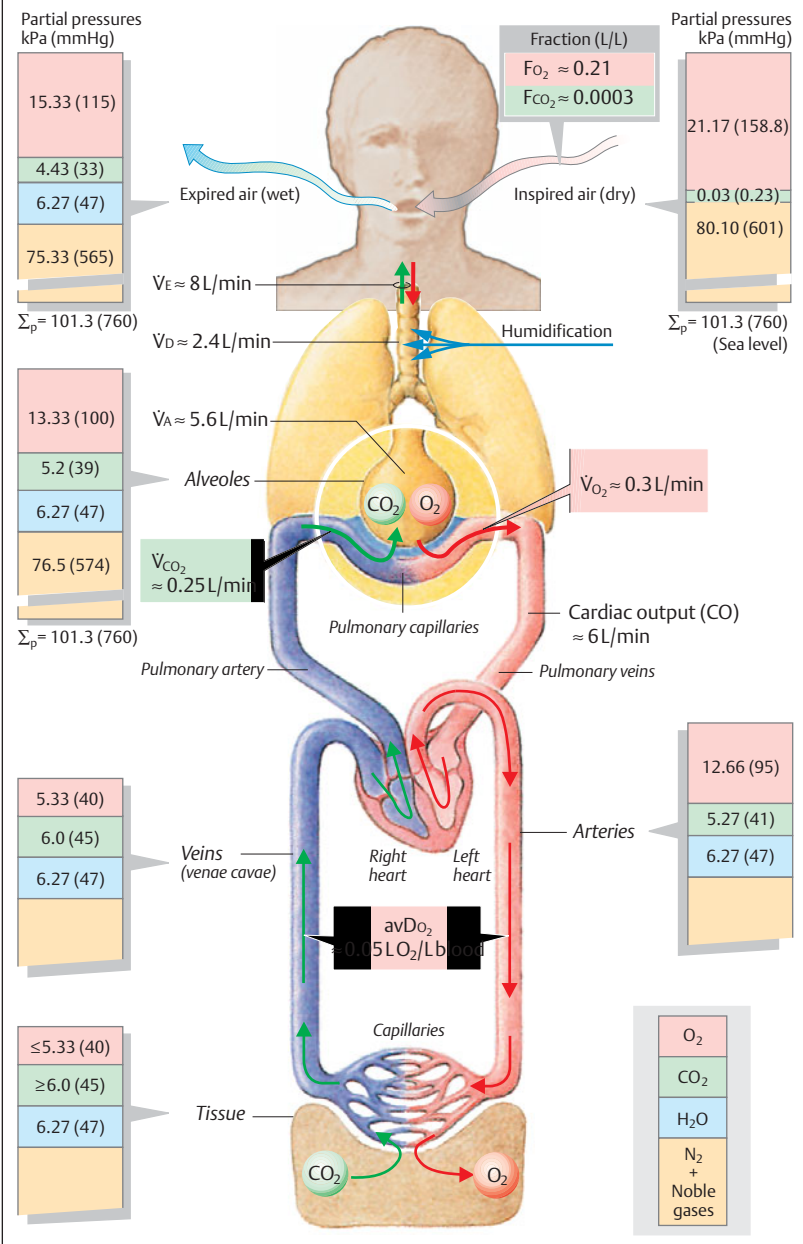
$$\text{CO} = \dot{V}_{\text{O}_2} / \text{avDO}_2 \quad [5.1]$$

The **stroke volume (SV)** is obtained by dividing CO by the heart rate (pulse rate).

According to **Dalton's law**, the total pressure ( $P_{\text{total}}$ ) of a **mixture of gases** is the sum of the **partial pressures (P)** of the individual gases. The **volume fraction** ( $F$ , in  $\text{L/L}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 376), of the individual gas relative to the total volume times  $P_{\text{total}}$  gives the partial pressure—in the case of  $\text{O}_2$ , for example,  $P_{\text{O}_2} = F_{\text{O}_2} \times P_{\text{total}}$ . The atmospheric partial pressures in *dry* ambient air at sea level ( $P_{\text{total}} = 101.3\text{ kPa} = 760\text{ mmHg}$ ) are:  $F_{\text{O}_2} = 0.209$ ,  $F_{\text{CO}_2} = 0.0004$ , and  $F_{\text{N}_2} + \text{noble gases} = 0.79$  ( $\rightarrow$  A, top right).

If the mixture of gases is “wet”, the **partial pressure of water**,  $P_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$  has to be subtracted from  $P_{\text{total}}$  (usually = atmospheric pressure). The other partial pressures will then be lower, since  $P_x = F_x (P_{\text{total}} - P_{\text{H}_2\text{O}})$ . When passing through the respiratory tract ( $37^\circ\text{C}$ ), inspired air is fully saturated with water. As a result,  $P_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$  rises to  $6.27\text{ kPa}$  ( $47\text{ mmHg}$ ), and  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  drops  $1.32\text{ kPa}$  lower than the dry atmospheric air ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112). The partial pressures in the alveoli, arteries, veins (mixed venous blood), tissues, and expiratory air (all “wet”) are listed in A.

**A. Gas transport**



## Mechanics of Breathing

**Pressure differences** between the alveoli and the environment are the *driving "forces"* for the exchange of gases that occurs during ventilation. **Alveolar pressure** ( $P_A$  = intrapulmonary pressure;  $\rightarrow B$ ) must be lower than the barometric pressure ( $P_B$ ) during **inspiration** (breathing in), and higher during **expiration** (breathing out). If  $P_B$  is defined as zero, the alveolar pressure is negative during inspiration and positive during expiration ( $\rightarrow B$ ). These pressure differences are created through coordinated movement of the diaphragm and chest (thorax), resulting in an increase in lung volume ( $V_{\text{pulm}}$ ) during inspiration and a decrease during expiration ( $\rightarrow A1,2$ ).

The **inspiratory muscles** consist of the *diaphragm*, *scalene muscles*, and external intercostal muscles. Their contraction lowers (flattens) the diaphragm and raises and expands the chest, thus expanding the lungs. Inspiration is therefore *active*. The external intercostal muscles and accessory respiratory muscles are activated for deep breathing. During **expiration**, the diaphragm and other inspiratory muscles *relax*, thereby raising the diaphragm and lowering and reducing the volume of the chest and lungs. Since this action occurs primarily due to the intrinsic elastic recoil of the lungs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 116), expiration is *passive* at rest. In deeper breathing, active mechanisms can also play a role in expiration: the *internal intercostal muscles* contract, and the diaphragm is pushed upward by *abdominal pressure* created by the muscles of the abdominal wall.

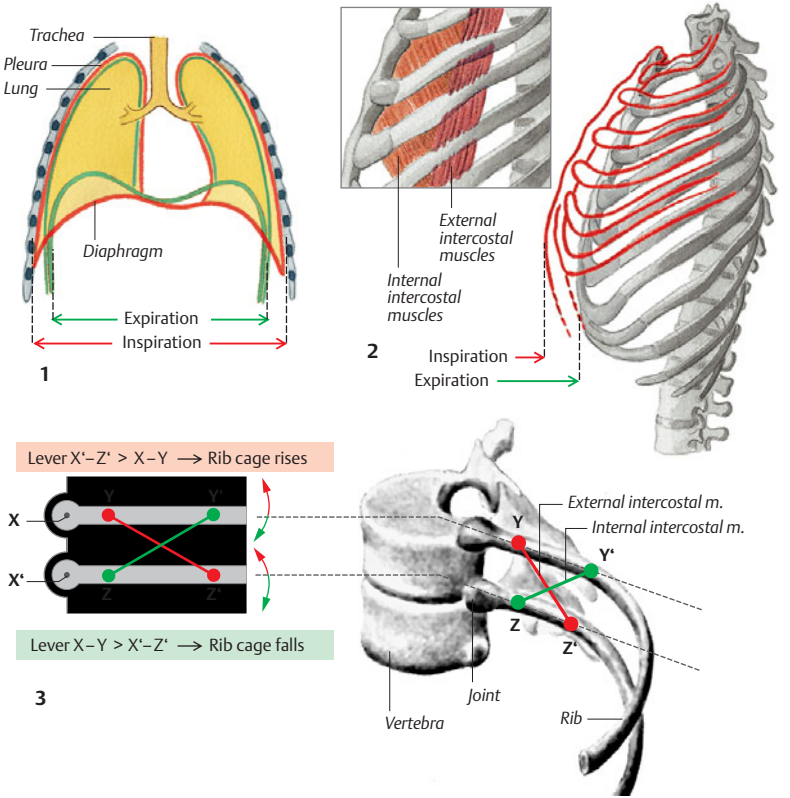
Two adjacent ribs are bound by internal and external intercostal muscle. Counteractivity of the muscles is due to variable leverage of the upper and lower rib ( $\rightarrow A3$ ). The distance separating the insertion of the external intercostal muscle on the upper rib (Y) from the axis of rotation of the upper rib (X) is smaller than the distance separating the insertion of the muscles on the lower rib (Z') and the axis of rotation of the lower rib (X'). Therefore, X'-Z' is longer and a more powerful lever than X-Y. The chest generally rises when the external intercostal muscles contract, and lowers when the opposing internal intercostal muscles contract.

To exploit the motion of the diaphragm and chest for ventilation, the lungs must be able to follow this motion without being completely attached to the diaphragm and chest. This is achieved with the aid of the **pleura**, a thin fluid-covered sheet of cells that invests each lung (*visceral pleura*), thereby separating it from the adjacent organs, which are covered by the pleura as well (*parietal pleura*).

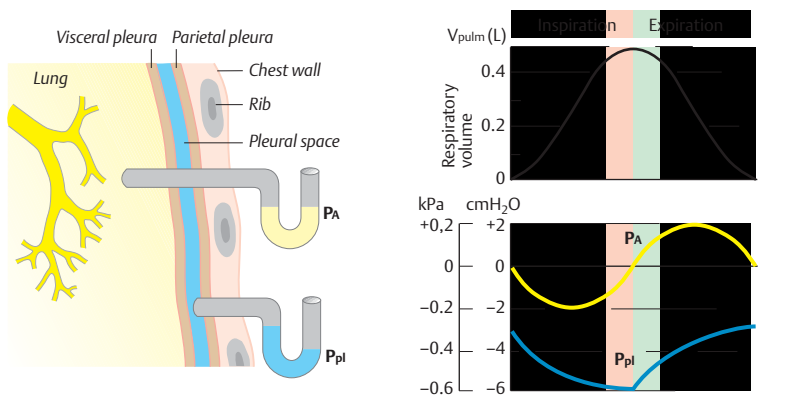
In its natural state, the lung tends to shrink due to its *intrinsic elasticity* and *alveolar surface tension* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 118). Since the fluid in the pleural space cannot expand, the lung sticks to the inner surface of the chest, resulting in suction (which still allows tangential movement of the two pleural sheets). **Pleural pressure** ( $P_{pl}$ ) is then negative with respect to atmospheric pressure.  $P_{pl}$ , also called *intrapleural* ( $P_{ip}$ ) or *intrathoracic* pressure, can be measured during breathing (dynamically) using an esophageal probe ( $\approx P_{pl}$ ). The intensity of suction (negative pressure) increases when the chest expands during inspiration, and decreases during expiration ( $\rightarrow B$ ).  $P_{pl}$  usually does not become positive unless there is very forceful expiration requiring the use of expiratory muscles. The difference between the alveolar and the pleural pressure ( $P_A - P_{pl}$ ) is called **transpulmonary pressure** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 114).

**Characterization of breathing activity.** The terms *hyperpnea* and *hypopnea* are used to describe abnormal increases or decreases in the depth and rate of respiratory movements. *Tachypnea* (too fast), *bradypnea* (too slow), and *apnea* (cessation of breathing) describe abnormal changes in the respiratory rate. The terms *hyperventilation* and *hypoventilation* imply that the volume of exhaled  $CO_2$  is larger or smaller, respectively, than the rate of  $CO_2$  production, and the arterial partial pressure of  $CO_2$  ( $P_{aCO_2}$ ) decreases or rises accordingly ( $\rightarrow$  p. 142). *Dyspnea* is used to describe difficult or labored breathing, and *orthopnea* occurs when breathing is difficult except in an upright position.

**A. Respiratory muscles**



**B. Alveolar pressure  $P_A$  and pleural pressure  $P_{Pl}$  during respiration**



## Purification of Respiratory Air

Inhaled foreign particles are trapped by **mucus** in the nose, throat, trachea, and bronchial tree. The entrapped particles are engulfed by *macrophages* and are driven back to the trachea by the *cilia* lining the bronchial epithelium. **Ciliary escalator:** The cilia move at a rate of  $5\text{--}10\text{ s}^{-1}$  and propel the mucus towards the mouth at a rate of 1 cm/min on a film of fluid secreted by the epithelium. Heavy smoking, mucoviscidosis genetic defects can impair ciliary transport. A volume of 10–100 mL of mucus is produced each day, depending on the type and frequency of local irritation (e.g., smoke inhalation) and vagal stimulation. Mucus is usually swallowed, and the fluid fraction is absorbed in the gastrointestinal tract.

## Artificial Respiration

**Mouth-to-mouth resuscitation** is an emergency measure performed when someone stops breathing. The patient is placed flat on the back. While pinching the patient's nostrils shut, the aid-giver places his or her mouth on the patient's mouth and blows forcefully into the patient's lungs ( $\rightarrow$  A3). This raises the alveolar pressure ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108) in the patient's lungs relative to the atmospheric pressure outside the chest and causes the lungs and chest to expand (inspiration). The rescuer then removes his or her mouth to allow the patient to exhale. Expulsion of the air blown into the lungs (expiration) occurs due to the intrinsic elastic recoil of the lungs and chest ( $\rightarrow$  p. 109 A2). This process can be accelerated by pressing down on the chest. The rescuer should ventilate the patient at a rate of about  $16\text{ min}^{-1}$ . The expiratory  $\text{O}_2$  fraction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 107 A) of the rescuer is high enough to adequately oxygenate the patient's blood. The color change in the patient's skin from blue (cyanosis;  $\rightarrow$  p. 130) to pink indicates that a resuscitation attempt was successful.

**Mechanical ventilation.** Mechanical *intermittent positive pressure ventilation (IPPV)* works on the same principle. This technique is used when the respiratory muscles are paralyzed due to disease, anesthesia, etc. The pump of the respirator drives air into the patient's lung during inspiration ( $\rightarrow$  A1). The external inspiratory and expiratory pathways are sepa-

rated by a valve (close to the patient's mouth as possible) to prevent enlargement of dead space ( $\rightarrow$  p. 114). Ventilation frequency, tidal volume, inspiratory flow, as well as duration of inspiration and expiration can be preselected at the respirator. The drawback of this type of ventilation is that venous return to the heart is impaired to some extent ( $\rightarrow$  p. 204). Today, the standard technique of mechanical respiration is *continuous positive pressure ventilation (CPPV)*. In contrast to IPPV, the *endexpiratory pressure* is kept *positive* (PEEP) in CPPV. In any case, all ventilated patients should be continuously monitored (expiratory gas fraction; blood gas composition, etc.).

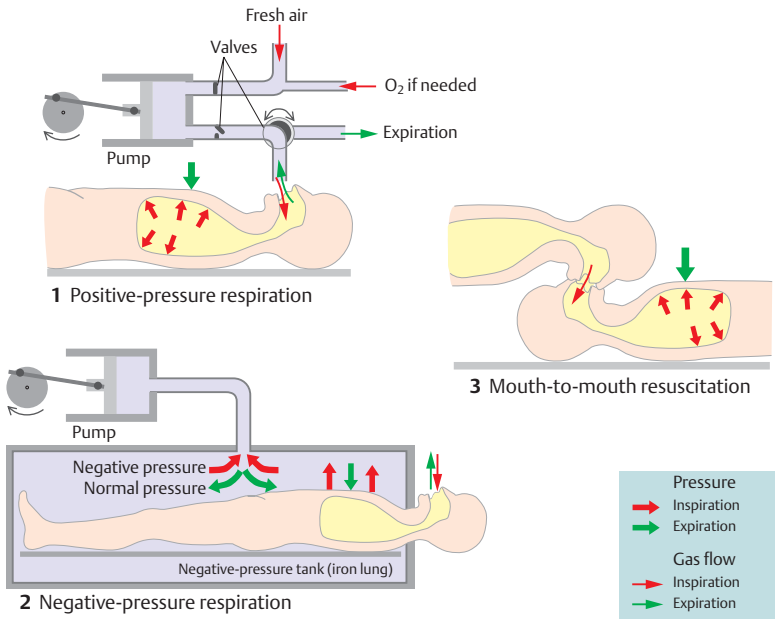
The **iron lung** (Drinker respirator) makes use of *negative-pressure respiration* ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The patient's body is enclosed from the neck down in a metal tank. To achieve inhalation, pressure in the tank is decreased to a level below ambient pressure and, thus, below alveolar pressure. This pressure difference causes the chest to expand (inspiratory phase), and the cessation of negative pressure in the tank allows the patient to breathe out (expiratory phase). This type of respirator is used to ventilate patients who require long-term mechanical ventilation due to paralytic diseases, such as polio.

## Pneumothorax

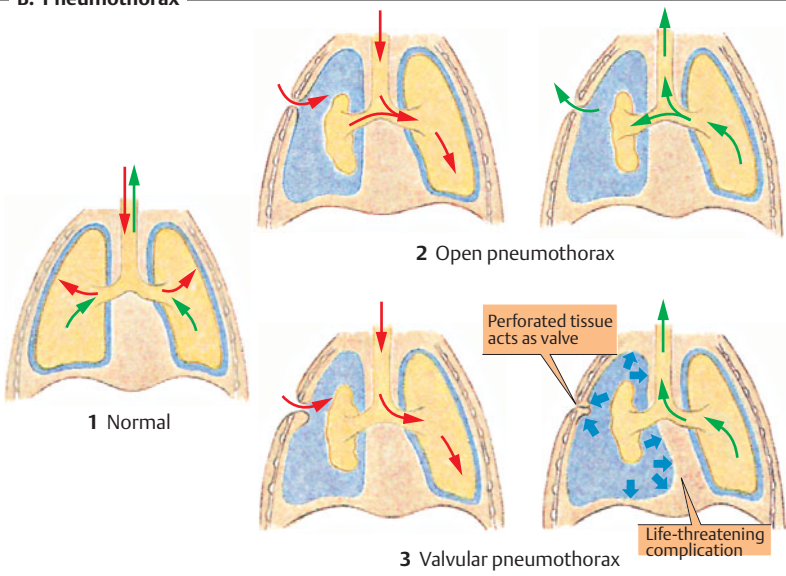
Pneumothorax occurs when air enters the pleural space and  $P_{pl}$  falls to zero ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108), which can lead to collapse of the affected lung due to elastic recoil and respiratory failure ( $\rightarrow$  B). The contralateral lung is also impaired because a portion of the inspired air travels back and forth between the healthy and collapsed lung and is not available for gas exchange. *Closed pneumothorax*, i.e., the leakage of air from the alveolar space into the pleural space, can occur spontaneously (e.g., lung rupture due to bullous emphysema) or due to lung injury (e.g., during mechanical ventilation = barotrauma;  $\rightarrow$  p. 134). **Open pneumothorax** ( $\rightarrow$  B2) can be caused by an open chest wound or blunt chest trauma (e.g., penetration of the pleura by a broken rib). **Valvular pneumothorax** ( $\rightarrow$  B3) is a life-threatening form of pneumothorax that occurs when air enters the pleural space with every breath and can no longer be expelled. A flap of acts like a valve. Positive pressure develops in the pleural space on the affected side, as well as in the rest of the thoracic cavity. Since the tidal volume increases due to hypoxia, high pressure levels (4 kPa = 30 mmHg) quickly develop. This leads to increasing impairment of cardiac filling and compression of the healthy contralateral lung. Treatment of valvular pneumothorax consists of slow drainage of excess pressure and measures to prevent further valvular action.



**A. Artificial respiration**



**B. Pneumothorax**





## Lung Volumes and their Measurement

At the end of normal quiet expiration, the lung–chest system returns to its intrinsic **resting position**. About 0.5 L of air is taken in with each breath during normal quiet respiration; this is called the **resting tidal volume** ( $V_T$ ). Inspiration can be increased by another 3 L or so on forced (maximum) inspiration; this is called the **inspiratory reserve volume** (IRV). Likewise, expiration can be increased by about 1.7 L more on forced (maximum) expiration. This is called the **expiratory reserve volume** (ERV). These reserve volumes are used during strenuous physical exercise ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74) and in other situations where normal tidal volumes are insufficient. Even after forced expiration, about 1.3 L of air remains in the lungs; this is called the **residual volume** (RV). Lung capacities are sums of the individual lung volumes. The **vital capacity** (VC) is the maximum volume of air that can be moved in and out in a single breath. Therefore,  $VC = V_T + IRV + ERV$ . The average 20-year-old male with a height of 1.80 m has a VC of about 5.3 L. Vital capacity decreases and residual volume increases with age (1.5  $\Rightarrow$  3 L). The **total lung capacity** is the sum of VC and RV—normally 6 to 7 L. The **functional residual capacity** is the sum of ERV and RV ( $\rightarrow$  A and p. 114). The **inspiratory capacity** is the sum of  $V_T$  and IRV. All numerical values of these volumes apply under body temperature–pressure saturation (BTPS) conditions (see below).

**Spirometry.** These lung volumes and capacities (except FRC, RV) can be measured by routine spirometry. The **spirometer** ( $\rightarrow$  A) consists usually of a water-filled tank with a bell-shaped floating device. A tube connects the air space within the spirometer ( $\rightarrow$  A) with the airways of the test subject. A counterweight is placed on the bell. The position of the bell indicates how much air is in the spirometer and is calibrated in volume units ( $L_{ATPS}$ ; see below). The bell on the spirometer rises when the test subject blows into the device (expiration), and falls during inspiration ( $\rightarrow$  A).

If the spirometer is equipped with a recording device (**spirograph**), it can be also used for graphic measurement of the total ventilation per unit time ( $\dot{V}_E$ ;  $\rightarrow$  pp. 106 and 118),

compliance ( $\rightarrow$  p. 116),  $O_2$  consumption ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ), and in dynamic lung function tests ( $\rightarrow$  p. 118).

**Range of normal variation.** Lung volumes and capacities vary greatly according to age, height, physical constitution, sex, and degree of physical fitness. The range of normal variation of VC, for example, is 2.5 to 7 L. Empirical formulas were therefore developed to create normative values for better interpretation of lung function tests. For instance, the following formulas are used to calculate the range of normal values for VC in Caucasians:

$$\text{Men: } VC = 5.2h - 0.022a - 3.6 (\pm 0.58)$$

$$\text{Women: } VC = 5.2h - 0.018a - 4.36 (\pm 0.42),$$

where  $h$  = height (in meters) and  $a$  = age (in years); the standard deviation is given in parentheses. Because of the broad range of normal variation, patients with mild pulmonary disease may go undetected. Patients with lung disease should ideally be monitored by recording baseline values and observing *changes* over the course of time.

**Conversion of respiratory volumes.** The volume,  $V$ , of a gas (in L or  $m^3$ ;  $1 m^3 = 1000 L$ ) can be obtained from the amount,  $M$ , of the gas (in mol), absolute temperature,  $T$  (in K), and total pressure,  $P$  (in Pa), using the **ideal gas equation**:

$$V = M \cdot R \cdot T/P, \quad [5.2]$$

where  $P$  is barometric pressure ( $P_B$ ) minus water partial pressure ( $P_{H_2O}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 106) and  $R$  is the universal gas constant =  $8.31 J \cdot K^{-1} \cdot mol^{-1}$ .

### Volume conditions

---

STPD: Standard temperature pressure dry  
(273 K, 101 kPa,  $P_{H_2O} = 0$ )

---

ATPS: Ambient temperature pressure  
 $H_2O$ -saturated  
( $T_{amb}$ ,  $P_B$ ,  $P_{H_2O}$  at  $T_{amb}$ )

---

BTPS: Body temperature pressure-saturated  
(310 K,  $P_B$ ,  $P_{H_2O} = 6.25$  kPa)

---

It follows that:

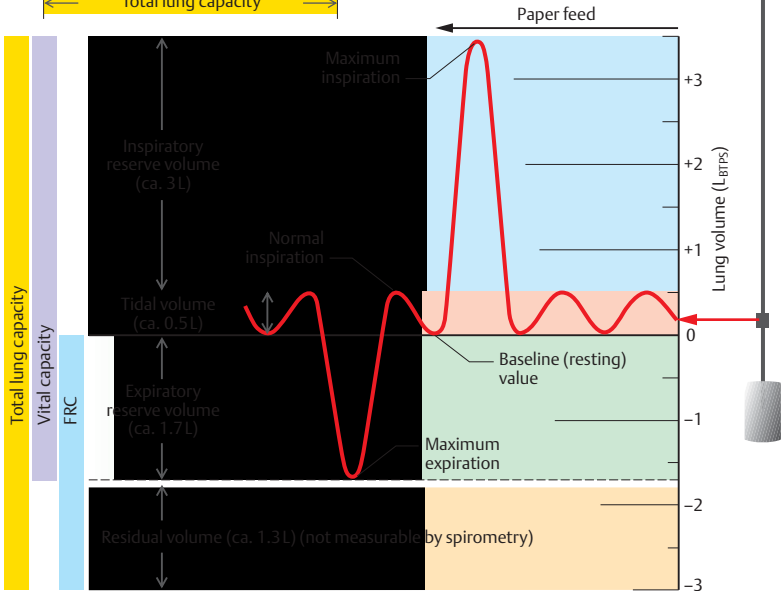
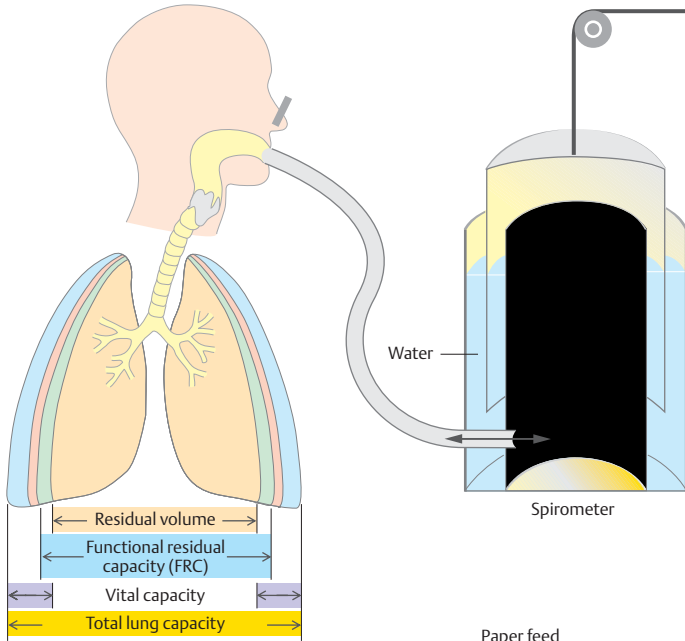
$$V_{STPD} = M \cdot R \cdot 273/101000 [m^3]$$

$$V_{ATPS} = M \cdot R \cdot T_{amb}/(P_B - P_{H_2O}) [m^3]$$

$$V_{BTPS} = M \cdot R \cdot 310/(P_B - 6.250) [m^3].$$

Conversion factors are derived from the respective quotients ( $M \cdot R$  is a reducing factor). Example:  $V_{BTPS}/V_{STPD} = 1.17$ . If  $V_{ATPS}$  is measured by spirometry at room temperature ( $T_{amb} = 20^\circ C$ ;  $P_{H_2O,sat} = 2.3$  kPa) and  $P_B = 101$  kPa,  $V_{BTPS} \approx 1.1 V_{ATPS}$  and  $V_{STPD} \approx 0.9 V_{ATPS}$ .

A. Lung volumes and their measurement



## Dead Space, Residual Volume, Airway Resistance

The exchange of gases in the respiratory tract occurs in the alveoli. Only a portion of the tidal volume ( $V_T$ ) reaches the alveoli; this is known as the **alveolar part** ( $V_A$ ). The rest goes to dead space (not involved in gas exchange) and is therefore called **dead space** volume ( $V_D$ ). The oral, nasal, and pharyngeal cavities plus the trachea and bronchi are jointly known as *physiological dead space* or *conducting zone of the airways*. The physiological dead space (ca. 0.15 L) is approximately equal to the *functional* dead space, which becomes larger than physiological dead space when the exchange of gases fails to take place in a portion of the alveoli ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120). The **functions of dead space** are to conduct incoming air to the alveoli and to purify ( $\rightarrow$  p. 110), humidify, and warm inspired ambient air. Dead space is also an element of the vocal organ ( $\rightarrow$  p. 370).

The **Bohr equation** ( $\rightarrow$  A) can be used to estimate the dead space.

*Derivation:* The expired tidal volume  $V_T$  is equal to the sum of its alveolar part  $V_A$  plus dead space  $V_D$  ( $\rightarrow$  A, top). Each of these three variables has a characteristic  $CO_2$  fraction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 376):  $F_{ECO_2}$  in  $V_T$ ,  $F_{ACO_2}$  in  $V_A$ , and  $F_{ICO_2}$  in  $V_D$ .  $F_{ICO_2}$  is extremely small and therefore negligible. The product of each of the three volumes and its corresponding  $CO_2$  fraction gives the volume of  $CO_2$  for each. The  $CO_2$  volume in the expired air ( $V_T \cdot F_{ECO_2}$ ) equals the sum of the  $CO_2$  volumes in its two components, i.e. in  $V_A$  and  $V_D$  ( $\rightarrow$  A).

Thus, three values must be known to **determine the dead space**:  $V_T$ ,  $F_{ECO_2}$ , and  $F_{ACO_2}$ .  $V_T$  can be measured using a spirometer, and  $F_{ECO_2}$  and  $F_{ACO_2}$  can be measured using a Bunte glass burette or an infrared absorption spectrometer.  $F_{ACO_2}$  is present in the last expired portion of  $V_T$ —i.e., in *alveolar gas*. This value can be measured using a Rahn valve or similar device.

The **functional residual capacity** (FRC) is the amount of air remaining in the lungs at the end of normal quiet expiration, and the **residual volume** (RV) is the amount present after forced maximum expiration ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112). About 0.35 L of air ( $V_A$ ) reaches the alveolar space with each breath during normal quiet respiration. Therefore, only about 12% of the 3 L total FRC is renewed at rest. The composition of gases in the alveolar space therefore remains relatively constant.

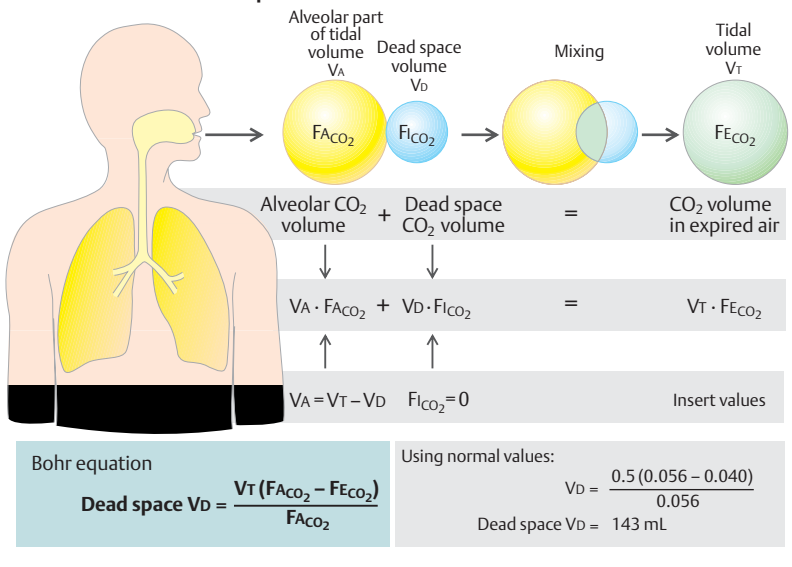
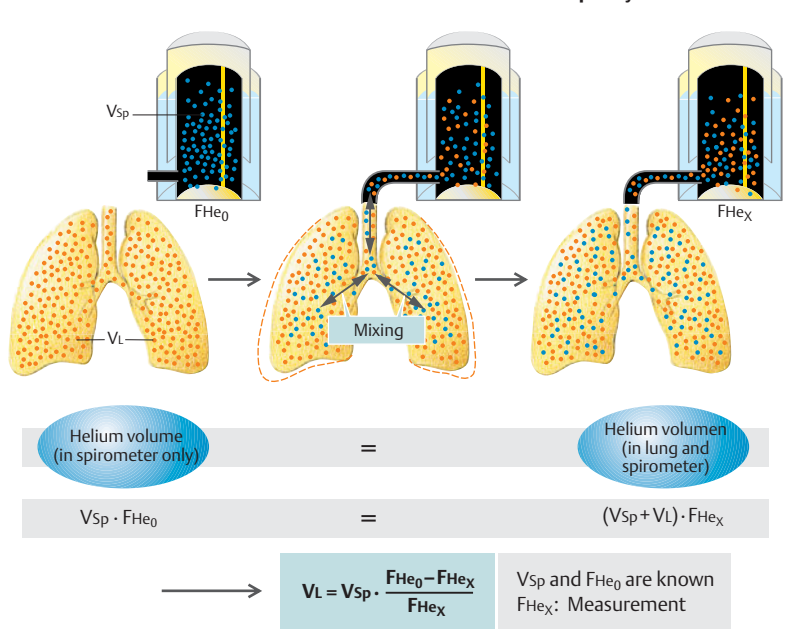
**Measurement of FRC and RV** cannot be performed by spirometry. This must be done using

indirect techniques such as **helium dilution** ( $\rightarrow$  B). Helium (He) is a poorly soluble inert gas. The test subject is instructed to repeatedly inhale and exhale a known volume ( $V_{Sp}$ ) of a helium-containing gas mixture (e.g.,  $F_{He_0} = 0.1$ ) out of and into a spirometer. The helium distributes evenly in the lungs ( $V_L$ ) and spirometer ( $\rightarrow$  B) and is thereby diluted ( $F_{He_x} < F_{He_0}$ ). Since the total helium volume does not change, the known initial helium volume ( $V_{Sp} \cdot F_{He_0}$ ) is equal to the final helium volume ( $V_{Sp} + V_L \cdot F_{He_x}$ .  $V_L$  can be determined once  $F_{He_x}$  in the spirometer has been measured at the end of the test ( $\rightarrow$  B).  $V_L$  will be equivalent to RV if the test was started after a forced expiration, and will be equivalent to FRC if the test was started after normal expiration, i.e. from the resting position of lung and chest. The helium dilution method measures gases in *ventilated* airways only.

**Body plethysmography** can also detect gases in encapsulated spaces (e.g., cysts) in the lung. The test subject is placed in an airtight chamber and instructed to breathe through a *pneumotachygraph* (instrument for recording the flow rate of respired air). At the same time, respiration-dependent changes in air pressure in the subject's mouth and in the chamber are continuously recorded. FRC and RV can be derived from these measurements.

Such measurements can also be used to determine **airway resistance**,  $R_L$ , which is defined as the *driving pressure gradient* between the alveoli and the atmosphere *divided by the air flow per unit time*. Airway resistance is very low under normal conditions, especially during inspiration when (a) the lungs become more expanded (*lateral traction* of the airways), and (b) the *transpulmonary pressure* ( $P_A - P_{pl}$ ) rises ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108).  $P_A - P_{pl}$  represents the transmural pressure of the airways and widens them more and more as it increases. Airway resistance may become too high when the airway is narrowed by mucus—e.g., in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, or when its smooth muscle contracts, e.g. in asthma ( $\rightarrow$  p.118).

The *residual volume* (RV) *fraction of the total lung capacity* (TLC) is clinically significant ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112). This fraction normally is no more than 0.25 in healthy subjects and somewhat higher in old age. It can rise to 0.55 and higher when pathological enlargement of the alveoli has occurred due, for example, to *emphysema*. The RV/TLC fraction is therefore a rough measure of the severity of such diseases.

**A. Measurement of dead space**

**B. Measurement of residual volume and functional residual capacity**


## Pressure–Volume Curve, Respiratory Work

**Resting position (RP)** is the position to which the lung–chest system returns at the end of normal quiet expiration; this lung volume equals the functional residual capacity (FRC, → p. 114). Its value is set at zero ( $V_{\text{pulm}} = 0$ ) in **A–C**. RP (→ **A1**) is a stable central position characterized by the reciprocal cancellation of two passive forces: chest expansion force (CEF) and lung contraction force (LCF). As we breathe in and out, the lung – chest system makes excursions from resting position; thus,  $\text{LCF} > \text{CEF}$  during inspiration, and  $\text{CEF} > \text{LCF}$  during expiration. The difference between LCF and CEF, i.e. the net force (→ blue arrows in **A2**, **3**, **5**, **6**), is equal to the alveolar pressure ( $P_A$  → p. 108) if the airway is closed (e.g., by turning a stopcock, as in **A1–3**, **5**, **6**) after a known air volume has been inhaled ( $V_{\text{pulm}} > 0$ , → **A2**) from a spirometer or expelled into it ( $V_{\text{pulm}} < 0$ , → **A3**). (In the resting position,  $\text{CEF} = \text{LCF}$ , and  $P_A = 0$ ). Therefore, the relationship between  $V_{\text{pulm}}$  and  $P_A$  in the lung–chest system can be determined as illustrated by the **static resting pressure–volume (PV) curve** (→ blue curve in **A–C**) (“static” = measured while holding the breath; “resting” = with the respiratory muscles relaxed).

(Compression and expansion of  $V_{\text{pulm}}$  by a positive or negative  $P_A$  during measurement has to be taken into account; → **A**, dark-gray areas).

The **slope** of the static resting PV curve,  $\Delta V_{\text{pulm}} / \Delta P_A$ , represents the (static) **compliance of the lung–chest system** (→ **B**). The steepest part of the curve (range of greatest compliance; ca. 1 L/kPa in an adult) lies between RP and  $V_{\text{pulm}} = 1$  L. This is in the normal respiratory range. The curve loses its steepness, i.e. compliance decreases, in old age or in the presence of lung disease. As a result, greater effort is needed to breathe the same tidal volume.

The above statements apply to lung-and-chest compliance. It is also possible to calculate compliance for the *chest wall alone* ( $\Delta V_A / \Delta P_{\text{pl}} = 2$  L/kPa) or for the *lung alone* ( $\Delta V / \Delta [P_A - P_{\text{pl}}] = 2$  L/kPa) when the pleural pressure ( $P_{\text{pl}}$ ) is known (→ p. 108).

PV relationships can also be plotted during maximum expiratory and inspiratory effort to

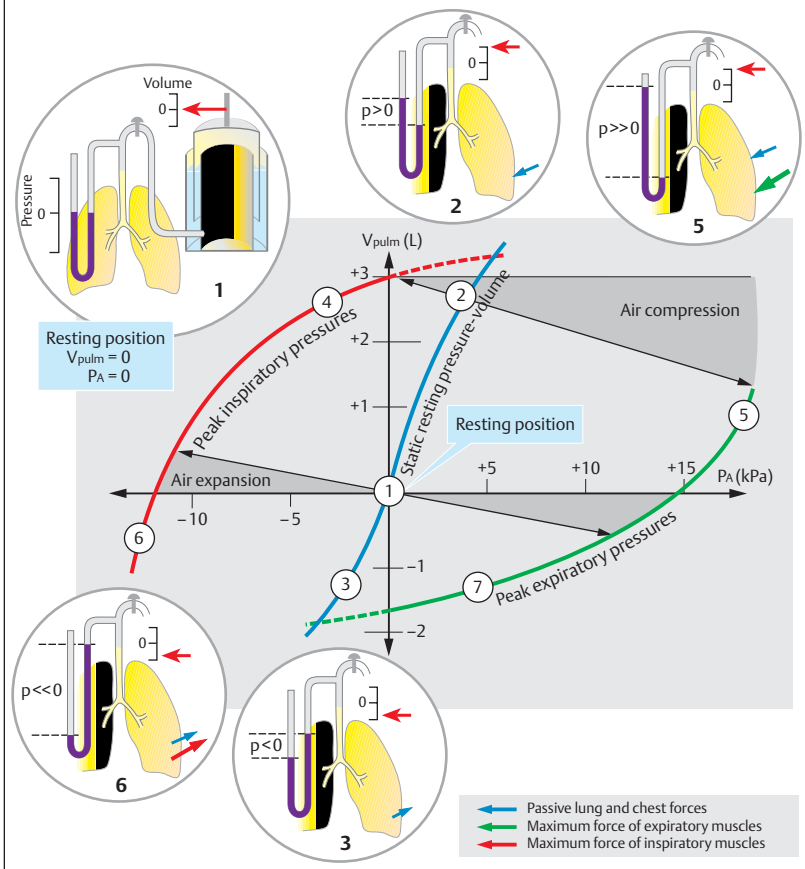
determine the **peak expiratory and inspiratory pressures** (→ **A**, red and green curves). Only a very small pressure can be generated from a position of near-maximum expiration ( $V_{\text{pulm}} \ll 0$ ; → **A7**) compared to a peak pressure of about 15 kPa ( $\approx 110$  mmHg) at  $V_{\text{pulm}} \gg 0$  (Valsalva’s maneuver; → **A5**). Likewise, the greatest negative pressure (suction) (ca.  $-10$  kPa = 75 mmHg) can be generated from a position of maximum expiration (Müller’s maneuver; → **A6**), but not from an inspiratory position (→ **A4**).

A **dynamic PV curve** is obtained *during* respiration (→ **C**). The result is a loop consisting of the opposing inspiratory (red) and expiratory (green) curves transected by the resting curve (blue) because airway flow resistance ( $R_i$ ) must be overcome (mainly in the upper and middle airways) while inhaling in the one direction and exhaling in the other. The **driving pressure gradients** ( $\Delta P$ ) also oppose each other (inspiratory  $P_A < 0$ ; expiratory  $P_A > 0$ ; → p. 109 B). As in Ohm’s law,  $\Delta P = R_i \cdot \text{respiratory flow rate } (\dot{V})$ . Therefore,  $\Delta P$  must increase if the bronchial tubes narrow and/or if the respiratory flow rate increases (→ **C**).

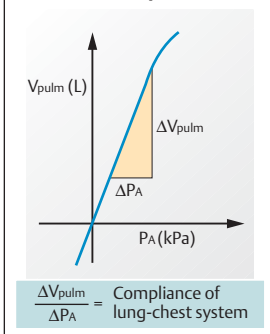
In **asthma**, the airway radius ( $r$ ) decreases and a very high  $\Delta P$  is needed for normal ventilation ( $R_i \approx 1/r^4$ ). During expiration, a high  $\Delta P$  decreases the *transpulmonary pressure* ( $= P_A - P_{\text{pl}}$ ) and thereby squeezes the airways ( $R_i \uparrow$ ). The high  $R_i$  results in a pressure decrease along the expiratory airway ( $P_{\text{airway}} \downarrow$ ) until  $P_{\text{airway}} = P_{\text{pl}} < 0$ . At this point, the airway will collapse. This is called **dynamic airway compression**, which often results in a life-threatening vicious cycle:  $r \downarrow \leftrightarrow \Delta P \uparrow \leftrightarrow r \downarrow \downarrow \leftrightarrow \Delta P \uparrow \uparrow \dots$

**Respiratory work.** The colored areas within the loop ( $A_{\text{Rinsp}}$  and  $A_{\text{Rexp}}$ ; → **C**) represent the inspiratory and expiratory PV work (→ p. 374) exerted to overcome flow resistance. The cross-hatched area (→ **C**) is the work required to overcome the intrinsic elastic force of the lungs and chest ( $A_{\text{elast}}$ ). *Inspiratory work* is defined as  $A_{\text{Rinsp}} + A_{\text{elast}}$ . The inspiratory muscles (→ p. 108) must overcome the elastic force, whereas the same elastic force provides the (passive) driving force for expiration at rest (sign reverses for  $A_{\text{elast}}$ ). Thus, *expiratory work* is  $A_{\text{Rexp}} - A_{\text{elast}}$ . Expiration can also require muscle energy if  $A_{\text{Rexp}}$  becomes larger than  $A_{\text{elast}}$ —e.g., during forced respiration or if  $R_i$  is elevated.

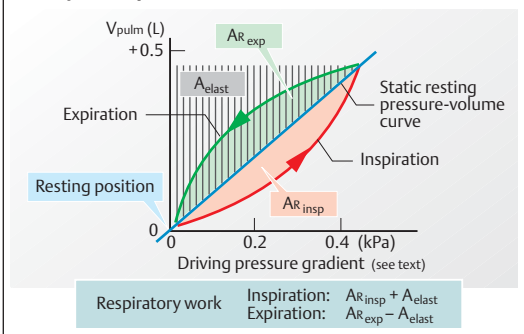
**A. Pressure-volume relationships of the lung-chest system**



**B. Static compliance**



**C. Dynamic pressure-volume curve**



## Surface Tension, Surfactant

Surface tension is the main factor that determines the *compliance* of the lung-chest system ( $\rightarrow$  p. 116) and develops at gas-liquid interfaces or, in the case of the lungs, on the *gas exchange surface of the alveoli* (ca.  $100 \text{ m}^2$ ).

The effectiveness of these forces can be demonstrated by filling an isolated and completely collapsed lung with (a) air or (b) liquid. In example (a), the lung exerts a much higher resistance, especially at the beginning of the filling phase. This represents the **opening pressure**, which raises the alveolar pressure ( $P_A$ ) to about 2 kPa or 15 mmHg when the total lung capacity is reached ( $\rightarrow$  p. 113 A). In example (b), the resistance and therefore  $P_A$  is only one-fourth as large. Accordingly, the larger pressure requirement in example (a) is required to overcome surface tension.

If a *gas bubble* with radius  $r$  is surrounded by liquid, the surface tension  $\gamma$  ( $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1}$ ) of the liquid raises the pressure inside the bubble relative to the outside pressure (transmural pressure  $\Delta P > 0$ ). According to *Laplace's law* (cf. p. 188):

$$\Delta P = 2\gamma/r \text{ (Pa)}. \quad [5.3]$$

Since  $\gamma$  normally remains constant for the respective liquid (e.g., plasma:  $10^{-3} \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1}$ ),  $\Delta P$  becomes larger and larger as  $r$  decreases.

**Soap bubble model.** If a flat soap bubble is positioned on the opening of a cylinder,  $r$  will be relatively large ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) and  $\Delta P$  small. (Since two air-liquid interfaces have to be considered in this case, Eq. 5.3 yields  $\Delta P = 4\gamma/r$ ). For the bubble volume to expand,  $r$  must initially decrease and  $\Delta P$  must increase ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). Hence, a relatively high "opening pressure" is required. As the bubble further expands,  $r$  increases again ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**) and the pressure requirement/volume expansion ratio decreases. The alveoli work in a similar fashion. This model demonstrates that, in the case of two alveoli connected with each other ( $\rightarrow$  **A4**), the smaller one ( $\Delta P_2$  high) would normally become even smaller while the larger one ( $\Delta P_1$  low) becomes larger due to pressure equalization.

**Surfactant (surface-active agent)** lining the inner alveolar surface prevents this problem by lowering  $\gamma$  in smaller alveoli more potently than in larger alveoli. Surfactant is a mixture of

proteins and phospholipids (chiefly dipalmitoyl lecithin) secreted by alveolar type II cells. *Respiratory distress syndrome of the newborn*, a serious pulmonary gas exchange disorder, is caused by failure of the immature lung to produce sufficient quantities of surfactant. Lung damage related to  $\text{O}_2$  toxicity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 136) is also partly due to oxidative destruction of surfactant, leading to reduced compliance. This can ultimately result in alveolar collapse (*atelectasis*) and pulmonary edema.

## Dynamic Lung Function Tests

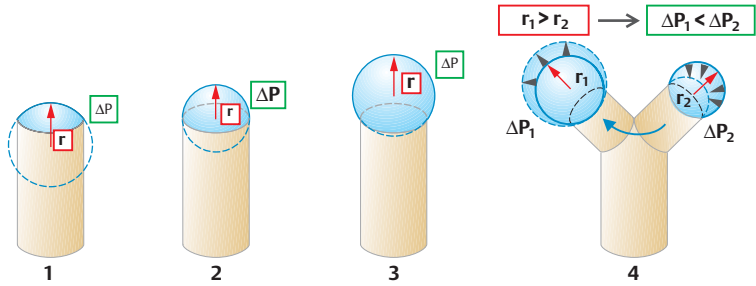
The **maximum breathing capacity** (MBC) is the greatest volume of gas that can be breathed (for 10 s) by voluntarily increasing the tidal volume and respiratory rate ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). The MBC normally ranges from 120 to 170 L/min. This capacity can be useful for monitoring diseases affecting the respiratory muscles, e.g., myasthenia gravis.

The **forced expiratory volume** (FEV or Tiffeneau test) is the maximum volume of gas that can be expelled from the lungs. In clinical medicine, FEV in the first second (FEV<sub>1</sub>) is routinely measured. When its absolute value is related to the *forced vital capacity* (FVC), the *relative FEV<sub>1</sub>* (normally  $> 0.7$ ) is obtained. (FVC is the maximum volume of gas that can be expelled from the lungs as quickly and as forcefully as possible from a position of full inspiration;  $\rightarrow$  **C**). It is often slightly lower than the vital capacity VC ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112). **Maximum expiratory flow**, which is measured using a pneumotachygraph during FVC measurement, is around 10 L/s.

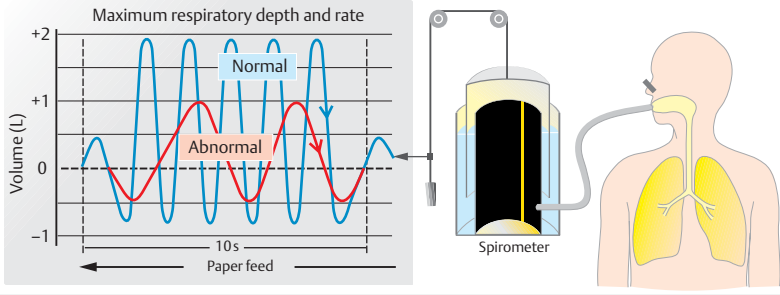
Dynamic lung function tests are useful for distinguishing *restrictive lung disease* (RLD) from *obstructive lung disease* (OLD). RLD is characterized by a functional reduction of lung volume, as in pulmonary edema, pneumonia and impaired lung inflation due to spinal curvature, whereas OLD is characterized by physical narrowing of the airways, as in asthma, bronchitis, emphysema, and vocal cord paralysis ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**).

As with VC ( $\rightarrow$  p. 112), empirical formulas are also used to standardize FVC for age, height and sex.

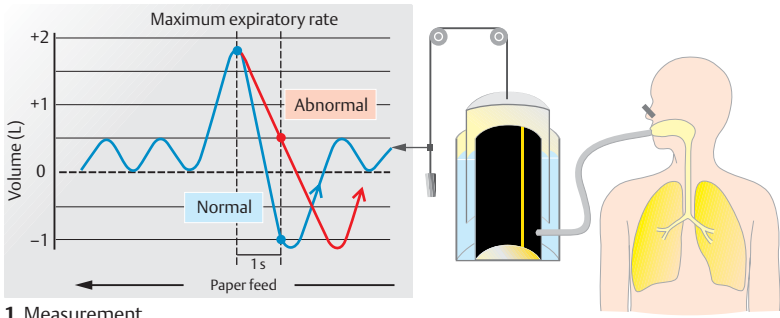
**A. Surface tension (soap bubble model)**



**B. Maximum breathing capacity (MBC)**

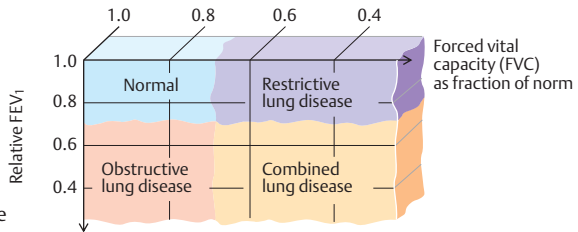


**C. Forced expired volume in first second (FEV<sub>1</sub>)**



**1 Measurement**

**2 Clinical significance**





## Pulmonary Gas Exchange

**Alveolar ventilation.** Only the alveolar part ( $V_A$ ) of the tidal volume ( $V_T$ ) reaches the alveoli. The rest goes to dead space ( $V_D$ ). It follows that  $V_A = V_T - V_D$  (L) ( $\rightarrow$  p. 114). Multiplying these volumes by the *respiratory rate* ( $f$  in  $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) results in the respective ventilation, i.e.,  $\dot{V}_A$ ,  $\dot{V}_E$  (or  $\dot{V}_T$ ), and  $\dot{V}_D$ . Thus,  $\dot{V}_A = \dot{V}_E - \dot{V}_D$  ( $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ). Since  $V_D$  is anatomically determined,  $\dot{V}_D$  ( $= V_D \cdot f$ ) rises with  $f$ . If, at a given total ventilation ( $\dot{V}_E = V_T \cdot f$ ), the breathing becomes more frequent ( $f \uparrow$ ) yet more shallow ( $V_T \downarrow$ ),  $\dot{V}_A$  will decrease because  $\dot{V}_D$  increases.

*Example:* At a  $\dot{V}_E$  of  $8 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ , a  $V_D$  of  $0.15 \text{ L}$  and a normal respiratory rate  $f$  of  $16 \text{ min}^{-1}$   $\dot{V}_A = 5.6 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$  or 70% of  $\dot{V}_E$ . When  $f$  is doubled and  $V_T$  drops to one-half,  $\dot{V}_A$  drops to  $3.2 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$  or 40% of  $\dot{V}_E$ , although  $\dot{V}_E$  ( $8 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ) remains unchanged.

Alveolar gas exchange can therefore decrease due to flat breathing and panting (e.g., due to a painful rib fracture) or artificial enlargement of  $V_D$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 134).

**O<sub>2</sub> consumption** ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ ) is calculated as the *difference between the inspired O<sub>2</sub> volume/time* ( $= \dot{V}_E \cdot F_{IO_2}$ ), and the *expired O<sub>2</sub> volume/time* ( $= \dot{V}_E \cdot F_{EO_2}$ ). Therefore,  $\dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{V}_E (F_{IO_2} - F_{EO_2})$ . At rest,  $\dot{V}_{O_2} \approx 8$  ( $0.21 - 0.17$ ) =  $0.32 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ .

The **eliminated CO<sub>2</sub> volume** ( $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ ) is calculated as  $\dot{V}_T \cdot F_{ECO_2}$  ( $\approx 0.26 \text{ L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$  at rest;  $F_{ICO_2} \approx 0$ ).  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  and  $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$  increase about tenfold during strenuous physical work ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74). The  $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$  to  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  ratio is called the **respiratory quotient (RQ)**, which depends on a person's nutritional state. RQ ranges from 0.7 to 1.0 ( $\rightarrow$  p. 228).

The **exchange of gases** between the alveoli and the blood occurs by *diffusion*, as described by Fick's law of diffusion ( $\rightarrow$  Eq. 1.7, p. 22.). The driving "force" for this diffusion is provided by the *partial pressure differences* between alveolar space and erythrocytes in pulmonary capillary blood ( $\rightarrow$  A). The mean alveolar partial pressure of O<sub>2</sub> ( $P_{AO_2}$ ) is about 13.3 kPa (100 mmHg) and that of CO<sub>2</sub> ( $P_{ACO_2}$ ) is about 5.3 kPa (40 mmHg). The mean partial pressures in the "venous" blood of the pulmonary artery are approx. 5.3 kPa (40 mmHg) for O<sub>2</sub> ( $P_{VO_2}$ ) and approx. 6.1 kPa (46 mmHg) for CO<sub>2</sub> ( $P_{VCO_2}$ ). Hence, the mean **partial pressure difference** between alveolus and capillary is

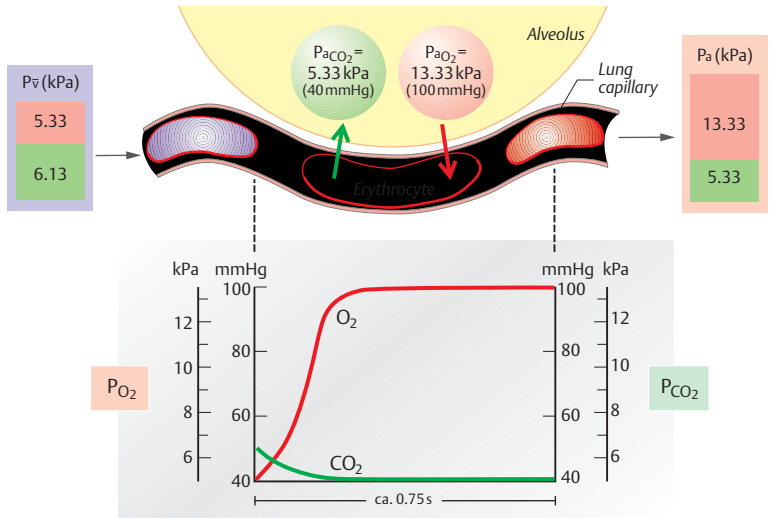
about 8 kPa (60 mmHg) for O<sub>2</sub> and about 0.8 kPa (6 mmHg) for CO<sub>2</sub>, although regional variation occurs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 122).  $P_{AO_2}$  will rise when  $P_{ACO_2}$  falls (e.g., due to hyperventilation) and vice versa ( $\rightarrow$  alveolar gas equation, p. 136).

O<sub>2</sub> diffuses about 1–2  $\mu\text{m}$  from alveolus to bloodstream (**diffusion distance**). Under normal resting conditions, the blood in the pulmonary capillary is in contact with the alveolus for about 0.75 s. This **contact time** ( $\rightarrow$  A) is long enough for the blood to equilibrate with the partial pressure of alveolar gases. The capillary blood is then *arterialized*.  $P_{O_2}$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  in arterialized blood ( $P_{aO_2}$  and  $P_{aCO_2}$ ) are about the same as the corresponding mean alveolar pressures ( $P_{AO_2}$  and  $P_{ACO_2}$ ). However, venous blood enters the arterialized blood through arteriovenous shunts in the lung and from bronchial and thebesian veins ( $\rightarrow$  B). This *extra-alveolar shunt* as well as *ventilation-perfusion inequality* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 122) make the  $P_{aO_2}$  decrease from 13.3 kPa (after alveolar passage) to about 12.0 kPa (90 mmHg) in the aorta ( $P_{aCO_2}$  increases slightly;  $\rightarrow$  A and p. 107).

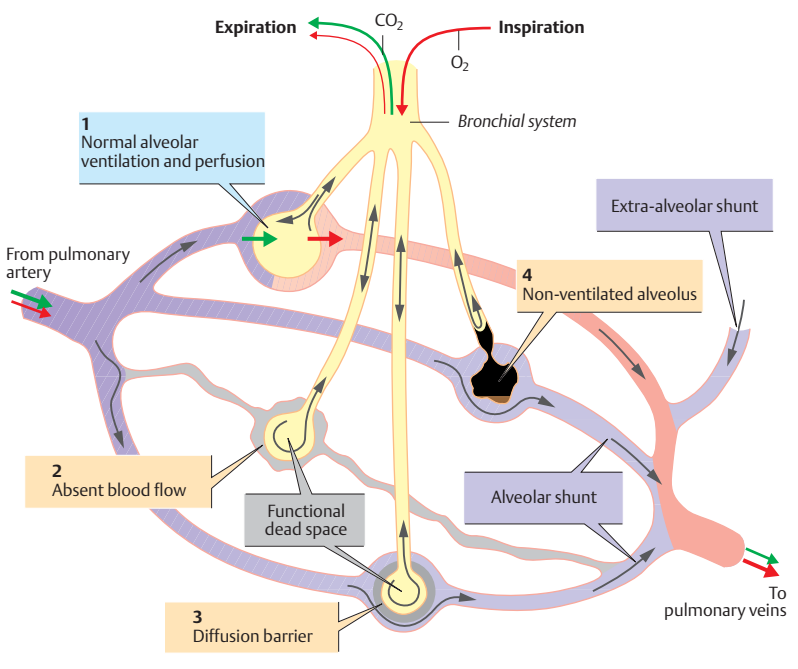
The small pressure difference of about 0.8 kPa is large enough for alveolar CO<sub>2</sub> exchange, since Krogh's diffusion coefficient  $K$  for CO<sub>2</sub> ( $K_{CO_2} \approx 2.5 \cdot 10^{-16} \text{ m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{Pa}^{-1}$  in tissue) is 23 times larger than that for O<sub>2</sub> ( $\rightarrow$  p. 22). Thus, CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses much more rapidly than O<sub>2</sub>. During physical work (high cardiac output), the contact time falls to a third of the resting value. If diffusion is impaired (see below), alveolar equilibration of O<sub>2</sub> partial pressure is less likely to occur during physical exercise than at rest.

**Impairment of alveolar gas exchange** can occur for several reasons: (a) when the blood flow rate along the alveolar capillaries decreases (e.g., due to *pulmonary infarction*;  $\rightarrow$  B2), (b) if a *diffusion barrier exists* (e.g., due to a thickened alveolar wall, as in pulmonary edema;  $\rightarrow$  B3), and (c) if *alveolar ventilation is reduced* (e.g., due to bronchial obstruction;  $\rightarrow$  B4). Cases B2 and B3 lead to an *increase in functional dead space* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 114); cases B3 and B4 lead to inadequate arterialization of the blood (*alveolar shunt*, i.e. non-arterialized blood mixing towards arterial blood). Gradual impairments of type B2 and B4 can occur even in healthy individuals ( $\rightarrow$  p. 122).

**A. Alveolar gas exchange**



**B. Impairment of alveolar gas exchange**



## Pulmonary Blood Flow, Ventilation–Perfusion Ratio

Neglecting the slight amount of blood that reaches the lungs via the bronchial arteries, the mean **pulmonary perfusion** ( $\dot{Q}$ ), or blood flow to the lungs, is equal to the cardiac output ( $CO = 5\text{--}6\text{ L/min}$ ). The **pulmonary arterial pressure** is about 25 mmHg in systole and 8 mmHg in diastole, with a mean ( $\bar{P}$ ) of about 15 mmHg.  $\bar{P}$  decreases to about 12 mmHg ( $P_{\text{precap}}$ ) in the precapillary region (up to the origin of the pulmonary capillaries) and about 8 mmHg in the postcapillary region ( $P_{\text{postcap}}$ ). These values apply to the areas of the lung located at the level of the pulmonary valve.

**Uneven distribution of blood flow within the lung** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). Due to the additive effect of hydrostatic pressure (up to 12 mmHg),  $P_{\text{precap}}$  increases in blood vessels below the pulmonary valves (near the base of the lung) when the chest is positioned upright. Near the apex of the lung,  $P_{\text{precap}}$  decreases in vessels above the pulmonary valve ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, zone 1). Under these conditions,  $P_{\text{precap}}$  can even drop to subatmospheric levels, and the mean alveolar pressure ( $P_A$ ) is atmospheric and can therefore cause extensive capillary compression ( $P_A > P_{\text{precap}} > P_{\text{postcap}}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  **A**).  $\dot{Q}$  per unit of lung volume is therefore very small. In the central parts of the lung ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, zone 2), luminal narrowing of capillaries can occur at their venous end, at least temporarily ( $P_{\text{precap}} > P_A > P_{\text{postcap}}$ ), while the area near the base of the lung ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, zone 3) is continuously supplied with blood ( $P_{\text{precap}} > P_{\text{postcap}} > P_A$ ).  $\dot{Q}$  per unit of lung volume therefore decreases from the apex of the lung to the base ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, **B**, red line).

**Uneven distribution of alveolar ventilation.** Alveolar ventilation ( $\dot{V}_A$ ) per unit of lung volume also increases from the apex to the base of the lungs due to the effects of gravity ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, orange line), although not as much as  $\dot{Q}$ . Therefore, the  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  ratio decreases from the apex to the base of the lung ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, green curve and top scale).

**$\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  imbalance.** The mean  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  for the entire lung is 0.93 ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**). This value is calculated from the mean alveolar ventilation  $\dot{V}_A$  (ca. 5.6 L/min) and total perfusion  $\dot{Q}$  (ca. 6 L/min), which is equal to the cardiac output (CO). Under extreme conditions in which one part of the lung is not ventilated at all,  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q} = 0$  ( $\rightarrow$  **C1**). In the other extreme in which blood flow is absent ( $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  approaches infinity;  $\rightarrow$  **C3**), fresh air conditions will prevail in the alveoli (functional dead space;  $\rightarrow$  p. 120).  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  can

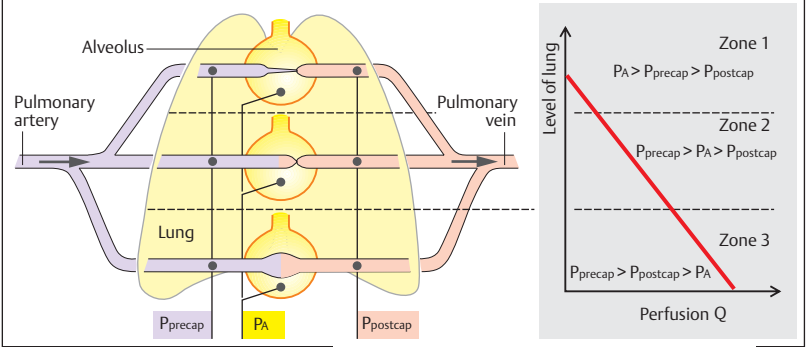
vary tremendously—theoretically, from 0 to  $\infty$ . In this case, the  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  will fluctuate between mixed venous  $P_{V_{O_2}}$  and  $P_{I_{O_2}}$  of (humidified) fresh air ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). In a healthy upright lung,  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  decreases greatly (from 3.3 to 0.63) from apex to base at rest ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, green line);  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  ( $P_{A_{CO_2}}$ ) is therefore 17.6 (3.7) kPa in the “hyperventilated” lung apex, 13.3 (5.3) kPa in the normally ventilated central zone, and 11.9 (5.6) kPa in the hypoventilated lung base. These changes are less pronounced during physical exercise because  $\dot{Q}$  also increases in zone 1 due to the corresponding increase in  $P_{\text{precap}}$ .

$\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  imbalance *decreases the efficiency of the lungs for gas exchange*. In spite of the high  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  at the apex of the lung (ca. 17.6 kPa;  $\rightarrow$  **D**, right panel) and the fairly normal mean  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  value, the relatively small  $\dot{Q}$  fraction of zone 1 contributes little to the total  $\dot{Q}$  of the pulmonary veins. In this case,  $P_{a_{O_2}} < P_{A_{O_2}}$  and an *alveolar–arterial  $O_2$  difference* ( $AaD_{O_2}$ ) exists (normally about 1.3 kPa). When a total arteriovenous shunt is present ( $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q} = 0$ ), even oxygen treatment will not help the patient, because it would not reach the pulmonary capillary bed ( $\rightarrow$  **C1**).

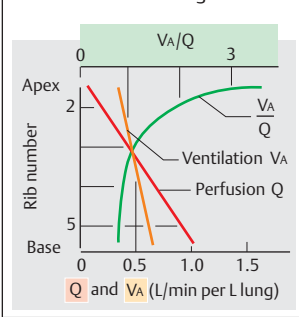
**Hypoxic vasoconstriction** regulates alveolar perfusion and prevents the development of extreme  $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  ratios. When the  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  decreases sharply, receptors in the alveoli emit local signals that trigger constriction of the supplying blood vessels. This throttles shunts in poorly ventilated or non-ventilated regions of the lung, thereby routing larger quantities of blood for gas exchange to more productive regions.

$\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$  imbalance can cause severe complications in many lung diseases. In *shock lung*, for example, shunts can comprise 50% of  $\dot{Q}$ . Life-threatening lung failure can quickly develop if a concomitant pulmonary edema, alveolar diffusion barrier, or surfactant disorder exists ( $\rightarrow$  p. 118).

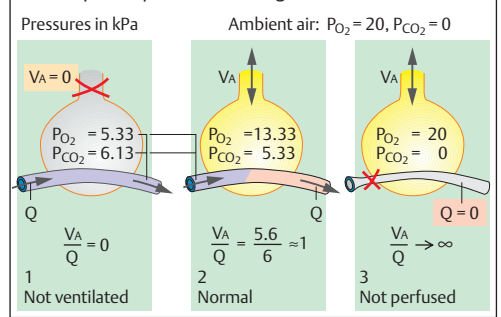
A. Regional blood flow in the lung (upright chest position)



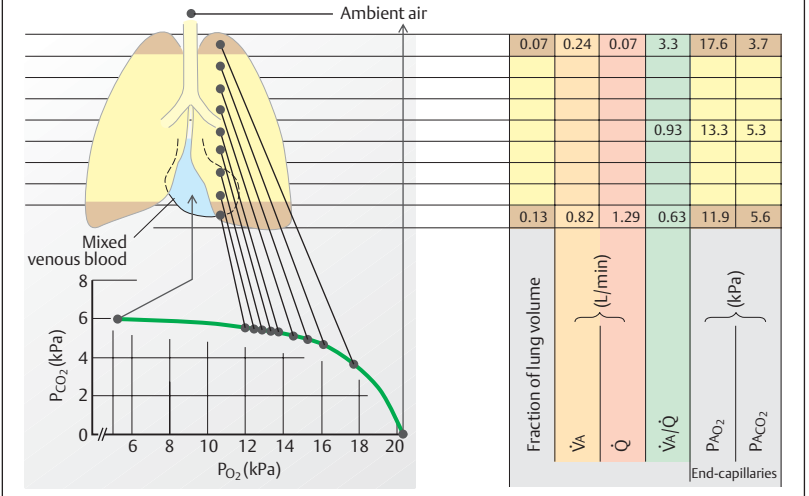
B. Regional perfusion and ventilation of lung



C. Effect of ventilation-perfusion ratio ( $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ) on partial pressures in lung



D. Regional parameters of lung function

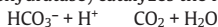


(A, B, C, D after West et al.)

## CO<sub>2</sub> Transport in Blood

**Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>)** is the end-product of energy metabolism (→ p. 228). CO<sub>2</sub> produced by cells of the body undergoes **physical dissolution** and diffuses into adjacent blood capillaries. A small portion of CO<sub>2</sub> in the blood remains dissolved, while the rest is **chemically bound** in form of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and carbamate residues of hemoglobin (→ **A**, lower panel, blue arrows; → arteriovenous CO<sub>2</sub> difference given in the table). Circulating CO<sub>2</sub>-loaded blood reaches the pulmonary capillaries via the right heart. CO<sub>2</sub> entering the pulmonary capillaries is released from the compounds (→ **A**, red arrows), diffuses into the alveoli, and is expired into the atmosphere (→ **A** and p. 106).

The enzyme **carbonic anhydrase** (carbonate dehydratase) catalyzes the reaction

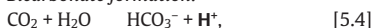


in erythrocytes (→ **A5**, **7**). Because it accelerates the establishment of equilibrium, the short contact time (< 1 s) between red blood cells and alveolus or peripheral tissue is sufficient for the transformation CO<sub>2</sub> ⇌ HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>.

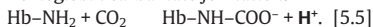
CO<sub>2</sub> diffusing from the **peripheral cells** (→ **A**, bottom panel: "Tissue") increases P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> (approx. 5.3 kPa = 40 mmHg in arterial blood) to a mean venous P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> of about 6.3 kPa = 47 mmHg. It also increases the concentration of CO<sub>2</sub> dissolved in plasma. However, the major portion of the CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses into red blood cells, thereby increasing their content of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>. CO<sub>2</sub> (+ H<sub>2</sub>O) within the cells is converted to HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (→ **A5**, **2**) and **hemoglobin carbamate** (→ **A3**). The HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> concentration in erythrocytes therefore becomes higher than in plasma. As a result, about three-quarters of the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> ions exit the erythrocytes by way of an HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>/Cl<sup>-</sup> antiporter. This **anion exchange** is also called **Hamburger shift** (→ **A4**).

**H<sup>+</sup> ions** are liberated when CO<sub>2</sub> in red cells circulating in the periphery is converted to HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and hemoglobin (Hb) carbamate.

**Bicarbonate formation:**



**Hemoglobin carbamate formation:**



**Hemoglobin (Hb)** is a key **buffer for H<sup>+</sup> ions** in the red cells (→ **A6**; see also p. 140, "Non-bicarbonate buffers"). Since the removal of H<sup>+</sup> ions

in reactions 5.4 and 5.5 prevents the rapid establishment of equilibrium, large quantities of CO<sub>2</sub> can be incorporated in HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and Hb carbamate. Deoxygenated hemoglobin (Hb) can take up more H<sup>+</sup> ions than oxygenated hemoglobin (Oxy-Hb) because Hb is a weaker acid (→ **A**). This promotes CO<sub>2</sub> uptake in the peripheral circulation (**Haldane effect**) because of the simultaneous liberation of O<sub>2</sub> from erythrocytes, i.e. deoxygenation of Oxy-Hb to Hb.

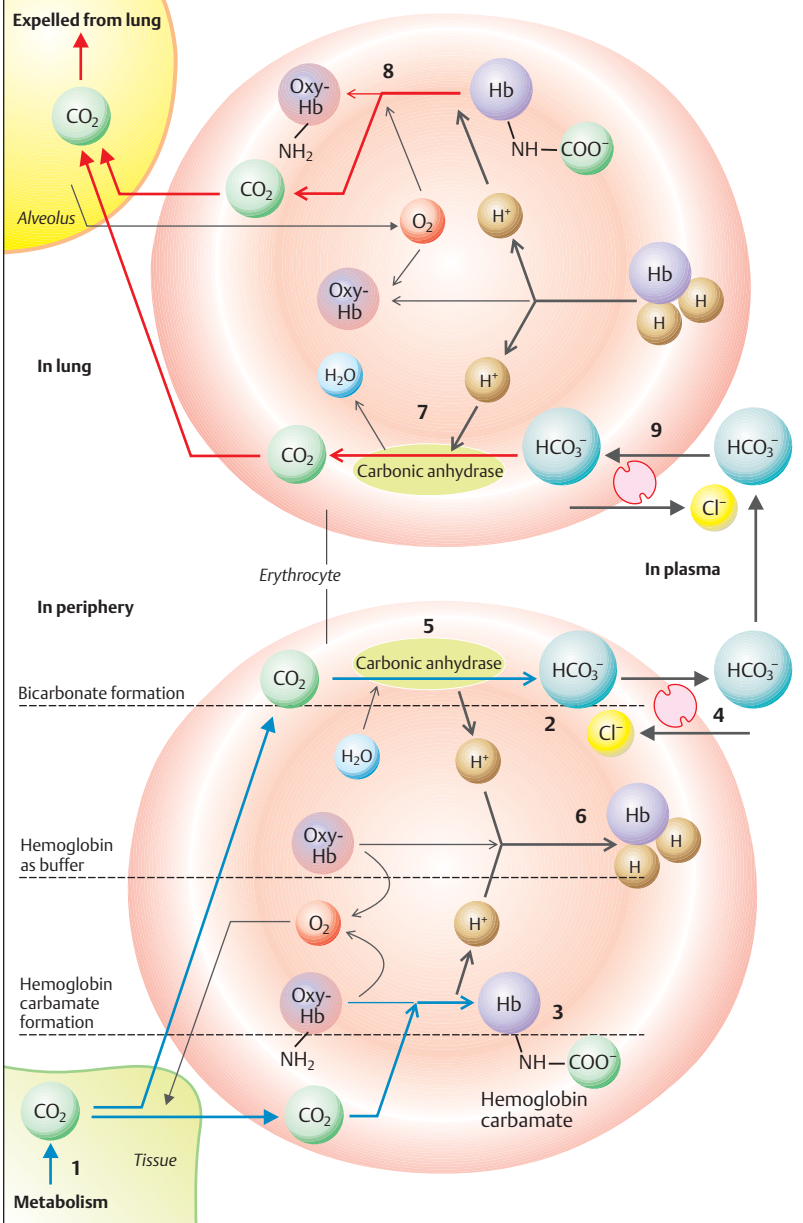
In the **pulmonary capillaries**, these reactions proceed in the opposite direction (→ **A**, top panel, red and black arrows). Since the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in alveoli is lower than in venous blood, CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses into the alveoli, and reactions 5.4 and 5.5 proceed to the left. CO<sub>2</sub> is released from HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and Hb carbamate whereby H<sup>+</sup> ions (released from Hb) are bound in both reactions (→ **A7**, **A8**), and the direction of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>/Cl<sup>-</sup> exchange reverses (→ **A9**). Reoxygenation of Hb to Oxy-Hb in the lung promotes this process by increasing the supply of H<sup>+</sup> ions (**Haldane effect**).

**CO<sub>2</sub> distribution in blood** (mmol/L blood, 1 mmol = 22.26 mL CO<sub>2</sub>)

	Dis-solved CO <sub>2</sub>	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Carbamate	Total
<b>Arterial blood:</b>				
Plasma*	0.7	13.2	0.1	14.0
Erythrocytes**	0.5	6.5	1.1	8.1
<i>Blood</i>	1.2	19.7	1.2	22.1
<b>Mixed venous blood:</b>				
Plasma*	0.8	14.3	ca. 0.1	15.2
Erythrocytes**	0.6	7.2	1.4	9.2
<i>Blood</i>	1.4	21.5	1.5	24.4
<b>Arteriovenous CO<sub>2</sub> difference in blood</b>				
	0.2	1.8	0.3	2.3
<b>Percentage of total arteriovenous difference</b>				
	9%	78%	13%	100%

\* Approx 0.55L plasma/L blood; \*\* ca. 0.45L erythrocytes/L blood

A. CO<sub>2</sub> transport in blood



## CO<sub>2</sub> Binding in Blood, CO<sub>2</sub> in CSF

The **total carbon dioxide** concentration (= chemically bound "CO<sub>2</sub>" + dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>) of mixed venous blood is about 24–25 mmol/L; that of arterial blood is roughly 22–23 mmol/L. Nearly 90% of this is present as HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (→ **A**, right panel, and table on p. 124). The partial pressure of CO<sub>2</sub> (P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>) is the chief factor that determines the CO<sub>2</sub> content of blood. The **CO<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve** illustrates how the total CO<sub>2</sub> concentration depends on P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> (→ **A**).

The concentration of **dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>**, [CO<sub>2</sub>], in plasma is directly proportional to the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in plasma and can be calculated as follows:

$$[\text{CO}_2] = \alpha_{\text{CO}_2} \cdot \text{P}_{\text{CO}_2} \text{ (mmol/L plasma or mL/L plasma),} \quad [5.6]$$

where  $\alpha_{\text{CO}_2}$  is the (Bunsen) *solubility coefficient* for CO<sub>2</sub>. At 37 °C,

$$\alpha_{\text{CO}_2} = 0.225 \text{ mmol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1},$$

After converting the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> into volume CO<sub>2</sub> (mL = mmol · 22.26), this yields

$$\alpha_{\text{CO}_2} = 5 \text{ mL} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1}.$$

The *curve for dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>* is therefore linear (→ **A**, green line).

Since the buffering and carbamate formation capacities of hemoglobin are limited, the relation between **bound "CO<sub>2</sub>"** and P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> is curvilinear. The *dissociation curve for total CO<sub>2</sub>* is calculated from the sum of dissolved and bound CO<sub>2</sub> (→ **A**, red and violet lines).

CO<sub>2</sub> binding with hemoglobin depends on the degree of **oxygen saturation** (S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) of hemoglobin. Blood completely saturated with O<sub>2</sub> is not able to bind as much CO<sub>2</sub> as O<sub>2</sub>-free blood at equal P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> levels (→ **A**, red and violet lines). When venous blood in the lungs is loaded with O<sub>2</sub>, the buffer capacity of hemoglobin and, consequently, the levels of chemical CO<sub>2</sub> binding decrease due to the Haldane effect (→ p. 124). Venous blood is never completely void of O<sub>2</sub>, but is always O<sub>2</sub>-saturated to a certain degree, depending on the degree of O<sub>2</sub> extraction (→ p. 130) of the organ in question. The S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> of mixed venous blood is about 0.75. The CO<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve for S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> = 0.75 therefore lies between those for S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> = 0.00 and 1.00 (→ **A**, dotted line). In arterial blood, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> ≈ 5.33 kPa and S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> ≈ 0.97 (→ **A**, point a). In mixed venous blood, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> ≈ 6.27 kPa and S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> ≈ 0.75 (→ **A**, point v). The normal range of CO<sub>2</sub>

dissociation is determined by connecting these two points by a line called "*physiologic CO<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve*."

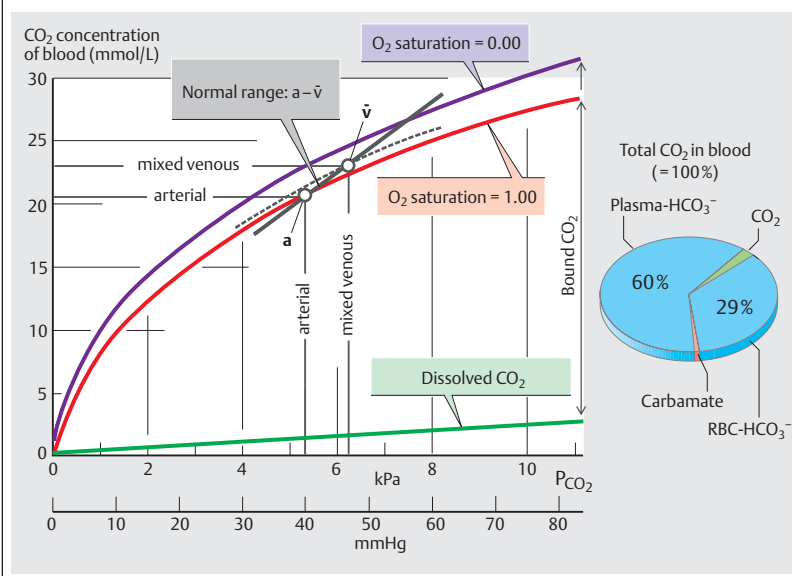
The concentration ratio of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> to dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> in plasma and red blood cells differs (about 20 : 1 and 12 : 1, respectively). This reflects the difference in the pH of plasma (7.4) and erythrocytes (ca. 7.2) (→ p. 138ff.).

## CO<sub>2</sub> in Cerebrospinal Fluid

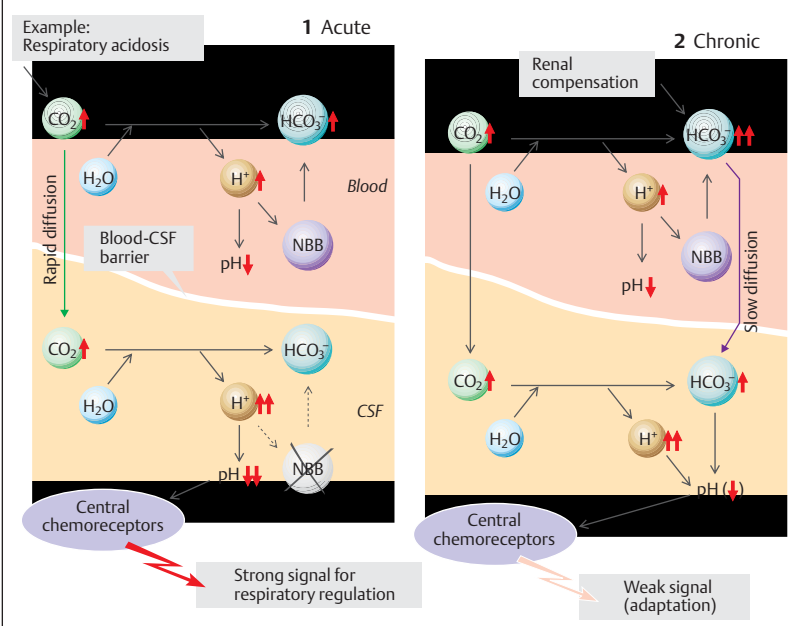
Unlike HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and H<sup>+</sup>, CO<sub>2</sub> can cross the blood-cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) barrier with relative ease (→ **B1** and p. 310). The P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in CSF therefore adapts quickly to **acute changes in the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in blood**. CO<sub>2</sub>-related (respiratory) pH changes in the body can be buffered by *non-bicarbonate buffers* (NBBs) only (→ p. 144). Since the concentration of non-bicarbonate buffers in CSF is very low, an acute rise in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> (respiratory acidosis; → p. 144) leads to a relatively sharp decrease in the pH of CSF (→ **B1**, pH ↓↓). This decrease is registered by central chemosensors (or chemoreceptors) that adjust respiratory activity accordingly (→ p. 132). (In this book, sensory receptors are called sensors in order to distinguish them from hormone and transmitter receptors.)

The concentration of non-bicarbonate buffers in blood (hemoglobin, plasma proteins) is high. When the CO<sub>2</sub> concentration increases, the liberated H<sup>+</sup> ions are therefore effectively buffered in the blood. The actual HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> concentration in blood then rises relatively slowly, to ultimately become higher than in the CSF. As a result, HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> diffuses (relatively slowly) into the CSF (→ **B2**), resulting in a renewed increase in the pH of the CSF because the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>/CO<sub>2</sub> ratio increases (→ p. 140). This, in turn, leads to a reduction in respiratory activity (via central chemosensors), a process enhanced by renal compensation, i.e., a pH increase through HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> retention (→ p. 144). By this mechanism, the body ultimately adapts to **chronic elevation in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>**—i.e., a chronically elevated P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> will no longer represent a respiratory drive (cf. p. 132).

**A. CO<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve**



**B. Effect of CO<sub>2</sub> on pH of CSF**





## Binding and Transport of O<sub>2</sub> in Blood

**Hemoglobin (Hb)** is the O<sub>2</sub>-carrying protein of red blood cells (RBCs) (mol. mass: 64 500 Da). Hb is also involved in CO<sub>2</sub> transport and is an important blood pH buffer (→ pp. 124 and 138ff.). Hb is a tetramer with 4 subunits (adults: 98%: 2 $\alpha$  + 2 $\beta$  = HbA; 2% 2 $\alpha$  + 2 $\delta$  = HbA<sub>2</sub>), each with its own heme group. **Heme** consists of porphyrin and **Fe(II)**. Each of the four Fe(II) atoms (each linked with one histidine residue of Hb) binds reversibly with an O<sub>2</sub> molecule. This is referred to as **oxygenation** (not oxidation) of Hb to oxyhemoglobin (Oxy-Hb). The amount of O<sub>2</sub> which combines with Hb depends on the partial pressure of O<sub>2</sub> (P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>): **oxygen dissociation curve** (→ A, red line). The curve has a sigmoid shape, because initially bound O<sub>2</sub> molecules change the conformation of the Hb tetramer (positive cooperativity) and thereby increase **hemoglobin-O<sub>2</sub> affinity**.

When fully saturated with O<sub>2</sub>, 1 mol of tetrameric Hb combines with 4 mol O<sub>2</sub>, i.e., 64 500 g of Hb combine with 4 × 22.4 L of O<sub>2</sub>. Thus, 1 g Hb can theoretically transport 1.39 mL O<sub>2</sub>, or 1.35 mL in vivo (Hüfner number). The total Hb concentration of the blood ([Hb]<sub>total</sub>) is a mean 150 g/L (→ p. 88), corresponding to a maximum O<sub>2</sub> concentration of 9.1 mmol/L or an O<sub>2</sub> fraction of 0.203 L O<sub>2</sub>/L blood. This **oxygen-carrying capacity** is a function of [Hb]<sub>total</sub> (→ A, yellow and purple curves as compared to the red curve).

The O<sub>2</sub> content of blood is virtually equivalent to the amount of O<sub>2</sub> bound by Hb since only 1.4% of O<sub>2</sub> in blood is dissolved at a P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> of 13.3 kPa (→ A, orange line). The solubility coefficient ( $\alpha_{O_2}$ ), which is 10  $\mu\text{mol} \cdot [\text{L of plasma}]^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1}$ , is 22 times smaller than  $\alpha_{CO_2}$  (→ p. 126).

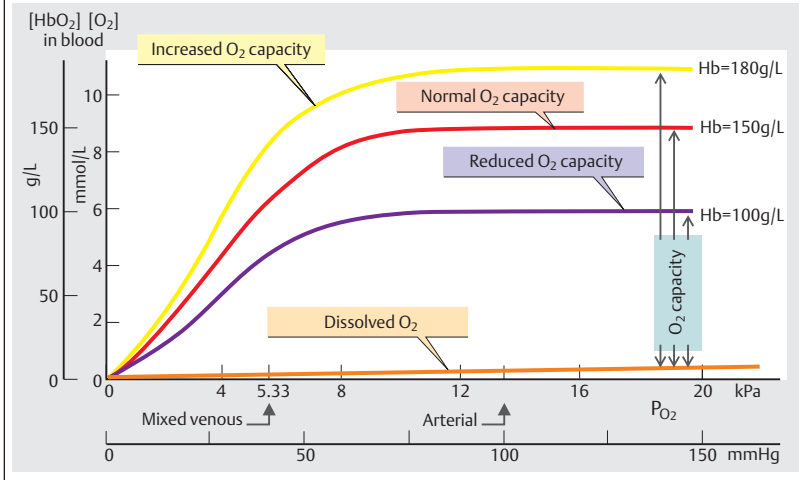
**Oxygen saturation** (S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) is the fraction of Oxy-Hb relative to [Hb]<sub>total</sub>, or the ratio of **actual O<sub>2</sub> concentration/O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity**. At normal P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> in arterial blood (e.g., P<sub>aO<sub>2</sub></sub> = 12.6 kPa or 95 mmHg), S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> will reach a **saturation plateau** at approx. 0.97, while S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> will still amount to 0.73 in mixed venous blood (P<sub>vO<sub>2</sub></sub> = 5.33 kPa or 40 mmHg). The venous S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> values in different organs can vary greatly (→ p. 130).

O<sub>2</sub> dissociation is independent of total Hb if plotted as a function of S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (→ B). Changes in O<sub>2</sub> affinity to Hb can then be easily identified as **shifting of the O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve**. A shift to

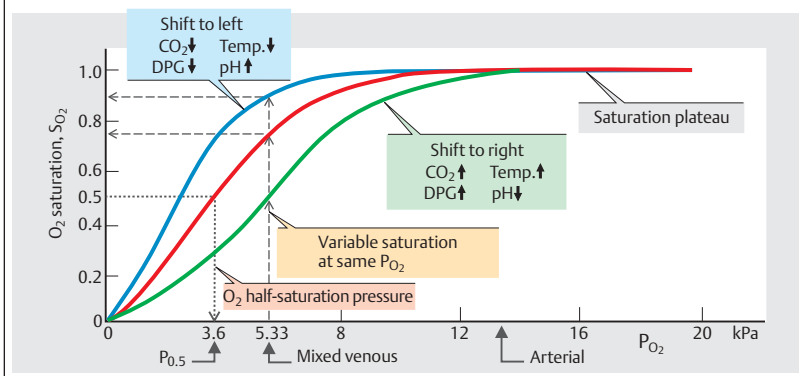
the right signifies an affinity decrease, and a shift to the left signifies an affinity increase, resulting in flattening and steepening, respectively, of the initial part of the curve. **Shifts to the left** are caused by increases in pH (with or without a P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> decrease) and/or decreases in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>, temperature and 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate (BPG; normally 1 mol/mol Hb tetramer). **Shifts to the right** occur due to decreases in pH and/or increases in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>, temperature and 2,3-BPG (→ B). The **half-saturation pressure** (P<sub>0.5</sub> or P<sub>50</sub>) of O<sub>2</sub> (→ B, dotted lines) is the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> at which S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> is 0.5 or 50%. The P<sub>0.5</sub>, which is normally 3.6 kPa or 27 mmHg, is a measure of shifting to the right (P<sub>0.5</sub> ↑) or left (P<sub>0.5</sub> ↓). Displacement of the O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve due to changes in pH and P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> is called the **Bohr effect**. A shift to the right means that, in the periphery (pH ↓, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> ↑), larger quantities of O<sub>2</sub> can be absorbed from the blood without decreasing the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>, which is the driving force for O<sub>2</sub> diffusion (→ B, broken lines). A higher affinity for O<sub>2</sub> is then re-established in the pulmonary capillaries (pH ↑, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> ↓). A shift to the left is useful when the P<sub>aO<sub>2</sub></sub> is decreased (e.g., in altitude hypoxia), a situation where arterial S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> lies to the left of the S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> plateau.

**Myoglobin** is an Fe(II)-containing muscle protein that serves as a short-term storage molecule for O<sub>2</sub> (→ p. 72). As it is monomeric (no positive cooperativity), its O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve at low P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> is much steeper than that of HbA (→ C). Since the O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve of **fetal Hb** (2 $\alpha$  + 2 $\gamma$  = HbF) is also steeper, S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> values of 45 to 70% can be reached in the fetal umbilical vein despite the low P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (3–4 kPa or 22–30 mmHg) of maternal placental blood. This is sufficient, because the fetal [Hb]<sub>total</sub> is 180 g/L. The **carbon monoxide (CO) dissociation curve** is extremely steep. Therefore, even tiny amounts of CO in the respiratory air will dissociate O<sub>2</sub> from Hb. This can result in **carbon monoxide poisoning** (→ C). **Methemoglobin**, Met-Hb (normally 1% of Hb), is formed from Hb by oxidation of Fe(II) to Fe(III) either spontaneously or via exogenous oxidants. Met-Hb cannot combine with O<sub>2</sub> (→ C). **Methemoglobin reductase** reduces Fe(III) of Met-Hb back to Fe(II); deficiencies of this enzyme can cause methemoglobinemia, resulting in neonatal anoxia.

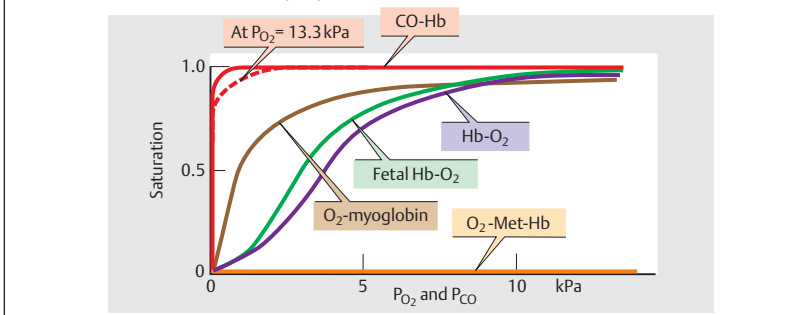
**A. O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve: O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity**



**B. O<sub>2</sub> dissociation curve: O<sub>2</sub> saturation**



**C. O<sub>2</sub> and carbon monoxide (CO) dissociation curves**



## Internal (Tissue) Respiration, Hypoxia

O<sub>2</sub> diffuses from peripheral blood to adjacent tissues and CO<sub>2</sub> in the opposite direction (→ pp. 20ff. and 106). Since CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses much faster (→ p. 120), O<sub>2</sub> diffusion is the limiting factor. Sufficient O<sub>2</sub> delivery is ensured by a dense capillary network with a gas exchange area of about 1000 m<sup>2</sup>. The diffusion distance (→ R in A) is only 10–25 μm. The driving force for diffusion is the difference in partial pressures of oxygen (ΔP<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) in capillary blood and mitochondria, where the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> must not fall below 0.1 kPa ≈ 1 mmHg. Since P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> decreases with distance parallel and perpendicular to the course of capillaries, the O<sub>2</sub> supply to cells at the venous end far away from the capillaries (large R) is lowest, as shown using Krogh's cylinder model (→ A1). Since these cells are also the first to be affected by oxygen deficiency (hypoxia), this is sometimes called the "lethal corner" (→ A2).

Using Fick's principle (→ p. 106), oxygen consumption of a given organ,  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  (in L/min), is calculated as the difference between the arterial supply ( $\dot{Q} \cdot [O_2]_a$ ) and non-utilized venous O<sub>2</sub> volume/time ( $\dot{Q} \cdot [O_2]_v$ ), where  $\dot{Q}$  is rate of blood flow in the organ (L/min) and [O<sub>2</sub>] is the oxygen fraction (L O<sub>2</sub>/L blood):

$$\dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{Q} ([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v) \quad [5.7]$$

To meet increased O<sub>2</sub> demands,  $\dot{Q}$  can therefore be increased by vasodilatation in the organ in question and/or by raising the oxygen extraction (E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>). E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> describes the O<sub>2</sub> consumption in the organ (=  $\dot{Q} ([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v)$ ; see Eq. 5.7) relative to the arterial O<sub>2</sub> supply ( $\dot{Q} \cdot [O_2]_a$ ). Since  $\dot{Q}$  can be simplified,

$$E_{O_2} = ([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v) / [O_2]_a \quad [5.8]$$

E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> varies according to the type and function of the organ under resting conditions: skin 0.04 (4%), kidney 0.07; brain, liver and resting skeletal muscle ca. 0.3, myocardium 0.6. The E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> of muscle during strenuous exercise can rise to 0.9. Skeletal muscle can therefore meet increased O<sub>2</sub> demands by raising the E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (0.3 ⇒ 0.9), as can myocardial tissue to a much smaller extent (→ p. 210).

**Hypoxia.** An abnormally reduced O<sub>2</sub> supply to tissue is classified as follows:

1. **Hypoxic hypoxia** (→ A2, B1): an insufficient O<sub>2</sub> supply reaches the blood due, for ex-

ample, to decreased atmospheric P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> at high altitudes (→ p. 136), reduced alveolar ventilation, or impaired alveolar gas exchange.

2. **Anemic hypoxia** (→ B2): reduced O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity of blood (→ p. 128), e.g., due to decreased total Hb in iron deficiency anemia (→ p. 90).

3. **Stagnant or ischemic hypoxia** (→ B3): insufficient O<sub>2</sub> reaches the tissue due to reduced blood flow ( $\dot{Q} \downarrow$ ). The cause can be systemic (e.g., heart failure) or local (e.g., obstructed artery). The reduction of blood flow must be compensated for by a rise in E<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> to maintain an adequate O<sub>2</sub> delivery (see Eq. 5.7). This is not the case in hypoxic and anemic hypoxia. The influx and efflux of substrates and metabolites is also impaired in stagnant hypoxia. Anaerobic glycolysis (→ p. 72) is therefore of little help because neither the uptake of glucose nor the discharge of H<sup>+</sup> ions dissociated from lactic acid is possible.

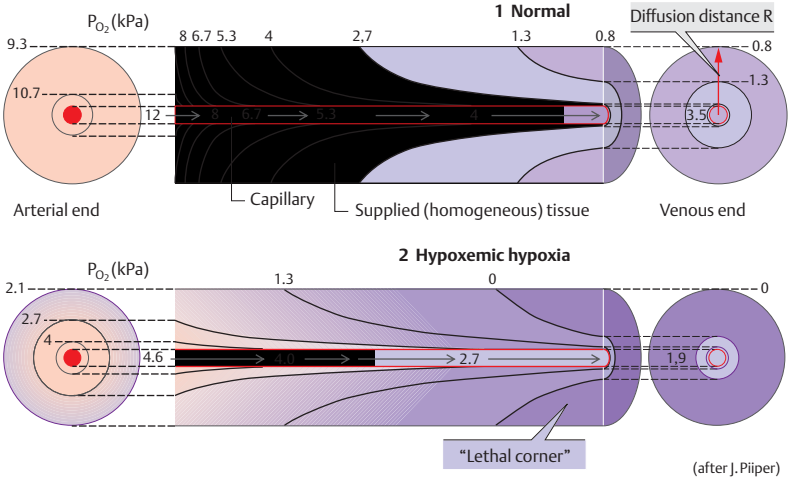
4. Hypoxia can also occur when the diffusion distance is increased due to tissue thickening without a corresponding increase in the number of blood capillaries. This results in an insufficient blood supply to cells lying outside the O<sub>2</sub> supply radius (R) of the Krogh cylinder (→ A).

5. **Histotoxic or cytotoxic hypoxia** occurs due to impaired utilization of O<sub>2</sub> by the tissues despite a sufficient supply of O<sub>2</sub> in the mitochondria, as observed in cyanide poisoning. Cyanide (HCN) blocks oxidative cellular metabolism by inhibiting cytochromoxidase.

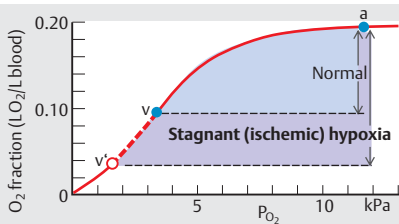
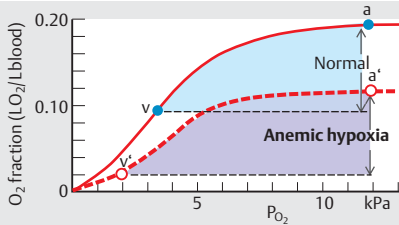
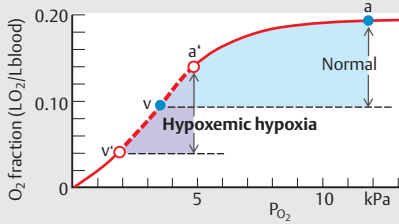
**Brain tissue** is extremely susceptible to hypoxia, which can cause critical damage since dead nerve cells generally cannot be replaced. **Anoxia**, or a total lack of oxygen, can occur due to heart or respiratory failure. The cerebral survival time is thus the limiting factor for overall survival. Unconsciousness occurs after only 15 s of anoxia, and irreparable brain damage occurs if anoxia lasts for more than 3 min or so.

**Cyanosis** is a bluish discoloration of the skin, lips, nails, etc. due to excessive arterial deoxyhemoglobin (> 50 g/L). Cyanosis is a sign of hypoxia in individuals with normal or only moderately reduced total Hb levels. When total Hb is extremely low, O<sub>2</sub> deficiencies (anemic hypoxia) can be life-threatening, even in the absence of cyanosis. Cyanosis can occur in absence of significant hypoxia when the Hb level is elevated.

**A. O<sub>2</sub> supply: Krogh's cylinder model**



**B. Hypoxia**



## Respiratory Control and Stimulation

The respiratory muscles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 108) are innervated by nerve fibers extending from the cervical and thoracic medulla (C4–C8 and T1–T7). The most important **control centers** are located in the *medulla oblongata* and cervical *medulla* (C1–C2), where interactive *inspiratory and expiratory neurons* on different levels ( $\rightarrow$  A1, red and green areas). The network of these spatially separate neuron groups form a **rhythm generator (respiratory “center”)** where respiratory rhythm originates ( $\rightarrow$  A1). The neuron groups are triggered alternately, resulting in rhythmic inspiration and expiration. They are activated in a tonic (non-rhythm-dependent) manner by the *formatio reticularis*, which receives signals from *respiratory stimulants* in the periphery and higher centers of the brain.

**Respiratory sensors** or receptors are involved in respiratory control circuits ( $\rightarrow$  p. 4). *Central and peripheral chemosensors* on the medulla oblongata and in the arterial circulation continuously register gas partial pressures in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and blood, respectively, and *mechanosensors* in the chest wall respond to stretch of intercostal muscles to modulate the depth of breathing ( $\rightarrow$  A2). *Pulmonary stretch sensors* in the tracheal and bronchial walls respond to marked increases in lung volume, thereby limiting the depth of respiration in humans (*Hering–Breuer reflex*). *Muscle spindles* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 318) in the respiratory muscles also respond to changes in airway resistance in the lung and chest wall.

**Chemical respiratory stimulants.** The extent of involuntary ventilation is mainly determined by the partial pressures of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  and the pH of blood and CSF. Chemosensors respond to any changes in these variables. **Peripheral chemosensors** in the glomera aortica and carotica ( $\rightarrow$  A3) register changes in the arterial  $P_{O_2}$ . If it falls, they stimulate an increase in ventilation via the vagus (X) and glossopharyngeal nerves (IX) until the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  rises again. This occurs, for example, at high altitudes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 136). The impulse frequency of the sensors increases sharply when the  $P_{O_2}$  drops below 13 kPa or 97 mmHg (**peripheral ventilatory drive**). These changes are even

stronger when  $P_{CO_2}$  and/or the  $H^+$  concentration in blood also increase.

**Central chemosensors** in the medulla react to  $CO_2$  and  $H^+$  increases (= pH decrease) in the CSF ( $\rightarrow$  A4 and p. 126). Ventilation is then increased until  $P_{CO_2}$  and the  $H^+$  concentration in blood and CSF decrease to normal values. This mostly **central respiratory drive** is very effective in responding to acute changes. An increase in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  from, say, 5 to 9 kPa increases the total ventilation  $\dot{V}_E$  by a factor of ten, as shown in the *CO<sub>2</sub> response curve* ( $\rightarrow$  A6).

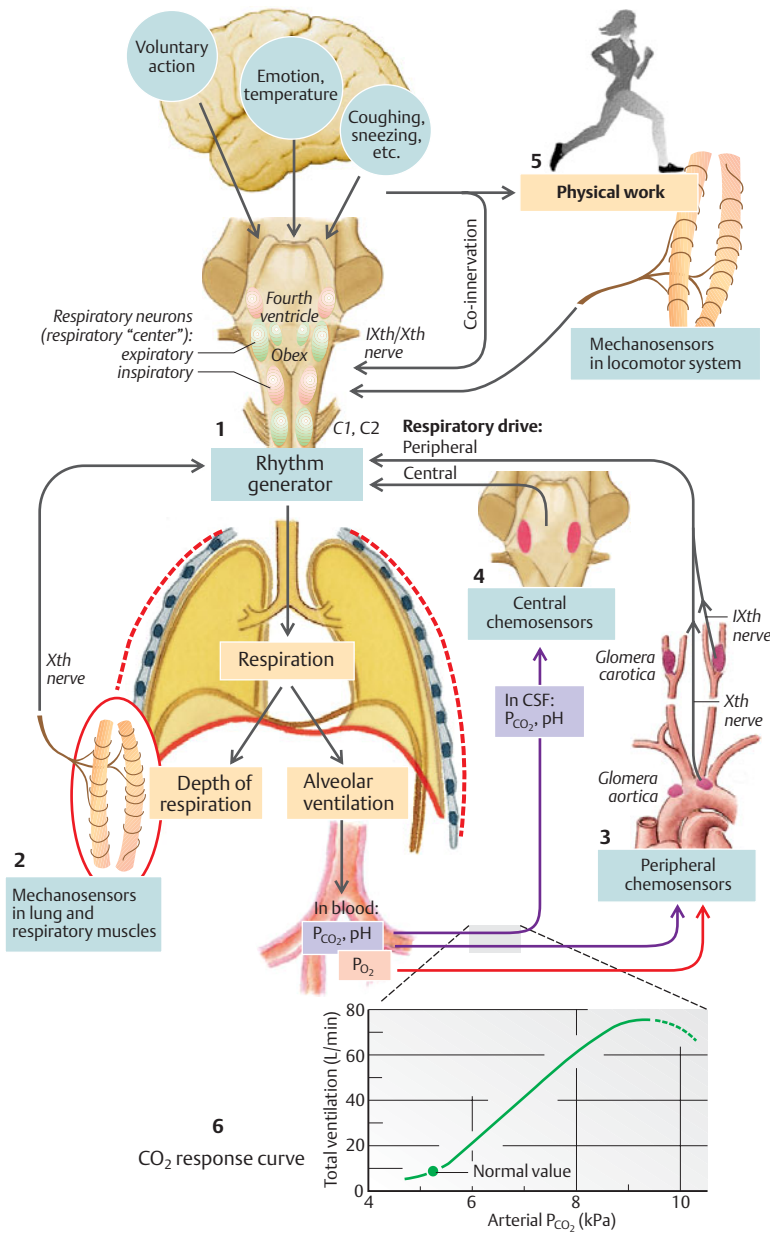
When a **chronic rise in  $P_{CO_2}$**  occurs, the previously increased central respiratory drive decreases ( $\rightarrow$  p. 126). If  $O_2$  supplied by artificial respiration tricks the peripheral chemosensors into believing that there is adequate ventilation, the residual peripheral respiratory drive will also be in jeopardy.

During **physical work** ( $\rightarrow$  A5), the total ventilation increases due to (a) co-innervation of the respiratory centers (by collaterals of cortical efferent motor fibers) and (b) through impulses transmitted by proprioceptive fibers from the muscles.

**Non-feedback sensors** and stimulants also play an important role in modulating the basic rhythm of respiration. They include

- ◆ *Irritant sensors* in the bronchial mucosa, which quickly respond to lung volume decreases by increasing the respiratory rate (deflation reflex or Head's reflex), and to dust particles or irritating gases by triggering the cough reflex.
- ◆ *J sensors* of free C fiber endings on alveolar and bronchial walls; these are stimulated in pulmonary edema, triggering symptoms such as apnea and lowering the blood pressure.
- ◆ *Higher central nervous centers* such as the cortex, limbic system, hypothalamus or pons. They are involved in the expression of emotions like fear, pain and joy; in reflexes such as sneezing, coughing, yawning and swallowing; and in voluntary control of respiration while speaking, singing, etc.
- ◆ *Pressosensors* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 214), which are responsible for increasing respiration when the blood pressure decreases.
- ◆ *Heat and cold sensors* in the skin and thermoregulatory center. Increases (fever) and decreases in body temperature lead to increased respiration.
- ◆ *Certain hormones* also help to regulate respiration. Progesterone, for example, increases respiration in the second half of the menstrual cycle and during pregnancy.

**A. Respiratory control and stimulation**



## Effects of Diving on Respiration

Diving creates a problem for respiration due to the lack of normal ambient air supply and to higher the outside pressures exerted on the body. The total pressure on the body underwater is equal to the water pressure (98 kPa or 735 mmHg for each 10 m of water) plus the atmospheric pressure at the water surface.

A **snorkel** can be used when diving just below the water surface ( $\rightarrow$  A), but it increases dead space ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 114 and 120), making it harder to breathe. The additional pressure load from the water on chest and abdomen must also be overcome with each breath.

The depth at which a snorkel can be used is limited 1) because an intolerable increase in dead space or airway resistance will occur when using an extremely long or narrow snorkel, and 2) because the water pressure at lower depths will prevent inhalation. The maximum suction produced on inspiration is about 11 kPa, equivalent to 112 cm H<sub>2</sub>O (peak inspiratory pressure,  $\rightarrow$  p. 116). Inspiration therefore is no longer possible at aquatic depths of about 112 cm or more due to the risk of hypoxic anoxia ( $\rightarrow$  A).

**Scuba diving equipment** (scuba = self-contained underwater breathing apparatus) is needed to breathe at lower depths (up to about 70 m). The inspiratory air pressure (from pressurized air cylinders) is automatically adjusted to the water pressure, thereby permitting the diver to breathe with normal effort.

However, the additional water pressure increases the partial pressure of **nitrogen** P<sub>N<sub>2</sub></sub> ( $\rightarrow$  B), resulting in higher concentrations of dissolved N<sub>2</sub> in the blood. The pressure at a depth of 60 meters is about seven times higher than at the water surface. The pressure decreases as the diver returns to the water surface, but the additional N<sub>2</sub> does not remain dissolved. The diver must therefore ascend slowly, in gradual stages so that the excess N<sub>2</sub> can return to and be expelled from the lungs. Resurfacing too quickly would lead to the development of N<sub>2</sub> bubbles in tissue (pain!) and blood, where they can cause obstruction and embolism of small blood vessels. This is called **decompression sickness** or **caisson disease** ( $\rightarrow$  B). Euphoria (N<sub>2</sub> narcosis?), also called *rapture of the deep*, can occur when diving at depths of over 40 to 60 meters. Oxygen toxicity can occur at depths of 75 m or more ( $\rightarrow$  p. 136).

When **diving unassisted**, i.e., simply by holding one's breath, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in the blood rises, since the CO<sub>2</sub> produced by the body is not exhaled. Once a certain P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> has been reached, chemosensors

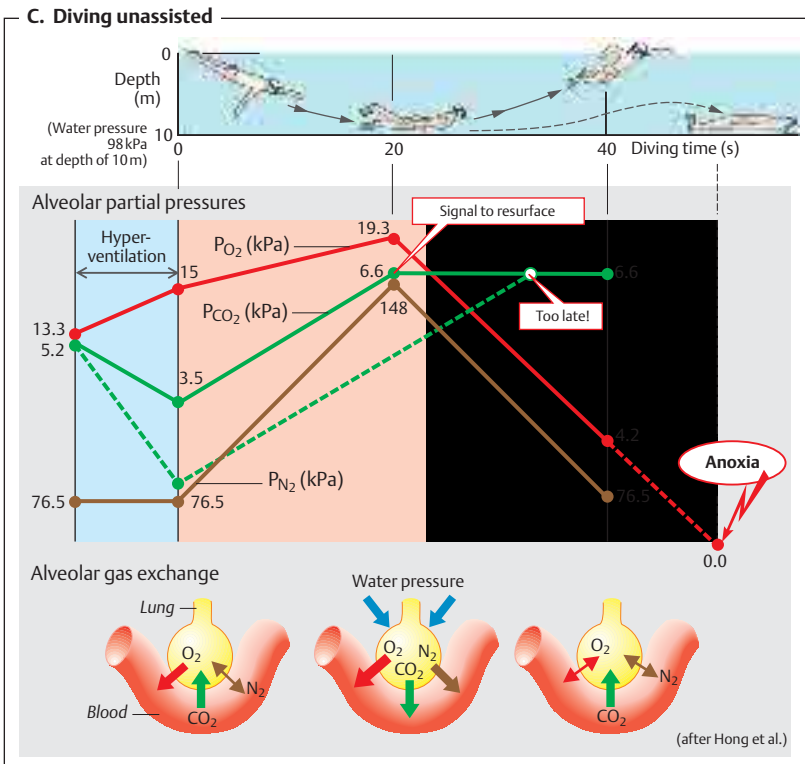
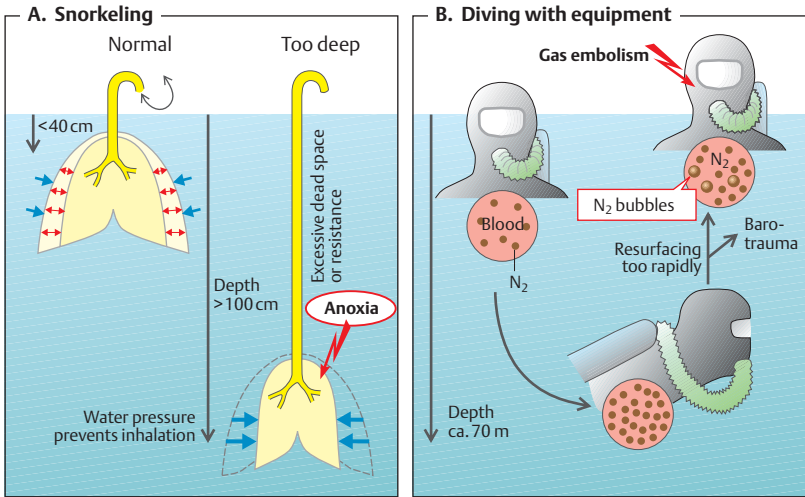
( $\rightarrow$  p. 132) trigger a sensation of shortness of breath, signaling that it is time to resurface.

To delay the time to resurface, it is possible to lower the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in blood by **hyperventilating before diving**. Experienced divers use this trick to stay under water longer. The course of alveolar partial pressures over time and the direction of alveolar gas exchange while diving (depth: 10 m; duration 40 s) is shown in C. Hyperventilating before a dive reduces the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> (solid green line) and slightly increases the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (red line) in the alveoli (and in blood). Diving at a depth of 10 m doubles the pressure on the chest and abdominal wall. As a result, the partial pressures of gases in the alveoli (P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>, P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>, P<sub>N<sub>2</sub></sub>) increase sharply. Increased quantities of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> therefore diffuse from the alveoli into the blood. Once the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> in blood rises to a certain level, the body signals that it is time to resurface. If the diver resurfaces at this time, the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> in the alveoli and blood drops rapidly (O<sub>2</sub> consumption + pressure decrease) and the alveolar O<sub>2</sub> exchange stops. Back at the water surface, the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> reaches a level that is just tolerable. If the diver excessively hyperventilates before the dive, the signal to resurface will come too late, and the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> will drop to zero (**anoxia**) before the person reaches the water surface, which can result in unconsciousness and drowning ( $\rightarrow$  C, dotted lines).

**Barotrauma.** The increased pressure associated with diving leads to compression of air-filled organs, such as the lung and middle ear. Their gas volumes are compressed to  $1/2$  their normal size at water depths of 10 m, and to  $1/4$  at depths of 30 m.

The missing volume of air in the lungs is automatically replaced by the scuba, but not that of the middle ear. The middle ear and throat are connected by the Eustachian tube, which is open only at certain times (e.g., when swallowing) or not at all (e.g., in pharyngitis). If volume loss in the ear is not compensated for during a dive, the increasing water pressure in the outer auditory canal distends the eardrum, causing pain or even eardrum rupture. As a result, cold water can enter the middle ear and impair the organ of equilibrium, leading to nausea, dizziness, and disorientation. This can be prevented by pressing air from the lungs into the middle ear by holding the nose and blowing with the mouth closed.

The air in air-filled organs expands when the diver ascends to the water surface. Resurfacing too quickly, i.e., without expelling air at regular intervals, can lead to complications such as lung laceration and pneumothorax ( $\rightarrow$  p. 110) as well as potentially fatal hemorrhage and air embolism.





## Effects of High Altitude on Respiration

At sea level, the average barometric pressure ( $P_B$ )  $\approx$  101 kPa (760 mmHg), the  $O_2$  fraction in ambient air ( $F_{I_{O_2}}$ ) is 0.209, and the inspiratory partial pressure of  $O_2$  ( $P_{I_{O_2}}$ )  $\approx$  21 kPa ( $\rightarrow$  p. 106). However,  $P_B$  decreases with increasing altitude (h, in km):

$$P_B \text{ (at h)} = P_B \text{ (at sea level)} \cdot e^{-0.127 \cdot h} \quad [5.9]$$

This results in a drop in  $P_{I_{O_2}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, column 1), alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  ( $P_{A_{O_2}}$ ) and arterial  $P_{O_2}$  ( $P_{a_{O_2}}$ ). The  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  at sea level is about 13 kPa ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, column 2).  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  is an important measure of oxygen supply. If the  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  falls below a critical level (ca. 4.7 kPa = 35 mmHg), hypoxia ( $\rightarrow$  p. 130) and impairment of cerebral function will occur. The critical  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  would be reached at heights of about 4000 m above sea level during normal ventilation ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, dotted line in column 2). However, the low  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  triggers chemosensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 132) that stimulate an increase in total ventilation ( $\dot{V}_E$ ); this is called  **$O_2$  deficiency ventilation** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, column 4). As a result, larger volumes of  $CO_2$  are exhaled, and the  $P_{A_{CO_2}}$  and  $P_{a_{CO_2}}$  decrease (see below). As described by the *alveolar gas equation*,

$$P_{A_{O_2}} = P_{I_{O_2}} - \frac{P_{A_{CO_2}}}{RQ} \quad [5.10]$$

where RQ is the respiratory quotient ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 120 and 228), any fall in  $P_{A_{CO_2}}$  will lead to a rise in the  $P_{A_{O_2}}$ .  $O_2$  deficiency ventilation stops the  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  from becoming critical up to altitudes of about 7000 m (*altitude gain*,  $\rightarrow$  **A**).

The maximal increase in ventilation ( $\approx 3 \times$  resting rate) during acute  $O_2$  deficiency is relatively small compared to the increase ( $\approx 10$  times the resting rate) during strenuous physical exercise at normal altitudes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74, C3) because increased ventilation at high altitudes reduces the  $P_{a_{CO_2}}$  (= **hyperventilation**,  $\rightarrow$  p. 108), resulting in the development of **respiratory alkalosis** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144). Central chemosensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 132) then emit signals to lower the respiratory drive, thereby counteracting the signals from  $O_2$  chemosensors to increase the respiratory drive. As the mountain climber adapts, respiratory alkalosis is compensated for by increased renal excretion of  $HCO_3^-$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144). This helps return the pH of the blood toward normal, and the  $O_2$  deficiency-related increase in respiratory drive can now

prevail. Stimulation of  $O_2$  chemosensors at high altitudes also leads to an increase in the heart rate and a corresponding *increase in cardiac output*, thereby increasing the  $O_2$  supply to the tissues.

High altitude also stimulates **erythropoiesis** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 88ff.). Prolonged exposure to high altitudes increases the hematocrit levels, although this is limited by the corresponding rise in blood viscosity ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 92, 188).

**Breathing oxygen** from pressurized  $O_2$  cylinders is necessary for survival at altitudes above 7000 m, where  $P_{I_{O_2}}$  is almost as high as the barometric pressure  $P_B$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, column 3). The critical  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  level now occurs at an altitude of about 12 km with normal ventilation, and at about 14 km with increased ventilation. Modern long-distance planes fly slightly below this altitude to ensure that the passengers can survive with an oxygen mask in case the cabin pressure drops unexpectedly.

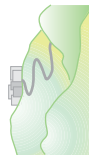
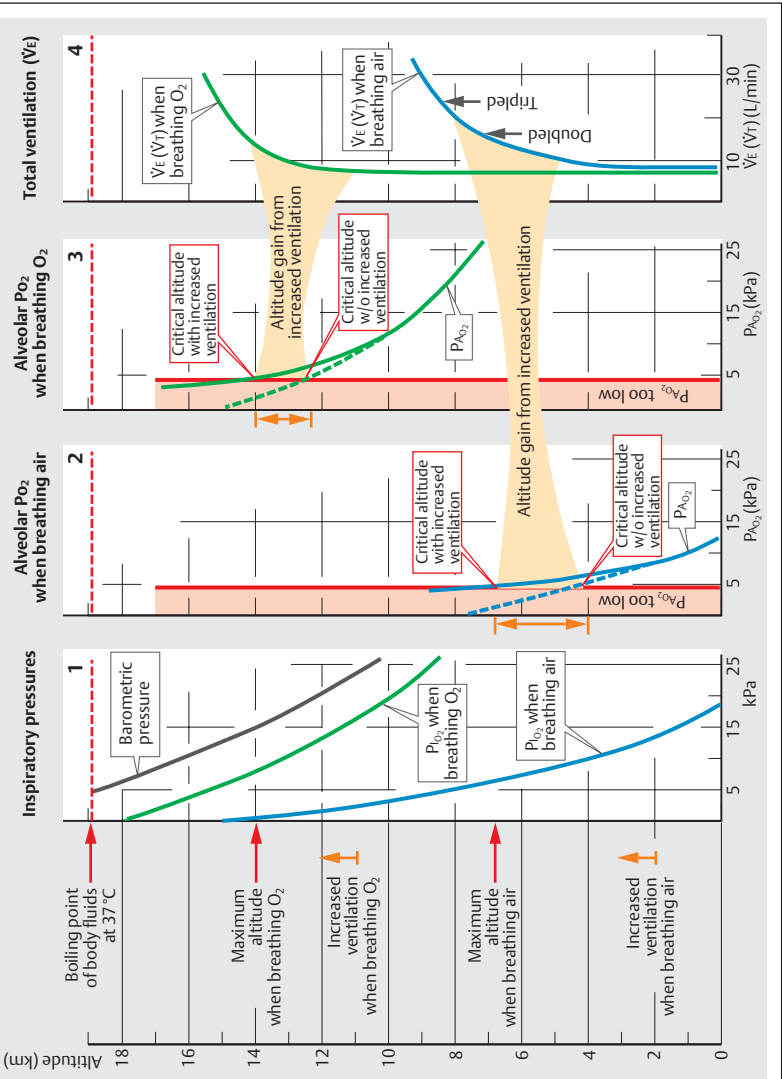
Survival at altitudes above 14 km is not possible without pressurized chambers or pressurized suits like those used in space travel. Otherwise, the body fluids would begin to boil at altitudes of 20 km or so ( $\rightarrow$  **A**), where  $P_B$  is lower than water vapor pressure at body temperature (37 °C).

## Oxygen Toxicity

**Hyperoxia** occurs when  $P_{I_{O_2}}$  is above normal ( $> 22$  kPa or 165 mmHg) due to an increased  $O_2$  fraction (*oxygen therapy*) or to an overall pressure increase with a normal  $O_2$  fraction (e.g. in diving,  $\rightarrow$  p. 134). The degree of  $O_2$  toxicity depends on the  $P_{I_{O_2}}$  level (critical: ca. 40 kPa or 300 mmHg) and duration of hyperoxia. Lung dysfunction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 118, *surfactant deficiency*) occurs when a  $P_{I_{O_2}}$  of about 70 kPa (525 mmHg) persists for several days or 200 kPa (1500 mmHg) for 3–6 hours. Lung dysfunction initially manifests as *coughing* and *painful breathing*. *Seizures* and *unconsciousness* occur at  $P_{I_{O_2}}$  levels above 220 kPa (1650 mmHg), e.g., when diving at a depth of about 100 m using pressurized air.

Newborns will go blind if exposed to  $P_{I_{O_2}}$  levels much greater than 40 kPa (300 mmHg) for long periods of time (e.g., in an incubator), because the vitreous body then opacifies.

**A. Respiration at high altitudes (without acclimatization)**



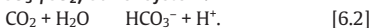
**pH, pH Buffers, Acid–Base Balance**

The **pH** indicates the hydrogen ion activity or the “effective”  $H^+$  concentration of a solution ( $H^+$  activity =  $f_H \cdot [H^+]$ , where square brackets mean concentration;  $\rightarrow$  p. 378), where

$$pH = -\log (f_H \cdot [H^+]) \quad [6.1]$$

In healthy individuals, the **pH of the blood** is usually a mean **pH 7.4** (see p. 142 for normal range), corresponding to  $H^+$  activity of about 40 nmol/L. The maintenance of a constant pH is important for human survival. Large deviations from the norm can have detrimental effects on metabolism, membrane permeability, and electrolyte distribution. Blood pH values below 7.0 and above 7.8 are not compatible with life.

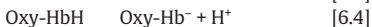
Various **pH buffers** are responsible for maintaining the body at a constant pH ( $\rightarrow$  p. 379). One important buffer for blood and other body fluids is the **bicarbonate/carbon dioxide ( $HCO_3^-/CO_2$ ) buffer system**:



The  $pK_a$  value ( $\rightarrow$  p. 378f.) determines the prevailing concentration ratio of the buffer base and buffer acid ( $[HCO_3^-]$  and  $[CO_2]$ , respectively in Eq. 6.2) at a given pH (*Henderson–Hasselbalch equation*;  $\rightarrow$  A).

The primary **function of the  $CO_2/HCO_3^-$  buffer system** in blood is to buffer  $H^+$  ions. However, this system is especially important because the concentrations of the two buffer components can be modified largely independent of each other:  $[CO_2]$  by respiration and  $[HCO_3^-]$  by the liver and kidney ( $\rightarrow$  A; see also p. 174). It is therefore classified as an **open buffer system** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 140).

**Hemoglobin** in red blood cells (320 g Hb/L erythrocytes!  $\rightarrow$  MCHC, p. 89 C), the second most important buffer in blood, is a **non-bicarbonate buffer**.



The relatively acidic oxyhemoglobin anion ( $Oxy-Hb^-$ ) combines with fewer  $H^+$  ions than deoxygenated  $Hb^-$ , which is less acidic (see also p. 124).  $H^+$  ions are therefore liberated upon oxygenation of Hb to  $Oxy-Hb$  in the lung. Reaction 6.2 therefore proceeds to the left, thereby promoting the release of  $CO_2$  from its

bound forms ( $\rightarrow$  p. 124). This, in turn, increases the pulmonary elimination of  $CO_2$ .

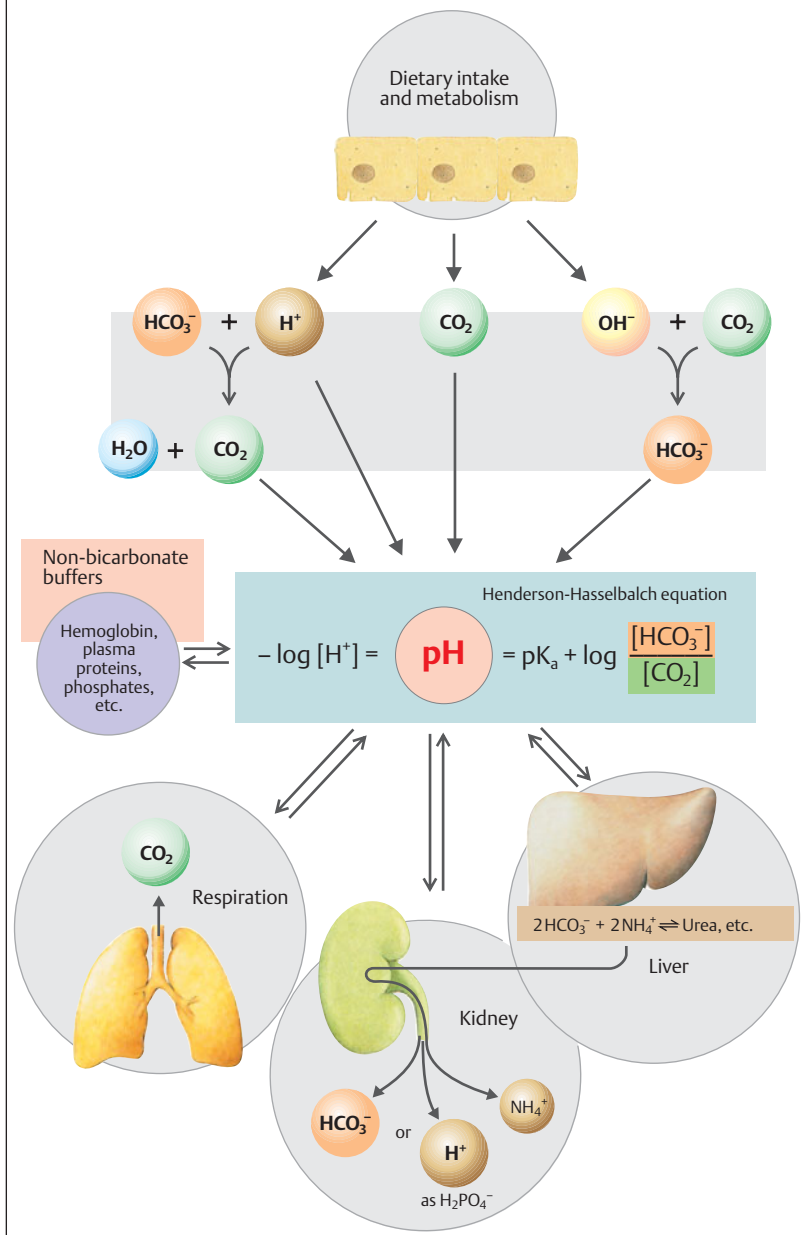
**Other non-bicarbonate buffers** of the blood include *plasma proteins* and inorganic *phosphate* ( $H_2PO_4^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HPO_4^{2-}$ ) as well as organic phosphates (in red blood cells). Intracellular organic and inorganic substances in various tissues also function as buffers.

The **buffer capacity** is a measure of the buffering power of a buffer system ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot [\Delta pH]^{-1}$ ). It corresponds to the number of added  $H^+$  or  $OH^-$  ions per unit volume that change the pH by one unit. The buffer capacity therefore corresponds to the slope of the titration curve for a given buffer ( $\rightarrow$  p. 380, B). The buffer capacity is dependent on (a) the buffer concentration and (b) the pH. The farther the pH is from the  $pK_a$  of a buffer system, the smaller the buffer capacity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 380). The buffer capacity of the blood is about  $75 \text{ mmol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot (\Delta pH)^{-1}$  at pH 7.4 and constant  $P_{CO_2}$ . Since the buffer capacity is dependent on the prevailing  $P_{CO_2}$ , the **buffer base concentration** of the blood (normally about 48 mEq/L) is normally used as the measure of buffering power of the blood in clinical medicine ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 142 and 146). The buffer base concentration is the sum of the concentrations of all buffer components that accept hydrogen ions, i.e.,  $HCO_3^-$ ,  $Hb^-$ ,  $Oxy-Hb^-$ , diphosphoglycerate anions, plasma protein anions,  $HPO_4^{2-}$ , etc.

**Changes in the pH of the blood** are chiefly due to changes in the following factors ( $\rightarrow$  A and p. 142ff.):

- ◆  $H^+$  ions: Direct uptake in foodstuffs (e.g., vinegar) or by metabolism, or removal from the blood (e.g., by the kidney;  $\rightarrow$  p. 174 ff.).
- ◆  $OH^-$  ions: Uptake in foodstuffs containing (basic) salts of weak acids, especially in primarily vegetarian diet.
- ◆  $CO_2$ : Its concentration,  $[CO_2]$ , can change due to alterations in metabolic production or pulmonary elimination of  $CO_2$ . A drop in  $[CO_2]$  leads to a rise in pH and vice versa ( $\rightarrow$  A:  $[CO_2]$  is the denominator in the equation).
- ◆  $HCO_3^-$ : It can be eliminated directly from the blood by the kidney or gut (in diarrhea) ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 176, 142). A rise or fall in  $[HCO_3^-]$  will lead to a corresponding rise or fall in pH ( $\rightarrow$  A:  $[HCO_3^-]$  is the numerator in the equation).

A. Factors that affect the blood pH



## Bicarbonate/Carbon Dioxide Buffer

The pH of any buffer system is determined by the concentration *ratio* of the buffer pairs and the  $pK_a$  of the system ( $\rightarrow$  p. 378). The pH of a bicarbonate solution is the concentration ratio of bicarbonate and dissolved carbon dioxide ( $[HCO_3^-]/[CO_2]$ ), as defined in the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation ( $\rightarrow$  A1). Given  $[HCO_3^-] = 24$  mmol/L and  $[CO_2] = 1.2$  mmol/l,  $[HCO_3^-]/[CO_2] = 24/1.2 = 20$ . Given  $\log_{10} 20 = 1.3$  and  $pK_a = 6.1$ , a pH of 7.4 is derived when these values are set into the equation ( $\rightarrow$  A2). If  $[HCO_3^-]$  drops to 10 and  $[CO_2]$  decreases to 0.5 mmol/L, the *ratio* of the two variables will not change, and the pH will remain constant.

When added to a buffered solution,  $H^+$  ions combine with the buffer base ( $HCO_3^-$  in this case), resulting in the formation of buffer acid ( $HCO_3^- + H^+ \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$ ). In a **closed system** from which  $CO_2$  cannot escape ( $\rightarrow$  A3), the amount of buffer acid formed ( $CO_2$ ) equals the amount of buffer base consumed ( $HCO_3^-$ ). The inverse holds true for the addition of hydroxide ions ( $OH^- + CO_2 \rightarrow HCO_3^-$ ). After **addition of 2 mmol/L of  $H^+$** , the aforementioned baseline ratio  $[HCO_3^-]/[CO_2]$  of 24/1.2 ( $\rightarrow$  A2) changes to 22/3.2, making the pH fall to 6.93 ( $\rightarrow$  A3). Thus, the buffer capacity of the  $HCO_3^-/CO_2$  buffer at pH 7.4 is very low in a *closed system*, for which the  $pK_a$  of 6.1 is too far from the target pH of 7.4 ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 138, 378 ff).

If, however, the additionally produced  $CO_2$  is eliminated from the system (**open system**;  $\rightarrow$  A4), only the  $[HCO_3^-]$  will change when the same amount of  $H^+$  is added (2 mmol/L). The corresponding decrease in the  $[HCO_3^-]/[CO_2]$  ratio (22/1.2) and pH (7.36) is much less than in a closed system. In the body, bicarbonate buffering occurs in an open system in which the partial pressure ( $P_{CO_2}$ ) and hence the concentration of carbon dioxide in plasma ( $[CO_2] = \alpha \cdot P_{CO_2}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 126) are regulated by respiration ( $\rightarrow$  B). The lungs normally eliminate as much  $CO_2$  as produced by metabolism (15 000–20 000 mmol/day), while the alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  remains constant ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120 ff.). Since the plasma  $P_{CO_2}$  adapts to the alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  during each respiratory cycle, the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  ( $P_{aCO_2}$ ) also remains constant. An increased supply of  $H^+$  in the periphery leads to an increase in the  $P_{CO_2}$  of

venous blood ( $H^+ + HCO_3^- \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$ ) ( $\rightarrow$  B1). The lungs eliminate the additional  $CO_2$  so quickly that the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  remains practically unchanged despite the addition of  $H^+$  (open system!).

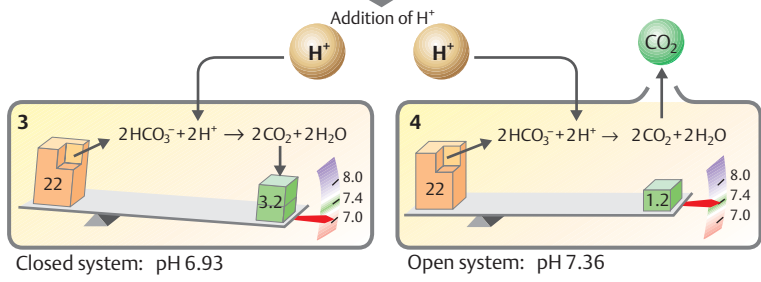
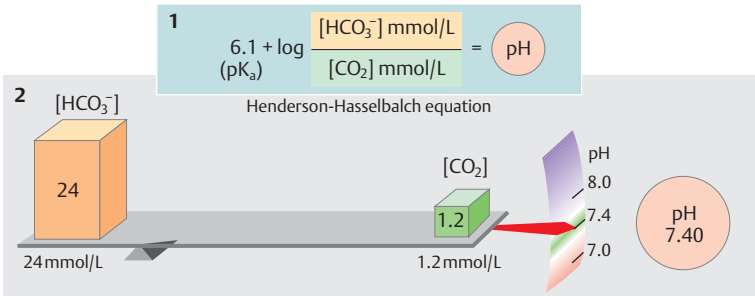
The following example demonstrates the quantitatively small impact of increased **pulmonary  $CO_2$  elimination**. A two-fold increase in the amount of  $H^+$  ions produced within the body on a given day (normally 60 mmol/day) will result in the added production of 60 mmol more of  $CO_2$  per day (disregarding non-bicarbonate buffers). This corresponds to only about 0.3% of the normal daily  $CO_2$  elimination rate.

An increased supply of  $OH^-$  ions in the periphery has basically similar effects. Since  $OH^- + CO_2 \rightarrow HCO_3^-$ ,  $[HCO_3^-]$  increases and the venous  $P_{CO_2}$  becomes smaller than normal. Because the rate of  $CO_2$  elimination is also reduced, the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  also does not change in the illustrated example ( $\rightarrow$  B2).

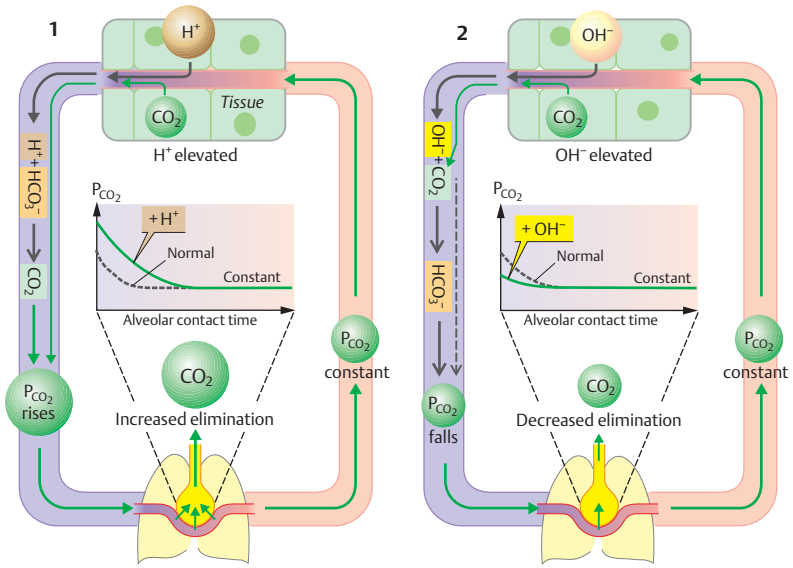
At a pH of 7.4, the open  $HCO_3^-/CO_2$  buffer system makes up about two-thirds of the buffer capacity of the blood when the  $P_{CO_2}$  remains constant at 5.33 kPa ( $\rightarrow$  p. 138). Mainly intracellular non-bicarbonate buffers provide the remaining buffer capacity.

Since **non-bicarbonate buffers (NBBs)** function in *closed systems*, their total concentration ( $[NBB \text{ base}] + [NBB \text{ acid}]$ ) remains constant, even after buffering. The total concentration changes in response to changes in the hemoglobin concentration, however, since hemoglobin is the main constituent of NBBs ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 138, 146). NBBs supplement the  $HCO_3^-/CO_2$  buffer in non-respiratory (metabolic) acid–base disturbances ( $\rightarrow$  p. 142), but are the *only* effective buffers in respiratory acid–base disturbances ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144).

**A. Bicarbonate buffers in closed and open systems**



**B. Bicarbonate buffers in blood (open system)**



## Acidosis and Alkalosis

The main objective of acid-base regulation is to keep the pH of blood, and thus of the body, constant. The normal ranges for parameters relevant to acid-base homeostasis, as measured in plasma (arterialized capillary blood) are listed in the table (see table on p. 124 for erythrocyte  $P_{CO_2}$  and  $[HCO_3^-]$  values).

Normal range of acid-base parameters in plasma

	Women	Men
$[H^+]$ (nmol/L)	$39.8 \pm 1.4$	$40.7 \pm 1.4$
pH	$7.40 \pm 0.015$	$7.39 \pm 0.015$
$P_{CO_2}$ (kPa)	$5.07 \pm 0.3$	$5.47 \pm 0.3$
(mmHg)	$38.9 \pm 2.3$	$41.0 \pm 2.3$
$[HCO_3^-]$	$24 \pm 2.5$	$24 \pm 2.5$
(mmol/L)		

Acid-base homeostasis exists when the following balances are maintained:

- $(H^+ \text{ addition or production}) - (HCO_3^- \text{ addition or production}) = (H^+ \text{ excretion}) - (HCO_3^- \text{ excretion}) \approx 60 \text{ mmol/day}$  (diet-dependent).
- $(CO_2 \text{ production}) = (CO_2 \text{ excretion}) \approx 15\,000\text{--}20\,000 \text{ mmol/day}$ .

$H^+$  production (HCl,  $H_2SO_4$ , lactic acid,  $H_3PO_4$ , etc.) and adequate renal  $H^+$  excretion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 174ff.) are the main factors that influence the first balance. A vegetarian diet can lead to a considerable addition of  $HCO_3^-$  (metabolism:  $OH^- + CO_2 \rightarrow HCO_3^-$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 138).  $HCO_3^-$  is excreted in the urine to compensate for the added supply (the urine of vegetarians therefore tends to be alkaline).

**Acid-base disturbances.** *Alkalosis* occurs when the pH of the blood rises above the normal range (see table), and *acidosis* occurs when it falls below the lower limits of normal. *Respiratory* acid-base disturbances occur due to primary changes in  $P_{CO_2}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144), whereas *non-respiratory (metabolic)* disturbances occur due to a primary change in  $[HCO_3^-]$ . Acid-base disturbances can be partially or almost completely compensated.

## Nonrespiratory (Metabolic) Acid-Base Disturbances

**Nonrespiratory acidosis** is most commonly caused by (1) *renal failure* or isolated renal tubular  $H^+$  secretion defect resulting in inability to eliminate normal quantities of  $H^+$  ions (*renal acidosis*); (2) *hyperkalemia* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 180); (3) increased  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid and acetoacetic acid production (*diabetes mellitus, starvation*); (4) increased anaerobic conversion of glucose to lactic acid ( $\rightarrow$  lactate $^- + H^+$ ), e.g., due to *strenuous physical work* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 74) or hypoxia; (5) increased metabolic production of HCl and  $H_2SO_4$  in individuals with a *high intake of dietary proteins*; and (6) *loss of  $HCO_3^-$*  through renal excretion (proximal renal tubular acidosis, use of carbonic anhydrase inhibitors) or *diarrhea*.

**Buffering** ( $\rightarrow$  A1) of excess hydrogen ions occurs in the first stage of non-respiratory acidosis (every  $HCO_3^-$  lost results in an  $H^+$  gained). Two-thirds and one-third of the buffering is achieved by  $HCO_3^-$  and non-bicarbonate buffer bases (NBB $^-$ ), respectively, and the  $CO_2$  arising from  $HCO_3^-$  buffering is eliminated from the body by the lungs (open system;  $\rightarrow$  p. 140). The standard bicarbonate concentration  $[HCO_3^-]_{st}$ , the actual bicarbonate concentration  $[HCO_3^-]_{Act}$  and the buffer base concentration [BB] *decrease* (negative base excess;  $\rightarrow$  p. 146).

**Respiratory compensation** of non-respiratory acidosis ( $\rightarrow$  A2) occurs in the second stage. The total ventilation rises in response to the reduced pH levels (via central chemosensors), leading to a decrease in the alveolar and arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  (hyperventilation;  $\rightarrow$  A2a). This not only helps to return the  $[HCO_3^-]/[CO_2]$  ratio towards normal (20:1), but also converts NBB-H back to NBB $^-$  (due to the increasing pH) ( $\rightarrow$  A2b). The latter process also requires  $HCO_3^-$  and, thus, further compensatory pulmonary elimination of  $CO_2$  ( $\rightarrow$  A2c). If the cause of acidosis persists, respiratory compensation will eventually become insufficient, and increased renal excretion of  $H^+$  ions will occur ( $\rightarrow$  p. 174ff.), provided that the acidosis is not of renal origin (see above, cause 1).

**Nonrespiratory (metabolic) alkalosis** is caused by (1) the administration of bases (e.g.,  *$HCO_3^-$  infusion*); (2) increased breakdown of

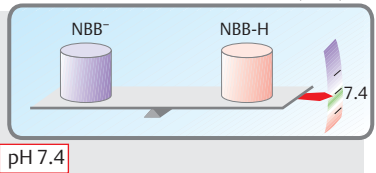


**A. Metabolic acidosis**

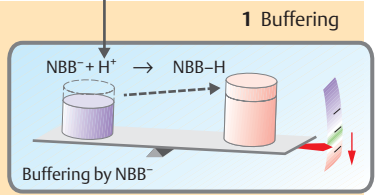
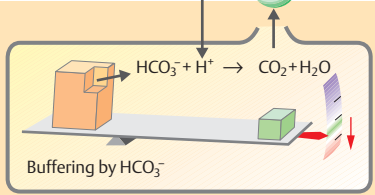
Bicarbonate buffer



Non-bicarbonate buffer (NBB)



Normal: pH 7.4



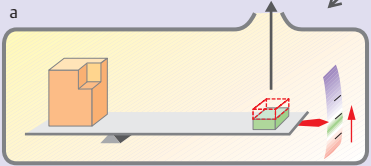
Non-respiratory (metabolic) acidosis: pH ↓

Stimulation of chemosensors

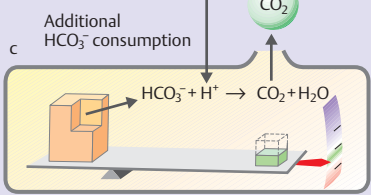
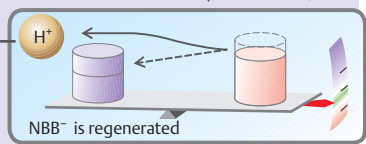
Total ventilation increases

Increased pulmonary elimination of  $CO_2$

2 Respiratory compensation



pH rises



But:  $[HCO_3^-]_{act}$  und  $P_{CO_2}$  are decreased

Increased renal excretion of  $H^+$  and  $NH_4^+$

$HCO_3^-$  replenished



organic anions (e.g., lactate<sup>-</sup>,  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate<sup>2-</sup>); (3) loss of H<sup>+</sup> ions due to vomiting ( $\rightarrow$  p. 238) or hypokalemia; and (4) volume depletion. **Buffering** in metabolic alkalosis is similar to that of non-respiratory acidosis (rise in [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]<sub>st</sub>, positive base excess). Nonetheless, the capacity for **respiratory compensation** through hypoventilation is very limited because of the resulting O<sub>2</sub> deficit.

### Respiratory Acid–Base Disturbances

**Respiratory alkalosis** ( $\rightarrow$  B) occurs when the lungs eliminate more CO<sub>2</sub> than is produced by metabolism (*hyperventilation*), resulting in a decrease in plasma P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> (hypocapnia). Inversely, respiratory acidosis occurs ( $\rightarrow$  B) when less CO<sub>2</sub> is eliminated than produced (*hypoventilation*), resulting in an increase in plasma P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> (hypercapnia). Whereas bicarbonate and non-bicarbonate buffer bases (NBB<sup>-</sup>) jointly buffer the pH decrease in metabolic acidosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 142), the two buffer systems behave very differently in respiratory alkalosis ( $\rightarrow$  B1). In the latter case, the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>/CO<sub>2</sub> system is not effective because the change in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> is the primary *cause*, not the result of respiratory alkalosis.

**Respiratory acidosis** can occur as the result of lung tissue damage (e.g., tuberculosis), impairment of alveolar gas exchange (e.g., pulmonary edema), paralysis of respiratory muscles (e.g., polio), insufficient respiratory drive (e.g., narcotic overdose), reduced chest motility (e.g., extreme spinal curvature), and many other conditions. The resulting increase in plasma CO<sub>2</sub> ([CO<sub>2</sub>] =  $\alpha \cdot P_{CO_2}$ ) is followed by increased HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and H<sup>+</sup> production ( $\rightarrow$  B1, left panel). The H<sup>+</sup> ions are buffered by NBB bases (NBB<sup>-</sup> + H<sup>+</sup>  $\rightarrow$  NBB-H;  $\rightarrow$  B1, right panel) while [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]<sub>Act</sub> increases. Unlike non-respiratory acidosis, [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]<sub>st</sub> remains unchanged (at least initially since it is defined for normal P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>;  $\rightarrow$  p. 146) and [BB] remains unchanged because the [NBB<sup>-</sup>] decrease equals the [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]<sub>Act</sub> increase. Since the percentage increase in [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]<sub>Act</sub> is much lower than the rise in [CO<sub>2</sub>], the [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]/[CO<sub>2</sub>] ratio and pH are lower than normal (acidosis).

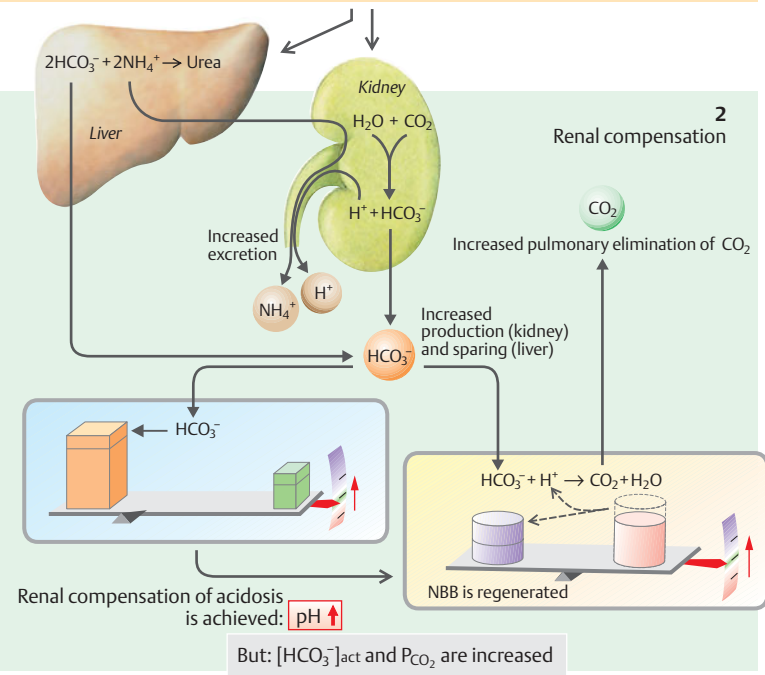
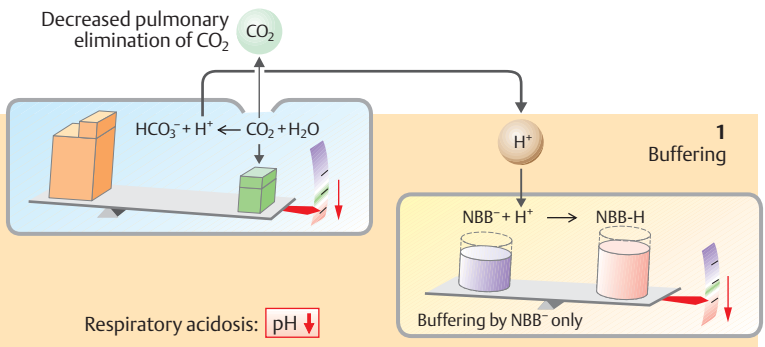
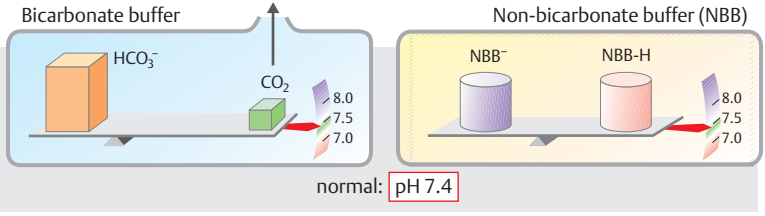
If the increased P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> persists, **renal compensation** ( $\rightarrow$  B2) of the respiratory disturbance will occur. The kidneys begin to excrete in-

creased quantities of H<sup>+</sup> in form of titratable acidity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 174f.) of NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> as well and, after a latency period of 1 to 2 days. Each NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> ion excreted results in the sparing of one HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> ion in the liver, and each H<sup>+</sup> ion excreted results in the tubular cellular release of one HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> ion into the blood ( $\rightarrow$  p. 174ff.). This process continues until the pH has been reasonably normalized despite the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> increase. A portion of the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> is used to buffer the H<sup>+</sup> ions liberated during the reaction NBB-H  $\rightarrow$  NBB<sup>-</sup> + H<sup>+</sup> ( $\rightarrow$  B2, right panel). Because of the relatively long latency for renal compensation, the drop in pH is more pronounced in acute respiratory acidosis than in chronic respiratory acidosis. In the chronic form, [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]<sub>Act</sub> can rise by about 1 mmol per 1.34 kPa (10 mmHg) increase in P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>.

**Respiratory alkalosis** is usually caused by hyperventilation due to anxiety or high altitude (oxygen deficit ventilation;  $\rightarrow$  p. 136), resulting in a fall in plasma P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>. This leads to a slight decrease in [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]<sub>Act</sub> since a small portion of the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> is converted to CO<sub>2</sub> (H<sup>+</sup> + HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>  $\rightarrow$  CO<sub>2</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>O); the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> required for this reaction is supplied by H<sup>+</sup> ions from NBB's (**buffering**: NBB-H  $\rightarrow$  NBB<sup>-</sup> + H<sup>+</sup>). This is also the reason for the additional drop in [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]<sub>Act</sub> when respiratory compensation of non-respiratory acidosis occurs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 143 A, bottom panel, and p. 146). Further reduction of [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>]<sub>Act</sub> is required for adequate pH normalization (compensation). This is achieved through reduced renal tubular secretion of H<sup>+</sup>. As a consequence, increased renal excretion of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> will occur (renal compensation).

In acute respiratory acidosis or alkalosis, CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses more rapidly than HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and H<sup>+</sup> from the blood into the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). The low NBB concentrations there causes relatively strong fluctuations in the pH of the CSF ( $\rightarrow$  p. 126), providing an adequate stimulus for central chemosensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 132).

**B. Respiratory acidosis**



## Assessment of Acid–Base Status

The *Henderson–Hasselbalch equation* for the  $\text{HCO}_3^-/\text{CO}_2$  buffer system states:

$$\text{pH} = \text{pK}_a + \log \left( \frac{[\text{HCO}_3^-]}{[\text{CO}_2]} \right). \quad [6.5]$$

Since  $[\text{CO}_2] = \alpha \cdot \text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 126), Equation 6.5 contains two constants ( $\text{pK}_a$  and  $\alpha$ ) and three variables ( $\text{pH}$ ,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ , and  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$ ). At  $37^\circ\text{C}$  in plasma,  $\text{pK}_a = 6.1$  and  $\alpha = 0.225 \text{ mmol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1}$  (cf. p. 126). When one of the variables remains constant (e.g.,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ ), the other two (e.g.,  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  and  $\text{pH}$ ) are interdependent. In a graphic representation, this dependency is reflected as a straight line when the logarithm of  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  is plotted against the  $\text{pH}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A–C** and p. 382).

When the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  varies in a **bicarbonate solution** (without other buffers), the  $\text{pH}$  changes but  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  remains constant ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, solid line). One can also plot the lines for different  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  concentrations, all of which are parallel ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, **B**, dotted orange lines). Figures **A** through **C** use a scale that ensures that the bicarbonate lines intersect the coordinates at  $45^\circ$  angles. The **Siggaard–Andersen nomogram** ( $\rightarrow$  **C**) does not use the lines, but only the points of intersection of the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  lines with the normal  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  of 5.33 kPa (40 mmHg).

The **blood** contains not only the  $\text{HCO}_3^-/\text{CO}_2$  buffer but also **non-bicarbonate buffers, NBB** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 138). Thus, a change in the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  does not alter the  $\text{pH}$  as much as in a solution containing the  $\text{HCO}_3^-/\text{CO}_2$  buffer alone ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144). In the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}/\text{pH}$  nomogram, the slope is therefore steeper than  $45^\circ$  ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, green and red lines). Hence, the **actual bicarbonate** concentration,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$ , in blood changes and shifts in the same direction as the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  if the  $\text{pH}$  varies ( $\rightarrow$  p. 144). Therefore, both the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  and the **standard bicarbonate** concentration,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$ , can be determined in clinical blood tests. By definition,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  represents the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  at a normal  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  of 5.33 kPa (40 mmHg).  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  therefore permits an assessment of  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  independent of  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  changes.

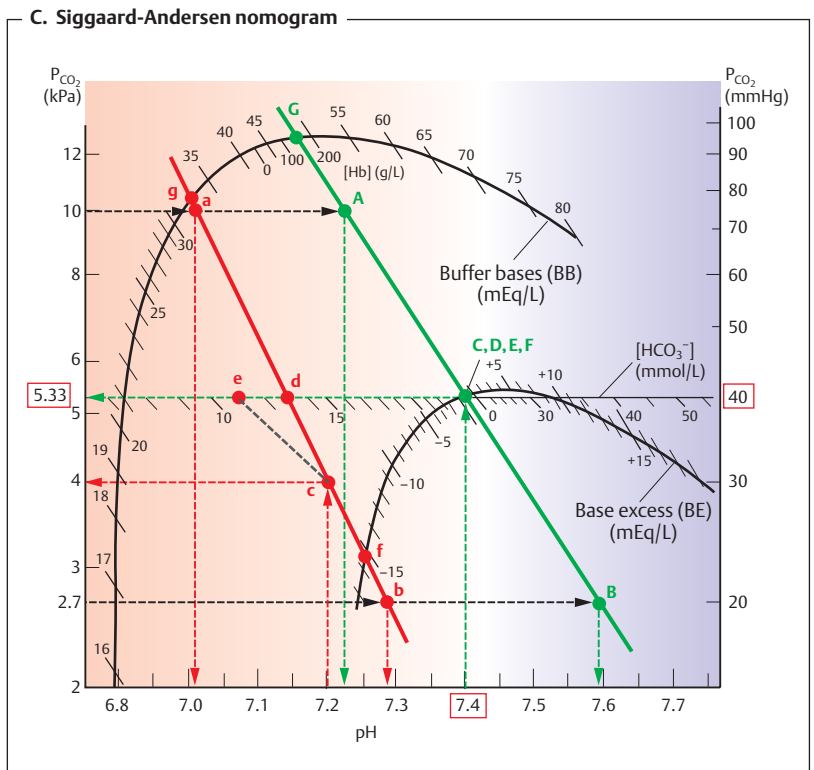
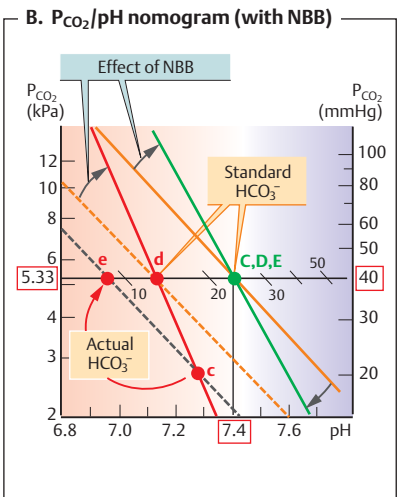
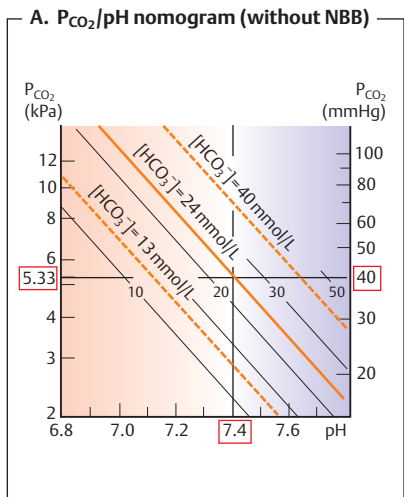
$[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  and  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  are **determined** using measured  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  and  $\text{pH}$  values obtained with a blood gas analyzer. When plotted on the *Siggaard–Andersen nomogram*,  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  is read from the line as indicated by the points of intersect of the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  line ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, orange lines) and the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}/\text{pH}$  line (**B** and **C**, green and red

lines) at normal  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2} = 5.33$  ( $\rightarrow$  **B** and **C**, points *D* and *d*).  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  is read from the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  line intersected by the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}/\text{pH}$  line at the level of the **actually measured  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$** . Since the normal and measured  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  values agree in normals, their  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  is usually equal to  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$ . If  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  deviates from normal ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, **C**, point *c*),  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  is read at point *e* on the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  line ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, **C**, interrupted  $45^\circ$  line) on which the actually measured  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  lies ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, **C**, point *c*).

**Blood  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  and  $\text{pH}$  measurement.** When using the equilibration method (*Astrup method*), three  $\text{pH}$  measurements are taken: (1) in the unchanged blood sample; (2) after equilibration with a high  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  (e.g., 10 kPa [75 mmHg];  $\rightarrow$  **C**, points *A* and *a*), and (3) after equilibration with a low  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  (e.g., 2.7 kPa [20 mmHg];  $\rightarrow$  **C**, points *B* and *b*). The  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  of the original blood sample can then be read from lines *A–B* and *a–b* using the  $\text{pH}$  value obtained in measurement 1. In normals ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, upper case letters, green),  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}} = [\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}} = 24 \text{ mmol/L}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, points *E* and *e*). Example 2 ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, lower case letters, red) shows an acid–base disturbance: The  $\text{pH}$  is too low (7.2) and  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$  ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, point *d*) has dropped to 13 mmol/L (metabolic acidosis). This has been partially compensated ( $\rightarrow$  p. 142) by a reduction in  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  to 4 kPa, which led to a consequent reduction in  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{Act}}$  to 11 mmol/L ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, point *e*).

**Total buffer bases (BB) and base excess (BE)** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 142) can also be read from the *Siggaard–Andersen nomogram* ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). The base excess (points *F* and *f* on the curve) is the difference between the measured buffer base value (points *G* or *g*) and the normal buffer base value (point *G*). Point *G* is dependent on the hemoglobin concentration of the blood ( $\rightarrow$  **C**; [Hb]/BB comparison). Like  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]_{\text{St}}$ , deviation of BB from the norm ( $0 \pm 2.5 \text{ mEq/L}$ ) is diagnostic of primary non-respiratory acid–base disturbances.

The  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}/\text{pH}$  line of the blood sample in plate **C** can also be determined if (1) the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  (without equilibration), (2) the  $\text{pH}$ , and (3) the hemoglobin concentration are known. One point ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, point *c*) on the unknown line can be drawn using (1) and (2). The line must be drawn through the point in such a way that  $\text{BB}(\text{point } g) - \text{BB}_{\text{normal}}$  (dependent on Hb value) =  $\text{BE}(\text{point } f)$ .



### Kidney Structure and Function

Three fundamental mechanisms characterize kidney function: (1) large quantities of water and solutes are **filtered** from the blood. (2) This *primary urine* enters the tubule, where most of it is **reabsorbed**, i.e., it exits the tubule and passes back into the blood. (3) Certain substances (e.g., toxins) are not only not reabsorbed but actively **secreted** into the tubule lumen. The non-reabsorbed residual filtrate is **excreted** together with the secreted substances in the *final urine*.

**Functions:** The kidneys (1) adjust salt and water excretion to maintain a constant *extracellular fluid volume* and *osmolality*; (2) they help to maintain *acid-base homeostasis*; (3) they *eliminate end-products* of metabolism and foreign substances while (4) preserving useful compounds (e.g., glucose) by reabsorption; (5) they produce *hormones* (e.g., erythropoietin) and hormone activators (renin), and (6) have *metabolic functions* (protein and peptide catabolism, gluconeogenesis, etc.).

#### Nephron Structure

Each kidney contains about  $10^6$  **nephrons**, each consisting of the malpighian body and the tubule. The **malpighian body** is located in the renal cortex ( $\rightarrow$  A) and consists of a tuft of capillaries (**glomerulus**) surrounded by a double-walled capsule (**Bowman's capsule**). The primary urine accumulates in the capsular space between its two layers ( $\rightarrow$  B). Blood enters the glomerulus by an afferent arteriole (*vas afferens*) and exits via an efferent arteriole (*vas efferens*) from which the peritubular capillary network arises ( $\rightarrow$  p. 150). The **glomerular filter** ( $\rightarrow$  B) separates the blood side from the Bowman's capsular space.

The **glomerular filter** comprises the fenestrated endothelium of the glomerular capillaries (50–100 nm pore size) followed by the basal membrane as the second layer and the visceral membrane of Bowman's capsule on the urine side. The latter is formed by *podocytes* with numerous interdigitating footlike processes (*pedicels*). The slit-like spaces between them are covered by the *slit membrane*, the *pores* of which are about 5 nm in diameter. They are shaped by the protein *nephrine*, which is anchored to the cytoskeleton of the podocytes.

◆ The **proximal tubule** ( $\rightarrow$  A, dark green) is the longest part of a nephron (ca. 10 mm). Its twisted initial segment (*proximal convoluted tubule*, *PCT*;  $\rightarrow$  A3) merges into a straight part, *PST* (*pars recta*;  $\rightarrow$  A4).

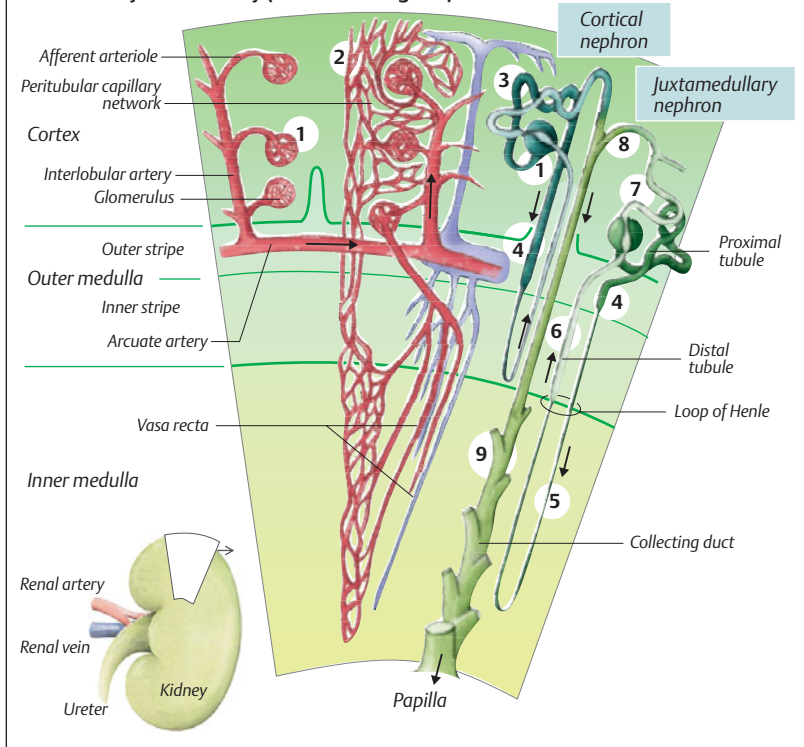
◆ The **loop of Henle** consists of a *thick descending limb* that extends into the renal medulla ( $\rightarrow$  A4 = PST), a *thin descending limb* ( $\rightarrow$  A5), a *thin ascending limb* (only in juxtamedullary nephrons which have long loops), and a *thick ascending limb*, *TAL* ( $\rightarrow$  A6). It contains the **macula densa** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 184), a group of specialized cells that closely communicate with the glomerulus of the respective nephron. Only about 20% of all Henle's loops (those of the deep juxtamedullary nephrons) are long enough to penetrate into the inner medulla. Cortical nephrons have shorter loops ( $\rightarrow$  A and p. 150).

◆ The **distal tubule** ( $\rightarrow$  A, grayish green) has an initially straight part (= TAL of Henle's loop;  $\rightarrow$  A6) that merges with a convoluted part (*distal convoluted tubule*, *DCT*;  $\rightarrow$  A7).

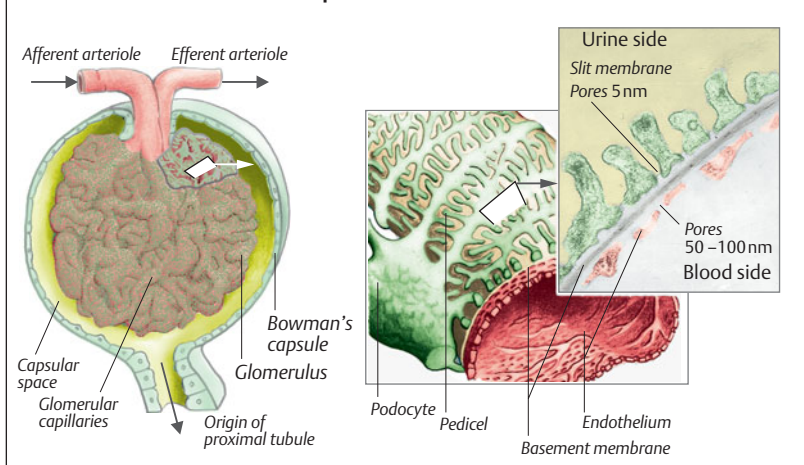
The DCT merges with a connecting tubule ( $\rightarrow$  A8). Many of them lead into a **collecting duct**, *CD* ( $\rightarrow$  A9) which extends through the renal cortex (cortical CD) and medulla (medullary CD). At the *renal papilla* the collecting ducts opens in the *renal pelvis*. From there, the urine (propelled by peristaltic contractions) passes via the *ureter* into the *urinary bladder* and, finally, into the *urethra*, through which the urine exits the body.

**Micturition.** Voiding of the bladder is controlled by reflexes. Filling of the bladder activates the smooth detrusor muscle of the bladder wall via stretch sensors and parasympathetic neurons ( $S_2$ – $S_4$ ,  $\rightarrow$  p. 78 ff.). At low filling volumes, the wall relaxes via sympathetic neurons ( $L_1$ – $L_2$ ) controlled by supraspinal centers (pons). At higher filling volumes ( $> 0.3$  L), the threshold pressure (about 1 kPa) that triggers the *micturition reflex* via a positive feedback loop is reached: The detrusor muscle contracts  $\rightarrow$  pressure  $\uparrow$   $\rightarrow$  contraction  $\uparrow\uparrow$  and so on until the *internal* (smooth m.) and *external sphincter* (striated m.) open so the urine can exit the body.

**A. Anatomy of the kidney (schematic diagram)**



**B. Glomerulus and Bowman's capsule**



## Renal Circulation

The *arcuate arteries* ( $\rightarrow$  A1) pass between the renal cortex and medulla. They branch towards the cortex into the *interlobular arteries* ( $\rightarrow$  A2) from which the *afferent arterioles* (or *vasa afferentia*) arise ( $\rightarrow$  A3). Unlike other organs, the kidney has *two successive capillary networks* that are connected with each other by an *efferent arteriole* (or *vas efferens*) ( $\rightarrow$  A, B). *Pressure* in the first network of **glomerular capillaries** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 148) is a relatively *high* ( $\rightarrow$  B and p. 152) and is regulated by adjusting the width of interlobular artery, the afferent and/or efferent arterioles ( $\rightarrow$  A 3,4). The second network of **peritubular capillaries** ( $\rightarrow$  A) winds around the cortical tubules. It supplies the tubule cells with blood, but it also contributes to the exchange of substances with the tubule lumen (reabsorption, secretion;  $\rightarrow$  p. 154 ff.).

The **renal blood flow** (RBF) is relatively high, ca. 1.2 L/min, equivalent to 20–25% of the cardiac output. This is required to maintain a high glomerular filtration rate (GFR;  $\rightarrow$  p. 152) and results in a very low arteriovenous  $O_2$  difference (ca. 15 mL/L of blood). In the *renal cortex*,  **$O_2$  is consumed** (ca. 18 mL/min) for oxidative **metabolism** of fatty acids, etc. Most of the ATP produced in the process is used to fuel active transport. In the renal medulla, metabolism is mainly anaerobic ( $\rightarrow$  p. 72).

Around 90% of the renal blood supply goes to the cortex. Per gram of tissue, approximately 5, 1.75 and 0.5 mL/min of blood pass through the cortex, external medulla, and internal medulla, respectively. The latter value is still higher than in most organs ( $\rightarrow$  p. 213 A).

The kidney contains **two types of nephrons** that differ with respect to the features of their second network of capillaries ( $\rightarrow$  A).

- ◆ **Cortical nephrons** are supplied by peritubular capillaries (see above) and have short loops of Henle.

- ◆ **Juxtamedullary nephrons** are located near the cortex-medulla junction. Their efferent arterioles give rise to relatively long ( $\leq 40$  mm), straight arterioles (**vasa recta**) that descend into the renal medulla. The vasa recta supply the renal medulla and can accompany long loops of Henle of juxtamedullary nephrons as far as the tip of the renal papilla ( $\rightarrow$  p. 148). Their hairpin shape is important for the concentration of urine ( $\rightarrow$  p. 164 ff.).

Any **change in blood distribution** to these two types of nephrons affects NaCl excretion. Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) increases the GFR of the juxtamedullary nephrons.

Due to **autoregulation of renal blood flow**, only slight changes in renal plasma flow (RPF) and glomerular filtration rate (GFR) occur (even in a denervated kidney) when the systemic blood pressure fluctuates between 80 and about 180 mmHg ( $\rightarrow$  C). Resistance in the *interlobular arteries* and *afferent arterioles* located upstream to the cortical glomeruli is automatically adjusted when the mean blood pressure changes ( $\rightarrow$  B, C). If the blood pressure falls below about 80 mmHg, however, renal circulation and filtration will ultimately fail ( $\rightarrow$  C). RBF and GFR can also be regulated independently by making isolated changes in the (serial) resistances of the afferent and efferent arterioles ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152).

Non-invasive **determination of RBF** is possible if the **renal plasma flow (RPF)** is known (normally about **0.6 L/min**). RPF is obtained by measuring the amount balance (Fick's principle) of an intravenously injected test substance (e.g., *p*-aminohippurate, **PAH**) that is almost completely eliminated in the urine during one renal pass (PAH is filtered and highly secreted,  $\rightarrow$  p. 156 ff.). The eliminated amount of PAH is calculated as the arterial inflow of PAH into the kidney minus the venous flow of PAH out of the kidney per unit time. Since

$$\text{Amount/time} = (\text{volume/time}) \cdot \text{concentration} \quad [7.1]$$

$$(\text{RPF} \cdot \text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}) - (\text{RPF} \cdot \text{Prv}_{\text{PAH}}) = \dot{V}_{\text{U}} \cdot \text{U}_{\text{PAH}} \quad [7.2]$$

or

$$\text{RPF} = \dot{V}_{\text{U}} \cdot \text{U}_{\text{PAH}} / (\text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}} - \text{Prv}_{\text{PAH}}). \quad [7.3]$$

where  $\text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}$  is the arterial PAH conc.,  $\text{Prv}_{\text{PAH}}$  is the renal venous PAH conc.,  $\text{U}_{\text{PAH}}$  is the urinary PAH conc., and  $\dot{V}_{\text{U}}$  is the urine output/time.  $\text{Prv}_{\text{PAH}}$  makes up only about 10% of the  $\text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}$  and normally is not measured directly, but is estimated by dividing **PAH clearance** ( $= \dot{V}_{\text{U}} \cdot \text{U}_{\text{PAH}} / \text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 152) by a factor of 0.9. Therefore,

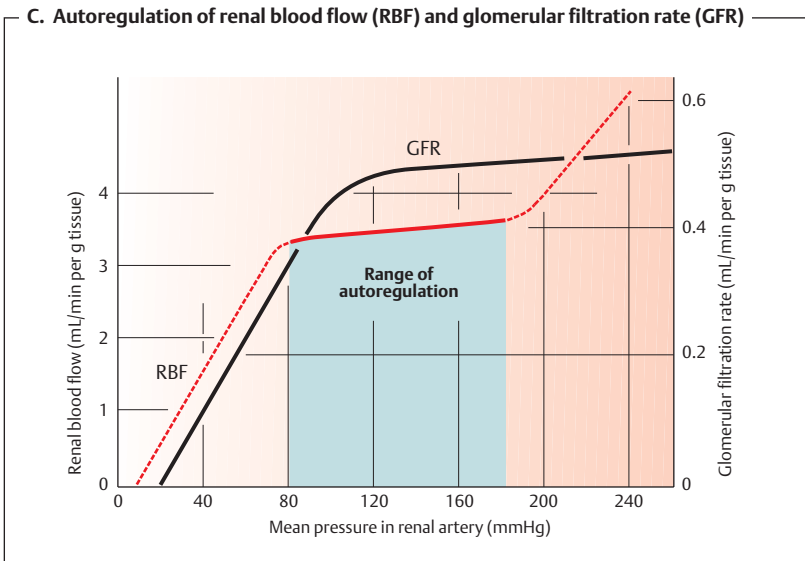
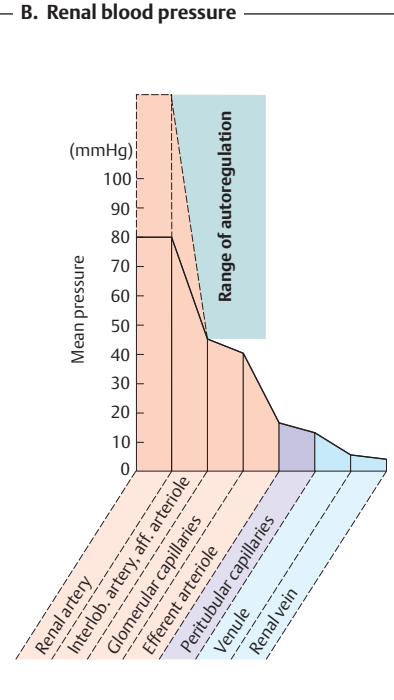
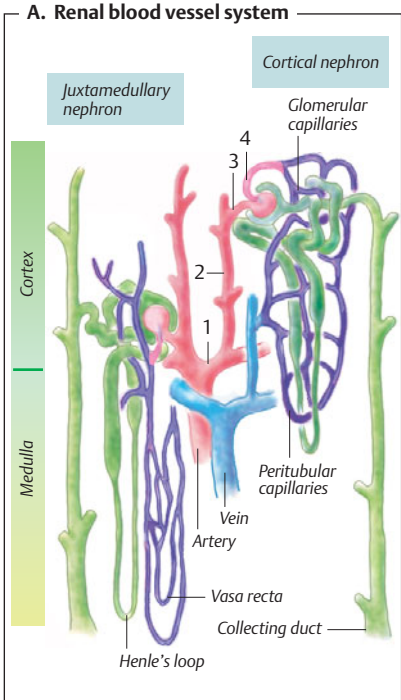
$$\text{RPF} = \dot{V}_{\text{U}} \cdot \text{U}_{\text{PAH}} / (0.9 \cdot \text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}). \quad [7.4]$$

This equation is only valid when the  $\text{Pa}_{\text{PAH}}$  is not too high. Otherwise, PAH secretion will be saturated and PAH clearance will be much smaller than RPF ( $\rightarrow$  p. 161 A).

RBF is derived by inserting the known hematocrit (HCT) value ( $\rightarrow$  p. 88) into the following equation:

$$\text{RBF} = \text{RPF} / (1 - \text{HCT}) \quad [7.5]$$







## Glomerular Filtration and Clearance

The **glomerular filtration rate (GFR)** is the total volume of fluid filtered by the glomeruli per unit time. It is normally about **120 mL/min** per 1.73 m<sup>2</sup> of body surface area, equivalent to around 180 L/day. Accordingly, the volume of exchangeable extracellular fluid of the whole body (ca. 17 L) enters the renal tubules about 10 times a day. About 99% of the GFR returns to the extracellular compartment by tubular reabsorption. The mean *fractional excretion* of H<sub>2</sub>O is therefore about 1% of the GFR, and absolute H<sub>2</sub>O excretion (= **urine output/time** =  $\dot{V}_U$ ) is about 1 to 2 L per day. (The filtration of dissolved substances is described on p. 154).

The GFR makes up about 20% of renal plasma flow, RPF ( $\rightarrow$  p. 150). The **filtration fraction (FF)** is defined as the ratio of GFR/RPF. The filtration fraction is increased by *atriopeptin*, a peptide hormone that increases efferent arteriolar resistance ( $R_e$ ) while lowering afferent arteriolar resistance ( $R_a$ ). This raises the effective filtration pressure in the glomerular capillaries without significantly changing the overall resistance in the renal circulation.

The effective filtration pressure ( $P_{\text{eff}}$ ) is the driving “force” for filtration.  $P_{\text{eff}}$  is the glomerular capillary pressure ( $P_{\text{cap}} \approx 48$  mmHg) minus the pressure in Bowman’s capsule ( $P_{\text{Bow}} \approx 13$  mmHg) and the oncotic pressure in plasma ( $\pi_{\text{cap}} = 25$  to 35 mmHg):

$$P_{\text{eff}} = P_{\text{cap}} - P_{\text{Bow}} - \pi_{\text{cap}} \quad [7.6]$$

$P_{\text{eff}}$  at the arterial end of the capillaries equals 48–13–25 = 10 mmHg. Because of the high filtration fraction, the plasma protein concentration and, therefore,  $\pi_{\text{cap}}$  values along the glomerular capillaries increase ( $\rightarrow$  p. 378) and  $P_{\text{eff}}$  decreases. (The mean effective filtration pressure,  $\bar{P}_{\text{eff}}$ , is therefore used in Eq. 7.7.) Thus, filtration ceases (near distal end of capillary) when  $\pi_{\text{cap}}$  rises to about 35 mmHg, decreasing  $P_{\text{eff}}$  to zero (*filtration equilibrium*).

GFR is the product of  $\bar{P}_{\text{eff}}$  (mean for all glomeruli), the glomerular filtration area  $A$  (dependent on the number of intact glomeruli), and the water permeability  $k$  of the glomerular filter. The *ultrafiltration coefficient*  $K_f$  is used to represent  $A \cdot k$ . This yields

$$\text{GFR} = \bar{P}_{\text{eff}} \cdot K_f \quad [7.7]$$

**Indicators** present in the plasma are used to **measure GFR**. They must have the following properties:

- They must be freely filterable
- Their filtered amount must not change due to resorption or secretion in the tubule
- They must not be metabolized in the kidney
- They must not alter renal function

**Inulin**, which must be infused intravenously, fulfills these requirements. **Endogenous creatinine** (normally present in blood) can also be used with certain limitations.

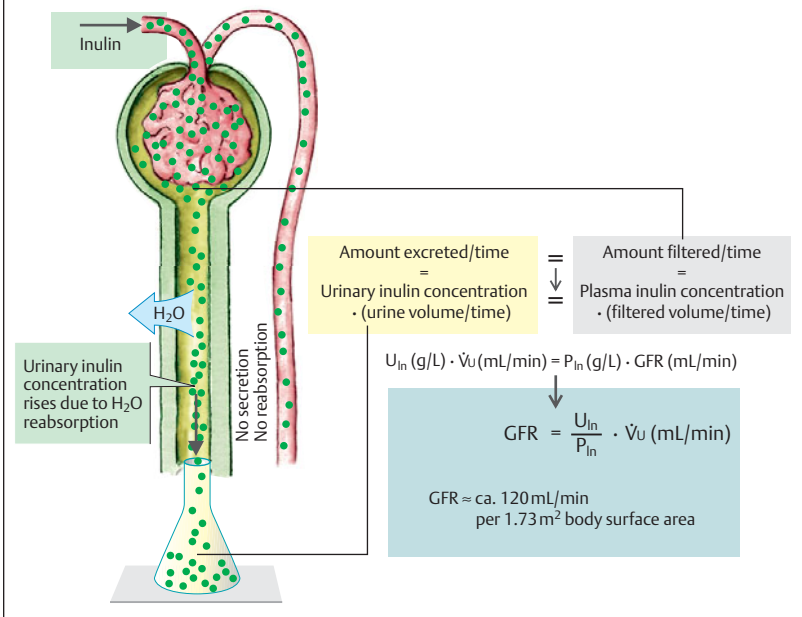
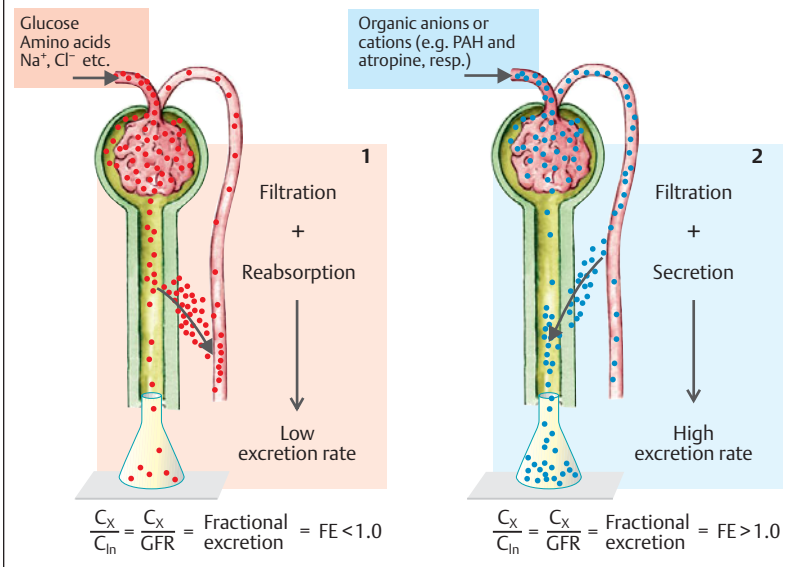
The amount of indicator filtered over time ( $\rightarrow A$ ) is calculated as the plasma concentration of the indicator ( $P_{\text{in}}$ , in g/L or mol/L) times the GFR in L/min. The same amount of indicator/time appears in the urine (conditions 2 and 3; see above) and is calculated as  $\dot{V}_U$  (in L/min), times the indicator conc. in urine ( $U_{\text{in}}$ , in g/L or mol/L, resp.), i.e.  $P_{\text{in}} \cdot \text{GFR} = \dot{V}_U \cdot U_{\text{in}}$ , or:

$$\text{GFR} = \frac{\dot{V}_U \cdot U_{\text{in}}}{P_{\text{in}}} \text{ [L/min]} \quad (\rightarrow A) \quad [7.8]$$

The expression on the right of Eq. 7.8 represents **clearance**, regardless of which substance is being investigated. Therefore, the *inulin or creatinine clearance represents the GFR*. (Although the plasma concentration of creatinine,  $P_{\text{cr}}$ , rises as the GFR falls,  $P_{\text{cr}}$  alone is a quite unreliable measure of GFR.)

Clearance can also be regarded as the completely indicator-free (or cleared) plasma volume flowing through the kidney per unit time. **Fractional excretion (FE)** is the ratio of clearance of a given substance  $X$  to inulin clearance ( $C_X/C_{\text{in}}$ ) and defines which fraction of the filtered quantity of  $X$  was excreted (cf. p. 154).  $\text{FE} < 1$  if the substance is removed from the tubule by reabsorption (e.g.  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , amino acids, glucose, etc.;  $\rightarrow B1$ ), and  $\text{FE} > 1$  if the substance is subject to filtration plus tubular secretion ( $\rightarrow B2$ ). For PAH ( $\rightarrow$  p. 150), tubular secretion is so effective that  $\text{FE}_{\text{PAH}} \approx 5$  (500%).

The **absolute rate of reabsorption or secretion** of a freely filterable substance  $X$  (mol/min) is calculated as the difference between the filtered amount/time ( $\text{GFR} \cdot P_X$ ) and the excreted amount/time ( $\dot{V}_U \cdot U_X$ ), where a positive result means net reabsorption and a negative net secretion. (For inulin, the result would be zero.)

**A. Inulin clearance = glomerular filtration rate (GFR)**

**B. Clearance levels (1) lower or (2) higher than inulin clearance**


SD7.3

Despopoulos, Color Atlas of Physiology © 2003 Thieme

All rights reserved. Usage subject to terms and conditions of license.

## Transport Processes at the Nephron

**Filtration of solutes.** The glomerular filtrate also contains small dissolved molecules of plasma (*ultrafiltrate*) ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152). The *glomerular sieving coefficient* GSC of a substance (= concentration in filtrate/concentration in plasma water) is a measure of the permeability of the glomerular filter for this substance ( $\rightarrow$  p. 148). Molecules with a radius of  $r < 1.8$  nm (molecular mass  $<$  ca. 10 000 Da) can freely pass through the filter (GSC  $\approx$  1.0), while those with a radius of  $r > 4.4$  nm (molecular mass  $>$  80 000 DA, e.g., globulins) normally cannot pass through it (GSC = 0). Only a portion of molecules where  $1.8$  nm  $<$   $r <$   $4.4$  nm applies are able to pass through the filter (GSC ranges between 1 and 0). Negatively charged particles (e.g., albumin:  $r = 3.4$  nm; GSC  $\approx$  0.0003) are less permeable than neutral substances of equal radius because negative charges on the wall of the glomerular filter repel the ions. When small molecules are bound to plasma proteins (**protein binding**), the bound fraction is practically non-filterable ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24).

Molecules entrapped in the glomerular filter are believed to be eliminated by phagocytic mesangial macrophages ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94f.) and glomerular podocytes.

**Tubular epithelium.** The epithelial cells lining the renal tubule and collecting duct are *polar cells*. As such, their luminal (or apical) membrane on the urine side differs significantly from that of the basolateral membrane on the blood side. The luminal membrane of the proximal tubule has a high *brush border* consisting of *microvilli* that greatly increase the surface area (especially in the convoluted proximal tubule). The basolateral membrane of this tubule segment has deep folds (*basal labyrinth*) that are in close contact with the intracellular mitochondria ( $\rightarrow$  p. 9B), which produce the ATP needed for  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$ -ATPase ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26) located in the basolateral membrane (of all epithelial cells). The large surface areas (about  $100 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the proximal tubule cells of both kidneys are needed to reabsorb the lion's share of filtered solutes within the contact time of a couple of seconds. Postproximal tubule cells do not need a brush border since the amount of substances reabsorbed decreases sharply from

the proximal to the distal segments of the tubules.

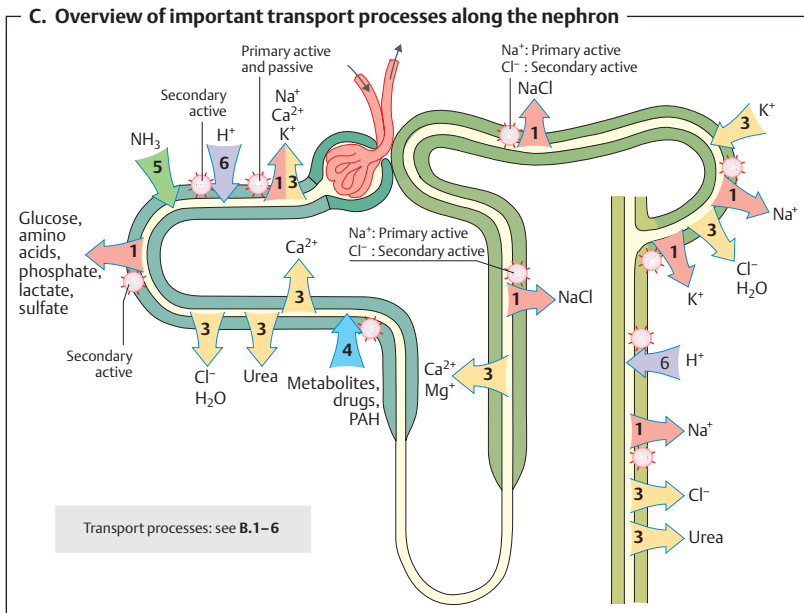
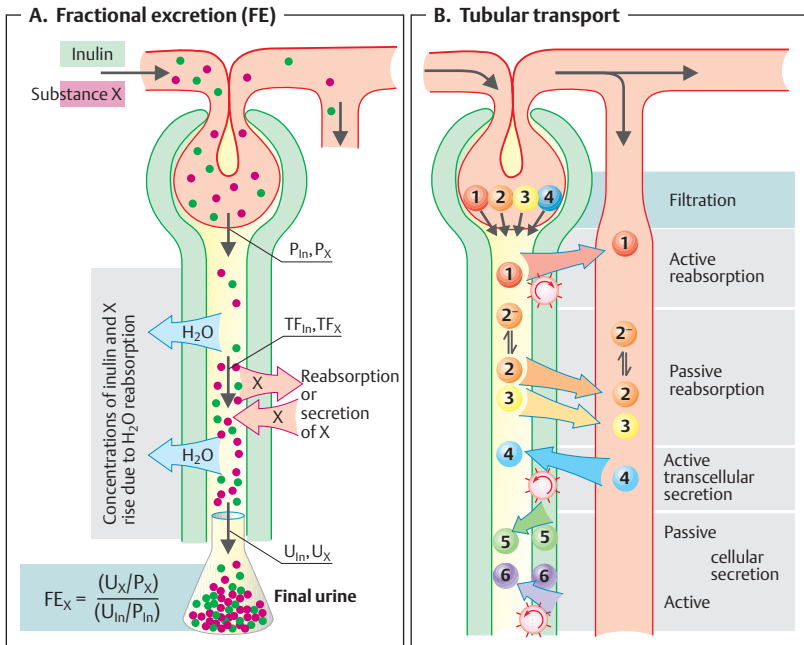
Whereas permeability of the two membranes in series is decisive for **transcellular transport** (reabsorption, secretion), the tightness of *tight junctions* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 18) determines the paracellular permeability of the epithelium for water and solutes that cross the epithelium by **paracellular transport**. The tight junctions in the proximal tubule are relatively permeable to water and small ions which, together with the large surface area of the cell membranes, makes the epithelium well equipped for para- and transcellular mass transport ( $\rightarrow$  D, column 2). The thin limbs of Henle's loop are relatively "leaky", while the thick ascending limb and the rest of the tubule and collecting duct are "moderately tight" epithelia. The tighter epithelia can develop much higher *trans-epithelial chemical and electrical gradients* than "leaky" epithelia.

**Measurement of reabsorption, secretion and excretion.** Whether and to which degree a substance filtered by the glomerulus is reabsorbed or secreted at the tubule and collecting duct cannot be determined based on its urinary concentration alone as concentrations rise due to the reabsorption of water ( $\rightarrow$  p. 164). The urinary/plasma inulin (or creatinine) concentration ratio,  $U_{in}/P_{in}$  is a *measure of the degree of water reabsorption*. These substances can be used as indicators because they are neither reabsorbed nor secreted ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152). Thus, changes in indicator concentration along the length of the tubule occur due to the **H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption** alone ( $\rightarrow$  A). If  $U_{in}/P_{in} = 200$ , the inulin concentration in the final urine is 200 times higher than in the original filtrate. This implies that *fractional excretion of H<sub>2</sub>O* ( $FE_{H_2O}$ ) is  $1/200$  or  $0.005$  or  $0.5\%$  of the GFR. Determination of the concentration of a (freely filterable and perhaps additionally secreted) substance X in the same plasma and urine samples for which  $U_{in}/P_{in}$  was measured will yield  $U_x/P_x$ . Considering  $U_{in}/P_{in}$ , the fractional excretion of X,  $FE_x$  can be calculated as follows ( $\rightarrow$  A and D, in % in column 5):

$$FE_x = (U_x/P_x)/(U_{in}/P_{in}) \quad [7.9]$$

Eq. 7.9 can also be derived from  $C_x/C_{in}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152) when simplified for  $\dot{V}_U$ . The **fractional reabsorption** of X ( $FR_x$ ) is calculated as

$$FR_x = 1 - FE_x \quad [7.10]$$



**Reabsorption in different segments of the tubule.** The concentration of a substance X ( $TF_X$ ) and inulin ( $TF_{in}$ ) in tubular fluid can be measured via micropuncture ( $\rightarrow$  A). The values can be used to calculate the non-reabsorbed fraction (*fractional delivery*, FD) of a freely filtered substance X as follows:

$$FD = (TF_X/P_X)/(TF_{in}/P_{in}),$$

where  $P_X$  and  $P_{in}$  are the respective concentrations in plasma (more precisely: in plasma water).

*Fractional reabsorption* (FR) up to the sampling site can then be derived from  $1 - FD$  ( $\rightarrow$  D, columns 2 and 3, in %).

**Reabsorption and secretion of various substances** (see pp. 16–30, transport mechanisms). Apart from  $H_2O$ , many inorganic ions (e.g.,  $Na^+$ ,  $Cl^-$ ,  $K^+$ ,  $Ca^{2+}$ , and  $Mg^{2+}$ ) and organic substances (e.g.,  $HCO_3^-$ , D-glucose, L-amino acids, urate, lactate, vitamin C, peptides and proteins;  $\rightarrow$  C, D, p. 158ff.) are also subject to tubular **reabsorption** ( $\rightarrow$  B1–3). Endogenous products of metabolism (e.g., urate, glucuronides, hippurates, and sulfates) and foreign substances (e.g., penicillin, diuretics, and PAH;  $\rightarrow$  p. 150) enter the tubular urine by way of **transcellular secretion** ( $\rightarrow$  B4, C). Many substances, such as ammonia ( $NH_3$ ) and  $H^+$  are first produced by tubule cells before they enter the tubule by **cellular secretion**.  $NH_3$  enters the tubule lumen by passive transport ( $\rightarrow$  B5), while  $H^+$  ions are secreted by active transport ( $\rightarrow$  B6 and p. 174 ff.).

$Na^+/K^+$  transport by  **$Na^+-K^+-ATPase$**  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26) in the basolateral membrane of the tubule and collecting duct serves as the “**motor**” for most of these transport processes. By *primary active transport* (fueled directly by ATP consumption),  $Na^+-K^+-ATPase$  pumps  $Na^+$  out of the cell into the blood while pumping  $K^+$  in the opposite direction (subscript “i” = intracellular and “o” = extracellular). This creates two driving “forces” essential for the transport of numerous substances (including  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$ ): first, a **chemical  $Na^+$  gradient** ( $[Na^+]_o > [Na^+]_i$ ) and (because  $[K^+]_i > [K^+]_o$ ), second, a **membrane potential** (inside the cell is negative relative to the outside) which represents an **electrical gradient** and can drive ion transport ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 32ff. and 44).

**Transcellular transport** implies that two membranes must be crossed, usually by two different mechanisms. If a given substance (D-glucose, PAH, etc.) is actively transported across an epithelial barrier (i.e., against an electrochemical gradient;  $\rightarrow$  see p. 26ff.), at least one of the two serial membrane transport steps must also be active.

**Interaction of transporters.** Active and passive transport processes are usually closely interrelated. The active absorption of a solute such as  $Na^+$  or D-glucose, for example, results in the development of an *osmotic gradient* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24), leading to the passive absorption of water. When water is absorbed, certain solutes are carried along with it (*solvent drag*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 24), while other substrates within the tubule become more *concentrated*. The latter solutes (e.g.,  $Cl^-$  and urea) then return to the blood along their concentration gradients by passive reabsorption. Electrogenic ion transport and ion-coupled transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 28) can depolarize or hyperpolarize only the luminal or only the basolateral membrane of the tubule cells. This causes a *transepithelial potential* which serves as the driving “force” for paracellular ion transport in some cases.

Since non-ionized forms of weak electrolytes are more lipid-soluble than ionized forms, they are better able to penetrate the membrane (**non-ionic diffusion**;  $\rightarrow$  B2). Thus, the pH of the urine has a greater influence on passive reabsorption by non-ionic diffusion. *Molecular size* also influences diffusion: the smaller a molecule, the larger its diffusion coefficient ( $\rightarrow$  p. 20ff.).

## D. Reabsorption, secretion and fractional excretion

Substance	1	2	3	4	5	6
	Concentration in plasma water (P) [mmol/L]	Fractional reabsorption (FR) [%]			Fractional excretion (FE) [% of filtered amount]	P = Plasma concentration TF = Concentration in tubular urine  Effects: ↑ raises FE ↓ lowers FE
		% in proximal tubule (TF/P)	% in loop of Henle (TF/P)	Total %		
H <sub>2</sub> O	---	65%	10%	93%–99.5%	0.5%–7%	ADH: ↓
Na <sup>+</sup>	153	65% (1.0)	25% (0.4)	95%–99.5%	0.5%–5%	Aldosterone: ↓ ADH: ↓ ANP: ↑
K <sup>+</sup>	4,6	65% (1.0)	10%–20%	Secretion possible	2%–150%	Aldosterone: ↑
Ca <sup>2+</sup>	Free: 1.6	60% (1.1)	30%	95%–99%	1%–5%	PTH: ↓ Acidosis: ↑
Mg <sup>2+</sup>	Free: 0.6	15% (2.5)	ca. 70%	80%–95%	5%–20%	P rise: ↑
Cl <sup>-</sup>	112	55% (1.3)	ca. 20%	95%–99.5%	0.5%–5%	---
HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	24	93% (0.2)		98%–99%	1%–2%	Alkalosis: ↑
Phosphate	2.2	65% (1.0)	15%	80%–97%	3%–20%	P rise: ↑↑ PTH: ↑↑↑ Ca <sup>2+</sup> falls: ↑↑↑ Acidosis: ↑↑↑
D-Glucose	5	96% (0.1)	4%	≈ 100%	≈ 0%	Sharp P rise: ↑
Urea	5	50% (1.4)	Secretion	ca. 60%	ca. 40%	Diuresis: ↑
Creatinine	0.1	0% (2.9)	0%	0%	100%	---
PAH (I. V.)	C <sub>test</sub>	Secretion	Secretion	Secretion	≈ 500%	Sharp P rise: ↓

## Reabsorption of Organic Substances

The **filtered load of a substance** is the product of its plasma concentration and GFR. Since the GFR is high (ca. 180 L/day), enormous quantities of substances enter the primary urine each day (e.g., 160 g/day of D-glucose).

Fractional excretion (FE, → p. 154) of **D-glucose** is very low (FE ≈ 0.4%). This virtually complete reabsorption is achieved by secondary active transport (*Na<sup>+</sup>-glucose symport*) at the luminal cell membrane (→ B and p. 29 B1). About 95% of this activity occurs in the proximal tubule. If the plasma glucose conc. exceeds 10–15 mmol/L, as in diabetes mellitus (normally 5 mmol/L), *glucosuria* develops, and urinary glucose conc. rises (→ A). Glucose reabsorption therefore exhibits *saturation kinetics* (Michaelis-Menten kinetics; → p. 28). The above example illustrates *prerenal glucosuria*. *Renal glucosuria* can also occur when one of the tubular glucose carriers is defective.

Low-affinity **carriers** in the luminal cell membrane of the pars convoluta (sodium-glucose transporter type 2 = SGLT2) and high-affinity carriers (SGLT1) in the pars recta are responsible for D-glucose reabsorption. The co-transport of D-glucose and Na<sup>+</sup> occurs in each case, namely at a ratio of 1:1 with SGLT2 and 1:2 with SGLT1. The energy required for this form of *secondary active* glucose transport is supplied by the electrochemical Na<sup>+</sup> gradient directed towards the cell interior. Because of the co-transport of two Na<sup>+</sup> ions, the gradient for SGLT1 is twice as large as that for SGLT2. A *uniporter* (GLUT2 = glucose transporter type 2) on the blood side facilitates the passive transport of accumulated intracellular glucose out of the cell (*facilitated diffusion*, → p. 22). **D-galactose** also makes use of the SGLT1 carrier, while **D-fructose** is passively absorbed by tubule cells (GLUT5).

The plasma contains over 25 **amino acids**, and about 70 g of amino acids are filtered each day. Like D-glucose, most L-amino acids are reabsorbed at proximal tubule cells by Na<sup>+</sup>-coupled secondary active transport (→ B and p. 29 B3). At least 7 different amino acid transporters are in the proximal tubule, and the specificities of some overlap.  $J_{\max}$  and  $K_M$  (→ p. 28) and, therefore, saturability and reabsorption capacities vary according to the type of amino acid and carrier involved. Fractional excretion of most amino acids ≈ to 1% (ranging from 0.1% for L-valine to 6% for L-histidine).

Increased urinary excretion of amino acids (**hyperaminoaciduria**) can occur. *Prerenal* hyperaminoaciduria occurs when plasma amino acid concentrations are elevated (and reabsorption becomes saturated, as in A), whereas *renal* hyperaminoaciduria occurs due to deficient transport. Such a dysfunction may be *specific* (e.g., in cystinuria, where only L-cystine, L-arginine and L-lysine are hyperexcreted) or *unspecific* (e.g., in Fanconi's syndrome, where not only amino acids but also glucose, phosphate, bicarbonate etc. are hyperexcreted).

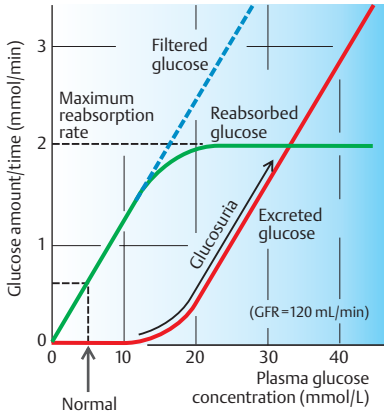
Certain substances (lactate, sulfate, phosphate, dicarboxylates, etc.) are also reabsorbed at the proximal tubule by way of Na<sup>+</sup> symport, whereas urea is subject to passive back diffusion (→ p. 166). **Urate** and **oxalate** are both reabsorbed and secreted (→ p. 160), with the predominant process being reabsorption for urate (FE ≈ 0.1) and secretion for oxalate (FE > 1). If the urinary conc. of these poorly soluble substances rises above normal, they will start to precipitate (increasing the risk of **urinary calculus formation**). Likewise, the excessive urinary excretion of **cystine** can lead to cystine calculi.

**Oligopeptides** such as glutathione and angiotensin II are broken down so quickly by *luminal peptidases* in the brush border that they can be reabsorbed as free amino acids (→ C1). **Dipeptides** resistant to luminal hydrolysis (e.g., carnosine) must be reabsorbed as intact molecules. A symport carrier (*PepT2*) driven by the inwardly directed H<sup>+</sup> gradient (→ p. 174) transports the molecules into the cells *tertiary active* H<sup>+</sup> symport; → p. 26, 29 B4). The dipeptides are then hydrolyzed within the cell (→ C2). The *PepT2* carrier is also used by certain drugs and toxins.

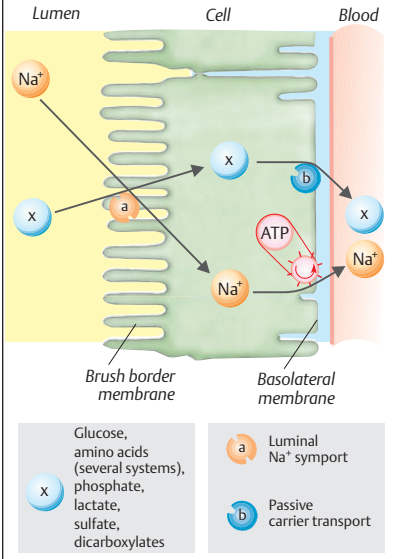
**Proteins.** Although *albumin* has a low sieving coefficient of 0.0003 (→ p. 154, 2400 mg/day are filtered at a plasma conc. of 45 g/L (180 L/day · 45 g/L · 0.0003 = 2400 mg/day). Only 2 to 35 mg of albumin are excreted each day (FE ≈ 1%). In the proximal tubule, albumin, lysozyme, α<sub>1</sub>-microglobulin, β<sub>2</sub>-microglobulin and other proteins are reabsorbed by *receptor-mediated endocytosis* (→ p. 28) and are “digested” by lysosomes (→ D). Since this type of reabsorption is nearly saturated at normal filtered loads of proteins, an elevated plasma protein conc. or increased protein sieving coefficient will lead to *proteinuria*.

25-OH-cholecalciferol, which is bound to **DBP** (vitamin D-binding protein) in plasma and glomerular filtrate, is reabsorbed in combination with DBP by receptor-mediated endocytosis (→ p. 292).

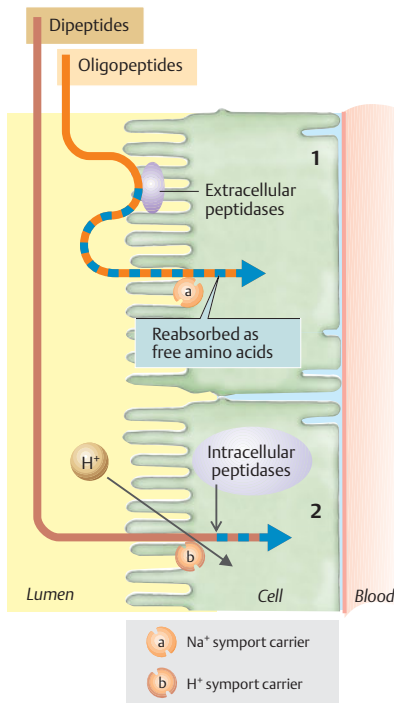
**A. Reabsorption of glucose and amino acids**



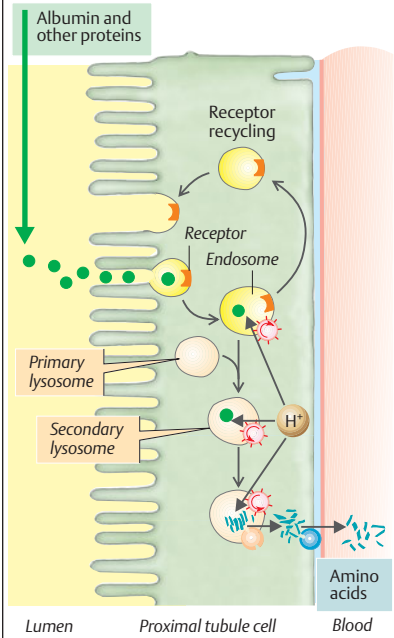
**B. Reabsorption of organic substances**



**C. Reabsorption of oligopeptides**



**D. Reabsorption of proteins by endocytosis**





## Excretion of Organic Substances

Food provides necessary nutrients, but also contains inert and harmful substances. The body can usually sort out these substances already at the time of **intake**, either based on their smell or taste or, if already eaten, with the help of specific digestive enzymes and intestinal absorptive mechanisms (e.g., D-glucose and L-amino acids are absorbed, but L-glucose and D-amino acids are not). Similar distinctions are made in **hepatic excretion** ( $\Rightarrow$  bile  $\Rightarrow$  stools): useful bile salts are almost completely reabsorbed from the gut by way of specific carriers, while waste products such as bilirubin are mainly eliminated in the feces. Likewise, the **kidney** reabsorbs hardly any useless or harmful substances (including end-products such as creatinine). Valuable substances (e.g., D-glucose and L-amino acids), on the other hand, are reabsorbed via specific transporters and thus spared from excretion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 158).

The liver and kidney are also able to modify endogenous waste products and foreign compounds (xenobiotics) so that they are "**detoxified**" if toxic and made ready for rapid elimination. In unchanged form or after the enzymatic addition of an OH or COOH group, the substances then combine with glucuronic acid, sulfate, acetate or glutathione to form **conjugates**. The conjugated substances are then secreted into the bile and proximal tubule lumen (with or without further metabolic processing).

### Tubular Secretion

The proximal tubule utilizes **active transport mechanisms** to secrete numerous waste products and xenobiotics. This is done by way of carriers for organic anions ( $\text{OA}^-$ ) and organic cations ( $\text{OC}^+$ ). The secretion of these substances makes it possible to raise their clearance level above that of inulin and, therefore, to raise their fraction excretion (FE) above 1.0 = 100% ( $\rightarrow$  p. 152) in order to eliminate them more effectively ( $\rightarrow$  A; compare red and blue curves). Secretion is carrier-mediated and is therefore subject to saturation kinetics. Unlike reabsorbed substances such as D-glucose ( $\rightarrow$  p. 159 A), the fractional excretion (FE) of organic anions and cations decreases when their plasma concentrations rise ( $\rightarrow$  A; PAH secre-

tion curve reaches plateau, and slope of PAH excretion curve decreases). Some organic anions (e.g., urate and oxalate) and cations (e.g., choline) are both secreted and reabsorbed (bidirectional transport), which results in net reabsorption (urate, choline) or net secretion (oxalate).

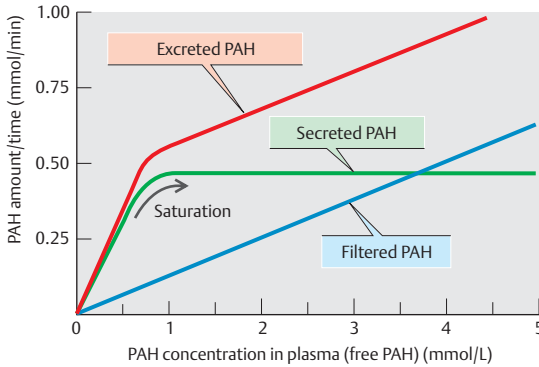
The secreted **organic anions** ( $\text{OA}^-$ ) include indicators such as PAH (p-aminohippurate;  $\rightarrow$  p. 150) and phenol red; endogenous substances such as oxalate, urate, hippurate; drugs such as penicillin G, barbiturates, and numerous diuretics ( $\rightarrow$  p. 172); and conjugated substances (see above) containing glucuronate, sulfate or glutathione. Because of its high affinity for the transport system, *probenecid* is a potent inhibitor of  $\text{OA}^-$  secretion.

The **active step of  $\text{OA}^-$  secretion** ( $\rightarrow$  B) occurs across the *basolateral membrane* of proximal tubule cells and accumulates organic anions in the cell whereby the inside-negative membrane potential has to be overcome. The membrane has a broad specificity carrier (OAT1 = *organic anion transporter* type 1) that transports  $\text{OA}^-$  from the blood into the tubule cells in exchange for a dicarboxylate, such as succinate<sup>2-</sup> or  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate<sup>2-</sup>;  $\rightarrow$  B1). The latter substance arises from the glutamine metabolism of the cell ( $\rightarrow$  p. 177 D2); the human  $\text{Na}^+$ -dicarboxylate transporter hNADC-1 also conveys dicarboxylates (in combination with 3  $\text{Na}^+$ ) into the cell by secondary active transport ( $\rightarrow$  B2). The transport of  $\text{OA}^-$  is therefore called *tertiary active transport*. The efflux of  $\text{OA}^-$  into the lumen is passive (facilitated diffusion;  $\rightarrow$  B3). An ATP-dependent *conjugate pump* (MRP2 = multi-drug resistance protein type 2) in the luminal membrane is also used for secretion of amphiphilic conjugates, such as glutathione-linked lipophilic toxins ( $\rightarrow$  B4).

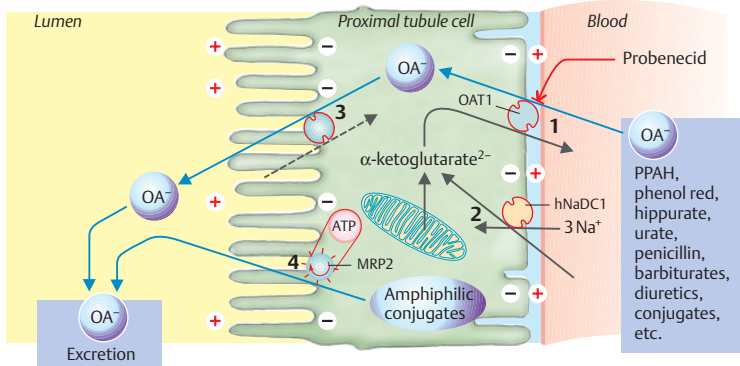
The **organic cations** ( $\text{OC}^+$ ) secreted include endogenous substances (epinephrine, choline, histamine, serotonin, etc.) and drugs (atropine, quinidine, morphine, etc.).

The **active step of  $\text{OC}^+$  secretion** occurs across the *luminal membrane* of proximal tubule cells (luminal accumulation occurs after overcoming the negative membrane potential inside the cell). The membrane contains (a) direct ATP-driven carriers for organic cations (mdr1; primary active  $\text{OC}^+$  transport;  $\rightarrow$  C1) and (b) a multispecific  $\text{OC}^+/\text{H}^+$  antiporter (tertiary active transport;  $\rightarrow$  C2). The  $\text{OC}^+$  diffuse passively from the blood into the cell by way of a polyspecific organic cation transporter (OCT;  $\rightarrow$  C3).

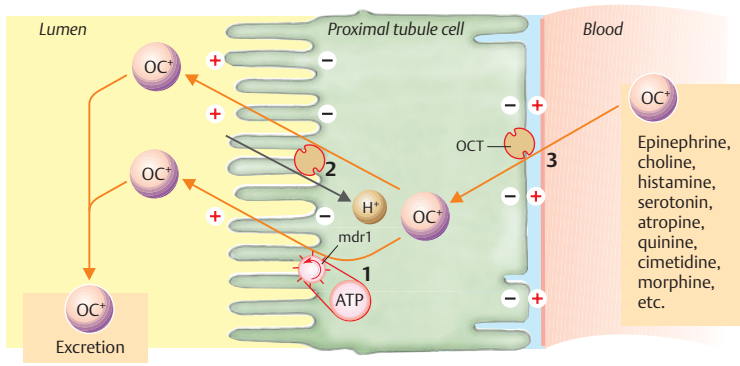
**A. Secretion and excretion of p-aminohippurate (PAH)**



**B. Secretion of organic anions (OA<sup>-</sup>)**



**C. Secretion of organic cations (OC<sup>+</sup>)**



## Reabsorption of Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup>

About 99% of the *filtered load* of Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed (ca. 27 000 mmol/day), i.e., the fractional excretion of Na<sup>+</sup> (FE<sub>Na</sub>) is about 1%. The precise value of FE<sub>Na</sub> needed (range 0.5 to 5%) is regulated by aldosterone, atriopeptin (ANF) and other hormones (→ p. 170).

**Sites of Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption.** The reabsorption of Na<sup>+</sup> occurs in all parts of the renal tubule and collecting duct. About 65% of the filtered Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule, while the luminal Na<sup>+</sup> conc. remains constant (→ p. 166). Another 25% is reabsorbed in the loop of Henle, where luminal Na<sup>+</sup> conc. drops sharply; → p. 157 D, columns 2 and 3). The distal convoluted tubule and collecting duct also reabsorb Na<sup>+</sup>. The latter serves as the site of hormonal *fine adjustment* of Na<sup>+</sup> excretion.

**Mechanisms of Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption.** Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase pumps Na<sup>+</sup> ions out of the cell while conveying K<sup>+</sup> ions into the cell (→ A and p. 156), thereby producing a chemical Na<sup>+</sup> gradient (→ A2). Back diffusion of K<sup>+</sup> (→ A3) also leads to the development of a membrane potential (→ A4). Both combined result in a high electrochemical Na<sup>+</sup> gradient that provides the driving “force” for passive Na<sup>+</sup> influx, the features of which vary in the individual nephron segments (→ B).

◆ In the **proximal tubule**, Na<sup>+</sup> ions diffuse passively from the tubule lumen into the cells via (a) the electroneutral Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger type 3 (NHE3), an Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup>-antiport carrier for electroneutral exchange of Na<sup>+</sup> for H<sup>+</sup> (→ B1, p. 29 B4 and p. 174) and (b) various Na<sup>+</sup> symport carriers for reabsorption of D-glucose etc. (→ B1 and p. 158). Since most of these symport carriers are electrogenic, the luminal cell membrane is depolarized, and an early proximal lumen-negative transepithelial potential (LNTP) develops.

◆ In the thick ascending limb (TAL) of the **loop of Henle** (→ B6), Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed via the bumetanide-sensitive co-transporter BSC, a Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-2Cl<sup>-</sup> symport carrier (→ p. 172). Although BSC is primarily electroneutral, the absorbed K<sup>+</sup> recirculate back to the lumen through K<sup>+</sup> channels. This hyperpolarizes the luminal membrane, resulting in the development of a lumen-positive transepithelial potential (LPTP).

◆ In the **distal convoluted tubule, DCT** (→ B8), Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed via the thiazide-sensitive co-transporter TSC, an electroneutral Na<sup>+</sup>-Cl<sup>-</sup> symport carrier (→ p. 172).

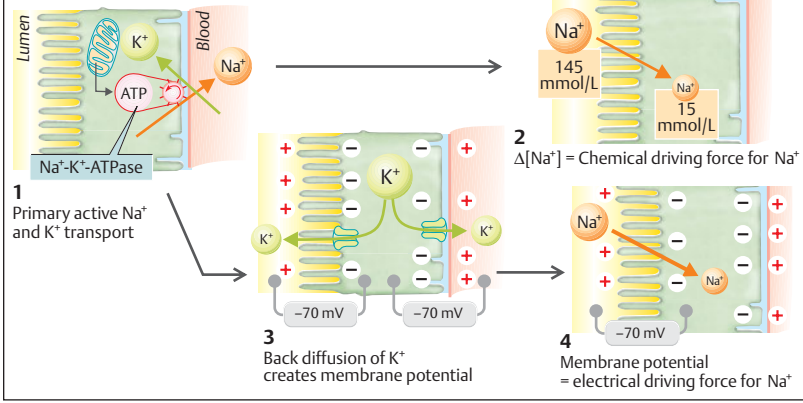
◆ In principal cells of the connecting tubule and collecting duct (→ B9), Na<sup>+</sup> exits the lumen via Na<sup>+</sup> channels activated by aldosterone and antidiuretic hormone (ADH) and inhibited by prostaglandins and ANF (→ p. 170). Since these four passive Na<sup>+</sup> transport steps in the luminal membrane are serially connected to active Na<sup>+</sup> transport in the basolateral membrane (Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase), the associated **trans-epithelial Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption** is also active. This makes up about 1/3 of the Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption in the proximal tubule, and 1 ATP molecule is consumed for each 3 Na<sup>+</sup> ions absorbed (→ p. 26). The other 2/3 of proximal sodium reabsorption is passive and **paracellular**.

Two **driving “forces”** are responsible for this: (1) the LPTP in the mid and late proximal tubule (→ B5) and in the loop of Henle (→ B7) drives Na<sup>+</sup> and other cations onto the blood side of the epithelium. (2) **Solvent drag** (→ p. 24): When water is reabsorbed, solutes for which the reflection coefficient < 1 (including Na<sup>+</sup>) are “dragged along” due to friction forces (like a piece of wood drifts with flowing water). Since driving forces (1) and (2) are indirect products of Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase, the **energy balance** rises to about 9 Na<sup>+</sup> per ATP molecule in the proximal tubule (and to about 5 Na<sup>+</sup> per ATP molecule in the rest of the kidney).

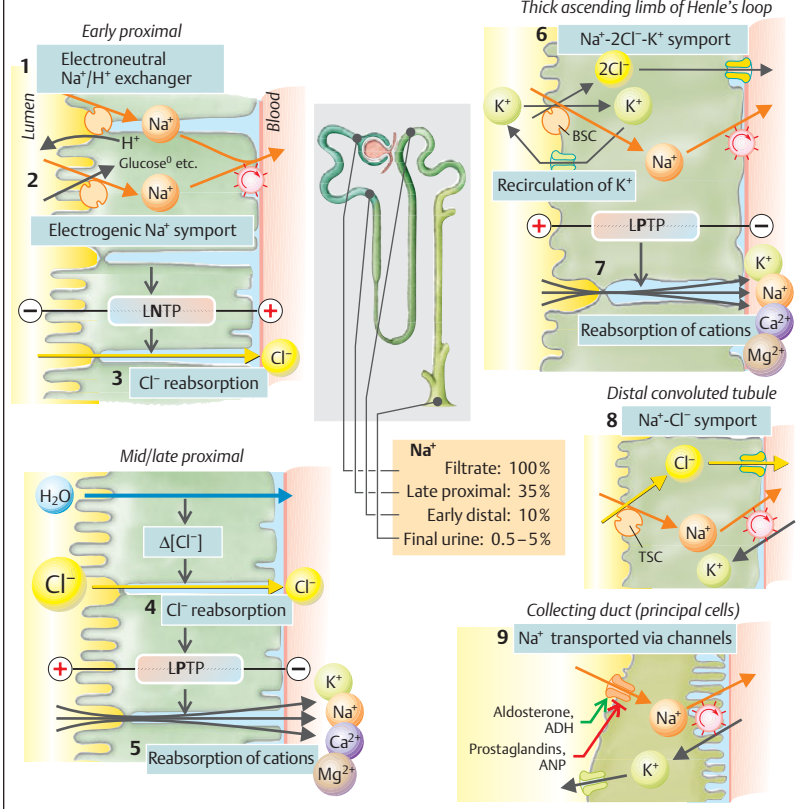
On the basolateral side, Na<sup>+</sup> ions exit the proximal tubule cell via Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase and an Na<sup>+</sup>-3HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> symport carrier (→ p. 174). In the latter case, Na<sup>+</sup> exits the cell via tertiary active transport as secondary active secretion of H<sup>+</sup> (on the opposite cell side) results in intracellular accumulation of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>.

The **fractional Cl<sup>-</sup> excretion (FE<sub>Cl</sub>)** ranges from 0.5% to 5%. About 50% of all Cl<sup>-</sup> reabsorption occurs in the *proximal tubule*. The early proximal LNTP drives Cl<sup>-</sup> through paracellular spaces out of the lumen (→ B3). The reabsorption of Cl<sup>-</sup> lags behind that of Na<sup>+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O, so the luminal Cl<sup>-</sup> conc. rises. As a result, Cl<sup>-</sup> starts to diffuse down its chemical gradient paracellularly along the mid and late proximal tubule (→ B4), thereby producing a LPTP (reversal of potential, → B5). At the TAL and the DCT, Cl<sup>-</sup> enters the cells by secondary active transport and exits passively through ADH-activated basolateral Cl<sup>-</sup> channels (→ B6, 8).

**A. Electrochemical Na<sup>+</sup> gradient**



**B. Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup> reabsorption**



SD7.8

Despopoulos, Color Atlas of Physiology © 2003 Thieme  
 All rights reserved. Usage subject to terms and conditions of license.

## Reabsorption of Water, Formation of Concentrated Urine

The glomeruli filter around 180 L of plasma water each day (= GFR; → p. 152). By comparison, the normal **urine output** ( $\dot{V}_U$ ) is relatively small (**0.5 to 2 L/day**). Normal fluctuations are called *antidiuresis* (low  $\dot{V}_U$ ) and *diuresis* (high  $\dot{V}_U$ ; → p. 172). Urine output above the range of normal is called *polyuria*. Below normal output is defined as *oliguria* (< 0.5 L/day) or *anuria* (< 0.1 L/day). The **osmolality** (→ p. 377) of plasma and glomerular filtrate is about 290 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O (=  $P_{\text{osm}}$ ); that of the final urine ( $U_{\text{osm}}$ ) ranges from 50 (hypotonic urine in extreme water diuresis) to about 1200 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O (hypertonic urine in maximally concentrated urine). Since *water diuresis* permits the excretion of large volumes of H<sub>2</sub>O without the simultaneous loss of NaCl and other solutes, this is known as “free water excretion”, or “free water clearance” ( $C_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$ ). This allows the kidney to normalize decreases in plasma osmolality, for example (→ p. 170). The  $C_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$  represents to the volume of water that could be theoretically extracted in order for the urine to reach the same osmolality as the plasma:

$$C_{\text{H}_2\text{O}} = \dot{V}_U (1 - [U_{\text{osm}}/P_{\text{osm}}]). \quad [7.11]$$

### Countercurrent Systems

A **simple exchange** system (→ A1) can consist of two tubes in which *parallel streams* of water flow, one cold (0 °C) and one hot (100 °C). Due to the exchange of heat between them, the water leaving the ends of both tubes will be about 50 °C, that is, the initially steep temperature gradient of 100 °C will be offset.

In **countercurrent exchange** of heat (→ A2), the fluid within the tubes flows in *opposite directions*. Since a temperature gradient is present in all parts of the tube, heat is exchanged along the entire length. Molecules can also be exchanged, provided the wall of the tube is permeable to them and that a concentration gradient exists for the substance.

If the countercurrent exchange of heat occurs in a **hairpin-shaped loop**, the bend of which is in contact with an environment with a temperature different from that inside the tube (ice, → A3), the fluid exiting the loop will be only slightly colder than that entering it, because heat always passes from the warmer limb of the loop to the colder limb.

Countercurrent exchange of **water** in the **vasa recta** of the **renal medulla** (→ A6 and p. 150) occurs if the medulla becomes increasingly hy-

per tonic towards the papillae (see below) and if the vasa recta are permeable to water. Part of the water diffuses by osmosis from the descending vasa recta to the ascending ones, thereby “bypassing” the inner medulla (→ A4). Due to the extraction of water, the concentration of all other blood components increases as the blood approaches the papilla. The plasma osmolality in the vasa recta is therefore continuously adjusted to the osmolality of the surrounding interstitium, which rises towards the papilla. The hematocrit in the vasa recta also rises. Conversely, substances entering the blood in the renal medulla diffuse from the ascending to the descending vasa recta, provided the walls of both vessels are permeable to them (e.g., urea; → C). The countercurrent exchange in the vasa recta permits the necessary supply of blood to the renal medulla without significantly altering the high osmolality of the renal medulla and hence impairing the urine concentration capacity of the kidney.

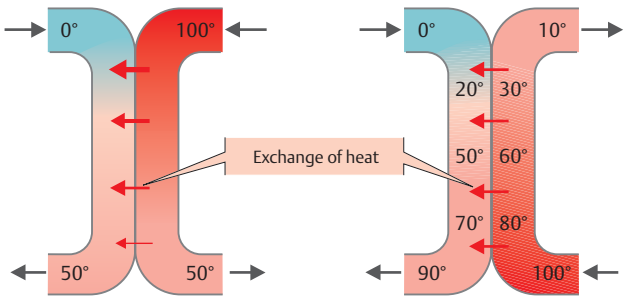
In a **countercurrent multiplier** such as the **loop of Henle**, a concentration gradient between the two limbs is maintained by the expenditure of energy (→ A5). The countercurrent flow amplifies the relatively small gradient at all points between the limbs (*local gradient* of about 200 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O) to a relatively large gradient along the limb of the loop (about 1000 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O). The longer the loop and the higher the one-step gradient, the steeper the multiplied gradient. In addition, it is inversely proportional to (the square of) the flow rate in the loop.

### Reabsorption of Water

Approximately 65% of the GFR is reabsorbed at the **proximal convoluted tubule, PCT** (→ B and p. 157 D). The driving “force” for this is the reabsorption of solutes, especially Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup>. This slightly dilutes the urine in the tubule, but H<sub>2</sub>O immediately follows this small osmotic gradient because the PCT is “leaky” (→ p. 154). The reabsorption of water can occur by a *paracellular* route (through leaky tight junctions) or *transcellular* route, i.e., through *water channels* (aquaporin type 1 = *AQP1*) in the two cell membranes. The urine in PCT therefore remains (virtually) isotonic. *Oncotic pressure* (→ p. 378) in the peritubular capillaries pro-

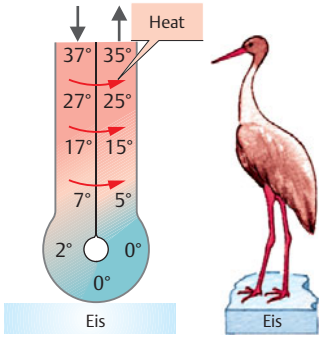


**A. Countercurrent systems**

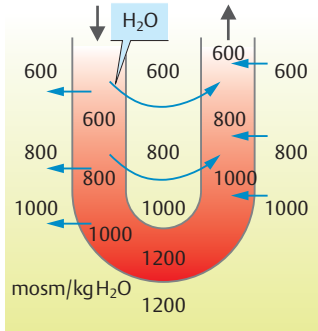


**1 Simple exchange system**

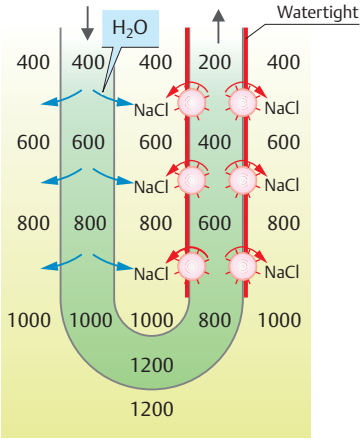
**2 Countercurrent exchange**



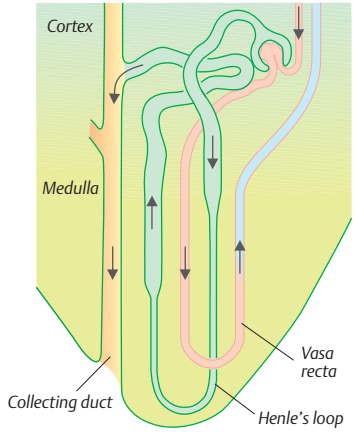
**3 Countercurrent exchange (heat) in loop**



**4 Countercurrent exchange (water) in loop (e.g. vasa recta)**



**5 Countercurrent multiplier (Henle's loop)**



**6 Countercurrent systems in renal medulla**

vides an additional driving force for water reabsorption. The more water filtered at the glomerulus, the higher this oncotic pressure. Thus, the reabsorption of water at the proximal tubule is, to a certain extent, adjusted in accordance with the GFR (**glomerulotubular balance**).

Because the *descending limb* of the **loop of Henle** has aquaporins (AQP1) that make it permeable to water, the urine in it is largely in osmotic balance with the hypertonic interstitium, the content of which becomes increasingly hypertonic as it approaches the papillae ( $\rightarrow$  **A5**). The urine therefore becomes increasingly concentrated as it flows in this direction. In the *thin* descending limb, which is only sparingly permeable to salt, this increases the conc. of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$ . Most water drawn into the interstitium is carried off by the vasa recta ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Since the *thin* and *thick ascending limbs* of the loop of Henle are largely impermeable to water,  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  passively diffuses (thin limb) and is actively transported (thick limb) out into the interstitium ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Since water cannot escape, the urine leaving the loop of Henle is *hypotonic*.

Active reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  from the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle (TAL;  $\rightarrow$  p. 162) creates a **local gradient** (ca. 200 mOsm/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  **A5**) at all points between the TAL on the one side and the descending limb and the medullary interstitium on the other. Since the high osmolality of fluid in the medullary interstice is the reason why water is extracted from the collecting duct (see below), active  $\text{NaCl}$  transport is the ATP-consuming “motor” for the kidney’s *urine-concentrating mechanism* and is up-regulated by sustained stimulation of ADH secretion.

Along the course of the **distal convoluted tubule** and, at the latest, at the **connecting tubule**, which contains aquaporins and ADH receptors of type  $\text{V}_2$  (explained below), the fluid in the tubule will again become isotonic (in osmotic balance with the isotonic interstice of the renal cortex) if ADH is present ( $\rightarrow$  p. 168), i.e., when *antidiuresis* occurs. Although  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  are still reabsorbed here ( $\rightarrow$  p. 162), the osmolality does not change significantly because  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is reabsorbed (ca. 5% of the GFR) into the interstitial space due to osmotic forces and *urea* increasingly determines the osmolality of the tubular fluid.

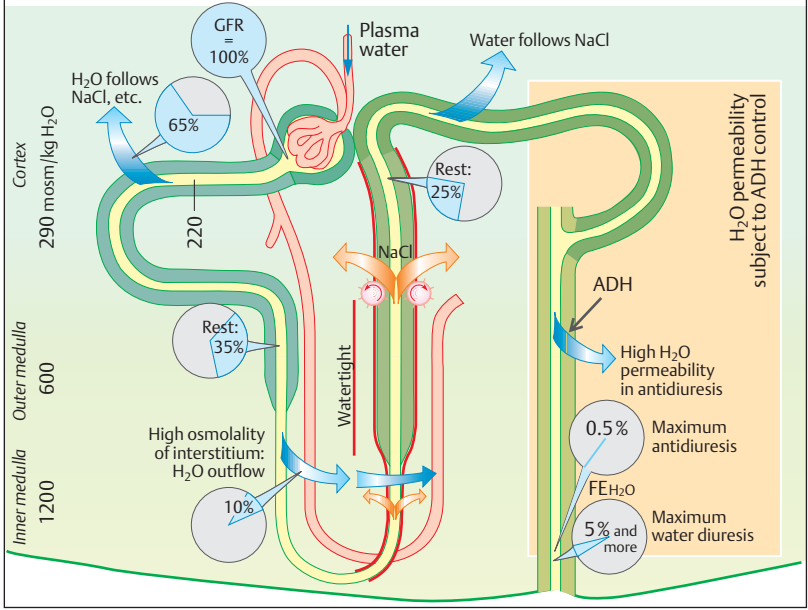
*Final adjustment* of the excreted urine volume occurs in the **collecting duct**. In the presence of antidiuretic hormone, **ADH** (which binds to basolateral  $\text{V}_2$  receptors, named after vasopressin, the synonym for ADH), **aquaporins (AQP2)** in the (otherwise water-impermeable) luminal membrane of principal cells are used to extract enough water from the urine passing through the increasingly hypertonic renal medulla. Thereby, the  $U_{\text{osm}}$  rises about four times higher than the  $P_{\text{osm}}$  ( $U_{\text{osm}}/P_{\text{osm}} \approx 4$ ), corresponding to *maximum antidiuresis*. The *absence of ADH* results in *water diuresis*, where  $U_{\text{osm}}/P_{\text{osm}}$  can drop to  $< 0.3$ . The  $U_{\text{osm}}$  can even fall below the osmolality at the end of TAL, since reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  is continued in the distal convoluted tubule and collecting duct ( $\rightarrow$  p. 162) but water can hardly follow.

**Urea** also plays an important role in the formation of concentrated urine. A protein-rich diet leads to increased urea production, thus increased the urine-concentrating capacity of the kidney. About 50% of the filtered urea leaves the proximal tubule by diffusion ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). Since the ascending limb of the loop of Henle, the distal convoluted tubule, and the cortical and outer medullary sections of the collecting duct are only sparingly permeable to urea, its conc. increases downstream in these parts of the nephron ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). **ADH** can (via  $\text{V}_2$  receptors) introduce *urea carriers* (urea transporter type 1, UT1) in the luminal membrane, thereby making the inner medullary collecting duct permeable to urea. Urea now diffuses back into the interstitium (where urea is responsible for half of the high osmolality there) via UT1 and is then transported by UT2 carriers back into the descending limb of the loop of Henle, comprising the **recirculation of urea** ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). The non-reabsorbed fraction of urea is excreted:  $\text{FE}_{\text{urea}} \approx 40\%$ . Urea excretion increases in water diuresis and decreases in antidiuresis, presumably due to up-regulation of the UT2 carrier.

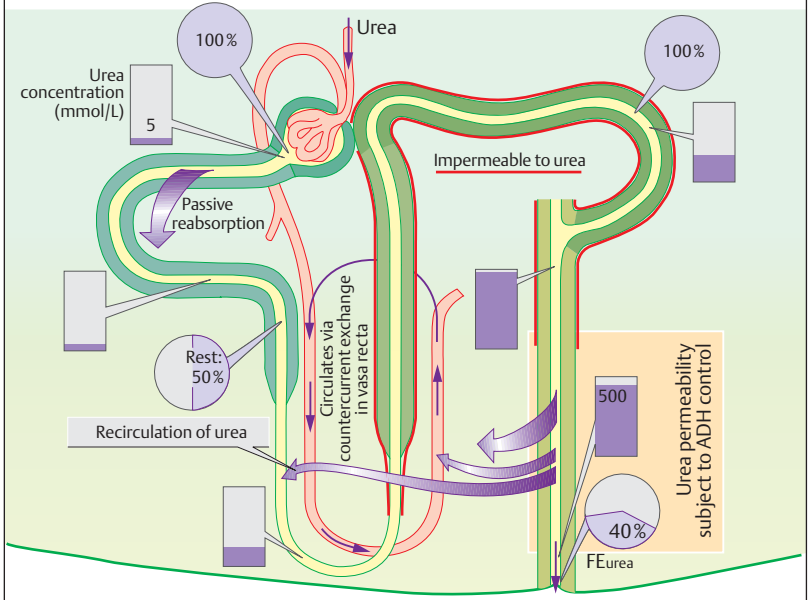
**Urine concentration disorders** primarily occur due to (a) excessive medullary blood flow (washing out  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and urea); (b) osmotic diuresis; (c) loop diuretics ( $\rightarrow$  p. 172); (d) deficient secretion or effectiveness of ADH, as seen in *central or peripheral diabetes insipidus*, respectively.



**B. Water reabsorption and excretion**



**C. Urea in the kidney**





## Body Fluid Homeostasis

Life cannot exist without water. Water is the initial and final product of countless biochemical reactions. It serves as a solvent, transport vehicle, heat buffer, and coolant, and has a variety of other functions. Water is present in cells as *intracellular fluid*, and surrounds them as *extracellular fluid*. It provides a constant environment (*internal milieu*) for cells of the body, similar to that of the primordial sea surrounding the first unicellular organisms (→ p. 2).

The volume of fluid circulating in the body remains relatively constant when the **water balance** (→ A) is properly regulated. The average **fluid intake** of ca. 2.5 L per day is supplied by *beverages*, *solid foods*, and *metabolic oxidation* (→ p. 229 C). The fluid intake must be high enough to counteract **water losses** due to *urination*, *respiration*, *perspiration*, and *defecation* (→ p. 265 C). The mean daily H<sub>2</sub>O turnover is 2.5 L/70 kg (1/30 th the body weight [BW]) in adults and 0.7 liters/7 kg (1/10th the BW) in infants. The water balance of infants is therefore more susceptible to disturbance.

Significant **rises in the H<sub>2</sub>O turnover** can occur, but must be adequately compensated for if the body is to function properly (regulation, → p. 170). Respiratory H<sub>2</sub>O losses occur, for example, due to *hyperventilation* at high altitudes (→ pp. 106 and 136), and *perspiration losses* (→ p. 222) occur due to exertion at high temperatures (e.g., hiking in the sun or hot work environment as in an ironworks). Both can lead to the loss of several liters of water per hour, which must be compensated for by increasing the intake of fluids (and salt) accordingly. Conversely, an increased intake of fluids will lead to an increased volume of urine being excreted (→ p. 170).

Water loss (hypovolemia) results in the stimulation of **thirst**, a sensation controlled by the so-called *thirst center in the hypothalamus*. Thirst is triggered by significant rises in the osmolality of body fluids and angiotensin II concentration of cerebrospinal fluid (→ p. 170).

**Body water content.** The fraction of total body water (TBW) to body weight (BW = 1.0) ranges from **0.46 (46%) to 0.75** depending on a person's age and sex (→ B). The TBW content in

*infants* is 0.75 compared to only 0.64 (0.53) in young men (women) and 0.53 (0.46) in elderly men (women). Gender-related differences (and interindividual differences) are mainly due to differences in a person's total *body fat content*. The average fraction of water in most body tissues (in young adults) is 0.73 compared to a fraction of only about 0.2 in fat (→ B).

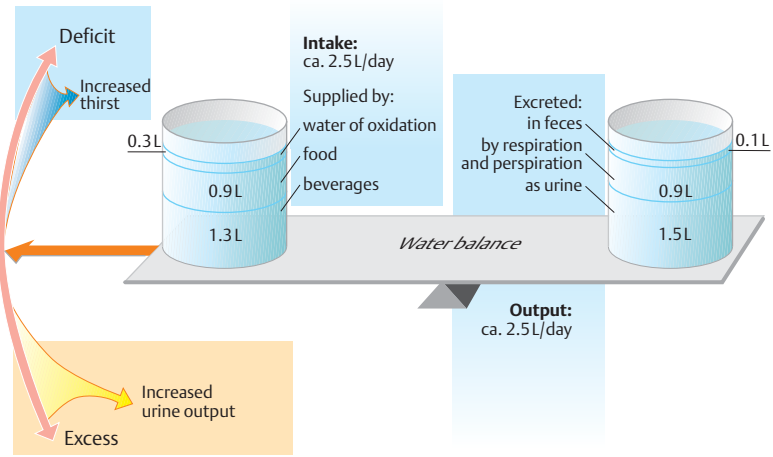
**Fluid compartments.** In a person with an average TBW of ca. 0.6, about 3/5 (0.35 BW) of the TBW is intracellular fluid (**ICF**), and the other 2/5 (0.25 BW) is extracellular. Extracellular fluid (**ECF**) is located between cells (*interstices*, 0.19), in blood (*plasma water* (0.045) and in "*transcellular*" compartments (0.015) such as the CSF and intestinal lumen (→ C). The *protein concentration* of the plasma is significantly different from that of the rest of the ECF. Moreover, there are fundamental differences in the *ionic composition* of the ECF and the ICF (→ p. 93 B). Since most of the body's supply of Na<sup>+</sup> ions are located in extracellular compartments, the total Na<sup>+</sup> content of the body determines its ECF volume (→ p. 170).

**Measurement of fluid compartments.** In clinical medicine, the body's fluid compartments are usually measured by *indicator dilution techniques*. Provided the indicator substance, S, injected into the bloodstream spreads to the target compartment only (→ C), its volume V can be calculated from:

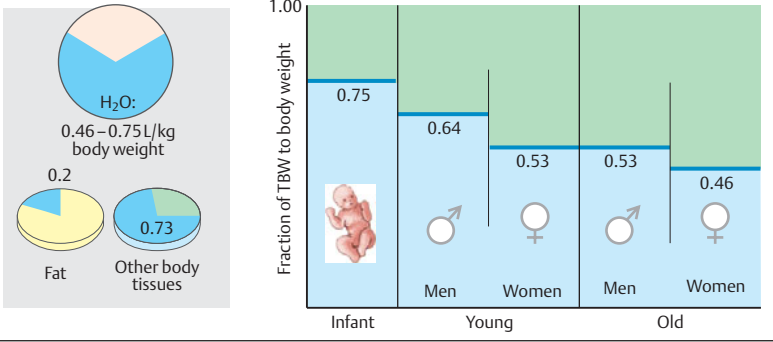
$$V[L] = \text{injected amount of } S \text{ [mol]} / C_S \text{ [mol/L]} \quad [7.12]$$

where C<sub>S</sub> is the concentration of S after it spreads throughout the target compartment (measured in collected blood specimens). The ECF volume is generally measured using *inulin* as the indicator (does not enter cells), and the TBW volume is determined using *antipyrine*. The ICF volume is approximately equal to the antipyrine distribution volume minus the inulin distribution volume. *Evans blue*, a substance entirely bound by plasma proteins, can be used to measure the plasma volume. Once this value is known, the blood volume can be calculated as the plasma volume divided by [1 – hematocrit] (→ p. 88), and the interstitial volume is calculated as the ECF volume minus the plasma volume.

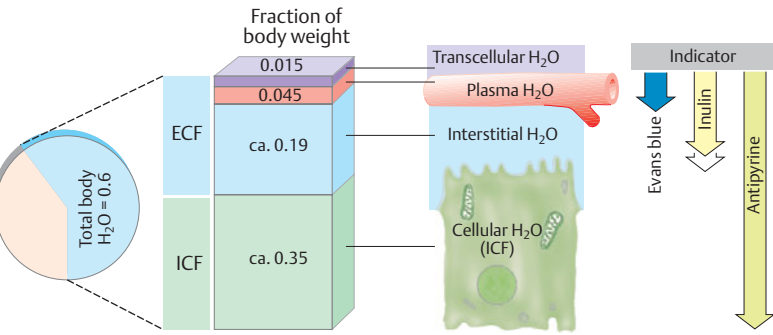
**A. Water balance**



**B. Total body water (TBW) content**



**C. Fluid compartments of the body**



## Salt and Water Regulation

**Osmoregulation.** The osmolality of most body fluids is about 290 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O. Any increase in the osmolality of extracellular fluid (ECF) due, for example, to NaCl absorption or water loss, results in an outflow of water from the intracellular space, because the intracellular fluid (ICF) and ECF are in osmotic balance (→ p. 173; B2, B6). The osmolality of the ECF must be tightly regulated to protect cells from large volume fluctuations. Osmoregulation is controlled by *osmosensors (or osmoreceptors)* found mainly in the hypothalamus, *hormones* (e.g., antidiuretic hormone = ADH = adiuretin = vasopressin) and the *kidney*, the target organ of ADH (→ p. 166).

**Water deficit (→ A1).** Net water losses (hypovolemia) due, for example, to sweating, urination or respiration, make the ECF hypertonic. Osmolality rises of 1% or more (≥ 3 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O) are sufficient to stimulate the secretion of **ADH** from the posterior lobe of the pituitary (→ p. 280). ADH decreases urinary H<sub>2</sub>O excretion (→ p. 166). The likewise hypertonic cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) stimulates central osmosensors in the hypothalamus, which trigger *hyperosmotic thirst*. The perception of **thirst** results in an urge to replenish the body's water reserves. Peripheral osmosensors in the portal vein region and vagal afferent neurons warn the hypothalamus of water shifts in the gastrointestinal tract.

**Water excess (→ A2).** The absorption of hypotonic fluid reduces the osmolality of ECF. This signal inhibits the secretion of ADH, resulting in water diuresis (→ p. 166) and normalization of plasma osmolality within less than 1 hour.

**Water intoxication** occurs when excessive volumes of water are absorbed too quickly, leading to symptoms of nausea, vomiting and shock. The condition is caused by an undue drop in the plasma osmolality before adequate inhibition of ADH secretion has occurred.

**Volume regulation.** Around 8–15 g of NaCl are absorbed each day. The kidneys have to excrete the same amount over time to maintain Na<sup>+</sup> and ECF homeostasis (→ p. 168). Since Na<sup>+</sup> is the major extracellular ion (Cl<sup>-</sup> balance is maintained secondarily), *changes in total body*

*Na<sup>+</sup> content lead to changes in ECF volume.* It is regulated mainly by the following **factors**:

- ◆ **Renin-angiotensin system (RAS)** (→ p. 184). Its activation promotes the retention of Na<sup>+</sup> via angiotensin II (AT II; lowers GFR), aldosterone (→ **A4**) and ADH.

- ◆ **Atriopeptin (atrial natriuretic peptide; ANP)** is a peptide hormone secreted by specific cells of the cardiac atrium in response to rises in ECF volume and hence atrial pressure. ANP promotes the renal excretion of Na<sup>+</sup> by raising the filtration fraction (→ p. 152) and inhibits Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption from the collecting duct.

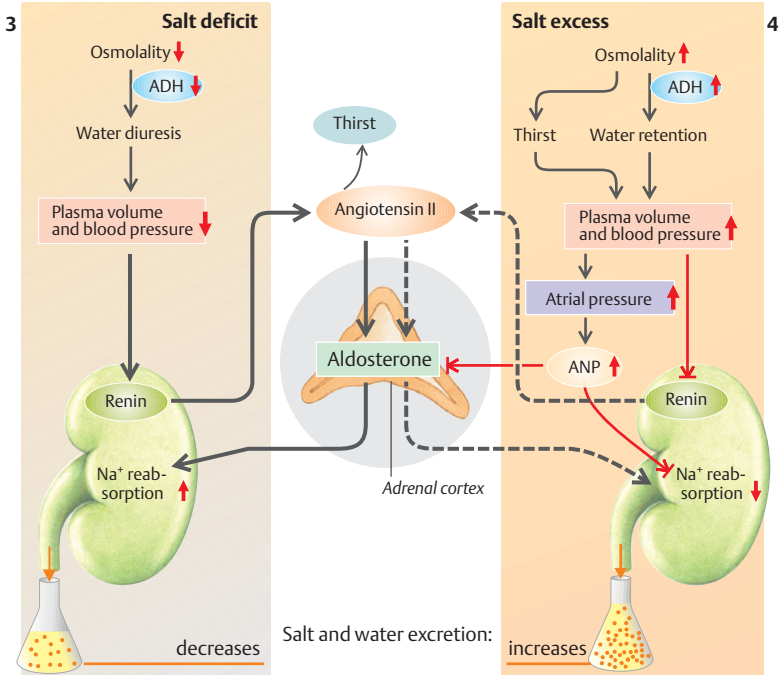
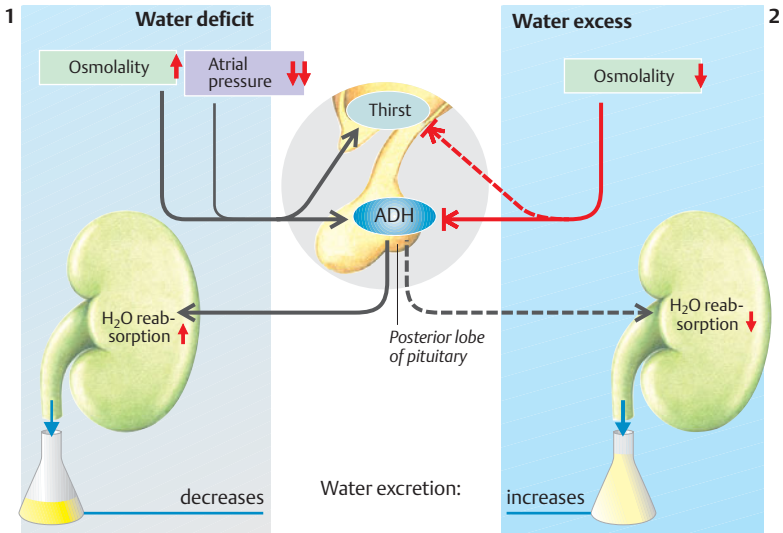
- ◆ **ADH.** ADH secretion is stimulated by (a) *increased plasma* and *CSF osmolality*; (b) the *Gauer-Henry reflex*, which occurs when stretch receptors in the atrium warn the hypothalamus of a decrease (> 10%) in ECF volume (~ atrial pressure); (c) *angiotensin II* (→ p. 184).

- ◆ **Pressure diuresis** (→ p. 172), caused by an elevated arterial blood pressure, e.g. due to an elevated ECF volume, results in increased excretion of Na<sup>+</sup> and water, thereby lowering ECF volume and hence blood pressure. This control circuit is thought to be the major mechanism for *long term blood pressure regulation*.

**Salt deficit (→ A3).** When hyponatremia occurs in the presence of a primarily normal H<sub>2</sub>O content of the body, blood osmolality and therefore ADH secretion decrease, thereby increasing transiently the excretion of H<sub>2</sub>O. The ECF volume, plasma volume, and blood pressure consequently decrease (→ **A4**). This, in turn, activates the RAS, which triggers *hypovolemic thirst* by secreting AT II and induces Na<sup>+</sup> retention by secreting aldosterone. The retention of Na<sup>+</sup> increases plasma osmolality leading to secretion of ADH and, ultimately, to the retention of water. The additional intake of fluids in response to *thirst* also helps to normalize the ECF volume.

**Salt excess (→ A4).** An abnormally high NaCl content of the body in the presence of a normal H<sub>2</sub>O volume leads to increased plasma osmolality (thirst) and ADH secretion. Thus, the ECF volume rises and RAS activity is curbed. The additional secretion of ANP, perhaps together with a natriuretic hormone with a longer half-life than ANP (ouabain?), leads to increased excretion of NaCl and H<sub>2</sub>O and, consequently, to normalization of the ECF volume.

**A. Regulation of salt and water balance**



## Diuresis and Diuretics

Increases in urine excretion above 1 mL/min (**diuresis**) can have the following **causes**:

- ◆ **Water diuresis**: Decreases in plasma osmolality and/or an increased blood volume lead to the reduction of ADH levels and, thus, to the excretion of “free water” (→ p. 164).

- ◆ **Osmotic diuresis** results from the presence of non-reabsorbable, osmotically active substances (e.g., mannitol) in the renal tubules. These substances retain H<sub>2</sub>O in the tubule lumen, which is subsequently excreted. Osmotic diuresis can also occur when the concentration of a reabsorbable substance (e.g., glucose) exceeds its tubular reabsorption capacity resulting, for example, in hyperglycemia (→ p. 158). The glucosuria occurring in diabetes mellitus is therefore accompanied by diuresis and a secondary increase in thirst. Hyperbicarbonaturia can lead to osmotic diuresis to the same reason (→ p. 176).

- ◆ **Pressure diuresis** occurs when osmolality in the renal medulla decreases in the presence of increased renal medullary blood flow due, in most cases, to hypertension (→ p. 170).

- ◆ **Diuretics** (→ **A**) are drugs that induce diuresis. Most of them (except osmotic diuretics like mannitol) work primarily by inhibiting NaCl reabsorption (*saluretics*) and, secondarily, by decreasing water reabsorption. The goal of therapeutic diuresis, e.g., in treating edema and hypertension, is to reduce the ECF volume.

Although diuretics basically inhibit NaCl transport throughout the entire body, they have a large degree of **renal “specificity”** because they act from the tubular lumen, where they become highly concentrated due to **tubular secretion** (→ p. 160) and tubular water reabsorption. Therefore, dosages that do not induce unwanted systemic effects are therapeutically effective in the tubule lumen.

Diuretics of the **carbonic anhydrase inhibitor type** (e.g., acetazolamide, benzolamide) decrease Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchange and HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> reabsorption in the *proximal tubule* (→ p. 174ff.). The overall extent of diuresis achieved is small because more distal segments of the tubule reabsorb the NaCl not reabsorbed upstream and because the GFR decreases due to tubuloglomerular feedback, TGF (→ p. 184). In addition, increased HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> excretion also leads to non-respiratory (metabolic) acidosis. Therefore, this type of diuretic is used only in patients with concomitant alkalosis.

**Loop diuretics** (e.g., furosemide and bumetanide) are highly effective. They inhibit the *bumetanide-sensitive co-transporter BSC* (→ p. 162 B6), a Na<sup>+</sup>-2Cl<sup>-</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> symport carrier, in the thick ascending limb (TAL) of the loop of Henle. This not only decreases NaCl reabsorption there, but also stalls the “motor” on the concentration mechanism (→ p. 166). Since the lumen-positive transepithelial potential (LPTP) in the TAL also falls (→ p. 162 B7), paracellular reabsorption of Na<sup>+</sup>, Ca<sup>2+</sup> and Mg<sup>2+</sup> is also inhibited. Because increasing amounts of non-reabsorbed Na<sup>+</sup> now arrive at the collecting duct (→ p. 181 B3), K<sup>+</sup> secretion increases and the simultaneous loss of H<sup>+</sup> leads to *hypokalemia* and *hypokalemic alkalosis*.

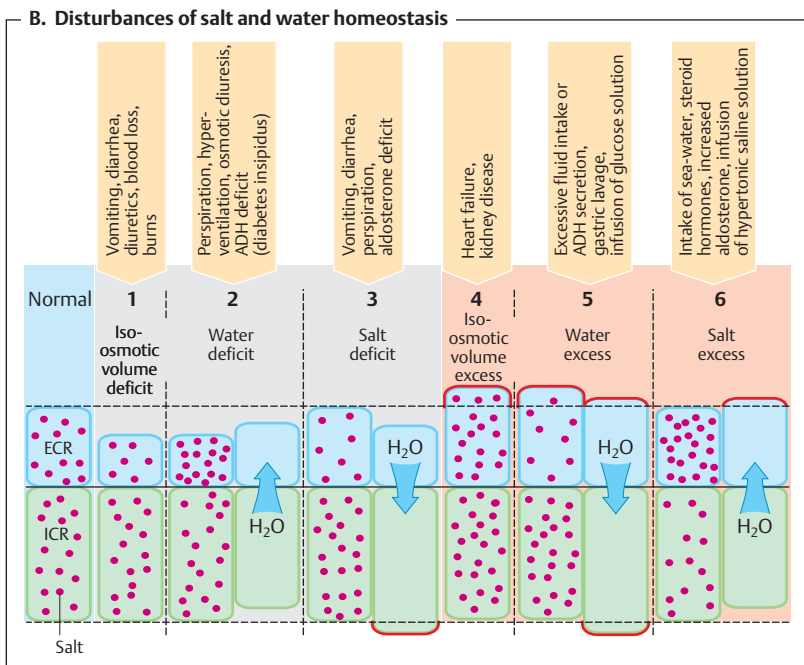
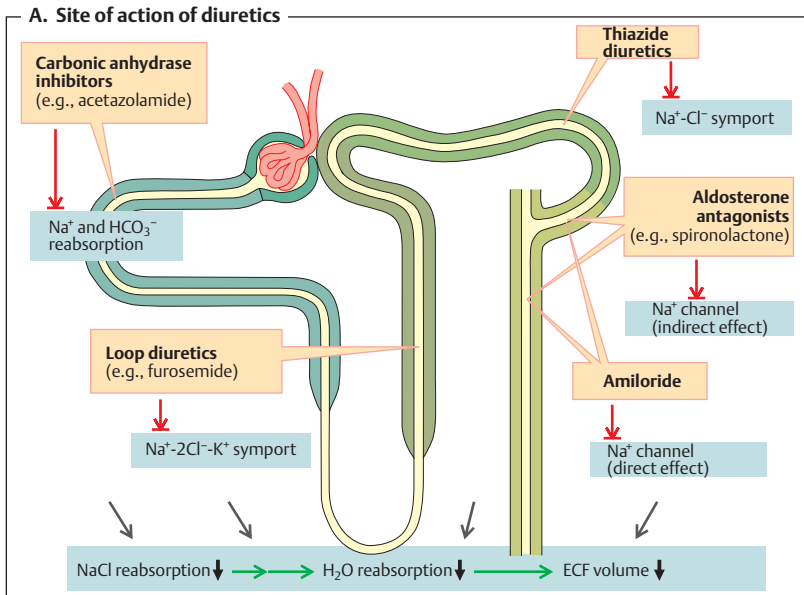
Loop diuretics inhibit BSC at the **macula densa**, thereby “tricking” the juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA) into believing that no more NaCl is present in the tubular lumen. The GFR then rises as a result of the corresponding tubuloglomerular feedback (→ p. 184), which further promotes diuresis.

**Thiazide diuretics** inhibit NaCl resorption in the distal tubule (TSC, → p. 162 B8). Like loop diuretics, they increase Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption downstream, resulting in losses of K<sup>+</sup> and H<sup>+</sup>.

**Potassium-sparing diuretics.** *Amiloride* block Na<sup>+</sup> channels in the principal cells of the connecting tubule and collecting duct, leading to a *reduction of K<sup>+</sup> excretion*. *Aldosterone antagonists* (e.g., spironolactone), which block the cytoplasmic aldosterone receptor, also have a potassium-sparing effect.

## Disturbances of Salt and Water Homeostasis

When *osmolality* remains *normal*, disturbances of salt and water homeostasis (→ **B** and p. 170) only affect the ECF volume (→ **B1** and **4**). When the osmolality of the ECF increases (hyperosmolality) or decreases (hypoosmolality), water in the extra- and intracellular compartments is redistributed (→ **B2, 3, 5, 6**). The main **causes** of these disturbances are listed in **B** (orange background). The **effects** of these disturbances are *hypovolemia* in cases 1, 2 and 3, *intracellular edema* (e.g., swelling of the brain) in disturbances 3 and 5, and *extracellular edema* (pulmonary edema) in disturbances 4, 5 and 6.



## The Kidney and Acid–Base Balance

Main functions of renal **H<sup>+</sup> secretion** ( $\rightarrow$  A):

- reabsorption of filtered bicarbonate ( $\rightarrow$  B),
- excretion of H<sup>+</sup> ions measurable as titratable acidity ( $\rightarrow$  C), and
- nonionic transport of NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>, i.e. in the form of NH<sub>3</sub> ( $\rightarrow$  D1, 2).

1. Very large quantities of H<sup>+</sup> ions are secreted into the lumen of the **proximal tubule** ( $\rightarrow$  A1) by (a) primary active transport via *H<sup>+</sup>-ATPase* and (b) by secondary active transport via an electroneutral *Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup>-antiporter* (NHE3 carrier,  $\rightarrow$  p. 162). The *luminal pH* then decreases from 7.4 (filtrate) to about 6.6. One OH<sup>-</sup> ion remains in the cell for each H<sup>+</sup> ion secreted; OH<sup>-</sup> reacts with CO<sub>2</sub> to form HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (accelerated by carbonic anhydrase-II, see below). HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> leaves the cell for the blood, where it binds one H<sup>+</sup> ion. Thus, each H<sup>+</sup> ion secreted into the lumen (and excreted) results in the elimination of one H<sup>+</sup> ion from the body, except the secreted H<sup>+</sup> is accompanied by a secreted NH<sub>3</sub> (see below).

2. In the **connecting tubule** and **collecting duct** ( $\rightarrow$  A2) *type A intercalated cells* secrete H<sup>+</sup> ions via H<sup>+</sup>/K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase and H<sup>-</sup>-ATPase, allowing the luminal pH to drop as far as 4.5. In metabolic alkalosis, *type B intercalated cells* can secrete HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> ( $\rightarrow$  A3).

**Carbonic anhydrase (CA)** is important in all cases where H<sup>+</sup> ions exit from one side of a cell and/or HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> exits from the other, e.g., in renal tubule cells, which contain CA<sup>II</sup> in the cytosol and CA<sup>IV</sup> on the outside of the luminal membrane;  $\rightarrow$  A, B, D), as well as in the stomach, small intestine, pancreatic duct and erythrocytes, etc. CA catalyzes the gross reaction



Carbonic acid (H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>) is often considered to be the intermediate product of this reaction, but OH<sup>-</sup> (not H<sub>2</sub>O) probably combines with CA. Therefore, the reactions H<sub>2</sub>O + OH<sup>-</sup> + H<sup>+</sup> and OH<sup>-</sup> + CO<sub>2</sub>  $\rightleftharpoons$  HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> underlie the aforementioned gross reaction.

**Reabsorption of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>** ( $\rightarrow$  B). The amount of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> filtered each day is 40 times the quantity present in the blood. HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> must therefore be reabsorbed to maintain acid–base balance ( $\rightarrow$  p. 183ff.). The H<sup>+</sup> ions secreted into the lumen of the proximal convoluted tubule react with about 90% of the filtered HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> to form

CO<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O ( $\rightarrow$  B). CA<sup>IV</sup> anchored in the membrane catalyzes this reaction. CO<sub>2</sub> readily diffuses into the cell, perhaps via aquaporin 1 ( $\rightarrow$  p. 166). CA<sup>II</sup> then catalyzes the transformation of CO<sub>2</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>O to H<sup>+</sup> + HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> within the cell ( $\rightarrow$  B). The H<sup>+</sup> ions are again secreted, while HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> exits through the basolateral membrane of the cell via an electrogenic carrier (hNBC = human Na<sup>+</sup>-bicarbonate co-transporter;  $\rightarrow$  B). The hNBC co-transporters 1 Na<sup>+</sup> with 3 HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (and/or with 1 HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> + 1 CO<sub>3</sub><sup>2-</sup>?) Thus, HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> is transported through the luminal membrane in the form of CO<sub>2</sub> (driving force:  $\Delta$ pCO<sub>2</sub>), and exits the cell across the basolateral membrane as HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (main driving force: membrane potential).

**Hypokalemia** leads to a rise in membrane potential (Nernst equation,  $\rightarrow$  p. 32) and thus to a rise in basolateral HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> transport. This results in increased H<sup>+</sup> secretion and, ultimately, in **hypokalemic alkalosis**.

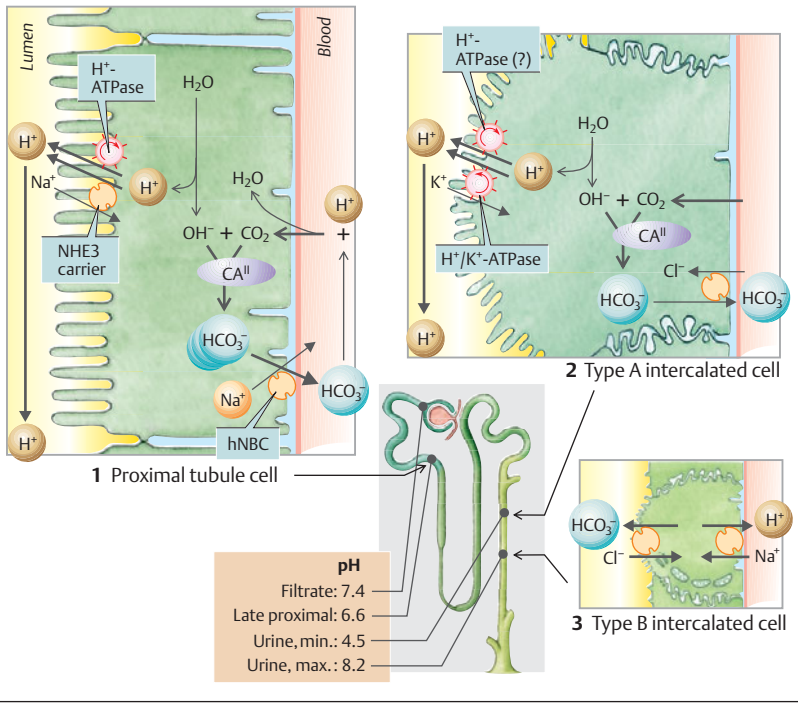
**Urinary acid excretion.** If the dietary protein intake is 70 g per day ( $\rightarrow$  p. 226), a daily load of about 190 mmol of H<sup>+</sup> occurs after the amino acids of the protein have been metabolized. HCl (from arginine, lysine and histidine), H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (from methionine and cystine), H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, and lactic acid are the main sources of H<sup>+</sup> ions. They are “fixed” acids which, unlike CO<sub>2</sub>, are not eliminated by respiration. Since about 130 mmol H<sup>+</sup>/day are used to break down organic anions (glutamate<sup>-</sup>, aspartate<sup>-</sup>, lactate<sup>-</sup>, etc.), the **net H<sup>+</sup> production** is about **60 (40–80) mmol/day**. Although the H<sup>+</sup> ions are buffered at their production site, they must be excreted to regenerate the buffers.

In extreme cases, the **urinary pH** can rise to about pH 8 (high HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> excretion) or fall to about pH 4.5 (maximum H<sup>+</sup> conc. is 0.03 mmol/L). At a daily urine output of 1.5 L, the kidneys will excrete < 1% of the produced H<sup>+</sup> ions in their free form.

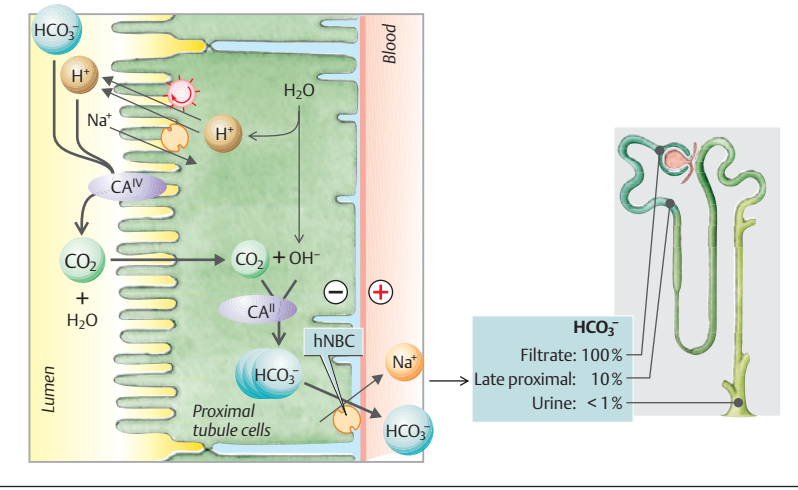
**Titrateable acids** (80% phosphate, 20% uric acid, citric acid, etc.) comprise a significant fraction (10–30 mmol/day) of H<sup>+</sup> excretion ( $\rightarrow$  C1). This amount of H<sup>+</sup> ions can be determined by titrating the urine with NaOH back to the plasma pH value, which is normally pH 7.4 ( $\rightarrow$  C2). Around 80% of **phosphate** (pK<sub>a</sub> = 6.8) in the blood occurs in the form of HPO<sub>4</sub><sup>2-</sup>, whereas about all phosphate in acidic urine occurs as H<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup> ( $\rightarrow$  p. 380), i.e., the secreted



**A. H<sup>+</sup> secretion**



**B. HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> reabsorption**

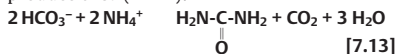




H<sup>+</sup> ions are buffered by filtered HPO<sub>4</sub><sup>2-</sup>. Non-reabsorbed phosphate (5–20% of the filtered quantity, → p. 178) is therefore loaded with H<sup>+</sup> ions, about half of it in the proximal tubule (pH 7.4 ⇒ ca. 6.6), and the rest in the collecting duct (pH 6.6 ⇒ 4.5) (→ C1). When *acidosis* occurs, increased quantities of phosphate are mobilized from the bone and excreted. The resulting increase in H<sup>+</sup> excretion precedes the increased NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> production associated with acidosis (see below).

**Excretion of ammonium ions (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> NH<sub>3</sub> + H<sup>+</sup>),** about 25–50 mmol/day on average diet, is *equivalent* to H<sup>+</sup> disposal and is therefore an *indirect* form of H<sup>+</sup> excretion (→ D). NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> is *not* a titratable form of acidity. Unlike HPO<sub>4</sub><sup>2-</sup> + H<sup>+</sup>

H<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup>, the reaction NH<sub>3</sub> + H<sup>+</sup> ⇌ NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> does not function in the body as a buffer because of its high pK<sub>a</sub> value of ca. 9.2. Nevertheless, for every NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> excreted by the kidney, one HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> is spared by the liver. This is equivalent to one H<sup>+</sup> disposed since the spared HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> ion can buffer a H<sup>+</sup> ion. With an average dietary intake of protein, the amino acid metabolism produces roughly equimolar amounts of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> (ca. 700–1000 mmol/day). The liver utilizes about 95% of these two products to produce **urea** (→ D1):



Thus, one HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> less is consumed for each NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> that passes from the liver to the kidney and is eliminated in the urine. Before exporting NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> to the kidney, the **liver** incorporates it into glutamate yielding **glutamine**; only a small portion reaches the kidney as free NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>. High levels of NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> NH<sub>3</sub> are toxic.

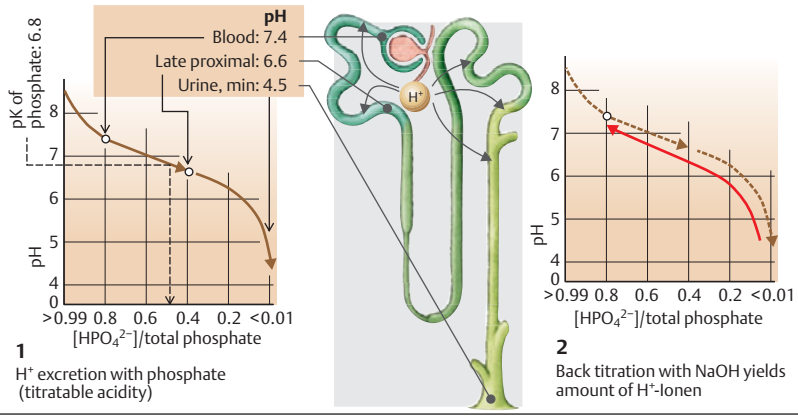
In the **kidney**, *glutamine* enters proximal tubule cells by Na<sup>+</sup> symport and is cleaved by mitochondrial *glutaminase*, yielding NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> and glutamate<sup>-</sup> (Glu<sup>-</sup>). Glu<sup>-</sup> is further metabolized by *glutamate dehydrogenase* to yield α-ketoglutarate<sup>2-</sup>, producing a second NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> ion (→ D2). The NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> can reach the tubule lumen on two ways: (1) it dissociates within the cell to yield NH<sub>3</sub> and H<sup>+</sup>, allowing NH<sub>3</sub> to diffuse (non-ionically, → p. 22) into the lumen, where it re-joins the separately secreted H<sup>+</sup> ions; (2) the NHE3 carrier secretes NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> (instead of H<sup>+</sup>). Once NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> has arrived at the *thick ascending limb* of the loop of Henle (→ D4), the BSC car-

rier (→ p. 162) reabsorbs NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> (instead of K<sup>+</sup>) so that it remains in the *renal medulla*. Recirculation of NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> through the loop of Henle yields a very high conc. of NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> NH<sub>3</sub> + H<sup>+</sup> towards the papilla (→ D3). While the H<sup>+</sup> ions are then actively pumped into the lumen of the collecting duct (→ A2, D4), the NH<sub>3</sub> molecules arrive there by non-ionic diffusion (→ D4). The NH<sub>3</sub> gradient required to drive this diffusion can develop because the especially low luminal pH value (about 4.5) leads to a much smaller NH<sub>3</sub> conc. in the lumen than in the medullary interstitium where the pH is about two pH units higher and the NH<sub>3</sub> conc. is consequently about 100-times higher than in the lumen.

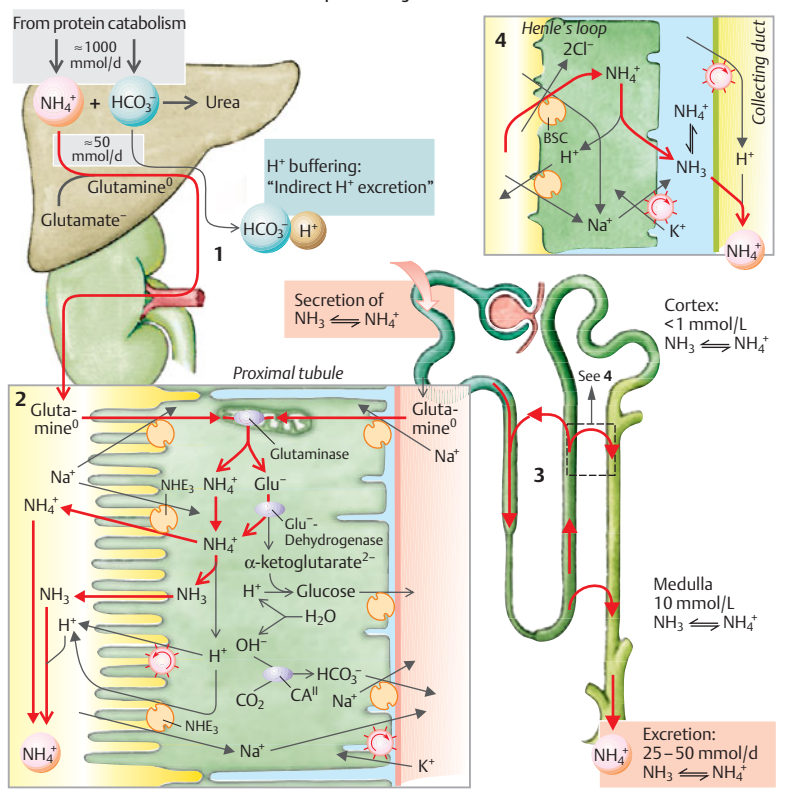
**Disturbances of acid–base metabolism** (see also p. 142ff.). When **chronic non-respiratory acidosis** of non-renal origin occurs, NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> excretion rises to about 3 times the normal level within 1 to 2 days due to a parallel increase in hepatic glutamine production (at the expense of urea formation) and renal glutaminase activity. **Non-respiratory alkalosis** only decreases the renal NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> production and H<sup>+</sup> secretion. This occurs in conjunction with an increase in filtered HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (increased plasma concentration, → p. 144), resulting in a sharp rise in HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> excretion and, consequently, in osmotic diuresis (→ p. 172). To **compensate for respiratory disturbances** (→ p. 144), it is important that increased (or decreased) plasma P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> levels result in increased (or decreased) H<sup>+</sup> secretion and, thus, in increased (or decreased) HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> resorption.

The kidney can also be the primary site of an acid–base disturbance (**renal acidosis**), with the defect being either generalized or isolated. In a generalized defect, as observed in *renal failure*, acidosis occurs because of reduced H<sup>+</sup> excretion. In an isolated defect with disturbance of proximal H<sup>+</sup> secretion, large portions of filtered HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> are not reabsorbed, leading to *proximal renal tubular acidosis*. When impaired renal H<sup>+</sup> secretion occurs in the collecting duct, the urine can no longer be acidified (pH > 6 despite acidosis) and the excretion of titratable acids and NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> is consequently impaired (*distal renal tubular acidosis*).

**C. Excretion of titratable acids**



**D. Secretion and excretion of  $NH_4^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_3$**



## Reabsorption and Excretion of Phosphate, $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ and $\text{Mg}^{2+}$

**Phosphate metabolism.** The plasma phosphate conc. normally ranges from 0.8–1.4 mmol/L, and a corresponding amount of ca. 150–250 mmol/day of inorganic phosphate  $\text{P}_i$  ( $\text{HPO}_4^{2-}$ – $\text{H}_2\text{PO}_4^-$ ) is filtered each day, a large part of which is reabsorbed. The fractional excretion ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**), which ranges between 5 and 20%, functions to balance  $\text{P}_i$ ,  $\text{H}^+$ , and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .  $\text{P}_i$  excretion rises in the presence of a  $\text{P}_i$  excess (elevated  $\text{P}_i$  levels in plasma) and falls during a  $\text{P}_i$  deficit. Acidosis also results in phosphaturia and increased  $\text{H}^+$  excretion (titratable acidity,  $\rightarrow$  p. 174ff.). This also occurs in phosphaturia of other causes. Hypocalcemia and parathyrin also induce a rise in  $\text{P}_i$  excretion ( $\rightarrow$  **A3** and p. 290f.).

$\text{P}_i$  is reabsorbed at the proximal tubule ( $\rightarrow$  **A2,3**). Its luminal membrane contains the type 3  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{P}_i$  symport carrier (NaPi-3). The carrier accepts  $\text{H}_2\text{PO}_4^-$  and  $\text{HPO}_4^{2-}$  and cotransports it with  $\text{Na}^+$  by secondary active transport ( $\rightarrow$  p. 266f.).

**Regulation of  $\text{P}_i$  reabsorption.**  $\text{P}_i$  deficits, alkalosis, hypercalcemia, and low PTH levels result in the increased incorporation of NaPi-3 transporters into the luminal membrane, whereas  $\text{P}_i$  excesses, acidosis, hypocalcemia and increased PTH secretion results in internalization (down-regulation) and subsequent lysosomal degradation of NaPi-3 ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**).

**Calcium metabolism** (see also p. 36). Unlike the  $\text{Na}^+$  metabolism, the calcium metabolism is regulated mainly by absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the gut ( $\rightarrow$  p. 290ff.) and, secondarily, by renal excretory function. Total plasma calcium (bound calcium + ionized  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) is a mean 2.5 mmol/L. About 1.3 mmol/L of this is present as free, ionized  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 0.2 mmol/L forms complexes with phosphate, citrate, etc., and the rest of 1 mmol/L is bound to plasma proteins and, thus, not subject to glomerular filtration ( $\rightarrow$  p. 154). Fractional excretion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\text{FE}_{\text{Ca}}$ ) in the urine is 0.5%–3% ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**).

$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption occurs practically throughout the entire nephron ( $\rightarrow$  **A1,2**). The reabsorption of filtered  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  occurs to about 60% in the proximal tubule and about 30% in the thick ascending limb (TAL) of the loop of

Henle and is paracellular, i.e., passive ( $\rightarrow$  **A4a** and p. 163 B5, B7). The lumen-positive trans-epithelial potential (LTP) provides most of the driving force for this activity. Since  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption in TAL depends on NaCl reabsorption, loop diuretics ( $\rightarrow$  p. 172) inhibit  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption there. PTH promotes  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption in TAL as well as in the distal convoluted tubule, where  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is reabsorbed by transcellular active transport ( $\rightarrow$  **A4b**). Thereby,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx into the cell is passive and occurs via luminal  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  efflux is active and occurs via  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase (primary active  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport) and via the  $3\text{Na}^+/1\text{Ca}^{2+}$  antiporter (secondary active  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport). Acidosis inhibits  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption via unclear mechanisms.

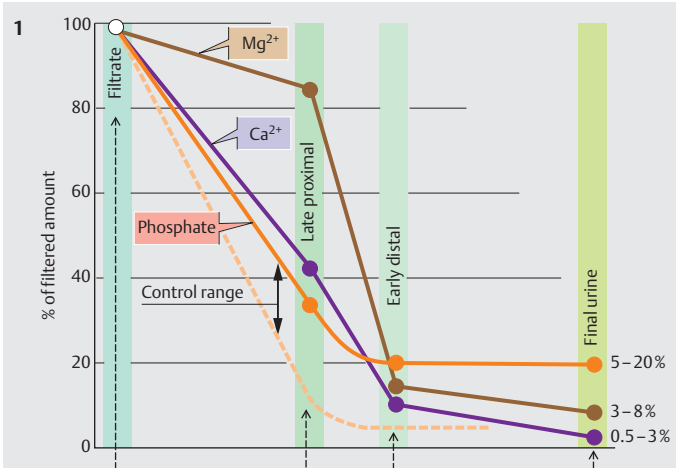
**Urinary calculi** usually consist of calcium phosphate or calcium oxalate. When  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{P}_i$  or oxalate levels are increased, the solubility product will be exceeded but calcium complex formers (e.g., citrate) and inhibitors of crystallization (e.g., nephrocalcin) normally permit a certain degree of supersaturation. Stone formation can occur if there is a deficit of these substances or if extremely high urinary concentrations of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{P}_i$  and oxalate are present (applies to all three in pronounced antidiuresis).

**Magnesium metabolism and reabsorption.** Since part of the magnesium in plasma (0.7–1.2 mmol/L) is protein-bound, the  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  conc. in the filtrate is only 80% of the plasma magnesium conc. Fractional excretion of  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{FE}_{\text{Mg}}$ , is 3–8% ( $\rightarrow$  **A1,2**). Unlike  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , however, only about 15% of the filtered  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  ions leave the proximal tubule. About 70% of the  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  is subject to paracellular reabsorption in the TAL ( $\rightarrow$  **A4** and p. 163 B5, B7). Another 10% of the  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  is subject to transcellular reabsorption in the distal tubule ( $\rightarrow$  **A4b**), probably like  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (see above).

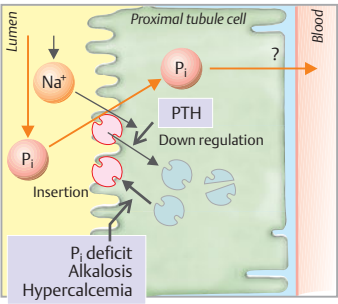
$\text{Mg}^{2+}$  excretion is stimulated by hypermagnesemia, hypercalcemia, hypervolemia and loop diuretics, and is inhibited by  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  deficit,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  deficit, volume deficit, PTH and other hormones that mainly act in the TAL.

The kidney has sensors for divalent cations like  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36). When activated, the sensors inhibit NaCl reabsorption in the TAL which, like loop diuretics, reduces the driving force for paracellular cation reabsorption, thereby diminishing the normally pronounced  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  reabsorption there.

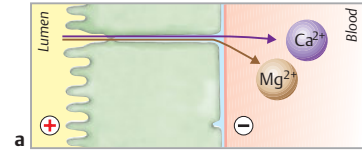
**A. Reabsorption of phosphate,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$**



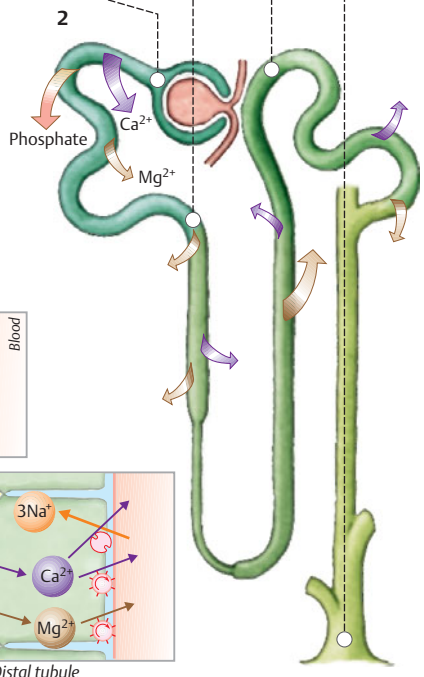
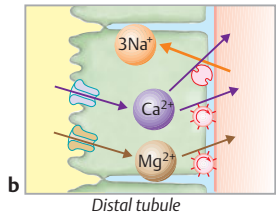
**3 Phosphate transport**



**4  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  transport**



Proximal tubule and thick ascending limb of Henle's loop



## Potassium Balance

The dietary intake of  $K^+$  is about 100 mmol/day (minimum requirement: 25 mmol/day). About 90% of intake is excreted in the urine, and 10% is excreted in the feces. The plasma  $K^+$  conc. normally ranges from 3.5 to 4.8 mmol/L, while intracellular  $K^+$  conc. can be more than 30 times as high (due to the activity of  $Na^+-K^+-ATPase$ ;  $\rightarrow$  A). Therefore, about 98% of the ca. 3000 mmol of  $K^+$  ions in the body are present in the cells. Although the extracellular  $K^+$  conc. comprises only about 2% of total body  $K^+$ , it is still very important because (a) it is needed for regulation of  $K^+$  homeostasis and (b) relatively small changes in cellular  $K^+$  (influx or efflux) can lead to tremendous changes in the plasma  $K^+$  conc. (with an associated risk of cardiac arrhythmias). Regulation of  $K^+$  homeostasis therefore implies *distribution of  $K^+$*  through intracellular and extracellular compartments and *adjustment of  $K^+$  excretion according to  $K^+$  intake*.

**Acute regulation** of the extracellular  $K^+$  conc. is achieved by internal **shifting of  $K^+$**  between the extracellular fluid and intracellular fluid ( $\rightarrow$  A). This relatively rapid process prevents or mitigates dangerous rises in extracellular  $K^+$  (hyperkalemia) in cases where large quantities of  $K^+$  are present due to high dietary intake or internal  $K^+$  liberation (e.g., in sudden hemolysis). The associated  $K^+$  shifting is mainly subject to *hormonal control*. The **insulin** secreted after a meal stimulates  $Na^+-K^+-ATPase$  and distributes the  $K^+$  supplied in the animal and vegetable cells of the food to the cells of the body. This is also the case in diet-independent hyperkalemia, which stimulates insulin secretion per se. **Epinephrine** likewise increases cellular  $K^+$  uptake, which is particularly important in muscle work and trauma—two situations that lead to a rise in plasma  $K^+$ . In both cases, the increased epinephrine levels allow the re-uptake of  $K^+$  in this and other cells. **Aldosterone** also increases the intracellular  $K^+$  conc. (see below).

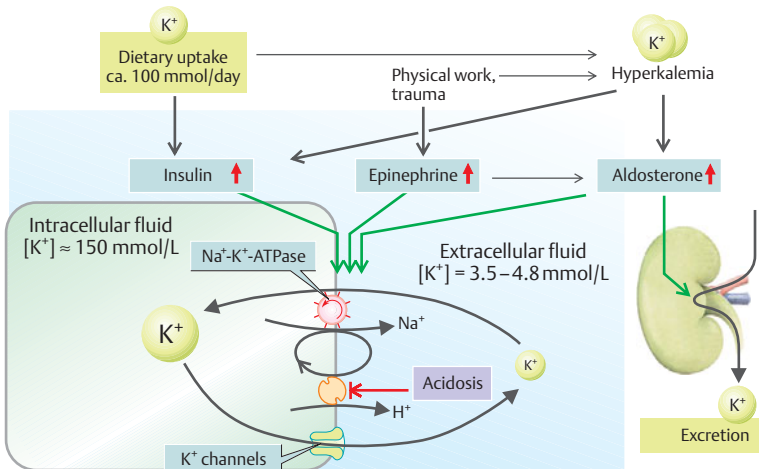
**Changes in pH** affect the intra- and extracellular distribution of  $K^+$  ( $\rightarrow$  A). This is mainly because the ubiquitous  $Na^+/H^+$  antiporter works faster in alkalosis and more slowly in acidosis ( $\rightarrow$  A). In acidosis,  $Na^+$  influx therefore decreases,  $Na^+-K^+-ATPase$  slows down, and the

extracellular  $K^+$  concentration rises (especially in non-respiratory acidosis, i.e., by 0.6 mmol/L per 0.1 unit change in pH). Alkalosis results in hypokalemia.

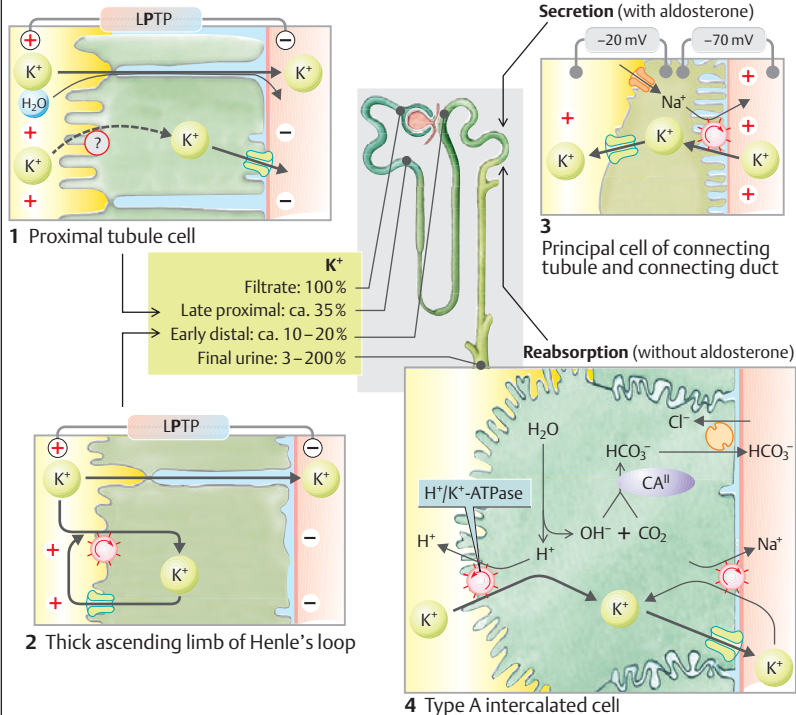
**Chronic regulation** of  $K^+$  homeostasis is mainly achieved by the **kidney** ( $\rightarrow$  B).  $K^+$  is subject to free glomerular filtration, and most of the filtered  $K^+$  is normally reabsorbed (net *reabsorption*). The excreted amount can, in some cases, exceed the filtered amount (net *secretion*, see below). About 65% of the filtered  $K^+$  is reabsorbed before reaching the end of the *proximal tubule*, regardless of the  $K^+$  supply. This is comparable to the percentage of  $Na^+$  and  $H_2O$  reabsorbed ( $\rightarrow$  B1 and p. 157, column 2). This type of  $K^+$  transport is mainly paracellular and therefore passive. Solvent drag ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24) and the lumen-positive trans-epithelial potential, **LPTP** ( $\rightarrow$  B1 and p. 162), in the mid and late proximal segments of the tubule provide the driving forces for it. In the *loop of Henle*, another 15% of the filtered  $K^+$  is reabsorbed by trans- and paracellular routes ( $\rightarrow$  B2). The amount of  $K^+$  excreted is determined in the *connecting tubule and collecting duct*. Larger or smaller quantities of  $K^+$  are then either reabsorbed or secreted according to need. In extreme cases, the fractional excretion of  $K^+$  ( $FE_K$ ) can rise to more than 100% in response to a high  $K^+$  intake, or drop to about 3–5% when there is a  $K^+$  deficit ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**Cellular mechanisms of renal  $K^+$  transport.** The connecting tubule and collecting duct contain **principal cells** ( $\rightarrow$  B3) that reabsorb  $Na^+$  and secrete  $K^+$ . Accumulated intracellular  $K^+$  can exit the cell through  *$K^+$  channels* on either side of the cell. The electrochemical  $K^+$  gradient across the membrane in question is decisive for the efflux of  $K^+$ . The luminal membrane of principal cells also contains  *$Na^+$  channels* through which  $Na^+$  enters the cell ( $\rightarrow$  p. 162). This depolarizes the luminal membrane, which reaches a potential of about  $-20$  mV, while the basolateral membrane maintains its normal potential of ca.  $-70$  mV ( $\rightarrow$  B3). The driving force for  $K^+$  efflux ( $E_m - E_K$ ,  $\rightarrow$  p. 32) is therefore higher on the luminal side than on the opposite side. Hence,  $K^+$  preferentially exits the cell toward the lumen (*secretion*). This is mainly why  $K^+$  secretion is coupled with  $Na^+$  reabsorption, i.e., the more  $Na^+$  reabsorbed by the principle cell, the more  $K^+$  secreted.  $\blacktriangleright$

**A. Regulation of extracellular  $K^+$  concentration**



**B. Resorption and secretion of  $K^+$  in the kidney**



Another apparent reason is that the reabsorption-related increase in intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration decreases the driving force for the  $3\text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange at the basolateral cell membrane, resulting in a rise in the **cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$**  concentration. This rise acts as a signal for more frequent opening of luminal  $\text{K}^+$  channels.

Type A **intercalated cells** ( $\rightarrow$  B4) can active reabsorb  $\text{K}^+$  in addition to secreting  $\text{H}^+$  ions. Like the parietal cells of the stomach, their luminal membrane contains a  $\text{H}^+/\text{K}^+-\text{ATPase}$  for this purpose.

**Factors that affect  $\text{K}^+$  excretion** ( $\rightarrow$  C):

1. An **increased  $\text{K}^+$  intake** raises the intracellular and plasma  $\text{K}^+$  concentrations, which thereby increases the chemical driving force for  $\text{K}^+$  secretion.

2. **Blood pH**: The intracellular  $\text{K}^+$  conc. in renal cells *rises in alkalosis* and *falls in acute acidosis*. This leads to a simultaneous fall in  $\text{K}^+$  excretion, which again rises in chronic acidosis. The reasons for this are that (a) acidosis-related inhibition of  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+-\text{ATPase}$  reduces proximal  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption, resulting in increased distal urinary flow (see no. 3), and (b) the resulting hyperkalemia stimulates aldosterone secretion (see no. 4).

3. If there is **increased urinary flow** in the connecting tubule and collecting duct (e.g., due to a high  $\text{Na}^+$  intake, osmotic diuresis, or other factors that inhibit  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption upstream), larger quantities of  $\text{K}^+$  will be excreted. This explains the *potassium-losing effect of certain diuretics* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 173). The reason for this is, presumably, that  $\text{K}^+$  secretion is limited at a certain luminal  $\text{K}^+$  concentration. Hence, the larger the volume/time, the more  $\text{K}^+$  taken away over time.

4. **Aldosterone** leads to retention of  $\text{Na}^+$ , an increase in extracellular volume ( $\rightarrow$  p. 184), a moderate increase in  $\text{H}^+$  secretion (cellular pH rises), and *increased  $\text{K}^+$  excretion*. It also increases the number of  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+-\text{ATPase}$  molecules in the target cells and leads to a chronic increase in mitochondrial density in  $\text{K}^+$  adaptation, for example (see below).

**Cellular mechanisms of aldosterone effects.** The increase in  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption is achieved by increased production of transport proteins, called aldosterone-induced proteins (AIPs). This is a genome-mediated effect that begins approx. 30 min to 1 hour after al-

dosterone administration or secretion. The maximum effects are observed after several hours. Aldosterone increases  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption, thereby depolarizing the luminal cell membrane ( $\rightarrow$  B3). Consequently, it increases the driving force for  $\text{K}^+$  secretion and increases  $\text{K}^+$  conductance by increasing the pH of the cell. Both effects lead to increased  $\text{K}^+$  secretion. Aldosterone also has a very rapid (few seconds to minutes) non-genomic effect on the cell membrane, the physiological significance of which has yet to be explained.

The capacity of the  $\text{K}^+$  excretory mechanism increases in response to long-term increases in the  $\text{K}^+$  supply ( **$\text{K}^+$  adaptation**). Even when renal function is impaired, this largely maintains the  $\text{K}^+$  balance in the remaining, intact parts of the tubular apparatus. The colon can then take over more than  $1/3$  of the  $\text{K}^+$  excretion.

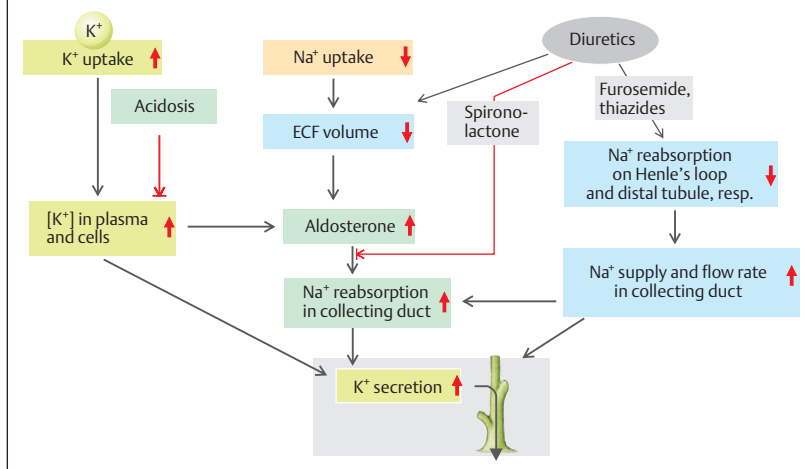
**Mineralocorticosteroids.** Aldosterone is the main mineralocorticoid hormone synthesized and secreted by the *zona glomerulosa of the adrenal cortex* ( $\rightarrow$  D and p. 294ff.). As with other steroid hormones, aldosterone is not stored, but is synthesized as needed. The principal function of aldosterone is to regulate  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  transport in the kidney, gut, and other organs ( $\rightarrow$  D). **Aldosterone secretion** increases in response to (a) drops in blood volume and blood pressure (mediated by angiotensin II;  $\rightarrow$  p. 184) and (b) hyperkalemia ( $\rightarrow$  D). Aldosterone synthesis is inhibited by atriopeptin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 171 A4).

Normal **cortisol** concentrations are *not* effective at the aldosterone receptor only because cortisol is converted to cortisone by an  $11\beta$ -hydroxysteroid oxidoreductase in aldosterone's target cells.

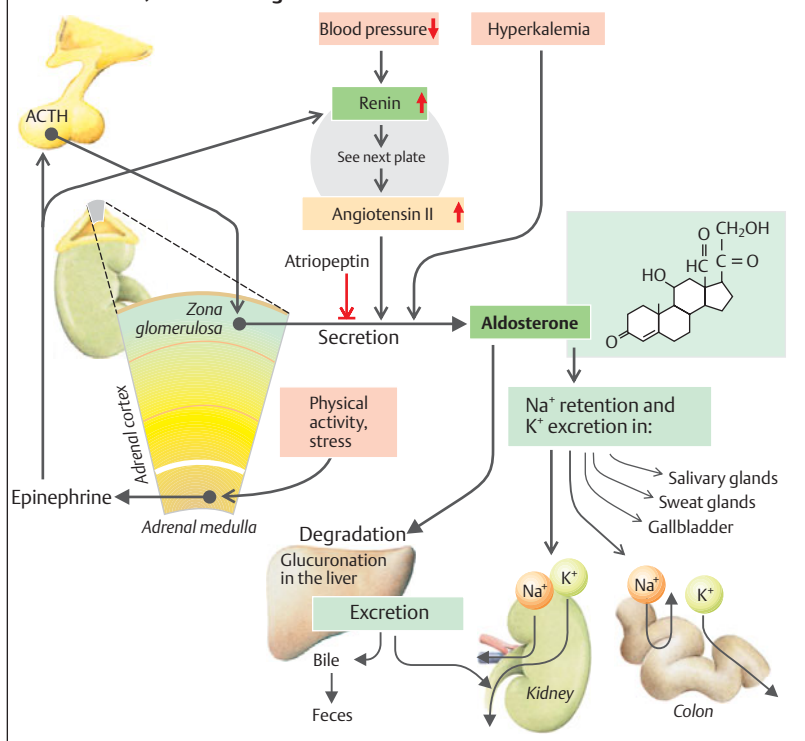
**Hyperaldosteronism** can be either *primary* (aldosterone-secreting tumors of adrenal cortex, as observed in *Conn's syndrome*) or *secondary* (in volume depletion,  $\rightarrow$  p. 184).  *$\text{Na}^+$  retention* resulting in high ECF volumes and *hypertension* as well as a simultaneous  *$\text{K}^+$  losses* and *hypokalemic alkalosis* are the consequences. When more than about 90% of the adrenal cortex is destroyed, e.g. by autoimmune adrenalitis, metastatic cancer or tuberculosis, primary chronic **adrenocortical insufficiency** develops (*Addison's disease*). The *aldosterone deficit* leads to a sharp increase in  $\text{Na}^+$  excretion, resulting in hypovolemia, hypotension and  $\text{K}^+$  retention (hyperkalemia). As glucocorticoid deficiency also develops, complications can be life-threatening, especially under severe stress (infections, trauma). If only one gland is destroyed, *ACTH* causes hypertrophy of the other ( $\rightarrow$  p. 297 A).



**A. Factors that affect K<sup>+</sup> secretion and excretion**



**D. Secretion, effect and degradation of aldosterone**





## Tubuloglomerular Feedback, Renin–Angiotensin System

The **juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA)** consists of (a) juxtaglomerular cells of the *afferent arteriole* (including renin-containing and sympathetically innervated granulated cells) and *efferent arteriole*, (b) *macula densa cells* of the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle and (c) juxtaglomerular mesangial cells (*polkissen*, → A) of a given nephron (→ A).

**JGA functions:** (1) local transmission of tubuloglomerular feedback (TGF) at its own nephron via angiotensin II (ATII) and (2) systemic production of angiotensin II as part of the renin–angiotensin system (RAS).

**Tubuloglomerular feedback (TGF).** Since the daily GFR is 10 times larger than the total ECF volume (→ p. 168), the excretion of salt and water must be precisely adjusted according to uptake. **Acute changes in the GFR** of the individual nephron (iGFR) and the amount of NaCl filtered per unit time can occur for several reasons. An excessive iGFR is associated with the risk that the distal mechanisms for NaCl reabsorption will be overloaded and that too much NaCl and H<sub>2</sub>O will be lost in the urine. A too low iGFR means that too much NaCl and H<sub>2</sub>O will be retained. The extent of NaCl and H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption in the proximal tubule determines how quickly the tubular urine will flow through the loop of Henle. When less is absorbed upstream, the urine flows more quickly through the thick ascending limb of the loop, resulting in a lower extent of urine dilution (→ p. 162) and a higher NaCl concentration at the macula densa, [NaCl]<sub>MD</sub>. If the [NaCl]<sub>MD</sub> becomes too high, the afferent arteriole will constrict to curb the GFR of the affected nephron within 10 s or vice versa (*negative feedback*). It is unclear how the [NaCl]<sub>MD</sub> results in the signal to constrict, but type 1 A angiotensin II (AT<sub>1A</sub>) receptors play a key role.

If, however, the [NaCl]<sub>MD</sub> changes due to **chronic shifts in total body NaCl** and an associated change in ECF volume, rigid coupling of the iGFR with the [NaCl]<sub>MD</sub> through TGF would be fatal. Since long-term increases in the ECF volume reduce proximal NaCl reabsorption, the [NaCl]<sub>MD</sub> would increase, resulting in a decrease in the GFR and a further increase in the ECF volume. The reverse occurs in ECF volume deficit. To prevent these effects, the [NaCl]<sub>MD</sub>/iGFR response curve is shifted in the appropriate direction by certain substances. Nitric oxide (NO) shifts the curve when there is an ECF excess (increased iGFR at same [NaCl]<sub>MD</sub>), and (only locally effective) angiotensin II shifts it in the other direction when there is an ECF deficit.

**Renin–angiotensin system (RAS).** If the mean renal blood pressure acutely drops below 90 mmHg or so, renal baroreceptors will trigger the release of **renin**, thereby increasing the systemic plasma renin conc. Renin is a peptidase that catalyzes the cleavage of *angiotensin I* from the renin substrate *angiotensinogen* (released from the liver). Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) produced in the lung, etc. cleaves two amino acids from angiotensin I to produce **angiotensin II** approx. 30–60 minutes after the drop in blood pressure (→ B).

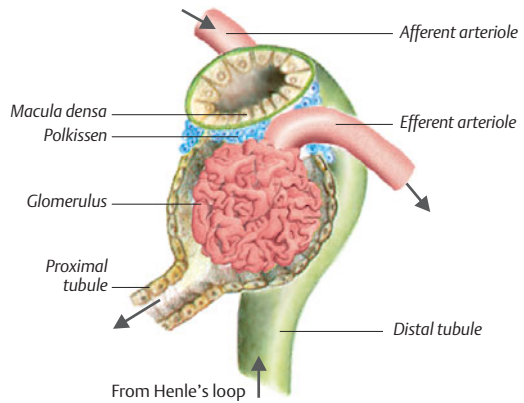
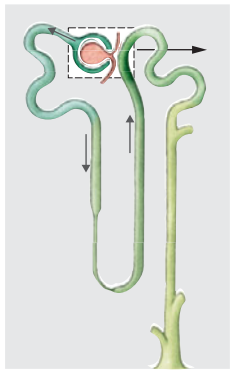
**Control of the RAS (→ B).** The blood pressure *threshold* for renin release is raised by  $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors, and *basal renin secretion* is increased by  $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors. *Angiotensin II* and *aldosterone* are the most important effectors of the RAS. Angiotensin II stimulates the release of aldosterone by adrenal cortex (see below). Both hormones directly (fast action) or indirectly (delayed action) lead to a renewed increase in arterial blood pressure (→ B), and renin release therefore decreases to normal levels. Moreover, both hormones *inhibit renin release* (negative feedback).

If the mean blood pressure is decreased in only one kidney (e.g., due to stenosis of the affected renal artery), the affected kidney will also start to release more renin which, in this case, will lead to **renal hypertension** in the rest of the circulation.

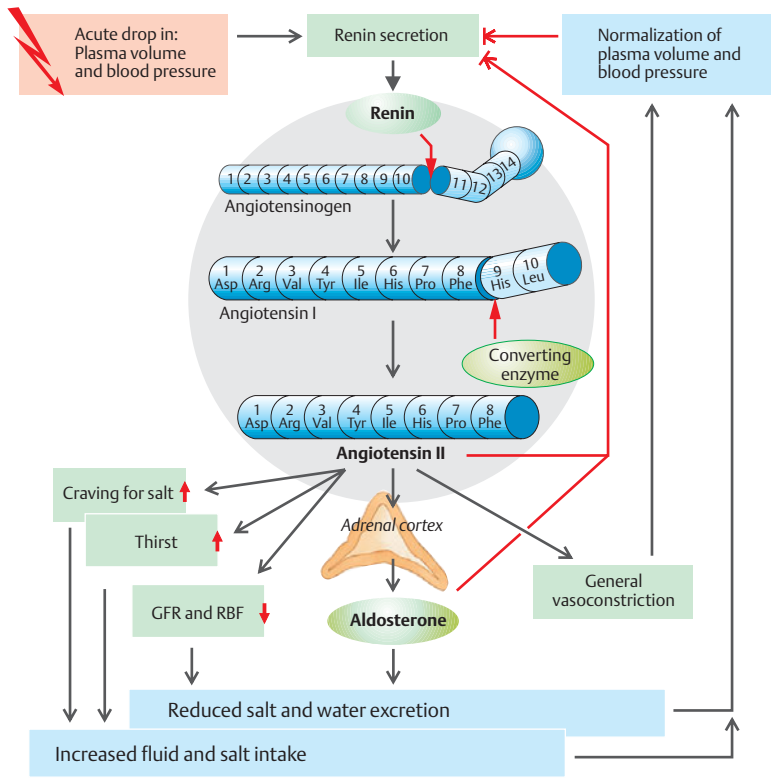
**Angiotensin II effects:** Beside altering the structure of the myocardium and blood vessels (mainly via AT<sub>2</sub> receptors), angiotensin II has the following fast or delayed effects mediated by AT<sub>1</sub> receptors (→ A).

- ◆ **Vessels:** Angiotensin II has potent vasoconstrictive and hypertensive action, which (via endothelin) takes effect in the arterioles (fast action).
- ◆ **CNS:** Angiotensin II takes effect in the hypothalamus, resulting in vasoconstriction through the circulatory “center” (rapid action). It also increases ADH secretion in the hypothalamus, which stimulates thirst and a craving for salt (delayed action).
- ◆ **Kidney:** Angiotensin II plays a major role in regulating renal circulation and GFR by constricting of the afferent and/or efferent arteriole (delayed action; cf. autoregulation, → p. 150). It directly stimulates Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption in the proximal tubule (delayed action).
- ◆ **Adrenal gland:** Angiotensin II stimulates aldosterone synthesis in the adrenal cortex (delayed action; → p. 182) and leads to the release of epinephrine in the adrenal medulla (fast action).

**A. Juxtaglomerular apparatus**



**B. Renin-Angiotensin-System**



## Overview

Blood is pumped from the left ventricle of the heart to capillaries in the periphery via the arterial vessels of the *systemic* (or greater) *circulation* and returns via the veins to the right heart. It is then expelled from the right ventricle to the lungs via the *pulmonary* (or lesser) *circulation* and returns to the left heart (→ **A**).

The total **Blood volume** is roughly 4–5 L ( $\approx 7\%$  of the fat-free body mass; → table on p. 88). Around 80% of the blood circulates through the veins, right heart and pulmonary vessels, which are jointly referred to as the *low pressure system* (→ **A**, left). These highly distensible *capacitance vessels* function as a *blood reservoir* in which blood is stored and released as needed via venous vasoconstriction (→ e.g., p. 218). When the blood volume increases—due, for example, to a blood transfusion—over 99% of the transfused volume remains in the low-pressure system (*high capacitance*), while only  $< 1\%$  circulates in the arterial *high-pressure system* (*low capacitance*). Conversely, a decrease will be reflected almost entirely by a decrease in the blood stores in the low-pressure system. **Central venous pressure** (measured in or near to the right atrium; normally 4–12 cm H<sub>2</sub>O) is therefore a good indicator of blood volume (and ECF volume) in individuals with a normally functioning heart and lungs.

**Cardiac output (CO).** The cardiac output is calculated as heart rate (HR) times stroke volume (SV). Under normal resting conditions, the CO is approx.  $70 \text{ [min}^{-1}] \times 0.08 \text{ [L]} = 5.6 \text{ L/min}$  or, more precisely, a mean 3.4 L/min per m<sup>2</sup> body surface area. An increase in HR (up to about 180 min<sup>-1</sup>) and/or SV can increase the CO to 15–20 L/min.

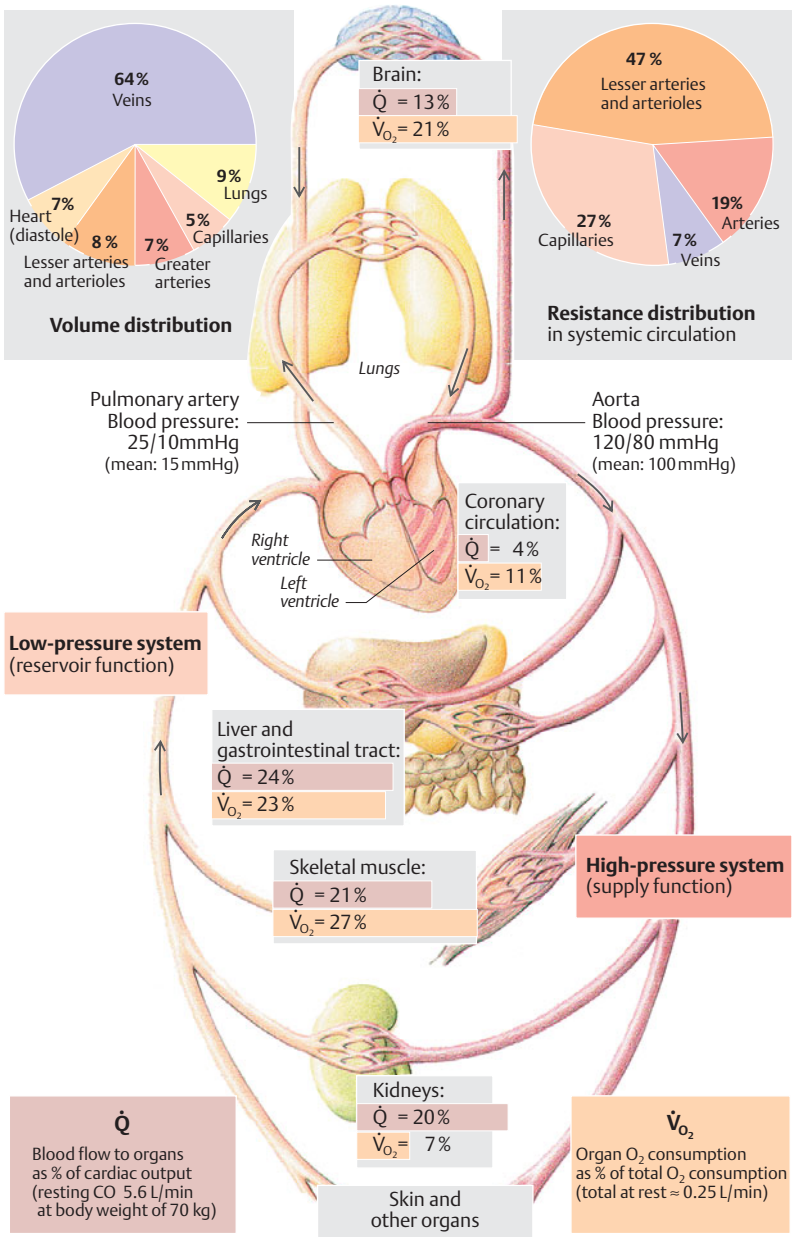
The **distribution of blood** to the organs arranged in *parallel* in the **systemic circulation** (→ **A**,  $\dot{Q}$  values) is determined by their *functional priority* (vital organs) and by the *current needs* of the body (see also p. 213 **A**). Maintaining adequate cerebral perfusion (approx. 13% of the resting CO) is the top priority, not only because the *brain* is a major vital organ, but also because it is very susceptible to

hypoxic damage (→ p. 130). *Myocardial* perfusion via coronary arteries (approx. 4% of the CO at rest) must also be maintained, because any disruption of cardiac pumping function will endanger the entire circulation. About 20 to 25% of the CO is distributed to the *kidneys*. This fraction is very large relative to the kidney weight (only 0.5% of body mass). Renal blood flow is primarily used to maintain renal *excretory and control functions*. Thus, renal blood flow may be reduced transiently in favor of cardiac and cerebral perfusion, e.g., to ward off impending shock (→ p. 218). During strenuous physical *exercise*, the CO increases and is allotted mainly to the *skeletal muscle*. During digestion, the *gastrointestinal tract* also receives a relatively high fraction of the CO. Naturally, both of these organ groups cannot receive the maximum blood supply at the same time (→ p. 75 **A**). Blood flow to the *skin* (approx. 10% of the resting CO) mainly serves the purpose of *heat disposal* (→ p. 222ff.). The cutaneous blood flow rises in response to increased heat production (physical work) and/or high external temperatures and decreases (*pallor*) in favor of vital organs in certain situations (e.g., shock; → p. 218).

The total CO flows through the **pulmonary circulation** as it and the systemic circulation are arranged in series (→ **A**). Oxygen-depleted (venous) blood is carried via the pulmonary arteries to the lungs, where it is *oxygenated* or “*arterialized*.” A relatively small quantity of additional oxygenated blood from the systemic circulation reaches the lung tissue via the bronchial arteries. All blood in the pulmonary circulation drains via the pulmonary veins.

**Peripheral resistance.** Flow resistance in the pulmonary circulation is only about 10% of the *total peripheral resistance (TPR)* in the systemic circulation. Consequently, the mean pressure in the right ventricle (approx. 15 mmHg = 2 kPa) is considerably lower than in the left ventricle (100 mmHg = 13.3 kPa). Since the resistance in the lesser arteries and arterioles amounts to nearly 50% of TPR (→ **A**, top right), they are called *resistance vessels*.

## A. Cardiovascular system



## Blood Vessels and Blood Flow

In the systemic circulation, blood is ejected from the left ventricle to the aorta and returns to the right atrium via the venae cavae ( $\rightarrow$  A). As a result, the **mean blood pressure** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 206) drops from around 100 mmHg in the aorta to 2–4 mmHg in the venae cavae ( $\rightarrow$  A2), resulting in a pressure difference ( $\Delta P$ ) of about 97 mmHg (pulmonary circulation;  $\rightarrow$  p. 122). According to **Ohm's Law**,

$$\Delta P = \dot{Q} \cdot R \text{ (mmHg)} \quad [8.1]$$

where  $\dot{Q}$  is the blood flow ( $L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ) and  $R$  is the flow resistance ( $\text{mmHg} \cdot \text{min} \cdot L^{-1}$ ). Equation 8.1 can be used to calculate blood flow in a given organ ( $R$  = organ resistance) as well as in the entire cardiovascular system, where  $\dot{Q}$  is the cardiac output (CO;  $\rightarrow$  p. 186) and  $R$  is the total peripheral flow resistance (TPR). The TPR at rest is about  $18 \text{ mmHg} \cdot \text{min} \cdot L^{-1}$ .

The **aorta** and **greater arteries** distribute the blood to the periphery. In doing so, they act as a **hydraulic filter** because (due to their high compliance,  $\Delta V/\Delta P_{\text{tm}}$ ) they convert the intermittent flow generated by the heart to a nearly steady flow through the capillaries. The high systolic pressures generated during the ejection phase cause the walls of these blood vessels to stretch, and part of the ejected blood is "stored" in the dilated lumen (*windkessel*). Elastic recoil of the vessel walls after aortic valve closure maintains blood flow during diastole. Arterial vessel compliance decreases with age.

**Flow velocity** ( $\dot{V}$ ) and **flow rate** ( $\dot{Q}$ ) of the blood. Assuming an aortic cross-sectional area (CSA) of  $5.3 \text{ cm}^2$  and a total CSA of  $20 \text{ cm}^2$  of all downstream arteries ( $\rightarrow$  A5), the **mean  $\dot{V}$**  (during systole and diastole) at rest can be calculated from a resting CO of  $5.6 \text{ L/min}$ : It equals  $18 \text{ cm/s}$  in the aorta and  $5 \text{ cm/s}$  in the arteries ( $\rightarrow$  A3). As the aorta receives blood only during the ejection phase ( $\rightarrow$  p. 90), the maximum resting values for  $\dot{V}$  and  $\dot{Q}$  in the aortic root are much higher during this phase ( $\dot{V} = 95 \text{ cm/s}$ ,  $\dot{Q} = 500 \text{ mL/s}$ ).

In the **Hagen-Poiseuille equation**,

$$R = 8 \cdot l \cdot \eta / (\pi \cdot r^4) \quad [8.2]$$

the flow resistance ( $R$ ) in a tube of known length ( $l$ ) is dependent on the viscosity ( $\eta$ ) of the fluid in the tube ( $\rightarrow$  p. 92) and the fourth

power of the inner radius of the tube ( $r^4$ ). Decreasing the radius by only about 16% will therefore suffice to double the resistance.

The **lesser arteries** and **arterioles** account for nearly 50% of the TPR (*resistance vessels*;  $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 187 A) since their small radii have a much stronger effect on total TPR ( $R \sim 1/r^4$ ) than their large total CSA ( $R \sim r^2$ ). Thus, the blood pressure in these vessels drops significantly. Any change in the radius of the small arteries or arterioles therefore has a radical effect on the TPR ( $\rightarrow$  p. 212ff.). Their width and that of the **precapillary sphincter** determines the amount of blood distributed to the capillary beds (exchange area).

Although the **capillaries** have even smaller radii (and thus much higher individual resistances than the arterioles), their total contribution to the TPR is only about 27% because their total CSA is so large ( $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 187 A). The *exchange of fluid and solutes* takes place across the walls of capillaries and **postcapillary venules**. Both vessel types are particularly suitable for the task because (a) their  $\dot{V}$  is very small ( $0.02\text{--}0.1 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  A3) (due to the large total CSA), (b) their total surface area is very large (approx.  $1000 \text{ m}^2$ ), (3) and their walls can be very thin as their inner radius ( $4.5 \mu\text{m}$ ) is extremely small (*Laplace's law*, see below).

**Transmural pressure**  $P_{\text{tm}}$  [ $\text{N/m}^2$ ], that is, the pressure difference across the wall of a hollow organ (= internal pressure minus external pressure), causes the wall to stretch. Its materials must therefore be able to withstand this stretch. The resulting tangential *mural tension*  $T$  [ $\text{N/m}$ ] is a function of the inner radius  $r$  [ $\text{m}$ ] of the organ. According to **Laplace's law** for cylindrical (or spherical) hollow bodies,

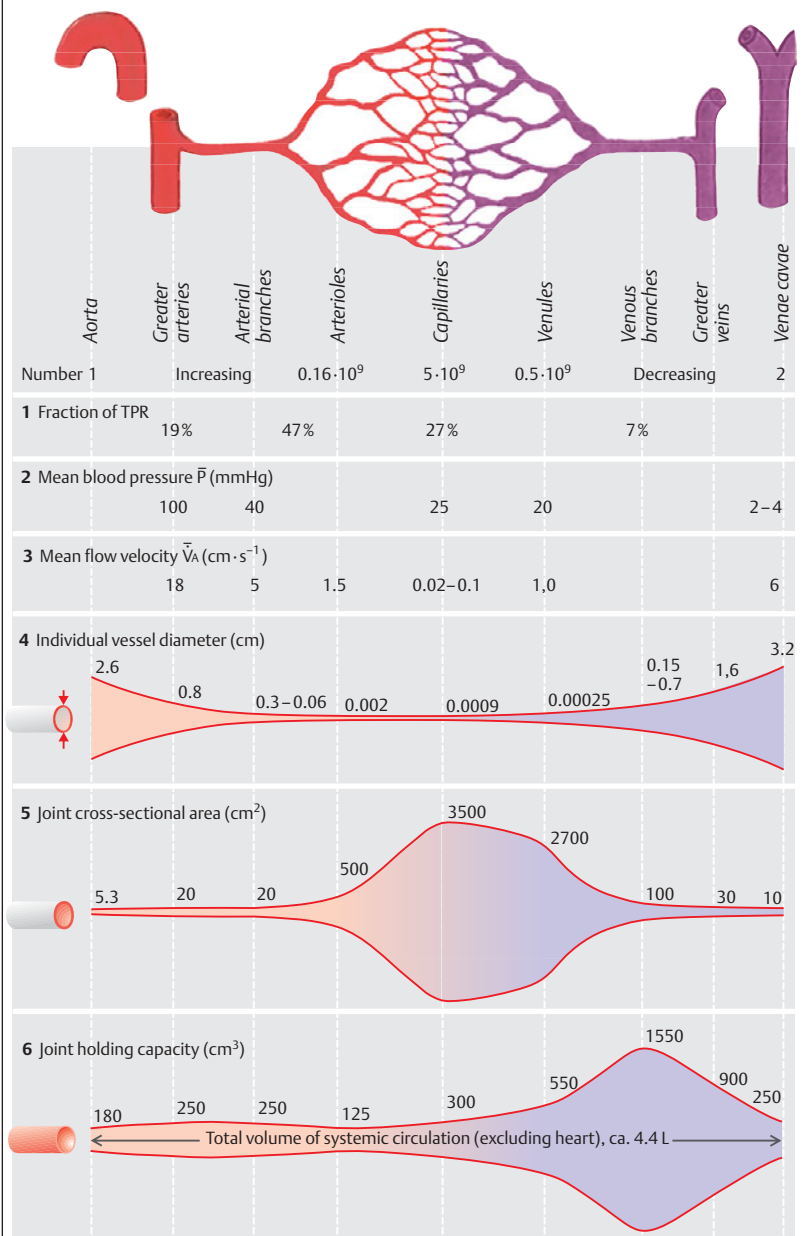
$$P_{\text{tm}} = T/r \text{ (or } P_{\text{tm}} = 2T/r, \text{ resp.)} \quad [8.3a/b]$$

Here,  $T$  is the total mural tension, regardless how thick the wall is. A thick wall can naturally withstand a given  $P_{\text{tm}}$  more easily than a thin one. In order to determine the **tension exerted per unit CSA of the wall** (i.e., the stress requirements of the wall material in  $\text{N/m}^2$ ), the thickness of the wall ( $w$ ) must be considered. Equation 8.3 a/b is therefore transformed to

$$P_{\text{tm}} = T \cdot w/r \text{ (or } P_{\text{tm}} = 2T \cdot w/r, \text{ resp.)} \quad [8.4a/b]$$

The blood collects in the **veins**, which can accommodate large volumes of fluid ( $\rightarrow$  A6). These *capacitance vessels* serve as a *blood reservoir* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 186).

**A. Characteristics of the vessel segments**



## Cardiac Cycle

The resting heart rate is 60–80 beats per minute. A **cardiac cycle** ( $\rightarrow$  A) therefore takes roughly 1 s. It can be divided into four distinct phases: (I) contraction phase and (II) ejection phase, both occurring in *systole*; (III) relaxation phase and filling phase (IV), both occurring in *diastole*. At the end of phase IV, the atria contract (phase IVc). Electrical excitation of the atria and ventricles precedes their contraction.

The **cardiac valves** determine the direction of blood flow within the heart, e.g., from the atria to the ventricles (phase IV) or from the ventricles to the aorta or pulmonary artery (phase II). All cardiac valves are closed during phases I and III ( $\rightarrow$  A, top). Opening and closing of the valves is controlled by the pressures exerted on the two sides of the valves.

**Cardiac cycle.** Near the end of ventricular diastole, the sinoatrial (SA) node emits an **electrical impulse**, marking to the beginning of the P wave of the ECG (phase IVc,  $\rightarrow$  A1 and p.196ff.). This results in **atrial contraction** ( $\rightarrow$  A4) and is followed by **ventricular excitation** (QRS complex of the ECG). The ventricular pressure then starts to rise ( $\rightarrow$  A2, blue line) until it exceeds the atrial pressure, causing the atrioventricular valves (mitral and tricuspid valves) to close. This marks the **end of diastole**. The mean **end-diastolic volume (EDV)** in the ventricle is now about 120 mL ( $\rightarrow$  A4) or, more precisely, 70 mL/m<sup>2</sup> body surface area.

The **isovolumetric contraction** phase now begins (phase I, ca. 50 ms). With all valves are closed, the ventricles now contract, producing the **first heart sound** ( $\rightarrow$  A6), and the ventricular pressure increases rapidly. The slope of this ascending pressure curve indicates the maximum rate of pressure developed (**maximum dp/dt**). The semilunar valves (aortic and pulmonary valves) now open because the pressure in the left ventricle ( $\rightarrow$  A2, blue line) exceeds that in the aorta (black broken curve) at about 80 mmHg, and the pressure in the right ventricle exceeds that in the pulmonary artery at about 10 mmHg.

The **ejection** phase (now begins phase II; ca. 210 ms at rest). During this period, the pressure in the left ventricle and aorta reaches a maximum of ca. 120 mmHg (systolic pressure). In the early phase of ejection (IIa or **rapid ejec-**

**tion phase**), a large portion of the stroke volume (SV) is rapidly expelled ( $\rightarrow$  A4) and the blood flow rate reaches a maximum ( $\rightarrow$  A5). Myocardial excitation subsequently decreases (T wave of the ECG,  $\rightarrow$  A1) and ventricular pressure decreases (the remaining SV fraction is **slowly ejected**, phase IIb) until it falls below that of the aorta or pulmonary artery, respectively. This leads to closing of the semilunar valves, producing the **second heart sound** ( $\rightarrow$  A6). The mean SV at rest is about 80 mL or, more precisely, 47 mL/m<sup>2</sup> body surface area. The corresponding mean **ejection fraction (SV/EDV)** at rest is about 0.67. The **end-systolic volume (ESV)** remaining in the ventricles at this point is about 40 mL ( $\rightarrow$  A4).

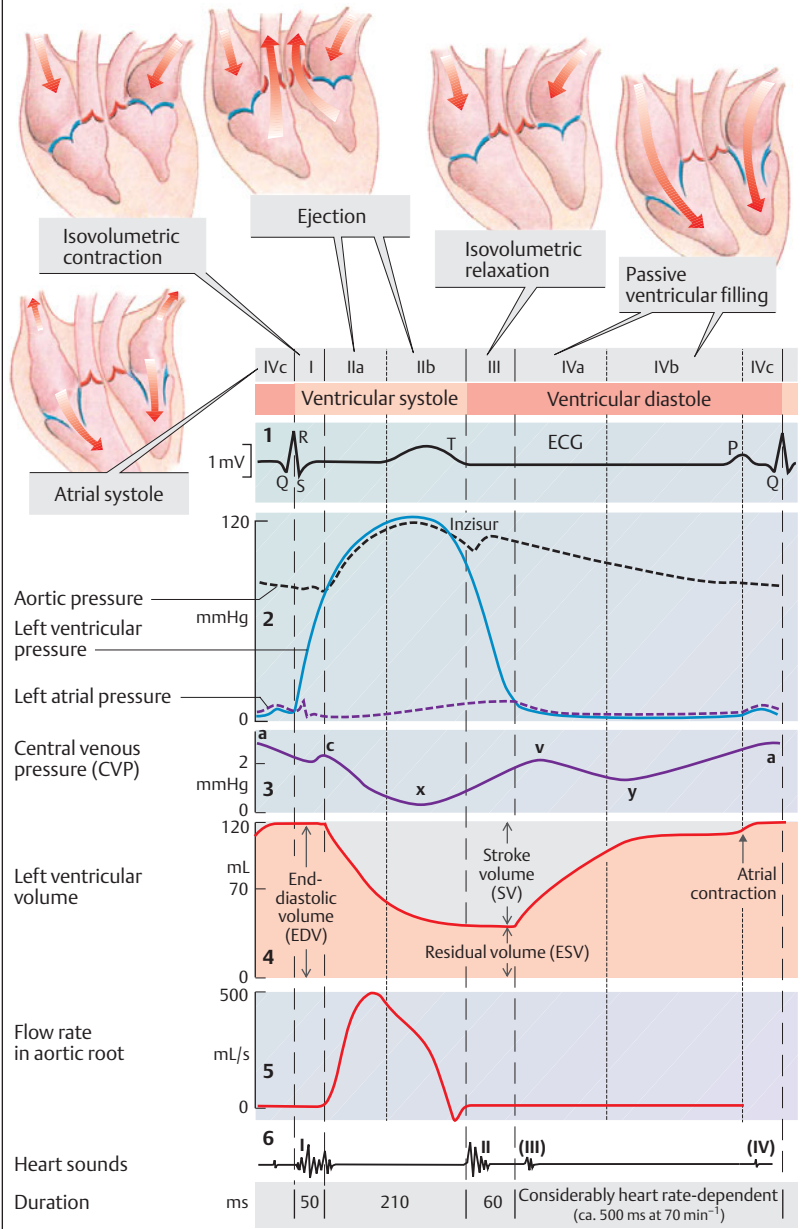
The first phase of ventricular diastole or **isovolumetric relaxation** now begins (phase III; ca. 60 ms). The atria have meanwhile refilled, mainly due to the suction effect created by the lowering of the valve plane during ejection. As a result, the central venous pressure (CVP) decreases ( $\rightarrow$  A3, falls from c to x). The ventricular pressure now drops rapidly, causing the atrioventricular valves to open again when it falls short of atrial pressure.

The **filling phase** now begins (phase IV; ca. 500 ms at rest). The blood passes rapidly from the atria into the ventricles, resulting in a drop in CVP ( $\rightarrow$  A3, point y). Since the ventricles are 80% full by the first quarter of diastole, this is referred to as **rapid ventricular filling** (phase IVa;  $\rightarrow$  A4). **Ventricular filling slows down** (phase IVb), and the **atrial systole** (phase IVc) and the **awave of CVP** follows ( $\rightarrow$  A2,3). At a normal heart rate, the atrial contraction contributes about 15% to ventricular filling. When the heart rate increases, the duration of the cardiac cycle decreases mainly at the expense of diastole, and the contribution of atrial contraction to ventricular filling increases.

The heart beats produce a **pulse wave** (pressure wave) that travels through the arteries at a specific **pulse wave velocity (PWV)**: the PWV of the aorta is 3–5 m/s, and that of the radial artery is 5–12 m/s. PWV is much higher than the blood flow velocity ( $\dot{V}$ ), which peaks at 1 m/s in the aorta and increases proportionally to (a) decreases in the compliance of aortic and arterial walls and (b) increases in blood pressure.



**A. Action phases of the heart (cardiac cycle)**





## Cardiac Impulse Generation and Conduction

The heart contains muscle cells that generate (*pacemaker system*), conduct (*conduction system*) and respond to electrical impulses (*working myocardium*). Cardiac impulses are generated within the heart (**automaticity**). The frequency and regularity of pacemaking activity are also intrinsic to the heart (**rhythmicity**). Myocardial tissue comprises a *functional* (not truly anatomical) *syncytium* because the cells are connected by *gap junctions* (→ p. 16ff.). This also includes the atrioventricular junction (→ p. 195 A). Thus, an impulse arising in any part of the heart leads to complete contraction of both ventricles and atria or to none at all (**all-or-none response**).

Cardiac contraction is normally stimulated by impulses from the **sinoatrial node** (SA node), which is therefore called the *primary pacemaker*. The impulses are conducted (→ A) through the atria to the *atrioventricular node* (AV node). The *bundle of His* is the beginning of the **specialized conduction system**, including also the left and right (Tawara's) *bundle branches* and the *Purkinje fibers*, which further transmit the impulses to the ventricular myocardium, where they travel from inside to outside and from apex to base of the heart. This electrical activity can be tracked in vivo (→ C) by electrocardiography (→ p. 196ff.).

**Pacemaker potential** (→ B1, top). The cell potential in the SA node is a *pacemaker potential*. These cells do not have a constant resting potential. Instead, they slowly depolarize immediately after each repolarization, the most negative value of which is the *maximum diastolic potential* (MDP, ca. -70 mV). The slow *diastolic depolarization* or *prepotential* (PP) prevails until the *threshold potential* (TP) has again been reached. Thus triggering another action potential (AP).

The pacemaker potential (→ B1, bottom) is subject to various underlying **changes in ion conductance** (g) and **ionic flow** (I) through the plasma membrane (→ p. 32 ff.). Starting at the MDP, a hyperpolarization-triggered increase in non-selective conductance and influx ( $I_f$ , = "funny") of cations into the cells lead to slow depolarization (PP). When the TP is reached,  $g_{Ca}$  increases quickly, and the slope of the

pacemaker potential rises. This upslope is caused by increased influx of  $Ca^{2+}$  ( $I_{Ca}$ ). When the potential rises to the positive range,  $g_K$  increases sharply, resulting in the efflux of  $K^+$  ( $I_K$ ), and the pacemaker cells repolarize to the MDP.

Each action potential in the SA node normally generates one heart beat. The **heart rate** is therefore determined by the rate of impulse generation by the pacemaker. The impulse generation frequency *decreases* (→ B3, broken curves) when (a) the PP slope decreases (→ B3a), (b) the TP becomes less negative (→ B3b), (c) the MDP becomes more negative, resulting in the start of spontaneous depolarization at lower levels (→ B3c), or (d) repolarization after an action potential occurs more slowly (slope flatter).

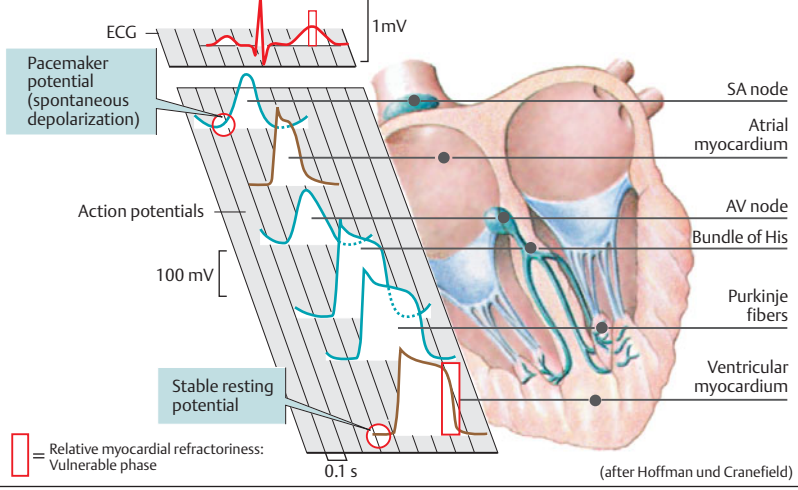
The first three conditions extend the time required to reach the threshold potential.

All components of the conduction system can depolarize spontaneously, but the SA node is the natural or *nomotopic pacemaker* in cardiac excitation (sinus rhythm normally has a rate of 60 to 100  $min^{-1}$ ). The intrinsic rhythms of the other pacemakers are slower than the sinus rhythm (→ C, table) because the slope of their PPs and repolarizations are "flatter" (see above). APs arising in the SA node therefore arrive at subordinate ("lower") levels of the conduction system before spontaneous depolarization has reached the intrinsic TP there. The intrinsic rhythm of the lower components come into play (*ectopic pacemakers*) when (a) their own frequency is enhanced, (b) faster pacemakers are depressed, or (c) the conduction from the SA node is interrupted (→ p. 200). The heart beats at the AV rhythm (40 to 55  $min^{-1}$ ) or even slower (25 to 40  $min^{-1}$ ) when controlled by tertiary (ventricular) pacemakers.

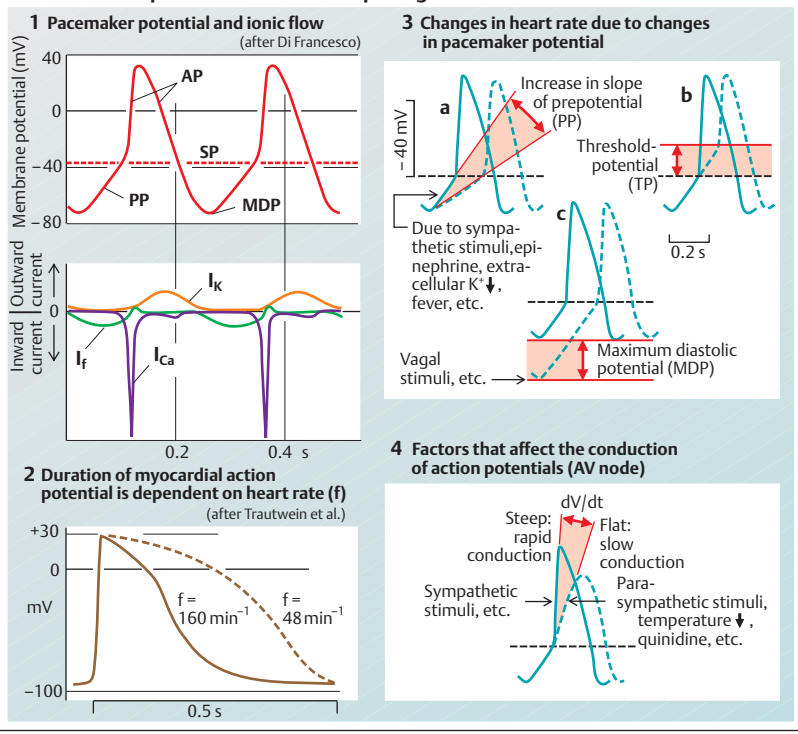
**Overdrive suppression.** The automaticity of lower pacemaker cells (e.g., AV node or Purkinje cells) is suppressed temporarily after they have been driven by a high frequency. This leads to increased  $Na^+$  influx and therefore to increased activity of the  $Na^+K^+$ -ATPase. Because it is electrogenic (→ p. 28), the cells become hyperpolarized and it takes longer to reach threshold than without prior high-frequency overdrive (→ B3c).

The cells of the **working myocardium** contain voltage-gated *fast  $Na^+$  channels* that permit the brief but rapid influx of  $Na^+$  at the beginning of

**A. Cardiac excitation**



**B. Pacemaker potential and rate of impulse generation**



an AP. The slope of their APs therefore rises more sharply than that of a pacemaker potential ( $\rightarrow$  A). A **resting potential** prevails between APs, i.e. spontaneous depolarization normally does not occur in the working myocardium. The long-lasting myocardial AP has a characteristic **plateau** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 59 A). Thus, the first-stimulated parts of the myocardium are still in a refractory state when the AP reaches the last-stimulated parts of the myocardium. This prevents the cyclic re-entry of APs in the myocardium. This holds true, regardless of whether the heart rate is very fast or very slow since the duration of an AP varies according to heart rate ( $\rightarrow$  B2).

**Role of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .** The incoming AP opens *voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels* (associated with *dihydropyridine receptors*) on the sarcolemma of myocardial cells, starting an influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ECF ( $\rightarrow$  p. 63/B3). This produces a local increase in cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  “spark”) which, in turn, triggers the opening of *ligand-gated, ryanodine-sensitive  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels* in the sarcoplasmic reticulum ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  store). The influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the cytosol results in electromechanical coupling ( $\rightarrow$  p. 62) and myocardial contraction. The cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is also determined by active transport of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions back (a) into the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  stores via a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase, called *SERCA*, which is stimulated by *phospholamban*, and (b) to the ECF. This is achieved with the aid of a  *$\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase* and a  *$3\text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange carrier* that is driven by the electrochemical  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient established by  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase.

Although the heart beats autonomously, efferent **cardiac nerves** are mainly responsible for **modulating heart action** according to changing needs. The *autonomic nervous system* (and epinephrine in plasma) can alter the following aspects of heart action: (a) *rate of impulse generation* by the pacemaker and, thus, the heart rate (chronotropism); (b) *velocity of impulse conduction*, especially in the AV node (dromotropism); and (c) *contractility* of the heart, i.e., the force of cardiac muscle contraction at a given initial fiber length (inotropism).

These changes in heart action are induced by **acetylcholine (ACh)**; ( $\rightarrow$  p. 82) released by parasympathetic fibers of the vagus nerve (binds with  $\text{M}_2$  cholinergic receptors on pacemaker cells), by **norepinephrine (NE)** released by sympathetic nerve fibers, and by plasma **epi-**

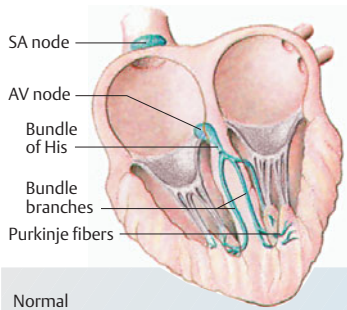
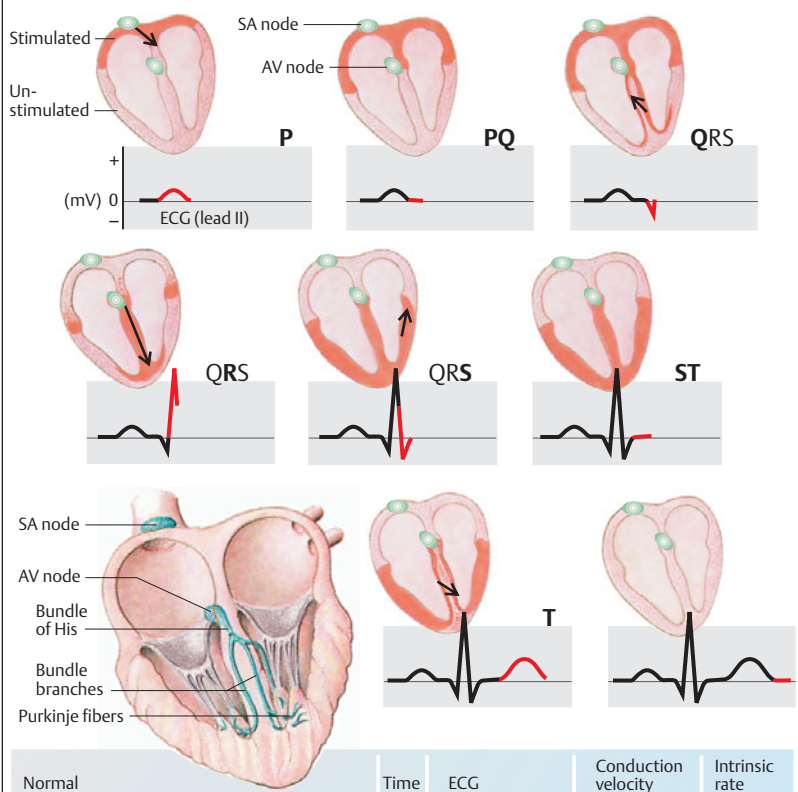
**nephrine (E)**. NE and E bind with  $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 84ff.). The firing frequency of the SA node is increased by NE and E (positive chronotropism) and decreased by ACh (negative chronotropism) because these substances alter the slopes of the PP and the MDP in the SA cells ( $\rightarrow$  B3a and c). Under the influence of ACh, the slope of the PP becomes flatter and the MDP becomes more negative  $g_{\text{K}}$  rises. Inversely, slope and amplitude of PP rises under the influence of E or sympathetic stimuli (higher  $I_{\text{r}}$ ) due to a rise in cation ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) conductance and, under certain conditions, a decrease in the  $g_{\text{K}}$ . Only NE and E have chronotropic effects in the lesser components of the impulse conduction system. This is decisive when the AV node or tertiary pacemakers take over.

ACh (left branch of vagus nerve) decreases the velocity of **impulse conduction in the AV node**, whereas NE and E increase it due to their negative and positive dromotropic effects, respectively. This is mainly achieved through changes in the amplitude and slope of the upstroke of the AP ( $\rightarrow$  B3c and B4),  $g_{\text{K}}$  and  $g_{\text{Ca}}$ .

In positive inotropism, NE and E have a direct effect on the working myocardium. The resulting increase in **contractility** is based on an *increased influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions* from the ECF triggered by  $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors, resulting in an increased cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . This  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx can be inhibited by administering  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel blockers ( *$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  antagonists*). Other factors that increase cardiac contractility are an *increase in AP duration*, resulting in a longer duration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx, and *inhibition of  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$ -ATPase* (e.g., by the cardiac glycosides digitalis and strophanthin). The consequences are: flatter  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient across the cell membrane  $\Rightarrow$  decreased driving force for  $3\text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange carriers  $\Rightarrow$  decreased  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  efflux  $\Rightarrow$  increased cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc.

When the heart rate is low,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx over time is also low (fewer APs per unit time), allowing plenty of time for the efflux of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  between APs. The mean cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. is therefore reduced and contractility is low. Only by this indirect mechanism are parasympathetic neurons able to elicit a negative inotropic effect (*frequency inotropism*). NE and E can exert their positive inotropic effects either indirectly by increasing the high heart or directly via  $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptors of the working myocardium.

**C. Cardiac impulse conduction**



Normal activation sequence	Time (ms)	ECG	Conduction velocity ( $m \cdot s^{-1}$ )	Intrinsic rate ( $min^{-1}$ )
<b>SA node</b> Impulse generation Arrival of impulse in distal parts of atrium	0 50 85	P wave	0.05	60–100
Right atrium Left atrium				
<b>AV node</b> Arrival of impulse Relaying of impulse	50 125	P-Q segment (delayed conduction)	0.05	40–55
<b>His bundle activated</b>	130	QRS complex	1.0–1.5	25–40
<b>End of bundle branches activated</b>	145		1.0–1.5	
<b>Purkinje fibers activated</b>	150		3.0–3.5	
<b>Inner myocardium</b> completely activated	175	QRS complex	1.0 in myocardium	None
Right ventricle Left ventricle	190			
<b>Outer myocardium</b> completely activated	205			
Right ventricle Left ventricle	225			

## Electrocardiogram (ECG)

The ECG records **potential differences** (few mV) caused by cardiac excitation. This provides information on heart position, relative chamber size, heart rhythm, impulse origin/propagation and rhythm/conduction disturbances, extent and location of myocardial ischemia, changes in electrolyte concentrations, and drug effects on the heart. However, it does *not* provide data on cardiac contraction or pumping function.

ECG potential differences arise at the interface between stimulated and non-stimulated myocardium. Totally stimulated or unstimulated myocardial tissue does not generate any visible potentials. The **migration of the excitatory front** through the heart muscle gives rise to numerous potentials that vary in magnitude and direction.

These **vectors** can be depicted as arrows, where the length of the arrow represents the magnitude of the potential and the direction of the arrow indicates the direction of the potential (arrowhead is +). As in a force parallelogram, the **integral vector** (summation vector) is the sum of the numerous individual vectors at that moment ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{A}$ , red arrow).

The magnitude and direction of the integral vector change during the cardiac cycle, producing the typical **vector loop** seen on a **vectorcardiogram**. (In **A**, the maximum or chief vector is depicted by the arrow, called the “electrical axis” of the heart, see below).

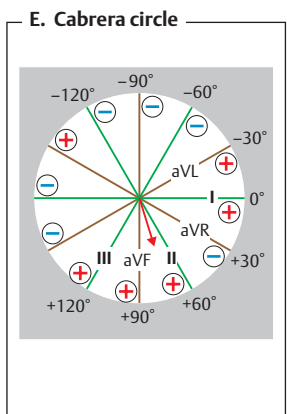
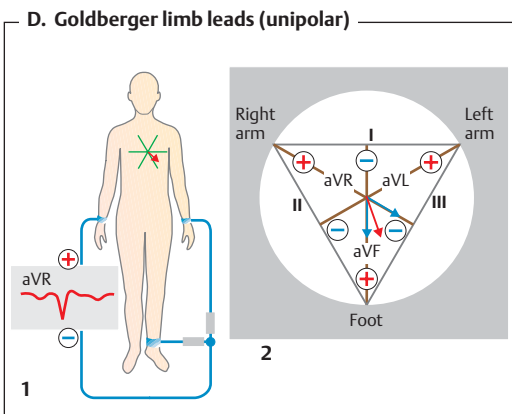
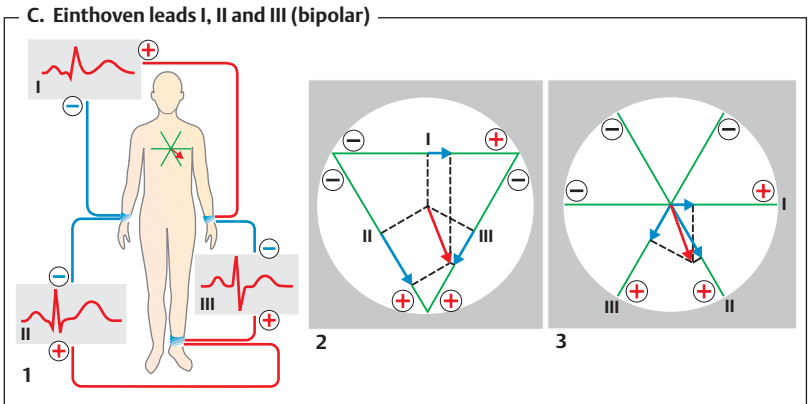
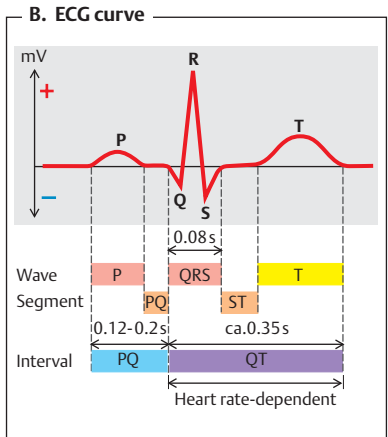
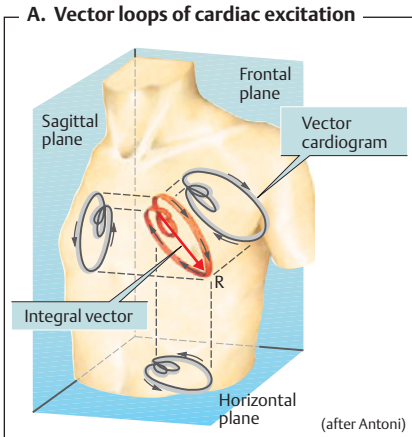
**Limb and chest leads** of the ECG make it possible to visualize the course of the integral vector over time, projected at the plane determined by the leads (scalar ECG). Leads parallel to the integral vector show full deflection (R wave  $\approx 1\text{--}2$  mV), while those perpendicular to it show no deflection. *Einthoven leads I, II, and III* are **bipolar limb leads** positioned in the frontal plane. Lead I records potentials between the left and right arm, lead II those between the right arm and left leg, and lead III those between the left arm and left leg ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{C1}$ ). *Goldberger leads* are **unipolar augmented limb leads** in the frontal plane. One lead (right arm, aVR, left arm aVL, or left leg, aVF;  $\rightarrow \mathbf{D2}$ ) acts as the *different electrode*, while the other two limbs are connected and serve as the *indifferent* (reference) *electrode* ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{D1}$ ). *Wilson leads* ( $V_1\text{--}V_6$ ) are **unipolar chest leads** positioned on

the left side of the thorax in a nearly *horizontal plane* ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{F}$ ). When used in combination with the aforementioned leads in the frontal plane, they provide a **three-dimensional view** of the integral vector. To make recordings with the chest leads (*different electrode*), the three limb leads are connected to form an *indifferent electrode* with high resistances (5 k $\Omega$ ). The chest leads mainly detect potential vectors directed towards the back. These vectors are hardly detectable in the frontal plane. Since the mean QRS vector (see below) is usually directed downwards and towards the left back region, the QRS vectors recorded by leads  $V_1\text{--}V_3$  are usually negative, while those detected by  $V_5$  and  $V_6$  are positive.

*Intraesophageal leads* and additional leads positioned in the region of the *right chest* ( $V_{I3}\text{--}V_{I6}$ ) and *left back* ( $V_{7\text{--}V_9}$ ) are useful in certain cases ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{F2}$ ).

An ECG depicts electrical activity as waves, segments, and intervals ( $\rightarrow \mathbf{B}$  and p. 195 C). By convention, upward deflection of the waves is defined as positive (+), and downward deflection as negative (-). The electrical activity associated with **atrial depolarization** is defined as the **P wave** ( $< 0.3$  mV,  $< 0.1$  s). Repolarization of the atria normally cannot be visualized on the ECG since it tends to be masked by the QRS complex. The **QRS complex** ( $< 0.1$  s) consists of one, two or three components: **Q wave** (mV  $< 1/4$  of R,  $< 0.04$  s), **R wave** and/or **S wave** (R+S  $> 0.6$  mV). The potential of the **mean QRS vector** is the sum of the amplitudes of the Q, R and S waves (taking their positive and negative polarities into account). The voltage of the mean QRS vector is higher (in most leads) than that of the P wave because the muscle mass of the ventricles is much larger than that of the atria. The R wave is defined as the first positive deflection of the QRS complex, which means that R waves from different leads may not be synchronous. The QRS complex represents the *depolarization of the ventricles*, and the **T wave** represents their *repolarization*. Although opposing processes, the T wave usually points in the same direction as the R wave (+ in most leads). This means that depolarization and repolarization do not travel in the same direction ( $\rightarrow$  p. 195 C, QRS and T: vector arrows point in the same direction despite reversed polarity during repolarization). The **PQ** (or PR) **segment**





(complete atrial excitation) and the **ST segment** (complete ventricular excitation) lie approx. on the **isoelectric line** (0 mV). The **PQ** (or **PR**) **interval** (< 0.2 s) is measured from the beginning of the P wave to the beginning of the Q wave (or to the R wave if Q wave is absent) and corresponds to the time required for **atrio-ventricular conduction** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). The **QT interval** is measured from the start of the Q wave to the end of the T wave. It represents the overall time required for depolarization and repolarization of the ventricles and is dependent on the heart rate (0.35 to 0.40 s at a heart rate of  $75 \text{ min}^{-1}$ ).

Figure E illustrates the six frontal leads (Einthoven and Goldberger leads) on the **Cabrera circle**. Synchronous measurement of the amplitude of Q, R and S from two or more leads can be used to determine any integral vector in the frontal plane ( $\rightarrow$  **G**). The direction of the largest mean QRS vector is called the **QRS axis** ( $\rightarrow$  **C3** and **G**, red arrows). If the excitation spreads normally, the QRS axis roughly corresponds to the anatomic longitudinal axis of the heart.

The mean QRS axis ("**electrical axis**") of the heart, which normally lies between +90 degrees to -30 degrees in adults ( $\rightarrow$  **G, H**). **Right type** ( $\alpha = +120^\circ$  to  $+90^\circ$ ) is not unusual in children, but is often a sign of abnormality in adults. Mean QRS axes ranging from +90 degrees to +60 degrees are described as the **vertical type** ( $\rightarrow$  **G1**), and those ranging from +60 degrees to +30 degrees are classified as the **intermediate type** ( $\rightarrow$  **G2**). **Left type** occurs when  $\alpha = +30$  degrees to -30 degrees ( $\rightarrow$  **G3**). **Abnormal deviation**: **Right axis deviation** ( $> +120^\circ$ ) can develop due right ventricular hypertrophy, while **left axis deviation** (more negative than  $-30^\circ$ ) can occur due to left ventricular hypertrophy.

An extensive **myocardial infarction (MI)** can shift the electrical axis of the heart. Marked **Q wave abnormality** ( $\rightarrow$  **I1**) is typical in **transmural myocardial infarction** (involving entire thickness of ventricular wall): Q wave duration  $> 0.04$  s and Q wave amplitude  $> 25\%$  of total amplitude of the QRS complex. These changes appear within 24 hours of MI and are caused by failure of the dead myocardium to conduct electrical impulses. Preponderance of the excitatory vector in the healthy contralateral side of the heart therefore occurs while the affected part of the

myocardium should be depolarizing (first 0.04 s of QRS). The so-called "0.04-sec vector" is therefore said to point away from the infarction. **Anterior MI** is detected as highly negative Q waves (with smaller R waves) mainly in leads V5, V6, I and aVL. Q wave abnormalities can persist for years after MI ( $\rightarrow$  **I2/3**), so they may not necessarily be indicative of an acute infarction. **ST elevation** points to ischemic but not (yet) necrotic parts of the myocardium. This can be observed: (1) in myocardial ischemia (angina pectoris), (2) in the initial phase of transmural MI, (3) in non-transmural MI, and (4) along the margins of a transmural MI that occurred a few hours to a few days prior ( $\rightarrow$  **I4**). The ST segment normalizes within 1 to 2 days of MI, but the **T wave** remains inverted for a couple of weeks ( $\rightarrow$  **I5** and **2**).

## Excitation in Electrolyte Disturbances

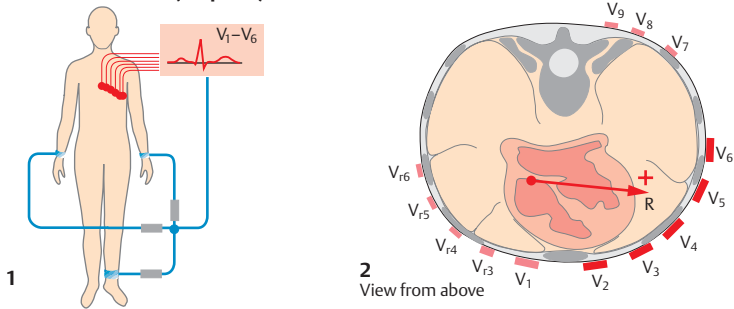
**Hyperkalemia.** *Mild hyperkalemia* causes various changes, like elevation of the MDP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 192) in the SA node. It can sometimes have positive chronotropic effects ( $\rightarrow$  p. 193 B3c). In *severe hyperkalemia*, the more positive MDP leads to the inactivation of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels ( $\rightarrow$  p. 46) and to a reduction in the slope and amplitude of APs in the AV node (negative dromotropic effect;  $\rightarrow$  p. 193 B4). Moreover, the  $\text{K}^+$  conductance ( $g_{\text{K}}$ ) rises, and the PP slope becomes flatter due to a negative chronotropic effect ( $\rightarrow$  p. 193 B3a). Faster myocardial repolarization decreases the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. In extreme cases, the pacemaker is also brought to a standstill (**cardiac paralysis**). **Hypokalemia** (moderate) has positive chronotropic and inotropic effects ( $\rightarrow$  p. 193 B3a), whereas **hypercalcemia** is thought to raise the  $g_{\text{K}}$  and thereby shortens the duration of the myocardial AP.

**ECG.** Changes in serum  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  induce characteristic changes in myocardial excitation.

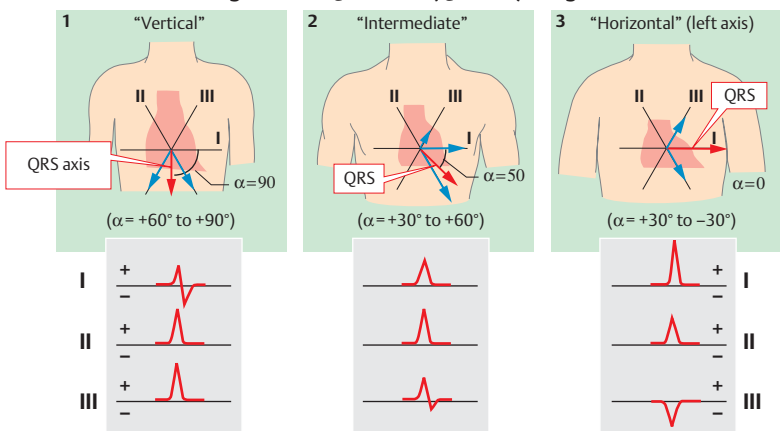
- ◆ **Hyperkalemia** ( $> 6.5 \text{ mmol/L}$ ): tall, peaked T waves and conduction disturbances associated with an increased PQ interval and a widened QRS. Cardiac arrest can occur in extreme cases.
- ◆ **Hypokalemia** ( $< 2.5 \text{ mmol/L}$ ): ST depression, biphasic T wave (first positive, then negative) followed by a positive U wave.
- ◆ **Hypercalcemia** ( $> 2.75 \text{ mmol/L}$  total calcium): shortened QT interval due to a shortened ST segment.
- ◆ **Hypocalcemia** ( $< 2.25 \text{ mmol/L}$  total calcium): prolonged QT interval.



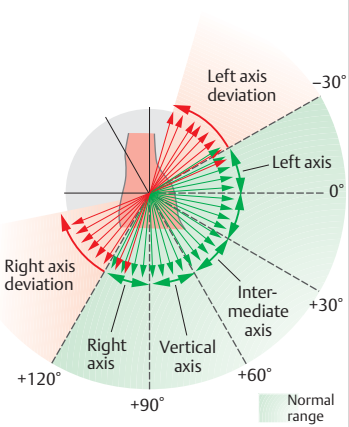
**F. Wilson chest leads (unipolar)**



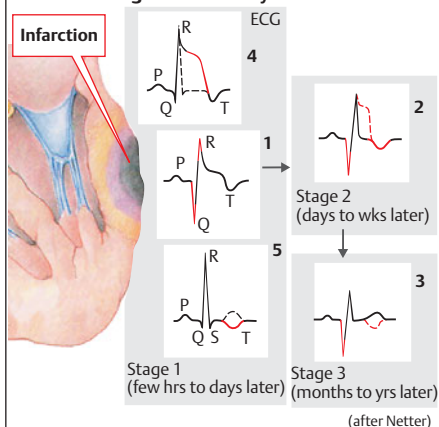
**G. Determination of largest mean QRS vector (QRS axis) using ECG leads I–III**



**H. Electrical axis of the heart**



**I. ECG changes in coronary infarction**





## Cardiac Arrhythmias

Arrhythmias are pathological changes in cardiac *impulse generation or conduction* that can be visualized by ECG. **Disturbances of impulse generation** change the sinus rhythm. **Sinus tachycardia** ( $\rightarrow$  A2): The sinus rhythm rises to  $100 \text{ min}^{-1}$  or higher e.g., due to physical exertion, anxiety, fever (rise of about 10 beats/min for each  $1^\circ\text{C}$ ) or hyperthyroidism. **Sinus bradycardia**: The heart rate falls below  $60 \text{ min}^{-1}$  (e.g., due to hypothyroidism). In both cases the rhythm is regular whereas in *sinus arrhythmias* the rate varies. In adolescents, sinus arrhythmias can be physiological and respiration-dependent (heart rate increases during inspiration and decreases during expiration).

**Ectopic pacemakers.** Foci in the atrium, AV node or ventricles can initiate abnormal *ectopic* (heterotopic) impulses, even when normal (*nomotopic*) stimulus generation by the SA node is taking place ( $\rightarrow$  A). The rapid discharge of impulses from an atrial focus can induce **atrial tachycardia** (serrated baseline instead of normal P waves), which triggers a ventricular response rate of up to  $200 \text{ min}^{-1}$ . Fortunately, only every second or third stimulus is transmitted to the ventricles because part of the impulses arrive at the Purkinje fibers (longest APs) during their refractory period. Thus, Purkinje fibers act as impulse *frequency filters*. Elevated atrial contraction rates of up to  $350 \text{ min}^{-1}$  are defined as **atrial flutter**, and all higher rates are defined as **atrial fibrillation** (up to  $500 \text{ min}^{-1}$ ). Ventricular stimulation is then totally irregular (**absolute arrhythmia**). **Ventricular tachycardia** is a rapid train of impulses originating from a ventricular (ectopic) focus, starting with an extrasystole (ES) ( $\rightarrow$  B3; second ES). The heart therefore fails to fill adequately, and the stroke volume decreases. This can lead to **ventricular fibrillation** (extremely frequent and uncoordinated contractions;  $\rightarrow$  B4). Because of failure of the ventricle to transport blood, ventricular fibrillation can be fatal.

Ventricular fibrillation mainly occurs when an ectopic focus fires during the **relative refractory period** of the previous AP (called the “vulnerable phase” synchronous with T wave on the ECG;  $\rightarrow$  p. 193 A). The APs triggered during this period have *smaller slopes, lower*

*propagation velocities, and shorter durations*. This leads to re-excitation of myocardial areas that have already been stimulated (*re-entry cycles*). Ventricular fibrillation can be caused by electrical accidents and can usually be corrected by timely electrical *defibrillation*.

**Extrasystoles (ES).** The spread of impulses arising from an supraventricular (atrial or nodal) ectopic focus to the ventricles can disturb their sinus rhythm, leading to a *supraventricular arrhythmia*. When **atrial extrasystoles** occur, the P wave on the ECG is distorted while the QRS complex remains normal. **Nodal extrasystoles** lead to retrograde stimulation of the atria, which is why the P wave is negative and is either masked by the QRS complex or appears shortly thereafter ( $\rightarrow$  B1 right). Since the SA node often is discharged by a supraventricular extrasystole, the interval between the R wave of the extrasystole ( $R_{ES}$ ) and the next normal R wave increases by the amount of time needed for the stimulus to travel from the focus to the SA node. This is called the *post-extrasystole pause*. The *RR intervals* are as follows:  $R_{ES}R > RR$  and  $(RR_{ES} + R_{ES}R) < 2RR$  ( $\rightarrow$  B1).

**Ventricular (or infranodal) ES** ( $\rightarrow$  B2, B3) distorts the QRS complex of the ES. If the sinus rate is slow enough, the ES will cause a ventricular contraction between two normal heart beats; this is called an *interpolated* (or *interposed*) ES ( $\rightarrow$  B2). If the sinus rate is high, the next sinus stimulus reaches the ventricles while they are still refractory from the ectopic excitation. Ventricular contraction is therefore blocked until the next sinus stimulus arrives, resulting in a *compensatory pause*, where  $RR_{ES} + R_{ES}R = 2RR$ .

### Disturbances of impulse conduction: AV block.

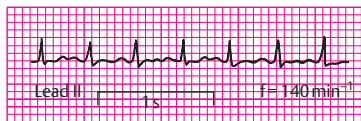
**First-degree AV block:** prolonged but otherwise normal impulse conduction in the AV node (PQ interval  $> 0.2 \text{ sec}$ ); **second-degree AV block:** only every second (2:1 block) or third (3:1 block) impulse is conducted; **Third-degree AV block:** no impulses are conducted; sudden cardiac arrest may occur (*Adam-Stokes attack or syncope*). Ventricular atopic pacemakers then take over (ventricular bradycardia with normal atrial excitation rate), resulting in partial or total disjunction of QRS complexes and P waves ( $\rightarrow$  B5). The heart rate drops to  $40$  to  $55 \text{ min}^{-1}$  when the AV node acts as the pacemaker ( $\rightarrow$  B5), and to a mere  $25$  to  $40 \text{ min}^{-1}$  when tertiary (ventricular) pacemakers take over. Artificial pacemakers are then used.

**Bundle branch block:** disturbance of conduction in a branch of the bundle of His. Severe QRS changes occur because the affected side of the myocardium is activated by the healthy side via abnormal pathways.

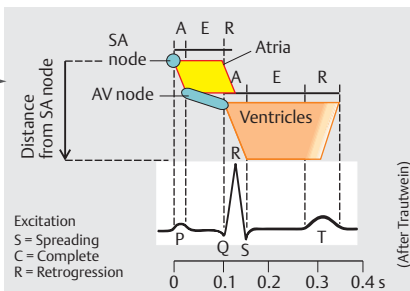
**A. Nodal impulse generation with normal conduction**



1 Normal sinus rhythm



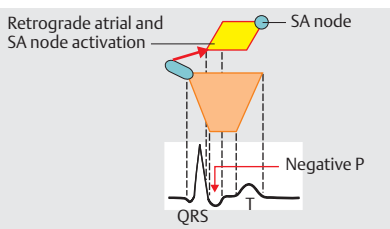
2 Sinus tachycardia



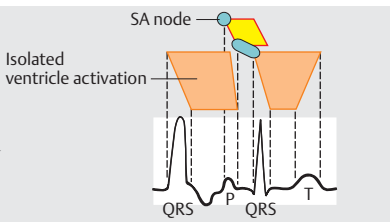
**B. Heterotopic impulse generation (1–5) and disturbances of impulse conduction (5)**



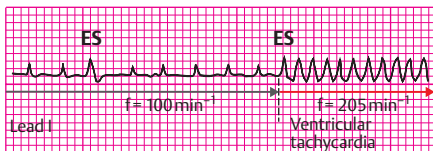
1 Nodal (AV) extrasystole (ES) with post-extrasystolic pause



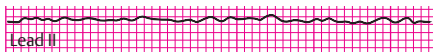
2 Interpolated ventricular extrasystole (ES)



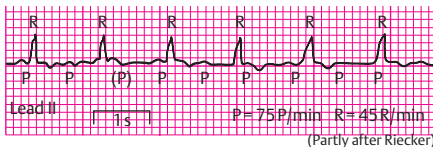
3 Ventricular tachycardia following extrasystole (ES)



4 Ventricular fibrillation



5 Total AV block with ventricular escape rhythm



## Ventricular Pressure–Volume Relationships

The relationship between the volume (length) and pressure (tension) of a ventricle illustrates the interdependence between muscle length and force in the specific case of the heart (→ p. 66ff.). The **work diagram** of the heart can be constructed by plotting the changes in *ventricular pressure over volume* during one complete cardiac cycle (→ **A1**, points A–D–S–V–A, pressure values are those for the left ventricle).

The following *pressure–volume curves* can be used to construct a **work diagram of the ventricles**:

- ◆ **Passive (or resting) pressure–volume curve:** Indicates the pressures that result passively (without muscle contraction) at various ventricular volume loads (→ **A1**, 2; blue curve).

- ◆ **Isovolumic peak curve** (→ **A1**, 2, green curves): Based on experimental measurements made using an isolated heart. Data are generated for various volume loads by measuring the peak ventricular pressure at a constant ventricular volume during contraction. The contraction is therefore *isovolumetric (isovolumic)*, i.e., ejection does not take place (→ **A2**, vertical arrows).

- ◆ **Isotonic (or isobaric) peak curve** (→ **A1**, 2, violet curves). Also based on experimental measurements taken at various volume loads under isotonic (isobaric) conditions, i.e., the ejection is controlled in such a way that the ventricular pressure remains constant while the volume decreases (→ **A2**, horizontal arrows).

- ◆ **Afterloaded peak curve:** (**A1**, 2, orange curves). Systole (→ p. 190) consists of an *isovolumic contraction phase* (→ **A1**, A–D and p. 191 A, phase I) followed by an *auxotonic ejection phase* (volume decreases while pressure continues to rise) (→ **A1**, D–S and p. 191 A, phase II). This type of mixed contraction is called an *afterloaded contraction* (see also p. 67 B). At a given volume load (preload) (→ **A1**, point A), the afterloaded peak value changes (→ **A1**, point S) depending on the aortic end-diastolic pressure (→ **A1**, point D). All the afterloaded peak values are represented on the curve, which appears as a (nearly) straight line connecting the isovolumic and isotonic peaks for each respective volume load (point A) (→ **A1**, points T and M).

**Ventricular work diagram.** The pressure–volume relationships observed during the cardiac cycle (→ p. 190) can be plotted as a work diagram, e.g., for the left ventricle (→ **A1**): The *end-diastolic volume (EDV)* is 125 mL (→ **A1**, point A). During the *isovolumetric contraction*

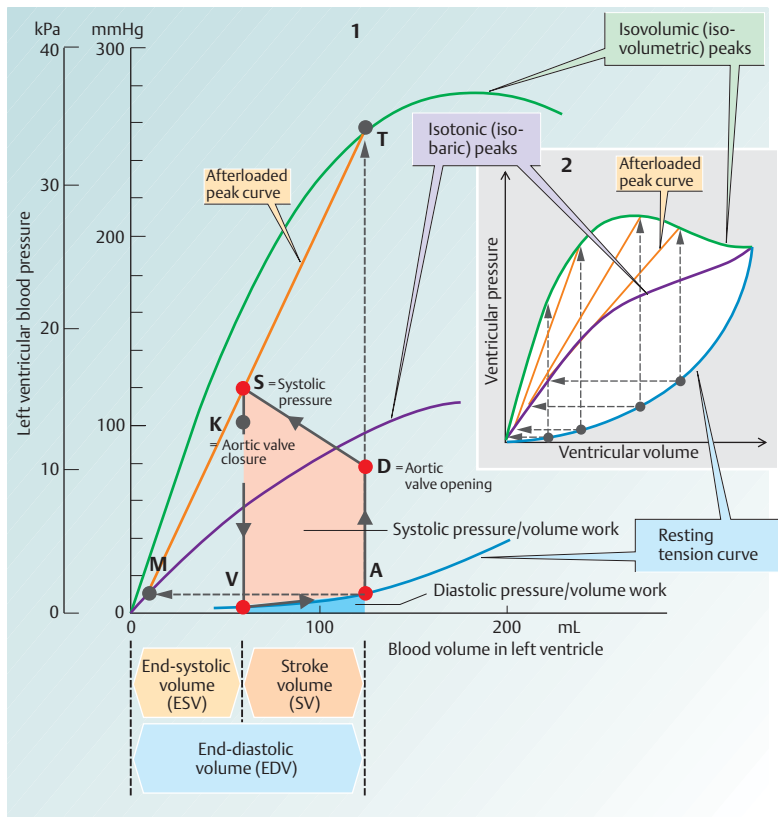
*phase*, the pressure in the left ventricle rises (all valves closed) until the diastolic aortic pressure (80 mmHg in this case) is reached (→ **A1**, point D). The aortic valve then opens. During the *ejection phase*, the ventricular volume is reduced by the *stroke volume (SV)* while the pressure initially continues to rise (→ p. 188, *Laplace's law*, Eq. 8.4b:  $P_{tm} \uparrow$  because  $r \downarrow$  and  $w \uparrow$ ). Once maximum (systolic) pressure is reached (→ **A1**, point S), the volume will remain virtually constant, but the pressure will drop slightly until it falls below the aortic pressure, causing the aortic valve to close (→ **A1**, point K). During the *isovolumetric relaxation phase*, the pressure rapidly decreases to (almost) 0 (→ **A1**, point V). The ventricles now contain only the *end-systolic volume (ESV)*, which equals 60 mL in the illustrated example. The ventricular pressure rises slightly during the filling phase (passive pressure–volume curve).

## Cardiac Work and Cardiac Power

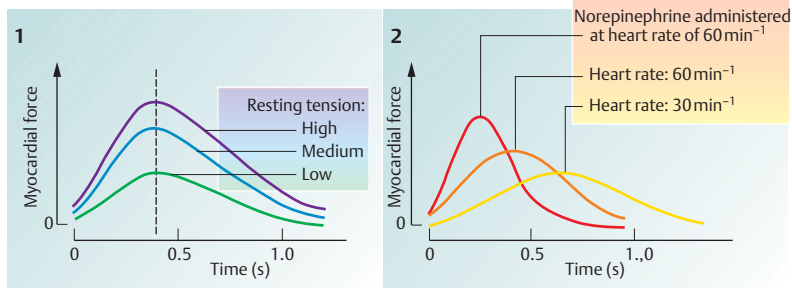
Since work ( $J = N \cdot m$ ) equals pressure ( $N \cdot m^{-2} = Pa$ ) times volume ( $m^3$ ), the area within the working diagram (→ **A1**, pink area) represents the **pressure/volume (P/V) work** achieved by the left ventricle during systole (13,333 Pa · 0.00008 m<sup>3</sup> = 1.07 J; right ventricle: 0.16 J). In systole, the bulk of cardiac work is achieved by active contraction of the myocardium, while a much smaller portion is attributable to passive elastic recoil of the ventricle, which stretches while filling. This represents *diastolic filling work* (→ **A1**, blue area under the blue curve), which is shared by the ventricular myocardium (indirectly), the atrial myocardium, and the respiratory and skeletal muscles (→ p. 204, venous return).

**Total cardiac work.** In addition to the cardiac work performed by the left and right ventricles in systole (ca. 1.2 J at rest), the heart has to generate 20% more energy (0.24 J) for the pulse wave (→ p. 188, *windkessel*). Only a small amount of energy is required to accelerate the blood at rest (1% of total cardiac work), but the energy requirement rises with the heart rate. The total **cardiac power** (= work/time, → p. 374) at rest ( $70 \text{ min}^{-1} = 1.17 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ) is approximately  $1.45 \text{ J} \cdot 1.17 \text{ s}^{-1} = 1.7 \text{ W}$ .

**A. Work diagram of the heart (left ventricle)**



**B. Effects of pretension (preload) (1), heart rate and sympathetic stimuli (2) on myocardial force and contraction velocity**



(See text on next page)

(After Sonnenblick)

## Regulation of Stroke Volume

**Frank–Starling mechanism (FSM):** The heart *autonomously* responds to changes in ventricular volume load or aortic pressure load by adjusting the stroke volume (SV) in accordance with the myocardial *preload* (resting tension; → p. 66 ff.). The FSM also functions to maintain an equal SV in both ventricles to prevent congestion in the pulmonary or systemic circulation.

**Preload change.** When the volume load (preload) *increases*, the start of isovolumic contraction shifts to the right along the passive P–V curve (→ **A1**, from point A to point A<sub>1</sub>). This increases end-diastolic volume (EDV), stroke volume (SV), cardiac work and end-systolic volume (ESV) (→ **A**).

**Afterload change.** When the aortic pressure load (afterload) *increases*, the aortic valve will not open until the pressure in the left ventricle has risen accordingly (→ **A2**, point D<sub>1</sub>). Thus, the SV in the short transitional phase (SV<sub>t</sub>) will decrease, and ESV will rise (ESV<sub>t</sub>). Consequently, the start of the isovolumic contraction shifts to the right along the passive P–V curve (→ **A2**, point A<sub>2</sub>). SV will then normalize (SV<sub>2</sub>) despite the increased aortic pressure (D<sub>2</sub>), resulting in a relatively large increase in ESV (ESV<sub>2</sub>).

**Preload or afterload-independent changes** in myocardial contraction force are referred to as **contractility** or **inotropism**. It increases in response to norepinephrine (NE) and epinephrine (E) as well as to increases in heart rate ( $\beta_1$ -adrenoceptor-mediated, positive inotropic effect and frequency inotropism, respectively; → p. 194). This causes a number of effects, particularly, an increase in isovolumic pressure peaks (→ **A3**, green curves). The heart can therefore pump against increased pressure levels (→ **A3**, point D<sub>3</sub>) and/or eject larger SVs (at the expense of the ESV) (→ **A3**, SV<sub>4</sub>).

While changes in the preload only affect the **force** of contraction (→ p. 203 B1), changes in contractility also affect the **velocity** of contraction (→ p. 203/B2). The steepest increase in isovolumic pressure per unit time (*maximum dp/dt*) is therefore used as a measure of contractility in clinical practice. dp/dt is increased E and NE and decreased by bradycardia (→ p. 203 B2) or heart failure.

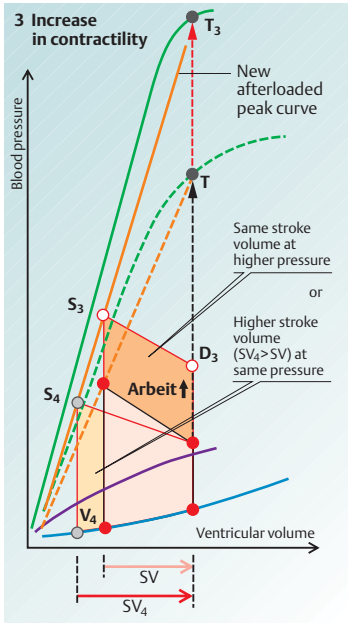
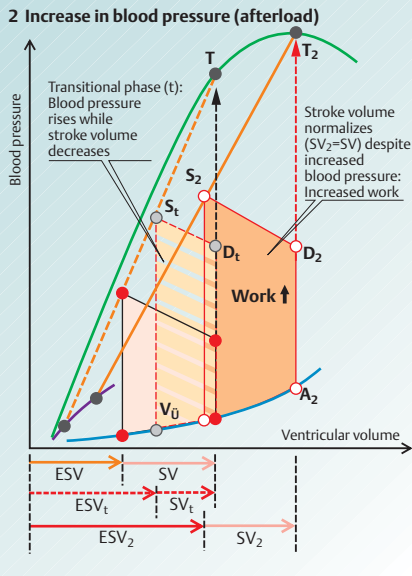
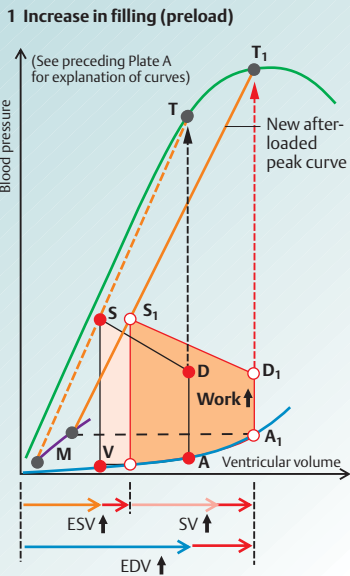
## Venous Return

Blood from the capillaries is collected in the veins and returned to the heart. The **driving forces** for this venous return (→ **B**) are: (a) *vis a tergo*, i.e., the postcapillary blood pressure (BP) (ca. 15 mmHg); (b) the suction that arises due to lowering of the cardiac valve plane in systole; (c) the pressure exerted on the veins during skeletal muscle contraction (*muscle pump*); the valves of veins prevent the blood from flowing in the wrong direction, (d) the increased abdominal pressure together with the lowered intrathoracic pressure during inspiration (P<sub>pi</sub>; → p. 108), which leads to thoracic venous dilatation and suction (→ p. 206).

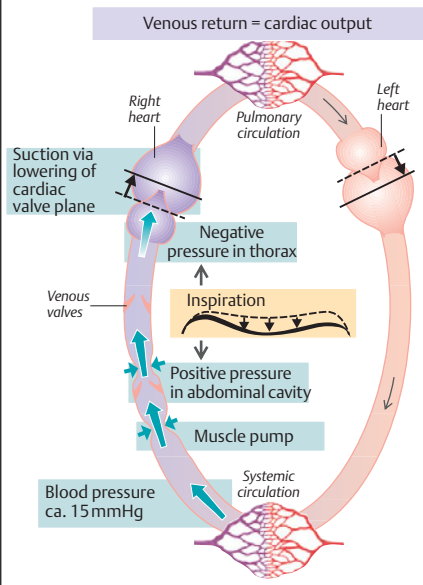
**Orthostatic reflex.** When rising from a supine to a standing position (orthostatic change), the blood vessels in the legs are subjected to additional hydrostatic pressure from the blood column. The resulting vasodilation raises blood volume in the leg veins (by ca. 0.4 L). Since this blood is taken from the *central blood volume*, i.e., mainly from pulmonary vessels, venous return to the left atrium decreases, resulting in a decrease in stroke volume and cardiac output. A reflexive increase (*orthostatic reflex*) in heart rate and peripheral resistance therefore occurs to prevent an excessive drop in arterial BP (→ pp. 7 E and 212 ff.); *orthostatic collapse* can occur. The drop in central blood volume is more pronounced when standing than when walking due to muscle pump activity. Conversely, pressure in veins above the heart level, e.g., in the cerebral veins, decreases when a person stands still for prolonged periods of time. Since the venous pressure just below the diaphragm remains constant despite changes in body position, it is referred to as a *hydrostatic indifference point*.

The **central venous pressure (CVP)** is measured at the right atrium (normal range: 0–12 cm H<sub>2</sub>O or 0–9 mmHg). Since it is mainly dependent on the blood volume, the CVP is used to monitor the blood volume in clinical medicine (e.g., during a transfusion). Elevated CVP (> 20 cm H<sub>2</sub>O or 15 mmHg) may be pathological (e.g., due to heart failure or other diseases associated with cardiac pump dysfunction), or physiological (e.g., in pregnancy).

**A. Factors influencing cardiac action**



**B. Venous return**



## Arterial Blood Pressure

The term blood pressure (BP) *per se* refers to the arterial BP in the systemic circulation. The maximum BP occurs in the aorta during the systolic ejection phase; this is the **systolic pressure** ( $P_s$ ); the minimum aortic pressure is reached during the isovolumic contraction phase (while the aortic valves are closed) and is referred to as the **diastolic pressure** ( $P_d$ ) ( $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 191, phase I in A2). The systolic–diastolic pressure difference ( $P_s - P_d$ ) represents the **blood pressure amplitude**, also called **pulse pressure** (PP), and is a function of the stroke volume (SV) and arterial compliance ( $C = dV/dP$ ,  $\rightarrow$  p. 188). When C decreases at a constant SV, the systolic pressure  $P_s$  will rise more sharply than the diastolic pressure  $P_d$ , i.e., the PP will increase (common in the elderly; described below). The same holds true when the SV increases at a constant C.

If the **total peripheral resistance** (TPR,  $\rightarrow$  p. 188) increases while the SV ejection time remains constant, then  $P_s$  and the  $P_d$  will increase by the same amount (no change in PP). However, increases in the TPR normally lead to retardation of SV ejection and a decrease in the ratio of arterial volume rise to peripheral drainage during the ejection phase. Consequently,  $P_s$  rises less sharply than  $P_d$  and PP decreases.

**Normal range.** In individuals up to 45 years of age,  $P_d$  normally range from 60 to 90 mmHg and  $P_s$  from 100 to 140 mmHg at rest (while sitting or reclining). A  $P_s$  of up to 150 mmHg is considered to be normal in 45 to 60-year-old adults, and a  $P_s$  of up to 160 mmHg is normal in individuals over 60 ( $\rightarrow$  C). Optimal BP regulation ( $\rightarrow$  p.212) is essential for proper tissue perfusion.

Abnormally low BP (**hypotension**) can lead to *shock* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 218), *anoxia* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 130) and tissue destruction. Chronically elevated BP (**hypertension**;  $\rightarrow$  p.216) also causes damage because important vessels (especially those of the heart, brain, kidneys and retina) are injured.

The **mean BP** (=the average measured over time) is the decisive factor of peripheral perfusion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 188).

The mean BP can be determined by continuous BP measurement using an arterial catheter, etc. ( $\rightarrow$  A).

By *attenuating* the pressure signal, only the mean BP is recorded.

Although the mean BP falls slightly as the blood travels from the aorta to the arteries, the  $P_s$  in the greater arteries (e.g., femoral artery) is usually higher than in the aorta (A1 v. A2) because their compliance is lower than that of the aorta (see pulse wave velocity, p. 190).

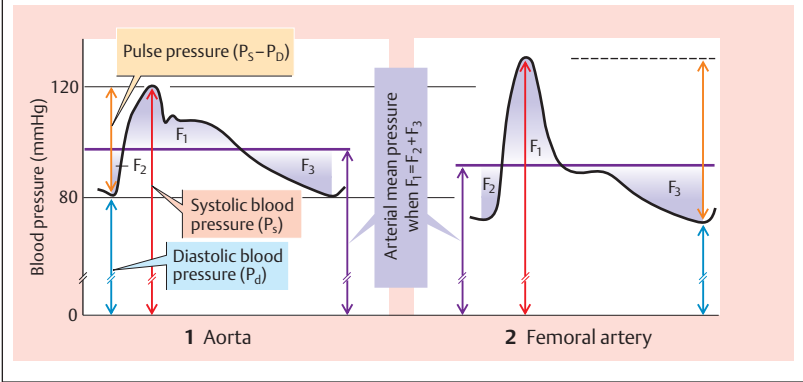
Direct invasive BP measurements show that the BP curve in arteries distal to the heart is not synchronous with that of the aorta due to the time delay required for passage of the pulse wave (3–10 m/s;  $\rightarrow$  p. 190); its shape is also different ( $\rightarrow$  A1/A2).

The **BP is routinely measured** externally (at the level of the heart) according to the *Riva-Rocci* method by **sphygmomanometer** ( $\rightarrow$  B). An inflatable cuff is snugly wrapped around the arm and a stethoscope is placed over the brachial artery at the crook of the elbow. While reading the manometer, the cuff is inflated to a pressure higher than the expected  $P_s$  (the radial pulse disappears). The air in the cuff is then slowly released (2–4 mmHg/s). The first sounds synchronous with the pulse (*Korotkoff sounds*) indicate that the cuff pressure has fallen below the  $P_s$ . This value is read from the manometer. These sounds first become increasingly louder, then more quiet and muffled and eventually disappear when the cuff pressure falls below the  $P_d$  (second reading).

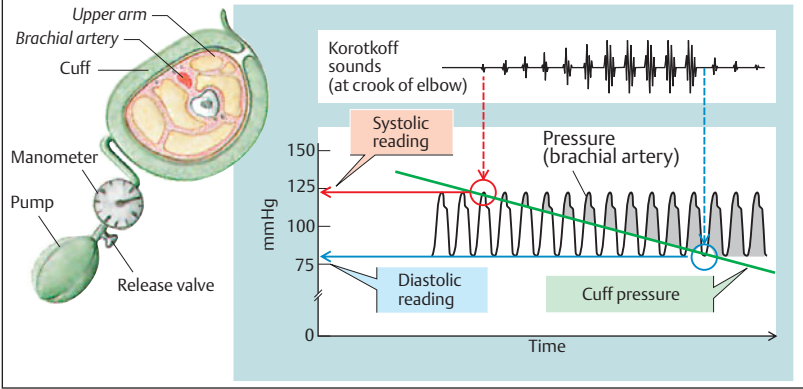
**Reasons for false BP readings.** When re-measuring the blood pressure, the cuff pressure must be completely released for 1 to 2 min. Otherwise venous pooling can mimic elevated  $P_d$ . The cuff of the sphygmomanometer should be 20% broader than the diameter of the patient's upper arm. Falsely high  $P_d$  readings can also occur if the cuff is too loose or too small relative to the arm diameter (e.g., in obese or very muscular patients) or if measurement has to be made at the thigh.

The **blood pressure in the pulmonary artery** is much lower than the aortic pressure ( $\rightarrow$  p. 186). The pulmonary vessels have relatively thin walls and their environment (air-filled lung tissue) is highly compliant. Increased cardiac output from the right ventricle therefore leads to expansion and thus to decreased resistance of the pulmonary vessels ( $\rightarrow$  D). This prevents excessive rises in pulmonary artery pressure during physical exertion when cardiac output rises. The pulmonary vessels also function to buffer short-term fluctuations in blood volume ( $\rightarrow$  p. 204).

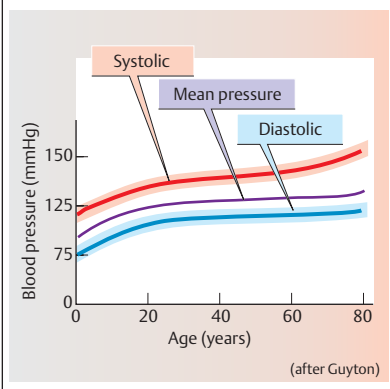
**A. Arterial blood-pressure curve**



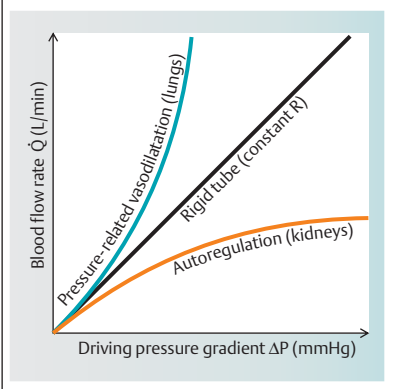
**B. Blood-pressure measurement with sphygmomanometer (Riva-Rocci)**



**C. Age-dependency of blood pressure**



**D. Blood pressure and blood flow rate**





## Endothelial Exchange Processes

Nutrients and waste products are exchanged across the walls of the capillaries and post-capillary venules (*exchange vessels*; → p. 188). Their endothelia contain small (ca. 2–5 nm) or large (20–80 nm, especially in the kidneys and liver) *functional pores*: permeable, intercellular fissures or endothelial fenestrae, respectively. The degree of endothelial permeability varies greatly from one organ to another. Virtually all endothelia allow water and inorganic ions to pass, but most are largely impermeable to blood cells and large protein molecules. Transcytosis and carriers (→ p. 26f.) allow for passage of certain larger molecules.

**Filtration and reabsorption.** About 20 L/day of fluid is filtered (excluding the kidneys) into the interstitium from the body's exchange vessels. About 18 L/day of this fluid is thought to be reabsorbed by the venous limb of these vessels. The remaining 2 L/day or so make up the **lymph flow** and thereby return to the bloodstream (→ A). The *filtration or reabsorption rate*  $Q_f$  is a factor of the endothelial **filtration coefficient**  $K_f$  (= water permeability  $k$  · exchange area  $A$ ) and the **effective filtration pressure**  $P_{\text{eff}}$  ( $Q_f = K_f \cdot P_{\text{eff}}$ ).  $P_{\text{eff}}$  is calculated as the hydrostatic pressure difference  $\Delta P$  minus the oncotic pressure difference  $\Delta\pi$  across the capillary wall (*Starling's relationship*; → A), where  $\Delta P$  = capillary pressure ( $P_{\text{cap}}$ ) minus interstitial pressure ( $P_{\text{int}}$ , normally  $\approx 0$  mmHg). At the level of the heart,  $\Delta P$  at the arterial end of the systemic capillaries is about 30 mmHg and decreases to about 22 mmHg at the venous end. Since  $\Delta\pi$  (ca. 24 mmHg; → A) counteracts  $\Delta P$ , the initially high filtration rate ( $P_{\text{eff}} = +6$  mmHg) is thought to change into reabsorption whenever  $P_{\text{eff}}$  becomes negative. (Since  $\Delta P$  is only 10 mmHg in the lungs, the pulmonary  $P_{\text{eff}}$  is very low).  $\Delta\pi$  occurs because the concentration of proteins (especially albumin) in the plasma is much higher than their interstitial concentration. The closer the *reflection coefficient* of the plasma proteins ( $\sigma_{\text{prot}}$ ) to 1.0, the higher  $\Delta\pi$  and, consequently, the lower the permeability of the membrane to these proteins (→ p. 377).

According to Starling's relationship, **water reabsorption** should occur as long as  $P_{\text{eff}}$  is negative. However, recent data suggest that a negative  $P_{\text{eff}}$  re-

sults in only transient reabsorption. After several minutes it stops because the interstitial oncotic pressure rises due to "self-regulation". Thus, a major part of the 18 L/d expected to be reabsorbed from the exchange vessels (see above) might actually be reabsorbed in the lymph nodes. Rhythmic contraction of the arterioles (**vasomotion**) may also play a role by decreasing  $P_{\text{eff}}$  and thus by allowing intermittent capillary reabsorption.

In parts of the body below the heart, the effects of **hydrostatic pressure** from the blood column increase the pressure in the capillary lumen (in the feet  $\approx 90$  mmHg). The filtration rate in these regions therefore rise, especially when standing still. This is counteracted by two "self-regulatory" mechanisms: (1) the outflow of water results in an increase in the luminal protein concentration (and thus  $\Delta\pi$ ) along the capillaries (normally the case in glomerular capillaries, → p. 152); (2) increased filtration results in an increase in  $P_{\text{int}}$  and a consequent decrease in  $\Delta P$ .

**Edema.** Fluid will accumulate in the interstitial space (*extracellular edema*), portal venous system (*ascites*), and pulmonary interstice (*pulmonary edema*) if the volume of filtered fluid is higher than the amount returned to the blood.

### Causes of edema (→ B):

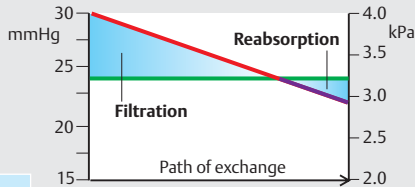
- ◆ *Increased capillary pressure* (→ B1) due to precapillary vasodilatation ( $P_{\text{cap}} \uparrow$ ), especially when the capillary permeability to proteins also increases ( $\sigma_{\text{prot}} \downarrow$  and  $\Delta\pi \downarrow$ ) due, for example, to infection or anaphylaxis (histamine etc.). Hypertension in the portal vein leads to ascites.
- ◆ *Increased venous pressure* ( $P_{\text{cap}} \uparrow$ , → B2) due, for example, to venous thrombosis or cardiac insufficiency (*cardiac edema*).
- ◆ *Decreased concentration of plasma proteins*, especially albumin, leading to a drop in  $\Delta\pi$  (→ B3 and p. 379A) due, for example, to loss of proteins (proteinuria), decreased hepatic protein synthesis (e.g., in liver cirrhosis), or to increased breakdown of plasma proteins to meet energy requirements (*hunger edema*).
- ◆ *Decreased lymph drainage* due, e.g., to lymph tract compression (tumors), severance (surgery), obliteration (radiation therapy) or obstruction (bilharziosis) can lead to *localized edema* (→ B4).
- ◆ *Increased hydrostatic pressure* promotes edema formation in lower regions of the body (e.g., in the ankles; → B).

**Diffusion.** Although dissolved particles are dragged through capillary walls along with filtered and reabsorbed water (solvent drag; → p. 24), diffusion plays a much greater role in the exchange of solutes. *Net diffusion* of a substance (e.g.,  $O_2$ ,  $CO_2$ ) occurs if its plasma and interstitial conc. are different.

**A. Exchange of fluids via capillaries and venules**

$\Delta P$  (hydrostatic pressure difference)

$\Delta \pi$  (oncotic pressure difference)

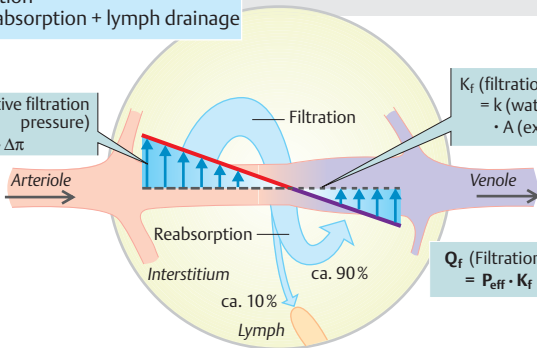


Filtration = Reabsorption + lymph drainage

$P_{eff}$  (effective filtration pressure) =  $\Delta P - \Delta \pi$

$K_f$  (filtration coefficient) =  $k$  (water permeability)  $\cdot A$  (exchange area)

$Q_f$  (Filtration/reabsorption rate) =  $P_{eff} \cdot K_f$



**B. Causes of edema**

1

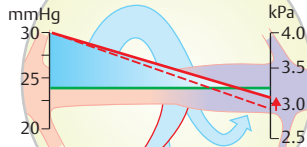
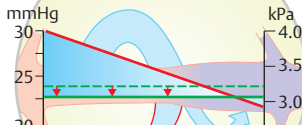
Precapillary vasodilatation

Capillary pressure rises

2 Venous pressure rises

3

Decrease in plasma proteins



Edema

Edema

Filtration > Reabsorption + lymph drainage

4

Reduced lymph drainage

Edema (e.g., in ankles)



## Myocardial Oxygen Supply

**Coronary arteries.** The blood flow to the myocardium is supplied by the two coronary arteries that arise from the aortic root. The right coronary artery (approx. 1/7th of the blood) usually supplies the greater portion of the right ventricle, while the left coronary artery (6/7th of the blood) supplies the left ventricle ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). The contribution of both arteries to blood flow in the septum and posterior wall of the left ventricle varies.

**Coronary blood flow** ( $\dot{Q}_{\text{cor}}$ ) is phasic, i.e., the amount of blood in the coronary arteries fluctuates during the cardiac cycle due to extremely high rises in extravascular tissue pressure during systole ( $\rightarrow$  **B, C**). The blood flow in the epicardial coronary artery branches and subepicardial vessels remains largely unaffected by these pressure fluctuations. However, the *subendocardial vessels of the left ventricle* are compressed during systole when the extravascular pressure in that region ( $\approx$  pressure in left ventricle,  $P_{\text{LV}}$ ) exceeds the pressure in the lumen of the vessels ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). Consequently, the left ventricle is mainly supplied during diastole ( $\rightarrow$  **B middle**). The fluctuations in right ventricular blood flow are much less distinct because right ventricular pressure ( $P_{\text{RV}}$ ) is lower ( $\rightarrow$  **B, C**).

**Myocardial  $\text{O}_2$  consumption** ( $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ ) is defined as  $\dot{Q}_{\text{cor}}$  times the arteriovenous  $\text{O}_2$  concentration difference,  $(C_a - C_v)_{\text{O}_2}$ . The myocardial  $(C_a - C_v)_{\text{O}_2}$  is relatively high (0.12 L/L blood), and *oxygen extraction* at rest  $[(C_a - C_v)_{\text{O}_2} / \text{CaO}_2 = 0.12 / 0.21]$  is almost 60% and, thus, not able to rise much further. Therefore, an increase in  $\dot{Q}_{\text{cor}}$  is practically the only way to increase myocardial  $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$  when the  $\text{O}_2$  demand rises ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, right side).

**Adaptation of the myocardial  $\text{O}_2$  supply** according to need is therefore primarily achieved by *adjusting vascular resistance* ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, left side). The (distal) coronary vessel resistance can normally be reduced to about 1/4 the resting value (*coronary reserve*). The coronary blood flow  $\dot{Q}_{\text{cor}}$  (approx. 250 mL/min at rest) can therefore be increased as much as 4–5 fold. In other words, approx. 4 to 5 times more  $\text{O}_2$  can be supplied during maximum physical exertion.

**Arteriosclerosis (atherosclerosis)** of the coronary arteries leads to luminal narrowing and a resultant decrease in poststenotic pressure. Dilatation of the distal vessels then occurs as an autoregulatory response (see below). Depending on the extent of the stenosis, it may be necessary to use a fraction of the coronary reserve, even during rest. As a result, lower or insufficient quantities of  $\text{O}_2$  will be available to satisfy increased  $\text{O}_2$  demand, and *coronary insufficiency* may occur ( $\rightarrow$  **D**).

**Myocardial  $\text{O}_2$  demand** increases with cardiac output (increased pressure–volume–work/time), i.e., in response to increases in heart rate and/or contractility, e.g., during physical exercise ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, right). It also increases as a function of mural tension ( $T_{\text{ventr}}$ ) times the duration of systole (*tension–time index*). Since  $T_{\text{ventr}} = P_{\text{ventr}} \cdot V_{\text{ventr}} / 2W$  (*Laplace's law*  $\rightarrow$  Eq. 8.4b, p. 188),  $\text{O}_2$  demand is greater when the ventricular pressure ( $P_{\text{ventr}}$ ) is high and the stroke volume small than when  $P_{\text{ventr}}$  is low and the stroke volume high, even when the same amount of work ( $P \times V$ ) is performed. In the first case, the **efficiency of the heart** is reduced. When the ventricular pressure  $P_{\text{ventr}}$  is elevated, e.g., in *hypertension*, the myocardium therefore requires more  $\text{O}_2$  to perform the same amount of work ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, right).

Since the myocardial metabolism is aerobic, an increased  $\text{O}_2$  demand quickly has to lead to vasodilatation. The following factors are involved in the **coronary vasodilatation**:

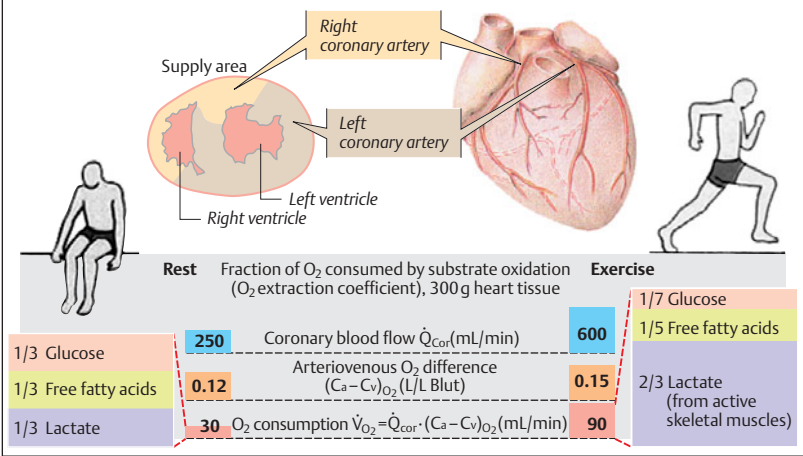
- ◆ **Metabolic factors:** (a) oxygen deficiency since  $\text{O}_2$  acts as a vasoconstrictor; (b) Adenosine; oxygen deficiencies result in insufficient quantities of AMP being re-converted to ATP, leading to accumulation of *adenosine*, a degradation product of AMP. This leads to  $A_2$  receptor-mediated vasodilatation; (c) Accumulation of lactate and  $\text{H}^+$  ions (from the anaerobic myocardial metabolism); (d) prostaglandin  $I_2$ .

- ◆ **Endothelial factors:** ATP (e.g., from platelets), bradykinin, histamine and acetylcholine are vasodilators. They liberate nitric oxide (NO) from the endothelium, which diffuses into vascular muscle cells to stimulate vasodilatation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 279 E).

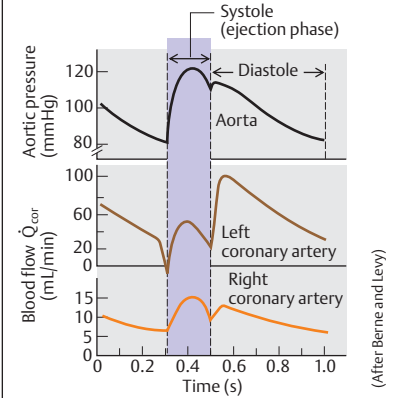
- ◆ **Neurohumoral factors:** Norepinephrine released from sympathetic nerve endings and adrenal epinephrine have a vasodilatory effect on the distal coronary vessels via  $\beta_2$  adrenoceptors.

**Myocardial energy sources.** The myocardium can use the available glucose, free fatty acids, lactate and other molecules for ATP production. The oxidation of each of these three energy substrates consumes a certain fraction of myocardial  $\text{O}_2$  ( $\text{O}_2$  extraction coefficient); accordingly, each contributes approx. one-third of the produced ATP at rest. The myocardium consumes increasing quantities of *lactate* from the skeletal muscles during physical exercise ( $\rightarrow$  **A**,  $\rightarrow$  p. 72 and 282).

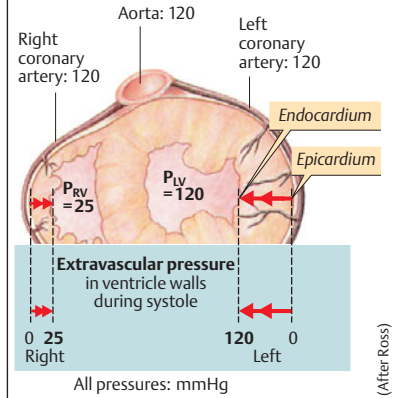
**A. Blood supply, O<sub>2</sub> and substrate consumption of heart muscle**



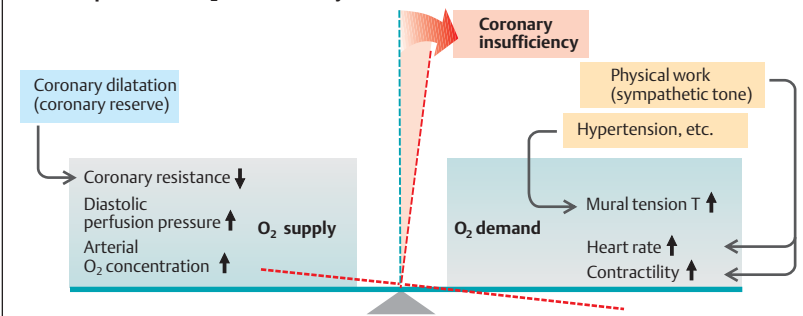
**B. Coronary blood flow**



**C. Systolic pressures in heart**



**D. Components of O<sub>2</sub> balance in myocardium**



## Regulation of the Circulation

The blood flow must be regulated to ensure an adequate blood supply, even under changing environmental conditions and stress (cf. p.74). This implies (a) optimal regulation of cardiac activity and blood pressure (*homeostasis*), (b) adequate perfusion of all organ systems, and (c) shunting of blood to active organ systems (e.g., muscles) at the expense of the resting organs (e.g., gastrointestinal tract) to keep from overtaxing the heart ( $\rightarrow$  A).

**Regulation of blood flow to the organs** is mainly achieved by changing the *diameter of blood vessels*. The muscle tone (tonus) of the vascular smooth musculature changes in response to (1) *local stimuli* ( $\rightarrow$  B2a/b), (2) *hormonal signals* ( $\rightarrow$  B3 a/b) and (3) *neuronal signals* ( $\rightarrow$  B1 a/b). Most blood vessels have an intermediary muscle tone at rest (*resting tone*). Many vessels dilate in response to denervation, resulting in a *basal tone*. This occurs due to spontaneous depolarization of smooth muscle in the vessels (see also p.70).

### Local Regulation of Blood Flow (Autoregulation)

Autoregulation has two **functions**:

- ◆ Autoregulatory mechanisms help to maintain a *constant blood flow* to certain organs when the blood pressure changes (e.g., renal vessels constrict in response to rises in blood pressure;  $\rightarrow$  p. 150).
- ◆ Autoregulation also functions to *adjust the blood flow* according to changes in metabolic activity of an organ (*metabolic autoregulation*); the amount of blood flow to the organ (e.g., cardiac and skeletal muscle;  $\rightarrow$  A and p.201) can thereby increase many times higher than the resting level.

Types of autoregulatory **mechanism**:

- ◆ **Myogenic effects** arising from the vascular musculature of the lesser arteries and arterioles (*Bayliss effect*) ensure that these vessels *contract* in response to blood pressure-related dilatation ( $\rightarrow$  B2a) in certain organs (e.g., kidneys, gastrointestinal tract and brain), but not in others (e.g., skin and lungs).
- ◆ **Oxygen deficiencies** generally cause the blood vessels to *dilate*. Hence, the degree of blood flow and O<sub>2</sub> uptake increase with increasing O<sub>2</sub> consumption. In the lungs, on the

other hand, a low P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> in the surrounding alveoli causes the vessels to *contract* (*hypoxic vasoconstriction*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 122).

- ◆ **Local metabolic (chemical) effects**: An increase in local concentrations of *metabolic products* such as CO<sub>2</sub>, H<sup>+</sup>, ADP, AMP, adenosine, and K<sup>+</sup> in the interstitium has a *vasodilatory effect*, especially in precapillary arterioles. The resulting rise in blood flow not only improves the supply of substrates and O<sub>2</sub>, but also accelerates the efflux of these metabolic products from the tissue. The blood flow to the *brain* and *myocardium* ( $\rightarrow$  p.210) is almost entirely subject to local metabolic control. Both local metabolic effects and O<sub>2</sub> deficiencies lead to an up to 5-fold increase in blood flow to an affected region in response to the decreased blood flow (*reactive hyperemia*).

- ◆ **Vasoactive substances**: A number of vasoactive substances such as prostaglandins play a role in autoregulation (see below).

### Hormonal Control of Circulation

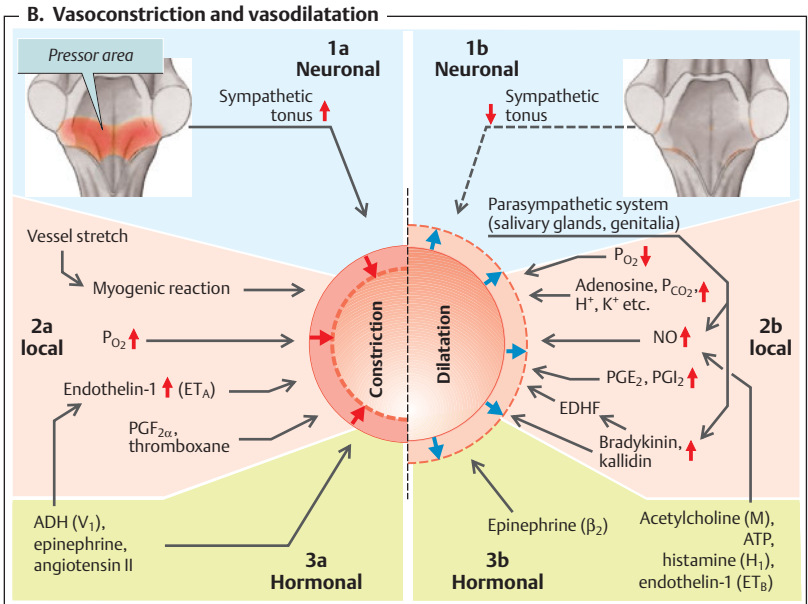
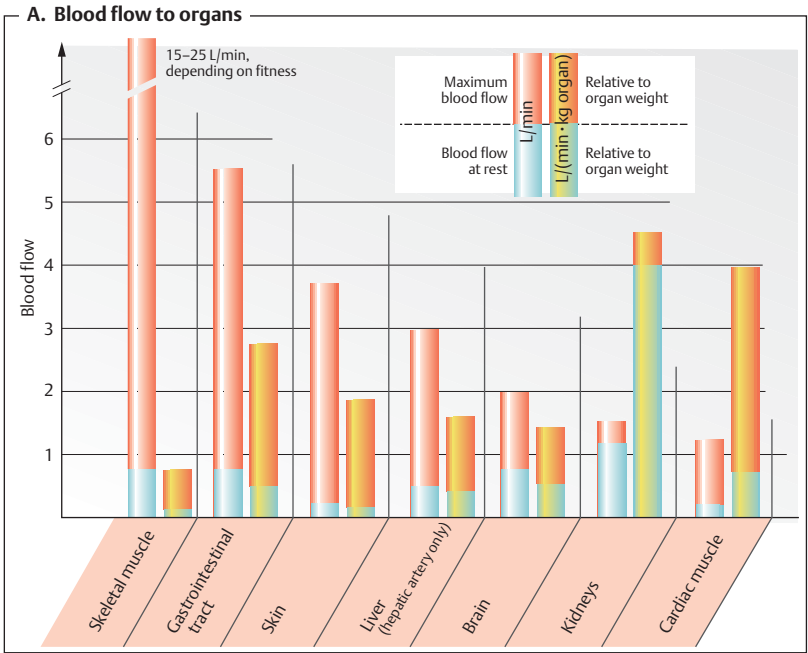
**Vasoactive substances.** Vasoactive hormones either have a direct effect on the vascular musculature (e.g., epinephrine) or lead to the local release of vasoactive substances (e.g., nitric oxide, endothelin) that exert local paracrine effects ( $\rightarrow$  B).

- ◆ **Nitric (mon)oxide (NO)** acts as a *vasodilatory* agent. NO is released from the *endothelium* when acetylcholine (M receptors), ATP, endothelin (ET<sub>B</sub> receptors), or histamine (H<sub>1</sub> receptors) binds with an endothelial cell ( $\rightarrow$  p.278). NO then diffuses to and relaxes vascular myocytes in the vicinity.

- ◆ **Endothelin-1** can lead to *vasodilatation* by inducing the release of NO from the *endothelium* by way of ET<sub>B</sub> receptors (see above), or can cause *vasoconstriction* via ET<sub>A</sub> receptors in the vascular musculature. When substances such as angiotensin II or ADH (= vasopressin; V<sub>1</sub> receptor) bind to an endothelial cell, they release endothelin-1, which diffuses to and constricts the adjacent vascular muscles with the aid of ET<sub>A</sub> receptors.

- ◆ **Epinephrine (E)**: High concentrations of E from the adrenal medulla ( $\rightarrow$  p.86) have a *vasoconstrictive* effect ( $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors), whereas low concentrations exert *vasodilatory* effects by way of  $\beta_2$  adrenoceptors in the *myo-*





*cardium, skeletal muscle and liver* (→ C). The effect of E mainly depends on which type of adrenoceptor is predominant in the organ.  $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors are predominant in the blood vessels of the *kidney and skin*.

◆ **Eicosanoids** (→ p. 269): Prostaglandin (PG)  $F_{2\alpha}$  and thromboxane  $A_2$  (released from platelets, → p. 102) and  $B_2$  have *vasoconstrictive* effects, while  $PGI_2$  (= prostacyclin, e.g. released from endothelium) and  $PGE_2$  have *vasodilatory* effects. Another vasodilator released from the endothelium (e.g., by bradykinin; see below) opens  $K^+$  channels in vascular myocytes and hyperpolarizes them, leading to a drop in the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration. This endothelium-derived hyperpolarizing factor (EDHF), has been identified as a 11,12-epoxy-eicosatrienoic acid (11,12-EET).

◆ **Bradykinin and kallidin** are *vasodilatory* agents cleaved from kininogens in blood plasma by the enzyme kallikrein. **Histamine** also acts as a vasodilator. All three substances influence also vessel permeability (e.g., during infection) and blood clotting.

#### Neuronal Regulation of Circulation

Neuronal regulation of *blood flow* (→ **B1a/b**) mainly involves the *lesser arteries and greater arterioles* (→ p. 188), while that of *venous return* to the heart (→ p. 188) can be controlled by dilating or constricting the *veins* (changes in their blood storage capacity). Both mechanisms are usually controlled by the **sympathetic nervous system** (→ **B1a** and p. 78ff.), whereby **norepinephrine** (NE) serves as the postganglionic transmitter (except in the sweat glands). NE binds with the  $\alpha_1$  adrenoceptors on blood vessels, causing them to constrict (→ **B**). Vasodilatation is usually achieved by decreasing the tonus of the sympathetic system (→ **B1b**). This does not apply to blood vessels in salivary glands (increased secretion) or the genitals (erection), which dilate in response to *parasympathetic* stimuli. In this case, vasoactive substances (bradykinin and NO, respectively) act as the mediators. Some neurons release calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP), a potent vasodilator.

**Neuronal regulation of blood flow to organs** occurs mainly: (a) via *central co-innervation* (e.g., an impulse is simultaneously sent from

the cerebral cortex to circulatory centers when a muscle group is activated, or (b) via *neuronal feedback* from the organs whose activity level and metabolism have changed. If the neuronal and local metabolic mechanisms are conflicting (e.g., when sympathetic nervous stimulation occurs during skeletal muscle activity), the metabolic factors will predominate. Vasodilatation therefore occurs in the active **muscle** while the sympathetic nervous system reduces the blood flow to the inactive muscles. Blood flow to the **skin** is mainly regulated by neuronal mechanisms for the purpose of controlling heat disposal (*temperature control*; → p. 224). Hypovolemia and hypotension lead to *centralization of blood flow*, i.e., vasoconstriction in the kidney (oliguria) and skin (pallor) occurs to increase the supply of blood to vital organs such as the heart and central nervous system (→ p. 218).

During exposure to extremely low temperatures, the cold-induced vasoconstriction of cutaneous vessels is periodically interrupted to supply the skin with blood to prevent tissue damage (**Lewis response**). **Axoaxonal reflexes** in the periphery play a role in this response, as afferent cutaneous nerve fibers transmit signals to efferent vasomotor axons. Skin reddening in response to scratching (*dermatographism*) is also the result of axoaxonal reflexes.

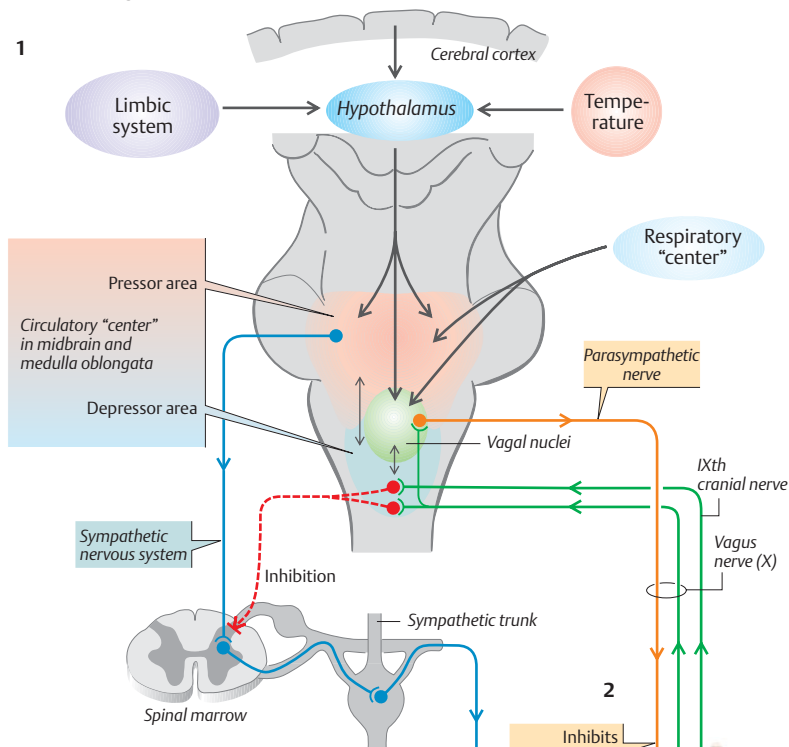
**Central regulation of blood flow** (→ C) is the responsibility of the CNS areas in the medulla oblongata and pons. They receive information from **circulatory sensors (S) or receptors** (a) in the high-pressure system (barosensors or pressure sensors,  $S_P$ , in the aorta and carotid artery); (b) in the low-pressure system (stretch sensors in the vena cava and atria,  $S_A$  and  $S_B$ ); and (c) in the left ventricle ( $S_V$ ). The sensors measure *arterial blood pressure* ( $S_P$ ), *pulse rate* ( $S_P$  and  $S_V$ ) and filling pressure in the low pressure system (indirect measure of *blood volume*). The A sensors ( $S_A$ ) mainly react to atrial contraction, whereas the B sensors ( $S_B$ ) react to passive filling stretch (→ **C2**). If the measured values differ from the set-point value, the *circulatory control centers* of the CNS transmit regulatory impulses through efferent nerve fibers to the heart and blood vessels (→ **D** and p. 5 C2).

Situated laterally in the circulatory "center" is a **pressor area** (→ C, reddish zone), the neu-

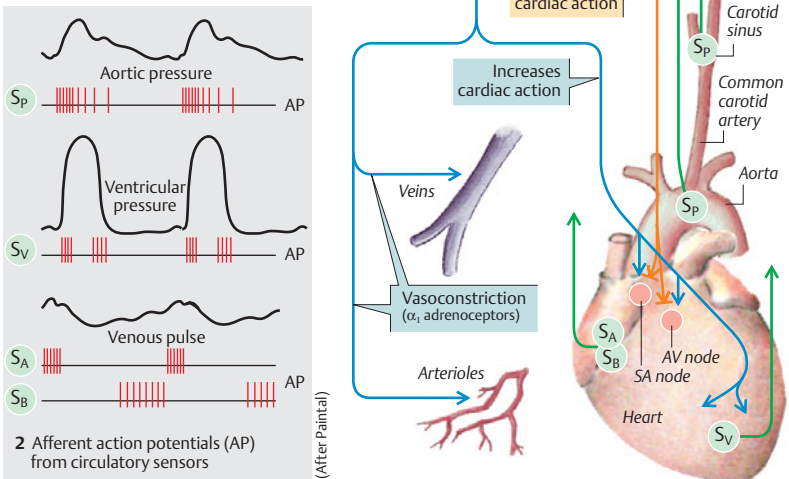


C. Central regulation of blood flow

1



2



2 Afferent action potentials (AP) from circulatory sensors

(After Paintal)



rons of which (blue arrows) continuously transmit sympathetic nerve impulses to the heart to increase its activity (heart rate, conduction and contractility). Their effects on vessels are predominantly vasoconstrictive (resting tone). The pressor area is in close contact with more medial neurons (**depressor area**, light blue area in C). The pressor and depressor areas are connected to the dorsal nuclei of the vagus nerve ( $\rightarrow$  C, green), the stimulation of which reduces the heart rate and cardiac impulse conduction rate ( $\rightarrow$  C, orange arrows).

**Homeostatic circulatory reflexes** include signals along afferent nerve tracts ( $\rightarrow$  D3a/b) that extend centrally from the pressosensors in the aorta and carotid sinus ( $\rightarrow$  C, green tracts). The main purpose of homeostatic control is to maintain the *arterial blood pressure* at a stable level. Acute increases in blood pressure heighten the rate of afferent impulses and activate the depressor area. By way of the vagus nerve, parasympathetic neurons ( $\rightarrow$  C, orange tract) elicit the depressor reflex response, i.e., they decrease the *cardiac output* (CO). In addition, inhibition of sympathetic vessel innervation causes the vessels to dilate, thereby reducing the *peripheral resistance* (TPR;  $\rightarrow$  D4a/b). Both of these mechanisms help to lower acute increases in blood pressure. Conversely, an acute drop in blood pressure leads to activation of pressor areas, which stimulates a rise in CO and TPR as well as venous vasoconstriction ( $\rightarrow$  C, blue tracts), thereby raising the blood pressure back to normal.

Due to the *fast adaptation* of pressosensors (*differential characteristics*,  $\rightarrow$  p. 312ff.), these regulatory measures apply to *acute changes in blood pressure*. Rising, for example, from a supine to a standing position results in rapid redistribution of the blood volume. Without homeostatic control (*orthostatic reflex*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 204), the resulting change in venous return would lead to a sharp drop in arterial blood pressure. The circulatory centers also respond to falling  $P_{O_2}$  or rising  $P_{CO_2}$  in the blood (cross-links from respiratory center) to raise the blood pressure as needed.

In individuals with chronic **hypertension**, the input from the pressosensors is normal because they are fully adapted. Therefore, circulatory control centers cannot respond to and decrease the high pressures. On the contrary, they may even help to "fix" the

blood pressure at the high levels. Chronic hypertension leads to stiffening of the carotid sinus. This may also contribute to decreasing the sensitivity of carotid pressosensors in hypertension.

A temporary *increase in venous return* (e.g., after an intravenous infusion) also leads to an increase in heart action ( $\rightarrow$  D, right). This mechanism is known as the **Bainbridge reflex**. The physiological significance of this reflex is, however, not entirely clear, but it may complement the Frank-Starling mechanism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 202ff.).

## Hypertension

Hypertension is defined as a chronic increase in the systemic arterial blood pressure. The general criterion for diagnosis of hypertension is consistent elevation of resting blood pressure to more than 90 mmHg diastolic ( $\rightarrow$  p. 206). Untreated or inadequately managed hypertension results in stress and compensatory hypertrophy of the left ventricle which can ultimately progress to *left heart failure*. Individuals with hypertension are also at risk for arteriosclerosis and its sequelae (myocardial infarction, stroke, renal damage, etc.). Therefore, hypertension considerably shortens the life expectancy of a large fraction of the population.

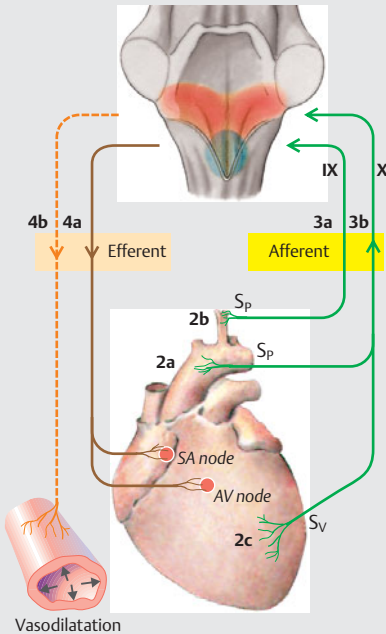
The **main causes of hypertension** are (a) increased extracellular fluid (ECF) volume with increased venous return and therefore increased cardiac output (*volume hypertension*) and (b) increased total peripheral resistance (*resistance hypertension*). As hypertension always leads to vascular changes resulting in increased peripheral resistance, type *a* hypertension eventually proceeds to type *b* which, regardless of how it started, ends in a vicious circle.

The ECF volume increases when more NaCl (and water) is absorbed than excreted. The usually high intake of dietary salt may therefore play a role in the development of **essential hypertension** (primary hypertension), the most common type of hypertension, at least in patients sensitive to salt. Volume hypertension can even occur when a relatively low salt intake can no longer be balanced. This can occur in renal insufficiency or when an adrenocortical tumor produces uncontrolled amounts of aldosterone, resulting in  $Na^+$  retention.

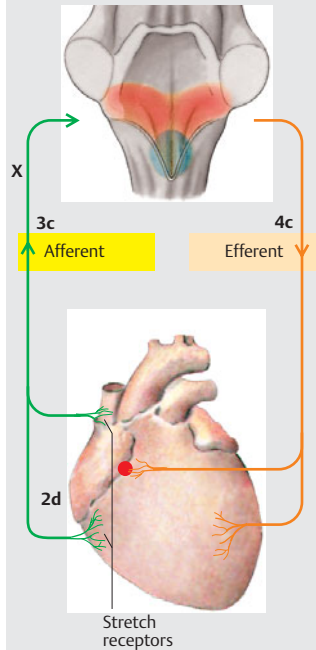
Other important cause of hypertension is **pheochromocytoma**, a tumor that secretes epinephrine and norepinephrine and therefore raises the CO and TPR. **Renal hypertension** can occur due to renal artery stenosis and renal disease. This results in the increased secretion of *renin*, which in turn raises the blood pressure via the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone (RAA) system ( $\rightarrow$  p. 184).

## D. Circulatory reflexes

Carotid and aortic sinus reflex (depressant)



Atrial (Bainbridge) reflex (excitatory)



**Arterial blood pressure rises**

Pressosensors in:

- a) Aorta
- b) Carotid artery
- c) Left ventricle

- a) Glossopharyngeal nerve (IXth nerve)
- b) Vagus nerve (Xth nerve)

- a) Stimulation of parasympathetic system
- b) Inhibition of sympathetic system

Bradycardia

Cardiac output decreases

Vasodilatation

Peripheral resistance decreases

**Arterial blood pressure decreases**

**1. Stimulus**

**2. Sensors**

**3. Afferent path**

**4. Efferent path**

**5. Response**

**6. Goal achieved**

**Venous return rises  
Atrial pressure rises**

- d) Atrial and venous stretch sensors

- c) Vagus nerve (Xth nerve)

- c) Stimulation of sympathetic system

Tachycardia, myocardial contractility increases

**Cardiac output rises**

## Circulatory Shock

Shock is characterized by acute or subacute progressive *generalized failure of the circulatory system* with disruption of the microcirculation and *failure to maintain adequate blood flow to vital organs*. In most cases, the **cardiac output (CO) is insufficient** due to a variety of reasons, which are explained below.

◆ **Hypovolemic shock** is characterized by reduced central venous pressure and *reduced venous return*, resulting in an inadequate stroke volume (Frank-Starling mechanism). The blood volume can be reduced due to bleeding (*hemorrhagic shock*) or any other conditions associated with the external **loss of fluids** from the gastrointestinal tract (e.g., severe vomiting, chronic diarrhea), the kidneys (e.g., in diabetes mellitus, diabetes insipidus, high-dose diuretic treatment) or the skin (burns, profuse sweating without fluid intake). An *internal loss* of blood can also occur, e.g., due to bleeding into soft tissues, into the mediastinum or into the pleural and abdominal space.

◆ **Cardiogenic shock:** Acute *heart failure* can be caused by acute myocardial infarction, acute decompensation of heart failure or impairment of cardiac filling, e.g. in pericardial tamponade. The central venous pressure is higher than in hypovolemic shock.

◆ Shock can occur due to **hormonal causes**, such as adrenocortical insufficiency, diabetic coma or insulin overdose (hypoglycemic shock).

◆ **Vasogenic shock:** Reduced cardiac output can also be due to peripheral vasodilatation (absence of pallor) and a resultant drop of venous return. This occurs in Gram-positive septicemia (*septic shock*), *anaphylactic shock*, an immediate hypersensitivity reaction (food or drug allergy, insect bite/sting) in which vasoactive substances (e.g., histamines) are released.

**Symptoms.** Hypovolemic and cardiovascular shock are characterized by *decreased blood pressure (weak pulse) increased heart rate, pallor* with cold sweats (not observed with shock caused by vasodilatation), reduced urinary output (*oliguria*) and extreme *thirst*.

**Shock index.** The ratio of pulse rate (beats/min) to systolic blood pressure (mmHg), or *shock index*, provides a rough estimate of the extent of volume loss. An index of up to 0.5 indicates normal or < 10% blood loss; up to 1.0 = < 20–30% blood loss and impending shock; up to 1.5 = > 30–50% blood loss and manifest shock..

Most of the symptoms described reflect the **counterregulatory measures** taken by the

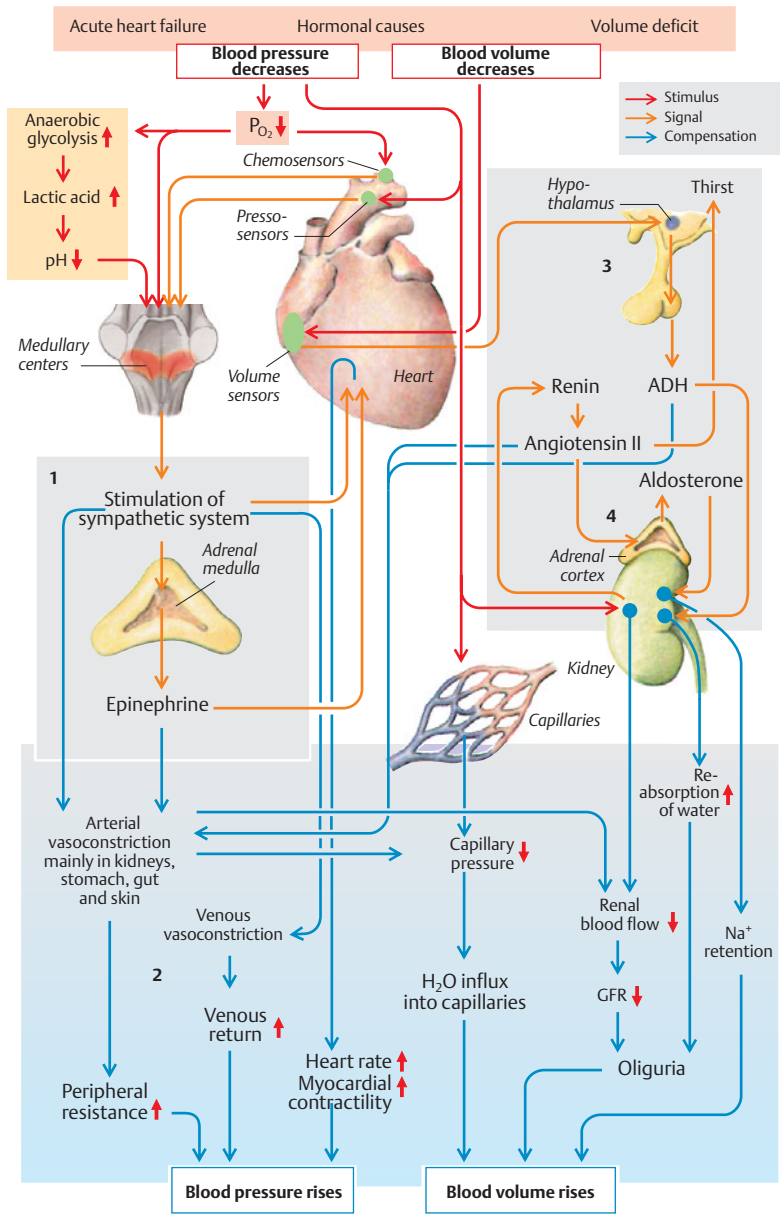
body during the *non-progressive phase* of shock in order to ward off progressive shock (→ **A**). Rapid-acting mechanisms for *raising the blood pressure* and slower-acting mechanisms to *compensate for volume losses* both play a role.

**Blood pressure compensation** (→ **A left**): A drop in blood pressure *increases sympathetic tonus* (→ **A1** and p. 214). *Arterial vasoconstriction* (absent in shock due to vasodilatation) shunts the reduced cardiac output from the skin (pallor), abdominal organs and kidneys (oliguria) to vital organs such as the coronary arteries and brain. This is known as **centralization of blood flow** (→ **A2**). Sympathetic constriction of venous capacitance vessels (which raises ventricular filling), tachycardia and positive inotropism increase the diminished cardiac output to a limited extent.

**Compensation for volume deficits** (→ **A, right**): When shock is imminent, the resultant drop in blood pressure and peripheral vasoconstriction lead to a *reduction of capillary filtration pressure*, allowing interstitial fluid to enter the bloodstream. Atrial stretch sensors detect the decrease in ECF volume (reduced atrial filling) and transmit signals to stop the atria from secreting atriopeptin (= ANP) and to start the secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) from the posterior lobe of the pituitary (*Gauer-Henry reflex*; → p. 170). ADH induces vasoconstriction ( $V_1$  receptors) and fluid retention ( $V_2$  receptors). The drop in renal blood pressure triggers an increase in *renin secretion* and activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone (RAA) system (→ p. 184). If these measures are successful in warding off the impending shock, the lost red blood cells are later replaced (via increased renal erythropoietin secretion, → p. 88) and the plasma protein concentration is normalized by increased hepatic synthesis.

**Manifest (or progressive) shock** will develop if these homeostatic compensation mechanisms are unable to prevent impending shock and the patient does not receive medical treatment (infusion, etc.). Severe hypotension (< 90 mmHg systolic or < 60 mmHg mean blood pressure) can persist for extended periods, even in spite of volume replacement. The resulting development of hypoxia leads to organ damage and **multiple organ failure**, ultimately culminating in **irreversible shock** and death.

**A. Compensation mechanisms for impending hypovolemic shock**



## Fetal and Neonatal Circulation

**Placenta.** The maternal placenta acts as the “gut” (absorption of nutrients), “kidneys” (removal of waste products) and “lungs” of the fetus (uptake of  $O_2$  and elimination of  $CO_2$ ). Although the *fetal  $O_2$ -hemoglobin dissociation curve* is shifted to the left compared to that of adults ( $\rightarrow$  p. 129 C), only 60% (0.6) of placental hemoglobin is saturated with  $O_2$  ( $\rightarrow$  A).

Fetal blood is distributed according to need. Inactive or hardly active organs receive little blood. The **fetal cardiac output** (from both ventricles) is about 0.2 L/min per kg body weight. The **fetal heart rate** rises from an initial 65  $\text{min}^{-1}$  (week 5) to 130–160  $\text{min}^{-1}$  in later weeks. Approx. 50% of the blood ejected from the heart flows through the placenta, the other half supplies the body (35%) and lungs (15%) of the fetus. This is supplied by the left and right heart, which function essentially *in parallel*. The serial connection of the systemic circulation to the pulmonary circuit (as in adults) is not fully necessary in the fetus.

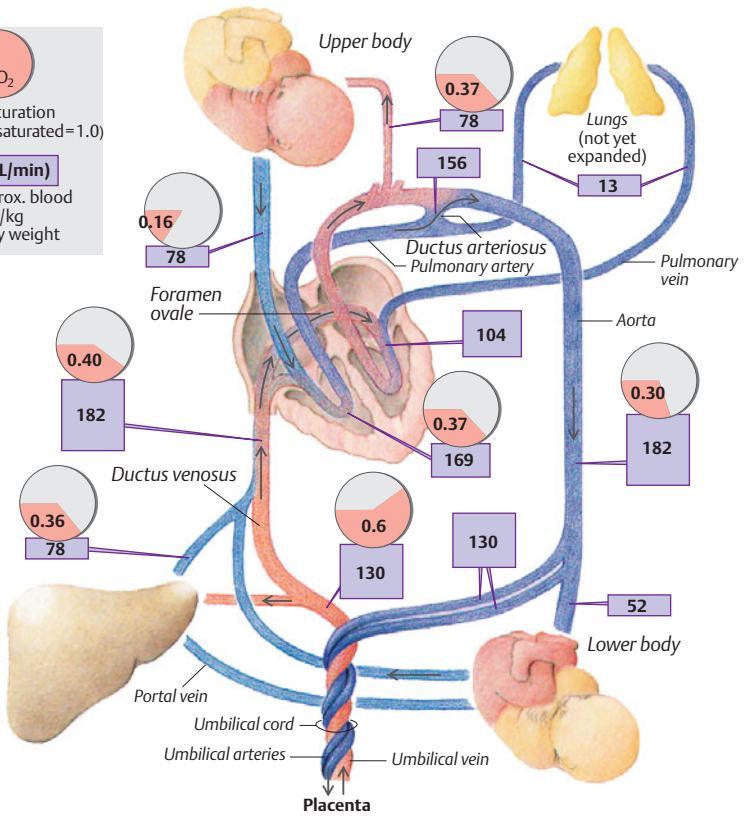
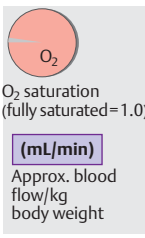
**Fetal circulation.** The blood flows through the fetal body as follows ( $\rightarrow$  A): After being *arterialized in the placenta*, the blood passes into the fetus via the *umbilical vein* and part of it travels through the **ductus venosus** (Arantii), thereby bypassing the liver. When entering the inferior vena cava, the blood *mixes with venous blood* from the lower half of the body. Guided by special folds in the vena cava, the mixed blood passes directly from right atrium to the left atrium through an opening in the atrial septum (**foramen ovale**). From the left atrium, it then proceeds to the left ventricle. While in the right atrium, the blood mingles with venous blood from the superior vena cava (only slight mixing), which is received by the right ventricle. Only about one-third of this blood reaches the lungs (due to high flow resistance since the lungs are not yet expanded, and due to hypoxic vasoconstriction,  $\rightarrow$  C and p. 122). The other two-thirds of the blood travels through the **ductus arteriosus** (Botalli) to the aorta (*right-to-left shunt*). Due to the low peripheral resistance (placenta), the **blood pressure** in the aorta is relatively low—only about 65 mmHg towards the end of pregnancy.

The arteries of the head and upper body are supplied with partly arterialized blood from the left ventricle ( $\rightarrow$  A). This is important since brain tissue is susceptible to hypoxia. The remaining blood leaves the aorta and mixes with venous blood from the ductus arteriosus. As a result, the blood supplied to the lower half of the body has a relatively low  $O_2$  concentration ( $O_2$  saturation = 0.3;  $\rightarrow$  A). The majority of this blood returns via the *umbilical arteries* to the placenta, where it is oxygenated again.

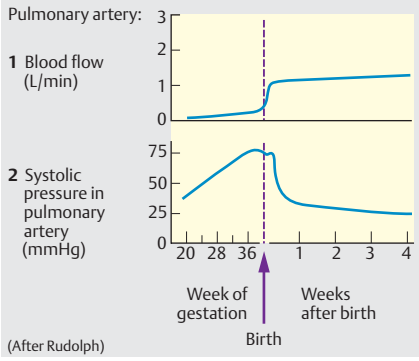
**Circulation during birth.** The exchange of  $O_2$ , nutrients, and waste materials through the placenta stops abruptly during birth. This leads to a rise in blood  $P_{CO_2}$ , triggering chemosensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 132) that induce a strong breathing reflex. The resultant *inspiratory movement* causes negative pressure (suction) in the thoracic cavity, which removes the blood from the placenta and umbilical vein (*placental transfusion*) and expands the lungs. The unfolding of the lungs and the rise in alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  reduces the resistance in the pulmonary circulation, and the blood flow increases while the pressure decreases ( $\rightarrow$  B1, 2). Meanwhile, the resistance in the systemic circulation increases due to occlusion or clamping of the umbilical cord. This changes the direction of blood flow in the **ductus arteriosus**, resulting in a *left-to-right shunt*. The pulmonary circulation therefore receives aortic blood for a few days after birth. The right atrial filling volume decreases due to the lack of placental blood, while that of the left atrium increases due to the increased pulmonary blood flow. Due to the resultant pressure gradient from the left to right atrium and to a decrease in vasodilatory prostaglandins, the **foramen ovale** usually closes within about 2 weeks after birth. The ductus arteriosus and ductus venosus also close, and the systemic and pulmonary circulation now form serial circuits.

**Shunts** occur when the foramen ovale or ductus arteriosus remains open, placing a strain on the heart. In **patent foramen ovale** (atrial septum defect), the blood flows from left atrium  $\rightarrow$  right atrium (left-to-right shunt)  $\rightarrow$  right ventricle (*volume overload*)  $\rightarrow$  lungs  $\rightarrow$  left atrium. In **patent ductus arteriosus**, the blood flows from aorta  $\rightarrow$  pulmonary artery (= left-to-right shunt)  $\rightarrow$  lungs (*pressure overload*)  $\rightarrow$  aorta.

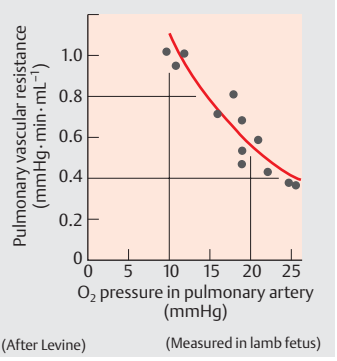
**A. Fetal circulation**



**B. Pulmonary circulation before and after birth**



**C. Hypoxic vasoconstriction in fetus**



## Thermal Balance

The body temperature of humans remains relatively constant despite changes in the environmental temperature. This **homeothermy** applies only to the **core temperature** ( $\approx 37^\circ\text{C}$ ) of the body. The extremities and skin (“*shell*”) exhibit **poikilothermy**, i.e., their temperature varies to some extent with environmental temperature. In order to maintain a constant core temperature, the body must balance the *amount of heat it produces and absorbs with the amount it loses*; this is **thermoregulation** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 224).

**Heat production.** The amount of heat produced is determined by **energy metabolism** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 228). At rest, approximately 56% of total heat production occurs in the internal organs and about 18% in the muscles and skin ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, top). During *physical exercise*, heat production increases several-fold and the percentage of heat produced by muscular work can rise to as much as 90% ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, bottom). To keep warm, the body may have to generate additional voluntary (limb movement) and involuntary (shivering) muscle contractions. Newborns also have tissue known as **brown fat**, which enables them to produce additional heat without shivering ( $\rightarrow$  p. 225). Cold stimulates a reflex pathway resulting in norepinephrine release ( $\beta_3$ -adrenergic receptors) in fatty tissues, which in turn stimulates (1) lipolysis and (2) the expression of **lipoprotein lipase (LPL)** and **thermogenin**. LPL increases the supply of free fatty acids ( $\rightarrow$  p. 254). Thermogenin localized in the inner mitochondrial membrane is an uncoupling protein that functions as an  $\text{H}^+$  uniporter (UCP1,  $\rightarrow$  p. 230). It short-circuits the  $\text{H}^+$  gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane ( $\rightarrow$  p. 17/B2), thereby uncoupling the (heat-producing) respiratory chain of ATP production.

Heat produced in the body is absorbed by the bloodstream and conveyed to the body surface. In order for this **internal flow of heat** to occur, the temperature of the body surface must be lower than that of the body interior. The *blood supply to the skin* is the chief determinant of heat transport to the skin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 224).

**Heat loss** occurs by the physical processes of radiation, conduction, convection, and evaporation ( $\rightarrow$  **B**).

**1. Radiation** ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**, **C**). The amount of heat lost by radiation from the skin is chiefly determined by the temperature of the radiator (fourth power of its absolute temperature). Heat net-radiates from the body surface to objects or individuals when they are cooler than the skin, and net-radiates to the body from objects (sun) that are warmer than the skin. Heat radiates from the body into the environment when no radiating object is present (night sky). Heat radiation does not require the aid of any vehicle and is hardly affected by the air temperature (air itself is a poor radiator). Therefore, the body loses heat to a cold wall (despite warm air in between) and absorbs radiation from the sun or an infrared radiator without air (space) or cold air, respectively, in between.

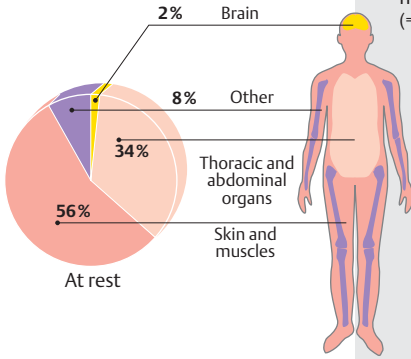
**2. Conduction and convection** ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**, **C**). These processes involve the transfer of heat from the skin to cooler air or a cooler object (e.g. sitting on rock) in contact with the body (**conduction**). The amount of heat lost by conduction to air increases greatly when the warmed air moves away from the body by natural **convection** (heated air rises) or forced convection (wind).

**3. Evaporation** ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**, **C**). The first two mechanisms alone are unable to maintain adequate temperature homeostasis at high environmental temperatures or during strenuous physical activity. Evaporation is the means by which the body copes with the additional heat. The water lost by evaporation reaches the skin surface by diffusion (**insensible perspiration**) and by neuron-activated **sweat glands** ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**, pp. 73ff. and 225 D). About 2428 kJ (580 kcal) of heat are lost for each liter of water evaporating and thereby cooling the skin. At temperatures above  $36^\circ\text{C}$  or so, heat loss occurs by evaporation only ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, right). At even higher environmental temperatures, heat is absorbed by radiation and conduction/convection. The body must lose larger amounts of heat by evaporation to make up for this. The surrounding air must be relatively dry in order for heat loss by evaporation to occur. Humid air retards evaporation. When the air is extremely humid (e.g., in a tropical rain forest), the average person cannot tolerate temperatures above  $33^\circ\text{C}$ , even under resting conditions.



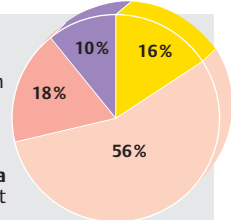
**A. Relative contribution of organs to body weight and heat production**

**1**  
Percentage of body weight  
(= 100%)

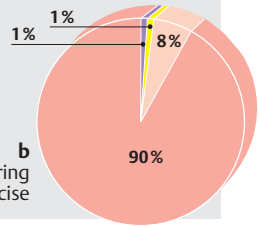


**2**  
Percentage of heat production  
(= 100%)

**a**  
At rest

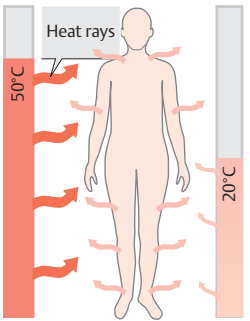


**b**  
During physical exercise

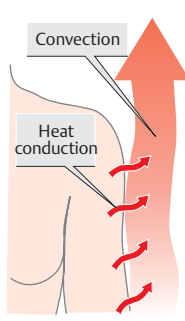


**B. Mechanisms of heat loss**

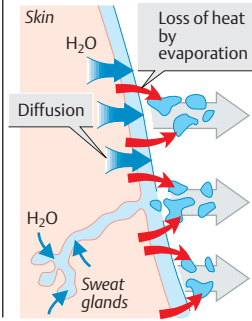
**1 Radiation**



**2 Conduction and convection**

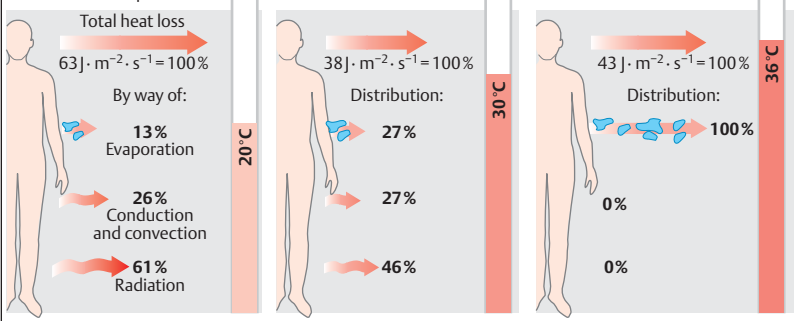


**3 Evaporation**



**C. Heat production at different environmental temperatures (uncloned, at rest)**

Room temperature



## Thermoregulation

Thermoregulation maintains the **core temperature** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) at a constant **set point** ( $\approx 37^\circ\text{C}$ ) despite fluctuations in heat absorption, production, and loss ( $\rightarrow$  p. 222). The core temperature exhibits *circadian variation*. It fluctuates by about  $0.6^\circ\text{C}$  and is lowest around 3 a.m., and highest around 6 p.m. ( $\rightarrow$  p. 381 C). The set point changes are controlled by an intrinsic *biological clock* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 334). Extended set-point fluctuations happen during the menstrual cycle ( $\rightarrow$  p. 299/A3) and fever.

The **control center** for body temperature and **central thermosensors** are located in the **hypothalamus** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 330). Additional thermosensors are located in the spinal cord and skin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 314). The control center compares the actual core temperature with the set-point value and initiates measures to counteract any deviations ( $\rightarrow$  **D** and p. 4f.).

When the **core temperature rises** above the set point (e.g., during exercise), the body increases the internal heat flow ( $\rightarrow$  p. 222) by *dilating the blood vessels* of the skin. Moreover, arteriovenous anastomoses open in the periphery, especially in the fingers. The blood volume transported per unit time then not only conveys more heat, but also reduces the countercurrent exchange of heat between the arteries and their accompanying veins ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). In addition, venous return in the extremities is *re-routed* from the deep, accompanying veins to the superficial veins. **Sweat secretion** also increases. The evaporation of sweat cools the skin, thereby creating the core/skin temperature gradient needed for the internal heat flow. **Central warm sensors** emit the signals that activate the sweat glands. (In this case, the thermosensors of the skin do not detect warmth because their environment is cooler than the core temperature). The efferent nerve fibers to the sweat glands are cholinergic fibers of the sympathetic nervous system ( $\rightarrow$  **D**).

**Acclimatization** to high environmental temperatures (e.g., in the tropics) is a slow process that often takes years. Characteristically, the sweat secretion rate rises, the salt content of the sweat decreases, and thirst and thus  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  intake increase.

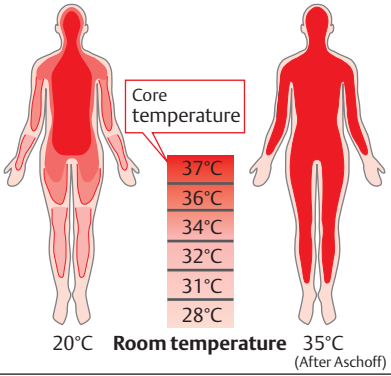
When the **core temperature falls** below set point, the body checks heat loss by constricting the blood vessels in the shell ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, left) and increases heat production by generating voluntary and involuntary (*shivering*) muscle activity ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). Although infants can quickly become hypothermic because of their high surface/volume ratio, their *brown fat* allows them to produce additional heat (*non-shivering thermogenesis*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 222). Upon exposure to low ambient temperatures, these three mechanisms are activated by the cold receptors of the skin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 314) *before* the core temperature falls.

The range of ambient temperatures between the sweating and shivering thresholds is known as the **thermoneutral zone**. It lies between ca.  $27^\circ\text{C}$  and  $32^\circ\text{C}$  in the nearly unclothed test subject. The only thermoregulatory measure necessary within this range is variation of blood flow to the skin. The narrow range of this zone shows the thermoregulatory importance of **behavior**. It involves choosing the appropriate clothing, seeking shade, heating or cooling our dwellings, etc. Behavioral adaptation is the chief factor in survival at extreme ambient temperatures ( $\rightarrow$  C).

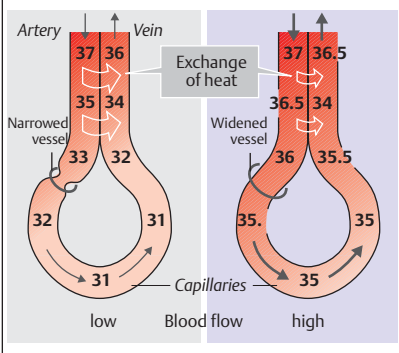
The thermoneutral zone is subjectively perceived as the **comfort zone**. 95% of all subjects wearing normal office attire and performing normal office activities perceive an indoor climate with the following conditions to be comfortable: ambient and radiant (wall) temperature  $\approx 23^\circ\text{C}$ , wind velocity  $< 0.1$  m/s, and relative humidity  $\approx 50\%$ . A resting, unclothed subject feels comfortable at about  $28^\circ\text{C}$  and ca.  $31^\circ\text{C}$  to  $36^\circ\text{C}$  in water depending on the thickness of subcutaneous fat (heat isolator).

**Fever**. *Exogenous* (e.g., bacteria) and *endogenous pyrogens* (various interleukins and other cytokines from macrophages) can cause the set-point temperature to rise above normal. This is triggered by prostaglandin  $\text{PGE}_2$  in the hypothalamus. In the initial phase of fever, the core temperature (although at its normal level) is too low compared to the elevated set-point. This results in shivering to raise the core temperature. As the fever decreases, i.e. the set-point returns toward the normal temperature, the core temperature is now too warm compared to the normalized set-point, resulting in vasodilatation and sweating to lower the core temperature again.

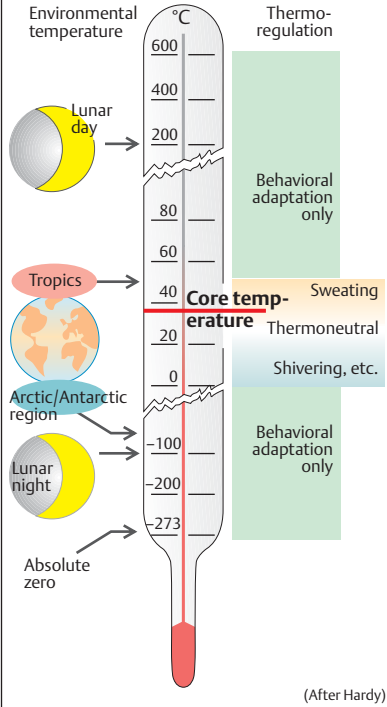
**A. Temperature zones of the body**



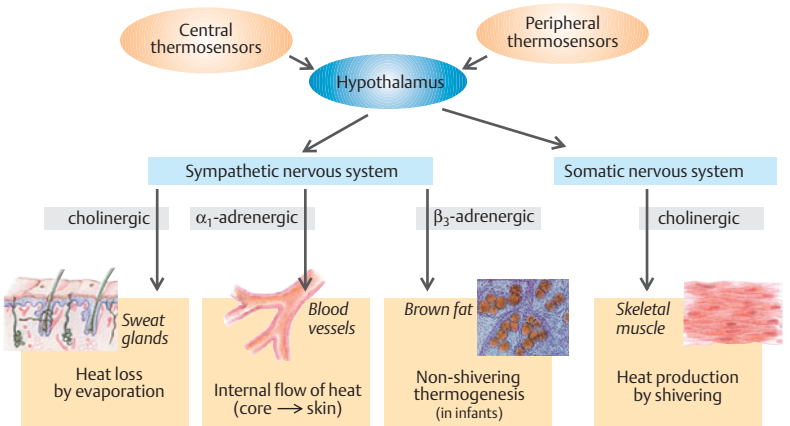
**B. Arteriovenous exchange of heat**



**C. Environmental temperature and temperature control**



**D. Neural factors affecting thermoregulation**



## Nutrition

An **adequate diet** must meet the body's energy requirements and provide a minimum of carbohydrates, proteins (incl. all essential amino acids) and fats (incl. essential fatty acids). Minerals (incl. trace elements), vitamins, and sufficient quantities of water are also essential. To ensure a normal passage time, especially through the colon, the diet must also provide a sufficient amount of *roughage* (indigestible plant fibers—cellulose, lignin, etc.).

The **total energy expenditure (TEE)** or *total metabolic rate* consists of (1) the *basal metabolic rate (BMR)*, (2) the *activity energy costs*, and the (3) *diet-induced thermogenesis (DIT)*; → p. 228, 231 A). TEE equals BMR when measured (a) in the morning (b) 20 h after the last meal, (3) resting, reclining, (4) at normal body temp., and (5) at a comfortable ambient temp. (→ p. 224). The BMR varies according to sex, age, body size and weight. The BMR for a young adult is ca. 7300 kJ/day ( $\approx$  1740 kcal/day; see p. 374 for units) in men, and ca. 20% lower in women. During **physical activity**, TEE increases by the following factors: 1.2-fold for sitting quietly, 3.2-fold for normal walking, and 8-fold for forestry work. Top athletes can perform as much as 1600 W ( $=$  J/s) for two hours (e.g., in a marathon) but their daily TEE is much lower. TEE also increases at various degrees of **injury** (1.6-fold for sepsis, 2.1-fold for burns), 1 °C of **fever** increases TEE 1.13-fold.

Protein, fats and carbohydrates are the three **basic energy substances** (→ B).

An adequate intake of **protein** is needed to maintain a proper *nitrogen balance*, i.e., balance of dietary intake and excretory output of nitrogen. The minimum requirement for protein is 0.5 g/kg BW per day (*functional minimum*). About half of dietary protein should be animal protein (meat, fish, milk and eggs) to ensure an adequate supply of *essential amino acids* such as histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, threonine, tryptophan and valine (children also require arginine). The content of most vegetable proteins is only about 50% of animal protein.

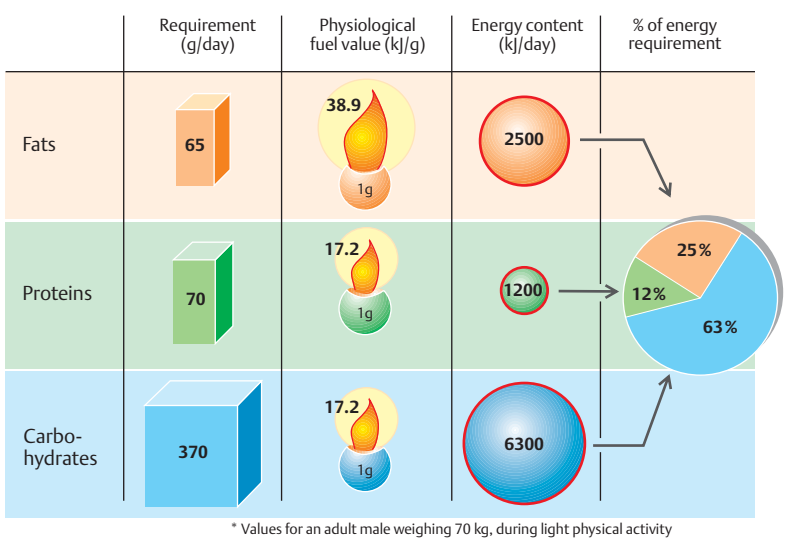
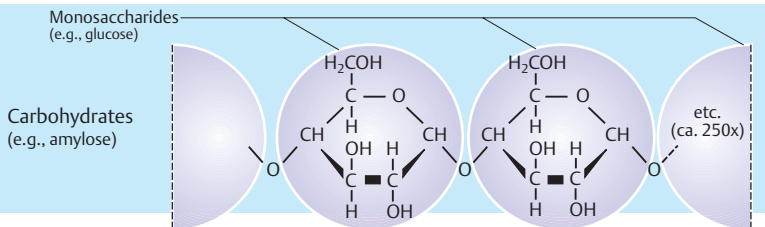
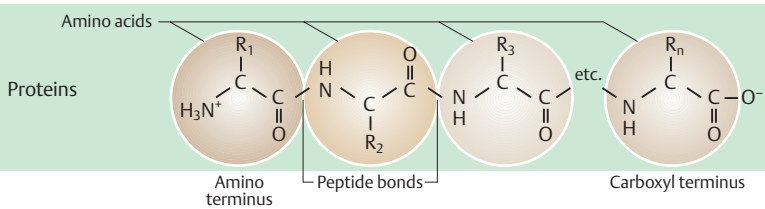
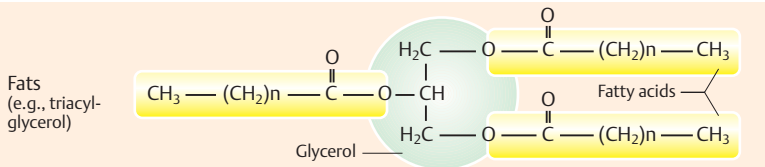
**Carbohydrates** (starch, sugar, glycogen) and **fats** (animal and vegetable fats and oils) pro-

vide the largest portion of the energy requirement. They are basically interchangeable sources of energy. The energy contribution of carbohydrates can fall to about 10% (normally 60%) before metabolic disturbances occur.

**Fat** is not essential provided the intake of *fat-soluble vitamins* (vitamins E, D, K and A) and *essential fatty acids* (linoleic acid) is sufficient. About 25–30% of dietary energy is supplied by fat (one-third of which is supplied as essential fatty acids; → A), although the proportion rises according to energy requirements (e.g., about 40% during heavy physical work). Western diets contain generally too much energy (more fats than carbohydrates!) considering the generally low level of physical activity of the Western lifestyle. Alcohol also contains superfluous energy (ca. 30 kJ/g = 7.2 kcal/g). The excessive intake of dietary energy leads to weight gain and obesity (→ p. 230).

An adequate intake of **minerals** (inorganic compounds), especially calcium (800 mg/day; → p. 290ff.), iron (10–20 mg/day; → p. 90) and iodine (0.15 mg/day; → p. 288), is essential for proper body function. Many **trace elements** (As, F, Cu, Si, V, Sn, Ni, Se, Mn, Mo, Cr, Co) are also essential. The normal diet provides sufficient quantities of them, but excessive intake has toxic effects.

**Vitamins** (A, B<sub>1</sub>, B<sub>2</sub>, B<sub>6</sub>, B<sub>12</sub>, C, D<sub>2</sub>, D<sub>3</sub>, E, H (biotin), K<sub>1</sub>, K<sub>2</sub>, folic acid, niacinamide, pantothenic acid) are compounds that play a vital role in metabolism (usually function as coenzymes). However, the body cannot produce (or sufficient quantities of) them. A deficiency of vitamins (hypovitaminosis) can lead to specific conditions such as night blindness (vit. A), scurvy (vit. C), rickets (vit. D = calciferol; → p. 292), anemia (vit. B<sub>12</sub> = cobalamin; folic acid; → p. 90), and coagulation disorders (vit. K; → p. 104). An excessive intake of certain vitamins like vitamin A and D, on the other hand, can be toxic (*hypervitaminosis*).

**A. Energy content of foodstuffs and energy requirement**

**B. Chemical structure of fats, proteins and carbohydrates**


## Energy Metabolism and Calorimetry

The chemical energy of foodstuffs is first converted into energy-rich substances such as **creatine phosphate** and **adenosine triphosphate (ATP)**. Energy, work and amount of heat are expressed in joules (J) or calories (cal) ( $\rightarrow$  p. 374). The energy produced by hydrolysis of ATP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 41) is then used to fuel muscle activity, to synthesize many substances, and to create concentration gradients (e.g.,  $\text{Na}^+$  or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  gradients;  $\rightarrow$  p. 26ff.). During all these energy conversion processes, part of the energy is always converted to *heat* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 38ff.).

In **oxidative (aerobic) metabolism** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 39 C), carbohydrates and fat combine with  $\text{O}_2$  to yield  $\text{CO}_2$ , water, high-energy compounds (ATP etc.) and heat. When a foodstuff is completely oxidized, its biologically useable energy content is therefore equivalent to its physical **caloric value (CV)**.

The **bomb calorimeter** ( $\rightarrow$  A), a device consisting of an insulated combustion chamber in a tank of water, is used to *measure the CV* of foodstuffs. A known quantity of a foodstuff is placed in the combustion chamber of the device and incinerated in pure  $\text{O}_2$ . The surrounding water heats up as it absorbs the heat of combustion. The degree of warming is equal to the caloric value of the foodstuff.

**Fats and carbohydrates** are completely oxidized to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in the body. Thus, their **physiological fuel value (PFV)** is identical to their CV. The mean PFV is 38.9 kJ/g (=9.3 kcal/g) for fats and 17.2 kJ/g (=4.1 kcal/g) for digestible carbohydrates ( $\rightarrow$  p. 227 A). In contrast, **proteins** are not completely broken down to  $\text{CO}_2$  and water in the human body but yield urea, which provides additional energy when it is oxidized in the bomb calorimeter. The CV of proteins (ca. 23 kJ/g) is therefore greater than their PFV, which is a mean of about 17.2 kJ/g or 4.1 kcal/g ( $\rightarrow$  p. 227 A).

At rest, most of the energy supplied by the diet is converted to **heat**, since hardly any external mechanical work is being performed. The heat produced is equivalent to the internal energy turnover (e.g., the work performed by the heart and respiratory muscles or expended for active transport or synthesis of substances).

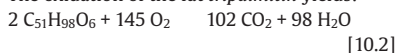
In **direct calorimetry** ( $\rightarrow$  B), the amount of heat produced is measured directly. The test subject, usually an experimental animal, is placed in a small chamber immersed in a known volume of ice. The amount of heat produced is equivalent to the amount of heat absorbed by the surrounding water or ice. This is respectively calculated as the rise in water temperature or the amount of ice that melts.

In **indirect calorimetry**, the amount of heat produced is determined indirectly by measuring the amount of  $\text{O}_2$  consumed ( $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 120). This method is used in humans. To determine the total metabolic rate (or TEE;  $\rightarrow$  p. 226) from  $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ , the **caloric equivalent (CE)** of a foodstuff oxidized in the subject's metabolism during the measurement must be known. The CE is calculated from the PFV and the amount of  $\text{O}_2$  needed to oxidize the food. The PFV of *glucose* is 15.7 kJ/g and 6 mol of  $\text{O}_2$  ( $6 \times 22.4 \text{ L}$ ) are required to oxidize 1 mol (=180 g) of glucose ( $\rightarrow$  C). The oxidation of 180 g of glucose therefore generates 2827 kJ of heat and consumes 134.4 L of  $\text{O}_2$  resulting in a CE of 21 kJ/L. This value represents the CE for glucose under standard conditions ( $0^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  C). The mean CE of the basic nutrients at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  is 18.8 kJ/L  $\text{O}_2$  (carbohydrates), 17.6 kJ/L  $\text{O}_2$  (fats) and 16.8 kJ/L  $\text{O}_2$  (proteins).

The oxidized nutrients must be known in order to calculate the metabolic rate from the CE. The **respiratory quotient (RQ)** is a rough measure of the nutrients oxidized.  $\text{RQ} = \dot{V}_{\text{CO}_2} / \dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 120). For pure carbohydrates oxidized,  $\text{RQ} = 1.0$ . This can be illustrated for *glucose* as follows:

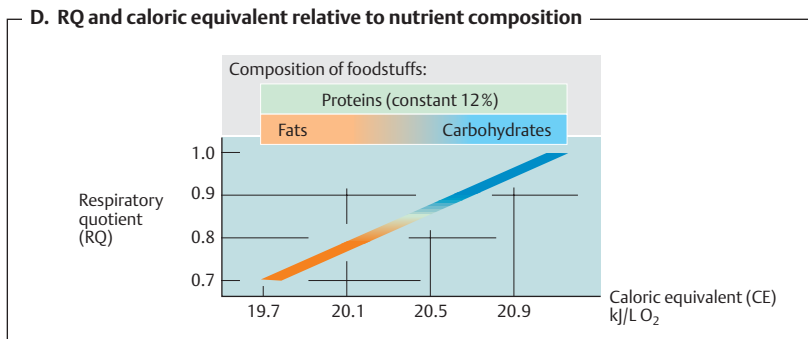
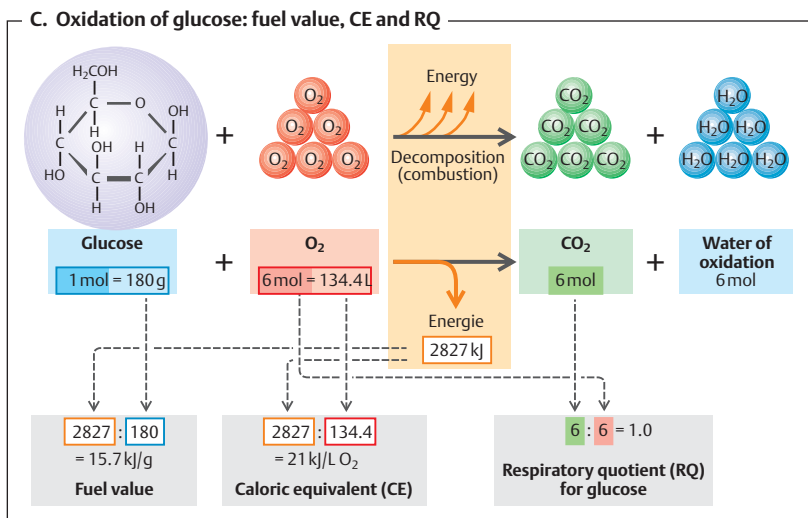
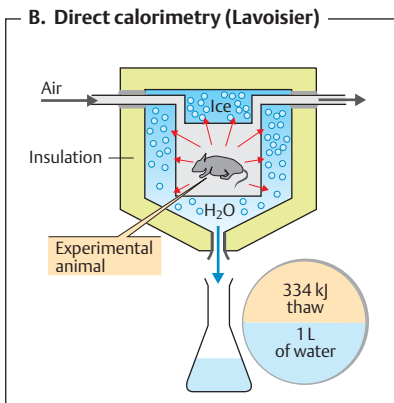
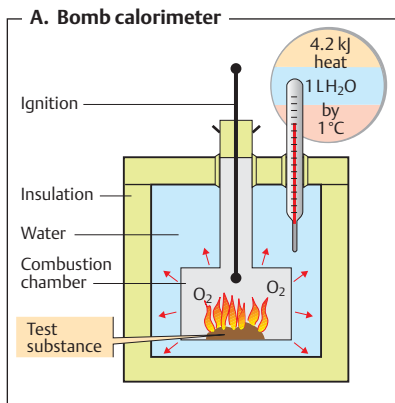


The oxidation of the fat *tripalmitin* yields:



The RQ of tripalmitin is therefore  $102/145 = 0.7$ . Since the protein fraction of the diet stays relatively constant, each RQ between 1 and 0.7 can be assigned a CE ( $\rightarrow$  D). Using the known CE, the TEE can be calculated as  $\text{CE} \cdot \dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ .

Food increases the TEE (**diet-induced thermogenesis, DIT**) because energy must be consumed to absorb and store the nutrients. The DIT of protein is higher than that of other substances, e.g., glucose.





## Energy Homeostasis and Body Weight

**Fat depots** are by far the body's largest **energy reserve**. Accurate long-term homeostasis of energy absorption and consumption is necessary to keep the size of the fat depots constant, i.e., to maintain *lipostasis*. Considering that a person's body weight (BW) mainly varies with the weight of the fat depots, it is obvious that energy homeostasis is synonymous with the **regulation of body weight** ( $\rightarrow$  A).

The **body mass index (BMI)** is commonly used to determine whether an individual is underweight, overweight or in the normal weight range. BMI is calculated from body weight (kg) and height (m) as follows:

$$\text{BMI} = (\text{weight}/\text{height})^2 \quad [10.3]$$

The normal BMI range is 19–24 in women and 20–25 in men. The "normal" BMI range is defined as the values at which the mean life expectancy is highest. An abnormally high body mass index (BMI > 24 or 25 = overweight; BMI > 30 = obesity) reduces the life expectancy since this is often associated with diabetes mellitus (type II), hypertension and cardiac disease.

The following **regulatory mechanisms** serve to keep the fat depots and thus the body weight constant ( $\rightarrow$  B):

- ◆ The **hypothalamus**, the center responsible for feedback control of BW, maintains communication with the limbic system, cerebral cortex and brain stem. It sends and receives:

- ◆ *Afferent messages* concerning the size of fat depots. **Leptin**, a 16-kDa proteohormone produced by fat cells, is the main indicator for this. The plasma leptin concentration rises as fat cell mass increases.

- ◆ *Efferent commands* (a) to reduce nutrient absorption and increase energy consumption when plasma leptin are high ("fat reserve high!"), and (b) to increase nutrient absorption and decrease energy consumption when plasma leptin levels are low ("fat reserve low!") ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**Leptin receptors.** Leptin binds with *type b leptin receptors (Ob-Rb)* of the hypothalamus (mainly in dorsomedial, ventromedial, lateral, paraventricular and arcuate nuclei). Certain neurons with Ob-Rb lie in front of the blood-brain barrier. (T lymphocytes and B cells of the pancreas are also equipped with Ob-Rb receptors.)

**Effects of leptin.** In contrast to primary starvation, the *weight loss* induced by leptin is restricted to the body's fat depots and completes the feedback loop of the regulatory process. The effects of leptin are chiefly mediated by two neurotransmitters located in the hypothalamus:  $\alpha$ -MSH and NPY ( $\rightarrow$  B).

- ◆  $\alpha$ -MSH. Leptin stimulates the release of  $\alpha$ -MSH ( $\alpha$ -melanocyte-stimulating hormone), one of the melanocortins (MC) synthesized from POMC ( $\rightarrow$  p. 280).  $\alpha$ -MSH inhibits the absorption of nutrients and increases sympathetic nervous activity and energy consumption via MC4 receptors in various areas of the hypothalamus.

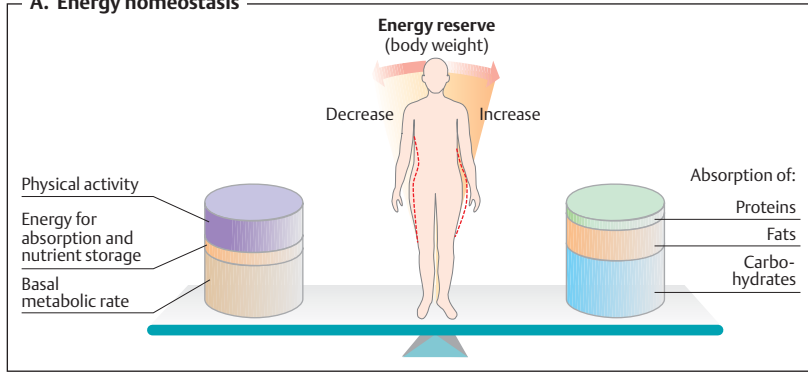
The **mechanism** by which  $\alpha$ -MSH increases energy consumption is not entirely clear, but an involuntary increase in ordinary skeletal muscle activity and tone appears to occur. In addition, **uncoupling proteins** (type UCP2 and UCP3) that were recently discovered in skeletal muscle and white fat make the membranes of the mitochondria more permeable to  $H^+$ , thereby uncoupling the respiratory chain. As a result, chemical energy is converted into more heat and less ATP. The action of these UCPs, the expression of which may be stimulated by  $\alpha$ -MSH, is therefore similar to that of thermogenin (UCP1;  $\rightarrow$  p. 222).

- ◆ NPY. Leptin inhibits the hypothalamic release of NPY (neuropeptide Y), a neuropeptide that stimulates hunger and appetite, increases the parasympathetic activity and reduces energy consumption.

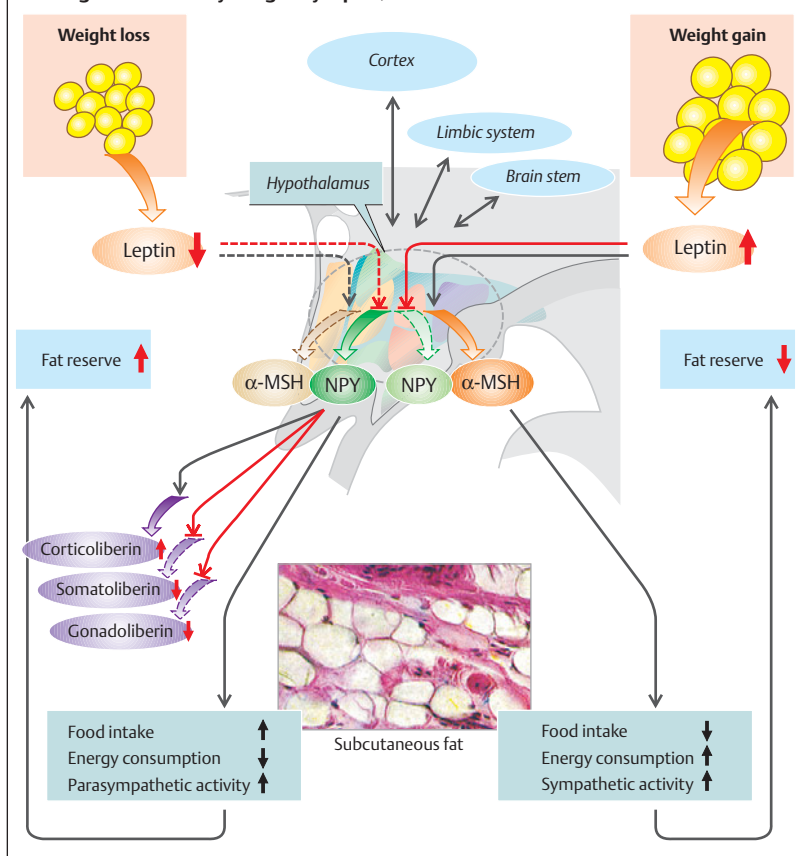
**Leptin deficiency.** Since NPY increases the secretion of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), extreme weight loss results in *amenorrhea* ( $\rightarrow$  B). Certain *genetic defects* can lead to impaired leptin production (*ob* [obesity] gene) or impaired leptin receptor function (*db* [diabetes] gene). The symptoms include arrested development in puberty and childhood *obesity*.

Other neurotransmitters and neuropeptides also play a role in the long-term regulation of fat depots. Some like *orexin A/B* and *norepinephrine* ( $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors) are **orexigenic**, i.e. they stimulate the appetite, while others like CCK, CRH, CART (cocaine and amphetamine-regulated transcript), insulin, and serotonin are **anorexigenic**. Peptides like CCK, GLP-1 (glucagon-like peptide amides), somatostatin, glucagon, and GRP (gastrin-releasing peptide) signal *satiety*, i.e., that one has had enough to eat. Together with gustatory stimuli and stretch receptors of the stomach wall, these **satiety peptides** help to limit the amount of food consumed with each meal.

**A. Energy homeostasis**



**B. Regulation of body weight by leptin,  $\alpha$ -MSH and NPY**



## Gastrointestinal (GI) Tract: Overview, Immune Defense, Blood Flow

Food covering the body's energy and nutrient requirements ( $\rightarrow$  p. 228ff.) must be swallowed, processed and broken down (**digestion**) before it can be **absorbed** from the intestines. The three-layered GI **musculature** ensures that the GI contents are properly mixed and transported. The **passage time** through the different GI segments varies and is largely dependent on the composition of the food (see **A** for mean passage times).

Solid food is chewed and mixed with **saliva**, which lubricates it and contains immunocompetent substances (see below) and enzymes. The **esophagus** rapidly transports the food bolus to the stomach. The lower esophageal sphincter opens only briefly to allow the food to pass. The **proximal stomach** mainly serves as a food reservoir. Its tone determines the rate at which food passes to the **distal stomach**, where it is further processed (chyme formation) and its proteins are partly broken down. The distal stomach (including the pylorus) is also responsible for portioning chyme delivery to the small intestine. The stomach also secretes **intrinsic factor** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 90).

In the **small intestine**, enzymes from the **pancreas** and small intestinal mucosa break down the nutrients into absorbable components.  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in pancreatic juices neutralizes the acidic chyme. Bile salts in **bile** are essential for fat digestion. The products of digestion (monosaccharides, amino acids, dipeptides, monoglycerides and free fatty acids) as well as water and vitamins are absorbed in the small intestine.

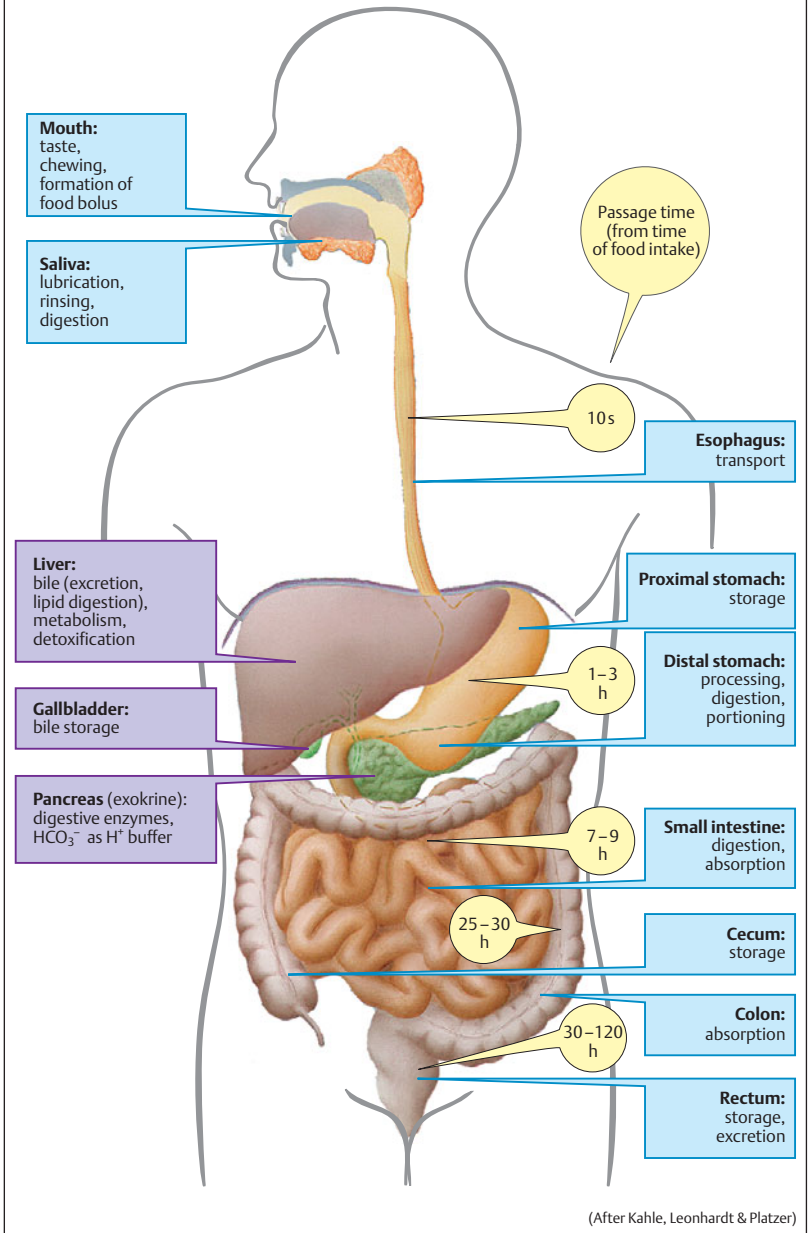
**Waste products** (e.g. bilirubin) to be excreted reach the feces via bile secreted by the **liver**. The liver has various other metabolic functions. It serves, for example, as an obligatory relay station for metabolism and distribution of substances reabsorbed from the intestine (via the portal vein, see below), synthesizes plasma proteins (incl. albumin, globulins, clotting factors, apolipoproteins etc.) and detoxifies foreign substances (**biotransformation**) and metabolic products (e.g., ammonia) before they are excreted.

The **large intestine** is the last stop for water and ion absorption. It is colonized by **bacteria** and contains storage areas for feces (**cecum**, **rectum**).

**Immune defense.** The large internal surface area of the GI tract (roughly  $100 \text{ m}^2$ ) requires a very effective immune defense system. Saliva contains **mucins**, **immunoglobulin A (IgA)** and **lysozyme** that prevent the penetration of pathogens. **Gastric juice** has a bactericidal effect. **Peyer's patches** supply the GI tract with immunocompetent lymph tissue. **M cells** (special membranous cells) in the mucosal epithelium allow antigens to enter Peyer's patches. Together with **macrophages**, the Peyer's patches can elicit immune responses by secreting **IgA** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 98). IgA is transported to the intestinal lumen by transcytosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 30). In the epithelium, IgA binds to a secretory component, thereby protecting it from digestive enzymes. Mucosal epithelium also contains **intraepithelial lymphocytes (IEL)** that function like T killer cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 98). Transmitter substances permit reciprocal communication between IEL and neighboring enterocytes. Macrophages of the hepatic sinusoids (**Kupffer's cells**) are additional bastions of immune defense. The physiological colonies of **intestinal flora** in the large intestine prevent the spread of pathogens. IgA from breast milk protects the GI mucosa of neonates.

**Blood flow** to the stomach, gut, liver, pancreas and spleen (roughly 30% of cardiac output) is supplied by the three main branches of the abdominal aorta. The intestinal circulation is regulated by local reflexes, the autonomic nervous system, and hormones. Moreover, it is **autoregulatory**, i.e., largely independent of systemic blood pressure fluctuations. Blood flow to the intestines rises sharply after meals (acetylcholine, vasoactive intestinal peptide VIP, etc. function as vasodilatory transmitters) and falls during physical activity (transmitters: norepinephrine, etc.). The venous blood carries substances reabsorbed from the intestinal tract and enters the liver via the **portal vein**. Some components of reabsorbed fat are absorbed by the **intestinal lymph**, which transports them to the greater circulation while bypassing the liver.

**A. Function of gastrointestinal organs**



## Neural and Hormonal Integration

Endocrine and paracrine hormones and neurotransmitters control GI *motility*, *secretion*, *perfusion* and *growth*. Reflexes proceed within the mesenteric and submucosal plexus (*enteric nervous system, ENS*), and external innervation modulates ENS activity.

**Local reflexes** are triggered by stretch sensors in the walls of the esophagus, stomach and gut or by chemosensors in the mucosal epithelium and trigger the contraction or relaxation of neighboring smooth muscle fibers. *Peristaltic reflexes* extend further towards the oral (ca. 2 mm) and anal regions (20–30 mm). They are mediated in part by interneurons and help to propel the contents of the lumen through the GI tract (*peristalsis*).

**External innervation** of the GI tract (cf. p. 78ff.) comes from the *parasympathetic nervous system* (from lower esophagus to ascending colon) and *sympathetic nervous system*. Innervation is also provided by *visceral afferent fibers* (in sympathetic or parasympathetic nerves) through which the afferent impulses for *supraregional reflexes* flow.

ENS function is largely independent of external innervation, but **external innervation** has some advantages (a) rapid transfer of signals between relatively distant parts of the GI tract via the abdominal ganglia (short visceral afferents) or CNS (long visceral afferents); (b) GI tract function can be ranked subordinate to overall body function (c) GI tract activity can be processed by the brain so the body can become aware of them (e.g., stomach ache).

**Neurotransmitters.** *Norepinephrine (NE)* is released by the adrenergic postganglionic neurons, and *acetylcholine (ACh)* is released by pre- and postganglionic (enteric) fibers (→ p. 78ff.). *VIP* (vasoactive intestinal peptide) mediates the relaxation of circular and vascular muscles of the GI tract. **Met- and leu-enkephalin** intensify contraction of the pyloric, ileocecal and lower esophageal sphincters by binding to opioid receptors. **GRP** (gastrin-releasing peptide) mediates the release of gastrin. **CGRP** (calcitonin gene-related peptide) stimulates the release of somatostatin (**SIH**).

All **endocrine hormones** effective in the GI tract are *peptides* produced in endocrine cells

of the mucosa. (a) *Gastrin* and *cholecystokinin (CCK)* and (b) *secretin* and **GIP** are structurally similar; so are glucagon (→ p. 282ff.) and **VIP**. High concentrations of hormones from the same family therefore have very similar effects.

**Gastrin** occurs in short (G17 with 17 amino acids, AA) and long forms (G34 with 34 AA). G17 comprises 90% of all antral gastrin. Gastrin is secreted in the antrum and duodenum. Its release (→ **A1**) via *gastrin-releasing peptide (GRP)* is subject to neuronal control; gastrin is also released in response to stomach wall stretching and protein fragments in the stomach. Its secretion is inhibited when the pH of the gastric/duodenal lumen falls below 3.5 (→ **A1**). The main effects of gastrin are acid secretion and gastric mucosal growth (→ **A2**).

**Cholecystokinin, CCK** (33 AA) is produced throughout small intestinal mucosa. Long-chain fatty acids, AA and oligopeptides in the lumen stimulate the release of CCK (→ **A1**). It causes the gallbladder to contract and inhibits emptying of the stomach. In the pancreas, it stimulates growth, production of enzymes and secretion of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (via secretin, see below) (→ **A2**).

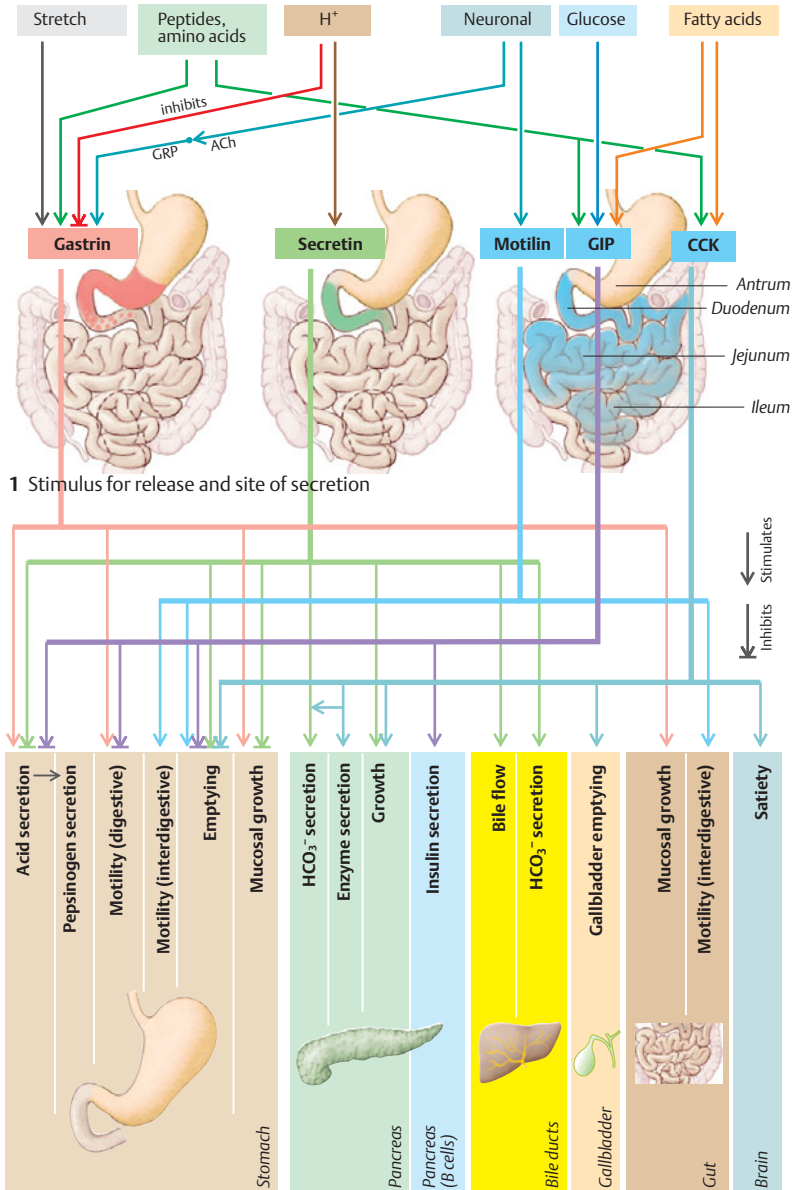
**Secretin** (27 AA) is mainly produced in the duodenum. Its release is stimulated by acidic chyme (→ **A1**). Secretin inhibits acid secretion and gastric mucosal growth and stimulates  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secretion (potentiated by CCK), pancreatic glucose and hepatic bile flow (→ **A2**).

**GIP** (glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide, 42 AA; formerly called gastric inhibitory polypeptide = enterogastrone) is produced in the duodenum and jejunum and released via protein, fat and carbohydrate fragments (e.g., glucose) (→ **A1**). GIP inhibits acid secretion (→ **A2**) and stimulates insulin release (this is why oral glucose releases more insulin than intravenous glucose).

**Motilin** (22 AA) is released by neurons in the small intestine and regulates interdigestive motility (→ **A1, 2**).

**Paracrine transmitters.** Histamine, somatostatin and prostaglandin are the main paracrine transmitters in the GI tract.

**A. Gastrointestinal hormones**



## Saliva

The **functions** of saliva are reflected by its constituents. *Mucins* serve to lubricate the food, making it easier to swallow, and to keep the mouth moist to facilitate masticatory and speech-related movement. Saliva *dissolves* compounds in food, which is a prerequisite for taste buds stimulation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 338) and for dental and oral hygiene. Saliva has a *low NaCl* concentration and is *hypotonic*, making it suitable for rinsing of the taste receptors (NaCl) while eating. Infants need saliva to seal the lips when suckling. Saliva also contains  $\alpha$ -amylase, which starts the digestion of starches in the mouth, while *immunoglobulin A* and *lysozyme* are part of the immune defense system ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.). The high  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  concentration in saliva results in a pH of around 7, which is optimal for  $\alpha$ -amylase-catalyzed digestion. Swallowed saliva is also important for buffering the acidic gastric juices refluxed into the esophagus ( $\rightarrow$  p. 238). The secretion of profuse amounts of saliva before vomiting also prevents gastric acid from damaging the enamel on the teeth. Saliva secretion is very dependent on the body water content. A low content results in decreased saliva secretion—the mouth and throat become dry, thereby evoking the sensation of *thirst*. This is an important mechanism for maintaining the fluid balance ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 168 and 184).

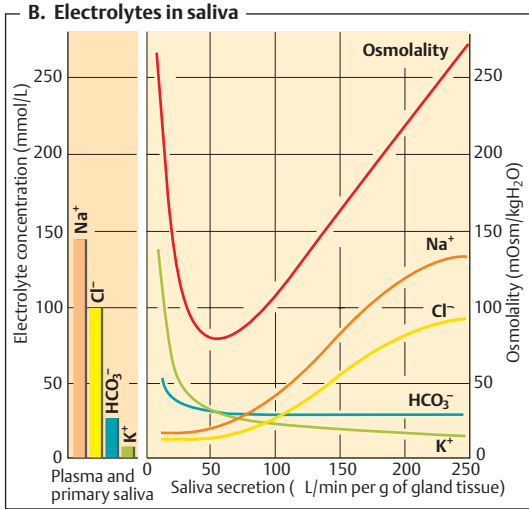
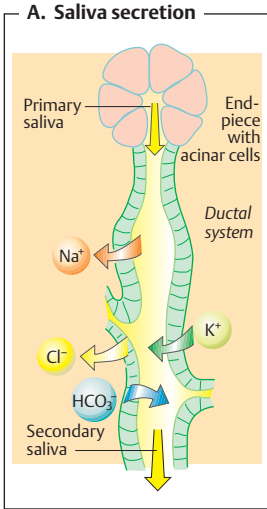
**Secretion rate.** The rate of saliva secretion varies from 0.1 to 4 mL/min (10–250  $\mu\text{L}/\text{min}$  per gram gland tissue), depending on the degree of stimulation ( $\rightarrow$  B). This adds up to about 0.5 to 1.5 L per day. At 0.5 mL/min, 95% of this rate is secreted by the *parotid gland* (serous saliva) and *submandibular gland* (mucin-rich saliva). The rest comes from the sublingual glands and glands in the buccal mucosa.

**Saliva secretion** occurs in *two steps*: The *acini (end pieces)* produce **primary saliva** ( $\rightarrow$  A, C) which has an electrolyte composition similar to that of plasma ( $\rightarrow$  B). Primary saliva secretion in the acinar cells is the result of *transcellular  $\text{Cl}^-$  transport*:  $\text{Cl}^-$  is actively taken up into the cells (secondary active transport) from the blood by means of a  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+\text{-2Cl}^-$  cotransport carrier and is released into the lumen (together with  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ) via anion chan-

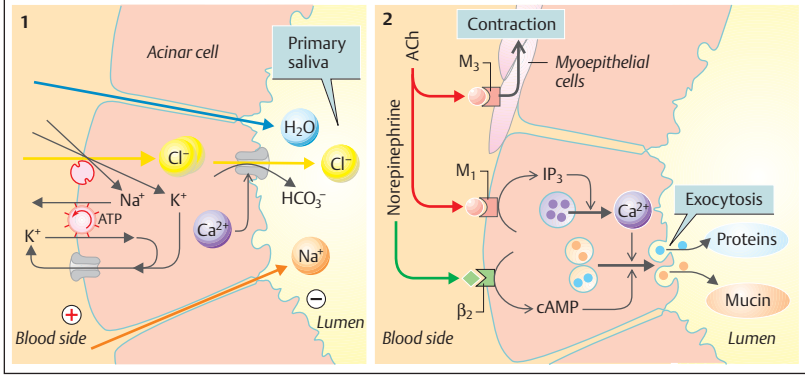
nels, resulting in a lumen-negative trans-epithelial potential (LNTP) that drives  $\text{Na}^+$  paracellularly into the lumen. Water also follows passively (osmotic effect). Primary saliva is modified in **excretory ducts**, yielding **secondary saliva**. As the saliva passes through the excretory ducts,  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  are reabsorbed and  $\text{K}^+$  and (carbonic anhydrase-dependent)  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is secreted into the lumen. The saliva becomes *hypotonic* (far below 100 mOsm/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  B) because  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  reabsorption is greater than  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secretion and the ducts are relatively impermeable to water ( $\rightarrow$  B). If the secretion rate rises to values much higher than 100  $\mu\text{L}/(\text{min} \cdot \text{g})$ , these processes lag behind and the composition of secondary saliva becomes similar to that of primary saliva ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**Salivant stimuli.** *Reflex stimulation* of saliva secretion occurs in the larger salivary glands ( $\rightarrow$  D). Salivant stimuli include the smell and taste of food, tactile stimulation of the buccal mucosa, mastication and nausea. *Conditioned reflexes* also play a role. For instance, the routine clattering of dishes when preparing a meal can later elicit a salivant response. Sleep and dehydration inhibit saliva secretion. Saliva secretion is stimulated via the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems ( $\rightarrow$  C2):

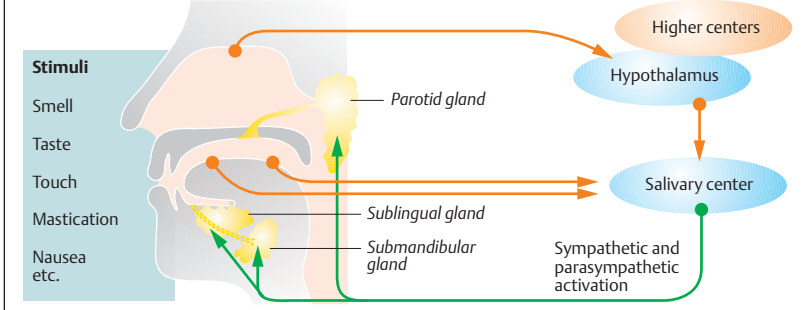
- ◆ **Norepinephrine** triggers the secretion of highly viscous saliva with a high concentration of mucin via  $\beta_2$  adrenoreceptors and cAMP. *VIP* also increases the cAMP concentration of acinar cells.
- ◆ **Acetylcholine**: (a) With the aid of  $\text{M}_1$  cholinergic receptors and  $\text{IP}_3$  ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 82 and 274), acetylcholine mediates an increase in the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration of acinar cells. This, in turn, increases the conductivity of luminal anion channels, resulting in the production of watery saliva and increased exocytosis of salivary enzymes. (b) With the aid of  $\text{M}_3$  cholinergic receptors, ACh mediates the contraction of *myoepithelial cells* around the acini, leading to emptying of the acini. (c) ACh enhances the production of kallikreins, which cleave *bradykinin* from plasma kininogen. Bradykinin and *VIP* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 234) dilate the vessels of the salivary glands. This is necessary because maximum saliva secretion far exceeds resting blood flow.



### C. (1) Mechanism and (2) control of saliva secretion in acinar cells



### D. Stimulation of saliva secretion





## Deglutition

The upper third of the esophageal wall consists of striated muscle, the rest contains smooth muscle. During the process of swallowing, or deglutition, the tongue pushes a bolus of food into the throat ( $\rightarrow$  A1). The nasopharynx is reflexively blocked, ( $\rightarrow$  A2), respiration is inhibited, the vocal chords close and the epiglottis seals off the trachea ( $\rightarrow$  A3) while the *upper esophageal sphincter* opens ( $\rightarrow$  A4). A peristaltic wave forces the bolus into the stomach ( $\rightarrow$  A5, B1,2). If the bolus gets stuck, stretching of the affected area triggers a *secondary peristaltic wave*.

The **lower esophageal sphincter** opens at the start of deglutition due to a *vagovagal reflex* (*receptive relaxation*) mediated by VIP- and NO-releasing neurons ( $\rightarrow$  B3). Otherwise, the lower sphincter remains closed to prevent the reflux of aggressive gastric juices containing pepsin and HCl.

**Esophageal motility** is usually checked by measuring pressure in the lumen, e.g., during a peristaltic wave ( $\rightarrow$  B1–2). The resting pressure within the lower sphincter is normally 20–25 mmHg. During receptive relaxation, esophageal pressure drops to match the low pressure in the proximal stomach ( $\rightarrow$  B3), indicating opening of the sphincter. In *achalasia*, receptive relaxation fails to occur and food collects in the esophagus.

**Pressure** in the lower esophageal sphincter is *decreased* by VIP, CCK, NO, GIP, secretin and progesterone ( $\rightarrow$  p. 234) and *increased* by acetylcholine, gastrin and motilin. Increased abdominal pressure (external pressure) also increases sphincter pressure because part of the lower esophageal sphincter is located in the abdominal cavity.

**Gastroesophageal reflux.** The sporadic reflux of gastric juices into the esophagus occurs fairly often. Reflux can occur while swallowing (lower esophageal sphincter opens for a couple of seconds), due to unanticipated pressure on a full stomach or to *transient opening of the sphincter* (lasts up to 30 seconds and is part of the *eructation reflex*). Gastric reflux greatly reduces the pH in the distal esophagus.

**Protective mechanisms** to prevent damage to the esophageal mucosa after gastroesophageal reflux include 1. **Volume clearance**, i.e., the rapid return of refluxed fluid to the stomach via the esophageal peristaltic reflex. A refluxed volume of 15 mL, for example, remains in the

esophagus for only 5 to 10 s (only a small amount remains). 2. **pH clearance.** The pH of the residual gastric juice left after volume clearance is still low, but is gradually increased during each act of swallowing. In other words, the saliva that is swallowed buffers the residual gastric juice.

## Vomiting

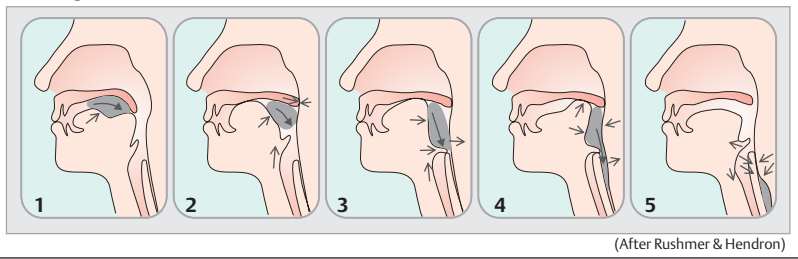
Vomiting mainly serves as a *protective reflex* but is also an important clinical symptom of conditions such as intracranial bleeding and tumors. The act of vomiting is heralded by **nausea**, increased salivation and retching ( $\rightarrow$  C). The **vomiting center** is located in the medulla oblongata within the reticular formation. It is mainly controlled by chemosensors of the *area postrema*, which is located on the floor of the fourth ventricle; this is called the *chemosensory trigger zone* (CTZ). The blood-brain barrier is less tight in the area postrema.

The **CTZ** is **activated** by nicotine, other toxins, and dopamine agonists like apomorphine (used as an emetic). Cells of the CTZ have receptors for neurotransmitters responsible for their neuronal control. The vomiting center can also be activated independent of the CTZ, for example, due to abnormal stimulation of the organ of balance (*kinesia, motion sickness*), overextension of the stomach or intestines, delayed gastric emptying and inflammation of the abdominal organs. Nausea and vomiting often occur during the first trimester of pregnancy (*morning sickness*) and can exacerbate to *hyperemesis gravidarum* leading to vomiting-related disorders (see below).

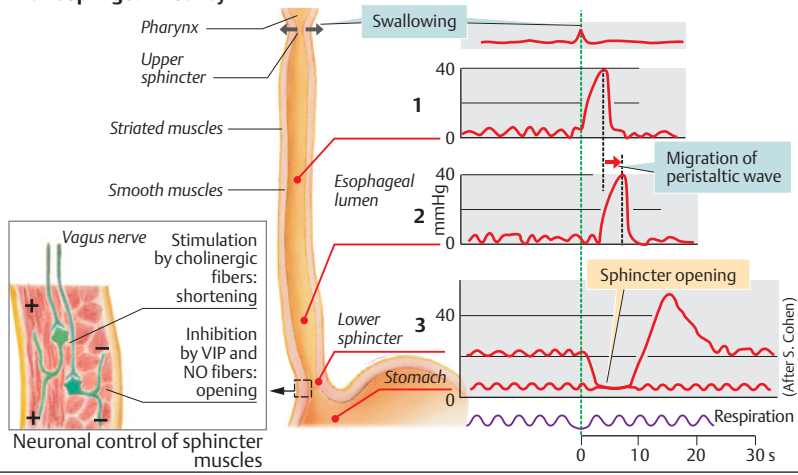
During the **act of vomiting**, the diaphragm remains in the inspiratory position and the abdominal muscles quickly contract exerting a high pressure on the stomach. Simultaneous contraction of the duodenum blocks the way to the gut; the lower esophageal sphincter then relaxes, resulting in ejection of the stomach contents via the esophagus.

The sequelae of **chronic vomiting** are attributable to reduced food intake (*malnutrition*) and the related loss of gastric juices, swallowed saliva, fluids and intestinal secretions. In addition to *hypovolemia*, non-respiratory *alkalosis* due to the loss of gastric acid (10–100 mmol H<sup>+</sup>/L gastric juice) also develops. This is accompanied by *hypokalemia* due to the loss of K<sup>+</sup> in the vomitus (nutrients, saliva, gastric juices) and urine (hypovolemia-related *hyperaldosteronism*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 180 ff.).

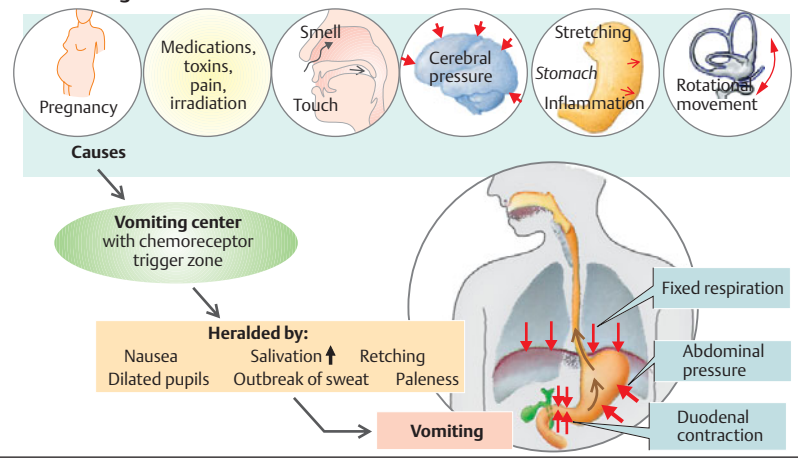
**A. Deglutition**



**B. Esophageal motility**



**C. Vomiting**



## Stomach Structure and Motility

**Structure.** The *cardia* connects the esophagus to the upper stomach (*fundus*), which merges with the body (*corpus*) followed by the *antrum* of the stomach. The lower outlet of the stomach (*pylorus*) merges with the duodenum (→ **A**). Stomach **size** is dependent on the degree of gastric filling, but this distension is mainly limited to the proximal stomach (→ **A, B**). The stomach **wall** has an outer layer of longitudinal muscle fibers (only at curvatures; regulates stomach length), a layer of powerful circular muscle fibers, and an inner layer of oblique muscle fibers. The mucosa of the **tubular glands** of the fundus and corpus contain *chief cells (CC)* and *parietal cells (PC)* (→ **A**) that produce the constituents of gastric juice (→ p. 242). The gastric mucosa also contains *endocrine cells* (that produce gastrin in the antrum, etc.) and *mucous neck cells (MNC)*.

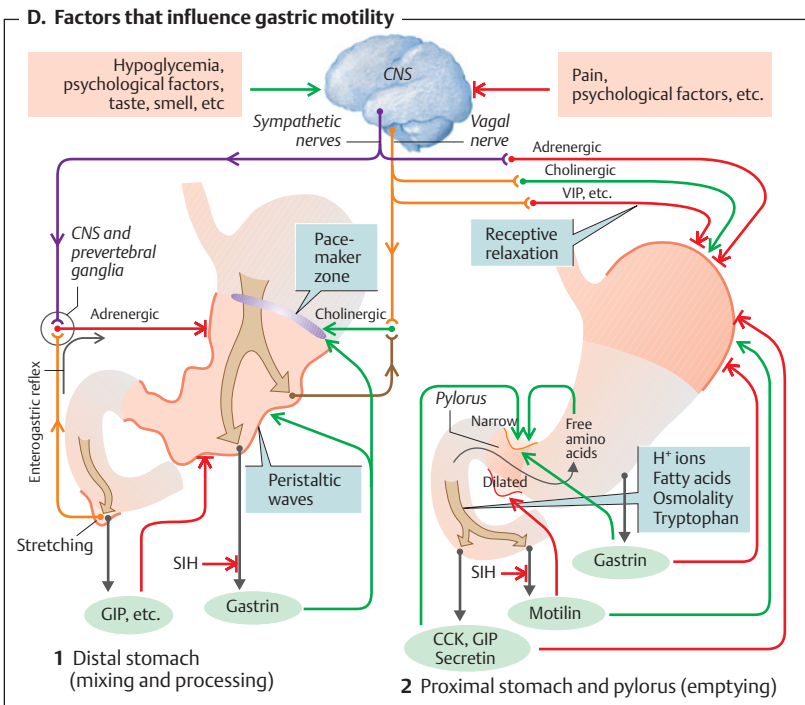
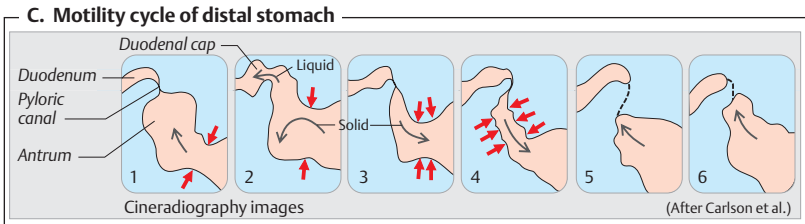
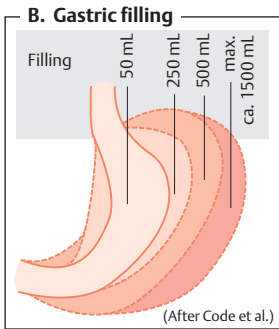
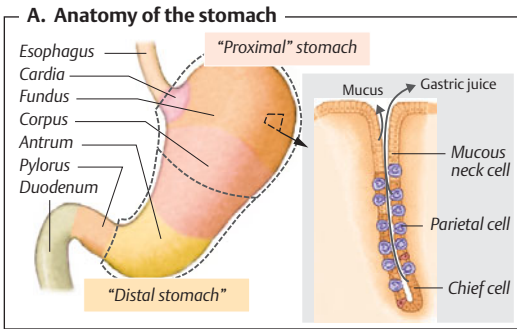
**Functional anatomy.** The stomach can be divided into a proximal and a distal segment (→ **A**). A vagovagal reflex triggered by swallowing a bolus of food causes the lower esophageal sphincter to open (→ p. 238) and the **proximal stomach** to dilate for a short period (*receptive relaxation*). This continues when the food has entered the stomach (*vagovagal accommodation reflex*). As a result, the internal pressure hardly rises in spite of the increased filling. Tonic contraction of the proximal stomach, which mainly serves as a *reservoir*, slowly propel the gastric contents to the **distal stomach**. Near its upper border (middle third of the corpus) is a *pacemaker zone* (see below) from which peristaltic waves of contraction arise due mainly to local stimulation of the stomach wall (in response to reflex stimulation and gastrin; → **D1**). The peristaltic waves are strongest in the antrum and spread to the pylorus. The chyme is thereby driven towards the pylorus (→ **C5, 6, 1**), then compressed (→ **C2, 3**) and propelled back again after the pylorus closes (→ **C3, 4**). Thereby, the food is *processed*, i.e., *ground*, mixed with gastric juices and digested, and fat is *emulsified*.

The distal stomach contains **pacemaker cells** (*interstitial Cajal cells*), the membrane potential of which oscillates roughly every 20 s, producing characteristic *slow waves* (→ p. 244). The velocity (0.5–4 cm/s) and amplitude

(0.5–4 mV) of the waves increases as they spread to the pylorus. Whether and how often contraction follows such an excitatory wave depends on the sum of all neuronal and hormonal influences. Gastrin increases the response frequency and the pacemaker rate. Other hormones like GIP inhibit this motility directly, whereas somatostatin (SIH) does so indirectly by inhibiting the release of GRP (→ **D1** and p. 234).

**Gastric emptying.** Solid food remains in the stomach until it has been broken down into small particles (diameter of < 1 mm) and suspended in chyme. The chyme then passes to the duodenum. The time required for 50% of the ingested volume to leave the stomach varies, e.g., 10–20 min for water and 1–4 hours for solids (carbohydrates < proteins < fats). Emptying is mainly dependent on the *tone of the proximal stomach* and *pylorus*. *Motilin stimulates* emptying of the stomach (tone of proximal stomach rises, pylorus dilates), whereas decreases in the pH or osmolality of chyme or increases in the amount of long-chain free fatty acids or (aromatic) amino acids *inhibit* gastric emptying. Chemosensitive enterocytes and brush cells of the small intestinal mucosa, entero gastric reflexes and certain hormones (CCK, GIP, secretin and gastrin; → p. 234) mediate these regulatory activities (→ **D2**). The **pylorus** is usually slightly open during the process (free flow of “finished” chyme). It contracts only 1) at the end of “antral systole” (see above) in order to retain solid food and 2) when the duodenum contracts in order to prevent the reflux of harmful bile salts. If such reflex does occur, refluxed free amino acids not normally present in the stomach elicit reflex closure of the pylorus (→ **D2**).

**Indigestible substances** (bone, fiber, foreign bodies) do not leave the stomach during the digestive phase. Special contraction waves called *migrating motor complexes (MMC)* pass through the stomach and small intestine roughly every 1.5 hours during the ensuing **interdigestive phase**, as determined by an intrinsic “biological clock.” These peristaltic waves transport indigestible substances from the stomach and bacteria from the small intestine to the large intestine. This “clearing phase” is controlled by *motilin*.



## Gastric Juice

The *tubular glands* of the gastric fundus and corpus secrete 3–4 L of gastric juice each day. *Pepsinogens* and *lipases* are released by chief cells and *HCl* and *intrinsic factor* (→ p. 260) by parietal cells. *Mucins* and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  are released by mucous neck cells and other mucous cells on the surface of the gastric mucosa.

**Pepsins** function as endopeptidases in protein digestion. They are split from pepsinogens exocytosed from chief cells in the glandular and gastric lumen at a pH of < 6. Acetylcholine (ACh), released locally in response to  $\text{H}^+$  (and thus indirectly also to gastrin) is the chief activator of this reaction.

**Gastric acid.** The pH of the gastric juice drops to ca. 0.8 during peak HCl secretion. Swallowed food buffers it to a pH of 1.8–4, which is optimal for most pepsins and gastric lipases. The low pH contributes to the *denaturation* of dietary proteins and has a *bactericidal effect*.

**HCl secretion** (→ A). The  $\text{H}^+/\text{K}^+ \text{-ATPase}$  in the luminal membrane of parietal cells drives  $\text{H}^+$  ions into the glandular lumen in exchange for  $\text{K}^+$  (primary active transport, → A1 and p. 26), thereby raising the  $\text{H}^+$  conc. in the lumen by a factor of ca.  $10^7$ .  $\text{K}^+$  taken up in the process circulates back to the lumen via *luminal  $\text{K}^+$  channels*. For every  $\text{H}^+$  ion secreted, one  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  ion leaves the blood side of the cell and is exchanged for a  $\text{Cl}^-$  ion via an *anion antiporter* (→ A2). (The  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  ions are obtained from  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{OH}^-$ , a reaction catalyzed by carbonic anhydrase, CA). This results in the intracellular accumulation of  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions, which diffuse out of the cell to the lumen via  *$\text{Cl}^-$  channels* (→ A3). Thus, one  $\text{Cl}^-$  ion reaches the lumen for each  $\text{H}^+$  ion secreted.

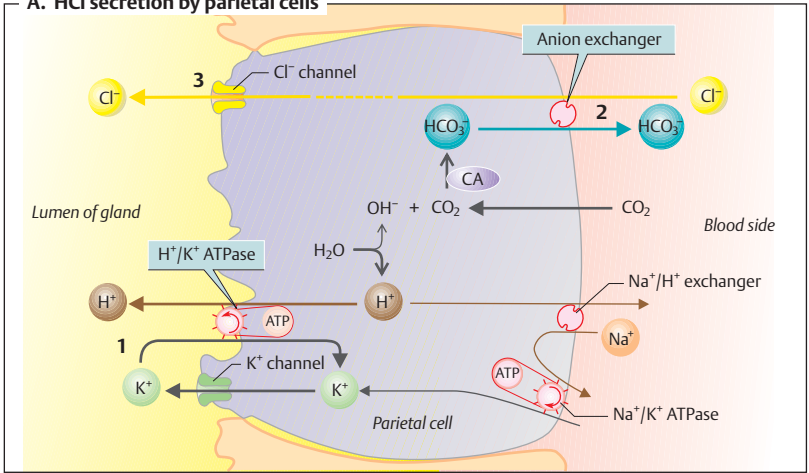
The **activation of parietal cells** (see below) leads to the opening of *canaliculi*, which extend deep into the cell from the lumen of the gland (→ B). The canaliculi are equipped with a brush border that greatly increases the luminal surface area which is densely packed with membrane-bound  $\text{H}^+/\text{K}^+$  ATPase molecules. This permits to increase the secretion of  $\text{H}^+$  ions from 2 mmol/hour at rest to over 20 mmol/hour during digestion.

**Gastric acid secretion is stimulated** in phases by neural, local gastric and intestinal factors (→ B). Food intake leads to reflex secretion of gastric juices, but deficient levels of glucose in the brain can also trigger the reflex. The optic, gustatory and olfactory nerves are the afferents for this partly *conditioned reflex* (→ p. 236), and efferent impulses flow via the *vagus nerve*. ACh directly activates parietal cells in the fundus ( $\text{M}_3$  cholinceptors → B2). GRP (gastrin-releasing peptide) released by neurons stimulates gastrin secretion from G cells in the antrum (→ B3). Gastrin released in to the systemic circulation in turn activates the parietal cells via  $\text{CCK}_B$  receptors (= gastrin receptors). The glands in the fundus contain H (histamine) cells or ECL cells (enterochromaffin-like cells), which are activated by gastrin ( $\text{CCK}_B$  receptors) as well as by ACh and  $\beta_3$  adrenergic substances (→ B2). The cells release *histamine*, which has a paracrine effect on neighboring parietal cells ( $\text{H}_2$  receptor). Local gastric and intestinal factors also influence gastric acid secretion because chyme in the antrum and duodenum stimulates the secretion of gastrin (→ B1 and p. 235, A).

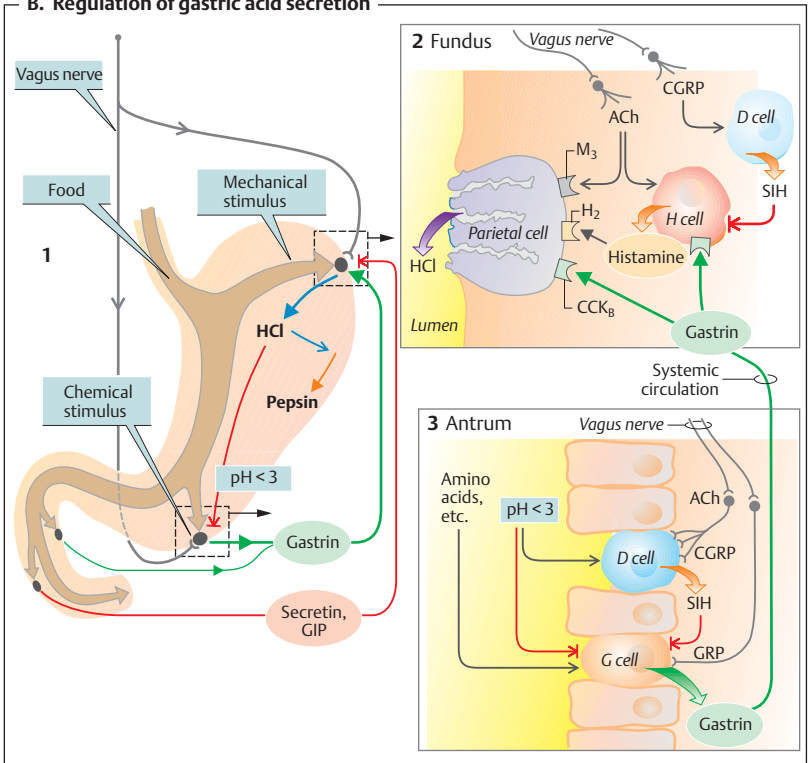
**Factors that inhibit gastric juice secretion:** (a) A pH of < 3.0 in the antral lumen inhibits **G cells** (negative feedback, → B1, 3) and activates antral **D cells**, which secrete SIH (→ p. 234), which in turn has a paracrine effect. SIH inhibits **H cells** in the fundus as well as G cells in the antrum (→ B2, 3). CGRP released by neurons (→ p. 234) activates D cells in the antrum and fundus, (→ B2, 3). (c) Secretin and GIP released from the small intestine have a retrograde effect on gastric juice secretion (→ B1). This adjusts the composition of chyme from the stomach to the needs of the small intestine.

**Protection of the gastric mucosa** from destructive gastric juices is chiefly provided by (a) a *layer of mucus* and (b)  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secretion by the underlying mucous cells of the gastric mucosa.  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  diffuses through the layer of mucus and buffers the acid that diffuses into it from the lumen. *Prostaglandins*  $\text{PGE}_2$  and  $\text{PGI}_2$  promote the secretion of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ . Anti-inflammatory drugs that inhibit cyclooxygenase 1 and thus prostaglandin production (→ p. 269) impair this mucosal protection and can result in ulcer development.

**A. HCl secretion by parietal cells**



**B. Regulation of gastric acid secretion**



## Small Intestinal Function

The main function of the small intestine (SI) is to finish digesting the food and to absorb the accumulated breakdown products as well as water, electrolytes and vitamins.

**Structure.** The SI of live human subjects is about 2 m in length. It arises from the pylorus as the *duodenum* and continues as the *jejunum*, and ends as the *ileum*, which merges into the large intestine. From outside inward, the SI consists of an outer serous coat (*tunica serosa*, → **A1**), a layer of *longitudinal muscle fibers* (→ **A2**), the *myenteric plexus* (Auerbach's plexus, → **A3**), a layer of circular muscle fibers (→ **A4**), the *submucous plexus* (Meissner's plexus, → **A5**) and a *mucosa layer* (*tunica mucosa*, → **A6**), which is covered by epithelial cells (→ **A13–15**). The SI is supplied with blood vessels (→ **A8**), lymph vessels (→ **A9**), and nerves (→ **A10**) via the *mesentery* (→ **A7**). The surface area of the epithelial-luminal interface is roughly 300–1600 times larger ( $> 100 \text{ m}^2$ ) than that of a smooth cylindrical pipe because of the *Kerckring's folds* (→ **A11**), the *intestinal villi* (→ **A12**), and the *enterocytic microvilli*, or the *brush border* (→ **A13**).

**Ultrastructure and function.** *Goblet cells* (→ **A15**) are interspersed between the resorbing *enterocytes* (→ **A14**). The mucus secreted by goblet cells acts as a protective coat and lubricant. *Intestinal glands* (crypts of Lieberkühn, → **A16**) located at the bases of the villi contain (a) undifferentiated and mitotic cells that differentiate into villous cells (see below), (b) mucous cells, (c) endocrine and paracrine cells that receive information about the composition of chyme from chemosensor cells, and (d) immune cells (→ p. 232). The chyme composition triggers the secretion of endocrine hormones and of paracrine mediators (→ p. 234). The tubuloacinar *duodenal glands* (Brunner's glands), located deep in the intestinal wall (*tela submucosa*) secrete a  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ -rich fluid containing urogastrone (*human epidermal growth factor*), an important stimulator of epithelial cell proliferation.

**Cell replacement.** The tips of the villi are continually shed and replaced by new cells from the crypts of Lieberkühn. Thereby, the entire SI epithelium is renewed every 3–6 days. The dead cells disintegrate in the lumen, thereby releasing enzymes, stored iron, etc.

**Intestinal motility** is autonomously regulated by the enteric nervous system, but is influenced by hormones and external innervation (→ p. 234). Local *pendular movements* (by longitudinal muscles) and *segmentation* (contraction/relaxation of circular muscle fibers) of the SI serve to mix the intestinal contents and bring them into contact with the mucosa. This is enhanced by movement of the intestinal villi (*lamina muscularis mucosae*). *Reflex peristaltic waves* (30–130 cm/min) propel the intestinal contents towards the rectum at a rate of ca. 1 cm/min. These waves are especially strong during the interdigestive phase (→ p. 240).

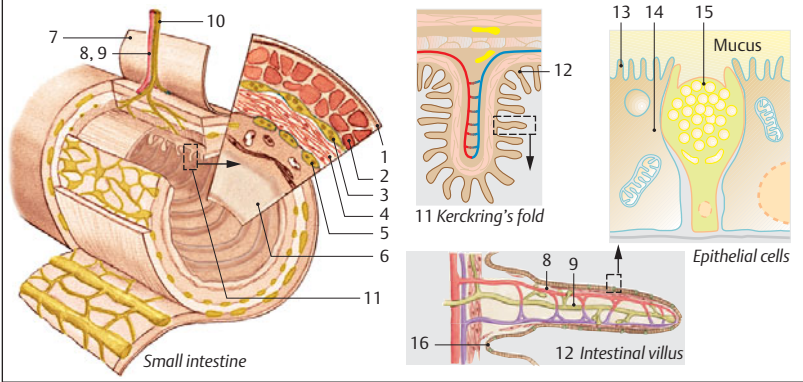
**Peristaltic reflex.** Stretching of the intestinal wall during the passage of a bolus (→ **B**) triggers a reflex that constricts the lumen behind the bolus and dilates that ahead of it. Controlled by interneurons, cholinergic type 2 motoneurons with prolonged excitation simultaneously activate circular muscle fibers behind the bolus and longitudinal musculature in front of it. At the same time the circular muscle fibers in front of the bolus are inhibited (accommodation) while those behind it are disinhibited (→ **B** and p. 234).

**Pacemakers.** The intestine also contains pacemaker cells (*interstitial Cajal cells*). The membrane potential of these cells oscillates between 10 and 20 mV every 3–15 min, producing *slow waves* (→ **C1**). Their amplitude can rise (less negative potential) or fall in response to neural, endocrine or paracrine stimuli. A series of action potentials (spike bursts) are fired once the membrane potential rises above a certain threshold (ca.  $-40 \text{ mV}$ ) (→ **C2**). *Muscle spasms* occur if the trough of the wave also rises above the threshold potential (→ **C3**).

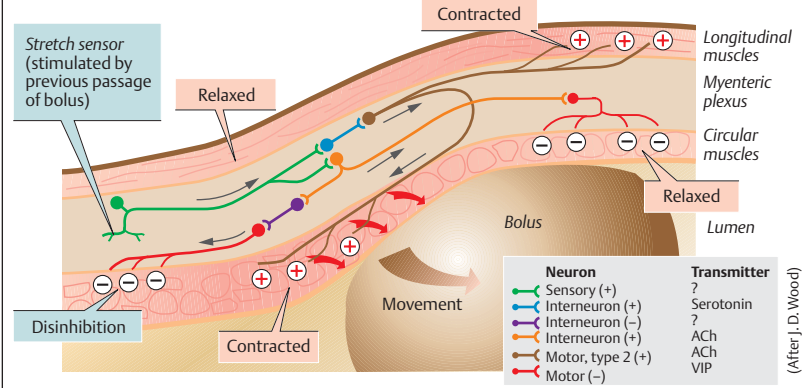
**Impulse conduction.** The spike bursts are conducted to myocytes via *gap junctions* (→ p. 70). The myocytes then contract rhythmically at the same frequency (or slower). Conduction in the direction of the anus dwindles after a certain distance (→ **D**, pacemaker zone), so more distal cells (with a lower intrinsic rate) must assume the pacemaker function. Hence, peristaltic waves of the small intestine only move in the anal direction.



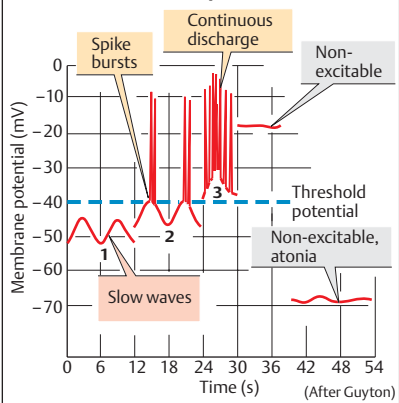
**A. Structure of the small intestine (schematic)**



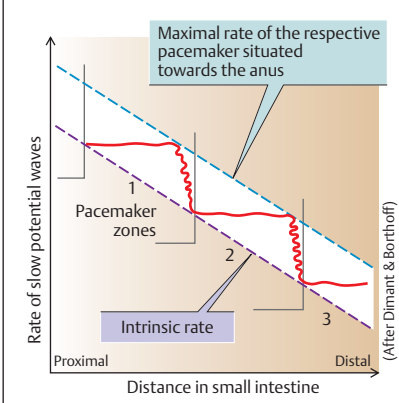
**B. Peristaltic reflex**



**C. Slow waves and spikes**



**D. Pacemaker rate**





## Pancreas

The *exocrine part* of the pancreas secretes 1–2 L of pancreatic juice into the duodenum each day. The pancreatic juice contains *bicarbonate* ( $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ), which neutralizes (pH 7–8) HCl-rich chyme from the stomach, and mostly inactive precursors of *digestive enzymes* that break down proteins, fats, carbohydrates and other substances in the small intestine.

**Pancreatic secretions** are similar to saliva in that they are produced in two stages: (1)  $\text{Cl}^-$  is secreted in the **acini** by active secondary transport, followed by passive transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water ( $\rightarrow$  p. 237 C1). The electrolyte composition of these *primary secretions* corresponds to that of plasma ( $\rightarrow$  **A1** and **A2**). Primary pancreatic secretions also contain *digestive proenzymes* and other proteins (exocytosis;  $\rightarrow$  p. 30). (2)  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is added to the primary secretions (in exchange for  $\text{Cl}^-$ ) in the **secretory ducts**;  $\text{Na}^+$  and water follow by passive transport. As a result, the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  concentration of pancreatic juice rises to over 100 mmol/L, while the  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration falls ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Unlike saliva ( $\rightarrow$  p. 237 B), the osmolality and  $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$  concentrations of the pancreatic juice remain constant relative to plasma ( $\rightarrow$  **A1** and **A2**). Most of the pancreatic juice is secreted during the digestive phase ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**).

$\text{HCO}_3^-$  is secreted from the luminal membrane of the ductules via an anion exchanger that simultaneously reabsorbs  $\text{Cl}^-$  from the lumen ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**).  $\text{Cl}^-$  returns to the lumen via a  $\text{Cl}^-$  channel, which is more frequently opened by **secretin** to ensure that the amount of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secreted is not limited by the availability of  $\text{Cl}^-$  ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**). In **cystic fibrosis** (mucoviscidosis), impairment of this CFTR channel (cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator) leads to severe disturbances of pancreatic function. The  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  involved is the product of the  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{OH}^-$  reaction catalyzed by carbonic anhydrase (CA). For each  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  molecule secreted, one  $\text{H}^+$  ion leaves the cell on the blood side via an  $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$  exchanger ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**).

Pancreatic juice **secretion is controlled** by cholinergic (vagal) and hormonal mechanisms (CCK, secretin). Vagal stimulation seems to be enhanced by  $\text{CCK}_A$  receptors in cholinergic fibers of the acini ( $\rightarrow$  **A2,3, B, C** and p. 234). Fat in the chyme stimulates the release of CCK, which, in turn, increases the (*pro*)enzyme con-

tent of the pancreatic juice ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). Trypsin in the small intestinal lumen deactivates CCK release via a feedback loop ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). **Secretin** increases  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  and water secretion by the ductules. CCK and acetylcholine (ACh) potentiate this effect by raising the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. Secretin and CCK also affect the pancreatic enzymes.

**Pancreatic enzymes** are essential for digestion. They have a pH optimum of 7–8. Insufficient  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  secretion (e.g., in cystic fibrosis) results in inadequate neutralization of chyme and therefore in impaired digestion.

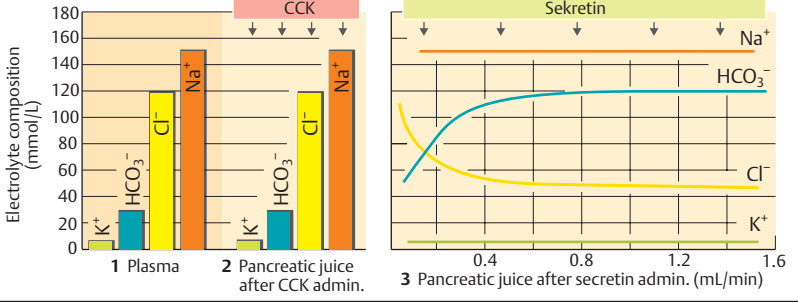
**Proteolysis** is catalyzed by proteases, which are secreted in their inactive form, i.e., as *proenzymes*: *trypsinogen 1–3*, *chymotrypsinogen A and B*, *proelastase 1 and 2* and *procarboxypeptidase A1, A2, B1 and B2*. They are not activated until they reach the intestine, where an *enteropeptidase* first converts trypsinogen to **trypsin** ( $\rightarrow$  **D**), which in turn converts chymotrypsinogen into active *chymotrypsin*. Trypsin also activates many other pancreatic proenzymes including proelastases and procarboxypeptidases. Pathological activation of the proenzymes within the pancreas causes the organ to digest itself (*acute pancreatic necrosis*). Trypsins, chymotrypsins and elastases are *endoproteases*, i.e., they split certain peptide bonds within protein chains. Carboxypeptidases A and B are *exopeptidases*, i.e., they split amino acids off the carboxyl end of the chain.

**Carbohydrate catabolism.**  $\alpha$ -Amylase is secreted in active form and splits starch and glycogen into maltose, maltotriose and  $\alpha$ -limit dextrin. These products are further digested by enzymes of the intestinal epithelium ( $\rightarrow$  p. 259).

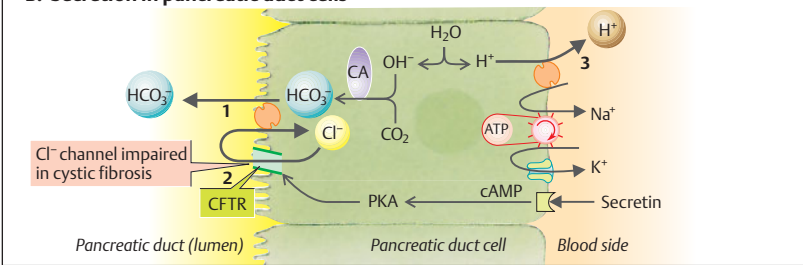
**Lipolysis.** *Pancreatic lipase* (see p. 252ff.) is the most important enzyme for lipolysis. It is secreted in its active form and breaks triacylglycerol to 2-monoacylglycerol and free fatty acids. Pancreatic lipase activity depends on the presence of *colipases*, generated from pro-colipases in pancreatic secretions (with the aid of trypsin). *Bile salts* are also necessary for fat digestion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 248).

*Other important pancreatic enzymes* include (pro-) phospholipase  $\text{A}_2$ , RNases, DNases, and a carboxylesterase.

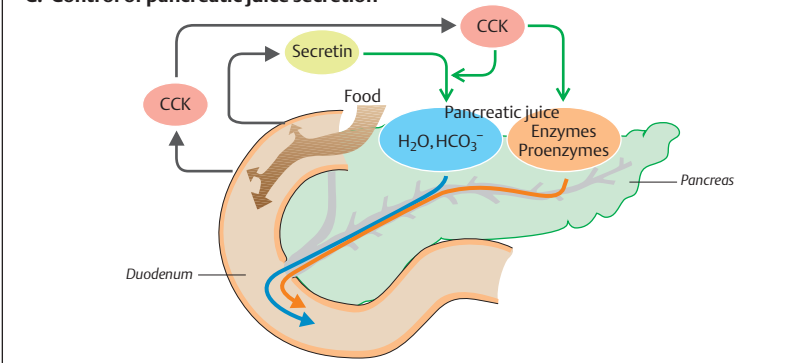
**A. Electrolyte concentration in plasma and pancreatic juice**



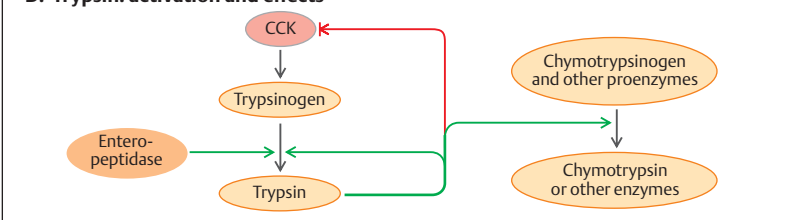
**B. Secretion in pancreatic duct cells**



**C. Control of pancreatic juice secretion**



**D. Trypsin: activation and effects**



## Bile

**Bile components.** Bile contains electrolytes, bile salts (bile acids), cholesterol, lecithin (phosphatidylcholine), bilirubin diglucuronide, steroid hormones, medications etc. ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). **Bile salts** are essential for fat digestion. Most of the other components of bile leave the body via the feces (excretory function of the liver  $\rightarrow$  p. 250).

**Bile formation.** Hepatocytes secrete ca. 0.7 L/day of bile into *biliary canaliculi* ( $\rightarrow$  **A**), the fine canals formed by the cell membranes of adjacent of hepatocytes. The sinusoidal and canalicular membranes of the hepatocytes contain numerous carriers that absorb bile components from the blood and secrete them into the canaliculi, resp.

**Bile salts (BS).** The liver synthesizes *cholate* and *chenodeoxycholate* (primary bile salts) from *cholesterol*. The intestinal bacteria convert some of them into secondary bile salts such as *deoxycholate* and *lithocholate*. Bile salts are conjugated with taurine or glycine in the liver and are secreted into the bile in this form ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). This conjugation is essential for micelle formation in the bile and gut.

**Hepatic bile salt carriers.** *Conjugated bile salts* in sinusoidal blood are actively taken up by **NTCP** ( $\text{Na}^+$  taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide; secondary active transport), and transported against a steep concentration gradient into the canaliculi (primary active transport) by the ATP-dependent carrier **hBSEP** (human bile salt export pump), also referred to as **cBAT** (canalicular bile acid transporter).

**Enterohepatic circulation of BS.** Unconjugated bile salts are immediately reabsorbed from the bile ducts (cholehepatic circulation). Conjugated bile salts enter the duodenum and are reabsorbed from the terminal ileum by the  $\text{Na}^+$  symport carrier **ISBT** (= ileal sodium bile acid cotransporter) and circulated back to the liver (*enterohepatic circulation*;  $\rightarrow$  **B**) once they have been used for fat digestion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 252). The total bile pool (2–4 g) recirculates about 6–10 times a day, depending on the fat content of the diet. Ca. 20–30 g of bile salts are required for daily fat absorption.

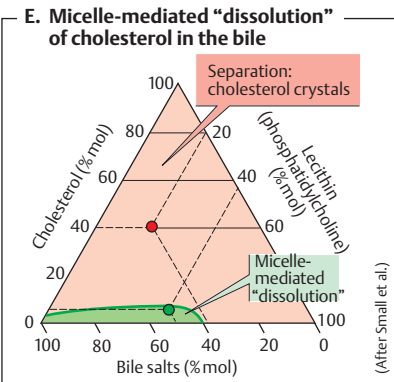
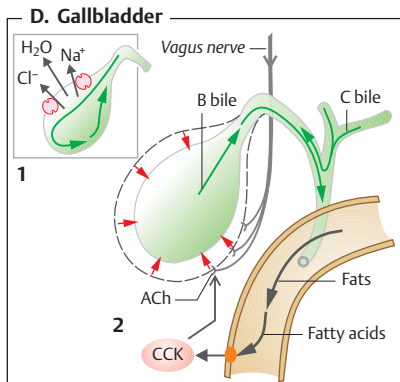
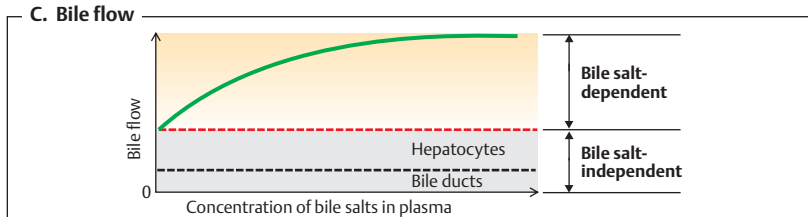
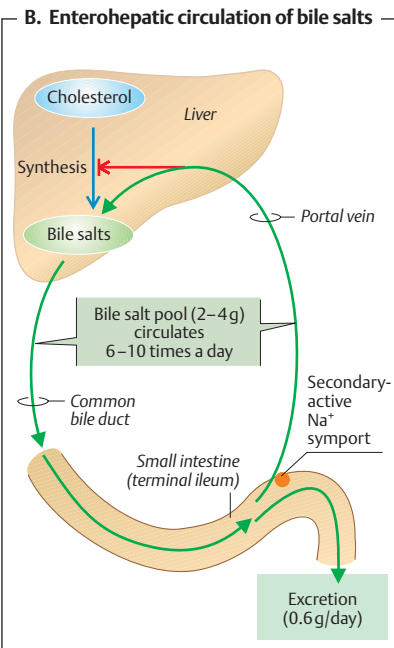
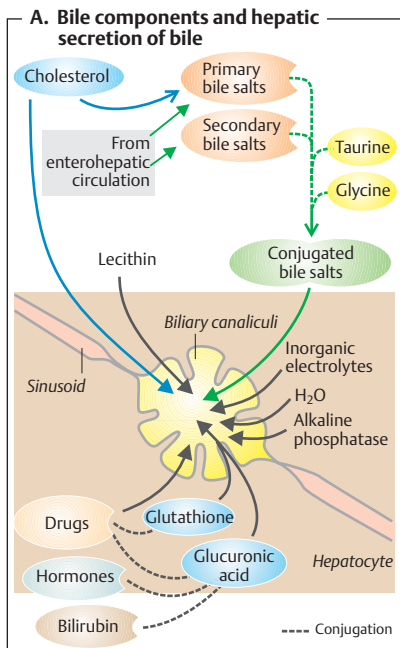
**Choleresis.** Enterohepatic circulation raises the bile salt concentration in the portal vein to a high level during the digestive phase. This (a)

inhibits the hepatic synthesis of bile salts (cholesterol-7 $\alpha$ -hydroxylase; negative feedback;  $\rightarrow$  **B**) and (b) stimulates the secretion of bile salts into the biliary canaliculi. The latter effect increases the bile flow due to osmotic water movement, i.e., causes *bile salt-dependent choleresis* ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). **Bile salt-independent choleresis** is, caused by secretion of other bile components into the canaliculi as well as of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (in exchange for  $\text{Cl}^-$ ) and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  into the *bile ducts* ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). The latter form is increased by the vagus nerve and secretin.

**Gallbladder.** When the sphincter of Oddi between the common bile duct and duodenum is closed, *hepatic bile* (**C bile**) is diverted to the gallbladder, where it is concentrated (1 : 10) and stored ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). The gallbladder epithelium reabsorbs  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and water ( $\rightarrow$  **D1**) from the stored bile, thereby greatly raising the concentration of specific bile components (bile salts, bilirubin-*di*-glucuronide, cholesterol, phosphatidylcholine, etc.). If bile is used for fat digestion (or if a peristaltic wave occurs in the interdigestive phase,  $\rightarrow$  p. 240), the gallbladder contracts and its contents are mixed in portions with the duodenal chyme ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**).

**Cholesterol** in the bile is transported inside *micelles* formed by aggregation of cholesterol with lecithin and bile salts. A change in the ratio of these three substances in favor of cholesterol ( $\rightarrow$  **E**) leads to the precipitation of cholesterol crystals responsible for gallstone development in the highly concentrated *gallbladder bile* (**B bile**). The red and green dots in **E** show the effects of two different ratios.

**Gallbladder contraction** is triggered by CCK ( $\rightarrow$  p. 234), which binds to CCK<sub>A</sub> receptors, and the neuronal plexus of the gallbladder wall, which is innervated by preganglionic parasympathetic fibers of the vagus nerve ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**). CGRP ( $\rightarrow$  p. 234) and substance P ( $\rightarrow$  p. 86) released by sensory fibers appear to stimulate the gallbladder musculature indirectly by increasing acetylcholine release. The sympathetic nervous system *inhibits* gallbladder contractions via  $\alpha_2$  adrenoreceptors located on cholinergic fiber terminals. As *cholagogues*, fatty acids and products of protein digestion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 234) as well as egg yolk and  $\text{MgSO}_4$  effectively stimulate CCK secretion.



## Excretory Liver Function—Bilirubin

The liver **detoxifies** and **excretes** many mostly lipophilic substances, which are either generated during metabolism (e.g., bilirubin or steroid hormones) or come from the intestinal tract (e.g., the antibiotic chloramphenicol). However, this requires prior **biotransformation** of the substances. In the *first step* of the process, reactive OH, NH<sub>2</sub> or COOH groups are enzymatically added (e.g., by monoxygenases) to the hydrophobic substances. In the *second step*, the substances are *conjugated* with glucuronic acid, acetate, glutathione, glycine, sulfates, etc. The conjugates are now water-soluble and can be either further processed in the kidneys and excreted in the urine, or secreted into bile by liver cells and excreted in the feces. Glutathione conjugates, for example, are further processed in the kidney excreted as mercapturic acids in the urine.

**Carriers.** The canalicular membrane of hepatocytes contains various carriers, most of which are directly fueled by ATP (see also p. 248). The principal carriers are: **MDR1** (multidrug resistance protein 1) for relatively hydrophobic, mainly cationic metabolites, **MDR3** for phosphatidylcholine (→ p. 248), and **cMOAT** (canalicular multispecific organic anion transporter = multidrug resistance protein MRP2) for conjugates (formed with glutathione, glucuronic acid or sulfate) and many other organic anions.

**Bilirubin sources and conjugation.** Ca. 85% of all bilirubin originates from the *hemoglobin* in erythrocytes; the rest is produced by other hemoproteins like cytochrome (→ **A** and **B**). When degraded, the globulin and iron components (→ p. 90) are cleaved from hemoglobin. Via intermediate steps, *biliverdin* and finally *bilirubin*, the yellow bile pigment, are then formed from the porphyrin residue. Each gram of hemoglobin yields ca. 35 mg of bilirubin. Free unconjugated bilirubin (“*indirect*” *bilirubin*) is poorly soluble in water, yet lipid-soluble and toxic. It is therefore *complexed* with *albumin* when present in the blood (2 mol bilirubin : 1 mol albumin), but not when absorbed by hepatocytes (→ **A**). Bilirubin is conjugated (catalyzed by *glucuronyltransferase*) with 2 molecules of *UDP-glucuronate* (synthesized from glucose, ATP and UTP) in the liver cells yielding *bilirubin diglucuronide* (“*direct*”

*bilirubin*). It is a water-soluble substance secreted into the biliary canaliculi by primary active transport mechanisms (cMOAT, see above).

**Bilirubin excretion.** 200–250 mg of bilirubin is excreted in the bile each day. Ca. 90% of it is *excreted in the feces*. In the gut, bacteria break bilirubin down into the colorless compound, *stercobilinogen* (→ **B**). It is partly oxidized into *stercobilin*, the brown compound that colors the stools. About 10% of all bilirubin diglucuronide is deconjugated by intestinal bacteria and returned to the liver in this lipophilic form (partly as stercobilinogen) via enterohepatic circulation. A small portion (ca. 1%) reaches the systemic circulation and is excreted by the kidneys as *urobilinogen* = stercobilinogen (see below) (→ **B**). The renal excretion rate increases when the liver is damaged.

**Jaundice.** The *plasma bilirubin concentration* normally does not exceed 17 μmol/L (= 1 mg/dL). Concentrations higher than 30 μmol/L (1.8 mg/dL) lead to yellowish discoloration of the sclera and skin, resulting in **jaundice (icterus)**. **Types of jaundice:**

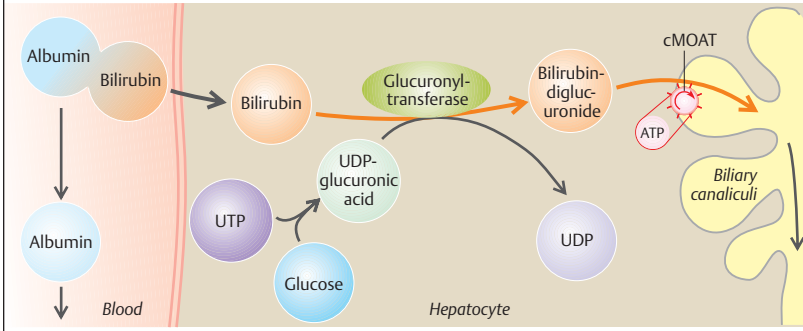
1. **Prehepatic jaundice.** When excessive amounts of bilirubin are formed, for example, due to increased hemolysis, the liver can no longer cope with the higher load unless the plasma bilirubin concentration rises. Thus, *unconjugated (indirect) bilirubin* is mainly elevated in these patients.

2. **Intrahepatic jaundice.** The main causes are (a) liver cell damage due to toxins (*Amanita*) or infections (*viral hepatitis*) resulting in the impairment of bilirubin transport and conjugation; (b) deficiency or absence of the glucuronyltransferase system in the newborn (Crigler–Najjar syndrome); (c) inhibition of glucuronyltransferase, e.g., by steroids; (d) impaired secretion of bilirubin into the biliary canaliculi due to a congenital defect (Dubin–Johnson syndrome) or other reasons (e.g., drugs, steroid hormones).

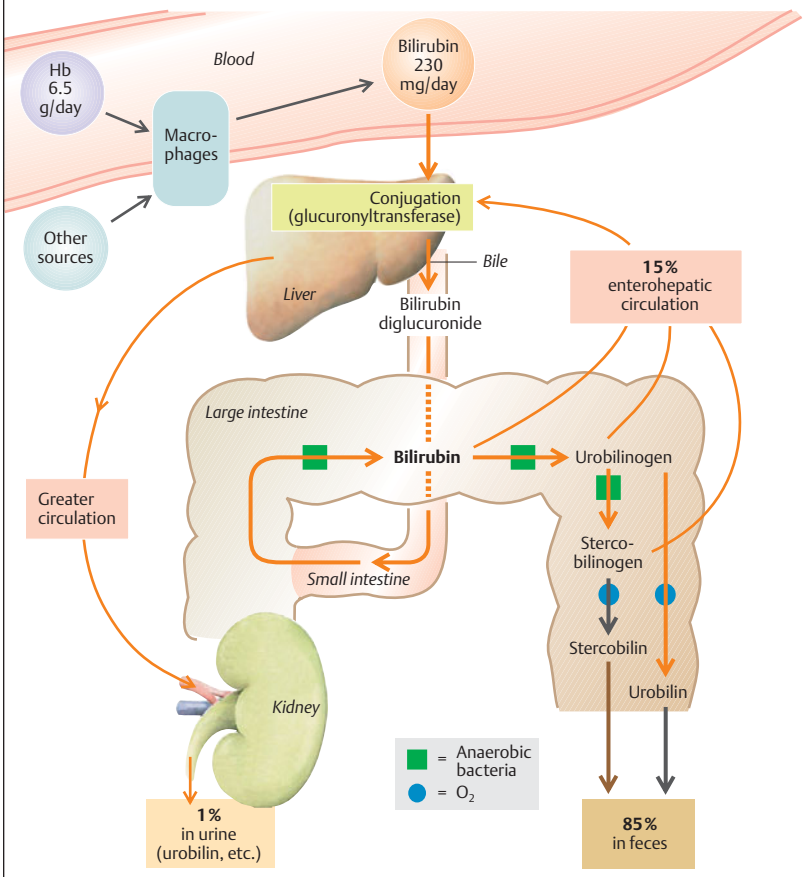
3. **Posthepatic jaundice:** Impairment of the flow of bile occurs due to an obstruction (e.g., stone or tumor) in the bile ducts, usually accompanied by elevated serum concentrations of *conjugated (direct) bilirubin* and alkaline phosphatase—both of which are normal components of bile.

Types 2a, 2d and 3 jaundice are associated with increased urinary concentrations of conjugated bilirubin, leading to brownish discoloration of the urine. In type 3 jaundice, the stools are gray due to the lack of bilirubin in the intestine and the resulting absence of stercobilin formation.

**A. Conjugation and secretion of bilirubin in the liver**



**B. Bilirubin metabolism and excretion**



## Lipid Digestion

The average **intake of fats** (butter, oil, margarine, milk, meat, sausages, eggs, nuts etc.) is roughly 60–100 g/day, but there is a wide range of individual variation (10–250 g/day). Most fats in the diet (90%) are neutral fats or *triacylglycerols* (triglycerides). The rest are phospholipids, cholesterol esters, and fat-soluble vitamins (vitamins A, D, E and K). Over 95% of the lipids are normally absorbed in the small intestine.

**Lipid digestion** (→ A). Lipids are poorly soluble in water, so special mechanisms are required for their digestion in the watery environment of the gastrointestinal tract and for their subsequent absorption and transport in plasma (→ p. 254). Although small quantities of undegraded triacylglycerol can be absorbed, dietary fats must be hydrolyzed by enzymes before they can be efficiently absorbed. Optimal enzymatic activity requires the prior mechanical *emulsification* of fats (mainly in the distal stomach, → p. 240) because emulsified *lipid droplets* (1–2 μm; → B1) provide a much larger surface (relative to the mass of fat) for lipases.

**Lipases**, the fat digesting enzymes, originate from the lingual glands, gastric fundus (chief and mucous neck cells) and *pancreas* (→ A and p. 246). About 10–30% of dietary fat intake is hydrolyzed in the stomach, while the remaining 70–90% is broken down in the duodenum and upper jejunum. Lingual and gastric lipases have an acid pH optimum, whereas pancreatic lipase has a pH optimum of 7–8. Lipases become active at the fat/oil and water interface (→ B). **Pancreatic lipase** (triacylglycerol hydrolase) develops its lipolytic activity (max. 140 g fat/min) in the presence of **colipase** and  $Ca^{2+}$ . *Pro-colipase* in pancreatic juice yields colipase after being activated by trypsin. In most cases, the pancreatic lipases split *triacylglycerol* (TG) at the 1st and 3rd ester bond. This process requires the addition of water and yields free *fatty acids* (FFA) and *2-monoacylglycerol*.

A **viscous-isotropic phase** with aqueous and hydrophobic zones then forms around the enzyme (→ B2).  $Ca^{2+}$  excesses or *monoacylglycerol deficiencies* result in the conversion of the fatty acids into *calcium soaps*, which are later excreted.

**Phospholipase A<sub>2</sub>** (from pro-phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> in pancreatic juice—activated by trypsin) cleaves the 2nd ester bond of the phospholipids (mainly phosphatidylcholine = lecithin) contained in micelles. The presence of *bile salts* and  $Ca^{2+}$  is required for this reaction.

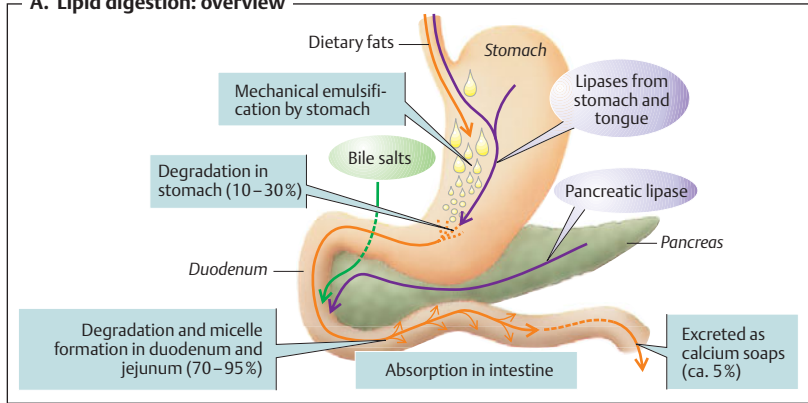
An **unspecific carboxylesterase** (= unspecific lipase = cholesterol ester hydrolase) in pancreatic secretions also acts on cholesterol esters on micelles as well as all three ester bonds of TG and esters of vitamins, A, D and E.

This lipase is also present in human breast **milk** (but not cow's milk), so breast-fed infants receive the digestive enzyme required to break down milk fat along with the milk. Since the enzyme is heat-sensitive, pasteurization of human milk significantly reduces the infant's ability to digest milk fat to a great extent.

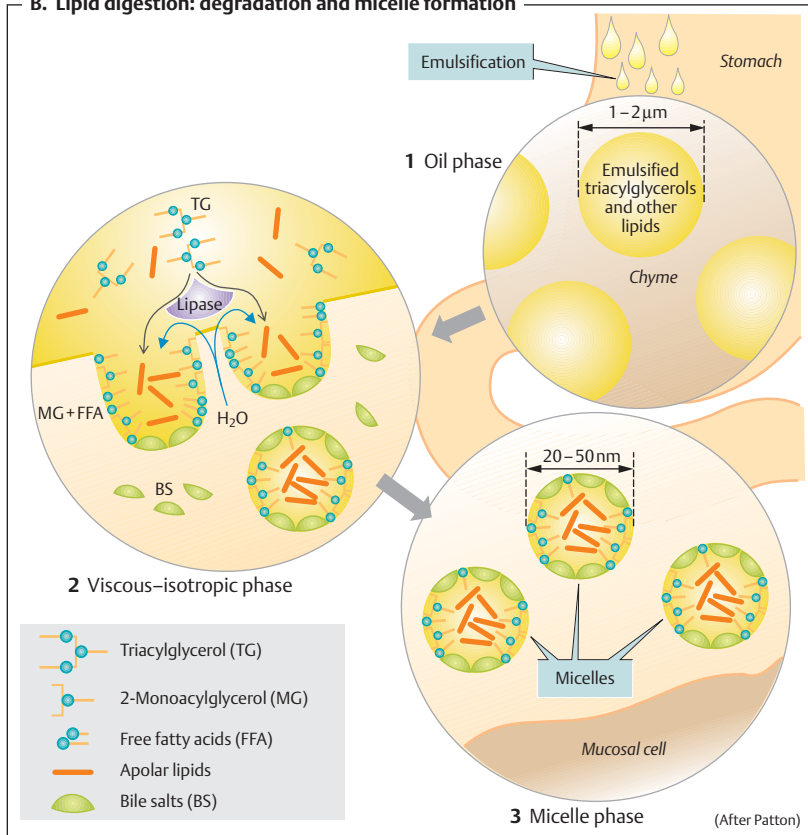
*2-Monoacylglycerols, long-chain free fatty acids* and other lipids aggregate with *bile salts* (→ p. 248) to spontaneously form **micelles** in the small intestine (→ B3). (Since short-chain fatty acids are relatively polar, they can be absorbed directly and do not require bile salts or micelles). The micelles are only about 20–50 nm in diameter, and their surface-to-volume ratio is roughly 50 times larger than that of the lipid droplets in emulsions. They facilitate close contact between the products of fat digestion and the wall of the small intestine and are therefore essential for lipid absorption. The polar side of the substances involved (mainly conjugated bile salts, 2-monoacylglycerol and phospholipids) faces the watery environment, and the non-polar side faces the interior of the micelle. Totally apolar lipids (e.g., cholesterol esters, fat-soluble vitamins and lipophilic poisons) are located inside the micelles. Thus, the apolar lipids remain in the lipophilic milieu (*hydrocarbon continuum*) during all these processes until they reach the lipophilic brush border membrane of the epithelium. They are then absorbed by the mucosa cells via dissolution in the membrane or by a passive transport mechanism (e.g., carriers in the case of free fatty acids). Although fat absorption is completed by the time the chyme reaches the end of the jejunum, the *bile salts* released from micelles are only absorbed in the terminal ileum and then recycled (enterohepatic circulation; → p. 249 B).



**A. Lipid digestion: overview**



**B. Lipid digestion: degradation and micelle formation**



## Lipid Distribution and Storage

Lipids in the blood are transported in **lipoproteins, LPs** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**), which are molecular aggregates (microemulsions) with a core of very hydrophobic lipids such as **triacylglycerols (TG)** and **cholesterol esters (CHO-esters)** surrounded by a layer of amphipathic lipids (phospholipids, cholesterol). LPs also contain several types of proteins, called apolipoproteins. LPs are differentiated according to their size, density, lipid composition, site of synthesis, and their apolipoprotein content. **Apolipoproteins (Apo)** function as *structural elements* of LPs (e.g. ApoAII and ApoB48), *ligands* (ApoB100, ApoE, etc.) for LP receptors on the membranes of LP target cells, and as *enzyme activators* (e.g. ApoAI and ApoCII).

**Chylomicrons** transport lipids (mainly *triacylglycerol, TG*) from the gut to the periphery (via intestinal lymph and systemic circulation;  $\rightarrow$  **D**), where their ApoCII activates endothelial lipoprotein lipase (**LPL**), which *cleaves FFA* from TG. The FFA are mainly absorbed by myocytes and fat cells ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). With the aid of ApoE, the *chylomicron remnants* deliver the rest of their TG, cholesterol and cholesterol ester load to the hepatocytes by receptor-mediated endocytosis ( $\rightarrow$  **B, D**).

Cholesterol (CHO) and the TG imported from the gut and newly synthesized in the liver are exported inside **VLDL** (very low density lipoproteins) from the liver to the periphery, where they by means of their ApoCII also activate **LPL**, resulting in the *release of FFA* ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). This results in the loss of ApoCII and exposure of ApoE. VLDL remnants or **IDL** (intermediate-density lipoproteins) remain. Ca. 50% of the IDL returns to the liver (mainly bound by its ApoE on LDL receptors; see below) and is re-processed and exported from the liver as VLDL ( $\rightarrow$  **B**).

The other 50% of the IDL is converted to **LDL** (low density lipoprotein) after coming in contact with hepatic lipase (resulting in loss of ApoE and exposure of ApoB100). Two-thirds of the LDLs deliver their CHO and CHO-esters to the liver, the other third transfers its CHO to extrahepatic tissue ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Binding of ApoB100 to **LDL receptors** is essential for both processes (see below).

**High-density lipoproteins (HDL)** exchange certain apoproteins with chylomicrons and VLDL and absorb superfluous CHO from the extrahepatic cells and blood ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). With their ApoAI, they activate the plasma enzyme **LCAT** (lecithin-cholesterol acyltransferase), which is responsible for the partial esterification of CHO. HDL also deliver cholesterol and CHO-esters to the liver and steroid hormone-producing glands with **HDL receptors** (ovaries, testes, adrenal cortex).

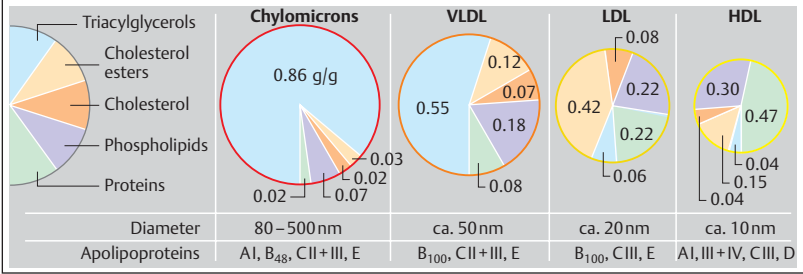
### Triacylglycerol (TG)

Dietary TGs are broken down into *free fatty acids (FFA)* and *2-monoacylglycerol (MG)* in the gastrointestinal tract ( $\rightarrow$  **C** and p.252). Since short-chain FFAs are water-soluble, they can be absorbed and transported to the liver via the portal vein. Long-chain FFAs and 2-monoacylglycerols are not soluble in water. They are re-synthesized to TG in the mucosa cells ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). (The FFAs needed for TG synthesis are carried by FFA-binding proteins from the cell membrane to their site of synthesis, i.e., the smooth endoplasmic reticulum.) Since TGs are not soluble in water, they are subsequently loaded onto **chylomicrons**, which are exocytosed into the extracellular fluid, then passed on to the intestinal lymph (thereby by-passing the liver), from which they finally reach the greater circulation ( $\rightarrow$  **C, D**). (Plasma becomes cloudy for about 20–30 minutes after a fatty meal due to its chylomicron content). The liver also synthesizes TGs, thereby taking the required FFAs from the plasma or synthesizing them from glucose. Hepatic TGs are loaded onto **VLDL** (see above) and subsequently secreted into the plasma ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). Since the export capacity of this mechanism is limited, an excess of FFA or glucose ( $\rightarrow$  **D**) can result in the accumulation of TGs in the liver (*fatty liver*).

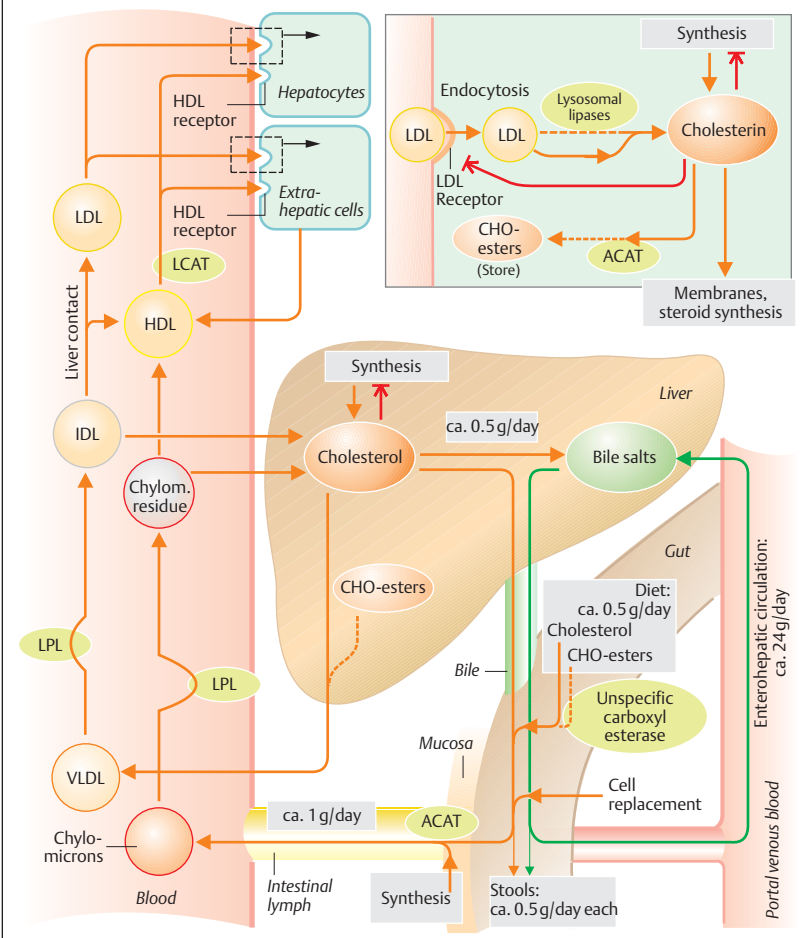
**Free fatty acids (FFAs)** are high-energy substrates used for energy metabolism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 228). Fatty acids circulating in the blood are mainly transported in the form of TG (in *lipoproteins*) whereas plasma FFA are *complexed with albumin*. Fatty acids are removed from TGs of chylomicrons and VLDL by lipoprotein lipase (**LPL**) localized on the luminal surface of the capillary endothelium of many organs (mainly in fat tissue and muscles) ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). ApoCII on the



**A. Lipoproteins**



**B. Sources and fate of cholesterol**



surface of TGs and VLDL activates LPL. The **insulin** secreted after a meal *induces* LPL ( $\rightarrow$  D), which promotes the rapid degradation of reabsorbed dietary TGs. LPL is also activated by *heparin* (from endothelial tissue, mast cells, etc.), which helps to eliminate the chylomicrons in cloudy plasma; it therefore is called a *clearance factor*. Albumin-complexed FFAs in plasma are mainly transported to the following **target sites** ( $\rightarrow$  D):

- ◆ *Cardiac muscle, skeletal muscle, kidneys and other organs*, where they are oxidized to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in the mitochondria ( $\beta$  oxidation) and used as a **source of energy**.
- ◆ *Fat cells* ( $\rightarrow$  D), which either **store** the FFAs or use them to synthesize TG. When energy requirements increase or intake decreases, the FFAs are cleaved from triacylglycerol in the fat cells (lipolysis) and transported to the area where they are needed ( $\rightarrow$  D). *Lipolysis is stimulated* by epinephrine, glucagon and cortisol and *inhibited* by insulin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 282ff.).
- ◆ *The liver*, where the FFAs are oxidized or used to synthesize TG.

### Cholesterol (CHO)

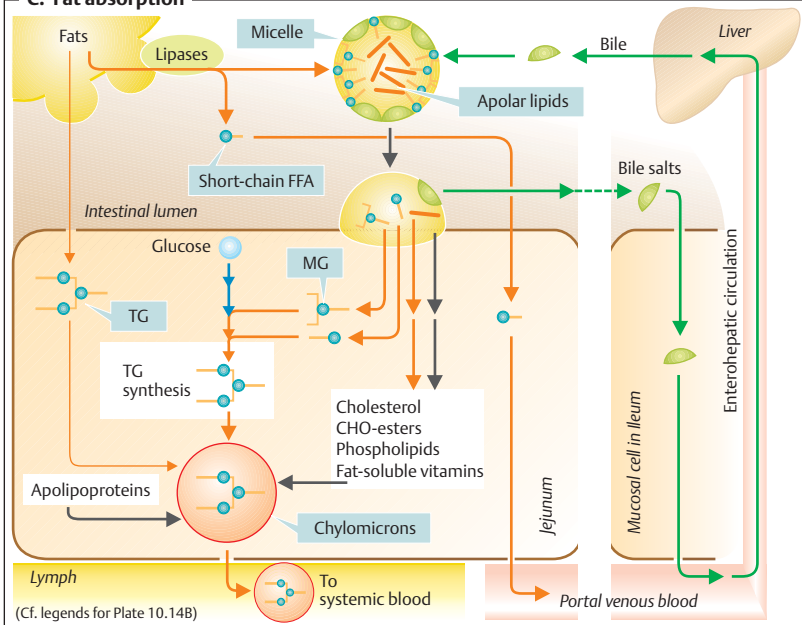
**Cholesterol esters** (CHO-esters), like TGs, are apolar lipids. In the watery milieu of the body, they can only be transported when incorporated in lipoproteins (or bound to proteins) and can be used for metabolism only after they have been converted to CHO, which is more polar ( $\rightarrow$  B). CHO-esters serve as *stores* and in some cases the transported form of CHO. CHO-esters are present in all lipoproteins, but are most abundant (42%) in LDL ( $\rightarrow$  A).

**Cholesterol** is an important constituent of cell membranes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 14). Moreover, it is a precursor for *bile salts* ( $\rightarrow$  B and p. 248), *vitamin D* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 292), and *steroid hormones* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 294ff.). Each day ca. 0.6 g of CHO is lost in the feces (reduced to *coprosterol*) and sloughed off skin. The bile salt loss amounts to about 0.5 g/day. These losses (minus the dietary CHO intake) must be compensated for by continuous re-synthesis of CHO in the intestinal tract and liver ( $\rightarrow$  B). CHO supplied by the diet is absorbed in part as such and in part in esterified form ( $\rightarrow$  B, lower right). Before it is reabsorbed, CHO-esters are split by *unspecific pancreatic carboxylesterase* to CHO, which is absorbed in

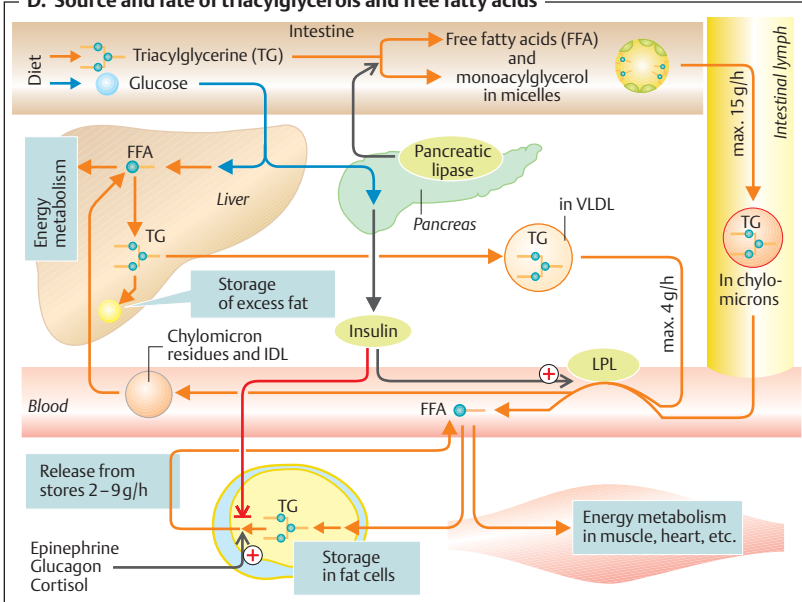
the upper part of the small intestine ( $\rightarrow$  B, bottom). *Mucosal cells* contain an enzyme that re-esterifies part of the absorbed CHO: **ACAT** (acyl-CoA-cholesterol acyltransferase) so that both cholesterol and CHO-esters can be integrated in chylomicrons ( $\rightarrow$  A). CHO and CHO-esters in the *chylomicron remnants* (see above) are transported to the liver, where lysosomal acid lipases again break the CHO-esters down into CHO. This CHO and that taken up from other sources (LDL, HDL) leave the liver ( $\rightarrow$  B): 1. by excretion into the bile ( $\rightarrow$  p. 248), 2. by conversion into bile salts which also enter the bile ( $\rightarrow$  p. 249 B), and 3. by incorporation into VLDL, the hepatic lipoprotein for export of lipids to other tissues. Under the influence of LPL (see above), the VLDL yield IDL and later **LDL** ( $\rightarrow$  B, left). The LDL transport CHO and CHO-esters to cells with **LDL receptors** (hepatic and extrahepatic cells;  $\rightarrow$  B, top). The receptor density on the cell surface is adjusted according to the prevailing CHO requirement. Like hepatic cells (see above) extrahepatic cells take up the LDL by receptor-mediated endocytosis, and lysosomal acid lipases reduce CHO-esters to CHO ( $\rightarrow$  B, top right). The cells can then insert the CHO in their cell membranes or use it for steroid synthesis. A *cholesterol excess* leads to (a) inhibition of CHO synthesis in the cells (3-HMG-CoA-reductase) and (b) activation of ACAT, an enzyme that esterifies and stores CHO in the form of its ester (see above).

**Hyperlipoproteinemia.** An excess of lipids in the blood can be reflected by elevation of triacylglycerol levels and/or CHO levels ( $> 200\text{--}220$  mg/dL serum; affects about one in five adults in Western countries). In the most severe form, *familial hypercholesterolemia*, a genetic defect causes elevated plasma CHO concentrations from birth on, which can result in myocardial infarction in juvenile age. The disease is caused by genetic defects of the high-affinity LDL receptors. The serum CHO level rises since the cells take up smaller quantities of cholesterol-rich LDLs. Extrahepatic tissues synthesize larger quantities of CHO because 3-HMG-CoA-reductase fails to inhibit CHO synthesis due to the decreased absorption of LDLs. As a result, more LDLs bind to the low-affinity *scavenger receptors* that mediate the storage of CHO in macrophages, cutaneous tissues, and blood vessels. Hypercholesterolemia therefore increases the risk of arteriosclerosis and coronary disease.

**C. Fat absorption**



**D. Source and fate of triacylglycerols and free fatty acids**



## Digestion and Absorption of Carbohydrates and Protein

**Carbohydrates** provide half to two-thirds of the energy requirement ( $\rightarrow$  p.226). At least 50% of dietary carbohydrates consist of *starch* (amylose and amylopectin), a polysaccharide; other important dietary carbohydrates are cane sugar (saccharose = sucrose) and milk sugar (lactose). Carbohydrate digestion starts in the mouth ( $\rightarrow$  A1 and p. 236). *Ptyalin*, an  $\alpha$ -**amylase** found in saliva, breaks starches down into oligosaccharides (*maltose*, *maltotriose*,  $\alpha$  *limit dextrins*) in a neutral pH environment. This digestive process continues in the proximal stomach, but is interrupted in the distal stomach as the food is mixed with acidic gastric juices. A pancreatic  $\alpha$ -amylase, with a pH optimum of 8 is mixed into the chyme in the duodenum. Thus, polysaccharide digestion can continue to the final oligosaccharide stage mentioned above. The carbohydrates can be only **absorbed** in the form of monosaccharides. Thus, the enzymes *maltase* and *isomaltase* integrated in the luminal brush border membrane of enterocytes break down *maltose*, *maltotriose* and  $\alpha$  *limit dextrins* into **glucose** as the final product. As in the renal tubules ( $\rightarrow$  p. 158), glucose is first actively taken up by the  $\text{Na}^+$  symport carrier SGLT1 into mucosal cells ( $\rightarrow$  A2, p. 29 B1) before passively diffusing into the portal circulation via *GLUT2*, the glucose uniport carrier (facilitated diffusion;  $\rightarrow$  p.22). The hydrolysis of *saccharose*, *lactose*, and *trehalose* is catalyzed by other brush border enzymes: lactase, saccharase (sucrase) and trehalase. In addition to glucose, these reactions release *galactose* (from lactose), which is absorbed by the same carriers as glucose, and *fructose*, which crosses the enterocytes by passive uniporters, *GLUT5* in the luminal and *GLUT2* in the basolateral membrane ( $\rightarrow$  A2).

**Lactase deficiency.** Lactose cannot be broken down and absorbed unless sufficient lactase is available. Lactase deficiencies lead to diarrhea 1) because water is retained in the intestinal lumen due to osmotic mechanisms, and 2) because intestinal bacteria convert the lactose into toxic substances.

**Protein digestion** starts in the stomach ( $\rightarrow$  B1). *HCl* in the stomach denatures proteins and converts the three secreted *pepsinogens* into

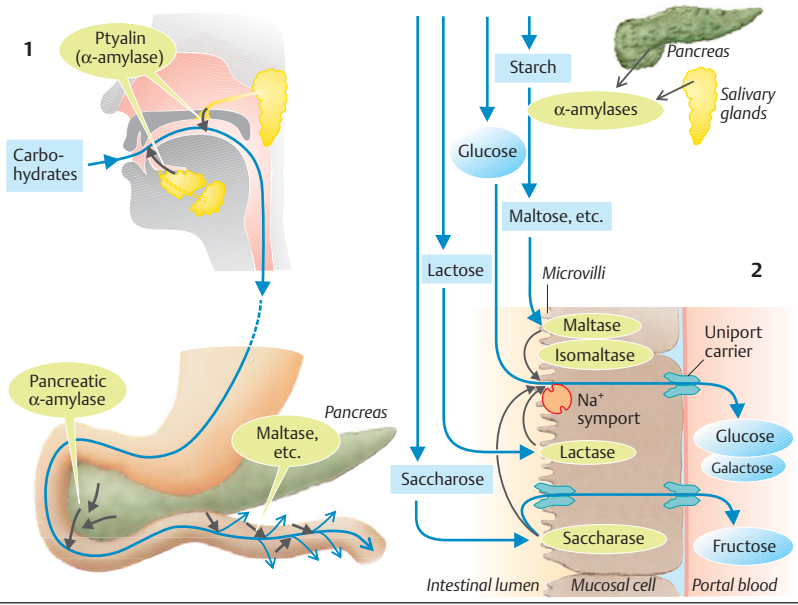
about eight different **pepsins**. At a pH of 2–5, these *endopeptidases* split off proteins at sites where tyrosine or phenylalanine molecules are incorporated in the peptide chain. The pepsins become inactive in the small intestine (pH 7–8). Pancreatic juice also contains pro-enzymes of other peptidases that are activated in the duodenum ( $\rightarrow$  p.246). The endopeptidases *trypsin*, *chymotrypsin* and *elastase* hydrolyze the protein molecules into short-chain peptides. *Carboxypeptidase A and B* (from the pancreas) as well as *dipeptidases* and *aminopeptidase* (brush border enzymes) act on proteins at the end of the peptide chain, breaking them down into tripeptides, dipeptides, and (mostly) individual amino acids. These cleavage products are absorbed in the duodenum and jejunum.

**Amino acids (AA)** are transported by a number of specific carriers ( $\rightarrow$  B2) similar to those found in the kidneys ( $\rightarrow$  p.158). Neutral (without net charge) and anionic (“acid”) L-amino acids are transported with  $\text{Na}^+$  symporters (secondary active transport;  $\rightarrow$  p.28) from the intestinal lumen into mucosal cells, from which they passively diffuse with carriers into the blood. Cationic (“basic”) L-amino acids such as L-arginine<sup>+</sup>, L-lysine<sup>+</sup> and L-ornithine<sup>+</sup> are partly taken up into the enterocytes by  $\text{Na}^+$  independent mechanisms, as the membrane potential is a driving force for their uptake. *Anionic amino acids* like L-glutamate<sup>-</sup> and L-aspartate<sup>-</sup> which, for the most part, are broken down in the mucosal cells, also have their own ( $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  dependent) carrier systems. *Neutral amino acids* use several different transporters.

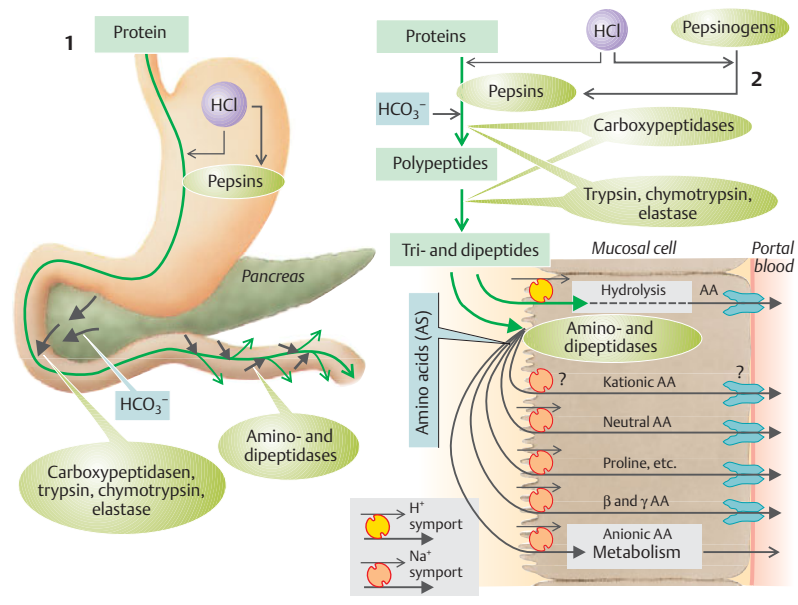
**AA absorption disorders** can be congenital and affect various amino acid groups. These disorders are often associated with defects of renal tubular reabsorption (renal aminoaciduria, e.g. cystinuria).

**Dipeptides and tripeptides** can be absorbed as intact molecules by a symport carrier (PepT1). The carrier is driven by an  $\text{H}^+$  gradient ( $\rightarrow$  B2), which in turn is generated by  $\text{H}^+$  secretion (tertiary active  $\text{H}^+$ -peptide symport,  $\rightarrow$  p.29 B5). Amino acids generally are much more rapidly absorbed as dipeptides and tripeptides than as free amino acids. Once they enter the cells, the peptides are hydrolyzed to free amino acids.

**A. Carbohydrate digestion and absorption of monosaccharides**



**B. Protein digestion and absorption of amino acids and oligopeptides**





## Vitamin Absorption

Since higher animals cannot synthesize **cobalamins (vitamin B<sub>12</sub>)**, they must obtain this *cobalt-containing coenzyme* from the diet. Animal products (liver, kidneys, fish, eggs, milk) are the main source.

**Cobalamin biochemistry.** Aqua- and OH-cobalamin are precursors of the two active forms, methyl- and adenosylcobalamin. *Methylcobalamin* is needed to form methionine from homocysteine; cobalamin transfers the methyl group required for this from N<sup>5</sup>-methyltetrahydrofolate (see below) to homocysteine. Some enzymes, e.g. methyl-malonyl-CoA mutase, need *adenosylcobalamin* to break and form carbon-carbon bonds.

Cobalamins are relatively large and lipophobic molecules that require **transport proteins** (→A). During passage through the GI tract, plasma and other compartments, cobalamins bind to (1) *intrinsic factor (IF)*, which is secreted by gastric parietal cells; (2) *transcobalamin II (TC II)* in plasma; and (3) *R proteins* in plasma (TC I), and granulocytes (TC III), saliva, bile, milk, etc. Gastric acid releases cobalamin from **dietary proteins**. In most cases, the cobalamin then binds to R protein in saliva or (if the pH is high) to IF (→A1). The R protein is digested by trypsin in the duodenum, resulting in the release of cobalamin, which is then bound by (trypsin-resistant) **intrinsic factor**. The mucosa of the *terminal ileum* has highly specific receptors for the cobalamin-IF complex. IT binds to these receptors and is absorbed by *receptor-mediated endocytosis*, provided a pH of > 5.6 and Ca<sup>2+</sup> ions are available (→A2). The receptor density and, thus, the absorption rate increases during pregnancy. Cobalamin binds to TC I, II and III in **plasma** (→A3). TC II mainly distributes cobalamin to all cells undergoing division (TC II receptors, endocytosis). TC III (from granulocytes) transports excess cobalamin and unwanted cobalamin derivatives to the **liver** (TC III receptors), where it is either stored or excreted in the bile. TC I has a half-life of roughly 10 days and serves as a short-term depot for cobalamin in the plasma.

A vegan diet or disturbed cobalamin absorption can lead to severe **deficiency symptoms** like pernicious anemia and spinal cord damage (funicular myelosis).

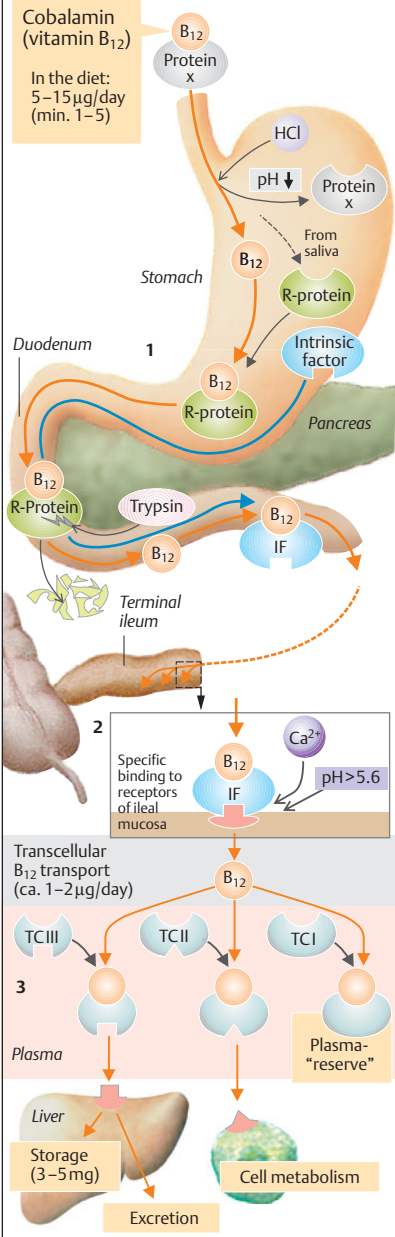
It takes years for these symptoms to manifest as the body initially has a reserve of 1000 times the daily requirement of 1 μg (→ p. 90).

**Folic acid/folate** (= pteroylglutamic acid). N<sup>5</sup>, N<sup>10</sup>-*methylenetetrahydrofolate*, the metabolically active form of folic acid (daily requirement: 0.1–0.2 mg) is needed for *DNA synthesis* (formation of deoxythymidylate from deoxyuridylate). Folic acid in the **diet** usually occurs in forms that contain up to seven glutamyl residues (γ-linked peptide chain; *Pte-Glu<sub>7</sub>*) instead of pteroylglutamic acid (*Pte-Glu<sub>1</sub>*). Since only *Pte-Glu<sub>1</sub>* can be absorbed from the lumen of the proximal jejunum (→B), its polyglutamyl chain must be shortened before absorption. This is done by *pteroylpolylglutamate hydrolases* located in the luminal membrane of enterocytes. The **absorption** of *Pte-Glu<sub>1</sub>* is mediated by a specific active transporter. In mucosal cells, *Pte-Glu<sub>1</sub>* is then broken down to yield N<sup>5</sup>-methyltetrahydrofolate (5-Me-H<sub>4</sub>-folate) and other metabolites. If already present in the ingested food, these metabolites are absorbed from the intestinal lumen by the aforementioned mechanism. (The same applies to the cytostatic drug, *methotrexate*.) *Methylcobalamin* is needed to convert 5-Me-H<sub>4</sub>-folate to tetrahydrofolate (see above). The body stores about 7 mg of folic acid, enough for several months (cf. *folic acid deficiency*, → p. 90).

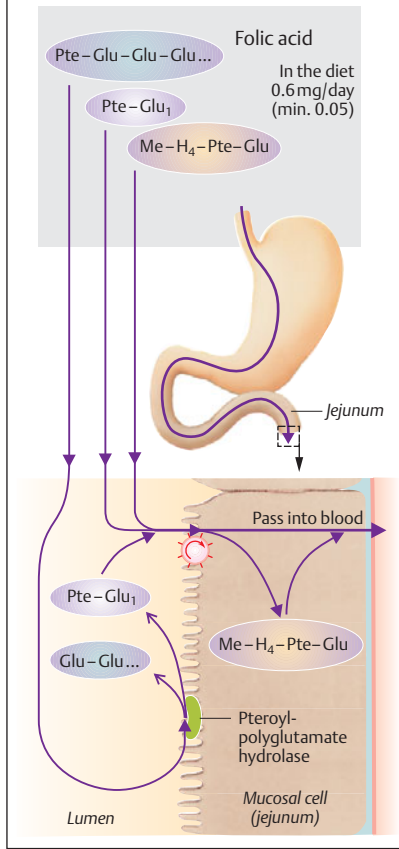
The **other water-soluble vitamins**—B<sub>1</sub> (thiamin), B<sub>2</sub> (riboflavin), C (ascorbic acid), and H (biotin, niacin)—are absorbed via Na<sup>+</sup> symport carriers (→C). Vitamin C is absorbed from the ileum, whereas vitamins B<sub>1</sub>, B<sub>2</sub>, and H are absorbed from the jejunum. Members of the vitamin B<sub>6</sub> group (pyridoxal, pyridoxine, pyridoxamine) are probably absorbed by passive mechanisms.

**Fat-soluble vitamins**—A (retinol), D<sub>3</sub> (cholecalciferol), E (tocopherol), K<sub>1</sub> (phyloquinone), and K<sub>2</sub> (menaquinone)—must be incorporated into *micelles* for absorption (cf. lipid digestion, p.252). The exact absorption mechanism has not yet been explained, though it is known to be partly saturation- and energy-dependent. Fat-soluble vitamins are incorporated into chylomicrons and VLDL for transport in plasma (→ p. 254ff.).

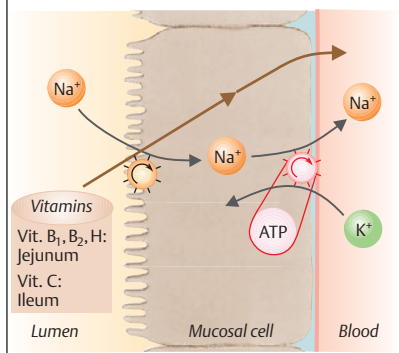
**A. Cobalamin (B<sub>12</sub>) transport**



**B. Absorption of folic acid**



**C. Secondary active vitamin absorption**



## Water and Mineral Absorption

The average intake of water (in beverages and foodstuffs) is roughly 1.5 L per day. An additional 7 L of fluid are secreted into the gastrointestinal (GI) tract (saliva, gastric juices, bile, pancreatic juice and intestinal secretions), whereas only about 0.1 L/day is eliminated in the feces. The digestive tract must therefore absorb a net volume of at least 8.4 L of water per day. **GI absorption of water** occurs mainly in the jejunum and ileum, with smaller quantities being absorbed by the colon ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). Water is driven through the intestinal epithelium by osmosis. When solutes ( $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , etc.) are absorbed in the intestine, water follows ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). (The stool contains only small quantities of  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and water.) Conversely, the secretion of substances into the lumen or the ingestion of non-absorbable substances leads to water fluxes into the lumen. Poorly absorbable substances therefore act as *laxatives* (e.g. sulfate, sorbitol, polyethylene glycol).

Water absorption is mainly driven by the **absorption of  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and organic compounds** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). The luminal concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  steadily decreases from the duodenum to the colon. That of  $\text{Na}^+$ , for example, is approximately 145 mmol/L in the duodenum, 125 mmol/L in the ileum and only 40 mmol/L in the colon ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).  $\text{Na}^+$  is absorbed by various **mechanisms**, and the  *$\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$ -ATPase* on the basolateral cell membrane is the primary driving mechanism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 26) for all of them ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, **D**).

◆ **Symport of  $\text{Na}^+$  and organic substances** ( $\rightarrow$  see pp. 26ff. and 258):  $\text{Na}^+$  passively influxes into cells of the duodenum and jejunum via symporter carriers, which actively cotransport glucose, amino acids, phosphates and other compounds (secondary active transport;  $\rightarrow$  **D1**). Since this is an electrogenic transport mechanism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 28), a *lumen-negative transepithelial potential* (LNTP;  $\rightarrow$  p. 162) that drives  $\text{Cl}^-$  out of the lumen forms ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**).

◆ **Parallel transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$** :  $\text{Na}^+$  ions in the lumen of the ileum are exchanged for  $\text{H}^+$  ions ( $\rightarrow$  **D3**) while  $\text{Cl}^-$  is exchanged for  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  at the same time ( $\rightarrow$  **D4**). The  $\text{H}^+$  ions combine with  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to yield  $\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{CO}_2$ , which diffuse out of the lumen. Most  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$  and, by subsequent osmosis,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is absorbed by this electroneutral transport mechanism.

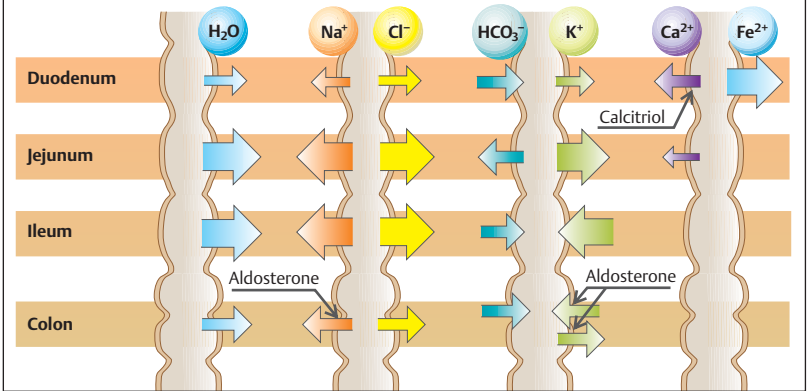
◆  **$\text{Na}^+$  diffusion**:  $\text{Na}^+$  in the colon is mainly absorbed through luminal  *$\text{Na}^+$  channels* ( $\rightarrow$  **D5**). This type of  $\text{Na}^+$  transport is electrogenic and aldosterone-dependent ( $\rightarrow$  p. 182). The related lumen-negative transepithelial potential (LNTP; see above) either leads to  $\text{K}^+$  secretion or drives  $\text{Cl}^-$  out of the lumen ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**).

The  **$\text{Cl}^-$  secretion** mechanism of epithelial cells (mainly *Lieberkühn's crypts*,  $\rightarrow$  p. 245, A16) is similar to that of the acini of salivary glands ( $\rightarrow$  p. 236). The efflux of  $\text{Cl}^-$  into the lumen and the associated efflux of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water are stimulated by cAMP and regulated by neurons and hormones such as VIP (vasoactive intestinal peptide) and prostaglandins. The physiological function of this form of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  secretion could be to dilute viscous chyme or to ensure the recirculation of water (from the crypts  $\rightarrow$  lumen  $\rightarrow$  villi  $\rightarrow$  crypts) to promote the absorption of poorly soluble substances. **Cholera toxin** inhibits the GTPase of the  $\text{G}_s$  proteins ( $\rightarrow$  p. 274), thereby maintaining a maximal cAMP concentration and therefore a marked increase in  $\text{Cl}^-$  secretion. In response to it, large quantities of water and  $\text{Na}^+$  are secreted into the lumen, which can lead to severe diarrhea (up to 1 L/hour!).

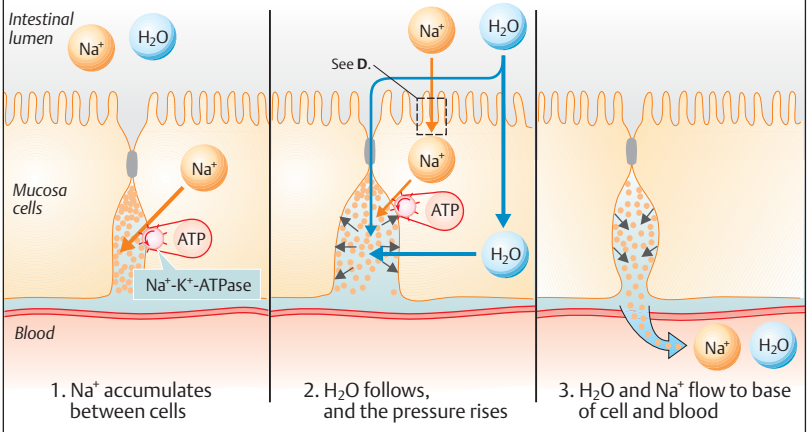
In addition to  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  from pancreatic juice,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is also secreted into the intestinal lumen by the small and large intestine ( $\rightarrow$  **A**).  $\text{K}^+$  is secreted (aldosterone-dependent) by crypt cells of the colon (luminal  $\text{K}^+$  concentration  $\approx$  90 mmol/l!) and reabsorbed via the  $\text{H}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$  pump of the surface epithelium (similar to the mechanism in the stomach). The aldosterone-dependent  $\text{K}^+$  secretion/absorption ratio determines the net amount of  $\text{K}^+$  excreted ( $\rightarrow$  **A** and p. 180). *Diarrhea* results in losses of  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (hypokalemia and metabolic acidosis;  $\rightarrow$  p. 142).

**$\text{Ca}^{2+}$** . The stool contains one-third of the dietary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  intake.  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is absorbed in the upper part of the small intestine ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) with the aid of intracellular *calcium-binding protein* (CaBP). Calcitriol increases CaBP synthesis, thereby increasing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  absorption ( $\rightarrow$  p. 292). Deficiencies of vitamin D or substances that form water-insoluble compounds with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (phytin, oxalate, fatty acids) decrease  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  absorption.  **$\text{Mg}^{2+}$**  is absorbed by similar mechanisms, but **iron (Fe)** is absorbed by a different mechanism ( $\rightarrow$  p. 90).

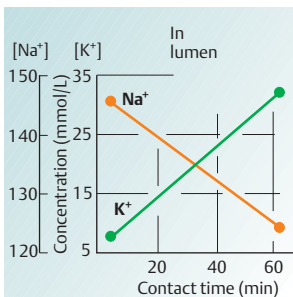
**A. Water and electrolyte absorption in the gut**



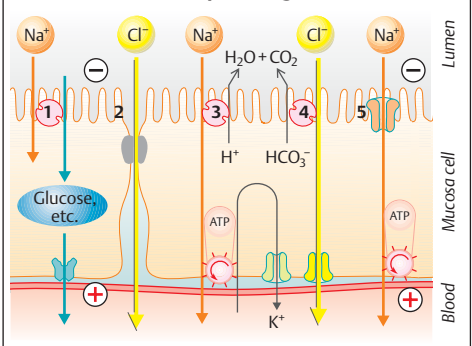
**B.  $Na^+$  and  $H_2O$  absorption in the gut (model)**



**C.  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  exchange in ileum**



**D.  $Na^+$  and  $Cl^-$  absorption in gut**



## Large Intestine, Defecation, Feces

**Anatomy.** The terminal end of the gastrointestinal tract includes the *large intestine* (*cecum* and *colon*, ca. 1.3 m in length) and *rectum*. The large intestinal mucosa has characteristic pits (crypts), most of which are lined with mucus-forming cells (*goblet cells*). Some of the surface cells are equipped with a brush border membrane and reabsorb ions and water.

The large intestine has two **main functions**: (1) It serves as a *reservoir* for the intestinal contents (cecum, ascending colon, rectum). (2) It absorbs water and electrolytes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 262), so the ca. 500–1500 mL of chyme that reaches the large intestine can be reduced to about 100–200 mL. The large intestine is not an essential organ; therefore, large segments of the intestine can be removed—e.g., for treatment of cancer.

Water instilled into the **rectum** via an *enema* is reabsorbed. Anally delivered drugs (*suppositories*) also diffuse through the intestinal wall into the bloodstream. Substances administered by this route bypass the liver and also escape the effects of gastric acid and digestive enzymes.

**Motility.** Different local mixing movements of the large intestine can be distinguished, e.g., powerful segmentation contractions associated with pouch formation (*haustration*) and anterograde or retrograde *peristaltic waves* (pacemaker located in transverse colon). Thus, stool from the colon can also be transported to the cecum. *Mass movements* occur 2–3 times daily ( $\rightarrow$  A). They are generally stimulated by a meal and are caused by the gastrocolic reflex and gastrointestinal hormones.

The typical sequence of **mass movement** can be observed on X-ray films after administration of a barium meal, as shown in the diagrams ( $\rightarrow$  A1–8). **A1**, barium meal administered at 7:00 a.m. **A2**, 12 noon: the barium mass is already visible in the last loop of the ileum and in the cecum. Lunch accelerates the emptying of the ileum. **A3**, about 5 minutes later, the tip of the barium mass is choked off. **A4**, shortly afterwards, the barium mass fills the transverse colon. **A5**, haustration divides the barium mass in the transverse colon, thereby mixing its contents. **A6–8**, a few minutes later (still during the meal), the transverse colon suddenly contracts around the leading end of the intestinal contents and rapidly propels them to the sigmoid colon.

**Intestinal bacteria.** The intestinal tract is initially sterile at birth, but later becomes colonized with orally introduced anaerobic

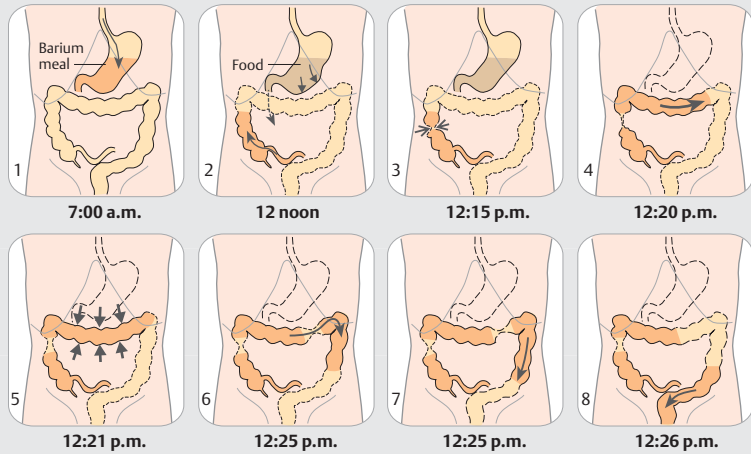
bacteria during the first few weeks of life. The large intestine of a healthy adult contains  $10^{11}$  to  $10^{12}$  bacteria per mL of intestinal contents; the corresponding figure for the ileum is roughly  $10^6$ /mL. The low pH inside the stomach is an important barrier against pathogens. Consequently, there are virtually no bacteria in the upper part of the small intestine ( $0$ – $10^4$ /mL). Intestinal bacteria increase the activity of intestinal immune defenses (“*physiological inflammation*”), and their metabolic activity is useful for the host. The bacteria synthesize vitamin K and convert indigestible substances (e.g. cellulose) or partially digested saccharides (e.g. lactose) into absorbable short-chain fatty acids and gases (methane,  $H_2$ ,  $CO_2$ ).

The **anus** is normally closed. Anal closure is regulated by Kohlrausch’s valve (transverse rectal fold), the puborectal muscles, the (involuntary) internal and (voluntary) external anal sphincter muscles, and a venous spongy body. Both sphincters contract tonically, the internal sphincter (smooth muscle) intrinsically or stimulated by sympathetic neurons ( $L_1$ ,  $L_2$ ) via  $\alpha$ -adrenoceptors, the external sphincter muscle (striated muscle) by the pudendal nerve.

**Defecation.** Filling of the upper portion of the rectum (*rectal ampulla*) with intestinal contents stimulates the rectal stretch receptors ( $\rightarrow$  B2), causing *reflex relaxation of the internal sphincter* (accommodation via VIP neurons), *constriction of the external sphincter*, and an *urge to defecate*. If the (generally voluntary) decision to defecate is made, the rectum shortens, the puborectal and external anal sphincter muscles relax, and (by a spinal parasympathetic reflex via  $S_2$ – $S_4$ ) annular contractions of the circular muscles of the descending colon, sigmoid colon and rectum—assisted by increased abdominal pressure—propel the feces out of the body ( $\rightarrow$  B). The normal **frequency of bowel evacuation** can range from 3 times a day to 3 times a week, depending on the dietary content of indigestible fiber (e.g. cellulose, lignin). Frequent passage of watery stools (*diarrhea*) or infrequent stool passage (*constipation*) can lead to various disorders.

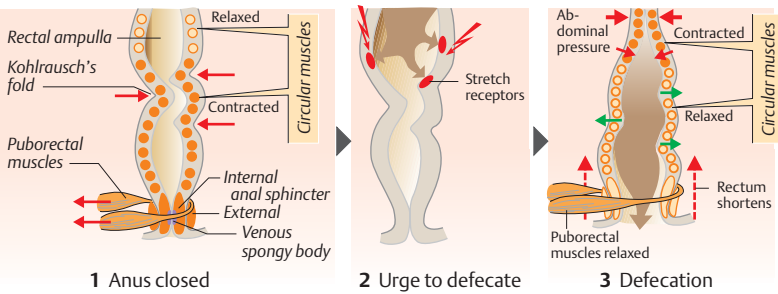
**Stool (feces;  $\rightarrow$  C).** The average adult excretes 60–80 g of feces/day. Diarrhea can raise this over 200 g/d. Roughly  $1/4$  of the feces is composed of *dry matter*, about  $1/3$  is attributable to bacteria from the large intestine.

### A. Mass movement in large intestine

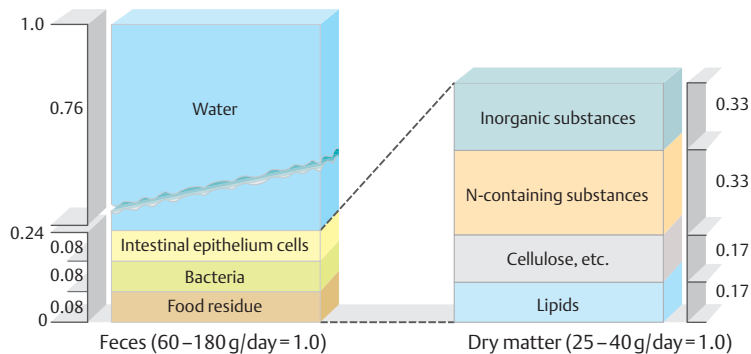


(After Hertz & Newton)

### B. Anal closure and defecation



### C. Composition of feces



## Integrative Systems of the Body

Unlike unicellular organisms, multicellular organisms have numerous specialized groups of cells and organs, the many different functions of which must be expediently *integrated* and *coordinated* (see also p.2). In mammals, the **nervous system** and **endocrine system** are chiefly responsible for control and integration, while the **immune system** serves as an information system for corporal immune defense (→ p.94ff.). These systems communicate by way of *electrical and/or chemical signals* (→ A).

Nerve impulses and hormonal signals serve to **control and regulate** (→ p.4) the metabolism and internal milieu (blood pressure, pH, water and electrolyte balance, temperature, etc.), physical growth and maturation, reproductive functions, sexual response, and responses to the social environment. The signals received by sensors (=sensory receptors) in the inner organs, musculoskeletal system, skin and the sensory organs, as well as psychological factors, skeletal muscles and other factors also play a part in regulation and control. The signals are used by many *feedback mechanisms* in the body (→ p.4).

**Nerve fibers** are specifically adapted for rapid transmission of finely graded signals. The nervous system consists of the **central nervous system** (CNS; → p.310ff.) and **peripheral nervous system**. The latter consists of:

- ◆ The **somatic nervous system**, which conducts impulses from non-visceral sensors to a center (afferent neurons) and controls the skeletal musculature (efferent neurons).
- ◆ The **peripheral autonomic nervous system** (→ p.78ff.), which consists of efferent neurons and mainly functions to control the circulatory system, inner organs and sexual functions. It is supplemented by:
  - ◆ **Visceral afferent neurons**, i.e., nerve fibers that conduct signals from inner organs to a center. They are usually located in the same nerves as autonomous fibers (e.g., in vagus nerve); and the
  - ◆ **Enteric nervous system**, which integrates the local functions of the esophagus, stomach and gut (→ p.234).

**Hormones.** Like neurotransmitters (see below) and the immune system's cytokines and chemokines (→ p.94ff.), hormones serve as *messenger substances* that are mainly utilized for *slower, long-term* transmission of signals. **Endocrine hormones** are carried by the blood to target structures great distances away. **Paracrine hormones** (and other paracrine transmitters) only act on cells in the immediate vicinity of the cells from which they are released. Hormones that act on the cells that produced the messenger substance are referred to as **autocrine hormones**.

Hormones are synthesized in specialized glands, tissues and cells (e.g., *neuroendocrine cells*). Their **target organ** is either a subordinate endocrine gland (*glandotropic hormone*) or non-endocrine tissue (*aglandotropic hormone*). The **target cells** have high-affinity binding sites (**receptors**) for their specific hormone, so very low concentrations of the hormone suffice for signal transduction ( $10^{-6}$  to  $10^{-12}$  mol/L). The receptors on the target cells pick out the substances specifically intended for them from a wide variety of different messenger substances in their environment.

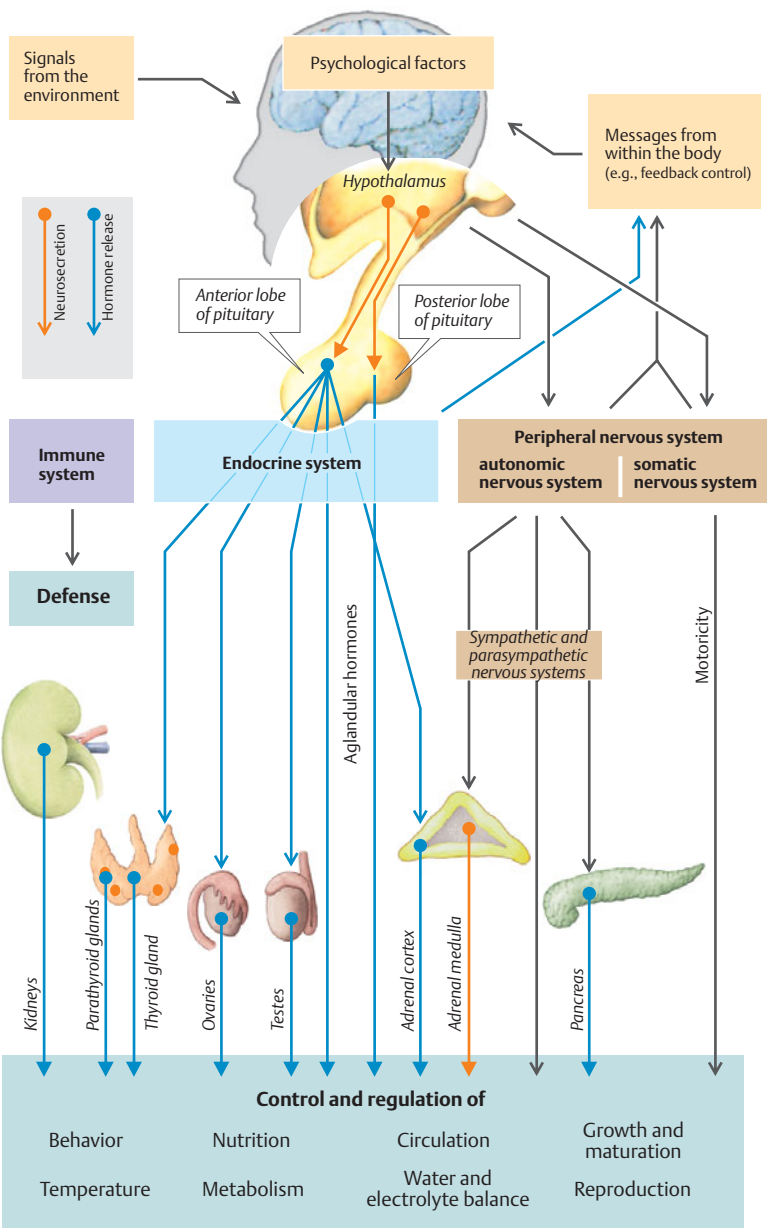
Hormones work closely with the nervous system to regulate *digestion, metabolism, growth, maturation, physical and mental development, maturation, reproduction, adaptation*, and the internal milieu of the body (*homeostasis*) (→ A). Most of these actions are predominately autonomous functions subject to central control by the **hypothalamus**, which is controlled by higher centers of the brain (→ p.330).

**Neurotransmitters** released at chemical **synapses** of nerve endings transmit signals to postsynaptic nerve fibers, muscles or glands (→ p.50ff.). Some neuropeptides released by presynaptic neurons also exert their effects in neighboring synapses, resulting in a kind of "paracrine" action.

Neurons can also secrete hormones, e.g., epinephrine, oxytocin and antidiuretic hormone. Some transmitter substances of the immune system, e.g. thymosin and various cytokines, also have endocrine effects.



**A. Regulation of autonomic nervous system functions (overview)**



## Hormones

Hormones are messenger substances that convey information signals relevant to cell function (→ p.266). **Endocrine hormones**, i.e., those transported in the bloodstream, are produced in *endocrine glands* such as the hypothalamus, thyroid, parathyroid glands, adrenal medulla, pancreatic islets, ovaries and testes. They are also synthesized in diffusely scattered *endocrine cells* of the CNS, in C cells of the thyroid, and in the thymus, atria, kidneys, liver, gastrointestinal tract, etc. **Paracrine hormones**, i.e., those that affect nearby cells only (tissue hormones or *mediators*; see below) are secreted by cells widely distributed throughout the body.

### Types of hormone.

1. **Peptide hormones** (→ A, dark blue areas) and **glycoprotein hormones** (→ A, light blue areas) are hydrophilic hormones stored in *secretory granules* and released by exocytosis as required. Multiple hormones can be produced from a single gene (→ e.g., POMC gene, p.280) by variable splicing and posttranslational modification (→ p.8ff.).

2. **Steroid hormones** (→ A, yellow areas) and **calcitriol** are chemically related lipophilic hormones metabolized from *cholesterol* (→ pp.292ff). They are not stored, but are synthesized as needed.

3. **Tyrosine derivatives** (→ A, orange areas) include (a) the *hydrophilic catecholamines* dopamine, epinephrine and norepinephrine (→ p.84) and (b) *lipophilic thyroid hormones* (T<sub>3</sub>, T<sub>4</sub>; → p.286).

The **lipophilic hormones** in (2) and (3b) are **transported** in the blood while bound to plasma proteins. Corticosteroids are carried bound to globulin and albumin, testosterone and estrogen to sex hormone-binding globulin and T<sub>3</sub> and T<sub>4</sub> to albumin and two other plasma proteins (→ p.286).

**Hormone receptors.** The receptors (docking sites) for glycoprotein hormones, peptide hormones and catecholamines are transmembrane proteins (→ p.14) that bind to their specific hormone on the outer cell surface. Many of these hormones induce the release of intracellular **second messengers** that transmit the hormone signal inside the cell. cAMP,

cGMP, IP<sub>3</sub>, DAG, Ca<sup>2+</sup> and NO function as second messengers (and sometimes as third messengers; → p.274ff.). Some peptide hormones like insulin, prolactin, atriopeptin and numerous growth factors bind to cell surface receptors with cytosolic domains with *enzymatic activity* (→ p.278). Steroid hormones, on the other hand, enter the cells themselves (→ p.278). Once they bind to *cytosolic receptor proteins*, steroid hormones (as well as calcitriol, T<sub>3</sub> and T<sub>4</sub>) are transported to the cell nucleus, where they influence transcription (genomic action). A target cell can have different receptors for different hormones (e.g., insulin and glucagon) or different receptors for a single hormone (e.g., α<sub>1</sub> and β<sub>2</sub> adrenoceptors for epinephrine).

**Hierarchy of hormones** (→ A). The secretion of hormones is often triggered by neural impulses from the CNS. The *hypothalamus* is the main neurohormonal control center (→ p.280 and 330). Hypothalamic neurons extend to the posterior pituitary (neurohypophysis). The hormones are secreted either by the hypothalamus itself or by the posterior pituitary. Hypothalamic hormones also control hormone release from the *anterior pituitary* (adenohypophysis). Anterior pituitary *glandotropic hormones* control *peripheral endocrine glands* (→ A top, green areas), which release the end-hormone (→ A). The original signal can be *amplified* or *modulated* at these relay sites (→ p.272).

**Pituitary hormones.** Hypothalamic hormones control *anterior pituitary* hormone secretion by either stimulating or inhibiting hormone production. They are therefore called *releasing hormones (RH)* or *release-inhibiting hormones (IH)*, resp. (→ A and table). Most anterior pituitary hormones are glandotropic (→ p.280). The *posterior pituitary* hormones are released by neuronal signals and are mainly aglandotropic (→ p.280).

Other **endocrine hormones** are secreted largely independent of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis, e.g., *pancreatic hormones*, *parathyroid hormone (PTH)*, *calcitonin* and *calcitriol*, *angiotensin II*, *aldosterone* (→ p.182ff.), *erythropoietin* (→ p.88) and *gastrointestinal hormones* (→ p.234). *Atriopeptin* is secreted from the heart atrium in response to stretch

stimuli ( $\rightarrow$  p. 170), whereas the release of *melatonin* is subject to afferent neuron control ( $\rightarrow$  p. 334).

Some of these hormones (e.g., angiotensin II) and *tissue hormones* or **mediators** exert *paracrine effects* within endocrine and exocrine glands, the stomach wall, other organs, and on inflammatory processes. Bradykinin ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 214 and 236), histamine ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 100 and 242), serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine,  $\rightarrow$  p. 102) and eicosanoids are members of this group.

**Eicosanoids.** Prostaglandins (PG), thromboxane (TX), leukotrienes and epoxyeicosatrienoates are eicosanoids (Greek εικοσι = twenty [C atoms]) derived in humans from the fatty acid **arachidonic acid (AA)**. Prostaglandins derived from AA have the index number 2). AA occurs as an ester in the phospholipid layer of the cell membranes and is obtained from dietary sources (meat), synthesized from linoleic acid, an essential fatty acid, and released by *phospholipase A<sub>2</sub>* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 252).

Pathways of **eicosanoid synthesis** from arachidonic acid (AA):

1. *Cyclooxygenase pathway:* Cyclooxygenase (COX)-1 and COX-2 convert AA into PGG<sub>2</sub>, which gives rise to PGH<sub>2</sub>, the primary substance of the biologically active compounds PGE<sub>2</sub>, PGD<sub>2</sub>, PGF<sub>2 $\alpha$</sub> , PGI<sub>2</sub> (prostacyclin) and TXA<sub>2</sub>. COX-1 and 2 are inhibited by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (e.g., Aspirin®).

2. *Lipoxygenase pathway:* Leukotriene A<sub>4</sub> is synthesized from AA (via the intermediate 5-HPETE = 5-hydroperoxyeicosatetraenoate) by way of 5-lipoxygenase (especially in neutrophilic granulocytes). Leukotriene A<sub>4</sub> is the parent substance of the leukotrienes C<sub>4</sub>, D<sub>4</sub> and E<sub>4</sub>. The significance of 12-lipoxygenase (especially in thrombocytes) is not yet clear, but 15-lipoxygenase is known to produce vasoactive lipoxins (LXA<sub>4</sub>, LXB<sub>4</sub>).

3. *Cytochrome P450-epoxygenase* produces epoxyeicosatrienoates (EpETrE = EE).

#### Typical effects of eicosanoids:

**PGE<sub>2</sub>** dilates the bronchial and vascular musculature (and keeps the lumen of the fetal ductus arteriosus and foramen ovale open;  $\rightarrow$  p. 220), stimulates intestinal and uterine contractions, protects the gastric mucosa ( $\rightarrow$  p. 242), inhibits lipolysis, increases the glomerular filtration rate (GFR), plays a role in fever development ( $\rightarrow$  p. 224), sensitizes nociceptive nerve endings (pain) and increases the

permeability of blood vessels (inflammation). **PGD<sub>2</sub>** induces bronchoconstriction. **PGI<sub>2</sub> (prostacyclin)** synthesized in the endothelium, is vasodilatory and inhibits platelet aggregation. **TXA<sub>2</sub>**, on the other hand, occurs in platelets, promotes platelet aggregation and acts as a vasoconstrictor ( $\rightarrow$  p. 102). **11,12-EpETrE** has a vasodilatory effect (= EDHF,  $\rightarrow$  p. 214).

### Hormones (h.) of the hypothalamus and pituitary

Name*	Abbreviation/synonyme
<b>Hypothalamus</b>	
The suffix “-liberin” denotes releasing h. (RH) or factor (RF); “-statin” is used for release-inhibiting h. (IH) or factors (IF)	
Corticoliberin	Corticotropin RH, CRH, CRF
Gonadoliberin	Gonadotropin RH, Gn-RH; ICSH
Prolactostatin	Prolactin IH, PIH, PIF, dopamine
Somatoliberin	Somatotropin RH, SRH, SRF, GHRH, GRH
Somatostatin**	Somatotropin (growth h.) IH, SIH
Thyroliberin	Thyrotropin RH, TRH, TRF

#### Anterior lobe of the pituitary

Corticotropin	Adrenocorticotrophic h. (ACTH)
Follitropin	Follicle-stimulating h. (FSH)
Lutropin	Luteinizing h. (LH), interstitial cell-stimulating h. (ICSH)
Melanotropin	$\alpha$ -Melanocyte-stimulating h. ( $\alpha$ -MSH), $\alpha$ -melanocortin
Somatotropin	Somatotropic h. (STH), growth h. (GH)
Thyrotropin	Thyroid stimulating h. (TSH)
Prolactin	PRL, lactogenic (mammotropic) h.

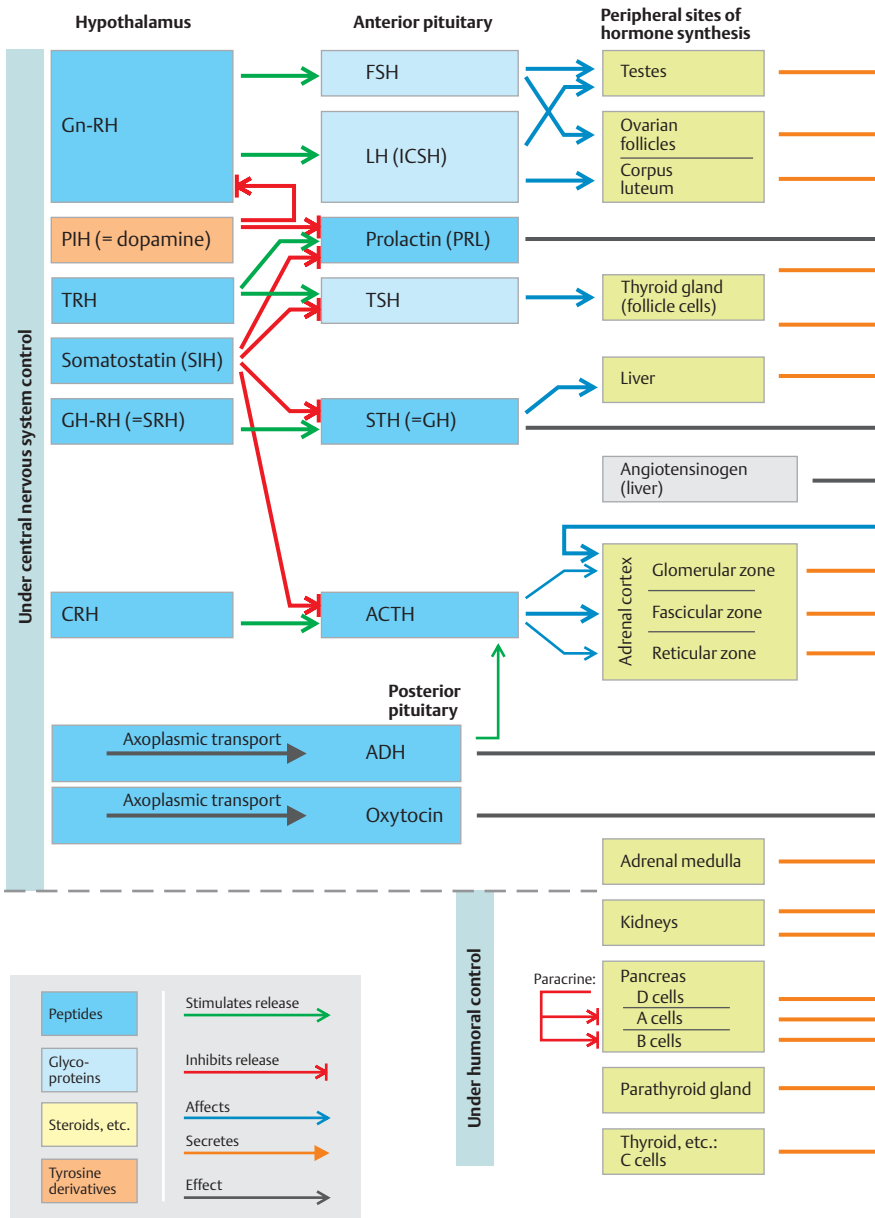
#### Posterior lobe of the pituitary

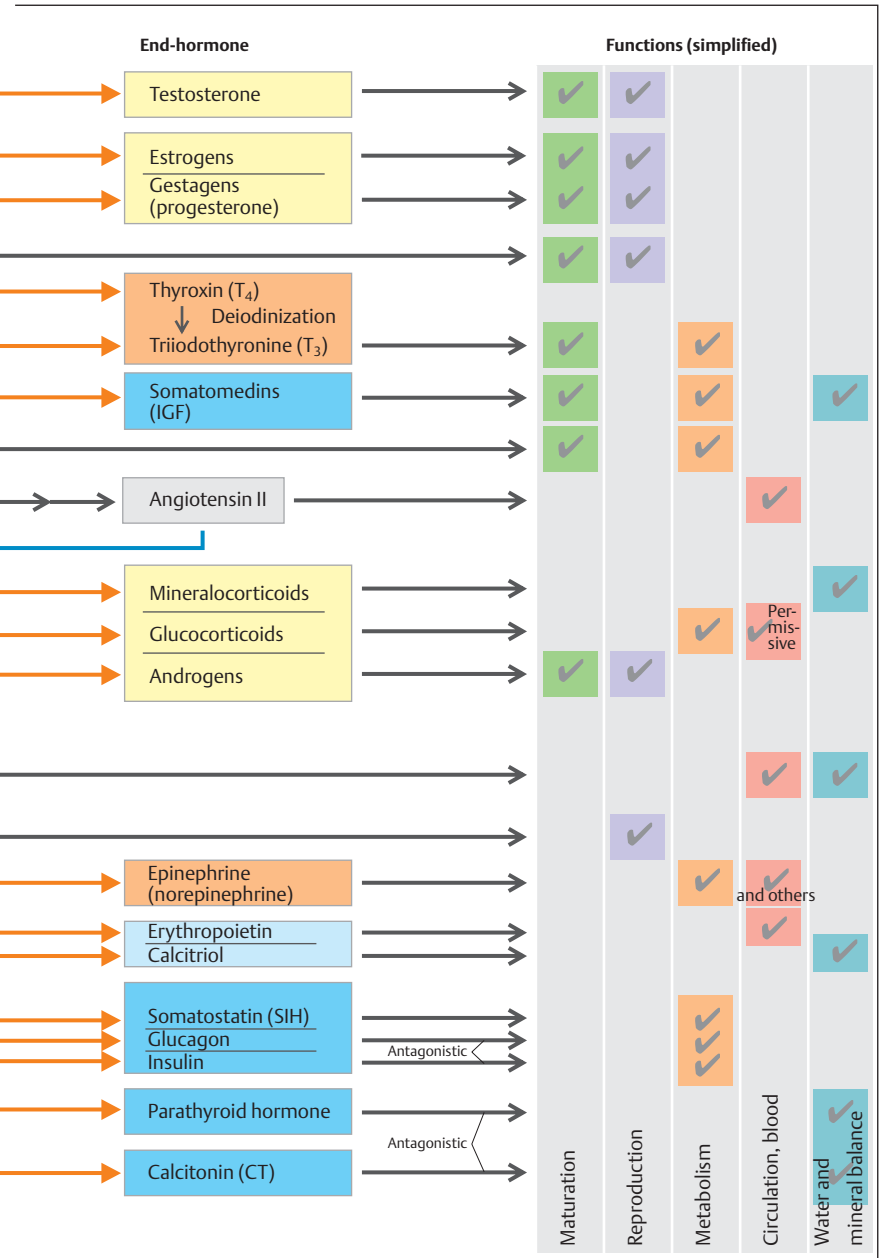
Oxytocin	-
Adiuretin	Anti-diuretic h. ADH, (arginine-) vasopressin (AVP)

\* Names generally recommended by IUPAC-IUB Committee on Biochemical Nomenclature.

\*\* Also synthesized in gastrointestinal organs, etc.

A. The hormones (simplified overview excluding tissue hormones)





## Humoral Signals: Control and Effects

Hormones and other humoral signals function to provide **feedback control**, a mechanism in which the response to a signal feeds back on the signal generator (e.g., endocrine gland). The speed at which control measures are implemented depends on the rate at which the signal substance is broken down—the quicker the degradation process, the faster and more flexible the control.

In **negative feedback control**, the response to a feedback signal opposes the original signal. In the example shown in **A1**, a rise in plasma cortisol in response to the release of corticotropin-releasing hormone, CRH) from the hypothalamus leads to down-regulation of the signal cascade “CRH  $\Rightarrow$  ACTH  $\Rightarrow$  adrenal cortex,” resulting in a decrease in cortisol secretion. In shorter feedback loops, ACTH can also negatively feed back on the hypothalamus ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**), and cortisol, the *end-hormone*, can negatively feed back on the anterior pituitary ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). In some cases, the *metabolic parameter* regulated by a hormone (e.g., plasma glucose concentration) rather than the hormone itself represents the feedback signal. In the example ( $\rightarrow$  **B**), glucagon increases blood glucose levels (while insulin decreases them), which in turn inhibits the secretion of glucagon (and stimulates that of insulin). *Neuronal signals* can also serve as feedback (*neuroendocrine feedback*) used, for example, to regulate plasma osmolality ( $\rightarrow$  p. 170).

In **positive feedback control**, the response to the feedback amplifies the original signal and heightens the overall response (e.g., in *autocrine regulation*; see below).

The higher hormone not only controls the synthesis and excretion of the end-hormone, but also controls the **growth of peripheral endocrine gland**. If, for example, the end-hormone concentration in the blood is too low despite maximum synthesis and secretion of the existing endocrine cells, the gland will enlarge to increase end-hormone production. This type of **compensatory hypertrophy** is observed for instance in goiter development ( $\rightarrow$  p. 288) and can also occur after surgical excision of part of the gland.

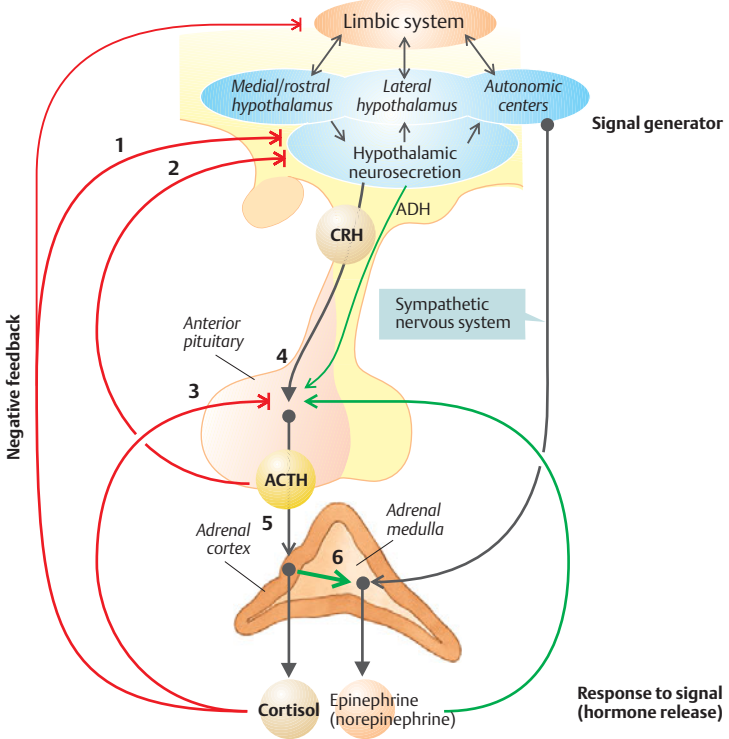
**Therapeutic administration** of a hormone (e.g., cortisone, a cortisol substitute) have the same effect on higher hormone secretion (ACTH and CRH in the example) as that of the end-hormone (cortisol in the example) normally secreted by the peripheral gland (adrenal cortex in this case). *Long-term* administration of an end-hormone would therefore lead to inhibition and atrophy of the endocrine gland or cells that normally produce that hormone. This is known as **compensatory atrophy**.

A **rebound effect** can occur if secretion of the higher hormone (e.g., ACTH) is temporarily elevated after discontinuation of end-hormone administration.

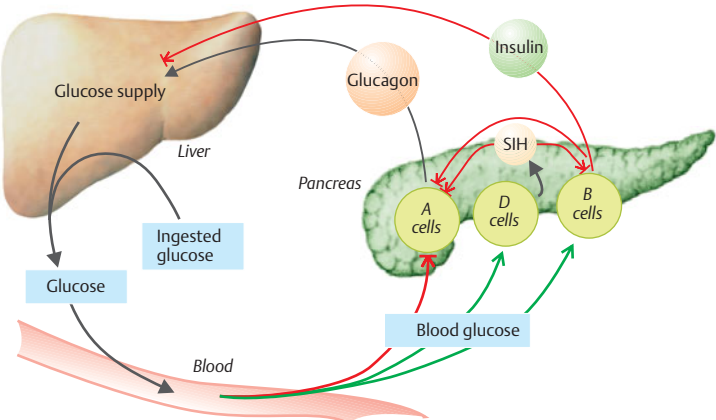
The **principal functions** of *endocrine hormones*, *paracrine hormones* and other humoral transmitter substances are to control and regulate:

- ◆ *enzyme activity* by altering the conformation (*allosterism*) or inhibiting/stimulating the synthesis of the enzyme (induction);
  - ◆ *transport processes*, e.g., by changing the rate of insertion and synthesis of ion channels/carriers or by changing their opening probability or affinity;
  - ◆ *growth* (see above), i.e., increasing the rate of mitosis (*proliferation*), “programmed cell death” (*apoptosis*) or through cell differentiation or dedifferentiation;
  - ◆ *secretion of other hormones*. Regulation can occur via endocrine pathways (e.g., ACTH-mediated cortisol secretion;  $\rightarrow$  **A5**), a short portal vein-like circuit within the organ (e.g., effect of CRH on ACTH secretion,  $\rightarrow$  **A4**), or the effect of cortisol from the adrenal cortex on the synthesis of epinephrine in the adrenal medulla, ( $\rightarrow$  **A6**), or via paracrine pathways (e.g., the effect of somatostatin, SIH, on the secretion of insulin and glucagon;  $\rightarrow$  **B**).
- Cells that have receptors for their own humoral signals transmit **autocrine signals** that function to
- ◆ exert *negative feedback control* on a target cell, e.g., to discontinue secretion of a transmitter (e.g., norepinephrine;  $\rightarrow$  p. 84);
  - ◆ *coordinate* cells of the same type (e.g., in growth);
  - ◆ exert *positive feedback control* on the secreting cell or to cells of the same type. These mechanisms serve to amplify weak signals as is observed in the eicosanoid secretion or in T cell clonal expansion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 96ff.).

**A. Regulation of cortisol and epinephrine concentrations in plasma**



**B. Control of blood glucose**





## Cellular Transmission of Signals from Extracellular Messengers

Hormones, neurotransmitters ( $\rightarrow$  p. 55 and p. 82), cytokines and chemokines ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.) act as *messenger substances* (**first messengers**) that are transported to their respective target cells by extracellular pathways. The target cell has a high-affinity binding site (**receptor**) for its *specific* messenger substance.

**Glycoprotein and peptide messengers** as well as **catecholamines** bind to cell surface receptors on the target cell. *Binding of the messenger to its receptor* usually triggers certain protein-protein interactions (and sometimes protein-phospholipid interactions). This leads to the release of secondary messenger substances (**second messengers**) that forward the signal within the cell. Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP), inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>), 1,2-diacylglycerol (DAG) and Ca<sup>2+</sup> are such second messengers. Since the molecular structure of the receptor ensures that the effect of the first messenger will be specific, multiple first messengers can use the same second messenger. Moreover, the intracellular concentration of the second messenger can be raised by one messenger and lowered by another. In many cases, different types of receptors exist for a single first messenger.

### cAMP as a Second Messenger

For a cAMP-mediated response to occur, the cell membrane must contain stimulatory (G<sub>s</sub>) or inhibitory (G<sub>i</sub>) **G proteins** (guanyl nucleotide-binding proteins) ( $\rightarrow$  A1). These G proteins consist of three subunits—alpha ( $\alpha_5$  or  $\alpha_i$ ), beta ( $\beta$ ) and gamma ( $\gamma$ )—and are therefore *heterotrimers*. Guanosine diphosphate (GDP) is bound to the  $\alpha$ -subunit of an inactive G protein. Once the first **messenger (M)** binds to the **receptor (Rec.)**, the M–Rec. complex conjugates with the G<sub>s</sub>–GDP (or G<sub>i</sub>–GDP) molecule ( $\rightarrow$  A2). GDP is then replaced by cytosolic GTP, and the  $\beta\gamma$ -subunit and the M–Rec. complex dissociate from the  $\alpha$ -subunit if Mg<sup>2+</sup> is present ( $\rightarrow$  A3).  $\alpha_5$ -GTP or  $\alpha_i$ -GTP remain as the final products. **Adenylate cyclase** on the inside of the cell membrane is activated by  $\alpha_5$ -

GTP (cytosolic cAMP concentration rises) and inhibited by  $\alpha_i$ -GTP (cAMP concentration falls;  $\rightarrow$  A3).

**G<sub>s</sub>-activating messengers.** ACTH, adenosine (A<sub>2A</sub> and A<sub>2B</sub> rec.), antidiuretic hormone = vasopressin (V<sub>2</sub> rec.), epinephrine and norepinephrine ( $\beta_1$ ,  $\beta_2$ ,  $\beta_3$  adrenoceptors), calcitonin, CGRP, CRH, dopamine (D<sub>1</sub> and D<sub>5</sub> rec.), FSH, glucagon, histamine (H<sub>2</sub> rec.), oxytocin (V<sub>2</sub> rec., see above), many prostaglandins (DP, IP, EP<sub>2</sub> and EP<sub>4</sub> rec.), serotonin = 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT<sub>4</sub> and 5-HT<sub>7</sub> rec.), secretin and VIP activate G<sub>s</sub> proteins, thereby **raising cAMP levels**. TRH and TSH induce partial activation.

**G<sub>i</sub>-activating messengers.** Some of the above messenger substances also activate G<sub>i</sub> proteins (thereby **lowering cAMP levels**) using a different binding receptor. Acetylcholine (M<sub>2</sub> and M<sub>4</sub> rec.), adenosine (A<sub>1</sub> and A<sub>3</sub> rec.), epinephrine and norepinephrine ( $\alpha_2$  adrenoceptors), angiotensin II, chemokines, dopamine (D<sub>2</sub>, D<sub>3</sub> and D<sub>4</sub> rec.), GABA (GABA<sub>B</sub> rec.), glutamate (mGLU<sub>2-4</sub> and mGLU<sub>6-8</sub> rec.), melatonin, neuropeptide Y, opioids, serotonin = 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT<sub>1</sub> rec.), somatostatin and various other substances activate G<sub>i</sub> proteins.

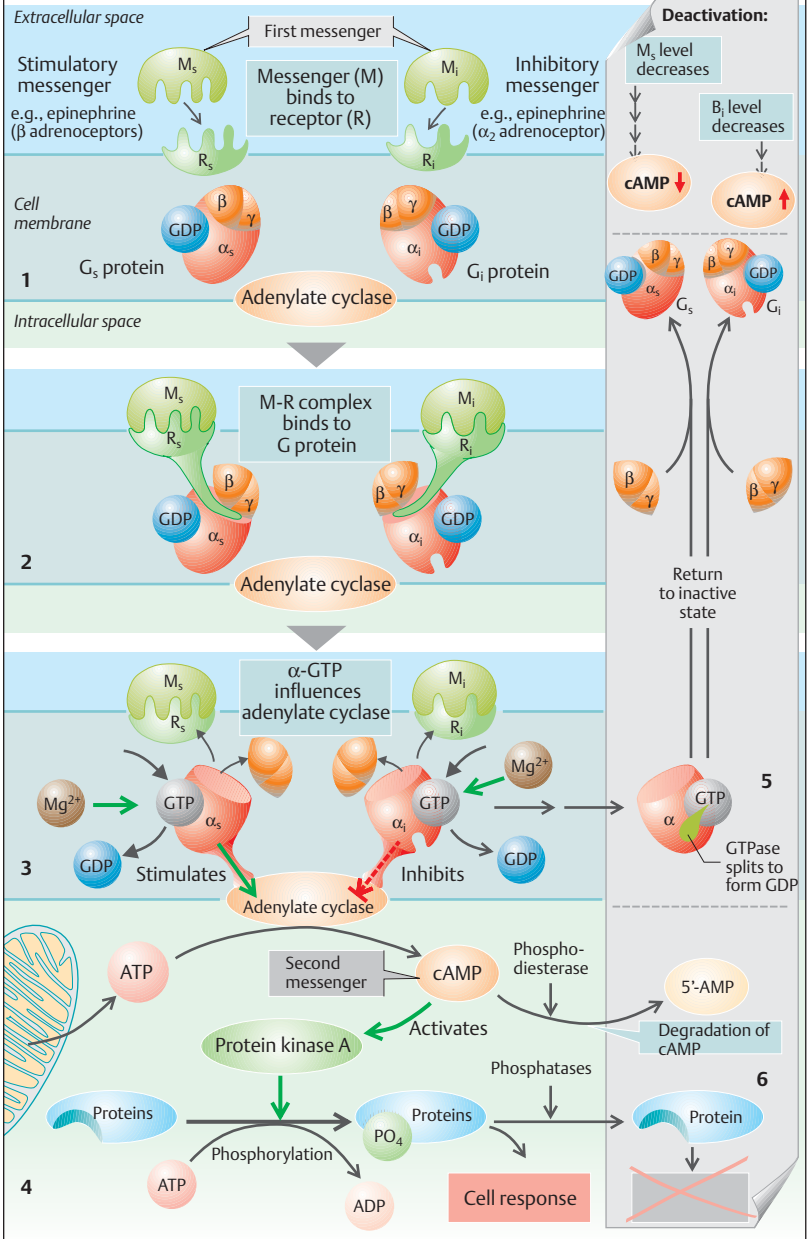
**Effects of cAMP.** cAMP activates type A protein kinases (**PKA = protein kinase A**) which then activate other proteins (usually enzymes and membrane proteins, but sometimes the receptor itself) by **phosphorylation** ( $\rightarrow$  A4). The specific response of the cell depends on the type of protein phosphorylated, which is determined by the type of protein kinases present in the target cell. Phosphorylation converts the proteins from an inactive to an active form or vice versa.

**Hepatic glycogenolysis**, for instance, is dually increased by cAMP and PKA. Glycogen synthase catalyzing glycogen synthesis is inactivated by phosphorylation whereas glycogen phosphorylase stimulating glycogenolysis is activated by cAMP-mediated phosphorylation.

**Signal transduction** comprises the entire signaling pathway from the time the first messenger binds to the cell to the occurrence of cellular effect, during which time the signal can be (a) *modified* by other signals and (b) *amplified* by many powers of ten. A single adenylate cyclase molecule can produce numerous cAMP and PKA molecules, which in turn can phosphorylate an enormous number of enzyme molecules. The interposition of more kinases can lead to the formation of long



### A. cAMP as second messenger



kinase cascades that additionally amplify the original signal while receiving further regulatory signals.

**Deactivation of the signaling cascade** (→ A, right panel) is induced by the  $\alpha$ -subunit in that its GTP molecule splits off GDP and  $P_i$  after reacting with its *GTPase* (→ A5), and the subunit subsequently binds to a  $\beta\gamma$  subunit to again form the trimeric G protein. *Phosphodiesterase* also converts cAMP into inactive 5'-AMP (→ A4, A6), and *phosphatases* dephosphorylate the protein previously phosphorylated by protein kinase A (→ A4). Another way to inactivate a receptor in the presence of high messenger concentrations is to make the receptor insensitive by phosphorylating it (*desensitization*).

**Cholera toxin** inhibits the GTPase, thereby blocking its deactivating effect on adenylate cyclase (→ A5). This results in extremely high levels of intracellular cAMP. When occurring in intestinal cells, this can lead to severe diarrhea (→ p. 262). **Pertussis** (whooping cough) **toxin** and **forskolin** also lead to an increase in the cytosolic cAMP concentration. Pertussis toxin does this by inhibiting  $G_i$  protein and thereby blocking its inhibitory effect on adenylate cyclase, while forskolin directly activates adenylate cyclase. **Theophylline** and **caffeine** inhibit the conversion of cAMP to 5'-AMP, which extends the life span of cAMP and prolongs the effect of the messenger.

Certain **ion channels** are regulated by  $G_s$ ,  $G_i$  and other G proteins ( $G_o$ ) with or without the aid of adenylate cyclase. Some  $Ca^{2+}$  channels are activated by  $G_s$  proteins and inactivated by  $G_o$  proteins, whereas some  $K^+$  channels are activated by  $G_o$  proteins and (the  $\beta\gamma$  subunits of)  $G_i$  proteins (→ p. 83 B).  $G_{olf}$  in olfactory receptors, **transducin** in retinal rods (→ p. 348ff.), and  **$\alpha$ -gustducin** in gustatory sensors are also members of the G protein family (→ p. 338).

### IP<sub>3</sub> and DAG as Second Messengers

As in the case of  $G_s$  proteins, once the first messenger using this transduction pathway binds to its receptor outside the cell, the  $\alpha_q$  subunit dissociates from the heterotrimeric  **$G_q$  protein** and activates phospholipase C- $\beta$  (**PLC- $\beta$** ) on the inside of the cell membrane (→ B1). PLC- $\beta$  converts phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (**PIP<sub>2</sub>**), to **inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>)** and **diacylglycerol (DAG)**. IP<sub>3</sub> and DAG function as parallel second messengers with different ac-

tions that are exerted either independently or jointly (→ B1).

IP<sub>3</sub> is a hydrophilic molecule carried via the cytosol to  $Ca^{2+}$  stores within the cell (mainly in the endoplasmic reticulum; → p. 36). IP<sub>3</sub> binds there to  $Ca^{2+}$  channels to open them (→ B2), leading to an efflux of  $Ca^{2+}$  from the intracellular stores into the cytosol. In the cytosol,  $Ca^{2+}$  acts as a *third messenger* that regulates various cell functions, e.g., by interacting with the cAMP signaling chain. Many  $Ca^{2+}$ -related activities are mediated by *calmodulin*, a calcium-binding protein (→ pp. 36 and 70).

**DAG** is a lipophilic molecule that remains in the cell membrane and has two main functions:

- ◆ DAG is broken down by phospholipase A2 (PLA-2) to yield *arachidonic acid*, a precursor of eicosanoids (→ B3 and p. 269).

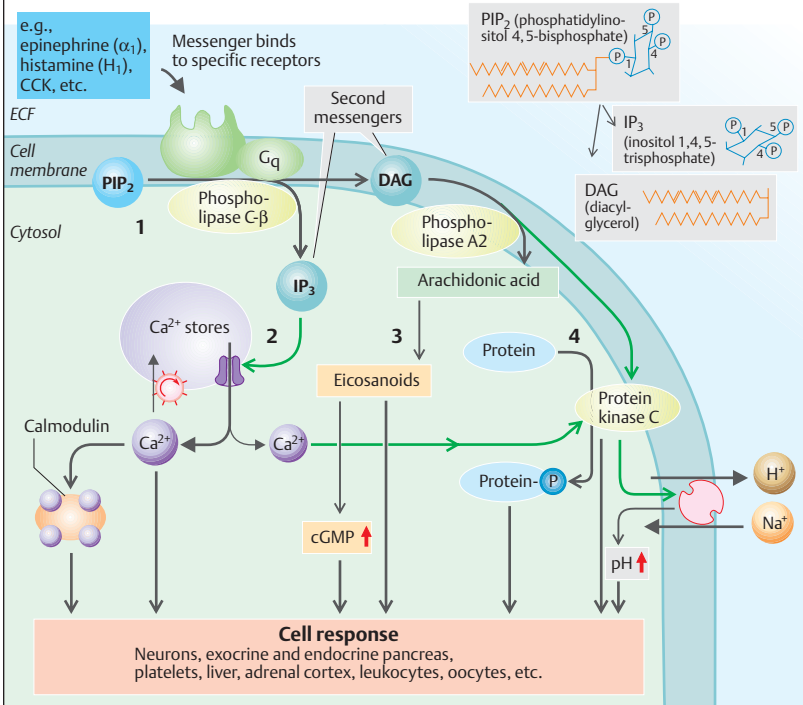
- ◆ DAG activates *protein kinase C (PKC)*. PKC is  $Ca^{2+}$ -dependent (hence the "C") because the  $Ca^{2+}$  released by IP<sub>3</sub> (see above) is needed to transfer PKC from the cytosol to the intracellular side of the cell membrane (→ B4). Thus activated PKC phosphorylates the serine or threonine residues of many proteins.

PKC triggers a series of other phosphorylation reactions (high signal amplification) that ultimately lead to the phosphorylation of **MAP kinase** (mitogen-activated protein kinase). It enters the cell nucleus and activates *Elk-1*, a gene-regulating protein. *NF- $\kappa$ B*, another gene-regulating protein, is also released in response to PKC phosphorylation. In addition, PKC activates *Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> antiporters*, thereby raising the **cellular pH**—a stimulus that triggers many other cellular reactions.

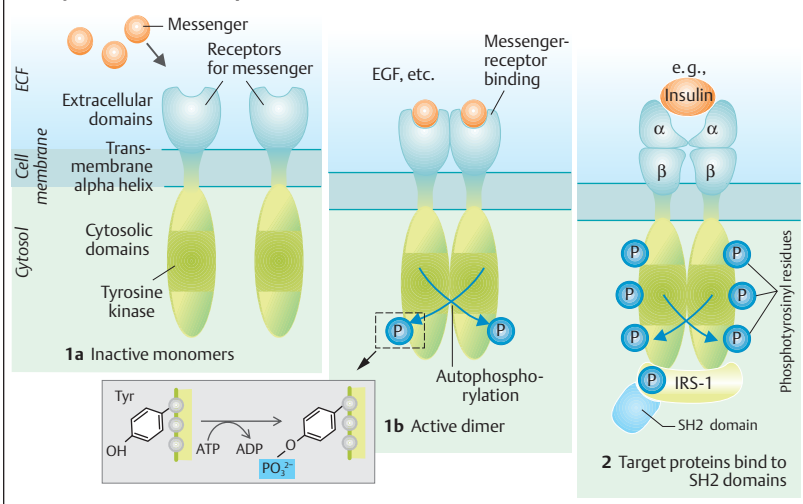
IP<sub>3</sub> and DAG activating messengers include acetylcholine ( $M_1$  and  $M_3$  cholinceptors), antidiuretic hormone = vasopressin ( $V_1$  rec.), epinephrine and norepinephrine ( $\alpha_1$  adrenoceptor), bradykinin, CCK, endothelin, gastrin, glutamate ( $mGLU_1$  and  $mGLU_5$  rec.), GRP, histamine ( $H_1$  rec.), leukotrienes, neurotensin, oxytocin and various prostaglandins (FP, TP, and  $Ep_1$  rec.), serotonin = 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT<sub>2</sub> rec.), tachykinin, thromboxane A<sub>2</sub>. TRH and TSH induce partial activation.

**Deactivation of the signaling cascade** can also be achieved through *self-inactivation* of the G proteins involved (GTP cleavage) and phosphatase (see above) as well as by degradation of IP<sub>3</sub>.

**B. Diacylglycerol (DAG) and inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>) as second messengers**



**C. Tyrosine kinase receptors**



### Enzyme-Linked Cell Surface Receptors For Messenger Substances

These (G protein-independent) receptors, together with their cytosolic domains, act as enzymes that are activated when a messenger binds to the receptor's extracellular domain. There are five classes of these receptors:

1. **Receptor guanylyl cyclases** convert GTP into the second messenger cGMP, which activates protein kinase G (PKG; see below). The *atriopeptin receptor* belongs to this class.

2. **Receptor tyrosine kinases** ( $\rightarrow$ C), phosphorylate proteins (of same or different type) at the OH group of their tyrosyl residues. The receptors for *insulin* and various *growth factors* (GF) such as e.g., E[epidermal]GF, PDGF, N[erve]GF, F[ibroblast]GF, H[epatocyte]GF, and I[nsulin-like]GF-1 belong to this class of receptors.

Signals regarding first messenger binding (e.g., EGF and PDGF) are often transferred inside the cell via binding of two receptors (**dimerization; C1a  $\Rightarrow$  C1b**) and subsequent mutual phosphorylation of their cytosolic domain (**autophosphorylation,  $\rightarrow$  C1b**). The receptor for certain hormones, like *insulin* and *IGF-1*, is from the beginning a heterotetramer ( $\alpha_2\beta_2$ ) that undergoes autophosphorylation before phosphorylating another protein (*insulin receptor substrate-1, IRS-1*) that in turn activates intracellular target proteins containing SH2 domains ( $\rightarrow$  C2).

3. **Receptor serine/threonine kinases**, which like the *TGF- $\beta$  receptor*, function similar to kinases in Group 2, the only difference being that they phosphorylate serine or threonine residues of the target protein instead of tyrosine residues (as with PKC; see above).

4. **Tyrosine kinase-associated receptors** are those where the receptor works in combination with non-receptor tyrosine kinases (chiefly proteins of the Src family) that phosphorylate the target protein. The receptors for *STH*, *prolactin*, *erythropoietin* and numerous *cytokines* belong to this group.

5. **Receptor tyrosine phosphatases** remove phosphate groups from tyrosine residues. The CD45 receptor involved in T cell activation belongs to this group.

### Hormones with Intracellular Receptors

Steroid hormones ( $\rightarrow$  p.270 ff., yellow areas), calcitriol and thyroid hormones are like other

hormones in that they induce a *specific cell response* with the difference being that they activate a different type of signaling cascade in the cell. They are *lipid-soluble* substances that freely penetrate the cell membrane.

**Steroid hormones** bind to their respective *cytoplasmic receptor protein* in the target cell ( $\rightarrow$  D). This binding leads to the dissociation of inhibitory proteins (e.g., heat shock protein, HSP) from the receptors. The *hormone-receptor protein complex* (H-R complex) then migrates to the cell nucleus (*translocation*), where it activates (**induces**) or inhibits the transcription of certain genes. The resulting increase or decrease in synthesis of the respective protein (e.g., AIPs;  $\rightarrow$  p. 182) is responsible for the actual cell response ( $\rightarrow$  D).

**Triiodothyronine (T<sub>3</sub>;  $\rightarrow$  p.286ff.) and calcitriol ( $\rightarrow$  p.292)** bind to their respective receptor proteins in the cell nucleus (*nuclear receptors*). These receptors are *hormone-activated transcription factors*. Those of calcitriol can induce the transcription of calcium-binding protein, which plays an important role in interstitial Ca<sup>2+</sup> absorption ( $\rightarrow$  p.262).

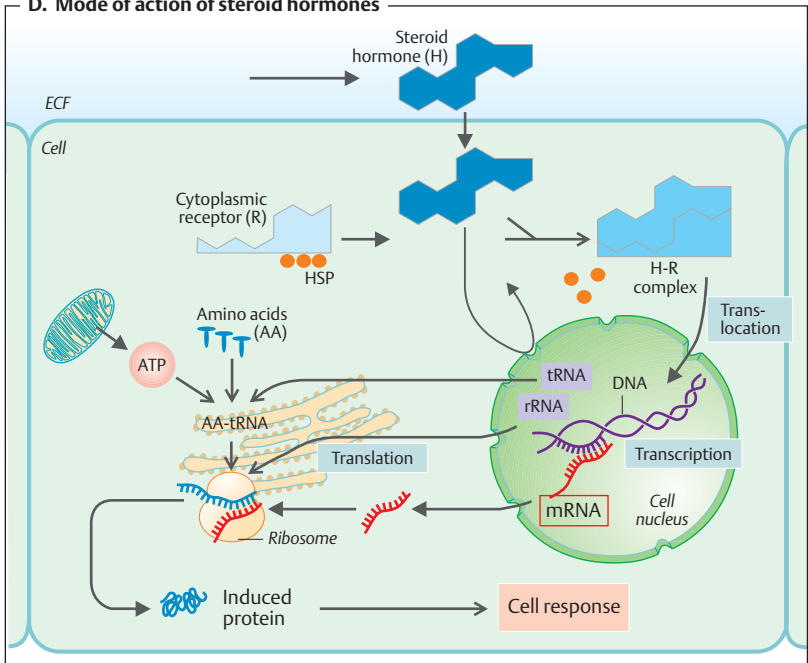
Recent research indicates that steroid hormones and calcitriol also regulate cell function by **non-genomic control mechanisms**.

### Nitric Oxide as a Transmitter Substance

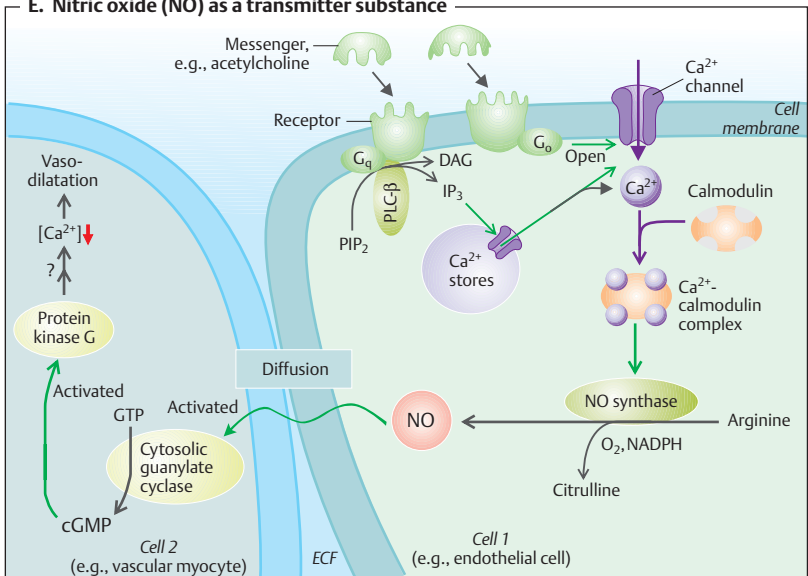
In nitrogenergic neurons and endothelial tissues, **nitric (mon)oxide (NO)** is released by Ca<sup>2+</sup>/calmodulin-mediated activation of neuronal or endothelial **nitric oxide synthase (NOS)** ( $\rightarrow$  E). Although NO has a half-life of only a few seconds, it diffuses into neighboring cells (e.g., from endothelium to vascular myocytes) so quickly that it activates **cytoplasmic guanylyl cyclase**, which converts GTP into **cGMP** ( $\rightarrow$  E). Acting as a second messenger, cGMP activates *protein kinase G (PKG)*, which in turn decreases the cytosolic Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration [Ca<sup>2+</sup>]<sub>i</sub> by still unexplained mechanisms. This ultimately leads to *vasodilatation* (e.g., in coronary arteries).

**Penile erections** are produced by cGMP-mediated vasodilatation of the deep arteries of the penis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 308). The erection can be prolonged by drugs that inhibit cGMP-specific phosphodiesterase type 5, thereby delaying the degradation of cGMP (e.g., sildenafil citrate = Viagra®).

**D. Mode of action of steroid hormones**



**E. Nitric oxide (NO) as a transmitter substance**



## Hypothalamic–Pituitary System

In the **hypothalamus**, (1) humoral signals from the periphery (e.g., from circulating cortisol) can be converted to efferent neuronal signals, and (2) afferent neuronal signals can be converted to endocrine messengers (*neurosecretion*).

The first case is possible because the hypothalamus is situated near **circumventricular organs** like the organum vasculosum laminae terminalis (OVLT), sub-fornical organ, the median eminence of the hypothalamus, and the neurohypophysis. Since there is no blood-brain barrier there, hydrophilic peptide hormones can also enter.

The hypothalamus is closely connected to other parts of the CNS (→ p. 330). It controls many autonomous regulatory functions and its neuropeptides influence higher brain functions. The hypothalamus is related to the sleeping-waking rhythm (→ p. 334) and to psychogenic factors. Stress, for example, stimulates the release of cortisol (via CRH, ACTH) and can lead to the cessation of hormone-controlled menstruation (amenorrhoea).

**Neurosecretion.** Hypothalamic neurons synthesize hormones, incorporate them in granules that are transported to the ends of the axons (*axoplasmic transport* → p. 42), and secrete them into the *bloodstream*. In this way, oxytocin and ADH are carried from magnocellular hypothalamic nuclei to the neurohypophysis, and RHs and IHs (and ADH) reach the *median eminence* of the hypothalamus (→ **A**). The *action potential-triggered* exocytotic release of the hormones into the bloodstream results in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx into the nerve endings (→ p. 50ff.).

**Oxytocin** (Oxytocin) and **antidiuretic hormone** (ADH) are two posterior pituitary hormones that enter the systemic circulation directly. **ADH** induces water retention in the renal collecting ducts ( $V_2$ -rec.; → p. 166) and induces vasoconstriction (endothelial  $V_1$  rec.) by stimulating the secretion of endothelin-1 (→ p. 212ff.). ADH-bearing neurons also secrete ADH into the portal venous circulation (see below). The ADH and CRH molecules regulate the secretion of ACTH by the adenohypophysis. **Oxytocin** promotes uterine contractions and milk ejection (→ p. 304). In nursing

mothers, suckling stimulates nerve endings in the nipples, triggering the secretion of oxytocin (and prolactin, → p. 303) via neuro-humoral reflexes.

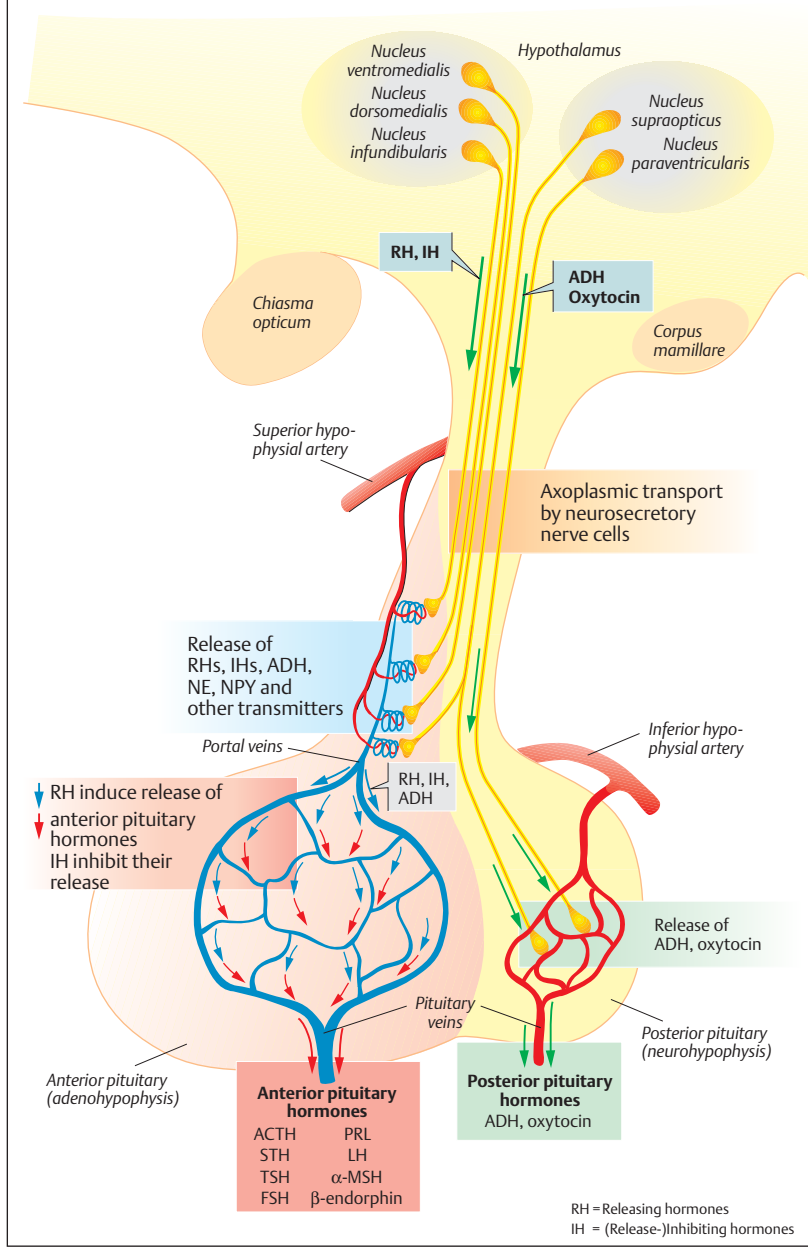
**Releasing hormones (RH)** or **liberins** that stimulate hormone release from the adenohypophysis (Gn-RH, TRH, SRH, CRH; → p. 270 ff.) are secreted by hypothalamic neurons into a kind of **portal venous system** and travel only a short distance to the anterior lobe (→ **A**). Once in its vascular network, they trigger the release of anterior pituitary hormones into the systemic circulation (→ **A**). Some anterior pituitary hormones are regulated by release-**inhibiting hormones (IH)** or **statins**, such as SIH and PIH = dopamine (→ p. 270ff.). Peripheral hormones, ADH (see above) and various neurotransmitters such as neuropeptide Y (NPY), norepinephrine (NE), dopamine, VIP and opioids also help to regulate anterior pituitary functions (→ p. 272).

The four **glandotropic hormones** (ACTH, TSH, FSH and LH) and the **aglandotropic hormones** (prolactin and GH) are secreted from the anterior pituitary (→ **A**). The secretion of **growth hormone (GH)** = somatotrophic hormone, STH) is subject to control by GH-RH, SIH and IGF-1. GH stimulates protein synthesis (*anabolic action*) and skeletal growth with the aid of *somatomedins* (growth factors formed in the liver), which play a role in sulfate uptake by cartilage. Somatomedin C = insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1) inhibits the release of GH by the anterior pituitary via negative feedback control. GH has lipolytic and glycogenolytic actions that are independent of somatomedin activity.

**Proopiomelanocortin (POMC)** is a peptide precursor not only of ACTH, but (inside or outside the anterior pituitary) also of  $\beta$ -endorphin and  $\alpha$ -melanocyte-stimulating hormone ( $\alpha$ -MSH =  $\alpha$ -melanocortin).  $\beta$ -endorphin has analgesic effects in the CNS and immunomodulatory effects, while  $\alpha$ -MSH in the hypothalamus helps to regulate the body weight (→ p. 230) and stimulates peripheral melanocytes.



**A. Hypothalamic-pituitary hormone secretion (schematic)**



## Carbohydrate Metabolism and Pancreatic Hormones

**Glucose** is the *central energy carrier* of the human metabolism. The brain and red blood cells are fully glucose-dependent. The **plasma glucose concentration** (blood sugar level) is determined by the level of glucose *production* and *consumption*.

The following terms are important for proper understanding of carbohydrate metabolism (→ **A, C**):

**1. Glycolysis** generally refers to the anaerobic conversion of glucose to lactate (→ p. 72). This occurs in the red blood cells, renal medulla, and skeletal muscles (→ p. 72). Aerobic oxidation of glucose occurs in the CNS, heart, skeletal muscle and in most other organs.

**2. Glycogenesis**, i.e., the synthesis of glycogen from glucose (in liver and muscle), facilitates the storage of glucose and helps to maintain a constant plasma glucose concentration. Glycogen stored in a muscle can only be used by that muscle.

**3. Glycogenolysis** is the breakdown of glycogen to glucose, i.e., the opposite of glycogenesis.

**4. Gluconeogenesis** is the production of glucose (in liver and renal cortex) from non-sugar molecules such as amino acids (e.g., glutamine), lactate (produced by anaerobic glycolysis in muscles and red cells), and glycerol (from lipolysis).

**5. Lipolysis** is the breakdown of triacylglycerols into glycerol and free fatty acids.

**6. Lipogenesis** is the synthesis of triacylglycerols (for storage in fat depots).

**Islets of Langerhans** in the *pancreas* play a primary role in carbohydrate metabolism. Three cell types (A, B, D) have been identified so far (→ p. 273 B). 25% of all islet cells are type A ( $\alpha$ ) cells that produce **glucagon**, 60% are B ( $\beta$ ) cells that synthesize **insulin**, and 10% are D ( $\delta$ ) cells that secrete somatostatin (**SIH**). These hormones mutually influence the synthesis and secretion of each other (→ p. 273 B). Islet cells in the pancreas head synthesize *pancreatic polypeptide*, the physiological function of which is not yet clear. High concentrations of these hormones reach the liver by way of the portal venous circulation.

**Function.** Pancreatic hormones (1) ensure that ingested food is stored as glycogen and fat (insulin); (2) mobilize energy reserves in response to food deprivation, physical activity or stress (glucagon and the non-pancreatic hormone epinephrine); (3) maintain the plasma

glucose concentration as constant as possible (→ **A**); and (4) promote growth.

### Insulin

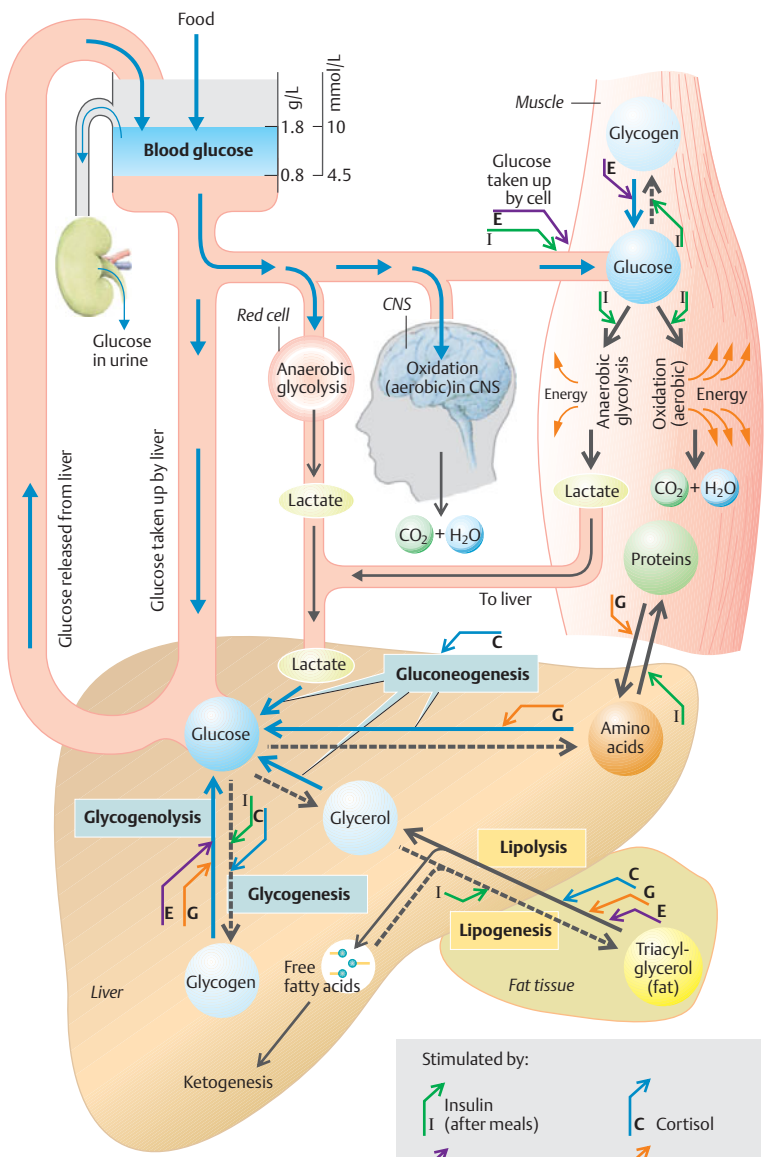
**Synthesis.** Insulin is a 6 kDa peptide (51 amino acids, AA) formed by the C chain cleaved from *proinsulin* (84 AA), the precursor of which is *preproinsulin*, a prohormone. Insulin contains two peptide chains (A and B) held together by disulfide bridges **Degradation:** Insulin has a half-life of about 5–8 min and is degraded mainly in liver and kidneys.

**Secretion.** Insulin is secreted in pulsatile bursts, mainly in response to *increases in the blood levels of glucose* (→ **B right**), as follows: plasma glucose  $\uparrow$  → glucose in B cells  $\uparrow$  → glucose oxidation  $\uparrow$  → cytosolic ATP  $\uparrow$  → closure of ATP-gated  $K^+$  channels → depolarization → opening of voltage-gated  $Ca^{2+}$  channels → cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$   $\uparrow$ . The rising  $Ca^{2+}$  in B cells leads to (a) *exocytosis* of insulin and (b) re-opening of  $K^+$  channels (deactivated by feedback control). **Stimulation.** Insulin secretion is stimulated mainly during food digestion via acetylcholine (vagus nerve), gastrin, secretin, GIP (→ p. 234) and GLP-1 (glucagon-like peptide = enteroglucagon), a peptide that dissociates from intestinal proglucagon. Certain amino acids (especially arginine and leucine), free fatty acids, many pituitary hormones and some steroid hormones also increase insulin secretion. **Inhibition.** Epinephrine and norepinephrine ( $\alpha_2$ -adrenoceptors; → **A, B**), **SIH** (→ p. 273 B) and the neuropeptide *galanin* inhibit insulin secretion. When *hypoglycemia* occurs due, e.g., to fasting or prolonged physical exercise, the low blood glucose concentration is sensed by central chemosensors for glucose, leading to reflex activation of the sympathetic nervous system.

The **insulin receptor** is a heterotetramer ( $\alpha_2\beta_2$ ) consisting of two extracellular  $\alpha$  subunits and two transmembranous  $\beta$  subunits. The  $\alpha$  subunits bind the hormone. Once the  $\beta$  subunits are autophosphorylated, they act as *receptor tyrosine kinases* that phosphorylate *insulin receptor substrate-1* (IRS-1). Intracellular proteins with SH2 domains are phosphorylated by IRS-1 and pass on the signal (→ p. 277 C3).

**Action of insulin** (→ **A, B, C**). Insulin has *anabolic* and *lipogenic* effects, and promotes the *storage of glucose*, especially in the liver, where it activates enzymes that *promote glycolysis*

**A. Glucose metabolism (simplified overview)**



Stimulated by:

- I Insulin (after meals)
- G Glucagon (hunger)
- E Epinephrine (exercise, etc.)
- C Cortisol

and *glycogenesis* and *suppresses* those involved in *gluconeogenesis*. Insulin also *increases the number of GLUT-4* uniporters in skeletal myocytes. All these actions serve to **lower the plasma glucose concentration** (which increases after food ingestion). About two-thirds of the glucose absorbed by the intestines after a meal (postprandial) is temporarily stored and kept ready for mobilization (via glucagon) during the interdigestive phase. This provides a relatively constant supply of glucose for the glucose-dependent CNS and vital organs in absence of food ingestion. Insulin increases the *storage of amino acids (AA)* in the form of proteins, especially in the skeletal muscles (*anabolism*). In addition, it promotes growth, *inhibits extrahepatic lipolysis* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 257, D) and affects *K<sup>+</sup> distribution* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 180).

**Hypoglycemia** develops when the insulin concentration is too high. Glucose levels of  $< 2$  mmol/L (35 mg/dL) produce glucose deficiencies in the brain, which can lead to coma and *hypoglycemic shock*.

The **excessive intake of carbohydrates** can overload glycogen stores. The liver therefore starts to convert glucose into fatty acids, which are transported to and stored in fatty tissues in the form of *triacylglycerols* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 257 D).

**Diabetes mellitus (DM)**. One type of DM is *insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM)*, or type 1 DM, which is caused by an insulin deficiency. Another type is *non-insulin-dependent DM (NIDDM)*, or type 2 DM, which is caused by the decreased efficacy of insulin and sometimes occurs even in conjunction with increased insulin concentrations. DM is characterized by an abnormally high plasma glucose concentration (*hyperglycemia*), which leads to *glucosuria* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 158). Large quantities of *fatty acids* are liberated since lipolysis is no longer inhibited ( $\rightarrow$  p. 257 D). The fatty acids can be used to produce energy via acetyl-coenzyme A (acetyl-CoA); however, this leads to the formation of acetoacetic acid, acetone (*ketosis*), and  $\beta$ -oxybutyric acid (*metabolic acidosis*,  $\rightarrow$  p. 142). Because hepatic fat synthesis is insulin-independent and since so many fatty acids are available, the liver begins to store triacylglycerols, resulting in the development of *fatty liver*.

#### Glucagon, Somatostatin and Somatotropin

**Glucagon** released from A cells is a peptide hormone (29 AA) derived from *proglucagon* (glicentin). The granules in which glucagon is stored are secreted by exocytosis. Secretion is **stimulated** by AA from digested proteins (especially alanine and arginine) as well as by hy-

poglycemia (e.g., due to fasting, prolonged physical exercise;  $\rightarrow$  B) and sympathetic impulses (via  $\beta_2$  adrenoceptors;  $\rightarrow$  A). Glucagon secretion is **inhibited** by glucose and SIH ( $\rightarrow$  p. 273, B) as well as by high plasma concentrations of free fatty acids.

The **actions** of glucagon ( $\rightarrow$  A, B, C) (via cAMP;  $\rightarrow$  p. 274) mainly antagonize those of insulin. Glucagon maintains a normal *blood glucose level between meals* and during phases of increased glucose consumption to ensure a constant energy supply. It does this (a) by increasing *glycogenolysis* (in liver not muscle) and (b) by stimulating *gluconeogenesis* from lactate, AA (protein degradation = catabolism) and glycerol (from *lipolysis*).

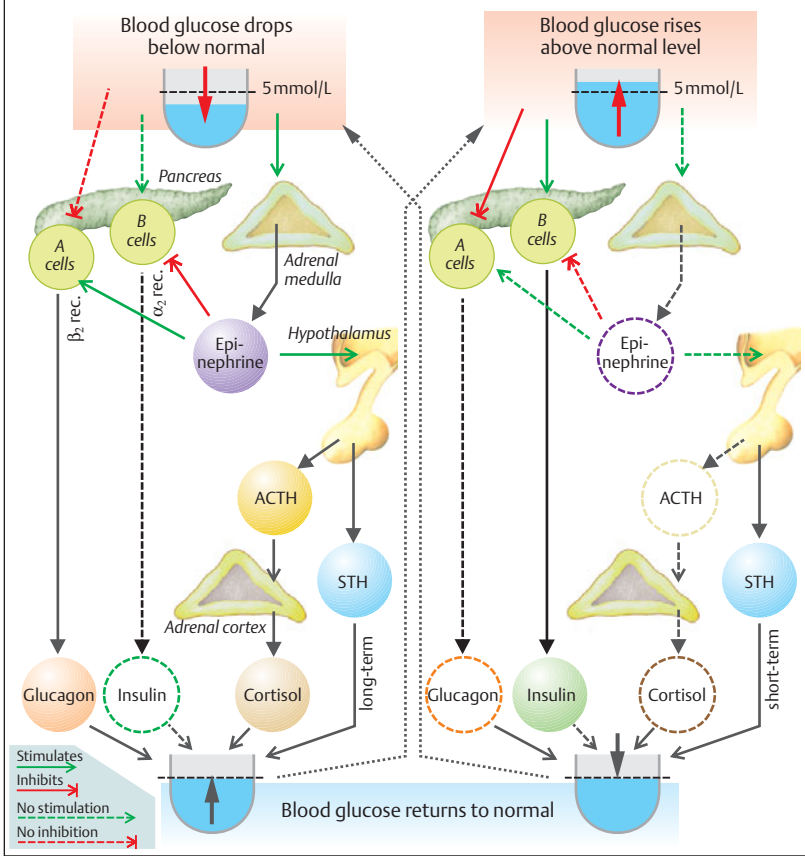
Increased plasma concentrations of **amino acids (AA)** stimulate insulin secretion which would lead to hypoglycemia without the simultaneous ingestion of glucose. Hypoglycemia normally does not occur, however, since AA also stimulate the release of glucagon, which increases the blood glucose concentration. Glucagon also stimulates *gluconeogenesis* from AA, so some of the AA are used for energy production. In order to increase protein levels in patients, glucose must therefore be administered simultaneously with therapeutic doses of AA to prevent their metabolic degradation.

**Somatostatin (SIH)**. Like insulin, SIH stored in D cells (**SIH 14** has 14 AA) is released in response to increased plasma concentrations of glucose and arginine (i.e., after a meal). Through *paracrine* pathways (via G<sub>i</sub>-linked receptors), SIH inhibits the release of insulin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 273, B). Therefore, SIH inhibits not only the release of gastrin, which promotes digestion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 243, B3), but also interrupts the insulin-related storage of nutrients. SIH also inhibits glucagon secretion ( $\rightarrow$  p. 273 B). This effect does not occur in the presence of a glucose deficiency because of the release of catecholamines that *decrease* SIH secretion.

**Somatotropin (STH) = growth hormone (GH)**. The short-term effects of GH are similar to those of insulin; its action is mediated by somatomedins ( $\rightarrow$  p. 280). In the long-term, GH increases the blood glucose concentration and promotes growth.

The effects of **glucocorticoids** on carbohydrate metabolism are illustrated on plate C and explained on p. 296.

**B. Hormonal control of blood glucose concentration**



**C. Hormonal effects on carbohydrate and fat metabolism**

Hormone	Insulin	Glucagon	Epinephrine	Cortisol
<b>Function</b>	Satiated ← Buffer → Hungry		Stress, exercise	Supply
Glucose Uptake by cell	+		+	-
Glycolysis	+	-	+	-
Gluconeogenesis (liver)	-	+	+	+
Glycogen Synthesis	+	-	-	-
Glycogen Lysis	-	+	+	+
Fat Synthesis	-	-	-	-
Fat Lysis	+	+	+	+

## Thyroid Hormones

The thyroid gland contains spherical follicles (50–500  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter). Follicle cells synthesize the two iodine-containing thyroid hormones **thyroxine** ( $\text{T}_4$ , tetraiodothyronine) and **triiodothyronine** ( $\text{T}_3$ ).  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  are bound to the glycoprotein **thyroglobulin** ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**) and stored in the colloid of the follicles ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**, **B1**). The synthesis and release of  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  is controlled by the **thyrotropin-releasing hormone**, **TRH**—**thyrotropin (TSH) axis** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, and p. 270ff.).  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  influence physical growth, maturation and metabolism. The **parafollicular cells (C cells)** of the thyroid gland synthesize **calcitonin** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 292).

**Thyroglobulin**, a dimeric glycoprotein (660 kDa) is synthesized in the thyroid cells. TSH stimulates the transcription of the thyroglobulin gene. Thyroglobulin is stored in vesicles and released into the colloid by exocytosis ( $\rightarrow$  **B1** and p. 30).

**Iodine uptake.** The iodine needed for hormone synthesis is taken up from the bloodstream as iodide ( $\text{I}^-$ ). It enters thyroid cells through secondary active transport by the  $\text{Na}^+\text{-I}^-$  symport carrier (**NIS**) and is concentrated in the cell ca. 25 times as compared to the plasma ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**). Via cAMP, **TSH** increases the transport capacity of basolateral  $\text{I}^-$  uptake up to 250 times. Other anions competitively inhibit  $\text{I}^-$  uptake; e.g.,  $\text{ClO}_4^-$ ,  $\text{SCN}^-$  and  $\text{NO}_2^-$ .

**Hormone synthesis.**  $\text{I}^-$  ions are continuously transported from the intracellular  $\text{I}^-$  pool to the apical (colloidal) side of the cell by a  $\text{I}^-/\text{Cl}^-$  antiporter, called **pendrin**, which is stimulated by **TSH**. With the aid of **thyroid peroxidase (TPO)** and an  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  generator, they are oxidized to elementary  $\text{I}_2^0$  along the microvilli on the colloid side of the cell membrane. With the help of TPO, the  $\text{I}^0$  reacts with about 20 of the 144 tyrosyl residues of **thyroglobulin** ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). The phenol ring of the tyrosyl residue is thereby iodinated at the 3 and/or 5 position, yielding a protein chain containing either **diiodotyrosine (DIT)** residues and/or **monoiodotyrosine (MIT)** residues. These steps of synthesis are stimulated by TSH (via  $\text{IP}_3$ ) and inhibited by thiouracil, thiocyanate, glutathione, and other reducing substances. The structure of the thyroglobulin molecule allows the iodinated tyrosyl residues to react with each other in the

thyrocolloid. The phenol ring of one DIT (or MIT) molecule links with another DIT molecule (ether bridges). The resulting thyroglobulin chain now contains **tetraiodothyronine residues** and (less) **triiodothyronine residues** ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). These are the **storage form** of  $\text{T}_4$  and  $\text{T}_3$ .

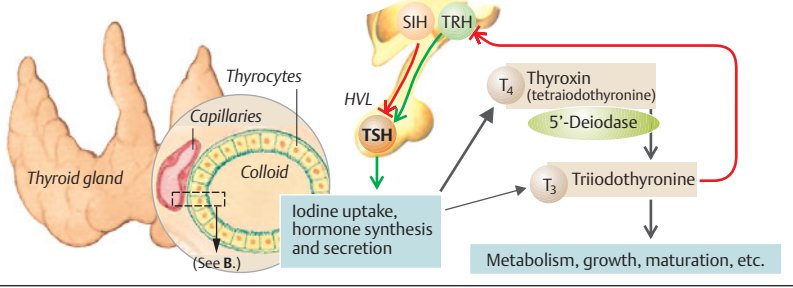
**TSH** also stimulates  **$\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  secretion**. The iodinated thyroglobulin in thyrocolloid are reabsorbed by the cells via endocytosis ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**, **C**). The endosomes fuse with primary lysosomes to form phagolysosomes in which thyroglobulin is hydrolyzed by proteases. This leads to the release of  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  (ca. 0.2 and 1–3 mol per mol of thyroglobulin, respectively).  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  are then secreted into the bloodstream ( $\rightarrow$  **B3**). With the aid of **deiodase**,  $\text{I}^-$  meanwhile is split from concomitantly released MIT and DIT and becomes reavailable for synthesis.

**Control of  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  secretion.** TSH secretion by the anterior pituitary is stimulated by **TRH**, a hypothalamic tripeptide ( $\rightarrow$  p. 280) and inhibited by **somatostatin (SIH)** ( $\rightarrow$  **A** and p. 270). The effect of TRH is modified by  $\text{T}_4$  in the plasma. As observed with other target cells, the  $\text{T}_4$  taken up by the thyrotropic cells of the anterior pituitary is converted to  $\text{T}_3$  by **5'-deiodase**.  $\text{T}_3$  reduces the density of TRH receptors in the pituitary gland and inhibits TRH secretion by the hypothalamus. The secretion of TSH and consequently of  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  therefore decreases (**negative feedback circuit**). In neonates, cold seems to stimulate the release of TRH via neuronal pathways (thermoregulation,  $\rightarrow$  p. 224). **TSH** is a heterodimer (26 kDa) consisting of an  $\alpha$  subunit (identical to that of LH and FSH) and a  $\beta$  subunit. **TSH controls all thyroid gland functions**, including the uptake of  $\text{I}^-$ , the synthesis and secretion of  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A-C**), the blood flow and growth of the thyroid gland.

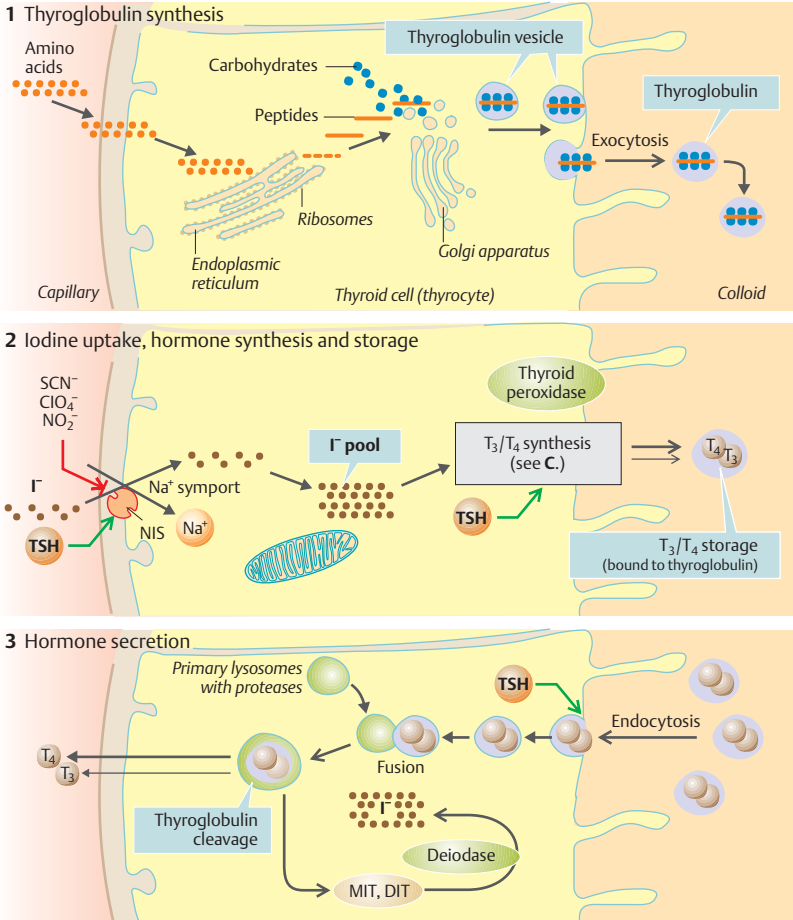
**Goiter (struma)** is characterized by diffuse or nodular enlargement of the thyroid gland. Diffuse goiter can occur due to an iodine deficiency, resulting in  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  deficits that ultimately lead to increased secretion of TSH. Chronic elevation of TSH leads to the proliferation of follicle cells, resulting in goiter development (**hyperplastic goiter**). This prompts an increase in  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  synthesis, which sometimes normalizes the plasma concentrations of  $\text{T}_3/\text{T}_4$  (**euthyroid goiter**). This type of goiter often persists even after the iodide deficiency is rectified.



**A. Thyroid hormones (overview)**



**B. Hormone synthesis and secretion**





► **Hypothyroidism** occurs when TSH-driven thyroid enlargement is no longer able to compensate for the  $T_3/T_4$  deficiency (*hypothyroid goiter*). This type of goiter can also occur due to a congenital disturbance of  $T_3/T_4$  synthesis (see below) or thyroid inflammation. **Hyperthyroidism** occurs when a thyroid tumor (*hot node*) or diffuse struma (e.g., in *Grave's disease*) results in the overproduction of  $T_3/T_4$ , independent of TSH. In the latter case, an autoantibody against the TSH receptor binds to the TSH receptor. Its effects mimic those of TSH, i.e., it stimulates  $T_3/T_4$  synthesis and secretion.

**$T_3/T_4$  transport.**  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  occur at a ratio of 1:40 in the plasma, where >99% of them (mainly  $T_4$ ) are bound to plasma proteins: *thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG)*, thyroxine-binding prealbumin (*TBPA*), and *serum albumin*. TBG transports two-thirds of the  $T_4$  in the blood, while TBPA and serum albumin transport the rest. Less than 0.3% of the total  $T_3/T_4$  in blood occurs in an unbound (free) form, although only the unbound molecules have an effect on the target cells. Certain drugs split  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  from protein bonds, resulting in increased plasma concentrations of the free hormones.

**Potency of  $T_3/T_4$ .**  $T_3$  is 3–8 times more potent than  $T_4$  and acts more rapidly (half-life of  $T_3$  is 1 day, that of  $T_4$  7 days). Only ca. 20% of all circulating  $T_3$  originate from the thyroid; the other 80% are produced by the liver, kidneys, and other target cells that cleave iodide from  $T_4$ . The conversion of  $T_4$  to  $T_3$  is catalyzed by microsomal **5'-deiodase**, which removes iodine from the 5' position on the outer ring (→D).  $T_3$  is therefore the more potent hormone, while  $T_4$  is mainly ascribed a *storage function* in plasma.

The inactive form of  $T_3$  called **reverse  $T_3$  (rT<sub>3</sub>)** is produced from  $T_4$  when the iodine is split from the inner ring with the aid of a 5- (not 5'-)deiodase. Approximately equal amounts of  $T_3$  and rT<sub>3</sub> are normally produced in the periphery (ca. 25 µg/day). When a person fasts, the resulting *inhibition of 5'-deiodase* decreases  $T_3$  synthesis (to *save energy*, see below) while rT<sub>3</sub> synthesis increases. *Pituitary 5'-deiodase* is not inhibited, so TSH secretion (unwanted in this case) is suppressed by the negative feedback.

**$T_3/T_4$  receptors** are *hormone-sensitive transcription factors* located in the cell nuclei. Hormone-receptor complexes bind to regulator

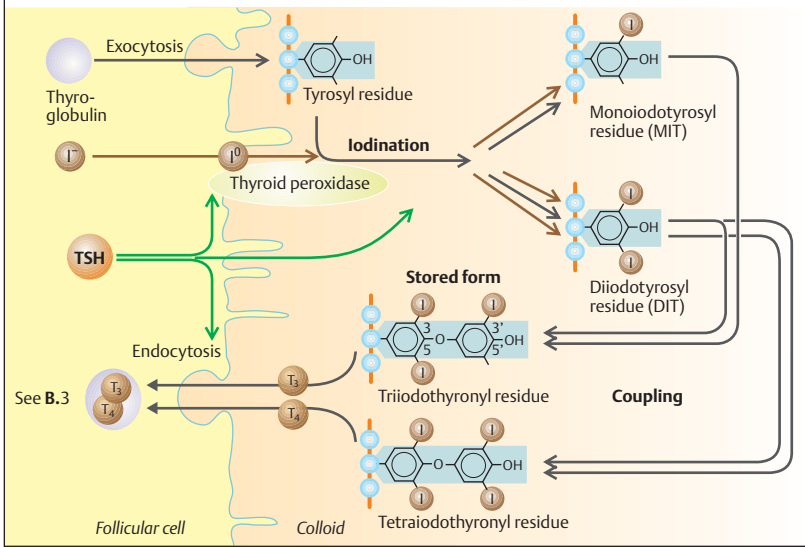
proteins of certain genes in the nuclei and influence their transcription.

The **actions of  $T_3/T_4$**  are numerous and mainly involve the *intermediate metabolism*. The thyroid hormones increase the number of *mitochondria* and its cristae, increase  $Na^+-K^+$ -ATPase activity and modulate the cholesterol metabolism. This results in an increase in *energy turnover* and a corresponding rise in *O<sub>2</sub> consumption* and *heat production*.  $T_3$  also specifically stimulates heat production by increasing the expression of the uncoupling protein *thermogenin* in brown fat (→p.222).  $T_3$  also influences the efficacy of other hormones. Insulin, glucagon, GH and epinephrine lose their energy turnover-increasing effect in *hypothyroidism*, whereas the sensitivity to epinephrine increases (heart rate increases, etc.) in *hyperthyroidism*.  $T_3$  is thought to increase the density of  $\beta$ -adrenoceptors.  $T_3$  also stimulates *growth* and *maturation*, especially of the brain and bones.

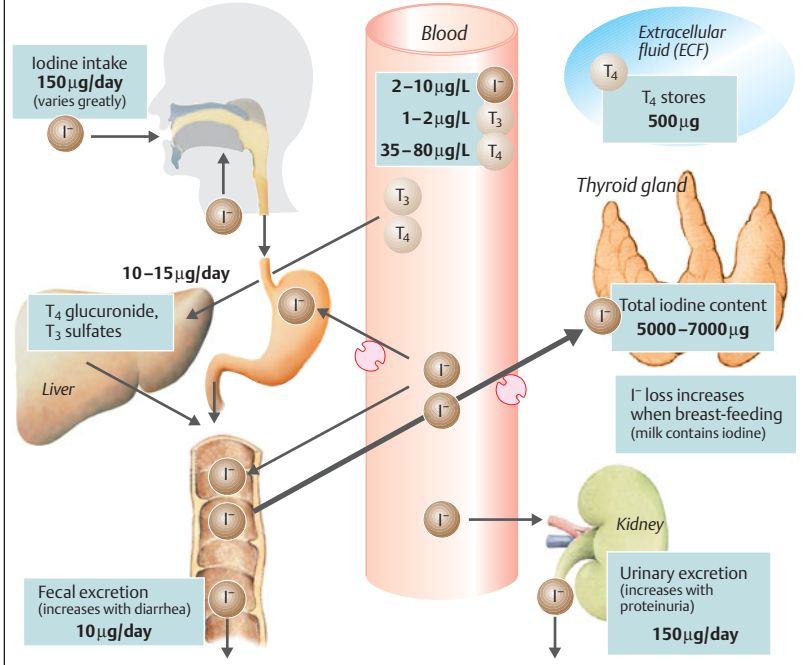
**Cretinism** occurs due to neonatal  $T_3/T_4$  deficiencies and is marked by growth and maturation disorders (dwarfism, delayed sexual development, etc.) and central nervous disorders (intelligence deficits, seizures, etc.). The administration of thyroid hormones in the first six months of life can prevent or reduce some of these abnormalities.

**Iodine metabolism** (→D). Iodine circulates in the blood as either (1) inorganic  $I^-$  (2–10 µg/L), (2) organic non-hormonal iodine (traces) and (3) protein-bound iodine (PBI) within  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  (35–80 µg iodine/L). The average daily requirement of iodine is ca. 150 µg; larger quantities are required in fever and hyperthyroidism (ca. 250–500 µg/day). Iodine excreted from the body must be replaced by the diet (→D). Sea salt, seafood, and cereals grown in iodine-rich soil are rich in iodine. Iodized salt is often used to supplement iodine deficiencies in the diet. Since iodine passes into the breast milk, nursing mothers have a higher daily requirement of iodine (ca. 200 µg/day).

**C. Synthesis, storage and mobilization of the thyroid hormones**



**D. Iodine balance**



## Calcium and Phosphate Metabolism

**Calcium**, particularly ionized calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ), plays a central role in the regulation of numerous cell functions ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 36, 62ff., 192, 276). Calcium accounts for 2% of the body weight. Ca. 99% of the calcium occurs in bone while 1% is dissolved in body fluids. The total calcium conc. in serum is normally 2.1–2.6 mmol/L. Ca. 50% of it is **free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (1.1–1.3 mmol/L)** while ca. 10% is bound in complexes and 40% is bound to proteins (mainly albumin;  $\rightarrow$  p. 178). **Calcium protein binding** increases as the pH of the blood rises since the number of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding sites on protein molecules also rises with the pH. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. accordingly *decreases in alkalosis* and rises in acidosis (by about 0.21 mmol/L  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  per pH unit). Alkalosis (e.g., due to hyperventilation) and hypocalcemia (see below) can therefore lead to *tetany*.

The **calcium metabolism** is tightly regulated to ensure a balanced intake and excretion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\rightarrow$  A). The *dietary intake of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  provides around 12–35 mmol of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  each day (1 mmol = 2 mEq = 40 mg). Milk, cheese, eggs and “hard” water are particularly rich in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . When calcium homeostasis is maintained, most of the ingested  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is excreted in the feces, while the remainder is excreted in the urine ( $\rightarrow$  p. 178). When a calcium deficiency exists, up to 90% of the ingested  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is absorbed by the intestinal tract ( $\rightarrow$  A and p. 262).

**Pregnant and nursing mothers** have higher  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  requirements because they must also supply the fetus or newborn infant with calcium. The fetus receives ca. 625 mmol/day of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  via the placenta, and nursed infants receive up to 2000 mmol/day via the breast milk. In both cases, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is used for bone formation. Thus, many women develop a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  deficiency during or after pregnancy.

**Phosphate metabolism** is closely related to calcium metabolism but is less tightly controlled. The daily intake of phosphate is about 1.4 g; 0.9 g of intake is absorbed and usually excreted by the kidneys ( $\rightarrow$  p. 178). The **phosphate concentration** in serum normally ranges from 0.8–1.4 mmol/L.

**Calcium phosphate salts** are sparingly soluble. When the product of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. times phosphate conc. (*solubility product*) exceeds a certain threshold, calcium phosphate starts to

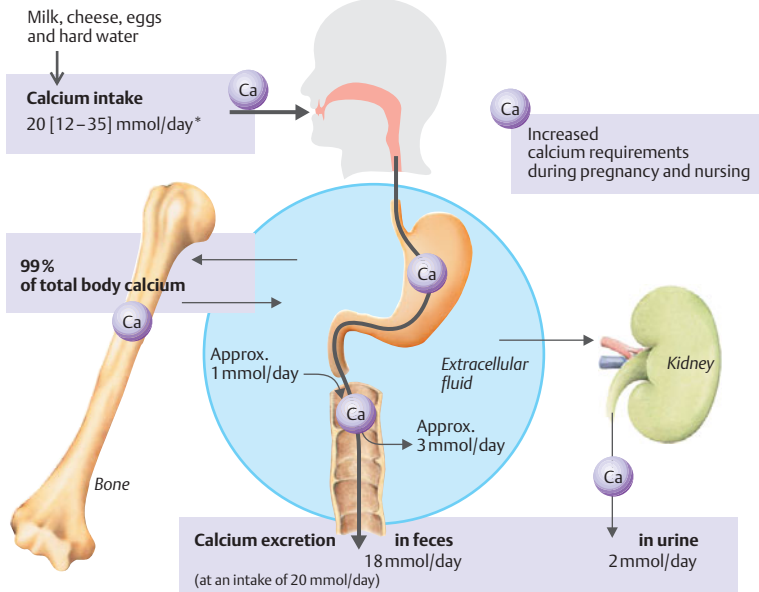
precipitate in solutions, and the deposition of calcium phosphate salts occurs. The salts are chiefly deposited in the bone, but can also precipitate in other organs. The infusion of phosphate leads to a decrease in the serum calcium concentration since calcium phosphate accumulates in bone. Conversely, hypophosphatemia leads to hypercalcemia ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released from bone).

**Hormonal control.** Calcium and phosphate homeostasis is predominantly regulated by *parathyroid hormone* and *calcitriol*, but also by calcitonin to a lesser degree. These hormones mainly affect three organs: the *intestines*, the *kidneys* and the *bone* ( $\rightarrow$  B and D).

**Parathyrin** or parathyroid hormone (PTH) is a peptide hormone (84 AA) secreted by the *parathyroid glands*.  **$\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors** in cells of the *parathyroid glands* regulate PTH synthesis and secretion in response to changes in the plasma concentration of *ionized  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36). More PTH is secreted into the bloodstream whenever the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. falls below normal (*hypocalcemia*). Inversely, PTH secretion decreases when the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  level rises ( $\rightarrow$  D, left panel). The primary function of PTH is to **normalize decreased  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. in the blood** ( $\rightarrow$  D). This is accomplished as follows: (1) PTH activates osteoclasts, resulting in bone breakdown and the *release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  (and phosphate) from the **bone**; (2) PTH accelerates the final step of calcitriol synthesis in the kidney, resulting in *increased reabsorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  from the **gut**; (3) in the **kidney**, PTH increases calcitriol synthesis and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption, which is particularly important due to the increased  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  supply resulting from actions (1) and (2). PTH also *inhibits renal phosphate reabsorption* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 178), resulting in hypophosphatemia. This, in turn, stimulates the release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the bone or prevents the precipitation of calcium phosphate in tissue (solubility product; see above).

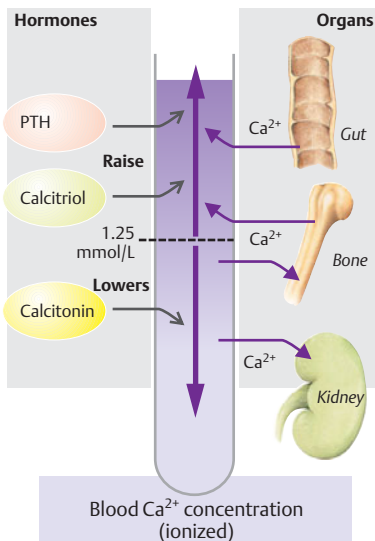
**Hypocalcemia** occurs due to a deficiency (*hypoparathyroidism*) or lack of efficiency (*pseudohypoparathyroidism*) of PTH, which can destabilize the resting potential enough to produce *muscle spasms* and *tetany*. These deficiencies can also lead to a secondary calcitriol deficiency. An excess of PTH (*hyperparathyroidism*) and malignant osteolysis overpower the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  control mechanisms, leading to **hypercalcemia**. The long-term elevation of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  results in cal-

### A. Calcium metabolism

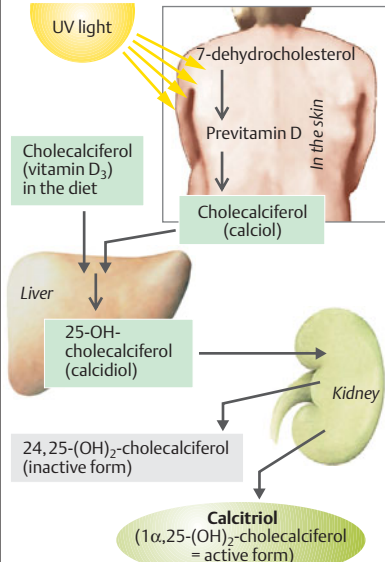


\* 1 mmol Ca<sup>2+</sup> = 2 mEq Ca<sup>2+</sup> = 40 mg Ca<sup>2+</sup>

### B. Factors affecting the blood Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration



### C. Calcitriol synthesis



cium deposition (e.g., in the kidneys).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc. exceeding 3.5 mmol/L lead to coma, renal insufficiency and cardiac arrhythmias.

**Calcitonin (CT)**, or *thyrocalcitonin*, is a peptide hormone (32). It is mainly synthesized in the parafollicular cells (C cells) of the thyroid gland, which also contain  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36). *Hypercalcemia* increases the plasma calcitonin conc. ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, right panel), whereas calcitonin can no longer be detected when the calcium conc.  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  falls below 2 mmol/L. *Calcitonin normalizes elevated serum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conc.* mainly by acting on **bone**. Osteoclast activity is inhibited by calcitonin (and stimulated by PTH). Calcitonin therefore increases the uptake of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  by the bone—at least temporarily ( $\rightarrow$  **D5**). Some *gastrointestinal hormones* accelerate calcitonin secretion, thereby enhancing the postprandial absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  by bone. These effects (and perhaps the restraining effect of calcitonin on digestive activities) function to prevent postprandial hypercalcemia and the (unwanted) inhibition of PTH secretion and increased renal excretion of the just absorbed  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Calcitonin also acts on the kidneys ( $\rightarrow$  **D6**).

**Calcitriol** (1,25-(OH)<sub>2</sub>-cholecalciferol) is a lipophilic, steroid-like hormone synthesized as follows ( $\rightarrow$  **C**): **Cholecalciferol** (vitamin D<sub>3</sub>) is produced from hepatic *7-dehydrocholesterol* in the **skin** via an intermediate product (*previtamin D*) in response to UV light (sun, tanning lamps). Both substances bind to *vitamin D-binding protein* (DBP) in the blood, but cholecalciferol is preferentially transported because of its higher affinity. Previtamin D therefore remains in the skin for a while after UV light exposure (short-term storage). Calcidiol (25-OH-cholecalciferol) and calcitriol bind to DBP. An estrogen-dependent rise in DBP synthesis occurs during pregnancy.

**Cholecalciferol (vitamin D<sub>3</sub>)** is administered to compensate for inadequate UV exposure. The recommended daily dosage in children is approximately 400 units = 10 μg; adults receive half this amount. Plant-derived **ergocalciferol** (vitamin D<sub>2</sub>) is equally effective as animal-derived vitamin D<sub>3</sub>. The following actions apply for both forms.

Cholecalciferol is converted to **calcidiol** (25-OH-cholecalciferol) in the liver. Vitamin D is mainly *stored as calcidiol* because the plasma

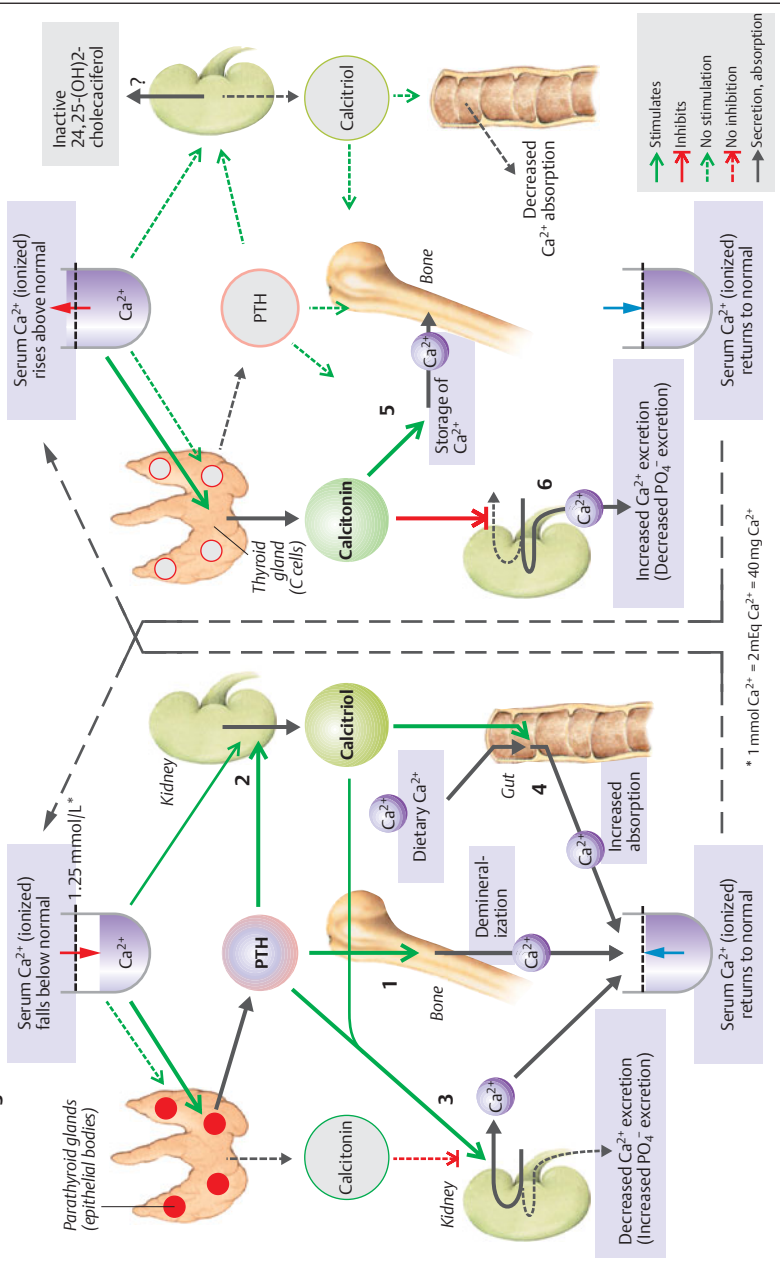
conc. of calcidiol is 25 μg/L, and its half-life is 15 days. **Calcitriol** (1,25-(OH)<sub>2</sub>-cholecalciferol), the hormonally active form, is mainly synthesized in the **kidneys** ( $\rightarrow$  **C**), but also in the placenta. The plasma conc. of **calcitriol is regulated** by renal 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylase (final step of synthesis) and by 24-hydroxylase, an enzyme that deactivates calcitriol.

The **calcitriol concentration rises** in response to *hypocalcemia*-related **PTH** secretion ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**), to *phosphate deficiency* and to *prolactin* (lactation). All three inhibit 24-hydroxylase and activate 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylase. It **decreases** due to several negative feedback loops, i.e. due to the fact that calcitriol (a) directly inhibits 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylase, (b) inhibits parathyroid hormone secretion, and (c) normalizes the (decreased) plasma conc. of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and phosphate by increasing the intestinal absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and phosphate (see below). Calcium and phosphate inhibit 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylase, while phosphate activates 24-hydroxylase.

**Target organs.** Calcitriol's primary target is the **gut**, but it also acts on the *bone*, *kidneys*, *placenta*, *mammary glands*, *hair follicles*, *skin* etc. It binds with its nuclear receptor and induces the expression of calcium-binding protein and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 278 and 36). Calcitriol has also genomic effects. Calcitriol *increases the intestinal absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  ( $\rightarrow$  **D4**) and *promotes mineralization of the bone*, but an **excess of calcitriol** leads to *decalcification* of the bone, an effect heightened by PTH. Calcitriol also increases the transport of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and phosphate at the kidney ( $\rightarrow$  p. 178), placenta and mammary glands.

In transitory **hypocalcemia**, the bones act as a temporary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  *buffer* ( $\rightarrow$  **D**) until the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  deficit has been balanced by a calcitriol-mediated increase in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  absorption from the gut. If too little calcitriol is available, skeletal demineralization will lead to **osteomalacia** in adults and **rickets** in children. **Vitamin D deficiencies** are caused by inadequate dietary intake, reduced absorption (fat maldigestion), insufficient UV light exposure, and/or reduced 1- $\alpha$ -hydroxylation (renal insufficiency). Skeletal demineralization mostly occurs due to the prolonged increase in parathyroid hormone secretion associated with chronic hypocalcemia (*compensatory hyperparathyroidism*).

### D. Hormonal regulation of the blood $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ concentration



## Biosynthesis of Steroid Hormones

**Cholesterol** is the precursor of steroid hormones ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). Cholesterol is mainly synthesized in the **liver**. It arises from acetyl-coenzyme A (acetyl-CoA) via a number of intermediates (e.g., squalene, lanosterol) and is transported to the endocrine glands by lipoproteins ( $\rightarrow$  p. 256). Cholesterol can be synthesized *de novo* also in the adrenal cortex, but not in the placenta ( $\rightarrow$  p. 304). Since only small quantities of steroid hormones are stored in the organs of origin, i.e., the adrenal cortex, ovaries, testes and placenta ( $\rightarrow$  p. 304), they must be synthesized from the cellular cholesterol pool as needed.

Cholesterol contains 27 carbon atoms. **Pregnenolone** (21 C atoms;  $\rightarrow$  **A, a**), the precursor of steroid hormones, arises from cholesterol via numerous intermediates. Pregnenolone also yields **progesterone** ( $\rightarrow$  **A, b**), which is not only a potent hormone itself (female sex hormone;  $\rightarrow$  p. 298ff.), but can act as the precursor of all other steroid hormones, i.e., (1) the adrenocortical hormones with 21 carbon atoms ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, yellow and orange fields); (2) male sex hormones (androgens, 19 carbon atoms) synthesized in the testes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 306), ovaries and adrenal cortex ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, green and blue fields); and (3) female sex hormones (*estrogens*, 18 carbon atoms;  $\rightarrow$  p. 29 B ff.) synthesized in the ovaries ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, red zones).

The precursors for steroid hormone synthesis are present in all steroid hormone glands. The type of hormone produced and the site of hormone synthesis depend on (1) the type of receptors available for the superordinate control hormones (ACTH, FSH, LH, etc.) and (2) the dominant enzyme responsible for changing the structure of the steroid molecule in the hormone-producing cells of the gland in question. The **adrenal cortex** contains 11-, 17- and 21-hydroxylases—enzymes that introduce an OH group at position C21, C17 or C11, respectively, of the steroid molecule ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, top left panel for numerical order). Hydroxylation at C21 ( $\rightarrow$  **A, c**)—as realized in the *glomerular zone* of the adrenal cortex—makes the steroid insensitive to the effects of 17-hydroxylase. As a result, only **mineralocorticoids** like corticosterone and aldosterone (**A, d**  $\Rightarrow$  **e**; see also

p. 182) can be synthesized. Initial hydroxylation at C17 ( $\rightarrow$  **A, f** or **g**) results in the synthesis of **glucocorticoids**—realized mainly in the *fascicular zone* of the adrenal cortex ( $\rightarrow$  **A, h**  $\Rightarrow$  **j**  $\Rightarrow$  **k**)—and **17-ketosteroids**, steroids with a keto group at C17 ( $\rightarrow$  **A, l** and **m**). Glucocorticoids and 17-ketosteroids can therefore be synthesized from 17 $\alpha$ -hydroxypregnenolone without the aid of progesterone ( $\rightarrow$  **A, n**  $\Rightarrow$  **h**  $\Rightarrow$  **j**).

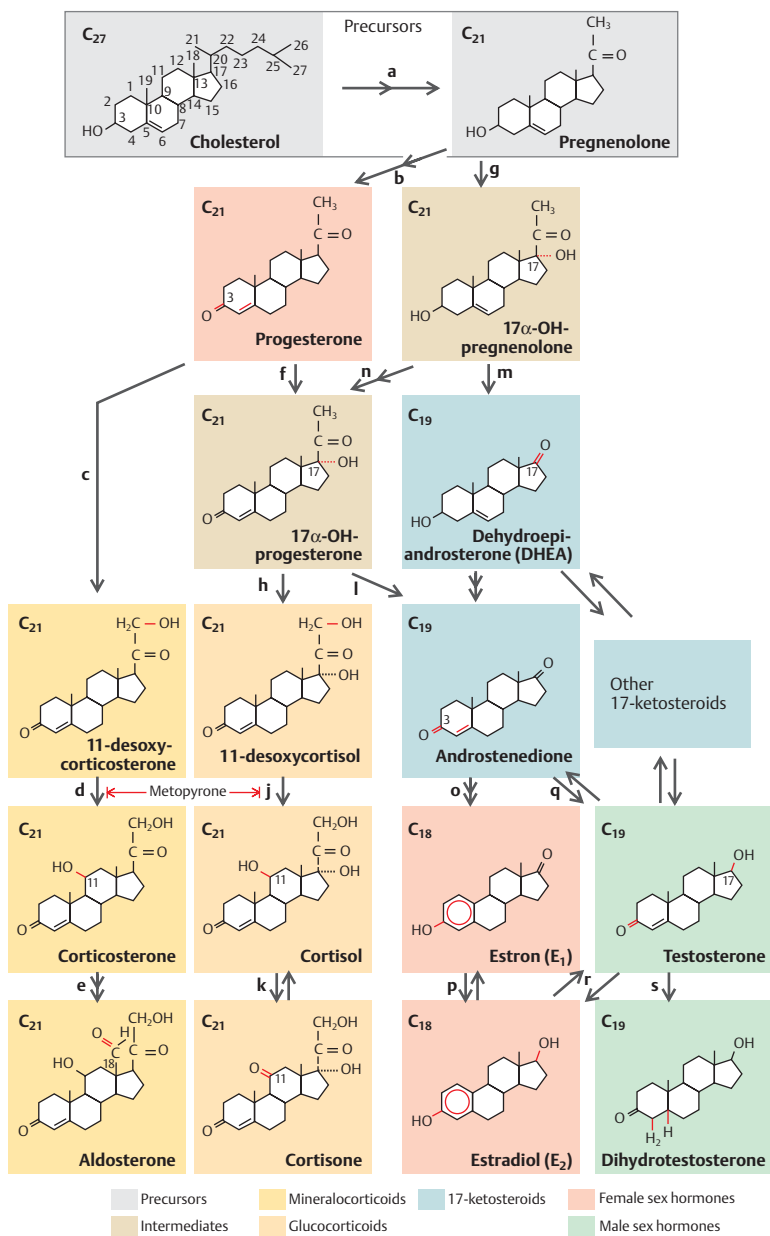
The **estrogens** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 302) *estrone* and *estradiol* can be directly or indirectly synthesized from 17-ketosteroids ( $\rightarrow$  **A, o**  $\Rightarrow$  **p**); they are produced indirectly by way of testosterone ( $\rightarrow$  **A, q**  $\Rightarrow$  **r**  $\Rightarrow$  **p**). The true active substance of certain target cells for androgens (e.g., in the prostate) is either *dihydrotestosterone* or *estradiol*; both are synthesized from testosterone ( $\rightarrow$  **A, s** and **A, r**, respectively).

**17-ketosteroids** are synthesized by the gonads (testes and ovaries) and adrenal cortex. Since they are found in the urine, the *metyrapone test* of pituitary function is used to assess the *ACTH reserve* based on urinary 17-ketosteroids levels. ACTH secretion is normally subject to feedback control by glucocorticoids ( $\rightarrow$  p. 296). Metyrapone inhibits 11-hydroxylase activity ( $\rightarrow$  **A, d** and **j**), which leaves ACTH un-suppressed in healthy subjects. Urinary 17-ketosteroid levels should therefore increase after metyrapone administration. An abnormality of ACTH secretion can be assumed when this does not occur in patients with a healthy adrenal cortex.

**Degradation of steroid hormones** occurs mainly in the **liver**. Their OH groups are usually linked to *sulfate* or *glucuronic acid* molecules and are ultimately excreted in the bile or urine ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 160, 183 and 250). The chief urinary metabolite of the estrogens is *estriol*, while that of the gestagens (mainly progesterone and 17 $\alpha$ -hydroxypregesterone) is *pregnenediol* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 304). Pregnenediol levels in urine can be measured to confirm or exclude *pregnancy test* (pregnenediol test). Chronically increased estrogen levels due, for example, to decreased estrogen degradation secondary to liver damage, can lead to breast development (*gynecomastia*) in the male, among other things. For normal estrogen ranges, see table on p. 302.



**A. Biosynthesis of steroid hormones**



## Adrenal Cortex and Glucocorticoid Synthesis

The **mineralocorticosteroids** *aldosterone*, *corticosterone* and *11-desoxycorticosterone* (→ pp. 182ff. and 294) are synthesized in the **glomerular zone** of the **adrenal cortex** (→ **A1**), whereas the **glucocorticosteroids** *cortisol* (*hydrocortisone*) and *cortisone* (→ p. 294, small quantities) are synthesized in the **fascicular zone** (→ **A2**). **Androgens** are synthesized in the **reticular zone** of the adrenal cortex (→ **A3**). One of the androgens is *dehydroepiandrosterone* (DHEA), which is used (partly in its sulfated form, DHEA-S) to synthesize various sex hormones in other tissues (→ p. 304).

**Cortisol transport.** Most of the plasma cortisol is bound to *transcortin*, or *cortisol-binding globulin* (CBG), a specific transport protein with a high-affinity binding site for cortisol. Cortisol is released in response to conformational changes of CBG due to inflammation etc.

**CRH and ACTH** regulate cortisol synthesis and secretion (→ **A4, A5**; see also p. 270). ACTH ensures also structural preservation of the adrenal cortex and supplies cortisol precursors, e.g., by forming cholesterol from its esters, by *de novo* synthesis of cholesterol and by converting it to progesterone and  $17\alpha$ -hydroxyprogesterone (→ pp. 256 and 294). *ACTH secretion* is stimulated by *CRH* and epinephrine and inhibited (negative feedback control) by *cortisol* with or without the aid of *CRH* (→ **A**; see also p. 273 A).

A **circadian rhythm** of *CRH* secretion and thus of *ACTH* and cortisol secretion can be observed. The peak secretion is in the morning (→ **B**, mean values). Continuous hormone conc. sampling at short intervals have shown that *ACTH* and cortisol are secreted in 2–3-hour *episodes* (→ **B**).

**Receptor proteins** (→ p. 278) for glucocorticoids can be found in virtually every cell. Glucocorticoids are vital hormones that exert numerous **effects**, the most important of which are listed below.

**Carbohydrate and amino acid (AA) metabolism** (see also pp. 283 A and 285 C): Cortisol uses AA derived from protein degradation to increase the plasma glucose concentration (*gluconeogenesis*), which can lead to the so-

called *steroid diabetes* in extreme cases. Thus, cortisol has a *catabolic* effect (degrades proteins) that results in the increased excretion of urea.

**Cardiovascular function:** Glucocorticoids increase myocardial contractility and vasoconstriction due to enhancement of catecholamine effects (→ pp. 194 and 214). These are described as *permissive effects* of cortisol. Cortisol increases the synthesis of epinephrine in the adrenal medulla (→ **A6**) and of angiotensinogen in the liver (→ p. 184).

Especially when administered at high doses, glucocorticoids induce **anti-inflammatory and anti-allergic effects** because they stabilize lymphokine synthesis and histamine release (→ p. 100). On the other hand, interleukin-1, interleukin-2 and  $TNF-\alpha$  (e.g., in severe infection) leads to increased secretion of *CRH* and high cortisol conc. (see below).

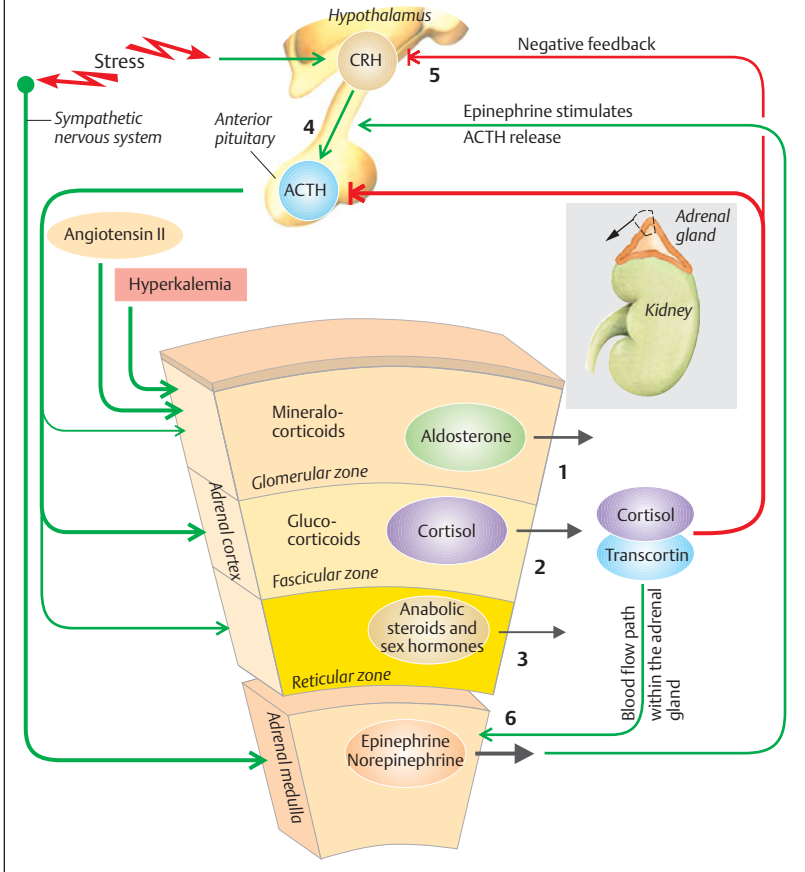
**Renal function:** Glucocorticoids delay the *excretion of water* and help to maintain a normal glomerular filtration rate. They can react also with aldosterone receptors but are converted to cortisone by *11 $\beta$ -hydroxysteroid oxidoreductase* in aldosterone target cells. Normal cortisol conc. are therefore ineffective at the aldosterone receptor. High conc., however, have the same effect as aldosterone (→ p. 182).

**Gastric function:** Glucocorticoids weaken the protective mechanisms of the gastric mucosa. Thus, high-dose glucocorticoids or stress (see below) increase the risk of gastric ulcers (→ p. 242).

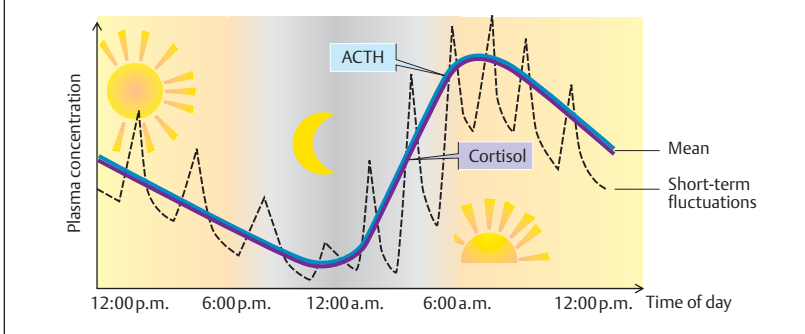
**Cerebral function:** High glucocorticoid conc. change hypothalamic (→ **A**) and electrical brain activity (EEG) and lead to psychic abnormalities.

**Stress:** Physical or mental stress increases cortisol secretion as a result of increased *CRH* secretion and increased sympathetic tone (→ **A**). Many of the aforementioned effects of cortisol therefore play a role in the body's response to stress (activation of energy metabolism, increase in cardiac performance, etc.). In severe physical (e.g., sepsis) or mental stress (e.g., depression), the cortisol plasma conc. remains at a very high level (up to 10 times the normal value) throughout the day.

**A. Adrenal gland**



**B. Circadian rhythm of ACTH and cortisol secretion**



## Oogenesis and the Menstrual Cycle

**Oogenesis.** The development of the female gametes (ova) extends from the oogonium stage to the primary oocyte stage (in the primordial follicle), starting long before birth. Oogenesis therefore occurs much sooner than the corresponding stages of spermatogenesis (→ p. 306). The fetal phase of oogenesis is completed by the first week of gestation; these oocytes remain latent until puberty. In the sexually mature female, a fertilizable ovum develops in the graafian follicles approximately every 28 days.

**Menstrual cycle.** After the start of sexual maturation, a woman starts to secrete the following hormones in a cyclic (approx.) 28-day rhythm (→ **A1, A2**). *Gonadoliberin* (= *gonadotropin-releasing hormone*, Gn-RH) and *dopamine* (PIH) are secreted by the hypothalamus. *Follicle-stimulating hormone* (FSH), *luteinizing hormone* (LH) and *prolactin* (PRL) are released by the anterior pituitary. *Progesterone*, *estrogens* (chiefly estradiol, E<sub>2</sub>) and *inhibin* are secreted by the ovaries. Gn-RH controls the *pulsatile secretion* of FSH and LH (→ p. 300), which in turn regulate the secretion of estradiol and progesterone. The female sex functions are controlled by the periodic release of hormones, the purpose of which is to produce a fertilizable egg in the ovaries each month (→ **A4**) and produce an environment suitable for sperm reception (*fertilization*) and implantation of the fertilized ovum (*nidation*) (→ **A5**). This cyclic activity is reflected by the monthly *menses* (*menstruation*) which, by definition, marks the start of the menstrual cycle.

Girls in Central Europe usually have their first menstrual period (**menarche**) around the age of 13. By about age 40, the cycle becomes increasingly irregular over a period of up to 10 years (**climacteric**) as the end of the reproductive period nears. The last menses (**menopause**) generally occurs around the age of 48–52.

A menstrual cycle can last 21–35 days. The second half of the cycle (**luteal phase** = secretory phase) usually lasts 14 days, while the first half (**follicular phase** = proliferative phase) lasts 7–21 days. **Ovulation** separates the two phases (→ **A**). If the cycle length varies by more than 2–3 days, ovulation generally does not occur. Such *anovulatory cycles* account for 20% of all cycles in healthy females.

In addition to general changes in the body and mood, the following changes occur in the ovaries, uterus and cervix during the menstrual cycle (→ **A**):

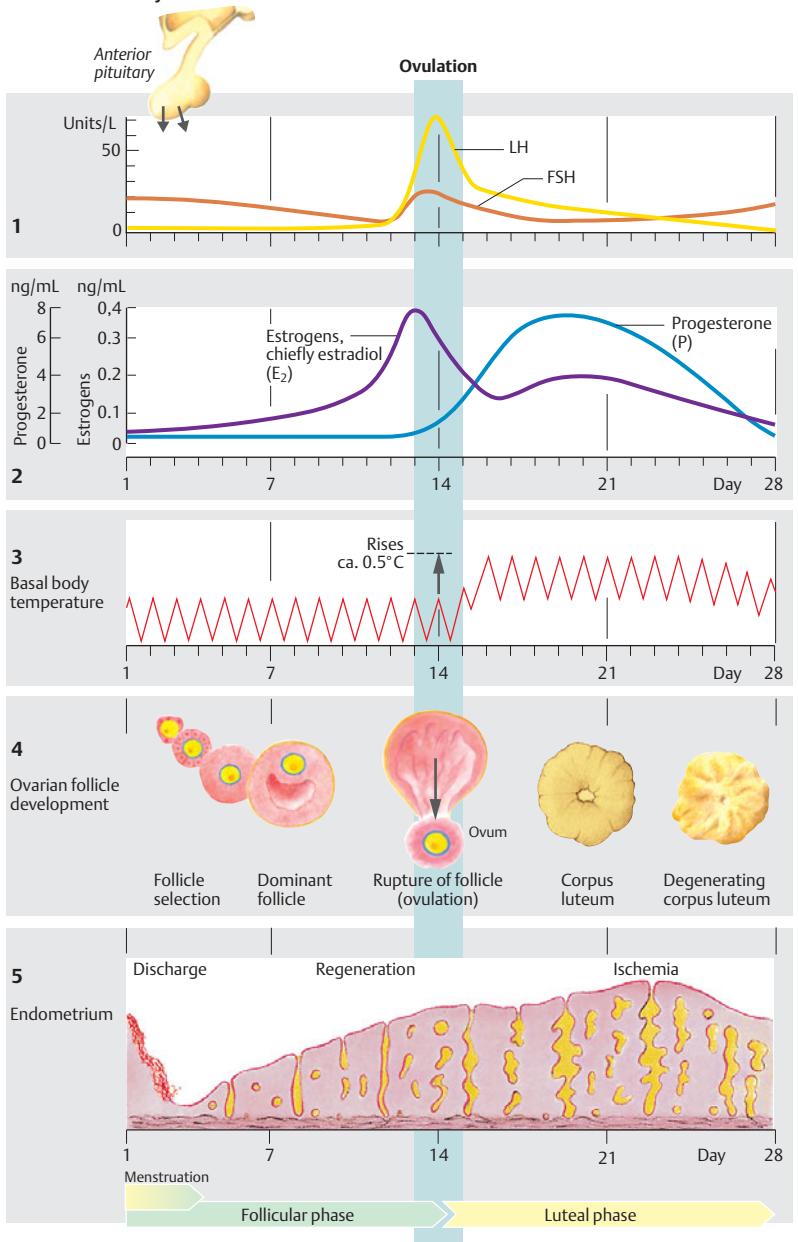
**Day 1:** Start of menstruation (lasting about 2–6 days).

**Days 1–14** (variable, see above): **The follicular phase** starts on the first day of menstruation. The endometrium thickens to become prepared for the implantation of the fertilized ovum during the luteal phase (→ **A5**), and about 20 ovarian follicles mature under the influence of FSH. One of these becomes the *dominant follicle*, which produces increasing quantities of *estrogens* (→ **A4** and p. 300). The small cervical os is blocked by a viscous mucous plug.

**Day 14** (variable, see above): **Ovulation.** The amount of *estrogens* produced by the follicle increases rapidly between day 12 and 13 (→ **A2**). The increased secretion of LH in response to higher levels of estrogen leads to ovulation (→ **A1, A4**; see also p. 300). The *basal body temperature* (measured on an empty stomach before rising in the morning) rises about 0.5°C about 1–2 days later and remains elevated until the end of the cycle (→ **A3**). This temperature rise generally indicates that ovulation has occurred. During ovulation, the *cervical mucus* is less viscous (it can be stretched into long threads—*spinnbarkeit*) and the cervical os opens slightly to allow the sperm to enter.

**Days 14–28:** **The luteal phase** is characterized by the development of a *corpus luteum* (→ **A4**), which secretes *progesterone*, (→ **A2**); an increase in mucoid secretion from the uterine glands also occurs (→ **A5**). The endometrium is most responsive to progesterone around the 22nd day of the cycle, which is when *nidation* should occur if the ovum has been fertilized. Otherwise, progesterone and estrogens now inhibit Gn-RH secretion (→ p. 300), resulting in degeneration of the corpus luteum. The subsequent rapid decrease in the plasma concentrations of estrogens and progesterone (→ **A2**) results in constriction of endometrial blood vessels and ischemia. This ultimately leads to the breakdown and discharge of the uterine lining and to bleeding, i.e., menstruation (→ **A5**).

**A. Menstrual cycle**



## Hormonal Control of the Menstrual Cycle

In sexually mature women, **gonadoliberin** or **gonadotropin-releasing hormone (Gn-RH)** is secreted in one-minute pulses every 60–90 min in response to signals from various neurotransmitters. This, in turn, induces the pulsatile secretion of FSH and LH from the anterior pituitary. If the rhythm of Gn-RH secretion is much faster or continuous, less FSH and LH will be secreted, which can result in infertility. The LH:FSH secretion ratio changes during the course of the menstrual cycle. Their release must be therefore subject to additional factors besides Gn-RH.

The secretion of LH and FSH is, for example, subject to **central nervous effects** (psychogenic factors, stress) mediated by various **transmitters** circulating in the portal blood in the hypothalamic region, e.g., norepinephrine (NE) and neuropeptide Y (NPY) as well as by ovarian hormones, i.e., by *estrogens* (estrone, estradiol, estriol, etc.), *progesterone* and *inhibin*. Ovarian hormones affect Gn-RH secretion indirectly by stimulating central nerve cells that activate Gn-RH-secreting neurons by way of neurotransmitters such as norepinephrine and NPY and inhibit Gn-RH secretion by way of GABA and opioids.

FSH production again increases toward the end of the luteal phase (→ p. 299, A1). In the **early follicular phase** (→ A1), FSH induces the proliferation of the *stratum granulosum* in about 20 follicles and stimulates the secretion of *aromatase* in their *granulosa cells*. Aromatase catalyzes the conversion of the androgens *testosterone* and *androstenedione* to estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>) and estrone (E<sub>1</sub>) (→ p. 295 A, steps *r* and *o*). Estrogens are synthesized in *theca cells* and absorbed by granulosa cells. Although relatively small amounts of LH are secreted (→ A1 and p. 299 A1), this is enough to activate theca cell-based enzymes (17β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase and C17/C20-lyase) that help to produce the androgens needed for estrogen synthesis. The follicle-based estrogens increase their own FSH receptor density. The follicle with the highest estrogen content is therefore the most sensitive to FSH. This loop has a self-amplifying effect, and the follicle in question is selected as the **dominant follicle** around the 6th day of the cycle (→ A2). In the **mid-follicular phase**, estrogens

restrict FSH and LH secretion (via negative feedback control and with the aid of *inhibin*; → A2) but later stimulate LH receptor production in granulosa cells. These cells now also start to produce progesterone (start of *luteinization*), which is absorbed by the theca cells (→ A3) and used as precursor for further increase in androgen synthesis (→ p. 295 A, steps *f* and *l*).

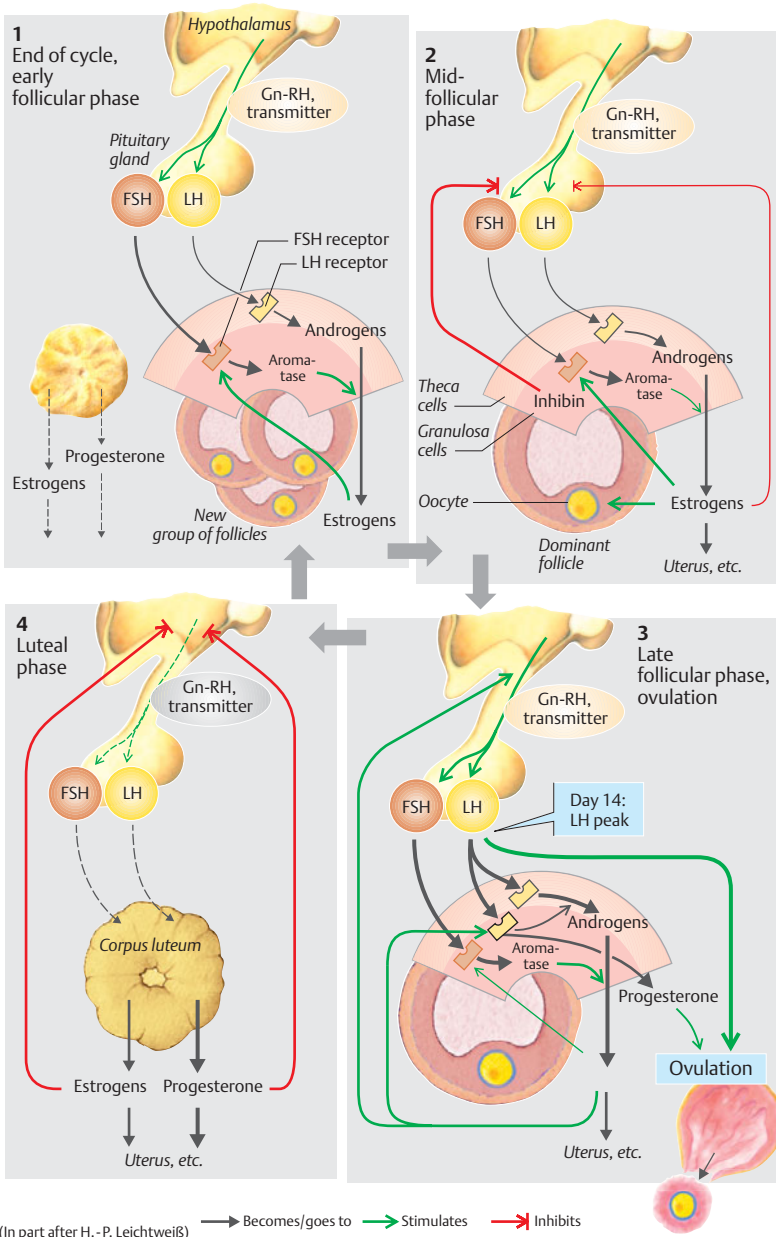
Inhibin and estrogens secreted by the dominant follicle increasingly inhibit FSH secretion, thereby decreasing the estrogen production in other follicles. This leads to an androgen build-up in and **apoptosis of the unselected follicles**.

Increasing quantities of LH and FSH are released in the **late follicular phase** (→ A3), causing a sharp rise in their plasma concentrations. The **FSH peak** occurring around day 13 of the cycle induces the **first meiotic division** of the ovum. Estrogens increase the LH secretion (mainly via the hypothalamus), resulting in the increased production of androgens and estrogens (*positive feedback*) and a rapid rise in the LH conc. (*LH surge*). The **LH peak** occurs around **day 14** (→ A2). The follicle ruptures and discharges its ovum about 10 hours later (**ovulation**). Ovulation does not take place if the LH surge does not occur or is too slow. Pregnancy is not possible in the absence of ovulation.

**Luteal phase** (→ A4). LH, FSH and estrogens transform the ovarian follicle into a *corpus luteum*. It actively secretes large quantities of **progesterone** (progestational hormone), marking the beginning of the luteal phase (→ A). Estrogens and progesterone now *inhibit* the secretion of FSH and LH directly and indirectly (e.g., through inhibition of Gn-RH; see above), causing a rapid drop in their plasma conc. This *negative feedback* leads to a marked drop in the plasma conc. of estrogens and progesterone towards the end of the menstrual cycle (approx. day 26), thereby triggering the menses (→ p. 299, A2). FSH secretion starts to rise just before the start of menstruation (→ A4).

Combined administration of estrogens and gestagens during the first half of the menstrual cycle prevents ovulation. Since ovulation does not occur, pregnancy cannot take place. Most **contraceptives** work according to this principle.

**A. Hormonal control of the menstrual cycle**





## Estrogens

**Estrogens** are steroid hormones with 18 carbon atoms. Estrogens are primarily synthesized from the 17-ketosteroid *androstenedione*, but testosterone can also be a precursor (→ p. 295 A). The *ovaries*, (granulosa and theca cells), *placenta* (→ p. 304), *adrenal cortex*, and in *Leydig's cells* (interstitial cells) of the *testes* (→ p. 306) are the physiological **sites of estrogen synthesis**. In some target cells for testosterone, it must first be converted to estradiol to become active.

**Estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>)** is the most potent estrogen (E). The potencies of **estrone (E<sub>1</sub>)** and **estriol (E<sub>3</sub>)** are relatively low in comparison (E<sub>2</sub> : E<sub>1</sub> : E<sub>3</sub> = 10 : 5 : 1). Most estrogens (and testosterone) circulating in the blood are bound to *sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG)*. Estriol (E<sub>3</sub>) is the chief degradation product of estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>).

Oral administration of estradiol has virtually no effect because almost all of the hormone is removed from the bloodstream during its first pass through the liver. Therefore, other estrogens (with a different chemical structure) must be used for effective **oral estrogen therapy**.

**Actions.** Although estrogens play a role in the development of female sex characteristics, they are not nearly as important as the androgens for male sexual development (→ p. 306). The preparatory action of estrogen is often required for optimal progesterone effects (e.g., in the uterus; see below). Other important effects of estrogens in human females are as follows.

◆ **Menstrual cycle.** Estrogens accelerate maturation of the ovarian follicle during the menstrual cycle (→ p. 298 and table). In the *uterus*, estrogen promotes the proliferation (thickening) of the endometrium and increases uterine muscle contraction. In the *vagina*, estrogen thickens the mucosal lining, leading to the increased discharge of glycogen-containing epithelial cells. The liberated glycogen is used for an increased production of lactic acid by *Döderlein's bacillus*. This lowers the vaginal pH to 3.5–5.5, thereby reducing the risk of vaginal infection. In the *cervix*, the mucous plug sealing the cervical os functions as a barrier that prevents sperm from entering the uterus. Estrogens change the consistency of

the cervical mucus, making it more conducive to sperm penetration and survival, especially around the time of ovulation.

◆ **Fertilization.** In the female body, estrogens prepare the sperm to penetrate and fertilize the ovum (*capacitation*) and regulate the speed at which the ovum travels in the fallopian tube.

◆ **Extragenital effects of estrogen.** During *puberty*, estrogens stimulate breast development, induces changes in the vagina and in the distribution of subcutaneous fat, and (together with androgens) stimulate the growth of pubic and axillary hair. Since estrogens increase the coagulability of the blood, the administration of estrogens (e.g., in contraceptives) increases the risk of thrombosis and leads renal salt and water retention. Estrogens slow longitudinal bone growth, accelerate epiphyseal closure (in men and women) and increase osteoblast activity. Estrogen deficiencies in menopause consequently lead to the loss of bone mass (*osteoporosis*). Estrogens induce a decrease in LDL and a rise in VLDL and HDL concentrations (→ p. 254ff.), which is why arteriosclerosis is less common in premenopausal women than in men. Estrogen also makes the *skin* thinner and softer, reduces the sebaceous glands, and increases fat deposits in subcutaneous tissue. Lastly, estrogen influences a number of *central nervous functions*, e.g., sexual response, social behavior, and mood.

Plasma concentrations of estradiol and progesterone (ng/mL)

Phase	Estradiol	Progesterone
<b>Women</b>		
Early follicular phase	0.06	0.3
Mid- and late follicular phase	0.1 ⇒ 0.4	1.0
Ovulation	0.4	2.0
Mid-luteal phase	0.2	8–16
Pregnancy	7–14	40 ⇒ 130
Day 1 after parturition		20
<b>Men</b>		
	0.05	0.3

## Progesterone

Progesterone, the most potent progestational (pregnancy-sustaining) hormone, is a steroid hormone (21 C atoms) synthesized from

cholesterol via pregnenolone ( $\rightarrow$  p.295). It is produced in the corpus luteum, ovarian follicles and placenta ( $\rightarrow$  p.304) of the female, and in the adrenal cortex of males and females. Like cortisol, most circulating progesterone is bound to cortisol-binding globulin (CBG = transcortin). Like estradiol ( $E_2$ ), most progesterone is broken down during its first pass through the liver, so oral doses of progesterone are almost completely ineffective. *Pregnenediol* is the most important degradation product of progesterone.

**Actions of progesterone.** The *main functions* of progesterone are to prepare the female genital tract for implantation and maturation of the fertilized ovum and to **sustain pregnancy** ( $\rightarrow$  see table). Progesterone counteracts many of the effects induced by estrogens, but various effects of progesterone depend on the preparatory activity or simultaneous action of estrogens. During the follicular phase, for example, estrogens increase the density of progesterone receptors, while simultaneous estrogen activity is needed to induce mammary growth (see below).

- ◆ The **uterus** is the chief target organ of progesterone. Once estrogen induces endometrial thickening, progesterone stimulates growth of the uterine muscle (myometrium), restructures the endometrial glands ( $\rightarrow$  p.298), alters the blood supply to the endometrium, and changes the glycogen content. This represents the transformation from a proliferative endometrium to a secretory endometrium, with a peak occurring around day 22 of the cycle. Progesterone later plays an important role in the potential implantation (nidation) of the fertilized ovum because it reduces myometrial activity (important during pregnancy), narrows the **cervical os**, and changes the consistency of the cervical mucous plug so that it becomes virtually impregnable to sperm.

- ◆ Progesterone inhibits the release of LH during the luteal phase. The administration of gestagens like progesterone during the follicular phase *inhibits ovulation*. Together with its effects on the cervix (see above) and its inhibitory effect on capacitation ( $\rightarrow$  p.302), progesterone can therefore have a contraceptive effect ("**mini pill**").

- ◆ High levels of progesterone have an anesthetic effect on the **central nervous system**. Progesterone also increases the susceptibility

to epileptic fits and exerts thermogenic action, i.e., it raises the basal body temperature ( $\rightarrow$  p.298). In addition, a decrease in the progesterone concentration is also believed to be responsible for the mood changes and depression observed before menstruation (*premenstrual syndrome, PMS*) and after pregnancy (*postpartum depression*).

- ◆ In the **kidneys**, progesterone slightly inhibits the effects of aldosterone, thereby inducing increased NaCl excretion.

## Prolactin and Oxytocin

The secretion of **prolactin (PRL)** is inhibited by prolactin-inhibiting hormone (**PIH = dopamine**) and stimulated by thyroliberin (**TRH**) ( $\rightarrow$  p.270). Prolactin increases the hypothalamic secretion of PIH in both men and women (negative feedback control). Conversely, estradiol ( $E_2$ ) and progesterone inhibit PIH secretion (indirectly via transmitters, as observed with Gn-RH; see above). Consequently, prolactin secretion rises significantly during the second half of the menstrual cycle and during pregnancy. Prolactin (together with estrogens, progesterone, glucocorticoids and insulin) stimulate *breast enlargement* during pregnancy and *lactogenesis* after parturition. In breast-feeding, stimulation of the nerve endings in the nipples by the suckling infant stimulates the secretion of prolactin (**lactation reflex**). This also increases release of oxytocin which triggers *milk ejection* and increases uterine contractions, thereby increasing lochia discharge after birth. When the mother stops breast-feeding, the prolactin levels drop, leading to the rapid stoppage of milk production.

**Hyperprolactinemia.** Stress and certain drugs inhibit the secretion of PIH, causing an increase in prolactin secretion. *Hypothyroidism* ( $\rightarrow$  p.288) can also lead to hyperprolactinemia, because the associated increase in TRH stimulates the release of prolactin. Hyperprolactinemia inhibits ovulation and leads to *galactorrhea*, i.e., the secretion of milk irrespective of pregnancy. Some women utilize the anti-ovulatory effect of nursing as a natural method of birth control, which is often but not always effective.

## Hormonal Control of Pregnancy and Birth

Beside its other functions, the **placenta** produces most of the hormones needed during pregnancy ( $\rightarrow$  p. 220). *Ovarian hormones* also play a role, especially at the start of pregnancy ( $\rightarrow$  A).

**Placental hormones.** The primary hormones produced by the placenta are *human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)*, *corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH)*, *estrogens*, *progesterone*, *human placental lactogen (hPL)*, and *proopiomelanocortin (POMC)*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 280). hCG is the predominant hormone during the first trimester of pregnancy (3-month period calculated from the beginning of the last menses). Maternal conc. of hPL and CRH-controlled estrogens rise sharply during the third trimester ( $\rightarrow$  B). Placental hormones are distributed to mother and fetus. Because of the close connection between maternal, fetal and placental hormone synthesis, they are jointly referred to as the **fetoplacental unit** ( $\rightarrow$  A).

**Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)** (a) stimulates the synthesis of steroids like DHEA and DHEA-S by the fetal adrenal cortex (see below); (b) suppresses follicle maturation in the maternal ovaries, and (c) maintains the production of progesterone and estrogen in the corpus luteum ( $\rightarrow$  A1) until the 6th week of gestation, i.e., until the placenta is able to produce sufficient quantities of the hormones.

Most **pregnancy tests** are based on the fact that hCG is detectable in the urine about 6–8 days after conception. Since the levels of estrogen and progesterone greatly increase during pregnancy (see table on p. 302), larger quantities of these hormones and their metabolites *estriol* and *pregnenediol* are excreted in the urine. Therefore, their conc. can also be measured to test for pregnancy.

In contrast to other endocrine organs, the placenta has to receive the appropriate precursors (cholesterol or androgens,  $\rightarrow$  p. 294) from the maternal and fetal adrenal cortex, respectively, before it can synthesize progesterone and estrogen ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The **fetal adrenal cortex (FAC)** is sometimes larger than the kidneys and consists of a *fetal zone* and an *adult zone*. The placenta takes up cholesterol and pregnenolone and uses them to synthesize progesterone. It is transported to the fetal zone of

the FAC, where it is converted to *dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)* and *dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEA-S)*. DHEA and DHEA-S pass to the **placenta**, where they are used for *estrogen synthesis*. Progesterone is converted to *testosterone* in the *testes* of the male fetus.

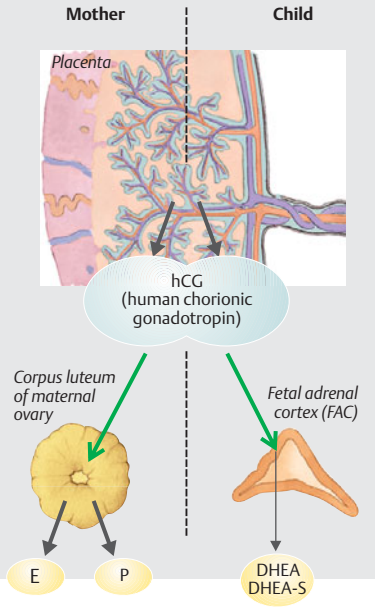
**Human placental lactogen (hPL)** = human chorionic somatomammotropin, (HCS) levels rise steadily during pregnancy. Like prolactin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 303), hPL stimulates mammary enlargement and lactogenesis in particular and, like GH ( $\rightarrow$  p. 280), stimulates physical growth and development in general. hPL also seems to increase maternal plasma glucose conc.

**Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH)** secreted by the *placenta* seems to play a key role in the **hormonal regulation of birth**. The plasma levels of maternal CRH increase exponentially from the 12th week of gestation on. This rise is more rapid in premature births and slower in post-term births. In other words, the rate at which the CRH concentration rises seems to determine the duration of the pregnancy. Placental CRH stimulates the release of ACTH by the fetal pituitary, resulting in increased cortisol production in the adult zone of FAC; this again stimulates the release of CRH (positive feedback). CRH also stimulates lung development and the production of DHEA and DHEA-S in the fetal zone of FAC.

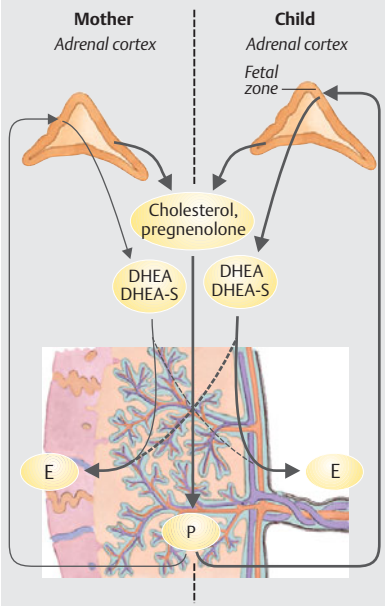
The maternal estrogen conc. rises sharply towards the **end of the pregnancy**, thereby counteracting the actions of progesterone, including its pregnancy-sustaining effect. Estrogens induce oxytocin receptors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 303),  $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors ( $\rightarrow$  p. 84ff.), and gap junctions in the uterine musculature ( $\rightarrow$  p. 16ff.), and uterine cells are depolarized. All these effects increase the responsiveness of the uterine musculature. The simultaneous increase in progesterone synthesis triggers the production of collagenases that soften the taut cervix. Stretch receptors in the uterus respond to the increase in size and movement of the fetus. Nerve fibers relay these signals to the hypothalamus, which responds by secreting larger quantities of oxytocin which, in turn, increases uterine contractions (positive feedback). The gap junctions conduct the spontaneous impulses from individual pacemaker cells in the fundus across the entire myometrium at a rate of approximately 2 cm/s ( $\rightarrow$  p. 70).

**A. Hormone synthesis in placenta, mother and fetus: fetoplacental unit**

**1 Early pregnancy:**  
Proteohormone synthesis in placenta

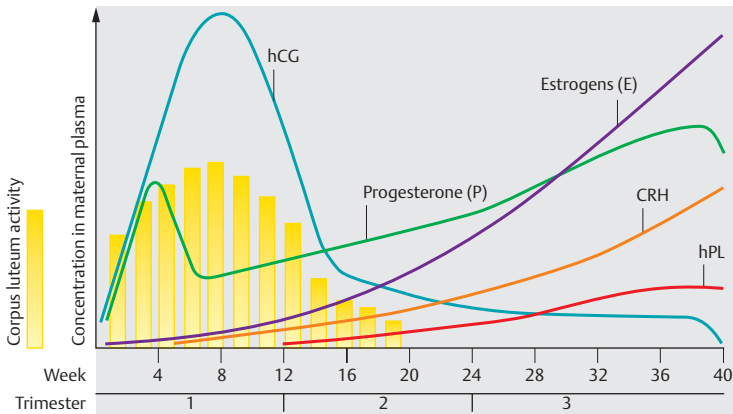


**2 Later pregnancy:**  
Steroid hormone synthesis in placenta



Steroid hormones:  
P = progesterone; DHEA(-S) = dehydroepiandrosterone (sulfate); E = estrogens

**B. Hormone concentrations in plasma during pregnancy**



## Androgens and Testicular Function

**Androgens** (male sex hormones) are steroid hormones with 19 C atoms. This group includes potent hormones like *testosterone* (**T**) and *5 $\alpha$ -dihydrotestosterone* (**DHT**) and less potent *17-ketosteroids* (**17-KS**) such as DHEA ( $\rightarrow$  p. 294). In males, up to 95% of testosterone is synthesized by the *testes* ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**) and 5% by the *adrenal cortex* ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**). The *ovaries* and *adrenal cortex* synthesize testosterone in females. The plasma testosterone conc. in males is about 15 times higher than in females, but decreases with age. Up to 98% of testosterone circulating in blood is bound to plasma proteins (albumin and sex hormone-binding globulin, SHBG;  $\rightarrow$  **A2**).

The testes secrete also small quantities of **DHT** and **estradiol** (**E<sub>2</sub>**). Larger quantities of **DHT** (via *5 $\alpha$ -reductase*) and **estradiol** are synthesized from testosterone (via *aromatase*) by their respective target cells. A portion of this supply is released into the plasma. **DHT** and testosterone bind to the same intracellular receptor. **Estradiol** influences many functions in the male, e.g., epiphyseal cartilage and ejaculate formation and pituitary and hypothalamic activity.

**Testosterone secretion** is regulated by luteinizing hormone (=LH, also called ICSH,  $\rightarrow$  p. 269), the pulsatile secretion of which is controlled by Gn-RH at 1.5- to 2-hourly intervals, as in the female. LH stimulates the release of testosterone from *Leydig's cells* (interstitial cells) in the testes ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**), whereas testosterone and **estradiol** inhibit LH and Gn-RH secretion (negative feedback).

Gn-RH also induces the release of **FSH**, which stimulates the secretion of **inhibin** and induces the expression of *androgen-binding protein* (**ABP**) in *Sertoli cells* of the testes ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Testosterone cannot induce spermatogenesis without the help of **ABP** (see below). **FSH** also induces the formation of LH receptors in the interstitial cells of *Leydig*. Testosterone, **DHT**, **estradiol** and **inhibin** inhibit the secretion of **FSH** (negative feedback;  $\rightarrow$  **A**). **Activin**, the physiological significance of which is still unclear, inhibits **FSH** secretion.

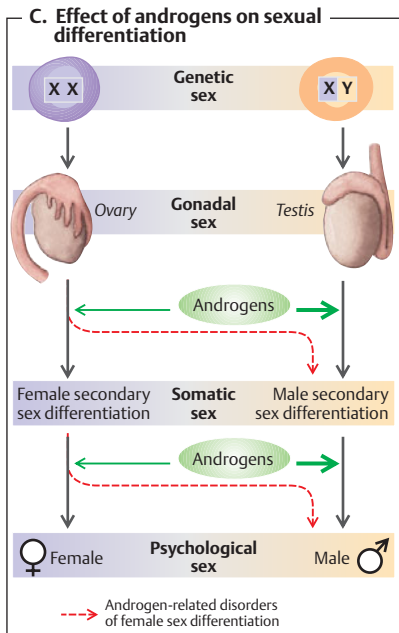
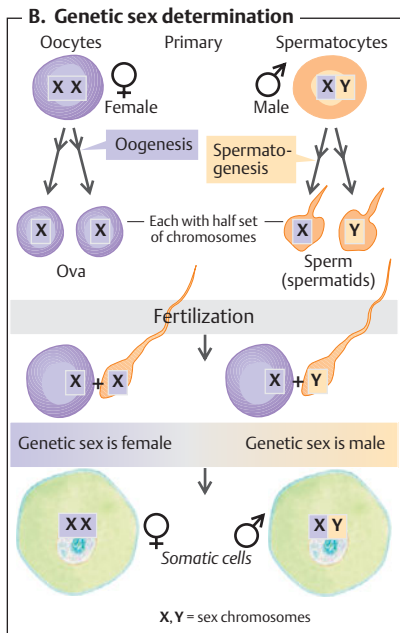
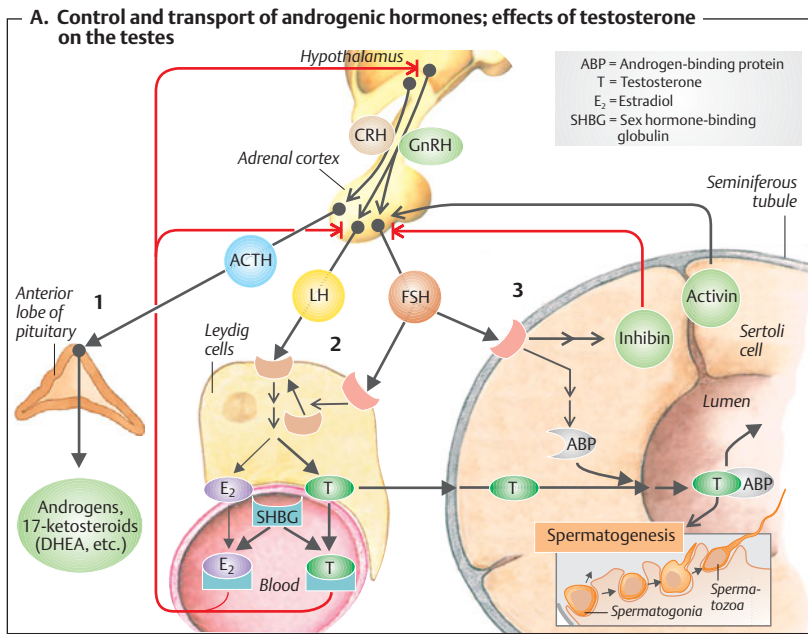
Apart from the important **effects of testosterone** on male sexual differentiation, spermatogenesis and sperm growth as well as on

the functions of the genitalia, prostate and seminal vesicle (see below), testosterone also induces the *secondary sex characteristics* that occur in males around the time of puberty, i.e., body hair distribution, physique, laryngeal size (voice change), acne, etc. In addition, testosterone is necessary for normal sex drive (*libido*), procreative capacity (*fertility*) and coital capacity (*potentia coeundi*) in the male. Testosterone also stimulates *hematopoiesis* and has *anabolic properties*, leading to increased muscle mass in males. It also has central nervous effects and can influence behavior—e.g., cause aggressiveness.

**Sexual development and differentiation.** The *genetic sex* ( $\rightarrow$  **B**) determines the development of the sex-specific *gonads* (gamete-producing glands). The germ cells (*spermatogonia*; see below) then migrate into the gonads. The *somatic sex* is female when the subsequent somatic sex development and sex differentiation occurs in the absence of testosterone ( $\rightarrow$  **C**). Male development requires the presence of testosterone in both steps ( $\rightarrow$  **C**) with or without the aid of additional factors (e.g., calcitonin gene-related peptide, CGRP?) in certain stages of development (e.g., descent of testes into scrotum). High conc. of testosterone, either natural or synthetic (anabolic steroids), lead to masculinization (*virilization*) of the female ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).

**Testicular function.** *Spermatogenesis* occurs in several stages in the testes (target organ of testosterone) and produces *sperm* (*spermatozoa*) ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Sperm are produced in the *seminiferous tubules* (total length, ca. 300 m), the epithelium of which consists of *germ cells* and *Sertoli cells* that support and nourish the spermatogenic cells. The seminiferous tubules are strictly separated from other testicular tissues by a *blood-testis barrier*. The testosterone required for sperm maturation and semen production ( $\rightarrow$  p. 308) must be bound to *androgen-binding protein* (**ABP**) to cross the barrier.

**Spermatogonia** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**) are primitive sex cells. At puberty, a spermatogonium divides mitotically to form two daughter cells. One of these is kept as a lifetime *stem cell* reservoir (in contrast to oogonia in the female;  $\rightarrow$  p. 298). The other undergoes several divisions to form a **primary spermatocyte**. It undergoes a *first meiotic division* (MD1) to produce two **secondary spermatocytes**, each of which undergoes a *second meiotic division* (MD2), producing a total of four **spermatids**, which ultimately differentiate into *spermatozoa*. After MD1, the spermatocytes have a single (haploid) set of chromosomes.





## Sexual Response, Intercourse and Fertilization

**Sexual response in the male** (→ A1). Impulses from tactile receptors on the skin in the genital region (especially the glans penis) and other parts of the body (*erogenous areas*) are transmitted to the *erection center* in the sacral spinal cord (S2–S4), which conducts them to parasympathetic neurons of the pelvic splanchnic nerves, thereby triggering **sexual arousal**. Sexual arousal is decisively influenced by stimulatory or inhibitory *impulses from the brain* triggered by sensual perceptions, imagination and other factors. Via nitric oxide (→ p. 278), efferent impulses lead to dilatation of deep penile artery branches (helicine arteries) in the erectile body (*corpus cavernosum*), while the veins are compressed to restrict the drainage of blood. The resulting high pressure (> 1000 mmHg) in the erectile body causes the penis to stiffen and rise (**erection**). The *ejaculatory center* in the spinal cord (L2–L3) is activated when arousal reaches a certain threshold (→ A2). Immediately prior to ejaculation, efferent sympathetic impulses trigger the partial evacuation of the prostate gland and the **emission** of semen from the *vas deferens* to the posterior part of the urethra. This triggers the **ejaculation reflex** and is accompanied by **orgasm**, the apex of sexual excitement. The effects of orgasm can be felt throughout the entire body, which is reflected by perspiration and an increase in respiratory rate, heart rate, blood pressure, and skeletal muscle tone. During ejaculation, the internal sphincter muscle closes off the urinary bladder while the *vas deferens*, seminal vesicles and bulbocavernosus and ischiocavernosus muscles contract rhythmically to propel the semen out of the urethra.

**Semen.** The fluid expelled during ejaculation (2–6 mL) contains 35–200 million sperm in a nutrient fluid (*seminal plasma*) composed of various substances, such as prostaglandins (from the prostate) that stimulate uterine contraction. Once semen enters the vagina during **intercourse**, the alkaline seminal plasma increase the vaginal pH to increase sperm motility. At least one sperm cell must reach the ovum for fertilization to occur.

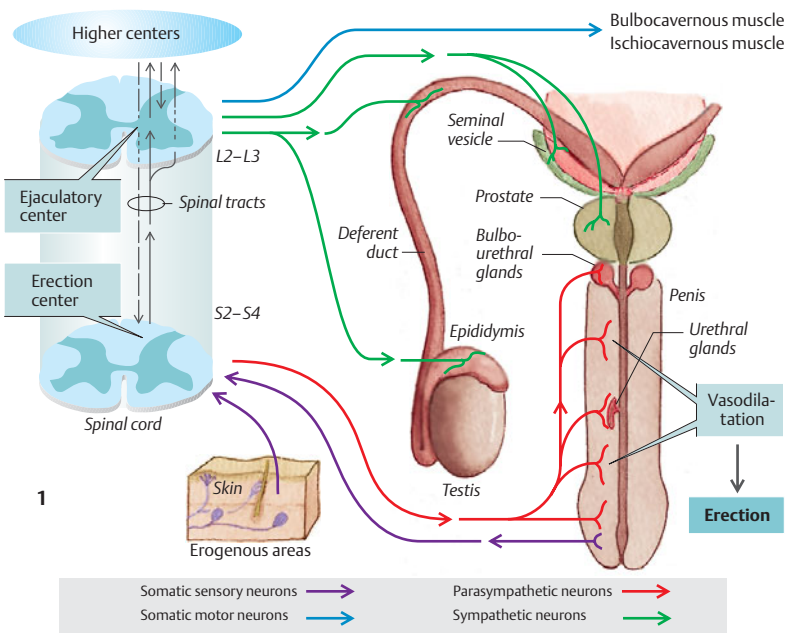
**Sexual response in the female** (→ A2). Due to impulses similar to those in the male, the erectile tissues of the clitoris and vestibule of the vagina engorge with blood during the erection phase. Sexual arousal triggers the release of secretions from glands in the labia minora and transudates from the vaginal wall, both of which lubricate the vagina, and the nipples become erect. On continued stimulation, afferent impulses are transmitted to the lumbar spinal cord, where sympathetic impulses trigger **orgasm** (**climax**). The vaginal walls contract rhythmically (*orgasmic cuff*), the vagina lengthens and widens, and the uterus becomes erect, thereby creating a space for the semen. The cervical os also widens and remains open for about a half an hour after orgasm. Uterine contractions begin shortly after orgasm (and are probably induced locally by oxytocin). Although the accompanying physical reactions are similar to those in the male (see above), there is a wide range of variation in the orgasmic phase of the female. Erection and orgasm are not essential for conception.

**Fertilization.** The fusion of sperm and egg usually occurs in the *ampulla* of the fallopian tube. Only a small percentage of the sperm expelled during ejaculation (1000–10 000 out of  $10^7$  to  $10^8$  sperm) reach the fallopian tubes (*sperm ascension*). To do so, the sperm must penetrate the mucous plug sealing the cervix, which also acts as a sperm reservoir for a few days. In the time required for them to reach the ampullary portion of the fallopian tube (about 5 hours), the sperm must undergo certain changes to be able to fertilize an ovum; this is referred to as **capacitation** (→ p. 302).

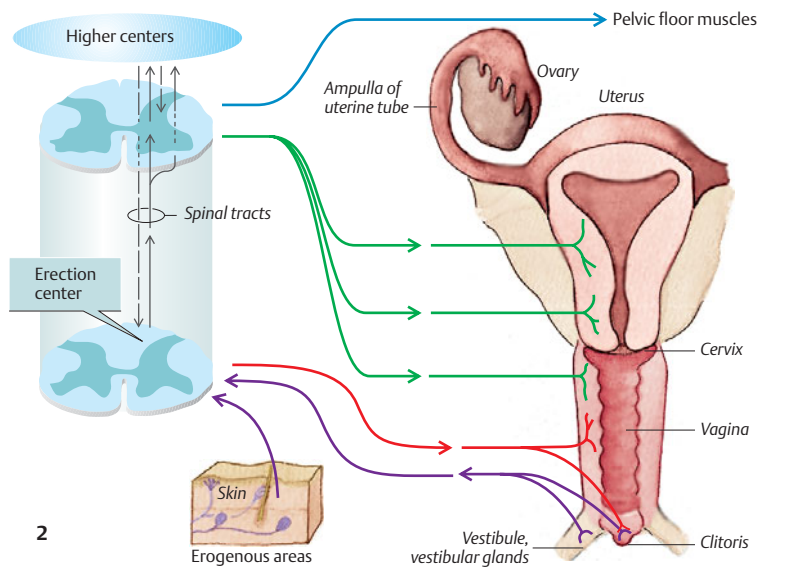
After ovulation (→ p. 298ff.) the ovum enters the tube to the uterus (*oviduct*) via the abdominal cavity. When a sperm makes contact with the egg (via chemotaxis), species-specific sperm-binding receptors on the ovum are exposed and the proteolytic enzyme *acrosin* is thereby activated (**acrosomal reaction**). Acrosin allows the sperm to penetrate the cells surrounding the egg (*corona radiata*). The sperm bind to receptors on the envelope surrounding the ovum (*zona pellucida*) and enters the egg. The membranes of both cells then *fuse*. The ovum now undergoes a *second meiotic division*, which concludes the act of *fertilization*. Rapid proteolytic changes in the receptors on the ovum (**zona pellucida reaction**) prevent other sperm from entering the egg. Fertilization usually takes place on the first day after intercourse and is only possible within 24 hours after ovulation.



**A. Sexual response pathways**



1



2

### Central Nervous System

The *brain* and *spinal cord* make up the *central nervous system (CNS)* (→ **A**). The spinal cord is divided into similar *segments*, but is 30% shorter than the spinal column. The **spinal nerves** exit the spinal canal at the level of their respective vertebrae and contains the afferent somatic and visceral fibers of the *dorsal root*, which project to the spinal cord, and the efferent somatic (and partly autonomic) fibers of the *anterior root*, which project to the periphery. Thus, a nerve is a bundle of nerve fibers that has different functions and conducts impulses in different directions (→ p.42).

**Spinal cord** (→ **A**). Viewed in cross-section, the spinal cord has a dark, butterfly-shaped inner area (*gray matter*) surrounded by a lighter outer area (*white matter*). The four wings of the gray matter are called *horns* (cross-section) or *columns* (longitudinal section). The *anterior horn* contains motoneurons (projecting to the muscles), the *posterior horn* contains interneurons. The cell bodies of most afferent fibers lie within the **spinal ganglion** outside the spinal cord. The white matter contains the axons of ascending and descending tracts.

**Brain** (→ **D**). The main parts of the brain are the *medulla oblongata* (→ **D7**) *pons* (→ **D6**), *mesencephalon* (→ **D5**), *cerebellum* (→ **E**), *diencephalon* and *telencephalon* (→ **E**). The medulla, pons and mesencephalon are collectively called the **brain stem**. It is structurally similar to the spinal cord but also contains cell bodies (nuclei) of *cranial nerves*, neurons controlling *respiration* and *circulation* (→ pp.132 and 212ff.) etc. The **cerebellum** is an important control center for motor function (→ p.326ff.).

**Diencephalon.** The *thalamus* (→ **C6**) of the diencephalon functions as a relay station for most afferents, e.g., from the eyes, ears and skin as well as from other parts of the brain. The *hypothalamus* (→ **C9**) is a higher autonomic center (→ p.330), but it also plays a dominant role in endocrine function (→ p.266ff.) as it controls the release of hormones from the adjacent *hypophysis* (→ **D4**).

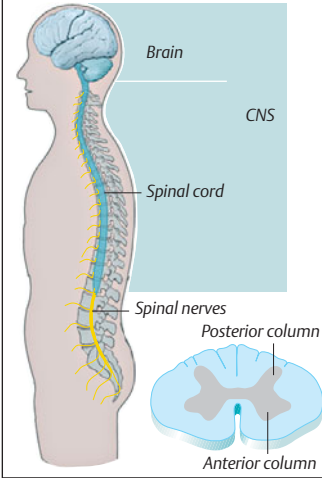
The **telencephalon** consists of the cortex and nuclei important for motor function, the

**basal ganglia**, i.e. *caudate nucleus* (→ **C5**), *putamen* (→ **C7**), *globus pallidus* (→ **C8**), and parts of the *amygdala* (→ **C10**). The amygdaloid nucleus and *cingulate gyrus* (→ **D2**) belong to the **limbic system** (→ p.330). The **cerebral cortex** consists of four *lobes* divided by fissures (sulci), e.g., the *central sulcus* (→ **D1, E**) and *lateral sulcus* (→ **C3, E**). According to *Brodmann's map*, the cerebral cortex is divided into histologically distinct regions (→ **E**, italic letters) that generally have different functions (→ **E**). The *hemispheres* of the brain are closely connected by nerve fibers of the *corpus callosum* (→ **C1, D3**).

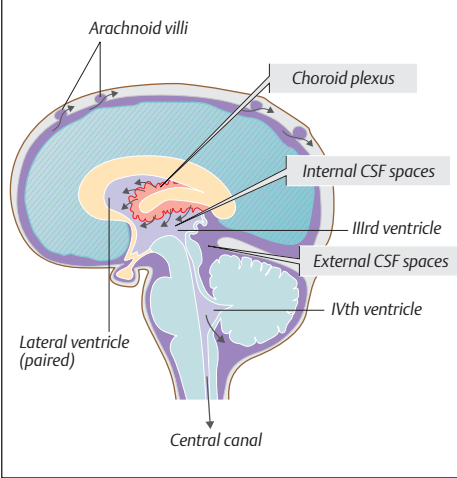
### Cerebrospinal Fluid

The brain is surrounded by external and internal *cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) spaces* (→ **B**). The internal CSF spaces are called *ventricles*. The two lateral ventricles, I and II, (→ **B, C2**) are connected to the IIIrd and IVth ventricle and to the central canal of the spinal cord (→ **B**). Approximately 650 mL of CSF forms in the *choroid plexus* (→ **B, C4**) and drains through the *arachnoid villi* each day (→ **B**). Lesions that obstruct the drainage of CSF (e.g., brain tumors) result in cerebral compression; in children, they lead to fluid accumulation (*hydrocephalus*). The *blood-brain barrier* and the *blood-CSF barrier* prevents the passage of most substances except CO<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub>, water and lipophilic substances. (As an exception, the *circumventricular organs* of the brain such as the *organum vasculosum laminae terminalis* (OVLT; → p.280) and the *area postrema* (→ p.238) have a less tight blood-brain barrier.) Certain substances like glucose and amino acids can cross the blood-brain barrier with the aid of carriers, whereas proteins cannot. The ability or inability of a drug to cross the blood-brain barrier is an important factor in pharmacotherapeutics.

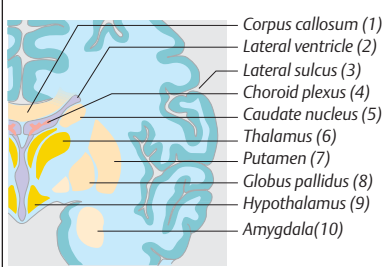
**A. Central nervous system (CNS)**



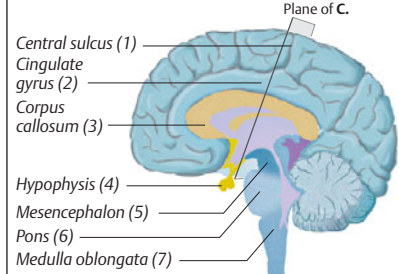
**B. Cerebrospinal fluid spaces of the brain**



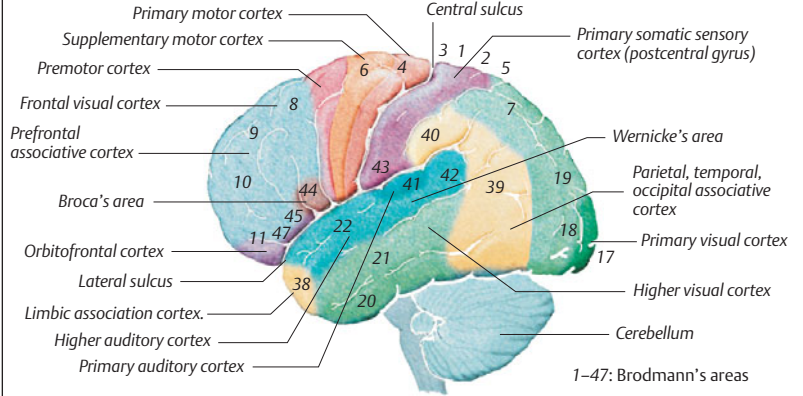
**C. Brain: Cross-sectional view**



**D. Brain: Hemisection through middle**



**E. Areas of cortex**



## Stimulus Reception and Processing

With our **senses**, we receive huge quantities of **information** from the surroundings ( $10^9$  bits/s). Only a small portion of it is consciously perceived ( $10^1$ – $10^2$  bits/s); the rest is either subconsciously processed or not at all. Conversely, we transmit ca.  $10^7$  bits/s of information to the environment through speech and motor activity, especially facial expression ( $\rightarrow$  A).

A **bit** (binary digit) is a single unit of information (1 byte = 8 bits). The average page of a book contains roughly 1000 bits, and TV images convey more than  $10^6$  bits/s.

**Stimuli** reach the body in *different forms of energy*, e.g., electromagnetic (visual stimuli) or mechanical energy (e.g., tactile stimuli). Various *sensory receptors* or **sensors** for these stimuli are located in the five “classic” sense organs (eye, ear, skin, tongue, nose) at the body surface as well as inside the body (e.g., proprioceptors, vestibular organ). (In this book, sensory receptors are called sensors to distinguish them from binding sites for hormones and transmitters.) The sensory system extracts four stimulatory elements: *modality, intensity, duration, and localization*. Each type of sensor is specific for a unique or *adequate stimulus* that evokes specific sensory **modalities** such as sight, sound, touch, vibration, temperature, pain, taste, smell, as well as the body’s position and movement, etc. Each modality has several *submodalities*, e.g., taste can be sweet or bitter, etc.

In **secondary sensors** (e.g., gustatory and auditory sensors), sensor and afferent fibers are separated by a synapse, whereas **primary sensors** (e.g., olfactory sensors and nociceptors) have their own afferent fibers.

A stimulus induces a change in *sensor potential (transduction)*, which results in depolarization of the sensor cell (in most types;  $\rightarrow$  B1) or hyperpolarization as in retinal sensors. The stronger the stimulus, the greater the *amplitude* of the sensor potential ( $\rightarrow$  C1). Once the sensor potential exceeds a certain threshold, it is **transformed** into an **action potential, AP** ( $\rightarrow$  B1; p. 46ff.).

**Coding of signals.** The stimulus is encoded in *AP frequency* (impulses/s = Hz), i.e., the

higher the sensor potential, the higher the AP frequency ( $\rightarrow$  C2). This information is decoded at the next synapse: The higher the frequency of arriving APs, the higher the *excitatory postsynaptic potential* (EPSP;  $\rightarrow$  50ff.). New APs are fired by the postsynaptic neuron when the EPSP exceeds a certain threshold ( $\rightarrow$  B2).

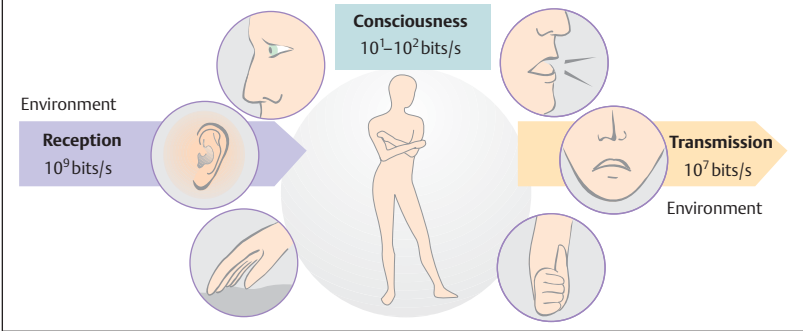
**Frequency coding** of APs is a more reliable way of transmitting information over long distances than amplitude coding because the latter is much more susceptible to change (and falsification of its information content). At the synapse, however, the signal must be amplified or attenuated (by other neurons), which is better achieved by amplitude coding.

**Adaptation.** At constant stimulation, most sensors adapt, i.e., their potential decreases. The potential of slowly adapting sensors becomes proportional to stimulus intensity (*P sensors* or *tonic sensors*). Fast-adapting sensors respond only at the onset and end of a stimulus. They sense **differential changes** in the stimulus intensity (*D sensors* or *phasic sensors*). *PD sensors* have both characteristics ( $\rightarrow$  p. 314).

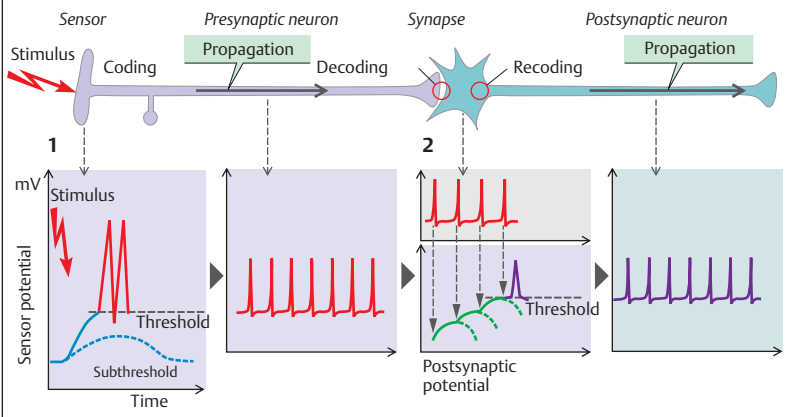
**Central processing.** In a first phase, inhibitory and stimulatory impulses conducted to the CNS are integrated—e.g., to increase the *contrast* of stimuli ( $\rightarrow$  D; see also p. 354). In this case, stimulatory impulses originating from adjacent sensor are attenuated in the process (*lateral inhibition*). In a second step, a **sensory impression** of the stimuli (e.g. “green” or “sweet”) takes form in low-level areas of the sensory cortex. This is the first step of subjective sensory physiology. Consciousness is a prerequisite for this process. Sensory impressions are followed by their interpretation. The result of it is called **perception**, which is based on experience and reason, and is subject to individual interpretation. The impression “green,” for example, can evoke the perception “There is a tree” or “This is a meadow.”

Absolute threshold ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 340ff., 352, 362), difference threshold ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 340ff., 352, 368), spatial and temporal summation ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 52, 352), receptive field ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354), habituation and sensitization are other important concepts of sensory physiology. The latter two mechanisms play an important role in learning processes ( $\rightarrow$  p. 336).

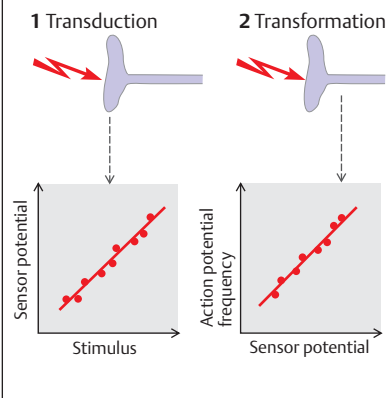
**A. Reception, perception and transmission of information**



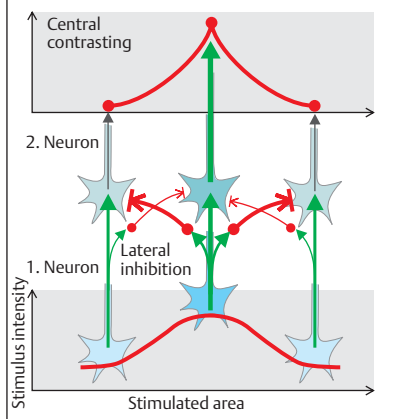
**B. Stimulus processing and information coding**



**C. Stimulus, sensor and action potential relationships**



**D. Contrasting**



## Sensory Functions of the Skin

**Somatosceral sensibility** is the collective term for all sensory input from receptors or *sensors* of the body (as opposed to the sensory organs of the head). It includes the areas of proprioception (→ p. 316), nociception (→ p. 318), and skin or surface sensitivity.

The **sense of touch** (taction) is essential for perception of *form, shape*, and *spatial nature* of objects (*stereognosis*). Tactile sensors are located predominantly in the palm, especially in the fingertips, and in the tongue and oral cavity. Stereognostic perception of an object requires that the CNS integrate signals from adjacent receptors into a spatial pattern and coordinate them with **tactile motor function**.

**Mechanosensors.** *Hairless areas* of the skin contain the following mechanosensors (→ A), which are afferently innervated by myelinated nerve fibers of class II/Aβ (→ p. 49 C):

- ◆ The spindle-shaped **Ruffini's corpuscle** (→ A3) partly encapsulates the afferent axon branches. This unit is a *slowly adapting* (SA) pressosensor of the SA2 type. They are P sensors (→ p. 312). Thus, the greater the pressure on the skin (depth of indentation or weight of an object), the higher the AP frequency (→ B1).

- ◆ **Merkel's cells** (→ A2) are in synaptic contact to meniscus-shaped axon terminals. These complexes are pressure-sensitive SA1 sensors. They are PD sensors (combination of B1 and B2) since their AP frequency is not only dependent on the pressure intensity but also on the rate of its change ( $dp/dt$ ; → p. 312).

- ◆ **Meissner's corpuscles** (→ A1) are composed of lamellar cell layers between which club-shaped axons terminate. This unit represents a *rapidly adapting* pressure sensor (**RA sensor**) that responds only to pressure changes,  $dp/dt$  (pure *D sensor* or *velocity sensor*). The RA sensors are specific for *touch* (skin indentation of 10–100 μm) and low-frequency *vibration* (10–100 Hz). **Hair follicle receptors** (→ A5), which respond to bending of the hairs, assume these functions in hairy areas of the skin.

- ◆ **Pacinian corpuscles** (→ A4) are innervated by a centrally situated axon. They *adapt very rapidly* and therefore respond to changes in pressure change velocity, i.e. to *acceleration* ( $d^2p/dt^2$ ), and sense high-frequency vibration (100–400 Hz; indentation depths < 3 μm). The

AP frequency is proportional to the vibration frequency (→ B3).

**Resolution.** RA and SA1 sensors are densely distributed in the mouth, lips and fingertips, especially in the index and middle finger (about 100/cm<sup>2</sup>). They can distinguish closely adjacent stimuli as separate, i.e., each afferent axon has a *narrow receptive field*. Since the signals do not converge as they travel to the CNS, the ability of these sensors in the mouth, lips and fingertips to distinguish between two closely adjacent tactile stimuli, i.e. their *resolution*, is very high.

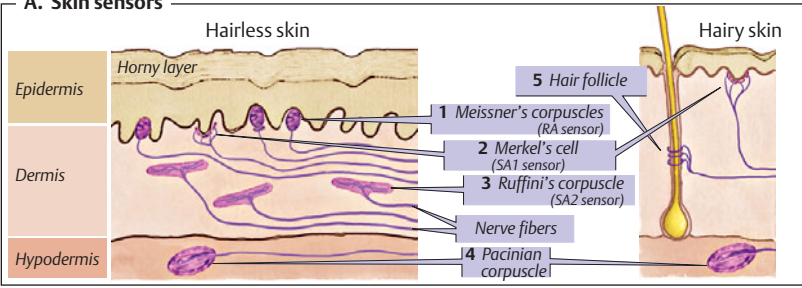
The **spatial threshold for two-point discrimination**, i.e., the distance at which two simultaneous stimuli can be perceived as separate, is used as a measure of tactile resolution. The spatial thresholds are roughly 1 mm on the fingers, lips and tip of the tongue, 4 mm on the palm of the hand, 15 mm on the arm, and over 60 mm on the back.

**SA2 receptors** and **pacinian corpuscles** have a broad receptive field (the exact function of SA2 receptors is not known). Pacinian corpuscles are therefore well adapted to detect vibrations, e.g., earth tremors.

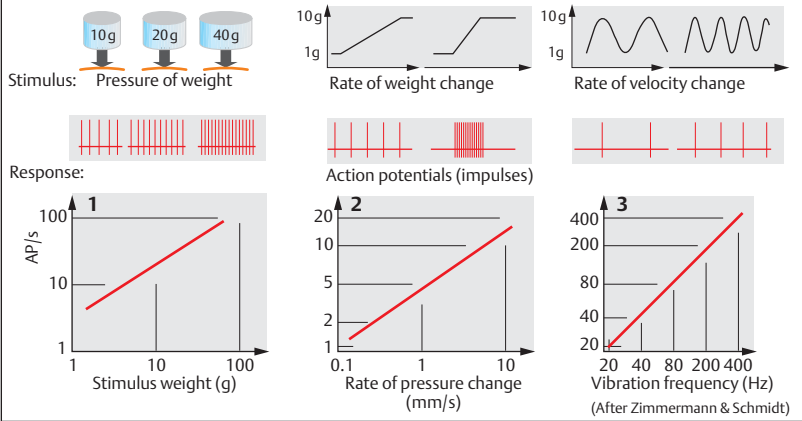
Two types of **thermosensors** are located in the skin: *cold sensors* for temperatures < 36°C and *warm sensors* for those > 36°C. The lower the temperature (in the 20–36°C range), the higher the AP frequency of the cold receptors. The reverse applies to warm receptors in the 36–43°C range (→ C). Temperatures ranging from 20° to 40°C are subject to *rapid adaptation of thermosensation* (PD characteristics). Water warmed, for example, to 25°C initially feels cold. More extreme temperatures, on the other hand, are persistently perceived as cold or hot (this helps to maintain a constant core temperature and prevent skin damage). The density of these cold and warm sensors in most skin areas is low as compared to the much higher densities in the mouth and lips. (That is why the lips or cheeks are used for temperature testing.)

Different sensors are responsible for thermoception at temperatures exceeding 45°C. These **heat sensors** are also used for the perception of pungent substances such as *capsaicin*, the active constituent of hot chili peppers. Stimulation of VR1 receptors (vanilloid receptor type 1) for capsaicin mediates the opening of cation channels in nociceptive nerve endings, which leads to their depolarization.

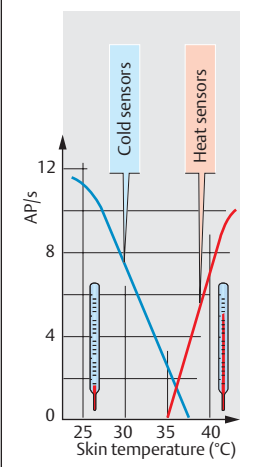
**A. Skin sensors**



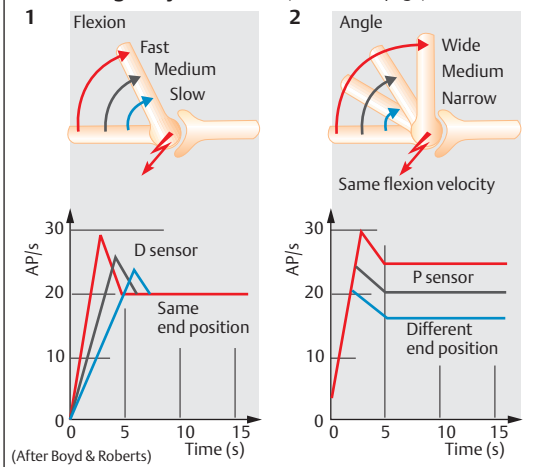
**B. Response of skin sensors for pressure (1), touch (2) and vibration (3)**



**C. Response of thermo-sensors**



**D. PD proprioception: Response to velocity and angle of joint flexion** (text on next page)





## Proprioception, Stretch Reflex

Proprioception is the mechanism by which we sense the *strength* that our muscles develop as well as the *position* and *movement* of our body and limbs. The *vestibular organ* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 342) and *cutaneous mechanosensors* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 314) assist the *propriosensors* in muscle spindles, joints and tendons. Sensors of *Golgi tendon organs* are located near muscle–tendon junctions.

**Muscle spindles** ( $\rightarrow$  A1) contain intensity (P) and differential (D) sensors for monitoring of **joint position** and **movement**. The *velocity of position change* is reflected by a transient rise in impulse frequency (D sensor;  $\rightarrow$  p. 315 D1, spike), and the final joint *position* is expressed as a constant impulse frequency (P-sensor,  $\rightarrow$  p. 315 D2, plateau). Muscle spindles function to **regulate muscle length**. They lie parallel to the skeletal muscle fibers (*extrafusal muscle fibers*) and contain their own muscle fibers (*intrafusal muscle fibers*). There are two types of intrafusal muscle fibers: (1) *nuclear chain fibers* (P sensors) and (2) *nuclear bag fibers* (D sensors). The endings of *type Ia* afferent neurons coil around both types, whereas *type II* neurons wind around the nuclear chain fibers only (neuron types described on p. 49 C). These *annulospiral endings* detect longitudinal stretching of intrafusal muscle fibers and report their length (type Ia and II afferents) and changes in length (Ia afferents) to the spinal cord. The efferent  $\gamma$  *motoneurons* (fusimotor fibers) innervate both intrafusal fiber types, allowing variation of their length and stretch sensitivity ( $\rightarrow$  A1, B1).

**Golgi tendon organs** ( $\rightarrow$  A2) are arranged in series with the muscle and respond to the contraction of only a few motor units or more. Their primary function is to **regulate muscle tension**. Impulses from Golgi tendon organs (conveyed by *type Ib* afferents), the skin and joints, and muscle spindles (some of which are type Ia and II afferent fibers), as well as descending impulses, are jointly integrated in *type Ib interneurons* of the spinal cord; this is referred to as **multimodal integration** ( $\rightarrow$  D2). Type Ib interneurons inhibit  $\alpha$  motoneurons of the muscle from which the Ib afferent input originated (*autogenous inhibition*) and activate antagonistic muscles via excitatory interneurons ( $\rightarrow$  D5).

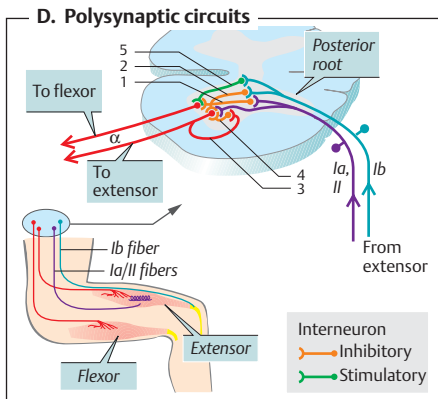
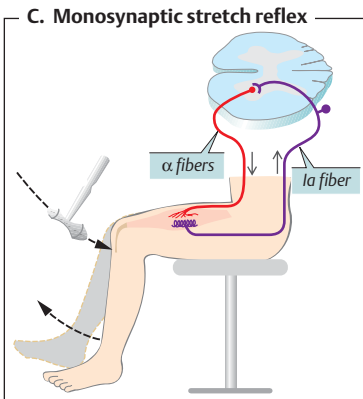
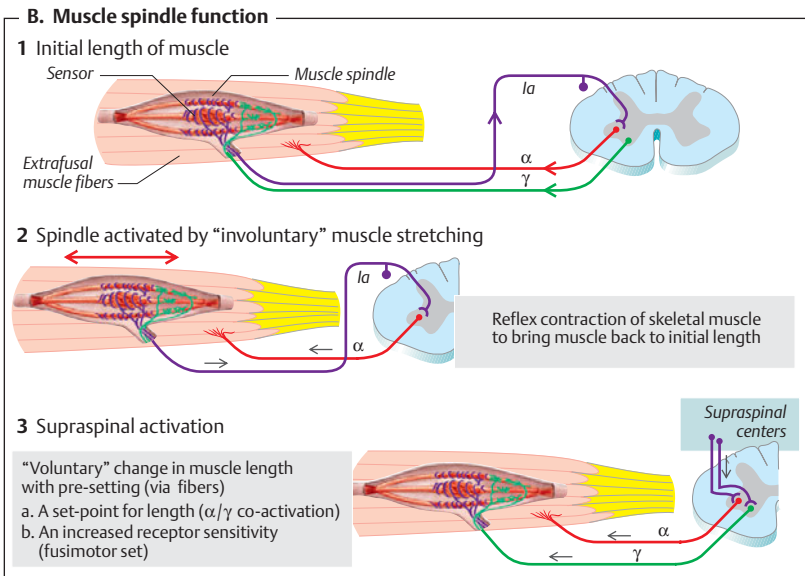
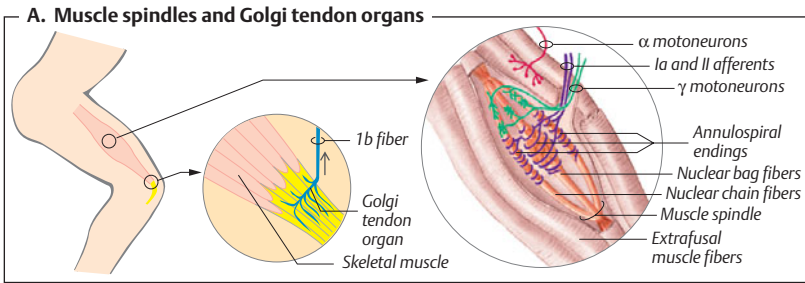
**Monosynaptic stretch reflex** ( $\rightarrow$  C). Muscles spindles are also affected by sudden stretching of a skeletal muscle, e.g. due to a tap on the tendon attaching it. Stretching of the muscle spindles triggers the activation of type Ia afferent impulses ( $\rightarrow$  B2, C), which enter the spinal cord via the dorsal root and terminate in the ventral horn at the  $\alpha$  motoneurons of the same muscle. This type Ia afferent input therefore induces contraction of the same muscle by only one synaptic connection. The reflex time for this monosynaptic stretch reflex is therefore very short (ca. 30 ms). This is classified as a *proprioceptive reflex*, since the stimulation and response arise in the same organ. The monosynaptic stretch reflex **functions** to rapidly correct “involuntary” changes in muscle length and joint position.

**Supraspinal activation** ( $\rightarrow$  B3). Voluntary muscle contractions are characterized by *co-activation* of  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  neurons. The latter adjust the muscle spindles (length sensors) to a certain set-point of length. Any deviations from this set-point due, for example, to unexpected shifting of weight, are compensated for by re-adjusting the  $\alpha$ -innervation (*load compensation reflex*). Expected changes in muscle length, especially during complex movements, can also be more precisely controlled by (centrally regulated)  $\gamma$  fiber activity by increasing the preload and stretch sensitivity of the intrafusal muscle fibers (*fusimotor set*).

**Hoffmann's reflex** can be also used to test the stretch reflex pathway. This can be done by positioning electrodes on the skin over (mixed) muscle nerves and subsequently recording the muscle contraction induced by electrical stimuli of different intensity.

**Polysynaptic circuits**, also arising from type II afferents complement the stretch reflex. If a stretch reflex (e.g., knee-jerk reflex) occurs in an extensor muscle, the  $\alpha$  motoneurons of the antagonistic flexor muscle must be inhibited via *inhibitory Ia interneurons* to achieve efficient extension ( $\rightarrow$  D1).

**Deactivation of stretch reflex** is achieved by inhibiting muscle contraction as follows: 1) The muscle spindles relax, thereby allowing the deactivation of type Ia fibers; 2) the Golgi tendon organs inhibit the  $\alpha$  motoneurons via type Ib interneurons ( $\rightarrow$  D2); 3) the  $\alpha$  motoneurons are inhibited by the interneurons (*Renshaw cells*;  $\rightarrow$  D4) that they themselves stimulated via axon collaterals (*recurrent inhibition*;  $\rightarrow$  D3; p. 321 C1).



## Nociception and Pain

Pain is an unpleasant sensory experience associated with discomfort. It is protective insofar as it signals that the body is being threatened by an injury (*noxa*). **Nociception** is the perception of noxae via **nocisensors**, neural conduction and central processing. The **pain** that is ultimately felt is a subjective experience. Pain can also occur without stimulation of nocisensors, and excitation of nocisensors does not always evoke pain.

All body tissues except the brain and liver contain sensors for pain, i.e., **nocisensors** or **nociceptors** (→ **A**). Nocisensors are bead-like endings of peripheral axons, the somata of which are located in dorsal root ganglia and in nuclei of the trigeminal nerve. Most of these fibers are slowly conducting C fibers (< 1 m/s); the rest are myelinated A $\delta$  fibers (5–30 m/s; fiber types described on p. 49 C).

When an injury occurs, one first senses sharp “fast pain” (A $\delta$  fibers) before feeling the dull “slow pain” (C fibers), which is felt longer and over a broader area. Since nocisensors do not adapt, the pain can last for days. Sensitization can even lower the stimulus threshold.

Most nocisensors are **polymodal sensors** (C fibers) activated by mechanical stimuli, chemical mediators of inflammation, and high-intensity heat or cold stimuli. **Unimodal nociceptors**, the less common type, consist of *thermal nocisensors* (A $\delta$  fibers), *mechanical nocisensors* (A $\delta$  fibers), and “*dormant nocisensors*.” Thermal nocisensors are activated by extremely hot (> 45°C) or cold (< 5°C) stimuli (→ p. 314). Dormant nocisensors are chiefly located in internal organs and are “awakened” after prolonged exposure (sensitization) to a stimulus, e.g., inflammation.

Nocisensors can be inhibited by opioids (**desensitization**) and stimulated by prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub> or bradykinin, which is released in response to inflammation (**sensitization**; → **A**). Endogenous opioids (e.g., dynorphin, enkephalin, endorphin) and exogenous opioids (e.g., morphium) as well as inhibitors of prostaglandin synthesis (→ p. 269) are therefore able to alleviate pain (**analgesic action**).

**Inflammatory sensitization** (e.g., sunburn) lowers the threshold for noxious stimuli, leading to excessive sensitivity (hyperalgesia) and additional pain resulting from non-noxious stimuli to the skin (allodynia), e.g., touch or warm water (37°C). Once the

nocisensors are stimulated, they start to release *neuropeptides* such as substance P or CGRP (calcitonin gene-related peptide) that cause inflammation of the surrounding vessels (**neurogenic inflammation**).

**Projected pain.** Damage to nociceptive fibers causes pain (neurogenic or neuropathic) that is often projected to and perceived as arising from the periphery. A prolapsed disk compressing a spinal nerve can, for example, cause leg pain. Nociceptive fibers can be blocked by cold or local anesthesia.

**Nociceptive tracts** (→ **C1**). The central axons of nociceptive somatic neurons and nociceptive afferents of internal organs end on neurons of the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. In many cases, they terminate on the same neurons as the skin afferents.

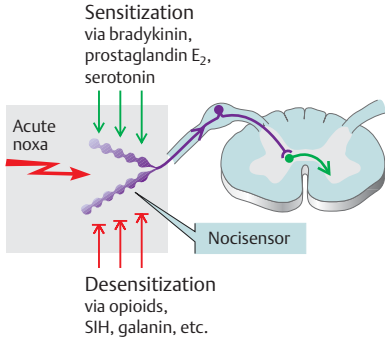
**Referred pain** (→ **B**). Convergence of somatic and visceral nociceptive afferents is probably the main cause of referred pain. In this type of pain, noxious visceral stimuli cause a perception of pain in certain skin areas called **Head’s zones**. That for the heart, for example, is located mainly in the chest region. Myocardial ischemia is therefore perceived as pain on the surface of the chest wall (angina pectoris) and often also in the lower arm and upper abdominal region.

In the spinal cord, the neuroceptive afferents cross to the opposite side (decussation) and are conducted in the **tracts of the anterolateral funiculus**—mainly in the spinothalamic tract—and continue centrally via the brain stem where they join nociceptive afferents from the head (mainly trigeminal nerve) to the **thalamus** (→ **C1**). From the ventrolateral thalamus, sensory aspects of pain are projected to S1 and S2 areas of the **cortex**. Tracts from the medial thalamic nuclei project to the limbic system and other centers.

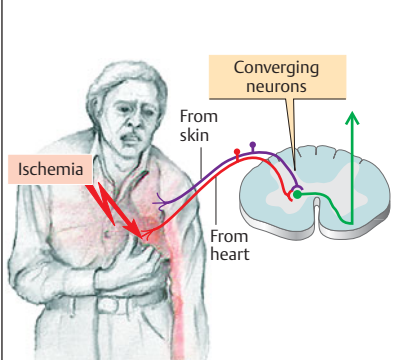
**Components of pain.** Pain has a *sensory component* including the conscious perception of site, duration and intensity of pain; a *motor component* (e.g., defensive posture and withdrawal reflex; → p. 320), an *autonomic component* (e.g., tachycardia), and an *affective component* (e.g., aversion). In addition, **pain assessments** based on the memory of a previous pain experience can lead to **pain-related behavior** (e.g., moaning).

In the thalamus and spinal cord, nociception can be **inhibited via descending tracts** with the aid of various transmitters (mainly opioids). The nuclei of these tracts (→ **C2**, blue) are located in the **brain stem** and are mainly activated via the nociceptive spinoreticular tract (negative feedback loop).

**A. Nociception**



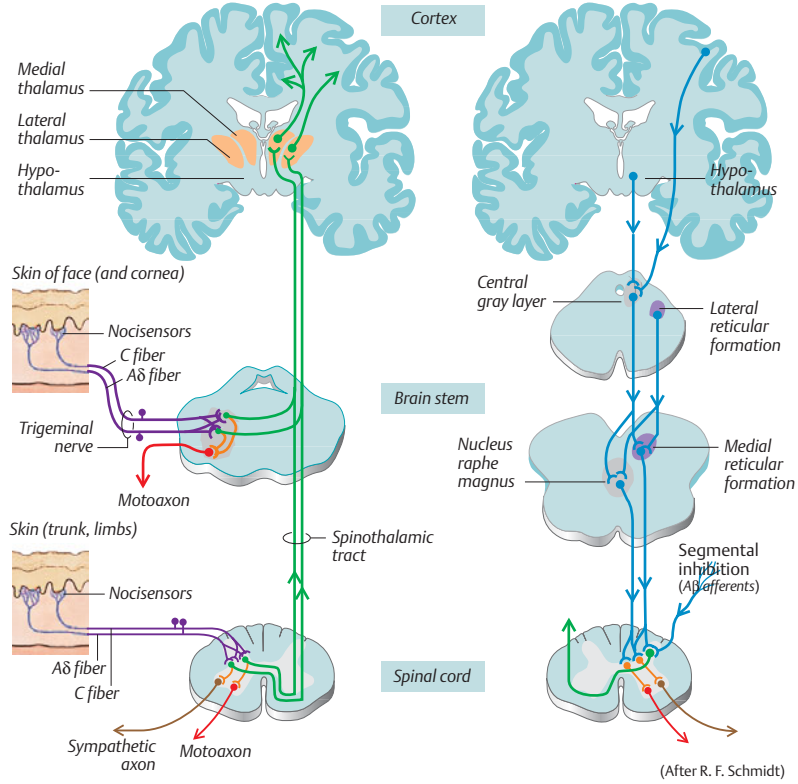
**B. Referred pain**



**C. Ascending and descending tracts for nociception**

**1 Ascending nociceptive tracts**

**2 Descending nociceptive tracts (mainly inhibitory)**



## Polysynaptic Reflexes

Unlike proprioceptive reflexes (→ p. 316), polysynaptic reflexes are activated by sensors that are spatially separate from the effector organ. This type of reflex is called *polysynaptic*, since the reflex arc involves many synapses in series. This results in a relatively *long reflex time*. The intensity of the response is dependent on the duration and intensity of stimulus, which is temporally and spatially summated in the CNS (→ p. 52). Example: itching sensation in nose → sneezing. The response spreads when the stimulus intensity increases (e.g., coughing → choking cough). *Protective reflexes* (e.g., withdrawal reflex, corneal and lacrimal reflexes, coughing and sneezing), *nutrition reflexes* (e.g., swallowing, sucking reflexes), *locomotor reflexes*, and the various *autonomic reflexes* are polysynaptic reflexes. Certain reflexes, e.g., plantar reflex, cremasteric reflex and abdominal reflex, are used as diagnostic tests.

**Withdrawal reflex (→ A).** Example: A painful stimulus in the sole of the right foot (e.g., stepping on a tack) leads to flexion of all joints of that leg (**flexion reflex**). Nociceptive afferents (→ p. 318) are conducted via stimulatory interneurons (→ **A1**) in the spinal cord to motoneurons of ipsilateral *flexors* and via inhibitory interneurons (→ **A2**) to motoneurons of ipsilateral *extensors* (→ **A3**), leading to their relaxation; this is called *antagonistic inhibition*. One part of the response is the **crossed extensor reflex**, which promotes the withdrawal from the injurious stimulus by increasing the distance between the nociceptive stimulus (e.g. the tack) and the nocisensor and helps to support the body. It consists of contraction of extensor muscles (→ **A5**) and relaxation of the flexor muscles in the contralateral leg (→ **A4, A6**). Nociceptive afferents are also conducted to other segments of the spinal cord (ascending and descending; → **A7, A8**) because different extensors and flexors are innervated by different segments. A noxious stimulus can also trigger flexion of the ipsilateral arm and extension of the contralateral arm (*double crossed extensor reflex*). The noxious stimulus produces the perception of pain in the brain (→ p. 316).

Unlike monosynaptic stretch reflexes, polysynaptic reflexes occur through the *co-activation of  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  motoneurons* (→ p. 316). The *reflex excitability* of  $\alpha$  motoneurons is largely **controlled by supraspinal centers** via multiple interneurons (→ p. 324). The brain can therefore shorten the reflex time of spinal cord reflexes when a noxious stimulus is anticipated.

Supraspinal lesions or interruption of descending tracts (e.g., in paraplegics) can lead to exaggeration of reflexes (**hyperreflexia**) and stereotypic reflexes. The absence of reflexes (**areflexia**) corresponds to specific disorders of the spinal cord or peripheral nerve.

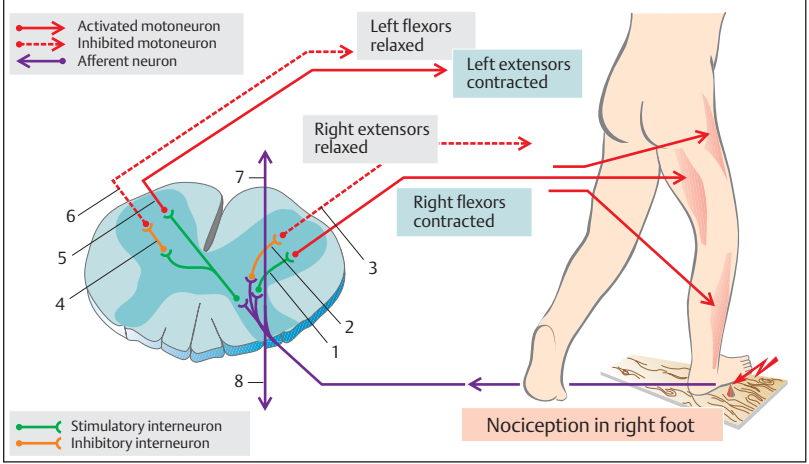
## Synaptic Inhibition

GABA ( $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid) and glycine (→ p. 55f.) function as inhibitory transmitters in the spinal cord. **Presynaptic inhibition (→ B)** occurs frequently in the CNS, for example, at synapses between type Ia afferents and  $\alpha$  motoneurons, and involves *axoaxonic synapses* of GABAergic interneurons at presynaptic nerve endings. GABA exerts inhibitory effects at the nerve endings by increasing the membrane conductance to  $\text{Cl}^-$  (GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors) and  $\text{K}^+$  (GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors) and by decreasing the conductance to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors). This decreases the release of transmitters from the nerve ending of the target neuron (→ **B2**), thereby lowering the amplitude of its postsynaptic EPSP (→ p. 50). The *purpose* of presynaptic inhibition is to reduce certain influences on the motoneuron without reducing the overall excitability of the cell.

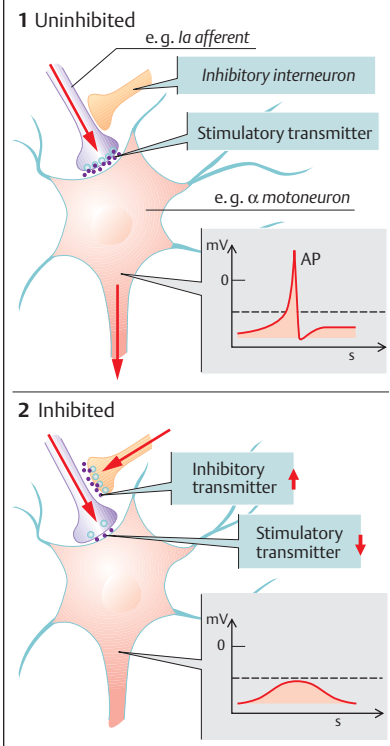
In **postsynaptic inhibition (→ C)**, an *inhibitory interneuron* increases the membrane conductance of the postsynaptic neuron to  $\text{Cl}^-$  or  $\text{K}^+$ , especially near the axon hillock, thereby short-circuiting the depolarizing electrical currents from excitatory EPSPs (→ p. 54 D).

The interneuron responsible for postsynaptic inhibition is either activated by feedback from axonal collaterals of the target neurons (**recurrent inhibition** of motoneurons via glycinergic Renshaw cells; → **C1**) or is directly activated by another neuron via feed-forward control (→ **C2**). Inhibition of the ipsilateral extensor (→ **A2, A3**) in the flexor reflex is an example of *feed-forward inhibition*.

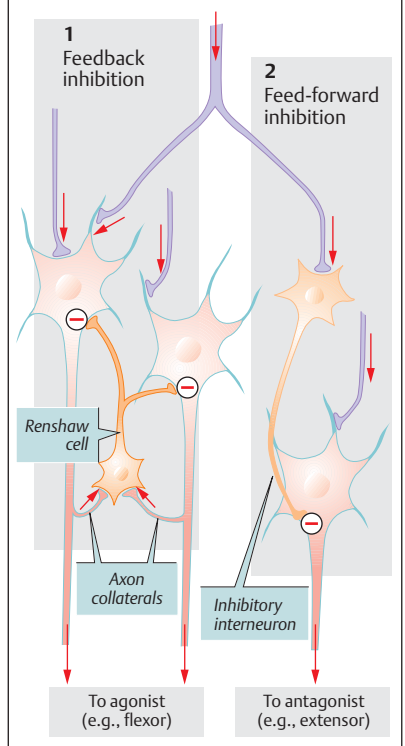
**A. Withdrawal reflex**



**B. Presynaptic inhibition**



**C. Postsynaptic inhibition**



SD12.6

Despopoulos, Color Atlas of Physiology © 2003 Thieme

All rights reserved. Usage subject to terms and conditions of license.

## Central Conduction of Sensory Input

The **posterior funiculus–lemniscus system** (→ C, green) is the principal route by which the somatosensory cortex S1 (postcentral gyrus) receives sensory input from skin sensors and proprioceptors. Messages from the skin (*superficial sensibility*) and locomotor system (*proprioceptive sensibility*) reach the spinal cord via the *dorsal roots*. Part of these primarily afferent fibers project in *tracts of the posterior funiculus* without synapses to the *posterior funicular nuclei* of the caudal medulla oblongata (nuclei cuneatus and gracilis). The tracts of the posterior funiculi exhibit a somatotopic arrangement, i.e., the further cranial the origin of the fibers the more lateral their location. At the *medial lemniscus*, the secondary afferent somatosensory fibers cross to the contralateral side (decussate) and continue to the posterolateral ventral nucleus (PLVN) of the **thalamus**, where they are also somatotopically arranged. The secondary afferent trigeminal fibers (lemniscus trigeminalis) end in the *posteromedial ventral nucleus* (PMVN) of the thalamus. The tertiary afferent somatosensory fibers end at the quaternary somatosensory neurons in the **somatosensory cortex S1**. The main **function** of the posterior funiculus–lemniscus pathway is to relay information about tactile stimuli (pressure, touch, vibration) and joint position and movement (proprioception) to the brain cortex via its predominantly rapidly conducting fibers with a high degree of spatial and temporal resolution.

As in the motor cortex (→ p. 325 B), each body part is assigned to a corresponding projection area in the **somatosensory cortex S1** (→ A) following a *somatotopic arrangement* (→ B). Three features of the organization of S1 are (1) that one hemisphere of the brain receives the information from the contralateral side of the body (tracts decussate in the medial lemniscus; → C); (2) that most neurons in S1 receive afferent signals from tactile sensors in the fingers and mouth (→ p. 314); and (3) that the afferent signals are processed in columns of the cortex (→ p. 333 A) that are activated by specific types of stimuli (e.g., touch).

**Anterolateral spinothalamic pathway** (→ C; violet). Afferent signals from nociceptors, thermosensors and the second part of pressure and touch afferent neurons are already relayed (partly via interneurons) at various levels of the *spinal cord*. The secondary neurons cross to the opposite side at the corresponding segment of the spinal cord, form the lateral and ventral *spinothalamic tract* in the anterolateral funiculus, and project to the thalamus.

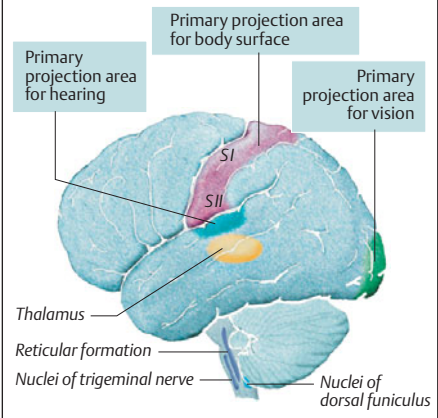
**Descending tracts** (from the cortex) can inhibit the flow of sensory input to the cortex at all relay stations (spinal cord, medulla oblongata, thalamus). The main function of these tracts is to modify the receptive field and adjust stimulus thresholds. When impulses from different sources are conducted in a common afferent, they also help to suppress unimportant sensory input and selectively process more important and interesting sensory modalities and stimuli (e.g., eavesdropping).

**Hemiplegia.** (→ D) *Brown–Séguard syndrome* occurs due to hemisection of the spinal cord, resulting in ipsilateral paralysis and loss of various functions below the lesion. The injured side exhibits *motor paralysis* (initially flaccid, later spastic) and loss of tactile sensation (e.g., impaired two-point discrimination, → p. 314). An additional loss of pain and temperature sensation occurs on the contralateral side (*dissociated paralysis*).

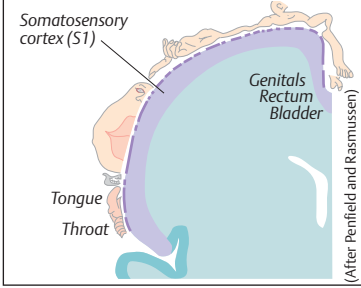
**Reticular activating system.** (→ E) The sensory input described above as well as the input from the sensory organs are specific, whereas the reticular activating system (RAS) is an *unspecific system*. The RAS is a complex processing and integrating system of cells of the *reticular formation* of the brainstem. These cells receive *sensory input* from all sensory organs and ascending spinal cord pathways (e.g., eyes, ears, surface sensitivity, nociception, basal ganglia, etc. Cholinergic and adrenergic output from the RAS is conducted along descending pathways to the spinal cord and along ascending “unspecific” thalamic nuclei and “unspecific” thalamocortical tracts to almost all cortical regions (→ p. 333 A), the limbic system and the hypothalamus. The ascending RAS or **ARAS** controls the state of consciousness and the degree of wakefulness (*arousal activity*).



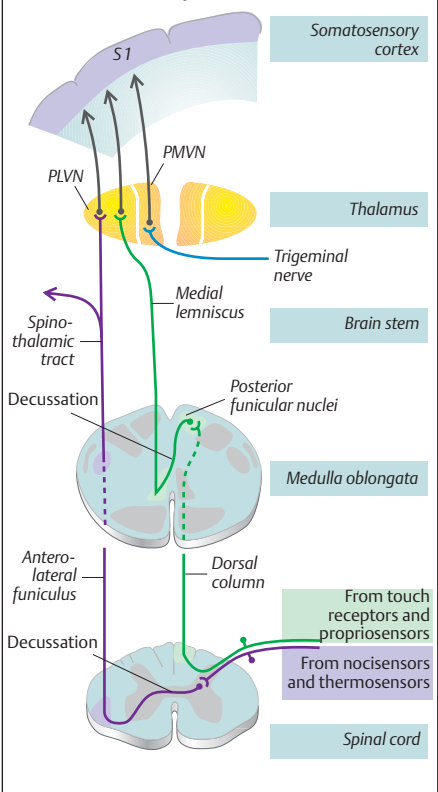
**A. Sensory centers of the brain**



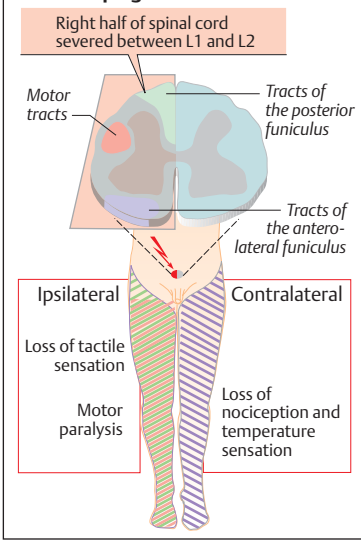
**B. Somatotopic organization of S1**



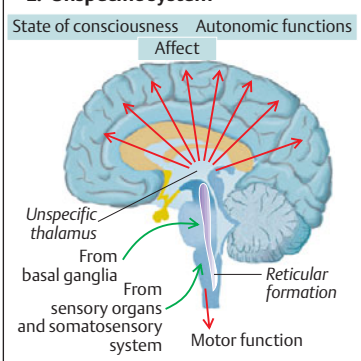
**C. Somatosensory tracts**



**D. Hemiplegia**



**E. Unspecific system**



## Motor System

Coordinated muscular movements (walking, grasping, throwing, etc.) are functionally dependent on the *postural motor system*, which is responsible for maintaining upright posture, balance, and spatial integration of body movement. Since control of postural motor function and muscle coordination requires the simultaneous and uninterrupted flow of sensory impulses from the periphery, this is also referred to as **sensorimotor function**.

$\alpha$  **motoneurons** in the anterior horn of the spinal cord and in cranial nerve nuclei are the terminal tracts for skeletal muscle activation. Only certain parts of the corticospinal tract and type Ia afferents connect to  $\alpha$  motoneurons monosynaptically. Other afferents from the periphery (proprioceptors, nociceptors, mechanoreceptors), other spinal cord segments, the motor cortex, cerebellum, and motor centers of the brain stem connect to  $\alpha$  motoneurons via hundreds of inhibitory and stimulatory interneurons per motoneuron.

**Voluntary motor function.** Voluntary movement requires a series of actions: decision to move  $\Rightarrow$  programming (recall of stored subprograms)  $\Rightarrow$  command to move  $\Rightarrow$  execution of movement ( $\rightarrow$  **A1-4**). Feedback from afferents (re-afferents) from motor subsystems and information from the periphery is constantly integrated in the process. This allows for adjustments before and while executing voluntary movement.

The neuronal activity associated with the first two phases of voluntary movement activates numerous motor areas of the cortex. This electrical brain activity is reflected as a negative **cortical expectancy potential**, which can best be measured in association areas and the vertex. The more complex the movement, the higher the expectancy potential and the earlier its onset (roughly 0.3-3 s).

The **motor cortex** consists of three main areas ( $\rightarrow$  **C**, top;  $\rightarrow$  see p.311 E for area numbers): (a) *primary motor area*, M1 (area 4), (b) *premotor area*, PMA (lateral area 6); and (c) *supplementary motor area*, SMA (medial area 6). The motor areas of the cortex exhibit somatotopic organization with respect to the target muscles of their fibers (shown for M1 in **B**) and their mutual connections.

**Cortical afferents.** The cortex receives motor input from (a) the *body periphery* (via thalamus  $\Rightarrow$  S1 [ $\rightarrow$  p.323 A]  $\Rightarrow$  sensory association cortex  $\Rightarrow$  PMA); (b) the *basal ganglia* (via thalamus  $\Rightarrow$  M1, PMA, SMA [ $\rightarrow$  **A2**]  $\Rightarrow$  prefrontal association cortex); (c) the *cerebellum* (via thalamus  $\Rightarrow$  M1, PMA;  $\rightarrow$  **A2**); and (d) sensory and posterior parietal areas of the cortex (areas 1-3 and 5-7, respectively).

**Cortical efferents.** ( $\rightarrow$  **C, D, E, F**) Motor output from the cortex is mainly projected to (a) the spinal cord, (b) subcortical motor centers (see below and p.328), and (c) the contralateral cortex via commissural pathways.

The **pyramidal tract** includes the *corticospinal tract* and part of the *corticobulbar tract*. Over 90% of the pyramidal tract consists of thin fibers, but little is known about their function. The thick, rapidly conducting corticospinal tract ( $\rightarrow$  **C**) project to the spinal cord from areas 4 and 6 and from areas 1-3 of the sensory cortex. Some of the fibers connect monosynaptically to  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  motoneurons responsible for finger movement (precision grasping). The majority synapse with interneurons of the spinal cord, where they influence input from peripheral afferents as well as motor output (via Renshaw's cells) and thereby spinal reflexes.

### Function of the Basal Ganglia

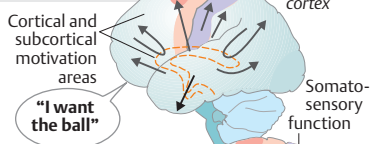
**Circuitry.** The basal ganglia are part of multiple parallel **corticocortical signal loops**. *Associative loops* arising in the frontal and limbic cortex play a role in mental activities such as assessment of sensory information, adaptation of behavior to emotional context, motivation, and long-term action planning. The function of the *skeletomotor* and *oculomotor loops* (see below) is to coordinate and control the velocity of movement sequences. Efferent projections of the basal ganglia *control thalamocortical signal conduction* by (a) attenuating the inhibition (*disinhibiting effect*, direct mode) of the *thalamic motor nuclei* and the *superior colliculus*, respectively, or (b) by intensifying their inhibition (indirect mode).

The principal **input** to the basal ganglia comes from the putamen and caudate nucleus, which are collectively referred to as the *striatum*. Neurons of the striatum are activated by



**A. Events from decision to move to execution of movement**

**1 Decision**



**1a Impulse to move**

"Here's how to get it"

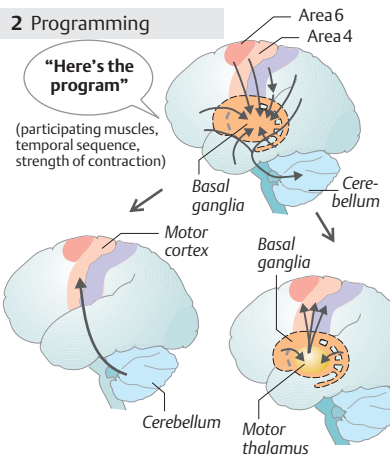
**1b Strategy**



**2 Programming**

"Here's the program"

(participating muscles, temporal sequence, strength of contraction)



**3 Command to move**

"Now do it!"

Reflex systems, motoneurons

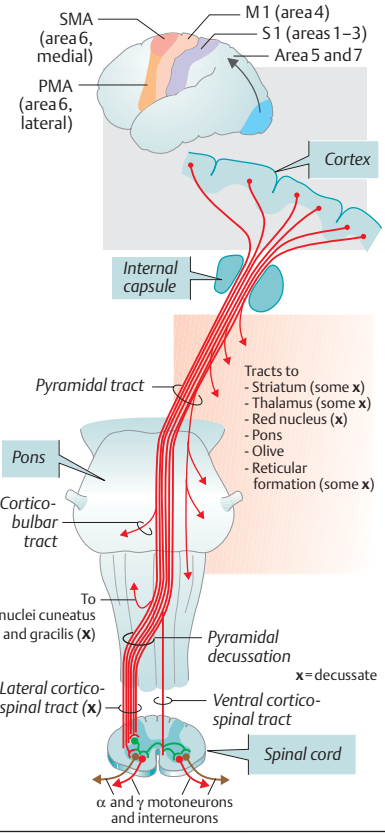
Sensory feedback

**4 Execution of movement**

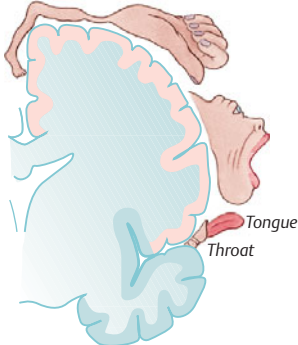


Photos: M. Jeannerod

**C. Descending motor tracts**



**B. Somatotopic organization of primary motor area (M1) of the cortex**



tracts from the entire **cortex** and use **glutamate** as their transmitter (→ **D**). Once activated, neurons of the striatum release an inhibitory transmitter (GABA) and a co-transmitter—either **substance P (SP)** or **enkephalin (Enk.)**, → **D**; → p. 55). The principal **output** of the basal ganglia runs through the **pars reticularis of the substantia nigra (SNr)** and the **pars interna of the globus pallidus (GPI)**, both of which are inhibited by SP/GABAergic neurons of the striatum (→ **D**).

Both SNr and GPI inhibit (by GABA) the ventrolateral thalamus with a high level of spontaneous activity. Activation of the striatum therefore leads to **disinhibition of the thalamus** by this **direct pathway**. If, however, enkephalin/GABA-releasing neurons of the striatum are activated, then they inhibit the **pars externa** of the **globus pallidus (GPe)** which, in turn, inhibits (by GABA) the subthalamic nucleus. The subthalamic nucleus induces glutamatergic activation of SNr and GPI. The ultimate effect of this **indirect pathway** is **increased thalamic inhibition**. Since the thalamus projects to motor and prefrontal cortex, a corticothalamocortical loop that influences skeletal muscle movement (**skeletomotor loop**) via the putamen runs through the basal ganglia. An **oculomotor loop** projects through the caudate nucleus, pars reticularis and superior colliculus and is involved in the control of eye movement (→ pp. 342, 360). **Descending tracts** from the SNr project to the tectum and nucleus pedunculus pontinus.

The fact that the **pars compacta of the substantia nigra (SNc)** showers the entire striatum with **dopamine** (dopaminergic neurons) is of pathophysiological importance (→ **D**). On the one hand, dopamine binds to D1 receptors (rising cAMP levels), thereby activating SP/GABAergic neurons of the striatum; this is the direct route (see above). On the other hand, dopamine also reacts with D2 receptors (decreasing cAMP levels), thereby inhibiting enkephalin/GABAergic neurons; this is the indirect route. These effects of dopamine are essential for normal striatum function. Degeneration of more than 70% of the dopaminergic neurons of the pars compacta results in **excessive inhibition** of the motor areas of the thalamus, thereby impairing voluntary motor function. This occurs in **Parkinson's disease** and can be due genetic predisposition, trauma (e.g., boxing), cerebral infection and other causes. The characteristic **symptoms** of disease include poverty of movement (**akinesia**), slowness of movement (**bradykinesia**), a festinating gait, small handwriting (**micrography**), masklike facial expression, muscular hypertonia (**rigor**), bent posture, and a **tremor** of resting muscles ("money-counting" movement of thumb and fingers).

## Function of the Cerebellum

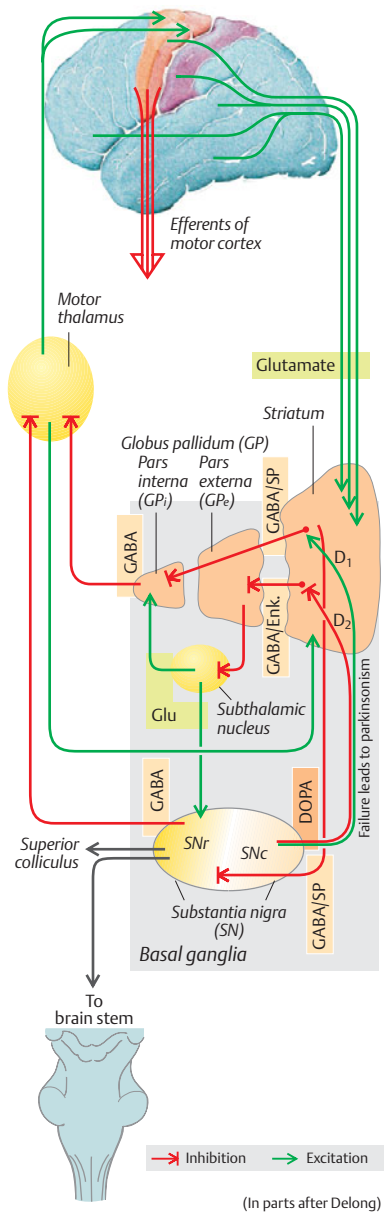
The cerebellum contains as many neurons as the rest of the brain combined. It is an important **control center for motor function** that has afferent and efferent connections to the cortex and periphery (→ **F, top panel**). The cerebellum is involved in the planning, execution and control of movement and is responsible for motor adaptation to new movement sequences (**motor learning**). It is also cooperates with higher centers to control attention, etc.

**Anatomy** (→ **F, top**). The **archeocerebellum** (flocculonodular lobe) and **paleocerebellum** (pyramids, uvula, paraflocculus and parts of the anterior lobe) are the phylogenetically older parts of the cerebellum. These structures and the pars intermedia form the **median cerebellum**. The **neocerebellum** (posterior lobe of the body of the cerebellum) is the phylogenetically younger part of the cerebellum and forms the **lateral cerebellum**. Based on the origin of their principal efferents, the archicerebellum and vermis are sometimes referred to as the **vestibulocerebellum**, the paleocerebellum as the **spinocerebellum**, and the neocerebellum as the **pontocerebellum**. The cerebellar cortex is the folded (fissured) superficial gray matter of the cerebellum consisting of an outer molecular layer of Purkinje cell dendrites and their afferents, a middle layer of Purkinje cells (Purkinje somata), and an inner layer of granular cells. The outer surface of the cerebellum exhibits small, parallel convolutions called *folia*.

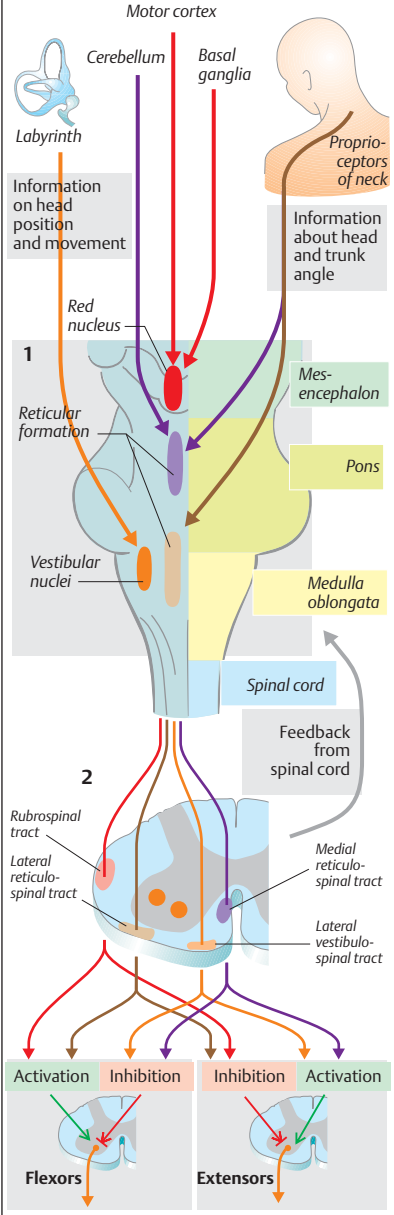
The **median cerebellum** and pars intermedia of the cerebellum mainly control postural and supportive motor function (→ **F1,2**) and oculomotor function (→ pp. 342 and 360). **Input:** The median cerebellum receives **afference copies** of spinal, vestibular and ocular origin and **efference copies** of descending motor signals to the skeletal muscles. **Output** from the median cerebellum flows through the intracerebellar fastigial, globose, and emboliform nuclei to motor centers of the spinal cord and brain stem and to extracerebellar vestibular nuclei (mainly Deiter's nucleus). These centers control oculomotor function and influence locomotor and postural/supportive motor function via the vestibulospinal tract.

The **lateral cerebellum** (hemispheres) mainly takes part in programmed movement (→ **F3**), but its plasticity also permits motor adaptation and the learning of motor sequences. The hemispheres have two-way

**D. Basal ganglia: afferent and efferent tracts**



**E. Centers, tracts and afferents for postural motor function**



connections to the cortex. **Input: a.** Via the pontine nuclei and mossy fibers, the lateral cerebellum receives input from cortical centers for movement planning (e.g., parietal, prefrontal and premotor *association cortex*; sensorimotor and visual areas). **b.** It also receives input from cortical and subcortical motor centers via the inferior olive and climbing fibers (see below). **Output** from the lateral cerebellum projects across motor areas of the thalamus from the dentate nucleus to motor areas of the cortex.

**Lesions** of the *median cerebellum* lead to disturbances of balance and oculomotor control (vertigo, nausea, pendular nystagmus) and cause trunk and gait ataxia. Lesions of the *lateral cerebellum* lead to disturbances of initiation, coordination and termination of goal-directed movement and impair the rapid reprogramming of diametrically opposing movement (diadochokinesia). The typical patient exhibits tremor when attempting voluntary coordinated movement (*intention tremor*), difficulty in measuring the distances during muscular movement (*dysmetria*), pendular rebound motion after stopping a movement (*rebound phenomenon*), and inability to perform rapid alternating movements (*adiadochokinesia*).

The cerebellar cortex exhibits a uniform neural **ultrastructure and circuitry**. All **output** from the cerebellar cortex is conducted via neurites of approximately  $15 \times 10^6$  Purkinje cells. These GABAergic cells project to and *inhibit* neurons of the fastigial, emboliform, dentate, and lateral vestibular nuclei (Deiter's nucleus; → **F, right panel**).

**Input and circuitry:** Input from the spinal cord (spinocerebellar tracts) is relayed by the *inferior olive* and projected via stimulatory (1:15 diverging) **climbing fibers** that terminate on a band of Purkinje cells extending across the folia of the cerebellum, forming the *sagittal excitatory foci*. The climbing fibers use aspartate as their transmitter. Serotonergic fibers from the raphe nuclei and noradrenergic fibers from the locus caeruleus terminate also on the excitatory foci. **Mossy fibers** (pontine, reticular and spinal afferents) excite the granular cells. Their axons form T-shaped branches (*parallel fibers*). In the molecular layer, they densely converge (ca.  $10^5:1$ ) on strips of Purkinje cells that run alongside the folium; these are called *longitudinal excitatory foci*. It is assumed that the climbing fiber system (at the "crossing points" of the perpendicular excitatory foci) amplify the relatively weak signals of mossy fiber afferents to Purkinje cells. Numerous inter-

neurons (Golgi, stellate and basket cells) heighten the contrast of the excitatory pattern on the cerebellar cortex by lateral and recurrent inhibition.

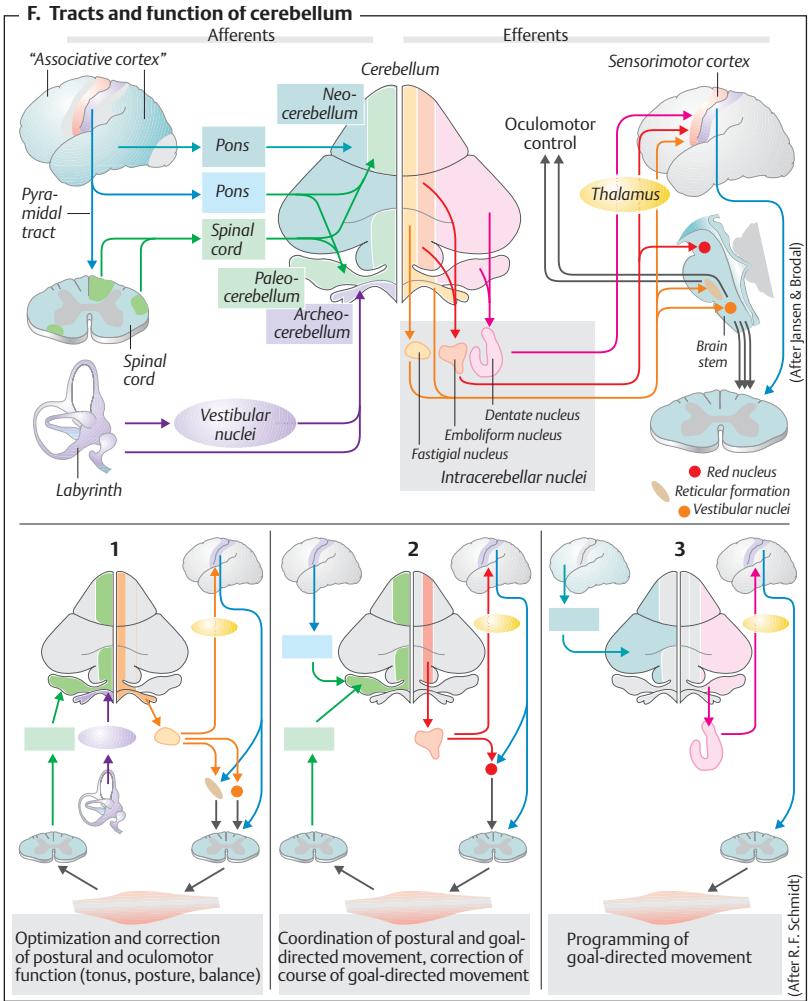
### Postural Motor Control

Simple *stretch reflexes* (→ p. 316) as well as the more complicated *flexor reflexes* and *crossed extensor reflexes* (→ p. 320) are controlled at the level of the **spinal cord**.

**Spinal cord transection (paraplegia)** leads to an initial loss of peripheral reflexes below the lesion (areflexia, spinal shock), but the reflexes can later be provoked in spite of continued transection.

The spinal reflexes are mainly subordinate to supraspinal centers (→ **E**). Postural motor function is chiefly controlled by motor centers of the brain stem (→ **E1**), i.e., the *red nucleus*, vestibular nuclei (mainly *lateral vestibular nucleus*), and parts of the *reticular formation*. These centers function as relay stations that pass along information pertaining to postural and labyrinthine postural reflexes required to maintain *posture* and *balance* (involuntary). Postural reflexes function to regulate muscle tone and eye adaptation movements (→ p. 343 C). **Input** is received from the equilibrium organ (*tonic labyrinthine reflexes*) and from proprioceptors in the neck (*tonic neck reflexes*). The same afferents are involved in postural reflexes (labyrinthine and neck reflexes) that help to maintain the body in its normal position. The trunk is first brought to its normal position in response to inflow from neck proprioceptors. Afferents projecting from the cerebellum, cerebral motor cortex (→ **C**), eyes, ears, and olfactory organ as well as skin receptors also influence postural reflexes. *Startle reflexes* also play an important role in the control of body posture and position. They play a role e.g. in startle reflexes and nystagmus (→ p. 360).

**Descending tracts** to the spinal cord arising from the red nucleus and medullary reticular formation (*rubrospinal* and *lateral reticulospinal tracts*) have a generally inhibitory effect on  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  motoneurons (→ p. 316) of extensor muscles and an excitatory effect on flexor muscles (→ **E2**). Conversely, the tracts from Deiter's nucleus and the pontine areas of the reticular formation (*vestibulospinal* and *medial reticulospinal tracts*) inhibit the flexors and excite the  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  fibers of the extensors. Transection of the brain stem below the red nucleus leads to *decerebrate rigid-*



ity because the extensor effect of Deiter's nucleus predominates.

The **integrating and coordinating function** of the sensorimotor system can be illustrated in two tennis players. When one player serves, the body of the other player moves to meet the ball (*goal-directed movement*) while using the right leg for support and the left arm for balance (*postural motor control*). The player keeps his eye on the ball (*oculomotor control*) and the visual area of the cortex assesses the trajectory and velocity of the ball. The associative cere-

bral cortex initiates the movement of returning the ball while taking the ball, net, other side of the court, and position of the opponent into consideration. Positional adjustments may be necessary when returning the ball. Using the movement concept programmed in the cerebellum and basal ganglia, the motor cortex subsequently executes the directed movement of returning the ball. In doing so, the player may "slice" the ball to give it an additional spinning motion (*acquired rapid directed movement*).



## Hypothalamus, Limbic System

The **hypothalamus** coordinates all autonomic and most endocrine processes (→ p.266ff.) and integrates signals for control of internal milieu, sleep–wake cycle, growth, mental/physical development, reproduction and other functions. The hypothalamus receives numerous sensory and humoral signals (→ A). Peptide hormones can circumvent the blood–brain barrier by way of the *circumventricular organs* (→ p.280).

**Afferents.** *Thermosensors* for control of body temperature (→ p.224), *osmosensors* for regulation of osmolality and water balance (→ p.168), and glucose sensors for maintenance of a minimum *glucose concentration* are located within the hypothalamus. Information about the current status of the internal milieu is neuronally projected to the hypothalamus from distant sensors, e.g., thermosensors in the *skin*, osmosensors in the *liver* (→ p.170), and stretch sensors in the *cardiac atria* (→ p.214ff.). The hypothalamus/circumventricular organs also contain receptors for various hormones (e.g., cortisol and angiotensin II), some of which form part of control loops for energy metabolism and metabolic homeostasis (e.g., receptors for cortisol, ACTH, CRH, leptin, and CCK). For functions related to *growth* and *reproduction*, the hypothalamus receives hormonal signals from the gonads and input from neuronal afferents that report cervical widening at the beginning of the birth process and breast stimulation (suckling reflexes), among other things.

The **limbic system** (→ A) and other areas of the brain influence hypothalamic function. The limbic system controls inborn and acquired behavior (“*program selection*”) and is the seat of instinctive behavior, emotions and motivation (“*inner world*”). It controls the expression of emotions conveying important *signals to the environment* (e.g., fear, anger, wrath, discomfort, joy, happiness). Inversely, signals from the environment (e.g., odors) are closely associated to behavior.

The limbic system has *cortical components* (hippocampus, parahippocampal gyrus, cingulate gyrus, parts of olfactory brain) and *subcortical components* (amygdaloid body, septal nuclei, anterior thalamic nucleus). It has reciprocal connections to the lateral hypothalamus (chiefly used for recall of “*programs*”, see below) and to the temporal and frontal cortex. Its connections to the **cortex** are primarily

used to perceive and assess signals from the “*outer world*” and from memories. Processing of both types of input is important for behavior.

**Programmed behavior** (→ A). The lateral hypothalamus has various programs to control lower hormonal, autonomic and motor processes. This is reflected internally by numerous autonomic and hormonal activities, and is reflected outwardly by different types of behavior.

Different programs exist for different behavioral reactions, for example:

- ◆ **Defensive behavior** (“*fight or flight*”). This program has somatic (repulsive facial expression and posture, flight or fight behavior), hormonal (epinephrine, cortisol) and autonomic (sympathetic nervous system) components. Its activation results in the release of energy-rich free fatty acids, the inhibition of insulin release, and a decrease in blood flow to the gastrointestinal tract as well as to rises in cardiac output, respiratory rate, and blood flow to the skeletal muscles.

- ◆ **Physical exercise.** The components of this program are similar to those of defensive behavior.

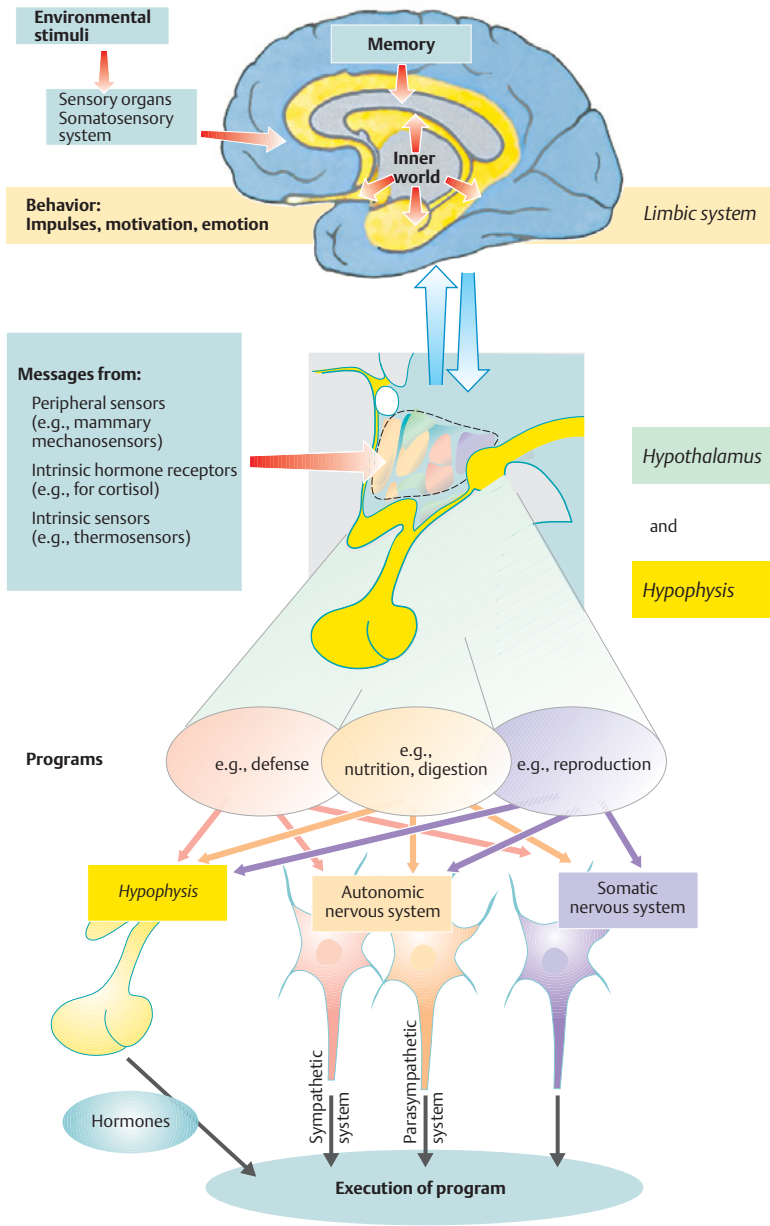
- ◆ **Nutritive behavior**, the purpose of which is to ensure an adequate supply, digestion and intake of foods and liquids. This includes searching for food, e.g. in the refrigerator, activation of the parasympathetic system with increased gastrointestinal secretion and motility in response to food intake, postprandial reduction of skeletal muscle activity and similar activities.

- ◆ **Reproductive behavior**, e.g., courting a partner, neuronal mechanisms of sexual response, hormonal regulation of pregnancy (→ p.304), etc.

- ◆ **Thermoregulatory behavior**, which enables us to maintain a relatively constant core temperature (→ p.224), even in extreme ambient temperatures or at the high level of heat production during strenuous physical work.

**Monoaminergic neuron systems** contain neurons that release the monoamine neurotransmitters norepinephrine, epinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin. These neuron tracts extend from the brain stem to almost all parts of the brain and play an important role in the overall regulation of behavior. Experimental activation of noradrenergic neurons, for example, led to positive reinforcement (liking, rewards), whereas the serotonergic neurons are thought to be associated with dislike. A number of psychotropic drugs target monoaminergic neuron systems.

## A. Limbic system and hypothalamus



## Cerebral Cortex, Electroencephalogram (EEG)

Proper function of the cerebral cortex is essential for *conscious perception, planning, action, and voluntary movement* (→ p. 322ff.).

**Cortical ultrastructure and neuronal circuitry** (→ A). The cerebral cortex consists of six layers, I–VI, lying parallel to the brain surface. Vertically, it is divided into columns and modules (diameter 0.05–0.3 mm, depth 1.3–4.5 mm) that extend through all six layers.

**Input** from specific and unspecific areas of the thalamus terminate mainly on layers IV and on layers I and II, respectively (→ A3); those from other areas of the cortex terminate mainly on layer II (→ A2). The large and small **pyramidal cells** (→ A1) comprise 80% of all cells in the cortex and are located in layers V and III, respectively (glutamate generally serves as the transmitter, e.g., in the striatum; → p. 325 D). The pyramidal cell axons leave the layer VI of their respective columns and are the sole source of **output** from the cortex. Most of the axons project to other areas of the ipsilateral cortex (association fibers) or to areas of the contralateral cortex (commissural fibers) (→ A2); only a few extend to the periphery (→ A4 and p. 325 C). Locally, the pyramidal cells are connected to each other by axon collaterals. The *principal dendrite* of a pyramidal cell projects to the upper layers of its column and has many thorn-like processes (**spines**) where many thalamocortical, commissural and association fibers terminate. The afferent fibers utilize various transmitters, e.g., norepinephrine, dopamine, serotonin, acetylcholine and histamine. Inside the cerebral cortex, information is processed by many morphologically variable **stellate cells** (→ A1), some of which have stimulatory effects (VIP, CCK and other peptide transmitters), while others have inhibitory effects (GABA). Dendrites of pyramidal and stellate cells project to neighboring columns, so the columns are connected by thousands of threads. **Plasticity** of pyramidal cell synapses — i.e., the fact that they can be modified in conformity with their activity pattern — is important for the learning process (→ p. 336).

**Cortical potentials.** Similar to electrocardiography, collective fluctuations of electrical potentials (brain waves) in the cerebral cortex can be recorded by **electroencephalography** using electrodes applied to the skin over the cranium (→ B). The EPSPs contribute the most to the electroencephalogram (EEG) whereas the share of the relatively low IPSPs (→ p. 50ff.) generated at the synapses of pyramidal cell

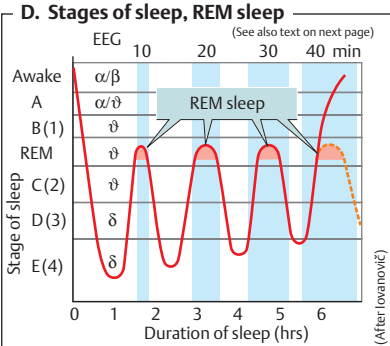
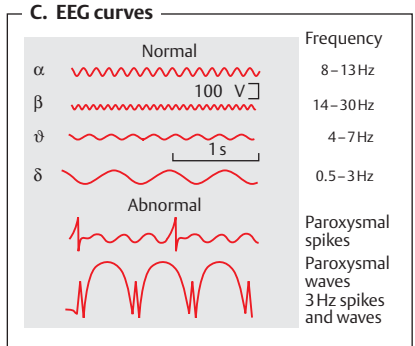
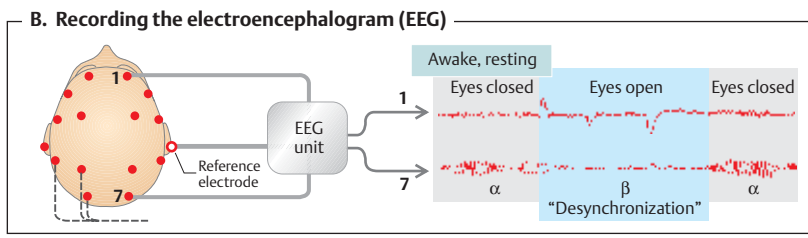
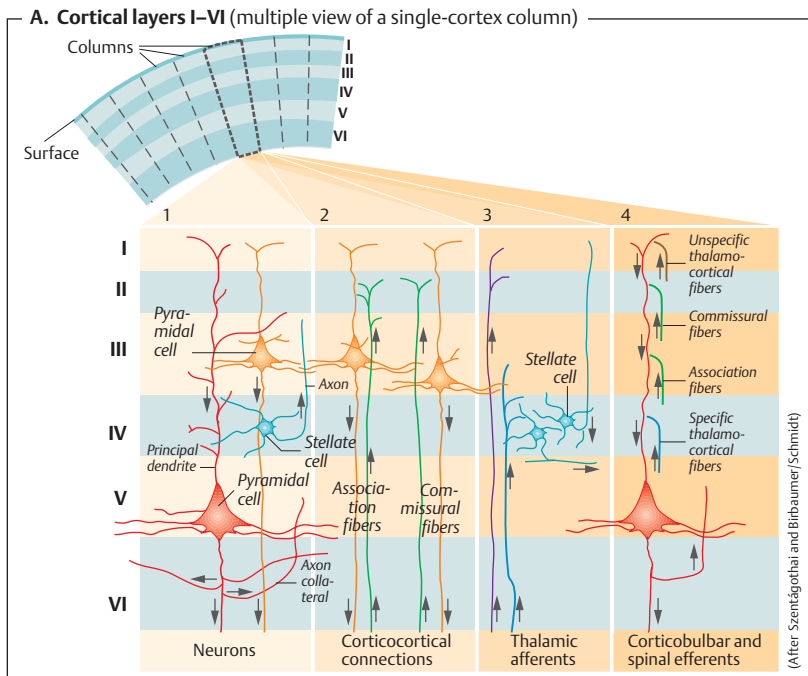
dendrites is small. Only a portion of the rhythms recorded in the EEG are produced directly in the cortex ( $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  waves in conscious perception; see below). Lower frequency waves from other parts of the brain, e.g.  $\alpha$  waves from the thalamus and  $\theta$  waves from the hippocampus, are “forced on” the cortex (*brain wave entrainment*).

By convention, downward **deflections of the EEG** are positive. Generally speaking, depolarization (excitation) of deeper layers of the cortex and hyperpolarization of superficial layers cause downward deflection (+) and vice versa.

**Brain wave types.** The electrical activity level of the cortex is mainly determined by the degree of *wakefulness* and can be distinguished based on the amplitude (a) and frequency (f) of the waves (→ B, C).  **$\alpha$  Waves** ( $f \approx 10$  Hz;  $a \approx 50 \mu\text{V}$ ), which predominate when an adult subject is awake and relaxed (with eyes closed), are generally detected in multiple electrodes (*synchronized activity*). When the eyes are opened, other sensory organs are stimulated, or the subject solves a math problem, the  $\alpha$  waves subside ( $\alpha$  blockade) and  **$\beta$  waves** appear ( $f \approx 20$  Hz). The amplitude of  $\beta$  waves is lower than that of  $\alpha$  waves, and they are chiefly found in occipital (→ B) and parietal regions when they eyes are opened. The frequency and amplitude of  $\beta$  waves varies greatly in the different leads (*desynchronization*).  $\beta$  Waves reflect the increased attention and activity (arousal activity) of the *ascending reticular activating system* (ARAS; → p. 322).  **$\gamma$  Waves** ( $> 30$  Hz) appear during learning activity. Low-frequency  **$\theta$  waves** appear when drowsiness descends to sleep (sleep stages A/B/C; → D); they transform into even slower  **$\delta$  waves** during deep sleep (→ C, D).

The EEG is used to diagnose epilepsy (localized or generalized paroxysmal waves and spikes; → C), to assess the degree of brain maturation, monitor anesthesia, and to determine brain death (*isoelectric EEG*).

**Magnetoencephalography (MEG)**, i.e. recording magnetic signals induced by cortical ion currents, can be combined with the EEG to precisely locate the site of cortical activity (resolution a few mm).



## Sleep–Wake Cycle, Circadian Rhythms

Various **stages of sleep** can be identified in the EEG (→ p. 333 D). When a normal person who is awake, relaxed and has the eyes closed ( $\alpha$  waves) starts to fall asleep, the level of consciousness first descends to *sleep phase A* (dozing), where only a few isolated  $\alpha$  waves can be detected. Drowsiness further descends to *sleep stage B* (stage 1), where  $\theta$  waves appear, then to *stage C* (stage 2), where burst of fast waves (sleep spindles) and isolated waves (K complexes) can be recorded, and ultimately to the stages of *deep sleep* (stages D/E = stages 3/4), characterized by the appearance of  $\delta$  waves. Their amplitude increases while their frequency drops to a minimum in phase E (→ p. 333 D). This phase is therefore referred to as *slow-wave sleep (SWS)*. The arousal threshold is highest about 1 hour after a person falls asleep. Sleep then becomes less deep and the first episode of *rapid eye movement (REM)* occurs. This completes the first *sleep cycle*. During REM sleep, most of the skeletal muscles become atonic (inhibition of motoneurons) while the breathing and heart rates increase. The face and fingers suddenly start to twitch, and penile erection and rapid eye movements occur. All other stages of sleep are collectively referred to as *non-REM sleep (NREM)*. Sleepers aroused from REM sleep are more often able to describe their dreams than when aroused from NREM sleep. The **sleep cycle** normally lasts about 90 min and is repeated 4–5 times each night (→ p. 333 D). Towards morning, NREM sleep becomes shorter and more even, while the REM episodes increase from ca. 10 min to over 30 min.

**Infants** sleep longest (about 16 hours/day, 50% REM), 10-year-olds sleep an average 10 hours (20% REM), young adults sleep 7–8 hours a day, and adults over 50 sleep an average 6 hours or so (both 20% REM). The proportion of SWS clearly decreases in favor of stage C (stage 2) sleep.

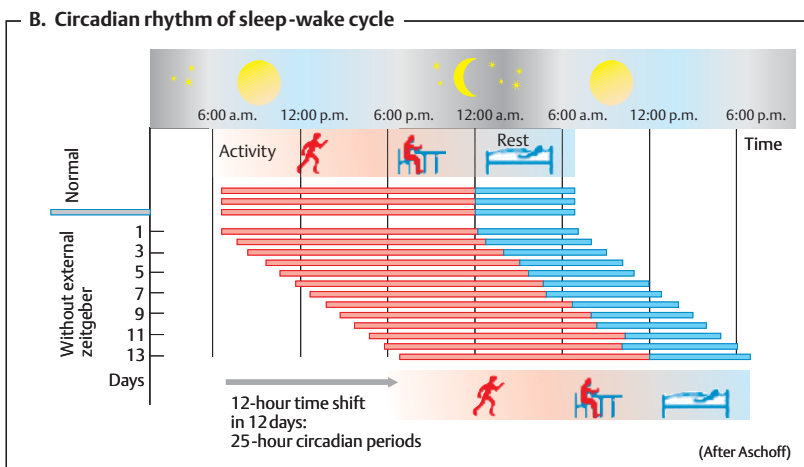
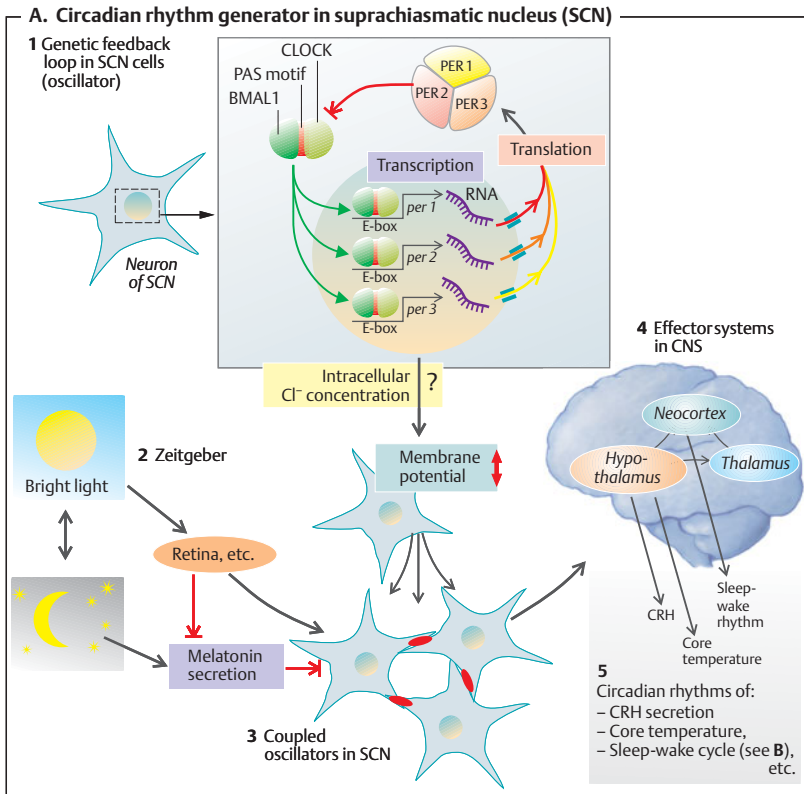
When a person is **deprived of REM sleep** (awakened during this phase), the duration of the next REM phase increases to compensate for the deficit. The first two to three sleep cycles (**core sleep**) are *essential*. Total **sleep deprivation** leads to death, but the reason is still unclear because too little is known about the physiological role of sleep.

The daily sleep–wake cycle and other **circadian rhythms** (diurnal rhythms) are controlled by *endogenous rhythm generators*. The *central biological clock (oscillator)* that times these processes is located in the *suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN)* of the hypothalamus (→ **A**). The endogenous circadian rhythm occurs in cycles of roughly 24–25 hours, but is unadulterated only when a person is completely isolated from the outside influences (e.g., in a windowless basement, dark cave, etc.). External *zeitgeber*s (entraining signals) synchronize the biological clock to precise 24-hour cycles. It takes several days to “reset” the biological clock, e.g., after a long journey from east to west (*jet lag*).

Important genetic “**cogwheels**” of the central biological clock of mammals were recently discovered (→ **A1**). Neurons of the SCN contain specific proteins (CLOCK and BMAL1), the PAS domains of which bind to form heterodimers. The resulting CLOCK/BMAL1 complexes enter the cell nuclei, where their promoter sequences (E-box) bind to period (*per*) oscillator genes *per1*, *per2*, and *per3*, thereby activating their transcription. After a latency period, expression of the genes yields the proteins PER1, PER2, and PER3, which jointly function as a trimer to block the effect of CLOCK/BMAL1, thereby completing the negative feedback loop. The mechanism by which this cycle activates subsequent neuronal actions (membrane potentials) is still unclear.

The main **external zeitgeber** for 24-hour synchronization of the sleep–wake cycle is *bright light* (photic entrainment). Light stimuli are directly sensed by a small, *melanopsin*-containing fraction of retinal ganglion cells and conducted to the SCN via the retinohypothalamic tract (→ **A2,3**). The coupled cells of the SCN (→ **A3**) bring about circadian rhythms of hormone secretion, core temperature, and sleep–wake cycles (→ **A5, B**) by various effector systems of the CNS (→ **A4**).

The *zeitgeber* slows or accelerates the rhythm, depending on which phase it is in. Signals from the *zeitgeber* also reaches the **epiphysis** (pineal body, pineal gland) where it inhibits the secretion of **melatonin** which is high at night. Since it exerts its effects mainly on the SCN, administration of melatonin before retiring at night can greatly reduce the time required to “reset” the biological clock. The main reason is that it temporarily “deactivates” the SCN (via MT<sub>2</sub> receptors), thereby excluding most nocturnal neuronal input (except light stimuli).



## Consciousness, Memory, Language

**Consciousness.** Selective attention, abstract thinking, the ability to verbalize experiences, the capacity to plan activities based on experience, self-awareness and the concept of values are some of the many characteristics of *consciousness*. Consciousness enables us to deal with difficult environmental conditions (adaptation). Little is known about the brain activity associated with consciousness and controlled attention (LCCS, see below), but we do know that subcortical activation systems such as the reticular formation ( $\rightarrow$  p. 322) and corticostriatal systems that inhibit the afferent signals to the cortex in the thalamus ( $\rightarrow$  p. 326) play an important role.

**Attention.** Sensory stimuli arriving in the *sensory memory* are evaluated and compared to the contents of the long-term memory within fractions of a second ( $\rightarrow$  A). In routine situations such as driving in traffic, these stimuli are unconsciously processed (*automated attention*) and do not interfere with other reaction sequences such as conversation with a passenger. Our *conscious, selective (controlled) attention* is stimulated by novel or ambiguous stimuli, the reaction to which (e.g., the setting of priorities) is controlled by vast parts of the brain called the *limited capacity control system* (LCCS). Since our capacity for selective attention is limited, it normally is utilized only in stress situations.

The **implicit memory** (procedural memory) stores skill-related information and information necessary for associative learning (conditioning of conditional reflexes;  $\rightarrow$  p. 236) and non-associative learning (habituation and sensitization of reflex pathways). This type of unconscious memory involves the basal ganglia, cerebellum, motor cortex, amygdaloid body (emotional reactions) and other structures of the brain.

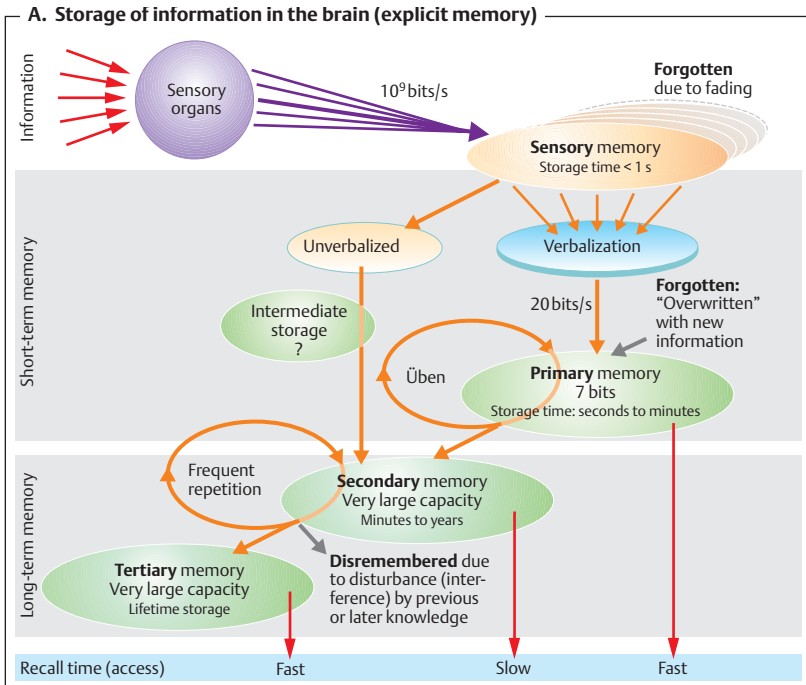
The **explicit memory** (declarative/knowledge memory) stores facts (semantic knowledge) and experiences (episodic knowledge, especially when experienced by selective attention) and *consciously* renders the data. Storage of information processed in the uni- and polymodal association fields is the responsibility of the temporal lobe system (hip-

pocampus, perirhinal, entorhinal and parahippocampal cortex, etc.). It establishes the temporal and spatial *context* surrounding an experience and recurrently stores the information back into the *spines* of cortical dendrites in the association areas ( $\rightarrow$  p. 322). The recurrence of a portion of the experience then suffices to recall the contents of the memory.

**Explicit learning** ( $\rightarrow$  A) starts in the *sensory memory*, which holds the sensory impression automatically for less than 1 s. A small fraction of the information reaches the *primary memory (short-term memory)*, which can retain about 7 units of information (e.g., groups of numbers) for a few seconds. In most cases, the information is also verbalized. *Long-term storage* of information in the *secondary memory (long-term memory)* is achieved by repetition (*consolidation*). The *tertiary memory* is the place where frequently repeated impressions are stored (e.g., reading, writing, one's own name); these things are never forgotten, and can be quickly recalled throughout one's lifetime. *Impulses circulating* in neuronal tracts are presumed to be the physiological correlate for short-term (primary) memory, whereas *biochemical mechanisms* are mainly responsible for long-term memory. Learning leads to long-term genomic changes. In addition, frequently repeated stimulation can lead to *long-term potentiation (LTP)* of synaptic connections that lasts for several hours to several days. The spines of dendrites in the cortex play an important role in LTP.

**Mechanisms for LTP.** Once receptors for AMPA ( $\alpha$ -amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazolepropionic acid) are activated by the presynaptic release of glutamate ( $\rightarrow$  p. 55 F), influxing  $\text{Na}^+$  depolarizes the postsynaptic membrane. Receptors for NMDA (N-methyl-D-aspartic acid) are also activated, but the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels of the NMDA receptors are blocked by  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ , thereby inhibiting the influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  until the  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  block is relieved by depolarization. The cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  then rises. If this is repeated often enough, calmodulin mediates the autophosphorylation of CaM kinase II ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36), which persists even after the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  falls back to normal. CaM kinase II phosphorylates AMPA receptors (increases their conductivity) and promotes their insertion into the postsynaptic membrane, thereby enhancing synaptic transmission over longer periods of time (LTP).





**Amnesia (memory loss).** *Retrograde amnesia* (loss of memories of past events) is characterized by the loss of primary memory and (temporary) difficulty in recalling information from the secondary memory due to various causes (concussion, electroshock, etc.). *Anterograde amnesia* (inability to form new memories) is characterized by the inability to transfer new information from the primary memory to the secondary memory (*Korsakoff's syndrome*).

**Language** is a mode of *communication* used (1) to receive information through visual and aural channels (and through tactile channels in the blind) and (2) to transmit information in written and spoken form (see also p. 370). Language is also needed to form and verbalize *concepts and strategies* based on consciously processed sensory input. Memories can therefore be stored efficiently. The centers for formation and processing of concepts and language are unevenly distributed in the cerebral hemispheres. The left hemisphere is usually

the main center of speech in right-handed individuals ("*dominant*" hemisphere, large planum temporale), whereas the right hemisphere is dominant in 30–40% of all left-handers. The *non-dominant hemisphere* is important for word recognition, sentence melody, and numerous nonverbal capacities (e.g., music, spatial thinking, face recognition).

This can be illustrated using the example of patients in whom the two hemispheres are surgically disconnected due to conditions such as otherwise untreatable, severe epilepsy. If such a **split-brain patient** touches an object with the right hand (reported to the left hemisphere), he can name the object. If, however, he touches the object with the left hand (right hemisphere), he cannot name the object but can point to a picture of it. Since complete separation of the two hemispheres also causes many other severe disturbances, this type of surgery is used only in patients with otherwise unmanageable, extremely severe seizures.

## Glia

The central nervous system contains around  $10^{11}$  nerve cells and 10 times as many **glia cells** such as *oligodendrocytes*, *astrocytes*, *ependymal cells*, and *microglia* ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). **Oligodendrocytes** (ODC) form the myelin sheath that surrounds axons of the CNS ( $\rightarrow$  **A**).

**Astrocytes** (AC) are responsible for **extracellular  $K^+$  and  $H^+$  homeostasis** in the CNS. Neurons release  $K^+$  in response to high-frequency stimulation ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). Astrocytes prevent an increase in the interstitial  $K^+$  concentration and thus an undesirable depolarization of neurons (see Nernst equation, Eq. 1.18, p. 32) by taking up  $K^+$ , and intervene in a similar manner with  $H^+$  ions. Since AC are connected by *gap junctions* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 16ff.), they can transfer their  $K^+$  or  $H^+$  load to nearby AC ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). In addition to forming a *barrier* that prevents transmitters from one synapse from being absorbed by another, AC also *take transmitters up*, e.g. glutamate (Glu). Intracellular Glu is converted to glutamine (GluNH<sub>2</sub>), then transported out of the cell and taken up by the nerve cells, which convert it back to Glu (**transmitter recycling**;  $\rightarrow$  **B**).

Some AC have **receptors for transmitters** such as Glu, which triggers a  $Ca^{2+}$  wave from one AC to another. Astrocytes are also able to modify the  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration in the neuronal cytosol so that the two cell types can "communicate" with each other. AC also mediate the transport of materials between capillaries and neurons and play an important part in *energy homeostasis* of the neurons by mediating glycolysis and breakdown.

During **embryonal development**, the long processes of AC serve as *guiding structures* that help undifferentiated nerve cells migrate to their target areas. Glia cells also play an important role in CNS development by helping to control gene expression in nerve cell clusters with or without the aid of **growth factors** such as NGF (nerve growth factor), BDNF (brain-derived growth factor), and GDNF (glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor). GDNF also serves as a trophic factor for all mature neurons. Cell division of glia cells can lead to in scarring (*epileptic foci*) and tumor formation (*glioma*).

Immunocompetent **microglia** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) assume many functions of macrophages outside the CNS when CNS injuries or infections occur ( $\rightarrow$  p. 94ff.). **Ependymal cells** line internal hollow cavities of the CNS ( $\rightarrow$  **A**).

## Sense of Taste

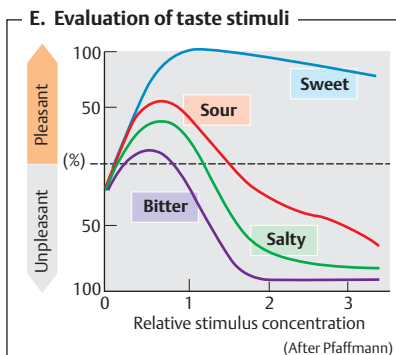
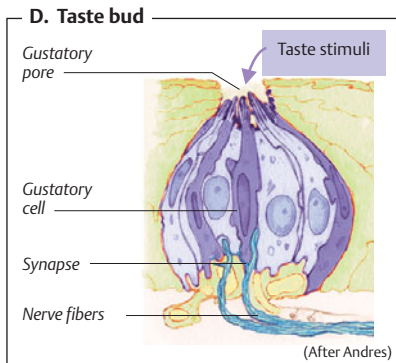
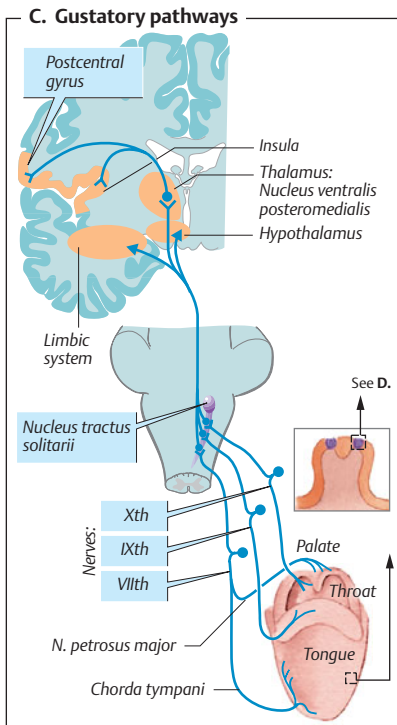
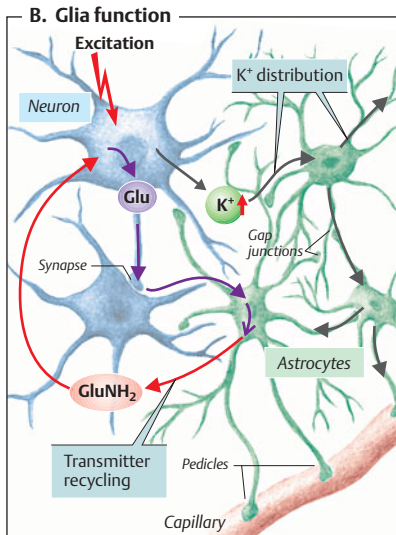
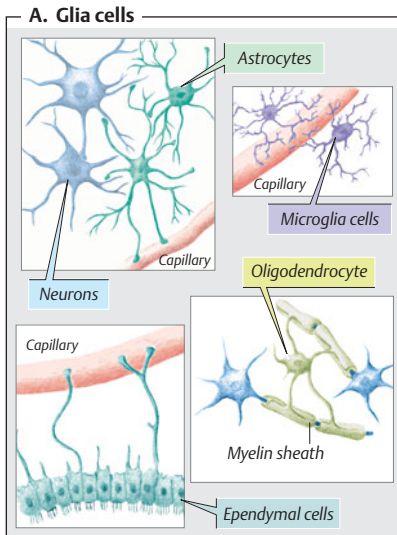
**Gustatory pathways.** The *taste buds* ( $\rightarrow$  **D**) consist of clusters of 50–100 *secondary sensory cells* on the tongue (renewed in 2-week cycles); humans have around 5000 taste buds. Sensory stimuli from the taste buds are conducted to endings of the VIIth, IXth and Xth cranial nerves, relayed by the *nucleus tractus solitarii*, and converge at a high frequency on (a) the postcentral gyrus via the thalamus ( $\rightarrow$  p. 323 B, "tongue") and (b) the hypothalamus and limbic system via the pons ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).

The **qualities of taste** distinguishable in humans are conventionally defined as *sweet*, *sour*, *salty*, and *bitter*. The specific taste sensor cells for these qualities are distributed over the whole tongue but differ with respect to their densities. *Umami*, the sensation caused by monosodium-L-glutamate (MSG), is now classified as a fifth quality of taste. MSG is chiefly found in protein-rich foods.

**Taste sensor cells** distinguish the types of taste as follows: **Salty**: Cations ( $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ , etc.) taste salty, but the presence of anions also plays a role. E.g.,  $Na^+$  enters the taste sensor cell via  $Na^+$  channels and depolarizes the cell. **Sour**:  $H^+$  ions lead to a more frequent closure of  $K^+$  channels, which also has a depolarizing effect. **Bitter**: A family of > 50 genes codes for an battery of bitter sensors. A number of sensory proteins specific for a particular substance are expressed in a single taste sensor cell, making it sensitive to different bitter tastes. The sensory input is relayed by the G-protein  $\alpha$ -*gustducin*. No nuances but only the overall warning signal "bitter" is perceived. **Umami**: Certain taste sensor contain a metabotropic glutamate receptor, mGluR4, the stimulation of which leads to a drop in cAMP conc.

**Taste thresholds.** The threshold (mol/L) for recognition of taste stimuli applied to the tongue is roughly  $10^{-5}$  for quinine sulfate and saccharin,  $10^{-3}$  for HCl, and  $10^{-2}$  for sucrose and NaCl. The relative *intensity differential threshold*  $\Delta I/I$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 352) is about 0.20. The concentration of the gustatory stimulus determines whether its taste will be perceived as pleasant or unpleasant ( $\rightarrow$  **E**). For the *adaptation* of the sense of taste, see p. 341 C.

**Function of taste.** The sense of taste has a protective function as spoiled or bitter-tasting food (low taste threshold) is often poisonous. Tasting substances also stimulate the secretion of saliva and gastric juices ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 236, 242).



## Sense of Smell

The neuroepithelium of the *olfactory region* contains ca.  $10^7$  **primary olfactory sensor cells** ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**) which are bipolar neurons. Their dendrites branch to form 5–20 mucus-covered cilia, whereas the axons extend centrally in bundles called *fila olfactoria* ( $\rightarrow$  **A1,2**). Olfactory neurons are replenished by basal cell division in 30–60-day cycles. *Free nerve endings* (trigeminal nerve) in the nasal mucosa also react to certain aggressive odors (e.g., acid or ammonia vapors).

**Olfactory sensors.** Odorant molecules ( $M_r$  15–300) are transported by the inhaled air to the olfactory region, where they first dissolve in the mucous lining before combining with **receptor proteins** in the *cilial membrane*. These are coded by a huge family of genes (500–750 genes distributed in most chromosomes), whereby probably one olfactory sensor cell only expresses one of these genes. Since only a part of the sequence of about 40% of these genes is expressed, humans have roughly 200–400 different **sensor cell types**. Olfactory receptors couple with  $G_s$ -proteins ( $G_{olf}$  proteins;  $\rightarrow$  **B** and p. 274ff.) that increase the conductivity of the sensor cell membrane to cations, thereby increasing the influx of  $Na^+$  and  $Ca^{2+}$  and thus depolarizing the cell.

**Sensor specificity** ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**). Olfactory sensor cells recognize a very specific structural feature of the odorant molecules they are sensitive to. The cloned receptor 17 of the rat, for example, reacts with the aldehyde *n*-octanal but not to octanol, octanoic acid, or aldehydes which have two methyl groups more or less than *n*-octanal. In the case of aromatic compounds, one sensor recognizes whether the compound is *ortho*, *meta* or *para*-substituted, while another detects the length of the substituent regardless of where it is located on the ring. The different molecular moieties of an odorant molecule therefore activate different types of sensors ( $\rightarrow$  **A3**, top right). Jasmine leaves and wine contain several dozens and hundreds of odorants, respectively, so their overall scent is a more complex perception (integrated in the rhinencephalon).

**Olfactory pathway** ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). Axons of (ca.  $10^3$ ) same-type sensors distributed over the olfactory epithelium synapse to dendrites of their respective *mitral cells* (MC) and *bristle cells* (BC) within the glomeruli olfactorii of the

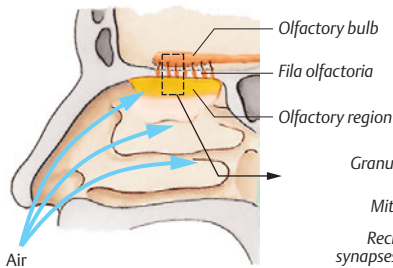
olfactory bulb. The glomeruli therefore function as convergence centers that integrate and relay signals from the same sensor type. Their respective sensor protein also determines which glomerulus newly formed sensor axons will connect to. *Periglomerular cells* and *granular cells* connect and inhibit mitral and bristle cells ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**). Mitral cells act on the same *reciprocal synapses* ( $\rightarrow$  **A**, “+/-”) in reverse direction to activate the periglomerular cells and granular cells which, on the other hand, are inhibited by efferents from the primary olfactory cortex and contralateral anterior olfactory nucleus ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, violet tracts). These connections enable the cells to inhibit themselves or nearby cells (contrast), or they can be disinhibited by higher centers. The signals of the *axons of mitral cells* (1) reach the anterior olfactory nucleus. Its neurons cross over (in the anterior commissure) to the mitral cells of the contralateral bulb and (2) form the *olfactory tract* projecting to the *primary olfactory cortex* (piriform cortex, tuberculum olfactorium, nucleus corticalis amygdalae). The olfactory input processed there is relayed to the hypothalamus, limbic system (see also p. 330), and reticular formation; it is also relayed to the neocortex (*insula*, *orbitofrontal area*) either directly or by way of the thalamus.

**Thresholds.** It takes only  $4 \times 10^{-15}$  g of methylmercaptan (in garlic) per liter of air to trigger the vague sensation of smell (*perception* or *absolute threshold*). The odor can be properly identified when  $2 \times 10^{-13}$  g/L is present (*identification threshold*). Such thresholds are affected by air temperature and humidity; those for other substances can be  $10^{10}$  times higher. The relative intensity differential threshold  $\Delta I/I$  (0.25) is relatively high ( $\rightarrow$  p. 352). *Adaptation* to smell is sensor-dependent (desensitization) and neuronal ( $\rightarrow$  **C**).

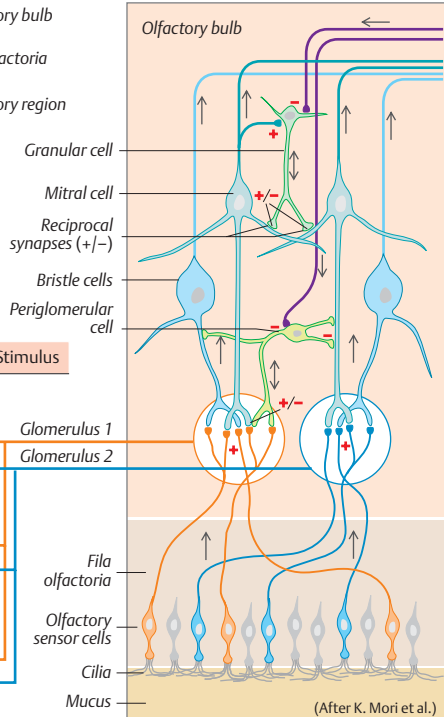
The sense of smell has various **functions**. Pleasant smells trigger the secretion of saliva and gastric juices, whereas unpleasant smells warn of potentially spoiled food. Body odor permits hygiene control (sweat, excrement), conveys social information (e.g., family, enemy;  $\rightarrow$  p. 330), and influences sexual behavior. Other aromas influence the emotional state.

**A. Olfactory pathway and olfactory sensor specificity**

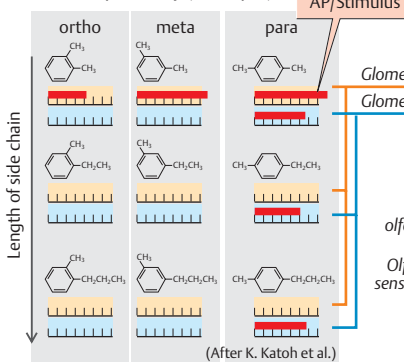
**1 Nasal cavity**



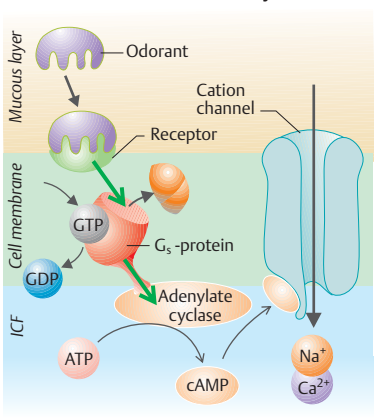
**2 Olfactory pathway**



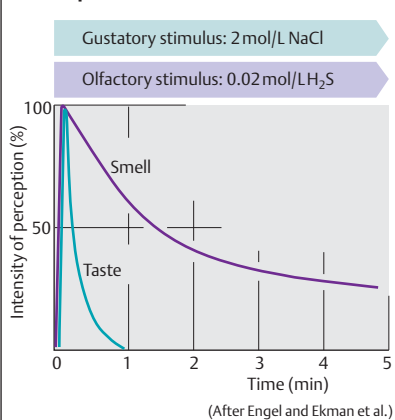
**3 Sensor specificity (example)**



**B. Transduction of olfactory stimuli**



**C. Adaptation of smell and taste**



## Sense of Balance

**Anatomy.** Each of the three **semicircular canals** (→ **A1**) is located in a plane about at right angles to the others. The ampulla of each canal contains a ridge-like structure called the *crista ampullaris* (→ **A2**). It contains *hair cells* (secondary sensory cells), the *cilia* of which (→ **A3**) project into a gelatinous membrane called the *cupula* (→ **A2**). Each hair cell has a long *kinocilium* and ca. 80 *stereocilia* of variable length. Their tips are connected to longer adjacent cilia via the "tip links" (→ **A3**).

**Semicircular canals.** When the cilia are in a resting state, the hair cells release a transmitter (glutamate) that triggers the firing of action potentials (AP) in the nerve fibers of the vestibular ganglion. When the head is turned, the semicircular canal automatically moves with it, but *endolymph* in the canal moves more sluggishly due to inertia. A brief *pressure difference* thus develops between the two sides of the cupula. The resultant vaulting of the cupula causes the stereocilia to bend (→ **A2**) and shear against each other, thereby changing the cation conductance of the hair cell membrane. Bending of the stereocilia towards the kinocilium increases conductivity and allows the influx of  $K^+$  and  $Na^+$  along a high electrochemical gradient between the endolymph and hair cell interior (see also pp.366 and 369C). Thus, the hair cell becomes depolarized,  $Ca^{2+}$  channels open, more glutamate is released, and the AP frequency increases. The reverse occurs when the cilia bend in the other direction (away from the kinocilium). The semicircular canals **function** to detect *angular (rotational) accelerations* of the head in all planes (rotation, nodding, tilting sideways). Since normal head movements take less than 0.3 s (acceleration ⇒ deceleration), stimulation of the semicircular canals usually reflects the rotational *velocity*.

The pressure difference across the cupula disappears when the **body rotates for longer periods** of time. Deceleration of the rotation causes a pressure gradient in the opposite direction. When bending of the cilia increased the AP frequency at the start of rotation, it decreases during deceleration and vice versa. Abrupt cessation of the rotation leads to **vertigo** and **nystagmus** (see below).

The **saccul**e and **utricle** contain **maculae** (→ **A1, A4**) with cilia that project into a gelatinous

membrane (→ **A4**) with high density ( $\approx 3.0$ ) calcite crystals called *statoconia*, *statoliths* or *otoliths*. They displace the membrane and thereby bend the embedded cilia (→ **A4**) due to changes of the direction of *gravity*, e.g. when the head position deviates from the perpendicular axis. The maculae respond also to other *linear (translational) accelerations or decelerations*, e.g. of a car or an elevator.

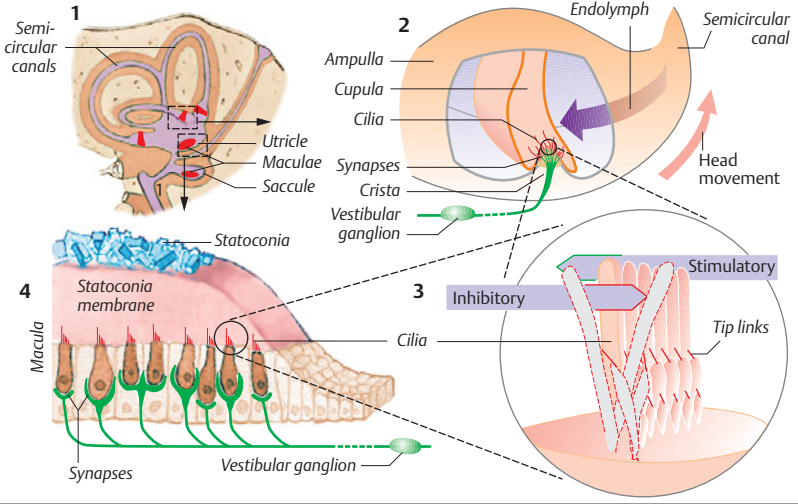
**Central connections.** The bipolar neurons of the vestibular ganglion synapse with the *vestibular nuclei* (→ **A, B**). Important tracts extend from there to the contralateral side and to *ocular muscle nuclei*, *cerebellum* (→ p.326), *motoneurons* of the skeletal muscles, and to the *postcentral gyrus* (conscious spatial orientation). **Vestibular reflexes** (a) maintain the balance of the body (*postural motor function*, → p. 328) and (b) keep the visual field in focus despite changes in head and body position (*oculomotor control*, → **B** and p.360).

*Example* (→ **C**): If a support holding a test subject is tilted, the activated vestibular organ prompts the subject to extend the arm and thigh on the declining side and to bend the arm on the inclining side to maintain balance (→ **C2**). The patient with an impaired equilibrium organ fails to respond appropriately and topples over (→ **C3**).

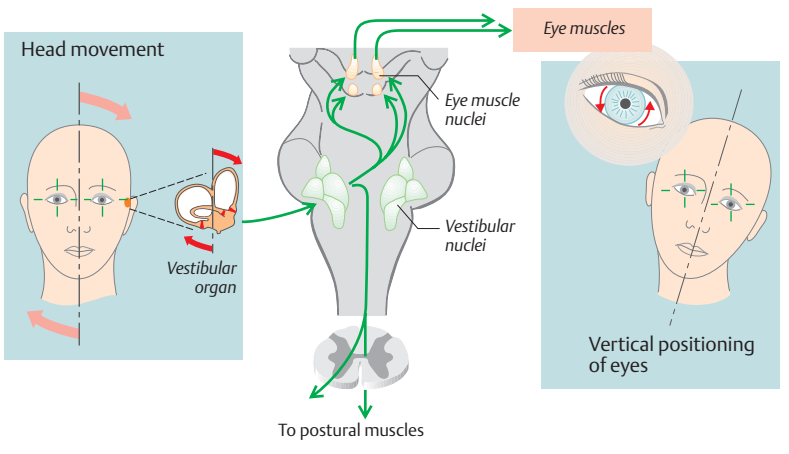
Since the vestibular organ cannot determine whether the head alone or the entire body moves (*sense of movement*) or changed position (*postural sense*), the vestibular nuclei must also receive and process visual information and that from proprioceptors in the neck muscles. Efferent fibers project bilaterally to the eye muscle nuclei, and any change in head position is immediately corrected by opposing *eye movement* (→ **B**). This *vestibulo-ocular reflex* maintains **spatial orientation**.

Vestibular organ function can be assessed by testing oculomotor control. *Secondary* or *postrotatory nystagmus* occurs after abrupt cessation of prolonged rotation of the head around the vertical axis (e.g., in an office chair) due to activation of the horizontal semicircular canals. It is characterized by slow horizontal movement of the eyes in the direction of rotation and rapid return movement. Rightward rotation leads to left nystagmus and vice versa (→ p. 360). Caloric stimulation of the horizontal semicircular canal by instilling cold (30 °C) or warm water (44 °C) in the auditory canal leads to *caloric nystagmus*. This method can be used for unilateral testing.

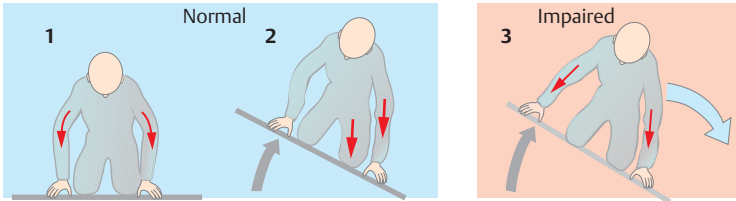
**A. Equilibrium organ (vestibular organ)**



**B. Vestibular organ: effects on oculomotor control**



**C. Vestibular organ: effects on postural motor control**



(After Kornhuber)



## Eye Structure, Tear Fluid, Aqueous Humor

Light entering the eye must pass through the *cornea*, *aqueous humor*, *lens* and *vitreous body*, which are collectively called the **optical apparatus**, before reaching the *retina* and its light-sensitive photosensors (→ **A**). This produces a *reduced and inverse image* of the visual field on the retina. All parts of the apparatus must be transparent and have a stable shape and smooth surface to produce an undistorted image, which is the main purpose of **tear fluid** in case of the cornea. Tears are secreted by *lacrimal glands* located in the top outer portion of orbit and their mode of production is similar to that of saliva (→ p. 236). Tears are distributed by reflex blinking and then pass through the lacrimal puncta and lacrimal canaliculi (or ducts) of the upper and lower eyelid into the lacrimal sac and finally drain into the nasal sinuses by way of the nasolacrimal duct. Tear fluid improves the optical characteristics of the cornea by smoothing uneven surfaces, washing away dust, protecting it from caustic vapors and chemicals, and protects it from drying out. Tears lubricate the eyelid movement and contain lysozyme and immunoglobulin A (→ pp. 96ff. and 232), which help ward off infections. In addition, tears are a well known mode of expressing emotions.

The entry of light into the eye is regulated by the **iris** (→ **A**; p. 353 C1), which contains annular and radial smooth muscle fibers. Cholinergic activation of the sphincter muscle of pupil leads to pupil contraction (*miosis*), and adrenergic activation of the dilator muscle of pupil results in pupil dilatation (*mydriasis*).

The **bulbus** (eyeball) maintains its shape due to its tough outer coat or **sclera** (→ **C**) and **intraocular pressure** which is normally 10–21 mmHg above the atmospheric pressure. The drainage of **aqueous humor** must balance its production to maintain a constant ocular pressure (→ **C**). Aqueous humor is produced in the *ciliary process* of the posterior ocular chamber with the aid of carbonic anhydrase and active ion transport. It flows through the pupil into the anterior ocular chamber and drains into the venous system by way of the trabecu-

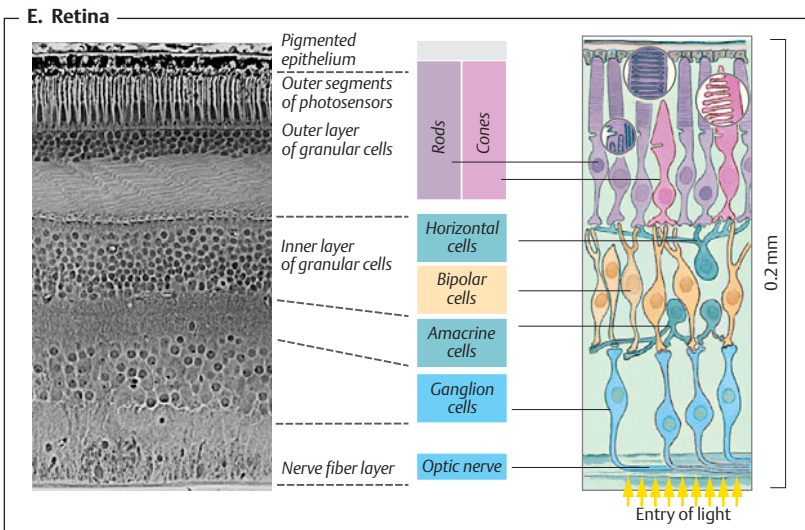
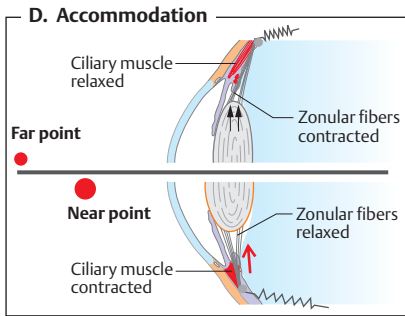
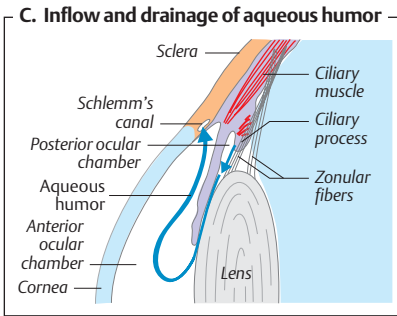
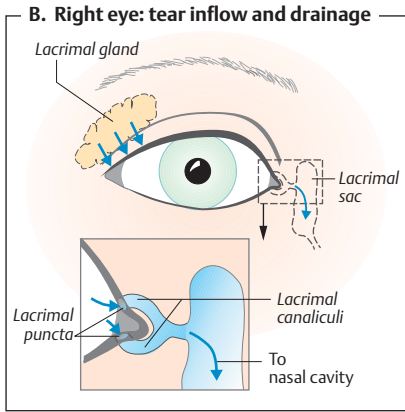
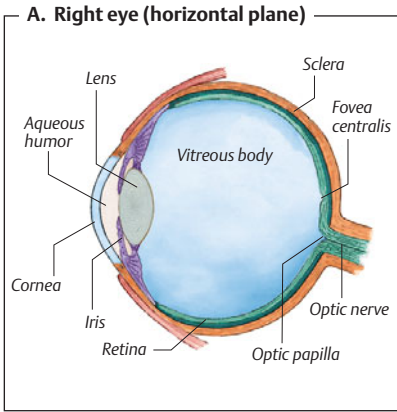
lar meshwork and Schlemm's canal. Aqueous humor is renewed once every hour or so.

**Glaucoma.** Obstruction of humor drainage can occur due to chronic obliteration of the trabecular meshwork (open-angle glaucoma) or due to acute block of the anterior angle (angle-closure glaucoma) leading to elevated intraocular pressure, pain, retinal damage, and blindness. Drugs that decrease humor production (e.g. carbonic anhydrase inhibitors) and induce meiosis are used to treat glaucoma.

The **lens** is held in place by the *ciliary zonules* (→ **C**). When the eye adjusts for *far vision*, the zonules are stretched and the lens becomes flatter, especially its anterior surface (→ **D**, top). When looking at nearby objects (*near vision*), the zonules are relaxed due to contraction of the ciliary muscle, and the lens resumes its original shape due to its elasticity (→ **D**, bottom, and p. 346).

The **retina** lines the interior surface of the bulbus except the anterior surface and the site where the *optical nerve* (→ **A**) exits the bulbus via the *optic papilla* (→ **A**). The *fovea centralis* (→ **A**) forms a slight depression across from the pupillary opening. The retina consists of several layers, named from inside out as follows (→ **E**): pigmented epithelium, photosensors (rods and cones), Cajal's horizontal cells, bipolar cells, amacrine cells, and ganglion cells. The central processes of the ganglion cells ( $n \approx 10^6$ ) exit the bulbus as the optical nerve (retinal circuitry; → p. 355ff.).

**Photosensors.** Retinal rods and cones have a light-sensitive *outer segment*, which is connected to an inner segment by a thin connecting part (→ p. 349 C1). The inner segment contains the normal cell organelles and establishes synaptic contact with the neighboring cells. The outer segment of the rod cells contains ca. 800 membranous disks, and the plasma membrane of the outer segment of the cones is folded. *Visual pigments* are stored in these disks and folds (→ p. 348). The outer segment is continuously regenerated; the old membranous disks at the tip of the cell are shed and replaced by new disks from the inner segment. The phagocytic cells of the pigmented epithelium engulf the disks shed by the rods in the morning, and those shed by the cones in the evening. Some ganglion cells contain a light-sensitive pigment (→ p. 334).



## Optical Apparatus of the Eye

**Physics.** The production of an **optical image** is based on the refraction of light rays crossing a spherical interface between air and another medium. Such a **simple optical system** illustrated in plate **A** has an *anterior focal point* ( $F_a$ ) in air, a *posterior focal point* ( $F_p$ ), a *principal point* (P), and a *nodal point* (N). Light rays from a distant point ( $\infty$ ) can be regarded as parallel. If they enter the system parallel to its *optical axis*, they will converge at  $F_p$  ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**, red dot). If they enter at an angle to the axis, then they will form an image beside  $F_p$  but in the same *focal plane* ( $\rightarrow$  **A1**, violet dot). Light rays from a nearby point do not enter the system in parallel and form an image *behind* the focal plane ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**, green and brown dots).

The **optical apparatus** of the eye ( $\rightarrow$  p. 344) consists of multiple interfaces and media, and is therefore a **complex optical system**. It can, however, be treated as a **simple optical system**. Light rays from a focused object (O) pass through N and diverge at angle  $\alpha$  until they reach the retina and form an image (I) there ( $\rightarrow$  **A2**).

Two points separated by a distance of 1.5 mm and located 5 m away from the eye ( $\tan \alpha = 1.5/5000$ ;  $\alpha = 0.0175$  degrees  $\approx 1'$ ) will therefore be brought into focus 5  $\mu$ m apart on the retina. In a person with normal vision ( $\rightarrow$  p. 348), these two points can be distinguished as separate because 5  $\mu$ m corresponds to the diameter of three cones in the fovea (two are stimulated, the one in between is not).

**Accommodation.** When the eyes are adjusted for **far vision**, parallel light rays from a distant point meet at  $F_p$  ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**, red dot). Since the retina is also located at  $F_p$ , the distant point is clearly imaged there. The eye adjusted for far vision will not form a clear image of a nearby point (the light rays meet behind the retina,  $\rightarrow$  **B1**, green dot) until the eye has adjusted for **near vision**. In other words, the curvature of the lens (and its refractive power) increases and the image of the nearby point moves to the retinal plane ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**, green dot). Now, the distant point cannot not be sharply imaged since  $F_p$  does not lie in the retinal plane any more ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**).

The **refractive power** around the edge of the optical apparatus is higher than near the optical axis. This **spherical aberration** can be minimized by narrowing the pupils. The refractive power of the eye is the reciprocal of the ante-

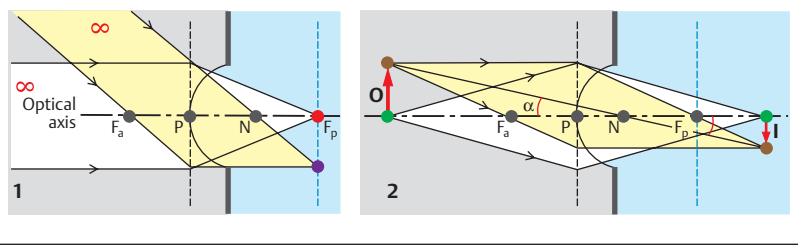
rior *focal length* in meters, and is measured in **diopters (dpt)**. In *accommodation for far vision*, focal length = anterior focal point ( $F_a$ )—principal point (P) = 0.017 m ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**). Thus, the corresponding refractive power is  $1/0.017 = 58.8$  dpt, which is mainly attributable to refraction at the air–cornea interface (43 dpt). In maximum *accommodation for near vision* in a young person with normal vision (emmetropia), the refractive power increases by around 10–14 dpt. This increase is called **range of accommodation** and is calculated as  $1/\text{near point} - 1/\text{far point}$  [ $\text{m}^{-1} = \text{dpt}$ ]. The **near point** is the closest distance to which the eye can accommodate; that of a young person with normal vision is 0.07–0.1 m. The **far point** is infinity ( $\infty$ ) in subjects with normal vision. The range of accommodation to a near point of 0.1 m is therefore 10 dpt since  $1/\infty = 0$ . It decreases as we grow older (to 1–3.5 dpt in 50-year-olds) due to the loss of elasticity of the lens. This visual impairment of aging, called **presbyopia** ( $\rightarrow$  **C1–3**), normally does not affect far vision, but convex lenses are generally required for near vision, e.g., reading.

**Cataract** causes opacity of the lens of one or both eyes. When surgically treated, convex lenses (glasses or artificial intraocular lenses) of at least +15 dpt must be used to correct the vision.

In **myopia** (near-sightedness), rays of light entering the eye parallel to the optical axis are brought to focus in front of the retina because the eyeball is too long ( $\rightarrow$  **C4**). Distant objects are therefore seen as blurred because the far point is displaced towards the eyes ( $\rightarrow$  **C5**). Myopia is corrected by *concave lenses* (negative dpt) that disperse the parallel light rays to the corresponding extent ( $\rightarrow$  **C6**). *Example:* When the far point = 0.5 m, a lens of  $[-1/0.5] = [-2$  dpt] will be required for correction ( $\rightarrow$  **C7**). In **hyperopia** (far-sightedness), on the other hand, the eyeball is too short. Since the accommodation mechanisms for near vision must then be already used to focus distant objects ( $\rightarrow$  **C8**), the range of accommodation no longer suffices to clearly focus nearby objects ( $\rightarrow$  **C9**). Hyperopia is corrected by *convex lenses* (+ dpt) ( $\rightarrow$  **C10–11**).

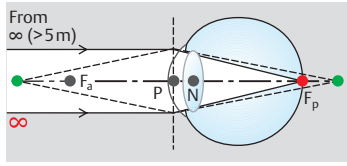
**Astigmatism.** In regular astigmatism, the corneal surface is more curved in one plane (usually the vertical: astigmatism with the rule) than the other, creating a difference in refraction between the two planes. A point source of light is therefore seen as a line or oval. Regular astigmatism is corrected by *cylindrical lenses*. Irregular astigmatism (caused by scars, etc.) can be corrected by contact lenses.

**A. Imaging of (1) far and (2) near points**

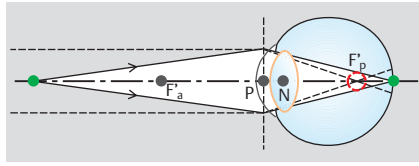


**B. Eye: Accommodation for (1) far vision and (2) near vision**

1 Lens adjusted for far vision



2 Lens adjusted for near vision



**C. Presbyopia, myopia and hyperopia**

	Distant object (at ∞)	Nearby object
Presbyopia	1 ∞ Does not require glasses	2 Nearby object ABC
	3 ∞ Does not require glasses	3 Nearby object ABC
Myopia	4 ∞ ABC	5 Nearby object ABC
	6 ∞ ABC	7 Nearby object ABC
Hyperopia	8 ∞ ABC	9 Nearby object ABC
	10 ∞ ABC	11 Nearby object ABC

## Visual Acuity, Photosensors

**Visual acuity** is an important measure of eye function. Under *well-lighted conditions*, the normal eye should be able to distinguish two points as separate when the light rays emitted by the point objects converge at an angle ( $\alpha$ ) of 1 min (1/60 degree) ( $\rightarrow$  **A** and p. 346). Visual acuity is calculated as  $1/\alpha$  (min $^{-1}$ ), and is 1/1 in subjects with normal vision.

**Visual acuity testing** is generally performed using charts with letters or other optotypes (e.g., Landolt rings) of various sizes used to simulate different distances to the test subject. The letters or rings are usually displayed at a distance of 5 m ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). Visual acuity is normal (1/1) if the patient recognizes letters or ring openings seen at an angle of 1 min from a distance of 5 m. *Example:* It should be possible to identify the direction of the opening of the middle ring from a distance of 5 m and that of the left ring from a distance of 8.5 m ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). If only the opening of the left ring can be localized from the test distance of 5 m, the visual acuity is  $5/8.5 = 0.59$ .

**Photosensors or photoreceptors.** The light-sensitive sensors of the eye consist of approximately  $6 \cdot 10^6$  **rods** and 20 times as many **cones** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 345 E) distributed at variable densities throughout the retina ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**). (Certain ganglion cells also contain a light-sensitive pigment;  $\rightarrow$  p. 334). The fovea centralis is exclusively filled with cones, and their density rapidly decreases towards the periphery. Rods predominate 20–30 degrees away from the fovea centralis. Approaching the periphery of the retina, the density of the rods decreases continuously from  $1.5 \times 10^5/\text{mm}^2$  (maximum) to about one-third this value. No photosensors are present on the *optic disk*, which is therefore referred to as the **blind spot** in the visual field.

Clear visualization of an object in daylight requires that the gaze be fixed on it, i.e., that an image of the object is produced in the *fovea centralis*. Sudden motion in the periphery of the visual field triggers a **reflex saccade** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 360), which shifts the image of the object into the fovea centralis. Thereby, the retinal area with the highest visual acuity is selected ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**, yellow peak), which lies 5 degrees temporal to the optical axis. Visual acuity decreases rapidly when moving outward from the fovea ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**, yellow field), reflecting the decreasing density of cone distribution ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**,

red curve). In a *dark-adapted eye*, on the other hand, the sensitivity of the retina ( $\rightarrow$  **B2**, blue curve) is completely dependent on the rod distribution ( $\rightarrow$  **B1**, purple curve). The color-sensitive cones are therefore used for visual perception in daylight or good lighting (*day vision, photopic vision*), while the black and white-sensitive cones are used to visualize objects in darkness (*dim-light vision, night vision, scotopic vision*). The high light sensitivity in night vision is associated with a high loss of visual acuity ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354).

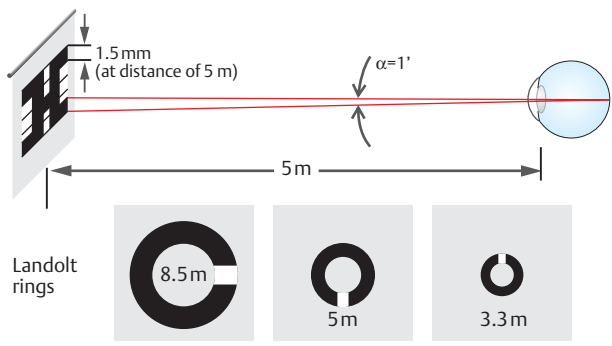
### Photosensor Function

Light-absorbing *visual pigments* and a variety of *enzymes* and *transmitters* in retinal rods and cones ( $\rightarrow$  **C1**) mediate the conversion of light stimuli into electrical stimuli; this is called **photoelectric transduction**. The membranous disks of the retinal rods contain *rhodopsin* ( $\rightarrow$  **C2**), a photosensitive purple-red chromoprotein (*visual purple*). Rhodopsin consists of the integral membrane protein *opsin* and the aldehyde *11-cis-retinal*. The latter is bound to a lysine residue of opsin which is embedded in this protein; it is stably kept in place by weak interactions with two other amino acid residues. *Photoc stimuli* trigger a primary *photochemical reaction* in rhodopsin (duration,  $2 \cdot 10^{-14}$  s) in which *11-cis-retinal* is converted to *all-trans-retinal* ( $\rightarrow$  **C3**). Even without continued photic stimulation, the reaction yields bathorhodopsin, the intermediates lumirhodopsin and metarhodopsin I, and finally metarhodopsin II within roughly  $10^{-3}$  s ( $\rightarrow$  **D1**).

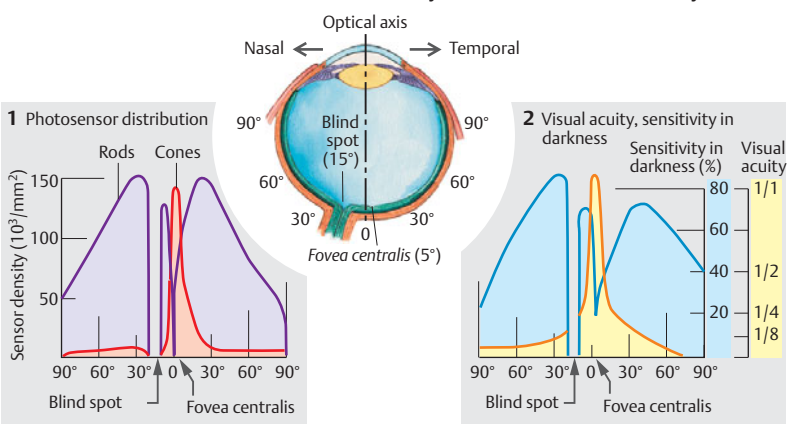
*Metarhodopsin II* (MR-II) reacts with a  $G_s$ -protein ( $\rightarrow$  p. 274) called *transducin* ( $G_t$ -protein), which breaks down into  $\alpha_s$  and  $\beta\gamma$  subunits once GDP has been replaced by GTP ( $\rightarrow$  **D1**). Activated  $\alpha_s$ -GTP now binds the inhibitory subunit of cGMP phosphodiesterase ( $I_{PDE}$ ) ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**). The consequently disinhibited phosphodiesterase (PDE) then lowers the cytosolic concentration of cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP). The activation of a single retinal rhodopsin molecule by a quantum of light can induce the hydrolysis of up to  $10^6$  cGMP molecules per second. The reaction cascade therefore has tremendous amplifying power.



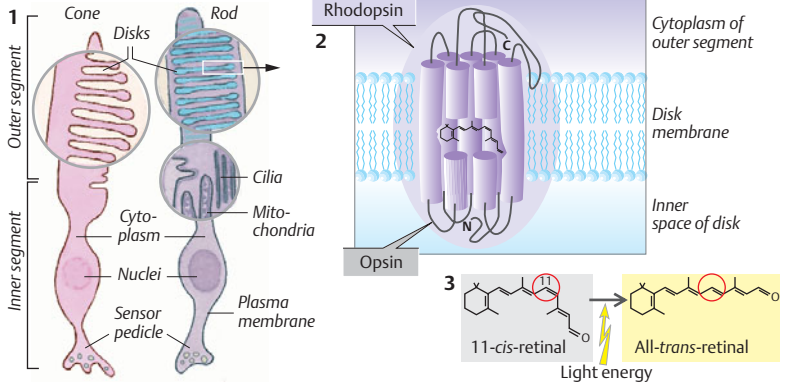
**A. Visual acuity**



**B. Retina: Photosensor distribution, sensitivity in darkness and visual acuity**



**C. Photosensors**





In **darkness** ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, **left**), cGMP is bound to cation channels ( $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) in the outer segment of the photoreceptor, thereby keeping them open.  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can therefore enter the cell and depolarize it to about  $-40$  mV ( $\rightarrow$  **D3**, **D4**). This darkness-induced influx into the outer segment is associated with the efflux of  $\text{K}^+$  from the inner segment of the sensor. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entering the outer segment is immediately transported out of the cell by a  $3 \text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36), so the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  remains constant at ca. 350–500 nmol/L in darkness ( $\rightarrow$  **D6**). If the cytosolic cGMP concentration decreases in response to a **light stimulus** ( $\rightarrow$  **D2**), cGMP dissociates from the cation channels, allowing them to close. The photoreceptor then hyperpolarizes to ca.  $-70$  mV (*sensor potential*:  $\rightarrow$  **D**, **right**). This *inhibits* the release of *glutamate* (transmitter) at the sensor pedicle ( $\rightarrow$  **D5**), which subsequently causes changes in the membrane potential in downstream retinal neurons ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354).

#### Deactivation of Photic Reactions and Regeneration Cycles

◆ **Rhodopsin** ( $\rightarrow$  **E2**). *Rhodopsin kinase* (RK) competes with transducin for binding sites on *metarhodopsin II* (MR-II); the concentration of transducin is 100 times higher ( $\rightarrow$  **E2**, right). Binding of RK to MR-II leads to phosphorylation of MR-II. As a result, its affinity to transducin decreases while its affinity to another protein, *arrestin*, rises. Arrestin blocks the binding of further transducin molecules to MR-II. All-*trans*-retinal detaches from opsin, which is subsequently dephosphorylated and re-loaded with 11-*cis*-retinal.

◆ **All-*trans*-retinal** ( $\rightarrow$  **E1**) is transported out of the photoreceptor and into the pigmented epithelium, where it is reduced to all-*trans*-retinol, esterified and ultimately restored to 11-*cis*-retinal. After returning into the photoreceptor, it binds to opsin again, thereby completing the cycle ( $\rightarrow$  **E2**).

◆ **Note:** Retinol is vitamin  $\text{A}_1$ . A chronic deficiency of vitamin  $\text{A}_1$  or its precursors (carotenoids) leads to impaired rhodopsin production and, ultimately, to *night blindness* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 352).

◆ **Transducin** ( $\rightarrow$  **E3**). Since the GTPase activity of  $\alpha_s$ -GTP breaks down GTP into GDP +  $\text{P}_i$ , the molecule deactivates itself. The  $\alpha_s$ -GTP molecule and  $\beta\gamma$  subunit then reunite to trans-

ducin. GAP (GTPase-activating protein) accelerates the regeneration of transducin. *Phosducin*, another protein, is phosphorylated in the dark ( $\rightarrow$  **D6**) and dephosphorylated in light ( $\rightarrow$  **D7**). The latter form binds to the  $\beta\gamma$  subunit ( $\rightarrow$  **D7**, **E3**), thereby blocking the regeneration of transducin. This plays a role in light adaptation (see below).

◆ **Phosphodiesterase (PDE)**. In the course of transducin regeneration, the inhibitory subunit of cGMP phosphodiesterase ( $\text{I}_{\text{PDE}}$ ) is released again and PDE is thus inactivated.

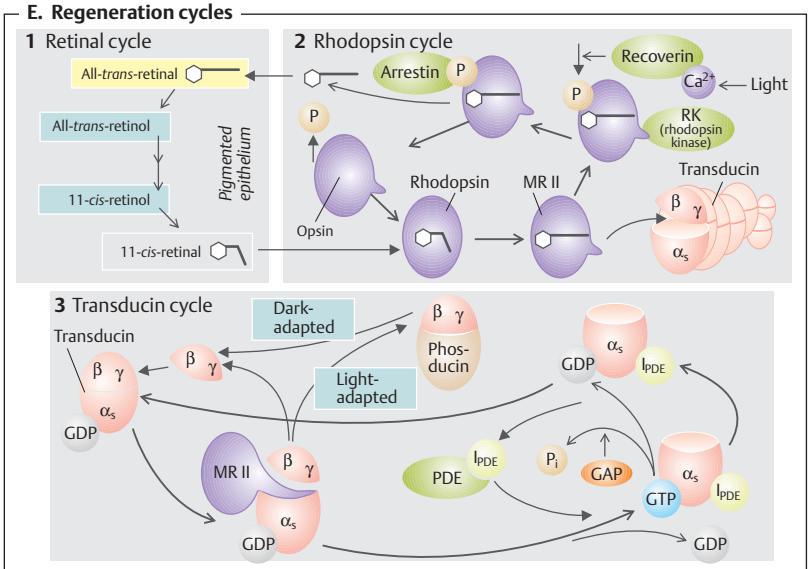
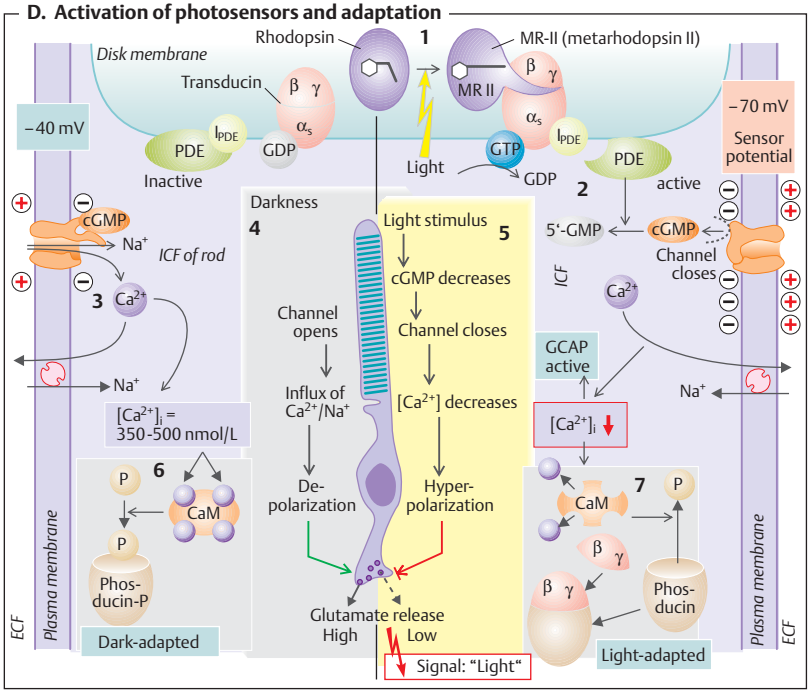
◆ **cGMP**. Since the  $3 \text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger still functions even after photostimulation-induced closure of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  starts to decrease. When a threshold of ca. 100 nmol/L is reached, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -binding protein GCAP (guanylyl cyclase-activating protein) loses its 4  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions and stimulates guanylyl cyclase, thereby accelerating cGMP synthesis. Thus, the cGMP concentration rises, the cation channels re-open, and the sensor is ready to receive a new light stimulus. This  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  cycle therefore mediates a negative feedback loop for cGMP production.

#### $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ Ions and Adaptation (see also p. 352)

In the dark, the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  is high, and calmodulin-bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ( $\rightarrow$  p. 36) stimulates the phosphorylation of phosducin with the aid of cAMP and phosphokinase A ( $\rightarrow$  **D6**). In light, the  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  is low; phosducin is dephosphorylated and rapid regeneration of transducin is not possible ( $\rightarrow$  **D7**, **E3**). Moreover,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  accelerates the phosphorylation of MR-II in light with the aid of another  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding protein, *recoverin* ( $\rightarrow$  **E2**).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is therefore essential for the **adaptation of photoreceptors** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 352).

Although they contain similar enzymes and transmitters, the photosensitivity of the **cones** is about 100 times less than that of the rods. Thus, the cones are unable to detect a single quantum of light, presumably because photic reactions in the cones are deactivated too quickly. Compared to rhodopsin in the retinal rods, the three visual pigments in the three types of cones (11-*cis*-retinal with different opsin fractions) only absorb light in a narrow wavelength range ( $\rightarrow$  p. 357 E), which is a prerequisite for color vision ( $\rightarrow$  p. 356).





## Adaptation of the Eye to Different Light Intensities

The eye is able to perceive a wide range of light intensities, from the extremely low intensity of a small star to the extremely strong intensity of the sun glaring on a glacier. The ability of the eye to process such a wide range of luminance ( $1 : 10^{11}$ ) by adjusting to the prevailing light intensity is called **adaptation**. When going from normal daylight into a darkened room, the room will first appear black because its luminance value (measured in  $\text{cd} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ) is lower than the current ocular threshold. As the stimulus threshold decreases over the next few minutes, the furniture in the room gradually becomes identifiable. A longer period of adaptation is required to visualize stars. The maximum level of adaptation is reached in about 30 min ( $\rightarrow$  A). The minimum light intensity that can just be detected after maximum dark adaptation is the **absolute visual threshold**, which is defined as 1 in A and B.

The **retinal adaptation curve** exhibits a (Kohlerausch) break at roughly  $2000 \times$  the absolute threshold ( $\rightarrow$  A, blue curve). This corresponds to the point where the excitation threshold of the cones is reached (threshold for day vision). The remainder of the curve is governed by the somewhat slower adaptation of the rods ( $\rightarrow$  A, violet curve). The isolated rod adaptation curve can be recorded in patients with complete color blindness (*rod monochromatism*), and the isolated cone adaptation curve can be observed in night blindness (hemeralopia,  $\rightarrow$  p. 350).

**Differential threshold** (or difference limen). The ability of the eye to distinguish the difference between two similar photic stimuli is an important prerequisite for proper eyesight. At the lowest limit of discriminative sensibility for two light intensities  $I$  and  $I'$ , the **absolute differential threshold** ( $\Delta I$ ) is defined as  $I$  minus  $I'$ . The **relative differential threshold** is calculated as  $\Delta I/I$ , and remains relatively constant in the median stimulus range (*Weber's rule*). Under optimal lighting conditions (approx.  $10^9$  times the absolute threshold;  $\rightarrow$  B),  $\Delta I/I$  is very small (0.01). The relative differential threshold rises greatly in dark adaptation, but also rises in response to extremely bright light. Sun-

glasses decrease the differential threshold in the latter case.

The **mechanisms for adaptation** of the eye are as follows ( $\rightarrow$  C):

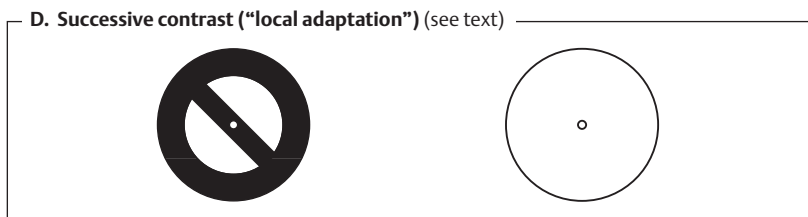
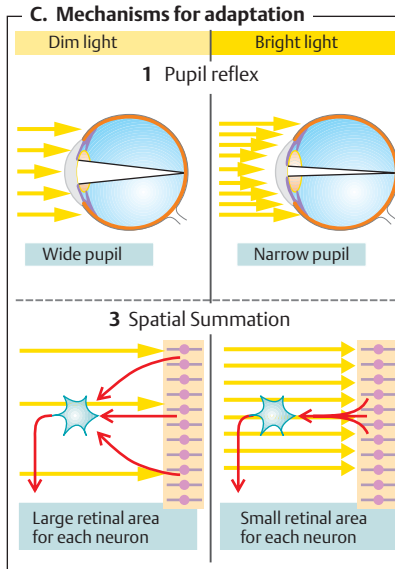
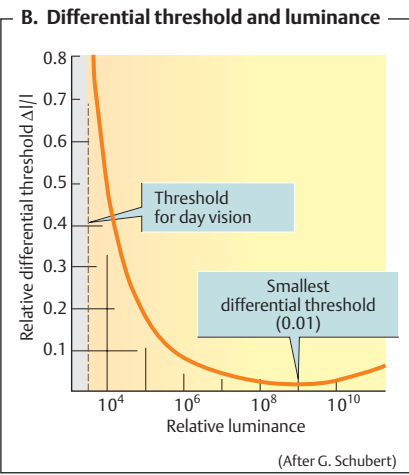
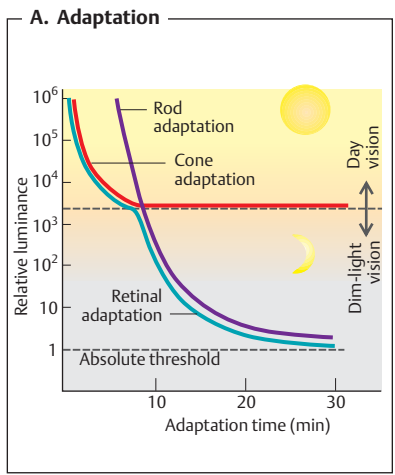
- ◆ **Pupil reflex** ( $\rightarrow$  C1). Through reflexive responses to light exposure of the retina ( $\rightarrow$  p. 359), the pupils can adjust the quantity of light entering the retina by a factor of 16. Thus, the pupils are larger in darkness than in daylight. The main function of the pupil reflex is to ensure rapid adaptation to sudden changes in light intensity.

- ◆ **Chemical stimuli** ( $\rightarrow$  C2) help to adjust the sensitivity of photosensors to the prevailing light conditions. Large quantities of light lead to a prolonged decrease in the receptor's cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. This in conjunction with the activity of *recoverin* and *phosducin* reduces the availability of rhodopsin ( $\rightarrow$  p. 348ff.). It therefore decreases the probability that a rhodopsin molecule will be struck by an incoming light ray (photon) or that a metarhodopsin II molecule will come in contact with a transducin molecule. When the light intensity is low, large concentrations of rhodopsin and transducin are available and the photosensors become very light-sensitive.

- ◆ **Spatial summation** ( $\rightarrow$  C3). Variation of retinal surface area (number of photosensors) exciting an optic nerve fiber causes a form of spatial summation that increases with darkness and decreases with brightness ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354).

- ◆ **Temporal summation** ( $\rightarrow$  C4). Brief sub-threshold stimuli can be raised above threshold by increasing the duration of stimulation (by staring at an object) long enough to trigger an action potential (AP). Thereby, the product of stimulus intensity times stimulus duration remains constant.

**Successive contrast** occurs due to "local adaptation." When a subject stares at the center of the black-and-white pattern ( $\rightarrow$  D) for about 20 s and suddenly shifts the focus to the white circle, the previously dark areas appear to be brighter than the surroundings due to sensitization of the corresponding areas of the retina.



## Retinal Processing of Visual Stimuli

Light stimuli *hyperpolarize* the **sensor potential** of photosensors (→ **A**, left) from ca. -40 mV to ca. -70 mV (maximum) due to a decrease in conductance of the membrane of the outer sensor segment to  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (→ p. 348ff.). The potential rises and falls much more sharply in the cones than in the rods. As in other sensory cells, the magnitude of the sensor potential is proportional to the logarithm of stimulus intensity divided by threshold-intensity (*Fechner's law*). Hyperpolarization decreases glutamate release from the receptor. When this signal is relayed within the retina, a distinction is made between "direct" signal flow for photopic vision and "lateral" signal flow for scotopic vision (see below). Action potentials (APs) can only be generated in ganglion cells (→ **A**, right), but stimulus-dependent amplitude changes of the potentials occur in the other retinal neurons (→ **A**, center). These are conducted electrotonically across the short spaces in the retina (→ p. 48ff.).

**Direct signal flow** from cones to bipolar cells is conducted via ON or OFF bipolar cells. Photostimulation leads to depolarization of ON bipolar cells (signal inversion) and activation of their respective ON ganglion cells (→ **A**). OFF bipolar cells, on the other hand, are hyperpolarized by photostimulation, which has an inhibitory effect on their OFF ganglion cells. "**Lateral**" signal flow can occur via the following pathway: rod ⇒ rod-bipolar cell ⇒ rod-amacrine cell ⇒ ON or OFF bipolar cell ⇒ ON or OFF ganglion cell. Both rod-bipolar cells and rod-amacrine cells are depolarized in response to light. Rod-amacrine cells inhibit OFF bipolar cells via a chemical synapse and stimulate ON bipolar cells via an electrical synapse (→ p. 50).

A light stimulus triggers the firing of an AP in ON ganglion cells (→ **A**, right). The AP frequency increases with the sensor potential amplitude. The APs of ON ganglion cells can be measured using microelectrodes. This data can be used to identify the retinal region in which the stimulatory and inhibitory effects on AP frequency originate. This region is called the **receptive field (RF)** of the ganglion cell. Retinal ganglion cells have concentric RFs comprising a central zone and a ringlike peripheral zone distinguishable during light adaptation (→ **B**). Photic stimulation of the center increases the

AP frequency of ON ganglion cells (→ **B1**). Stimulation of the periphery, on the other hand, leads to a decrease in AP frequency, but excitation occurs when the light source is switched off (→ **B2**). This type of RF is referred to as an *ON field* (central field ON). The RF of OFF ganglion cells exhibits the reverse response and is referred to as an *OFF field* (central field OFF). *Horizontal cells* are responsible for the functional organization of the RFs (→ p. 344). They invert the impulses from photosensors in the periphery of the RF and transmit them to the sensors of the center. The opposing central and peripheral responses lead to a **stimulus contrast**. At a light-dark interface, for example, the dark side appears darker and the light side brighter. If the entire RF is exposed to light, the impulses from the center usually predominate.

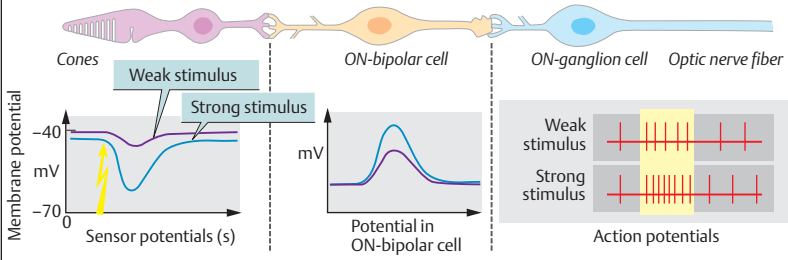
**Simultaneous contrast.** A solid gray circle appears darker in light surroundings than in dark surroundings (→ **C**, left). When a subject focuses on a black-and-white grid (→ **C**, right), the white grid lines appear to be darker at the cross-sections, black grid lines appear lighter because of reduced contrast in these areas. This effect can be attributed to a variable sum of stimuli within the RFs (→ **C**, center).

During **dark adaptation**, the center of the RFs increases in size at the expense of the periphery, which ultimately disappears. This leads to an increase in spatial summation (→ p. 353 C3), but to a simultaneous decrease in stimulus contrast and thus to a lower visual acuity (→ p. 349 B2).

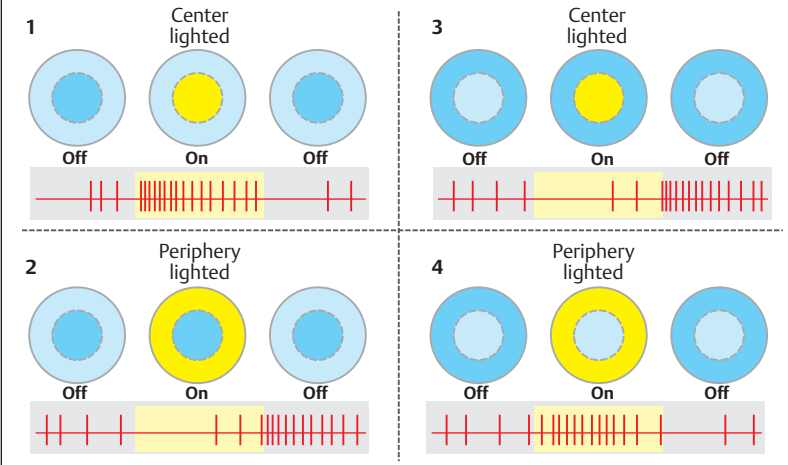
**Color opponency.** Red and green light (or blue and yellow light) have opposing effects in the RFs of  $\beta$  ganglion cells (→ p. 358) and more centrally located cells of the optic tract (→ p. 357 E). These effects are explained by **Hering's opponent colors theory** and ensure contrast (increase color saturation; → p. 356) in color vision. When a subject focuses on a color test pattern (→ p. 359 C) for about 30 min and then shifts the gaze to a neutral background, the complementary colors will be seen (*color successive contrast*).

RFs of **higher centers** of the optic tract (V1, V2; → p. 358) can also be identified, but their characteristics change. Shape (striate or angular), length, axial direction and direction of movement of the photic stimuli play important roles.

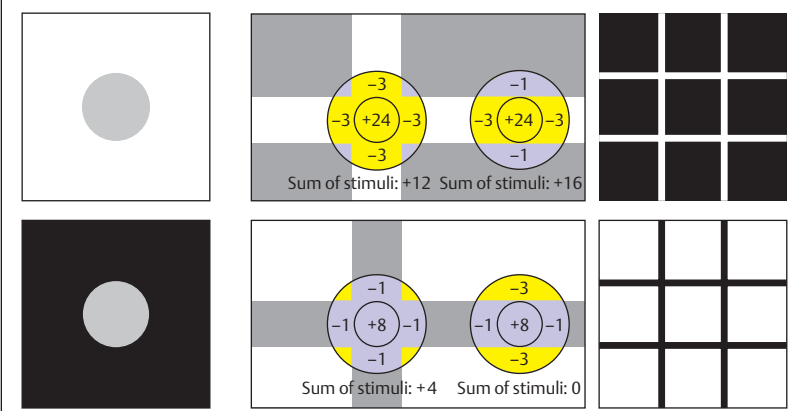
**A. Potentials of photosensor, ON-bipolar and ON-ganglion cells**



**B. Receptive fields of "on" ganglion cells (1, 2) and "off" ganglion cells (3, 4)**



**C. Receptive field-related contrast (on ganglion cells)**



## Color Vision

White light passing through a prism is split into a color spectrum ranging from red to violet (colors of the rainbow). **Red** is perceived at a wavelength ( $\lambda$ ) of 650–700 nm, and violet at around 400–420 nm ( $\rightarrow$  **A**). The eye is sensitive to waves in this  $\lambda$  range. Perception of white light does not require the presence of all colors of the visible spectrum. It is sufficient to have the additive effects (mixing) of only two **complementary colors**, e.g., orange (612 nm) and blue light (490 nm).

A **color triangle** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**) or similar test panel can be used to illustrate this effect. The two upper limbs of the triangle show the visible spectrum, and a white dot is located inside the triangle. All straight lines passing through this dot intersect the upper limbs of the triangle at two complementary wavelengths (e.g., 612 and 490 nm). **Additive color mixing** ( $\rightarrow$  **C**): The color yellow is obtained by mixing roughly equal parts of red and green. Orange is produced by using a higher red fraction, and yellowish green is obtained with a higher green fraction. These colors lie between red and green on the limbs of the color triangle. Similar rules apply when mixing green and violet ( $\rightarrow$  **B** and **C**). The combination of red with violet yields a shade of purple not contained in the spectrum ( $\rightarrow$  **B**). This means that all colors, including white, can be produced by varying the proportions of three colors—e.g. red (700 nm), green (546 nm) and blue (435 nm) because every possible pair of complementary colors can be obtained by mixing these three colors of the spectrum.

**Subtractive color mixing** is based on the opposite principle. This technique is applied when color paints and camera filters are used. Yellow paints or filters absorb (“subtract”) the blue fraction of white light, leaving the complementary color yellow.

**Light absorption.** Photosensors must be able to absorb light to be photosensitive. **Rods** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 348) contain **rhodopsin**, which is responsible for (achromatic) night vision. Rhodopsin absorbs light at wavelengths of ca. 400–600 nm; the maximum absorption value ( $\lambda_{\max}$ ) is 500 nm ( $\rightarrow$  **E1**). Relatively speaking, greenish blue light therefore appears brightest and red appears darkest at night. Wearing red glasses in daylight therefore leaves the rods adapted for darkness. Three types of color-sensitive **cones** are responsible for (chromatic) day vision ( $\rightarrow$  **E1**): (1) **S cones**, which absorb short-wave (S) blue-violet light ( $\lambda_{\max} =$

420 nm); (2) **M cones**, which absorb medium-wave (M) blue-green to yellow light ( $\lambda_{\max} = 535$  nm), and (3) **L cones**, which absorb long-wave (L) yellow to red light ( $\lambda_{\max} = 565$  nm). (The physiological sensitivity curves shown in **E1** make allowances for light absorbed by the lens.) **Ultraviolet rays** ( $\lambda_{\max} < 400$  nm) and **infrared rays** ( $\lambda_{\max} > 700$  nm) are not visible.

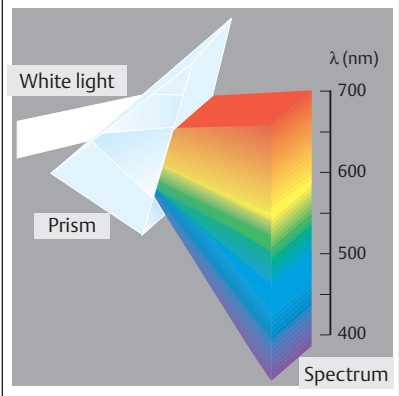
Sensory information relayed by the three types of cones (peripheral application of the *trichromatic theory of color vision*) and transduction of these visual impulses to **brightness** and **opponent color channels** ( $\rightarrow$  **E2** and p. 354) in the retina and lateral geniculate body (LGB) enables the visual cortex ( $\rightarrow$  p. 358) to recognize different **types of colors**. The human eye can distinguish 200 shades of color and different degrees of color saturation. The absolute **differential threshold for color vision** is 1–2 nm ( $\rightarrow$  **D**, “normal”).

**Color perception** is more complex. White paper, for example, will look white in white light (sunlight), yellow light (light bulb) and red light. We also do not perceive the different shades of color in a house that is partially illuminated by sunlight and partially in the shade. This **color constancy** is the result of retinal and central processing of the retinal signal.

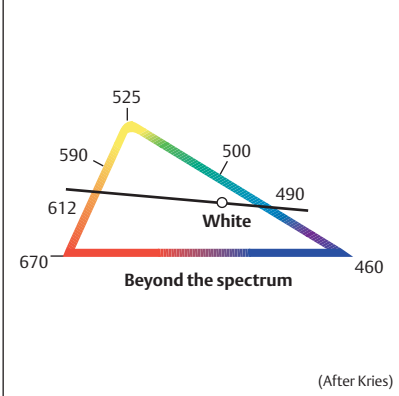
There is a similar **constancy of size and shape**: Although someone standing 200 meters away makes a much smaller image on the retina that at 2 meters’ distance, we still recognize him or her as a person of normal height, and although a square table may appear rhomboid in shape when viewed from the side, we can still tell that it is square.

**Color blindness** occurs in 9% of all men and in 0.5% of women. The ability to distinguish certain colors is impaired or absent in these individuals, i.e., they have a **high differential threshold for color** ( $\rightarrow$  **D**). Various types of color blindness are distinguished: *protanopia* (red blindness), *deutanopia* (green blindness), and *tritanopia* (blue-violet blindness). Protanomaly, deutanomaly and tritanomaly are characterized by decreased sensitivity of the cones to colored, green and blue, respectively. Color vision is tested using **color perception charts** or an *anomaloscope*. With the latter, the subject has to mix two color beams (e.g., red and green) with adjustable intensities until their additive mixture matches a specific shade of color (e.g. yellow,  $\rightarrow$  **C**) presented for comparison. A protanomal subject needs a too high red intensity, a deuteranomal person a too high green intensity. Protanopes perceive all colors with wavelengths over approx. 520 nm as yellow.

**A. Composition of sunlight**

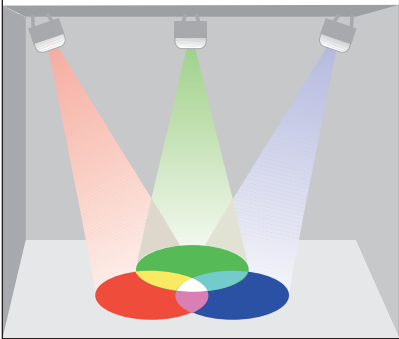


**B. Color triangle**

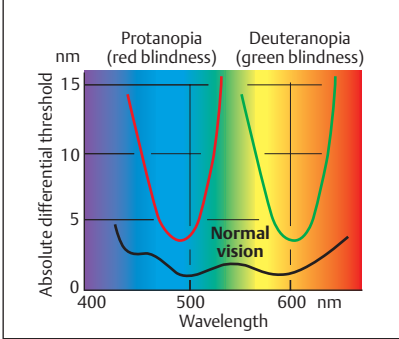


(After Kries)

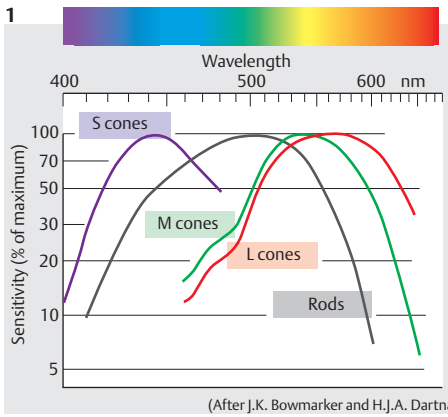
**C. Additive color mixing**



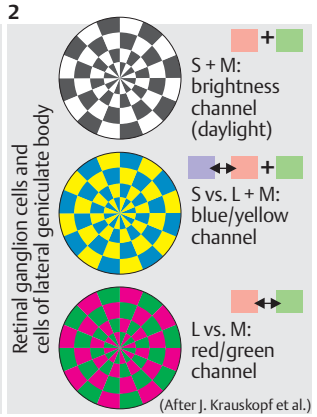
**D. Differential threshold for wavelength**



**E. Physiological sensitivity of rods and cones (1) and color opponency (2)**



(After J.K. Bowmaker and H.J.A. Dartnall)



(After J. Krauskopf et al.)



## Visual Field, Visual Pathway, Central Processing of Visual Stimuli

The **visual field** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) is the area visualized by the *immobile* eye with the head fixed.

The visual field is examined by **perimetry**. The subject's eye is positioned in the center of the perimeter, which is a hollow hemispherical instrument. The subject must then report when laterally flashed points of light appear in or disappear from the visual field. An area of lost vision within the visual field is a **scotoma**. Lesions of the retina, or of the central visual pathway can cause scotoma. The **blind spot** ( $\rightarrow$  **A**) is a normal scotoma occurring at 15 degrees temporal and is caused by nasal interruption of the retina by the optic disk ( $\rightarrow$  p. 349 B). In binocular vision ( $\rightarrow$  p. 361 A), the blind spot of one eye is compensated for by the other. The visual field for color stimuli is smaller than that for light–dark stimuli. If, for example, a red object is slowly moved into the visual field, the movement will be identified more quickly than the color of the object.

The retina contains more than  $10^8$  photosensors connected by retinal neurons ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354) to ca.  $10^6$  retinal ganglion cells. Their axons form the **optic nerve**. The convergence of so many sensors on only a few neurons is particularly evident in the retinal periphery (1000 : 1). In the fovea centralis, however, only one or a few cones are connected to one neuron. Due to the low convergence of impulses from the fovea, there is a high level of visual acuity with a low level of light sensitivity, whereas the high convergence of signals from the periphery produces the reverse effect (*cf. spatial summation*;  $\rightarrow$  p. 353 C3).

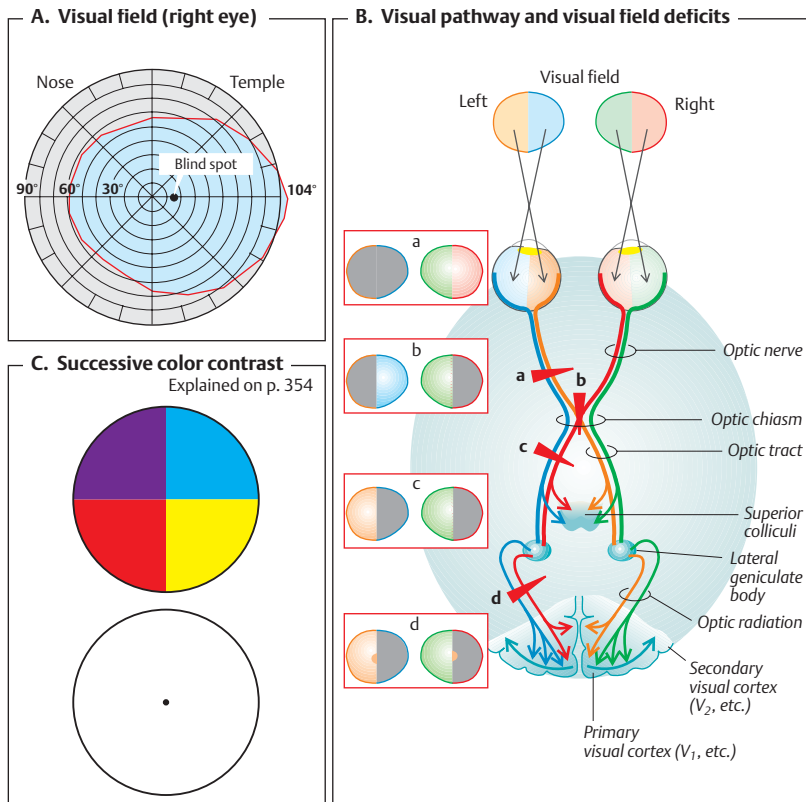
**Ganglion cells.** Three types of ganglion cells can be found in the retina: (1) 10% are **M** (or  $\alpha$  or Y) **cells** of the *magnocellular system*; their fast-conducting axons emit short phasic impulses in response to light and are very sensitive to movement; (2) 80% are the **P** (or  $\beta$  or X) **cells** of the *parvocellular system*; their thin axons have small receptive fields (high spatial resolution), persistently react to constant light (tonic reaction), and therefore permit *pattern and color analysis*. Both types have equal densities of ON and OFF cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 354). (3) 10% are  $\gamma$  (or W) **cells** of the *coniocellular system*; their very thin axons project to the mesencephalon and regulate pupil diameter (see below) and reflex saccades ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 348, 360).

Objects located in the nasal half of the visual field of each eye ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, blue and green) are imaged in the temporal half of each retina and vice versa. Along the **visual pathway**, fibers of the **optic nerve** from the temporal half of each retina remain on the same side ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, blue and green), whereas the fibers from the nasal half of each retina decussate at the **optic chiasm** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, orange and red). Fibers from the fovea centralis are present on both sides.

**Lesions** of the left optic nerve for instance cause deficits in the entire left visual field ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, a), whereas lesions of the left optic tract produce deficits in the right halves of both visual fields ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, c). Damage to the median optic *chiasm* results in bilateral temporal deficits, i.e., *bitemporal hemianopia* ( $\rightarrow$  **B**, b).

Fibers of the optic tract extend to the **lateral geniculate body** ( $\rightarrow$  **B**) of the thalamus, the six layers of which are organized in a retinotopic manner. Axons of the ipsilateral eye terminate on layers 2, 3 and 5, while those of the contralateral eye terminate on layers 1, 4 and 6. The M cell axons communicate with cells of *magnocellular layers* 1 and 2, which serve as a relay station for *motion-related stimuli* that are rapidly conducted to the motor cortex. The P cell axons project to the *parvocellular layers* 3–6, the main function of which is to *process colors and shapes*. The neurons of all layers then project further through the **optic radiation** (arranged also retinotopically) to the *primary visual cortex* ( $V_1$ ) and, after decussating, to further areas of the visual cortex ( $V_{2-5}$ ) including pathways to the parietal and temporal cortex. Magnocellular input reaches the parietal cortex also via the superior colliculi (see below) and the pulvinar.

The **primary visual cortex** ( $V_1$ ) is divided depth-wise (x-axis) into six retinotopic layers numbered I to VI ( $\rightarrow$  p. 333 A). Cells of the primary visual cortex are arranged as three-dimensional modular **hypercolumns** ( $3 \times 1 \times 1$  mm) representing modules for analysis of all sensory information from corresponding areas of both retinas ( $\rightarrow$  p. 360). Adjacent hypercolumns represent neighboring retinal regions. Hypercolumns contain *ocular dominance columns* (y-axis), *orientation columns* (z-axis), and *cylinders* (x-axis). The dominance columns receive alternating input from the right and left eye, orientation columns process direction of stimulus movement and cylinders receive information of colors.



**Color**, high-resolution stationary **shapes**, **movement**, and stereoscopic **depth** are processed in some subcortical visual pathways, and from  $V_1$  onward in *separate information channels*. These individual aspects must be integrated to achieve visual perception. In diurnally active primates like humans, over half of the cortex is involved in processing visual information. On a simplified scale, the parietal cortex analyzes the “where” and involves motor systems, and the temporal cortex takes care of the “what” of visual input comparing it with memory.

Axons of the optic tract (especially those of M and  $\gamma$  cells) also project to **subcortical regions** of the brain such as the *pretectal region*, which regulates the diameter of the pupils (see below); the *superior colliculi* ( $\rightarrow$  **B**), which are involved in oculomotor function ( $\rightarrow$  p. 360);

the *hypothalamus*, which is responsible for circadian rhythms ( $\rightarrow$  p. 334).

The **pupillary reflex** is induced by sudden exposure of the retina to light ( $\rightarrow$  p. 350). The signal is relayed to the pretectal region; from here, a parasympathetic signal flows via the Edinger–Westphal nucleus, the ciliary ganglion and the oculomotor nerve, and induces narrowing of the pupils (*miosis*) within less than 1 s. Since both pupils respond simultaneously even if the light stimulus is unilateral, this is called a *consensual light response*. Meiosis also occurs when the eyes adjust for near vision (*near-vision response*  $\rightarrow$  p. 360).

The **corneal reflex** protects the eye. An object touching the cornea (afferent: trigeminal nerve) or approaching the eye (afferent: optic nerve) results in reflex closure of the eyelids.

## Eye Movements, Stereoscopic Vision, Depth Perception

*Conjugated movement* of the eyes occurs when the external eye muscles move the eyes in the same direction (e.g., from left to right), whereas *vergence movement* is characterized by opposing (divergent or convergent) eye movement. The axes of the eyes are parallel when gazing into the distance. Fixation of the gaze on a nearby object results in convergence of the visual axes. In addition, the pupil contracts (to increase the depth of focus) and accommodation of the lens occurs (→ p. 346). The three reactions are called **near-vision response** or convergence response.

**Strabismus.** A greater power of accommodation for near vision is required in hyperopia than in normal vision. Since accommodation is always linked with a convergence impulse, hyperopia is often associated with squinting. If the visual axes wander too far apart, vision in one eye will be suppressed to avoid double vision (diplopia). This type of visual impairment, called *strabismic amblyopia*, can be either temporary or chronic.

**Saccades.** When scanning the visual field, the eyes make jerky movements when changing the point of fixation, e.g., when scanning a line of print. These quick movements that last 10–80 ms are called *saccades*. Displacement of the image is centrally suppressed during the eye due to *saccadic suppression*. A person looking at both of his or her eyes alternately in a mirror cannot perceive the movement of his or her own eyes, but an independent observer can. The small, darting saccades function to keep an object in focus.

Objects entering the field of vision are reflexively imaged in the fovea centralis (→ p. 348). Slow **pursuit movements** of the eyes function to maintain the gaze on moving objects. **Nystagmus** is characterized by a combination of these slow and rapid (saccade-like) opposing eye movements. The direction of nystagmus (right or left) is classified according to the type of rapid phase, e.g., *secondary nystagmus* (→ p. 342). *Optokinetic nystagmus* occurs when viewing an object passing across the field of vision, e.g., when looking at a tree from inside a moving train. Once the eyes have returned to the normal position (return sac-

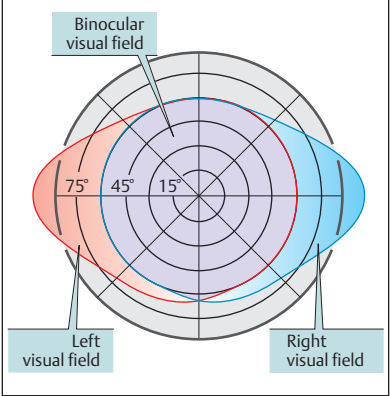
cade), a new object can be brought into focus. Damage to the cerebellum or organ of balance (→ p. 342) can result in *pathological nystagmus*.

The brain stem is the main center responsible for **programming** of eye movements. Rapid horizontal (conjugated) movements such as saccades and rapid nystagmus movement are programmed in the pons, whereas vertical and torsion movements are programmed in the mesencephalon. The cerebellum provides the necessary fine tuning (→ p. 326). Neurons in the region of the Edinger–Westphal nucleus are responsible for vergence movements.

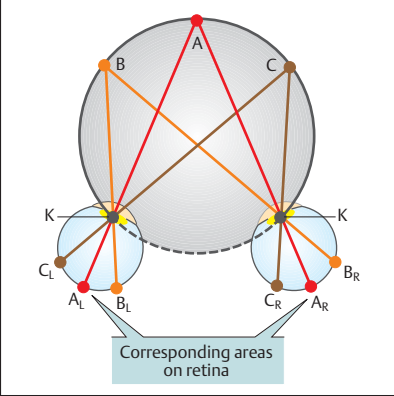
In near vision, **depth vision** and **three-dimensional vision** are primarily achieved through the coordinated efforts of both eyes and are therefore limited to the **binocular field of vision** (→ A). If both eyes focus on point A (→ B), an image of the fixation point is projected on both foveae ( $A_L, A_R$ ), i.e., on the *corresponding areas of the retina*. The same applies for points B and C (→ B) since they both lie on a circle that intersects fixation point A and nodal points N (→ p. 347 B) of the two eyes (**Vieth–Müller horopter**). If there were an imaginary middle eye in which the two retinal regions (in the cortex) precisely overlapped, the retinal sites would correspond to a central point  $A_C \triangleq A_L + A_R$  (→ C). Assuming there is a point D outside the horopter (→ C, left), the middle eye would see a double image ( $D', D''$ ) instead of point D, where  $D'$  is from the left eye ( $D_L$ ). If D and A are not too far apart, central processing of the double image creates the perception that D is located behind D, i.e., *depth perception* occurs. A similar effect occurs when a point E (→ C, right) is closer than A; in this case, the  $E'$  image will arise in the right eye ( $E_R$ ) and E will be perceived as being closer.

**Depth perception from a distance.** When viewing objects from great distances or with only one eye, contour overlap, haze, shadows, size differences, etc. are cues for depth perception (→ D). A nearby object moves across the field of vision more quickly than a distant object, e.g., in the case of the sign compared to the wall in plate D). In addition, the moon appears to migrate with the moving car, while the mountains disappear from sight.

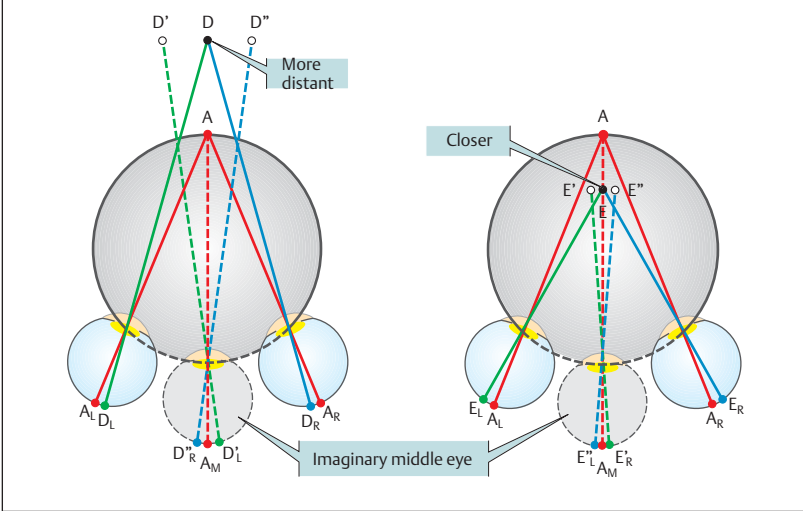
**A. Binocular visual field**



**B. Horopter**



**C. Three-dimensional vision (binocular vision)**



**D. Cues for depth vision**

Size differences  
Shadow  
Contour  
Haze

Photo: A. Köthenburger

Do not lean out

Do not lean out

Direction of train movement

## Physical Principles of Sound—Sound Stimulus and Perception

**Sound waves** are the adequate stimulus for the organ of hearing. They arise from a sound source such as a gong ( $\rightarrow$  A1) and are conducted in gases, liquids, and solids. The air is the main carrier of sound.

The air pressure rises and falls rhythmically at the sound source. These pressure waves (sound waves) travel at a characteristic **sound velocity** ( $c$ ) in different materials, e.g., at 332 m/s in air of 0 °C. A graphic recording of sound waves ( $\rightarrow$  A1) will produce waveform curves. The **wavelength** ( $\lambda$ ) is the distance between the top of one wave and the identical phase of the succeeding one, and the maximum deviation of pressure from baseline is the **amplitude** ( $a$ ) ( $\rightarrow$  A1). Enlargement (reduction) of wavelength will lower (raise) the tone, whereas a fall (rise) in amplitude will produce a quieter (louder) tone ( $\rightarrow$  A1). The **pitch** of a tone is defined by its **frequency** ( $f$ ), i.e., the number of sound pressure oscillations per unit time. Frequency is measured in **hertz** ( $\text{Hz} = \text{s}^{-1}$ ). Frequency, wavelength and the sound velocity are related:

$$f (\text{Hz}) \cdot \lambda (\text{m}) = c (\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}). \quad [12.1]$$

A **pure tone** has a simple sinus waveform. The tones emanating from most sound sources (e.g., musical instrument, voice) are mixtures of different frequencies and amplitudes that result in complex periodic vibrations referred to as **sound** ( $\rightarrow$  A2). The fundamental (lowest) tone in the complex determines the *pitch* of the sound, and the higher ones determine its *timbre* (overtones). An  $a^1$  (440 Hz) sung by a tenor or played on a harp has a different sound than one produced on an organ or piano. The overlap of two very similar tones produces a distinct effect characterized by a *beat tone* of a much lower frequency ( $\rightarrow$  A3, blue/red).

**Audibility limits.** Healthy young persons can hear sounds ranging in frequency from 16 to 20 000 Hz. The upper limit of audibility can drop to 5000 Hz due to aging (*presbycusis*). At 1000 Hz, the **absolute auditory threshold** or lowest sound pressure perceived as sound is  $3 \cdot 10^{-5}$  Pa. The threshold of sound is frequency-dependent ( $\rightarrow$  B, green curve). The threshold of hearing for a tone rises tremendously when other tones are heard simultaneously. This phenomenon called *masking* is the reason why it is so difficult to carry on a conversation against loud background noise. The ear is overwhelmed by sound pressures over 60 Pa, which corresponds to  $2 \cdot 10^6$  times the sound pressure of the limit of audibility at

1000 Hz. Sounds above this level induce the sensation of pain ( $\rightarrow$  B, red curve).

For practical reasons, the *decibel* ( $\text{dB}$ ) is used as a logarithmic measure of the **sound pressure level** (**SPL**). Given an arbitrary reference sound pressure of  $p_0 = 2 \cdot 10^{-5}$  Pa, the sound pressure level (SPL) can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{SPL} (\text{dB}) = 20 \cdot \log (p_x/p_0) \quad [12.2]$$

where  $p_x$  is the actual sound pressure. A tenfold increase in the sound pressure therefore means that the SPL rises by 20 dB.

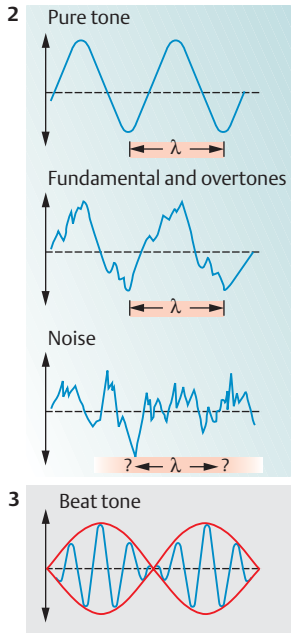
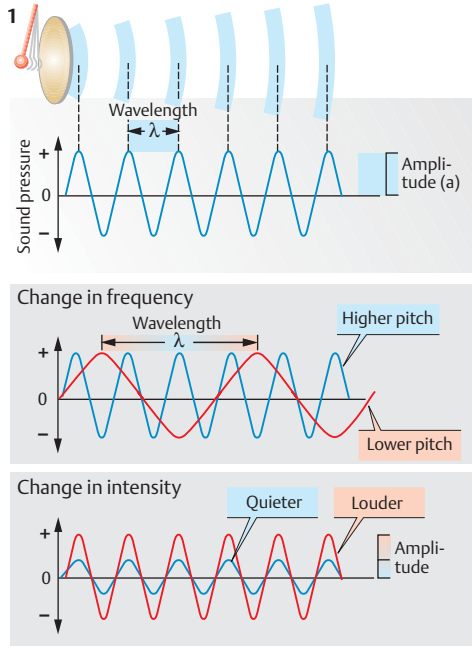
The **sound intensity** (**I**) is the amount of sound energy passing through a given unit of area per unit of time ( $W \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ). The sound intensity is proportional to the *square* of  $p_x$ . Therefore, dB values cannot be calculated on a simple linear basis. If, for example, two loudspeakers produce 70 dB each ( $p_x = 6.3 \cdot 10^{-2}$  Pa), they do *not* produce 140 dB together, but a mere 73 dB because  $p_x$  only increases by a factor of  $\sqrt{2}$  when the intensity level doubles. Thus,  $\sqrt{2} \cdot 6.3 \cdot 10^{-2}$  Pa has to be inserted for  $p_x$  into Eq. 12.2.

Sound waves with different frequencies but equal sound pressures are not *subjectively* perceived as *equally loud*. A 63 Hz tone is only perceived to be as loud as a 20 dB/1000 Hz reference tone if the sound pressure of the 63 Hz tone is 30-fold higher (+29 dB). In this case, the sound pressure level of the reference tone (20 dB/1000 Hz) gives the loudness level of the 63 Hz tone in **phon** (20 phon) as at a frequency of 1000 Hz, the phon scale is numerically equals the dB SPL scale ( $\rightarrow$  B). Equal loudness contours or **isophones** can be obtained by plotting the subjective values of equal loudness for test frequencies over the whole audible range ( $\rightarrow$  B, blue curves). The absolute auditory threshold is also an isophone (4 phons;  $\rightarrow$  B, green curve). Human hearing is most sensitive in the 2000–5000 Hz range ( $\rightarrow$  B).

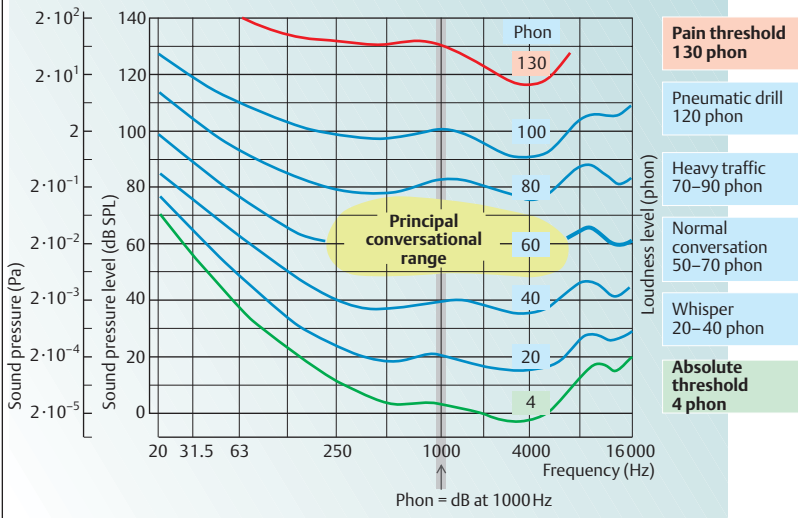
**Note:** Another unit is used to describe how a tone of constant frequency is subjectively perceived as louder or less loud. *Sone* is the unit of this type of loudness, where 1 sone = 40 phons at 1000 Hz. 2 sones equal twice the reference loudness, and 0.5 sone is  $1/2$  the reference loudness.

The **auditory area** in diagram B is limited by the highest and lowest audible frequencies on the one side, and by isophones of the thresholds of hearing and pain on the other. The green area in plate B represents the range of frequencies and intensities required for comprehension of ordinary speech ( $\rightarrow$  B).

**A. Wavelength, wave amplitude and wave types**



**B. Sound pressure, sound pressure level and loudness level**



## Conduction of Sound, Sound Sensors

Sound waves are transmitted to the organ of hearing via the *external ear* and the *auditory canal*, which terminates at the *tympanic membrane* or *eardrum*. The sound waves are conducted through the air (**air conduction**) and set the eardrum in vibration. These are transmitted via the *auditory ossicles* of the tympanic cavity (*middle ear*) to the membrane of the *oval window* (→ **A 1,2**), where the *internal* or *inner ear* (labyrinth) begins.

In the **middle ear**, the *malleus*, *incus* and *stapes* conduct the vibrations of the tympanic membrane to the oval window. Their job is to conduct the sound from the low wave resistance/impedance in air to the high resistance in fluid with as little loss of energy as possible. This **impedance transformation** occurs at  $f < 2400$  Hz and is based on a 22-fold pressure amplification (tympanic membrane area/oval window area is 17 : 1, and leverage arm action of the auditory ossicles amplifies force by a factor of 1.3). Impairment of impedance transforming capacity due, e.g., to destruction of the ossicles, causes roughly 20 dB of hearing loss (*conduction deafness*).

**Muscles of the middle ear.** The middle ear contains two small muscles—the *tensor tympani* (insertion: manubrium of malleus) and the *stapedius* (insertion: stapes)—that can slightly attenuate low-frequency sound. The main functions of the inner ear muscles are to maintain a constant sound intensity level, protect the ear from loud sounds, and to reduce distracting noises produced by the listener.

**Bone conduction.** Sound sets the skull in vibration, and these bone-borne vibrations are conducted directly to the cochlea. Bone conduction is fairly insignificant for physiological function, but is useful for testing the hearing. In **Weber's test**, a vibrating tuning fork ( $a^1$ ) is placed in the middle of the head. A person with normal hearing can determine the location of the tuning fork because of the symmetrical conduction of sound waves. A patient with *unilateral conduction deafness* will perceive the sound as coming from the affected side (lateralization) because of the lack of masking of environmental noises in that ear (bone conduction). A person with *sensorineural deafness*, on the other hand, will perceive the sound as coming from the healthy ear because of sound attenuation in the affected internal ear. In **Rinne's test**, the handle of a tuning fork is placed on one mastoid process (bony process behind the ear) of the patient (bone conduction). If the tone is no longer heard, the

tines of the tuning fork are placed in front of the ear (air conduction). Individuals with normal hearing or sensorineural deafness can hear the turning fork in the latter position anew (positive test result), whereas those with conduction deafness cannot (test negative).

The **internal ear** consists of the *equilibrium organ* (→ p. 342) and the **cochlea**, a spiraling bony tube that is 3–4 cm in length. Inside the cochlea is an endolymph-filled duct called the *scala media* (*cochlear duct*); the ductus reuniens connects the base of the cochlear duct to the endolymph-filled part of the equilibrium organ. The scala media is accompanied on either side by two perilymph-filled cavities: the *scala vestibuli* and *scala tympani*. These cavities merge at the apex of the cochlea to form the *helicotrema*. The scala vestibuli arises from the oval window, and the scala tympani terminates on the membrane of the round window (→ **A2**). The composition of perilymph is similar to that of plasma water (→ p. 93 C), and the composition of endolymph is similar to that of the cytosol (see below). Perilymph circulates in Corti's tunnel and Nuel's spaces (→ **A4**).

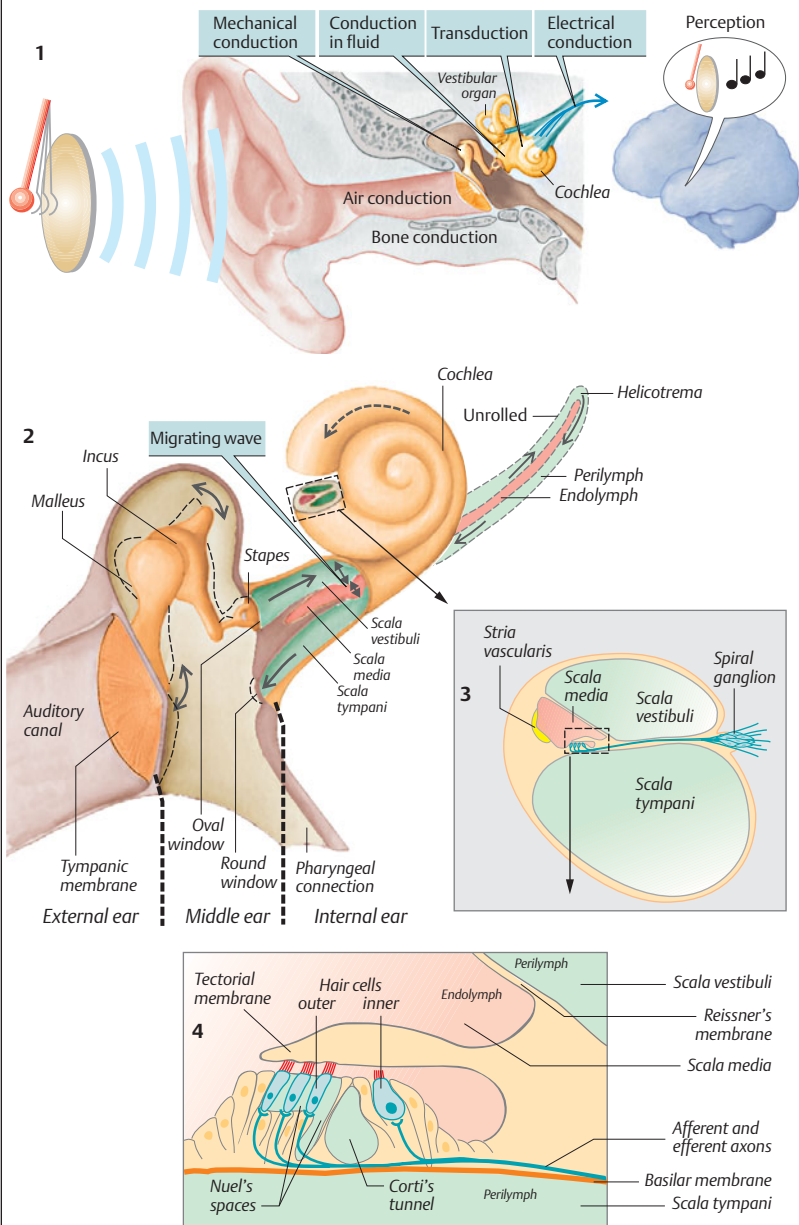
**Organ of Corti.** The (secondary) sensory cells of the hearing organ consist of approximately 10 000–12 000 external **hair cells** (**HCs**) and 3500 internal hair cells that sit upon the basilar membrane (→ **A4**). Their structure is very similar to that of the vestibular organ (→ p. 342) with the main difference being that the kinocilia are absent or rudimentary.

There are three rows of slender, cylindrical **outer hair cells**, each of which contains approximately 100 **cilia** (actually microvilli) which touch the tectorial membrane. The bases of the hair cells are firmly attached to the basilar membrane by supporting cells, and their cell bodies float in perilymph of Nuel's spaces (→ **A4**). The outer hair cells are principally innervated by efferent, mostly cholinergic neurons from the spiral ganglion ( $N_{A}$ -cholinceptors; → p. 82). The **inner hair cells** are pear-shaped and completely surrounded by supporting cells. Their cilia project freely into the endolymph. The inner hair cells are arranged in a single row and synapse with over 90% of the afferent fibers of the spiral ganglion. Efferent axons from the nucleus olivaris superior lateralis synapse with the afferent endings.

**Sound conduction in the inner ear.** The stapes moves against the membrane of the oval window membrane, causing it to vibrate. These are transmitted via the perilymph to the membrane of the round window (→ **A2**). The walls of the endolymph-filled cochlear duct, i.e. Reissner's membrane and the basilar mem-



**A. Reception and conduction of sound stimuli**



brane ( $\rightarrow$  D1) give against the pressure wave (**migrating wave**,  $\rightarrow$  B and C). It can therefore take a "short cut" to reach the round window without crossing the helicotrema. Since the cochlear duct is deformed in waves, Reissner's membrane and the basilar membrane vibrate alternately towards the scala vestibuli and scala tympani ( $\rightarrow$  D1,2). The velocity and wavelength of the migrating wave that started at the oval window decrease continuously ( $\rightarrow$  B), while their *amplitude* increases to a *maximum* and then quickly subsides ( $\rightarrow$  B, envelope curve). (The wave velocity is not equal to the velocity of sound, but is much slower.) The **site** of the maximum excursion of the cochlear duct is characteristic of the wavelength of the stimulating sound. The higher the frequency of the sound, the closer the site is to the stapes ( $\rightarrow$  C).

**Outer hair cells.** Vibration of the cochlear duct causes a discrete shearing (of roughly 0.3 nm) of the tectorial membrane against the basilar membrane, causing *bending of the cilia of the outer hair cells* ( $\rightarrow$  D3). This exerts also a shearing force between the rows of cilia of the individual external hair cell. Probably via the "tip links" ( $\rightarrow$  p. 342), cation channels in the ciliary membranes open (mechanosensitive transduction channels), allowing cations ( $K^+$ ,  $Na^+$ ,  $Ca^{2+}$ ) to enter and depolarize the outer hair cells. This causes the outer hair cells to *shorten* in sync with stimulation ( $\rightarrow$  D3). The successive shearing force on the cilia bends them in the opposite direction. This leads to hyperpolarization (opening of  $K^+$  channels) and *extension* of the outer hair cells.

The mechanism for this extremely fast **electromotility** (up to 20 kHz or  $2 \cdot 10^4$  times per second) is unclear, but it seems to be related to the high turgor of outer hair cells (128 mmHg) and the unusual structure of their cell walls.

These outer hair cell electromotility contributes to the **cochlear amplification** (ca. 100-fold or 40 dB amplification), which occurs before sound waves reach the actual sound sensors, i.e. inner hair cells. This explains the very low threshold within the very narrow location (0.5 nm) and thus within a very small frequency range. The electromotility causes endolymph waves in the subreticular space which exert *shearing forces on the inner hair*

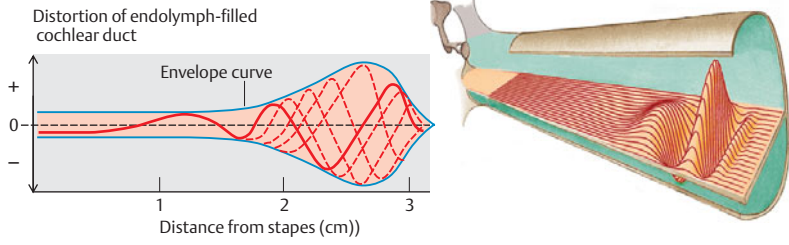
**cell cilia** at the site of maximum reaction to the sound frequency ( $\rightarrow$  D4), resulting in opening of transduction channels and depolarization of the cells (**sensor potential**). This leads to *transmitter* release (glutamate coupling to AMPA receptors;  $\rightarrow$  p. 55 F) by internal hair cells and the subsequent conduction of impulses to the CNS.

Vibrations in the internal ear set off an outward emission of sound. These **evoked otoacoustic emissions** can be measured by placing a microphone in front of the tympanic membrane, e.g., to test internal ear function in infants and other individuals incapable of reporting their hearing sensations.

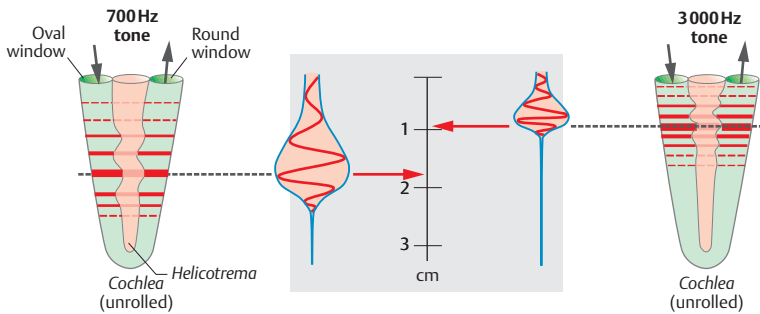
**Inner ear potentials** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 369 C). On the cilia side, the hair cells border with the endolymph-filled space, which has a potential difference (**endocochlear potential**) of ca. +80 to +110 mV relative to perilymph ( $\rightarrow$  p. 369 C). This potential difference is maintained by an active transport mechanism in the *stria vascularis*. Since the cell potential of outer (inner) hair cells is -70 mV (-40 mV), a potential difference of roughly 150–180 mV (120–150 mV) prevails across the cell membrane occupied by cilia (cell interior negative). Since the  $K^+$  conc. in the endolymph and hair cells are roughly equal ( $\approx$  140 mmol/L), the prevailing  $K^+$  equilibrium potential is ca. 0 mV ( $\rightarrow$  p. 32). These high potentials provide the driving forces for the influx not only of  $Ca^{2+}$  and  $Na^+$ , but also of  $K^+$ , prerequisites for provoking the sensor potential.

**Hearing tests** are performed using an **audiometer**. The patient is presented sounds of various frequencies and routes of conduction (bone, air). The sound pressure is initially set at a level under the threshold of hearing and is raised in increments until the patient is able to hear the presented sound (**threshold audiogram**). If the patient is unable to hear the sounds at normal levels, he or she has an hearing loss, which is quantitated in decibels (dB). In audiometry, all frequencies at the normal threshold of hearing are assigned the value of 0 dB (unlike the diagram on p. 363 B, green curve). Hearing loss can be caused by presbycusis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 362), middle ear infection (impaired air conduction), and damage to the internal ear (impaired air and bone conduction) caused, for example, by prolonged exposure to excessive sound pressure ( $>$  90 dB, e.g. disco music, pneumatic drill etc.).

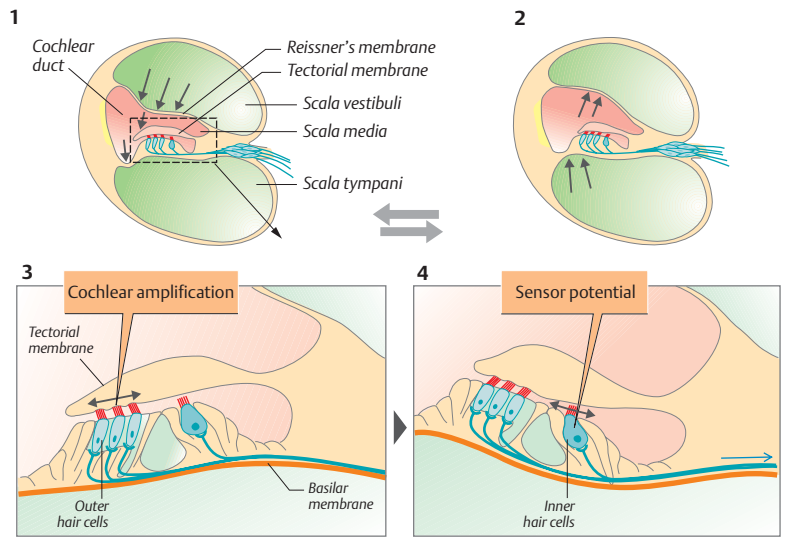
**B. Migrating wave in cochlea: maximum amplitude and 3-D topography snapshot**



**C. Frequency imaging in cochlea**



**D. Stimulation of hair cells by membrane deformation**



## Central Processing of Acoustic Information

Various qualities of sound must be coded for signal transmission in the acoustic pathway. These include the frequency, intensity and direction of sound waves as well as the distance of the sound source from the listener.

**Frequency imaging.** Tones of various frequencies are “imaged” along the cochlea, conducted in separate fibers of the auditory pathway and centrally identified. Assuming that a tone of 1000 Hz can just be distinguished from one of 1003 Hz (resembling true conditions), the frequency difference of 3 Hz corresponds to a relative *frequency differential threshold* of 0.003 ( $\rightarrow$  p. 352). This fine differential capacity is mainly due to frequency imaging in the cochlea, amplification by its outer hair cells ( $\rightarrow$  p. 366), and neuronal contrast along the auditory pathway ( $\rightarrow$  p. 313 D). This fine **tuning** ensures that a certain frequency has a particularly low threshold at its “imaging” site. Adjacent fibers are not recruited until higher sound pressures are encountered.

**Intensity.** Higher intensity levels result in higher action potential frequencies in afferent nerve fibers and recruitment of neighboring nerve fibers ( $\rightarrow$  A). The relative *intensity differential threshold* is 0.1 ( $\rightarrow$  p. 352), which is very crude compared to the frequency differential threshold. Hence, differences in loudness of sound are not perceived by the human ear until the intensity level changes by a factor of over 1.1, that is, until the sound pressure changes by a factor of over  $\sqrt{1.1} = 1.05$ .

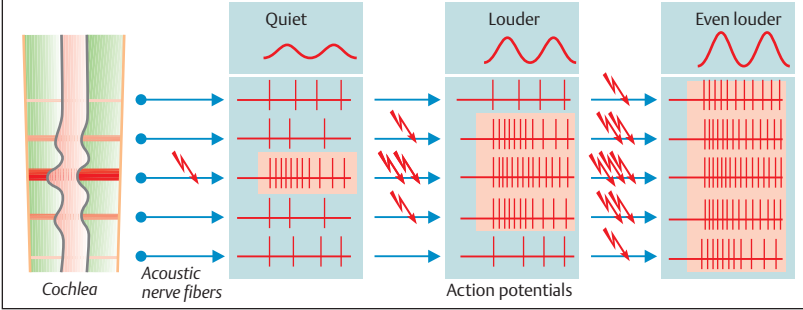
**Direction.** *Binaural hearing* is needed to identify the direction of sound waves and is based on the following two effects. (1) Sound waves that strike the ear obliquely reach the averted ear later than the other, resulting in a *lag time*. The change in direction that a normal human subject can just barely detect (*direction threshold*) is roughly 3 degrees. This angle delays the arrival of the sound waves in the averted ear by about  $3 \cdot 10^{-5}$  s ( $\rightarrow$  B, left). (2) Sound reaching the averted ear is also perceived as being *quieter*; differences as small as 1 dB can be distinguished. A lower sound pressure results in delayed firing of action potentials, i.e., in increased *latency* ( $\rightarrow$  B, right). Thus,

the impulses from the averted ear reach the CNS later (nucleus accessorius,  $\rightarrow$  D5). Effects (1) and (2) are additive effects ( $\rightarrow$  B). The external ear helps to decide whether the sound is coming from front or back, above or below. Binaural hearing also helps to distinguish a certain voice against high background noise, e.g., at a party. Visibility of the speaker’s mouth also facilitates comprehension.

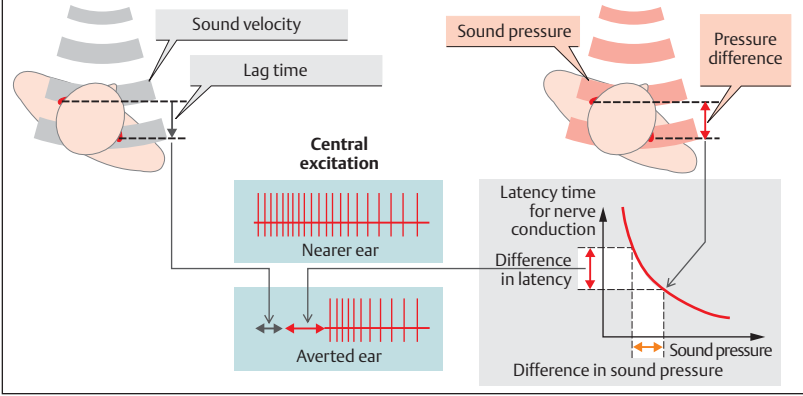
**Distance to the sound source** can be determined because high frequencies are attenuated more strongly than low frequencies during sound wave conduction. The longer the sound wave travels, the lower the proportion of high frequencies when it reaches the listener. This helps, for instance, to determine whether a thunderstorm is nearby or far away.

**Auditory pathway** ( $\rightarrow$  D). The auditory nerve fibers with somata positioned in the *spiral ganglion* of the cochlea project from the cochlea ( $\rightarrow$  D1) to the anterolateral ( $\rightarrow$  D2), posteroventral and dorsal cochlear nuclei ( $\rightarrow$  D3). Afferents in these three nuclei exhibit *tonotopicity*, i.e., they are arranged according to tone frequency at different levels of complexity. In these areas, *lateral inhibition* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 313 D) enhances *contrast*, i.e., suppresses noise. Binaural comparison of intensity and transit time of sound waves (direction of sound) takes place at the next-higher station of the auditory pathway, i.e. in the *superior olive* ( $\rightarrow$  D4) and *accessory nucleus* ( $\rightarrow$  D5). The next stations are in the *nucleus of lateral lemniscus* ( $\rightarrow$  D6) and, after most fibers cross over to the opposite side, the *inferior quadrigeminal bodies* ( $\rightarrow$  D7). They synapse with numerous afferents and serve as a reflex station (e.g., muscles of the middle ear;  $\rightarrow$  p. 366). Here, sensory information from the cochlear nuclei is compared with spatial information from the superior olive. Via connections to the superior quadrigeminal bodies ( $\rightarrow$  D8), they also ensure coordination of the auditory and visual space. By way of the thalamus (medial geniculate body, MGB;  $\rightarrow$  D9), the afferents ultimately reach the *primary auditory cortex* ( $\rightarrow$  D10) and the surrounding secondary auditory areas ( $\rightarrow$  p. 311 E, areas 41 and 22). Analysis of complex sounds, short-term memory for comparison of tones, and tasks required for “eavesdropping” are some of their functions.

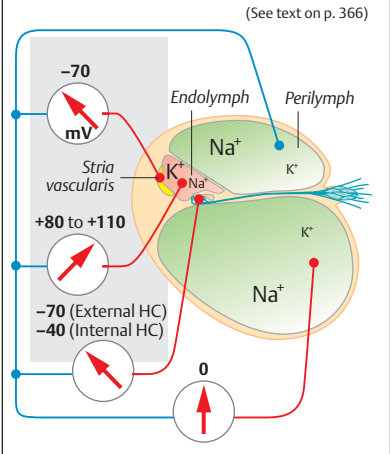
**A. Loudness processing in acoustic nerve (at constant sound frequency)**



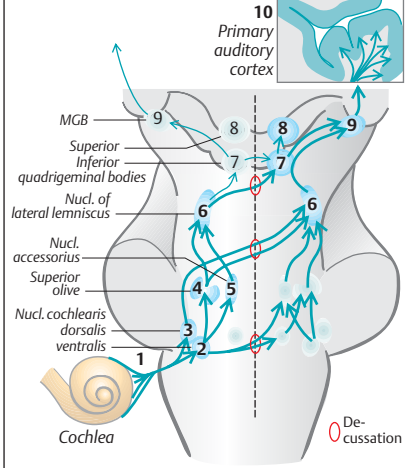
**B. Binaural hearing: lag time and latency differences**



**C. Cochlear potentials and electrolyte distribution**



**D. Afferent auditory pathway**



## Voice and Speech

The human voice primarily functions as a **means of communication**, the performance of which is based on the human capacity of hearing ( $\rightarrow$  p. 363 B). As in wind instruments, the body contains a *wind space* (trachea, bronchi, etc.). Air is driven through the space between the *vocal cords* (rima glottidis) into the *air space* (*passages above the glottis*), which sets the vocal cords into vibration. The air space consists of the throat and oronasal cavities ( $\rightarrow$  A). The range of the human voice is so immense because of the large variety of muscles that function to modulate the intensity of the airstream (*loudness*), tension of the vocal cords, shape/width of the vocal cords (*fundamental tone*) and size/shape of the air space (*timbre, formants*) of each individual.

Joints and muscles of the **larynx** function to adjust the vocal cords and rima glottidis. A stream of air opens and closes the rima glottidis and sets off the rolling movement of the vocal cords ( $\rightarrow$  B). When a deep tone is produced, the fissure of the glottis remains closed longer than it opens (ratio of 5 : 1 at 100 Hz). This ratio drops to 1.4 : 1 in higher tones (400 Hz). The rima glottis remains open when whispering or singing falsetto ( $\rightarrow$  C, blue).

**Motor signals** originate in the motosensory cortex ( $\rightarrow$  p. 325 C/B, tongue/throat) and are conducted via the vagus nerve to the larynx. Sensory impulses responsible for voice production and the cough reflex are also conducted by the vagus nerve. Sensory fibers from the mucosa and muscle spindles of the larynx ( $\rightarrow$  p. 316) continuously transmit information on the position and tension of the vocal cords to the CNS. These reflexes and the close connection of the auditory pathway with bulbar and cortical motor speech centers are important for **fine adjustment of the voice**.

**Vowels** ( $\rightarrow$  D). Although their fundamental frequencies are similar (100–130 Hz), spoken vowels can be distinguished by their characteristic overtones (*formants*). Different formants are produced by modifying the shape of oral tract, i.e., mouth and lips ( $\rightarrow$  D). The three primary vowels [a:], [i:], [u:] make up the *vowel triangle*; [œ:], [ɔ:], [ø:], [y:], [æ:], and [ɛ] are intermediates ( $\rightarrow$  D).

The phonetic notation used here is that of the *International Phonetic Society*. The symbols mentioned

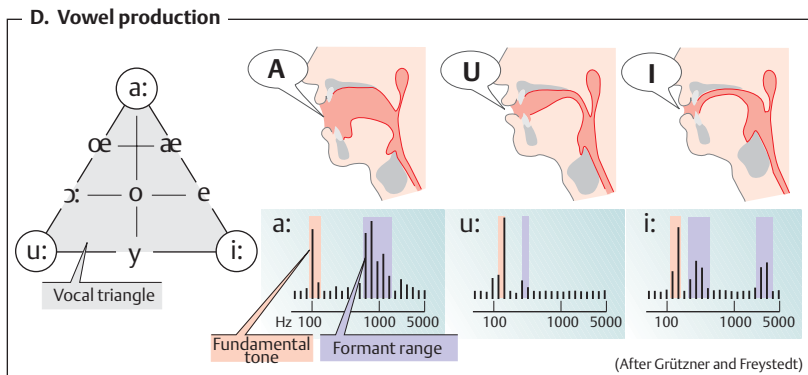
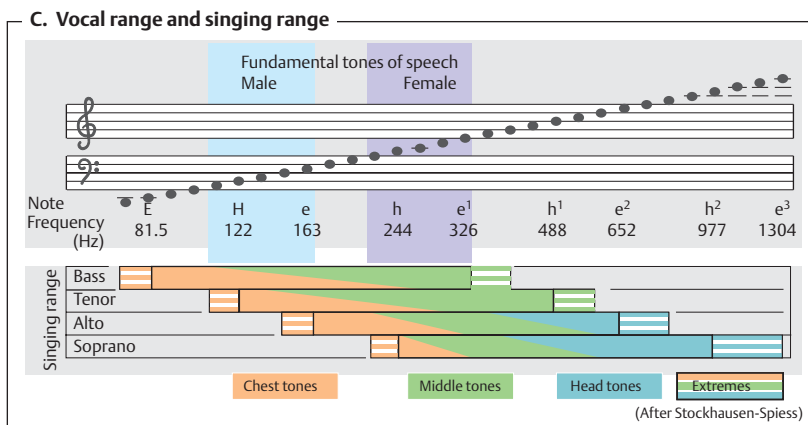
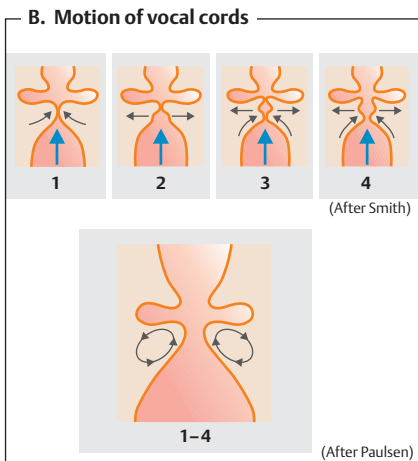
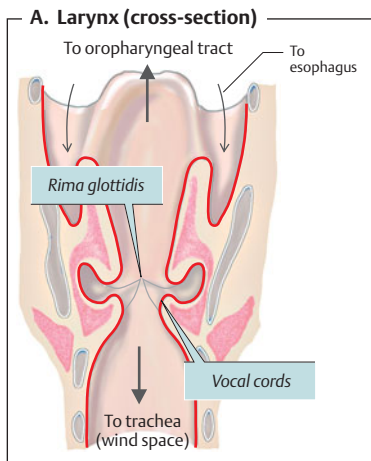
here are as follows: [a:] as in glass; [i:] as in beat; [u:] as in food; [œ:] as in French *peur*; [ɔ:] as in bought; [ø:] as in French *peu* or in German *hören*; [y:] as in French *menu* or in German *trüb*; [æ:] as in bad; [ɛ:] as in head.

**Consonants** are described according to their site of articulation as *labial* (lips, teeth), e.g. P/B/W/F/M; *dental* (teeth, tongue), e.g. D/T/S/M; *lingual* (tongue, front of soft palate), e.g. L; *guttural* (back of tongue and soft palate), e.g. G/K. Consonants can be also defined according to their manner of articulation, e.g., *plosives* or *stop consonants* (P/B/T/D/K/G), *fricatives* (F/V/W/S/Ch) and *vibratives* (R).

The **frequency range** of the voice, including formants, is roughly 40–2000 Hz. Sibilants like /s/ and /z/ have higher-frequency fractions. Individuals suffering from presbycusis or other forms of sensorineural hearing loss are often unable to hear sibilants, making it impossible for them to distinguish between words like “bad” and “bass.” The **tonal range** (fundamental tone,  $\rightarrow$  C) of the *spoken voice* is roughly one octave; that of the *singing voice* is roughly two octaves in untrained singers, and over three octaves in trained singers.

**Language** (see also p. 336). The main components of verbal communication are (a) auditory signal processing ( $\rightarrow$  p. 368), (b) central speech production and (c) execution of motor speech function. The centers for *speech comprehension* are mainly located in the posterior part of area 22, i.e., **Wernicke's area** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 311 E). Lesions of it result in a loss of language comprehension capacity (sensory aphasia). The patient will speak fluently yet often incomprehensibly, but does not notice it because of his/her disturbed comprehension capacity. The patient is also unable to understand complicated sentences or written words. The centers for *speech production* are mainly located in areas 44 and 45, i.e., **Broca's area** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 311 E). It controls the primary speech centers of the sensorimotor cortex.

**Lesions** of this and other cortical centers (e.g., gyrus angularis) result in disorders of speech production (*motor aphasia*). The typical patient is either completely unable to speak or can only express himself in telegraphic style. Another form of aphasia is characterized by the forgetfulness of words (*anomic* or *amnestic aphasia*). Lesions of executive motor centers (corticobulbar tracts, cerebellum) cause various *speech disorders*. Auditory feedback is extremely important for speech. When a person goes deaf, speech deteriorates to an appreciable extent. Children born deaf do not learn to speak.





## Dimensions and Units

Physiology is the science of life processes and bodily functions. Since they are largely based on physical and chemical laws, the investigation, understanding, assessment, and manipulation of these functions is inseparably linked to the measurement of physical, chemical, and other **parameters**, such as blood pressure, hearing capacity, blood pH, and cardiac output. The **units** for measurement of these parameters are listed in this section. We have given preference to the *international system of SI units* (Système International d'Unités) for uniformity and ease of calculation. Non-SI units will be marked with an asterisk. *Conversion factors* for older units are also listed. Complicated or less common physiological units (e.g., wall tension, flow resistance, compliance) are generally explained in the book as they appear. However, some especially important terms that are often (not always correctly) used in physiology will be explained in the Appendix, e.g., concentration, activity, osmolality, osmotic pressure, oncotic pressure, and pH.

### The seven base units of the SI system.

Unit	Symbol	Dimension
Meter	m	length
Kilogram	kg	mass
Second	s	time
Mole	mol	amount of substance
Ampere	A	electric current
Kelvin	K	temperature (absolute)
Candela	cd	luminous intensity

The base units are precisely defined autonomous units. All other units are derived by multiplying or dividing base units and are therefore referred to as **derived units**, e.g.:

- Area (length · length):  $\text{m} \cdot \text{m} = \text{m}^2$
- Velocity (length/time):  $\text{m/s} = \text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ .

If the new unit becomes too complicated, it is given a new name and a corresponding symbol, e.g., force =  $\text{m} \cdot \text{kg} \cdot \text{s}^{-2} = \text{N}$  (→ **Table 1**).

## Fractions and Multiples of Units

**Prefixes** are used to denote decimal multiples and fractions of a unit since it is both tedious and confusing to write large numbers. We generally write 10 kg (kilograms) and 10  $\mu\text{g}$  (micrograms) instead of 10000 g and 0.00001 g, for example. The prefixes, which are usually varied in 1000-unit increments, and the corresponding symbols and conversion factors are listed in **Table 2**. Prefixes are used with base units and the units derived from them (→ **Table 1**), e.g.,  $10^3 \text{ Pa} = 1 \text{ kPa}$ . Decimal increments are used in some cases (e.g., da, h, d, and c; → **Table 2**). **Time** is given in conventional nondecimal units, i.e., *seconds* (s), *minutes* (min), *hours* (h), and *days* (d).

### Length, Area, Volume

The *meter* (m) is the SI unit of **length**. Other units of length have also been used.

#### Examples:

- 1 ångström (Å) =  $10^{-10} \text{ m} = 0.1 \text{ nm}$
- 1 micron ( $\mu$ ) =  $10^{-6} \text{ m} = 1 \mu\text{m}$
- 1 millimicron ( $\text{m}\mu$ ) =  $10^{-9} \text{ m} = 1 \text{ nm}$

American and British units of length:

- 1 inch = 0.0254 m = 25.4 mm
- 1 foot = 0.3048 m
- 1 yard = 3 feet = 0.9144 m
- 1 (statute) mile = 1609.344 m  $\approx$  1.61 km
- 1 nautical mile = 1.853 km

The *square meter* ( $\text{m}^2$ ) is the derived SI unit of **area**, and the *cubic meter* ( $\text{m}^3$ ) is the corresponding unit of **volume**. When denoting the fractions or multiples of these units with prefixes (**Table 2**), please note that there are some peculiarities.

#### Examples:

- 1 m =  $10^3 \text{ mm}$ , but
- 1  $\text{mm}^2 = 10^6 \text{ mm}^2$ , and
- 1  $\text{m}^3 = 10^9 \text{ mm}^3$

The *liter* (L or l)\* is often used as a unit of **volume** for liquids and gases:

- 1 L =  $10^{-3} \text{ m}^3 = 1 \text{ dm}^3$
- 1 mL =  $10^{-6} \text{ m}^3 = 1 \text{ cm}^3$
- 1  $\mu\text{L} = 10^{-9} \text{ m}^3 = 1 \text{ mm}^3$ .

**Table 1** Derived units based on SI base units m, kg, s, cd, and A

Coulomb	C	electrical charge	$s \cdot A$
Farad	F	electrical capacitance	$C \cdot V^{-1} = m^{-2} \cdot kg^{-1} \cdot s^4 \cdot A^2$
Hertz	Hz	frequency	$s^{-1}$
Joule	J	heat, energy, work	$N \cdot m = m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2}$
Lumen	lm	light flux	$cd \cdot sr$
Lux	lx	light intensity	$lm \cdot m^{-2} = cd \cdot sr \cdot m^{-2}$
Newton	N	force	$m \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2}$
Ohm	$\Omega$	electrical resistance	$V \cdot A^{-1} = m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-3} \cdot A^{-2}$
Pascal	P	pressure	$N \cdot m^{-2} = m^{-1} \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2}$
Siemens	S	conductivity	$\Omega^{-1} = m^{-2} \cdot kg^{-1} \cdot s^3 \cdot A^2$
Steradian	sr	measure of solid angle <sup>1</sup>	$1 (m^2 \cdot m^{-2})$
Tesla	T	magnetic flux density	$Wb \cdot m^{-2} = kg \cdot s^{-2} \cdot A^{-1}$
Volt	V	electric potential	$W \cdot A^{-1} = m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-3} \cdot A^{-1}$
Watt	W	electric power	$J \cdot s^{-1} = m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-3}$
Weber	Wb	magnetic flux	$V \cdot s = m^2 \cdot kg \cdot s^{-2} \cdot A^{-1}$

<sup>1</sup> The solid angle of a sphere is defined as the angle subtended at the center of a sphere by an area (A) on its surface times the square of its radius ( $r^2$ ). A steradian (sr) is the solid angle for which  $r = 1$  m and  $A = 1$  m<sup>2</sup>, that is,  $1 \text{ sr} = 1 \text{ m}^2/\text{m}^2$ .

**Table 2** Prefixes for fractions and multiples of units of measure

Prefix	Symbol	Factor	Prefix	Symbol	Factor
deca-	da	$10^1$	deci-	d	$10^{-1}$
hecto-	h	$10^2$	centi-	c	$10^{-2}$
kilo-	k	$10^3$	milli-	m	$10^{-3}$
mega-	M	$10^6$	micro-	$\mu$	$10^{-6}$
giga-	G	$10^9$	nano-	n	$10^{-9}$
tera-	T	$10^{12}$	pico-	p	$10^{-12}$
peta-	P	$10^{15}$	femto-	f	$10^{-15}$
exa-	E	$10^{18}$	atto-	a	$10^{-18}$

Conversion of American and British volume units into SI units:

- 1 fluid ounce (USA) = 29.57 mL
- 1 fluid ounce (UK) = 28.47 mL
- 1 liquid gallon (USA) = 3.785 L
- 1 liquid gallon (UK) = 4.546 L
- 1 pint (USA) = 473.12 mL
- 1 pint (UK) = 569.4 mL

### Velocity, Frequency, Acceleration

**Velocity** is the distance traveled per unit time ( $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ). This is an expression of **linear velocity**, whereas **“volume velocity”** is used to express the *volume flow per unit time*. The latter is expressed as  $\text{L} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$  or  $\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ .

**Frequency** is used to describe how often a periodic event (pulse, breathing, etc.) occurs per unit time. The SI unit of frequency is  $\text{s}^{-1}$  or *hertz* ( $\text{Hz}$ ).  $\text{min}^{-1}$  is also commonly used:

$$\text{min}^{-1} = 1/60 \text{ Hz} \approx 0.0167 \text{ Hz}$$

**Acceleration**, or *velocity change per unit time*, is expressed in  $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} = \text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ . Since *deceleration* is equivalent to negative acceleration, acceleration and deceleration can both be expressed in  $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ .

### Force and Pressure

**Force** equals mass times acceleration. **Weight** is a special case of force as weight equals mass times acceleration of gravity. Since the unit of mass is kg and that of acceleration  $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$ , force is expressed in  $\text{m} \cdot \text{kg} \cdot \text{s}^{-2} = \text{newton}$  (N). The older units of force are converted into N as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ dyn} &= 10^{-5} \text{ N} = 10 \mu\text{N} \\ 1 \text{ pond} &= 9.8 \cdot 10^{-3} \text{ N} = 9.8 \text{ mN} \end{aligned}$$

**Pressure** equals *force per unit area*, so the SI unit of pressure is  $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} = \text{pascal}$  (Pa). However, the pressure of bodily fluids is usually measured in *mm Hg*. This unit and other units are converted into SI units as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ mm H}_2\text{O} &\approx 9.8 \text{ Pa} \\ 1 \text{ cm H}_2\text{O} &\approx 98 \text{ Pa} \\ 1 \text{ mm Hg} &= 133.3 \text{ Pa} = 0.1333 \text{ kPa} \\ 1 \text{ torr} &= 133.3 \text{ Pa} = 0.1333 \text{ kPa} \\ 1 \text{ technical atmosphere (at)} &\approx 98.067 \text{ kPa} \\ 1 \text{ physical atmosphere (atm)} &= 101.324 \text{ kPa} \\ 1 \text{ dyne} \cdot \text{cm}^{-2} &= 0.1 \text{ Pa} \\ 1 \text{ bar} &= 100 \text{ kPa} \end{aligned}$$

### Work, Energy, Heat, Power

**Work** equals *force times distance*,  $\text{N} \cdot \text{m} = \text{J}$  (*joule*), or *pressure times volume*,  $(\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}) \cdot \text{m}^3 = \text{J}$ . **Energy** and **heat** are also expressed in J.

Other units of work, heat, and energy are converted into J as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ erg} &= 10^{-7} \text{ J} = 0.1 \mu\text{J} \\ 1 \text{ cal} &\approx 4.185 \text{ J} \\ 1 \text{ kcal} &\approx 4185 \text{ J} = 4.185 \text{ kJ} \\ 1 \text{ Ws} &= 1 \text{ J} \\ 1 \text{ kWh} &= 3.6 \cdot 10^6 \text{ J} = 3.6 \text{ MJ} \end{aligned}$$

**Power** equals *work per unit time* and is expressed in *watts* (W), where  $W = \text{J} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ . Heat flow is also expressed in W. Other units of power are converted into W as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ erg} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} &= 10^{-7} \text{ W} = 0.1 \mu\text{W} \\ 1 \text{ cal} \cdot \text{h}^{-1} &= 1.163 \cdot 10^{-3} \text{ W} = 1.163 \text{ mW} \\ 1 \text{ metric horse power (hp)} &= 735.5 \text{ W} = 0.7355 \text{ kW} \end{aligned}$$

### Mass, Amount of Substance

The base unit of **mass** is the kilogram (kg), which is unusual insofar as the base unit bears the prefix “kilo”. Moreover, 1000 kg is defined as a *metric ton*\* instead of as a megagram.

**Weight** is the product of mass and gravity (see above), but weight scales are usually calibrated in units of mass (g, kg).

British and American units of mass are converted into SI units as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Avoirdupois weight:} \\ 1 \text{ ounce (oz.)} &= 28.35 \text{ g} \\ 1 \text{ pound (lb.)} &= 453.6 \text{ g} \\ \text{Apothecary's and troy weight:} \\ 1 \text{ ounce} &= 31.1 \text{ g} \\ 1 \text{ pound} &= 373.2 \text{ g} \end{aligned}$$

The mass of a molecule or an atom (**molecular** or **atomic mass**) is often expressed in *daltons* (Da)\*. 1 Da = 1/12 the mass of a  $^{12}\text{C}$  atom, equivalent to 1 kg/Avogadro's constant = 1 kg/( $6.022 \cdot 10^{23}$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ Da} &= 1.66 \cdot 10^{-27} \text{ kg} \\ 1000 \text{ Da} &= 1 \text{ kDa} \end{aligned}$$

The **relative molecular mass ( $M_r$ )**, or *molecular "weight"*, is the molecular mass of a substance divided by 1/12 the mass of a  $^{12}\text{C}$  atom. Since  $M_r$  is a ratio, it is a dimensionless unit.

The **amount of substance**, or *mole* (mol), is related to mass. One mole of substance contains as many elementary particles (atoms, molecules, ions) as 12 g of the nuclide of a  $^{12}\text{C}$  atom =  $6.022 \cdot 10^{23}$  particles. The *conversion factor between moles and mass* is therefore: 1 mole equals the mass of substance (in grams) corresponding to the relative molecular, ionic, or atomic mass of the substance. In other words, it expresses how much higher the mass of the atom, molecule, or ion is than 1/12 that of a  $^{12}\text{C}$  atom.

*Examples:*

- Relative molecular mass of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : 18  
→ 1 mol  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  = 18 g  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .
- Relative atomic mass of  $\text{Na}^+$ : 23  
→ 1 mol  $\text{Na}^+$  = 23 g  $\text{Na}^+$ .
- Relative molecular mass of  $\text{CaCl}_2$ :  
=  $40 + (2 \cdot 35.5) = 111$   
→ 1 mol  $\text{CaCl}_2$  = 111 g  $\text{CaCl}_2$ .  
( $\text{CaCl}_2$  contains 2 mol  $\text{Cl}^-$  and 1 mol  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .)

The **equivalent mass** is calculated as moles divided by the valency of the ion in question and expressed in *equivalents* (Eq)\*. The mole and equivalent values of *monovalent ions* are identical:

$$1 \text{ Eq Na}^+ = 1/1 \text{ mol Na}^+$$

For bivalent ions, equivalent =  $1/2$  mole:

$$1 \text{ Eq Ca}^{2+} = 1/2 \text{ mole Ca}^{2+} \text{ or } 1 \text{ mole Ca}^{2+} = 2 \text{ Eq Ca}^{2+}$$

The **osmole (Osm)** is also derived from the mole (see below).

## Electrical Units

Electrical **current** is the flow of charged particles, e.g., of electrons through a wire or of ions through a cell membrane. The number of particles moving per unit time is measured in *amperes* (A). Electrical current cannot occur unless there is an **electrical potential difference**, in short also called potential, voltage, or tension. Batteries and generators are used to create such potentials. Most electrical potentials in the body are generated by ionic flow (→ p. 32). The *volt* (V) is the SI unit of electrical potential (→ Table 1).

How much electrical current flows at a given potential depends on the amount of **electrical resistance**, as is described in *Ohm's law*

(voltage = current · resistance). The unit of electrical resistance is *ohm* ( $\Omega$ ) (→ Table 1). *Conductivity* is the reciprocal of resistance ( $1/\Omega$ ) and is expressed in *siemens* (S), where  $\text{S} = \Omega^{-1}$ . In physiology, resistance is related to the membrane surface area ( $\Omega \cdot \text{m}^2$ ). The reciprocal of this defines the **membrane conductance** to a given ion:  $\Omega^{-1} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} = \text{S} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$  (→ p. 32).

Electrical **work** or **energy** is expressed in *joules* (J) or *watt seconds* (Ws), whereas electrical **power** is expressed in *watts* (W).

The electrical **capacitance** of a capacitor, e.g., a cell membrane, is the ratio of *charge* (C) to *potential* (V); it is expressed in *farads* (F) (→ Table 1).

**Direct current** (DC) always flows in one direction, whereas the direction of flow of **alternating current** (AC) constantly changes. The **frequency** of one cycle of change per unit time is expressed in *hertz* (Hz). Mains current is generally 60 Hz in the USA and 50 Hz in Europe.

## Temperature

**Kelvin** (K) is the SI unit of temperature. The lowest possible temperature is 0 K, or *absolute zero*. The **Celsius** or **centigrade** scale is derived from the Kelvin scale. The temperature in degrees Celsius ( $^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) can easily be converted into K:

$$^{\circ}\text{C} = \text{K} - 273.15.$$

In the USA, temperatures are normally given in degrees Fahrenheit ( $^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). Conversions between Fahrenheit and Celsius are made as follows:

$$^{\circ}\text{F} = (9/5 \cdot ^{\circ}\text{C}) + 32$$

$$^{\circ}\text{C} = (^{\circ}\text{F} - 32) \cdot 5/9.$$

Some important Kelvin, Celsius, and Fahrenheit temperature equivalents:

	K	$^{\circ}\text{C}$	$^{\circ}\text{F}$
Freezing point of water	+ 273	0 $^{\circ}$	+ 32 $^{\circ}$
Room temperature	293– 298	20 $^{\circ}$ – 25 $^{\circ}$	68 $^{\circ}$ – 77 $^{\circ}$
Body core temperature	310	37 $^{\circ}$	98.6 $^{\circ}$
Fever	311– 315	38 $^{\circ}$ – 42 $^{\circ}$	100 $^{\circ}$ – 108 $^{\circ}$
Boiling point of water (at sea level)	373	100 $^{\circ}$	212 $^{\circ}$

### Concentrations, Fractions, Activity

The word *concentration* is used to describe many different relationships in physiology and medicine. Concentration of a substance X is often abbreviated as [X]. Some concentrations are listed below:

–*Mass concentration*, or the mass of a substance per unit volume (e.g., g/L = kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

–*Molar concentration*, or the amount of a substance per unit volume (e.g., mol/L)

–*Molal concentration*, or the amount of substance per unit mass of solvent (e.g., mol/kg H<sub>2</sub>O).

The SI unit of **mass concentration** is g/L (kg/m<sup>3</sup>, mg/L, etc.). The conversion factors for older units are listed below:

$$1 \text{ g}/100 \text{ mL} = 10 \text{ g/L}$$

$$1 \text{ g}\% = 10 \text{ g/L}$$

$$1 \text{ \% (w/v)} = 10 \text{ g/L}$$

$$1 \text{ g}\% = 1 \text{ g/L}$$

$$1 \text{ mg}\% = 10 \text{ mg/L}$$

$$1 \text{ mg}/100 \text{ mL} = 10 \text{ mg/L}$$

$$1 \text{ }\mu\text{g}\% = 10 \text{ }\mu\text{g/L}$$

$$1 \text{ }\gamma\% = 10 \text{ }\mu\text{g/L}$$

**Molarity** is the **molar concentration**, which is expressed in mol/L (or mol/m<sup>3</sup>, mmol/L, etc.). Conversion factors are listed below:

$$1 \text{ M (molar)} = 1 \text{ mol/L}$$

$$1 \text{ N (normal)} = (1/\text{valency}) \cdot \text{mol/L}$$

$$1 \text{ mM (mmolar)} = 1 \text{ mmol/L}$$

$$1 \text{ Eq/L} = (1/\text{valency}) \cdot \text{mol/L}$$

In highly diluted solutions, the only difference between the molar and molal concentrations is that the equation “1 L H<sub>2</sub>O = 1 kg H<sub>2</sub>O” holds at only one particular temperature (4°C). Biological fluids are not highly diluted solutions. The volume of solute particles often makes up a significant fraction of the overall volume of the solution. One liter of plasma, for example, contains 70 mL of proteins and salts and only 0.93 L of water. In this case, there is a 7% difference between molarity and molality. Differences higher than 30% can occur in intracellular fluid. Although molarity is more commonly measured (volumetric measurement), molality plays a more important role in biophysical and biological processes and chemical reactions.

The **activity** (a) of a solution is a thermodynamic measure of its physicochemical efficacy. In physiology, the activity of ions is measured by ion-sensi-

tive electrodes (e.g., for H<sup>+</sup>, Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup>, Cl<sup>-</sup>, or Ca<sup>2+</sup>). The activity and molality of a solution are identical when the total **ionic strength** ( $\mu$ ) of the solution is very small, e.g., when the solution is an ideal solution. The ionic strength is dependent on the charge and concentration of all ions in the solution:

$$\mu = 0.5 (z_1^2 \cdot c_1 + z_2^2 \cdot c_2 + \dots + z_n^2 \cdot c_n) \quad [13.1]$$

where  $z_i$  is the valency and  $c_i$  the molal concentration of a given ion “i”, and 1, 2, etc. represent the different types of ions in the solution. Owing to the high ionic strength of biological fluids, the solute particles influence each other. Consequently, the activity (a) of a solution is always significantly lower than its molar concentration (c). Activity is calculated as  $a = f \cdot c$ , where  $f$  is the **activity coefficient**.

*Example:* At an ionic strength of 0.1 (as it is the case for a solution containing 100 mmol NaCl/kg H<sub>2</sub>O),  $f = 0.76$  for Na<sup>+</sup>. The activity important in biophysical processes is therefore roughly 25% lower than the molality of the solution.

In solutions that contain weak electrolytes which do not completely dissociate, the molality and activity of free ions also depend on the *degree of electrolytic dissociation*.

**Fractions** (“fractional concentrations”) are relative units:

– *Mass ratio*, i.e., mass fraction relative to total mass

– *Molar ratio*

– *Volume ratio*, i.e. volume fraction relative to total volume. The volume fraction (F) is commonly used in respiratory physiology.

Fractions are expressed in units of g/g, mol/mol, and L/L respectively, i.e. in “units” of 1, 10<sup>-3</sup>, 10<sup>-6</sup>, etc. The unabbreviated unit (e.g., g/g) should be used whenever possible because it identifies the type of fraction in question. The fractions %, ‰, ppm (parts per million), and ppb (parts per billion) are used for all types of fractions.

Conversion:

$$1\% = 0.01$$

$$1\% = 1 \cdot 10^{-3}$$

$$1 \text{ vol}\% = 0.01 \text{ L/L}$$

$$1 \text{ ppm} = 1 \cdot 10^{-6}$$

$$1 \text{ ppb} = 1 \cdot 10^{-9}$$

### Osmolality, Osmotic / Oncotic Pressure

**Osmolarity** (Osm/L), a unit derived from molarity, is the *concentration of all osmotically active particles* in a solution, regardless of which compounds or mixtures are involved.

However, measurements with osmometers as well as the biophysical application of osmotic concentration refer to the number of osmoles per unit volume of *solvent* as opposed to the total volume of the solution. This and the fact that volume is temperature-dependent are the reasons why **osmolality** (Osm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O) is generally more suitable.

**Ideal osmolality** is derived from the molality of the substances in question. If, for example, 1 mmol (180 mg) of glucose is dissolved in 1 kg of water (1 L at 4°C), the molality equals 1 mmol/kg H<sub>2</sub>O and the ideal osmolality equals 1 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O. This relationship changes when electrolytes that dissociate are used, e.g., NaCl  $\rightleftharpoons$  Na<sup>+</sup> + Cl<sup>-</sup>. Both of these ions are osmotically active. When a substance that dissociates is dissolved in 1 kg of water, the ideal osmolality equals the molality times the number of dissociation products, e.g., 1 mmol NaCl/kg H<sub>2</sub>O = 2 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O.

Electrolytes weaker than NaCl do not dissociate completely. Therefore, their *degree of electrolytic dissociation* must be considered.

These rules apply only to ideal solutions, i.e., those that are extremely dilute. As mentioned above, bodily fluids are **nonideal (or real) solutions** because their real osmolality is lower than the ideal osmolality. The real osmolality is calculated by multiplying the ideal osmolality by the *osmotic coefficient* ( $\sigma$ ). The osmotic coefficient is concentration-dependent and amounts to, for example, approximately 0.926 for NaCl with an (ideal) osmolality of 300 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O. The real osmolality of this NaCl solution thus amounts to 0.926 · 300 = 278 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O.

Solutions with a real osmolality equal to that of plasma ( $\approx$  290 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O) are said to be isosmolar. Those whose osmolality is higher or lower than that of plasma are hyperosmolar or hyposmolar.

### Osmolality and Tonicity

Each osmotically active particle in solution (cf. real osmolality) exerts an **osmotic pressure** ( $\pi$ ) as described by *van't Hoff's equation*:

$$\pi = R \cdot T \cdot c_{\text{osm}} \quad [13.2]$$

where R is the universal gas constant (8.314 J · K<sup>-1</sup> · Osm<sup>-1</sup>), T is the absolute temperature in K, and  $c_{\text{osm}}$  is the real osmolality in Osm · (m<sup>3</sup>

H<sub>2</sub>O)<sup>-1</sup> = mOsm · (L·H<sub>2</sub>O)<sup>-1</sup>. If two solutions of different osmolality ( $\Delta c_{\text{osm}}$ ) are separated by a water-permeable **selective membrane**,  $\Delta c_{\text{osm}}$  will exert an **osmotic pressure difference** ( $\Delta\pi$ ) across the membrane in steady state if the membrane is less permeable to the solutes than to water. In this case, the *selectivity* of the membrane, or its relative impermeability to the solutes, is described by the **reflection coefficient** ( $\sigma$ ), which is assigned a value between 1 (impermeable) and 0 (as permeable as water). The reflection coefficient of a *semi-permeable membrane* is  $\sigma = 1$ . By combining **van't Hoff's** and **Staverman's equations**, the osmotic pressure difference ( $\Delta\pi$ ) can be calculated as follows:

$$\Delta\pi = \sigma \cdot R \cdot T \cdot \Delta c_{\text{osm}} \quad [13.3]$$

Equation 13.3 shows that a solution with the same osmolality as plasma will exert the same osmotic pressure on a membrane in steady state (i.e., that the solution and plasma will be isotonic) only if  $\sigma = 1$ . In other words, the membrane must be strictly semipermeable.

*Isotonicity*, or equality of osmotic pressure, exists between plasma and the cytosol of red blood cells (and other cells of the body) in steady state. When the red cells are mixed in a urea solution with an osmolality of 290 mOsm/kg H<sub>2</sub>O, isotonicity does not prevail after urea ( $\sigma < 1$ ) starts to diffuse into the red cells. The interior of the red blood cells therefore becomes hypertonic, and water is drawn inside the cell due to osmosis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24). As a result, the erythrocytes continuously swell until they burst.

An **osmotic gradient** resulting in the subsequent flow of water therefore occurs in all parts of the body in which dissolved particles pass through water-permeable cell membranes or cell layers. This occurs, for example, when Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup> pass through the epithelium of the small intestine or proximal renal tubule. The extent of this water flow or *volume flow*  $J_v$  (m<sup>3</sup> · s<sup>-1</sup>) is dependent on the *hydraulic conductivity*  $k$  (m · s<sup>-1</sup> · Pa<sup>-1</sup>) of the membrane (i.e., its permeability to water), the *area* A of passage (m<sup>2</sup>), and the pressure difference, which, in this case, is equivalent to the osmotic pressure difference  $\Delta\pi$  (Pa):

$$J_v = k \cdot A \cdot \Delta\pi \quad [13.4]$$

Since it is normally not possible to separately determine  $k$  and  $A$  of a biological membrane or cell layer, the product of the two ( $k \cdot A$ ) is often calculated as the *ultrafiltration coefficient*  $K_f$  ( $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1} \text{Pa}^{-1}$ ) (cf. p. 152).

The transport of osmotically active particles causes water flow. Inversely, flowing water drags dissolved particles along with it. This type of *solvent drag* ( $\rightarrow$  p. 24) is a form of convective transport.

Solvent drag does not occur if the cell wall is impermeable to the substance in question ( $\sigma = 1$ ). Instead, the water will be retained on the side where the substance is located. In the case of the aforementioned epithelia, this means that the substances that cannot be reabsorbed from the tubule or intestinal lumen lead to osmotic diuresis ( $\rightarrow$  p. 172) and diarrhea respectively. The latter is the mechanism of action of saline laxatives ( $\rightarrow$  p. 262).

### Oncotic Pressure / Colloid Osmotic Pressure

As all other particles dissolved in plasma, macromolecular proteins also exert an osmotic pressure referred to as *oncotic pressure* or *colloid osmotic pressure*. Considering its contribution of only 3.5 kPa (25 mm Hg) relative to the total osmotic pressure of the small molecular components of plasma, the oncotic pressure on a strictly semipermeable membrane could be defined as negligible. However, within the body, oncotic pressure is so important because the **endothelium** that lines the blood vessels allows small molecules to pass relatively easily ( $\sigma \approx 0$ ). According to equation 13.3, their osmotic pressure difference  $\Delta\pi$  at the endothelium is virtually zero. Consequently, only the oncotic pressure difference of proteins is effective, as the endothelium is either partly or completely impermeable to them, depending on the capillary segment in question. Because the protein reflection coefficient  $\sigma \gg 0$  and the protein content of the plasma (ca. 75 g/L) are higher than that of the interstitium, these two factors *counteract filtration*, i.e., the blood pressure-driven outflow of plasma water from the endothelial lumen, making the endothelium an effective volume barrier between the plasma space and the interstitium.

If the blood pressure drives water out of the blood into the interstitium (filtration), the

plasma protein concentration and thus the oncotic pressure difference  $\pi$  will rise ( $\rightarrow$  pp. 152, 208). This rise is much higher than equation 13.3 leads one to expect ( $\rightarrow$  A). The difference is attributable to specific biophysical properties of plasma proteins. If there is a pressure-dependent efflux or influx of water out of or into the bloodstream, these relatively high changes in oncotic pressure difference automatically exert a counterpressure that limits the flow of water.

### pH, pK, Buffers

The **pH** indicates the hydrogen ion  $[\text{H}^+]$  concentration of a solution. According to *Sørensen*, the pH is the negative common logarithm of the molal  $\text{H}^+$  concentration in mol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

*Examples:*

$$1 \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} = 10^0 \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} = \text{pH } 0,$$

$$0.1 \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} = 10^{-1} \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} = \text{pH } 1,$$

$$\text{and so on up to } 10^{-14} \text{ mol/kg H}_2\text{O} = \text{pH } 14.$$

Since glass electrodes are normally used to measure the pH, the  **$\text{H}^+$  activity** of the solution is actually being determined. Thus, the following rule applies:

$$\text{pH} = -\log (f_{\text{H}^+} \cdot [\text{H}^+]),$$

where  $f_{\text{H}^+}$  is the activity coefficient of  $\text{H}^+$ . Considering its ionic concentration (see above), the  $f_{\text{H}^+}$  of plasma is  $\approx 0.8$ .

The logarithmic nature of pH must be considered when observing pH changes. For example, a rise in pH from 7.4 (40 nmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) to pH 7.7 decreases the  $\text{H}^+$  activity by 20 nmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , whereas an equivalent decrease (e.g., from pH 7.4 to pH 7.1) increases the  $\text{H}^+$  activity by 40 nmol/kg  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

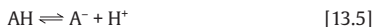
The **pK** is fundamentally similar to the pH. It is the negative common logarithm of the *dissociation constant* of an acid ( $K_a$ ) or of a base ( $K_b$ ):

$$\text{pK}_a = -\log K_a$$

$$\text{pK}_b = -\log K_b.$$

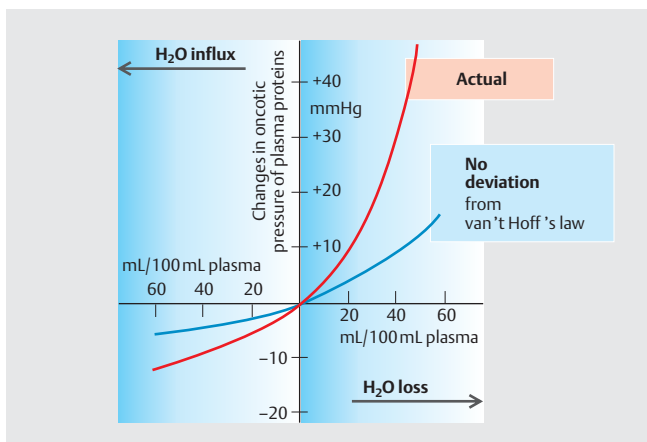
For an acid and its corresponding base,  $\text{pK}_a + \text{pK}_b = 14$ , so that the value of  $\text{pK}_a$  can be derived from that of  $\text{pK}_b$  and vice versa.

The *law of mass actions* applies when a weak acid (AH) dissociates:



It states that the product of the molal concentration (indicated by square brackets) of the dissociation products divided by the concentration of the nondissociated substance remains constant:





**A. Physiological significance of deviations on oncotic pressure of plasma from van't Hoff's equation.** A loss of water from plasma leads to a disproportionate rise in oncotic pressure, which counteracts the water loss. Conversely, the dilution of plasma due to the influx of water leads to a disproportionate drop in oncotic pressure, though less pronounced. Both of these are important mechanisms for maintaining a constant blood volume and preventing edema. (Adapted from Landis EM u. Pappenheimer JR. *Handbook of Physiology*. Section 2: Circulation, Vol. II. American Physiological Society: Washington D.C. 1963, S. 975.)

$$K_a = \frac{[A^-] \cdot [H^+] \cdot f_H}{[AH]} \quad [13.6]$$

Converted into logarithmic form (and inserting  $H^+$  activity for  $[H^+]$ ), the equation is transformed into:

$$\log K_a = \log \frac{[A^-]}{[AH]} + \log ([H^+] \cdot f_H) \quad [13.7]$$

or

$$-\log ([H^+] \cdot f_H) = -\log K_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[AH]} \quad [13.8]$$

Based on the above definitions for pH and  $pK_a$ , it can also be converted into

$$pH = pK_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[AH]} \quad [13.9]$$

Because the concentration and not the activity of  $A^-$  and AH is used here,  $pK_a$  is concentration-dependent in nonideal solutions.

Equation 13.9 is the general form of the **Henderson–Hasselbalch equation** ( $\rightarrow$  p. 138ff.), which describes the relationship between the pH of a solution and the concentration ratio of a dissociated to an undissociated form of a solute. If  $[A^-] = [AH]$ , then the concentration ratio is  $1/1 = 1$ , which corresponds to  $pH = pK_a$  since the  $\log$  of 1 = 0.

A weak acid (AH) and its dissociated salt ( $A^-$ ) form a **buffer system** for  $H^+$  and  $OH^-$  ions:

Addition of  $H^+$  yields  $A^- + H^+ \rightarrow AH$

Addition of  $OH^-$  yields  $AH + OH^- \rightarrow A^- + H_2O$ .

The **buffering power** of a buffer system is greatest when  $[AH] = [A^-]$ , i.e., when the pH of the solution equals the  $pK_a$  of the buffer.

**Example:** Both  $[A^-]$  and  $[AH] = 10$  mmol/L and  $pK_a = 7.0$ . After addition of 2 mmol/L of  $H^+$  ions, the  $[A^-]/[AH]$  ratio changes from 10/10 to 8/12 since 2 mmol/L of  $A^-$  are consequently converted into 2 mmol/L of AH. Since the  $\log$  of  $8/12 \approx -0.18$ , the pH decreases

by 0.18 units to pH 6.82. If the initial  $[A^-]/[AH]$  ratio had been 3/17, the pH would have dropped from an initial pH 6.25 (7 plus the log of 3/17 = 6.25) to pH 5.7 (7 + log of 1/19 = 5.7), i.e., by 0.55 pH units after addition of the same quantity of  $H^+$  ions.

The titration of a buffer solution with  $H^+$  (or  $OH^-$ ) can be plotted to generate a **buffering curve** ( $\rightarrow$  B). The steep part of the curve represents the range of the best buffering power. The  $pK_a$  value lies at the *turning point* in the middle of the steep portion of the curve. Substances that gain (or lose) more than one  $H^+$  per molecule have more than one  $pK$  value and can therefore exert an optimal buffering action in several regions. Phosphoric acid ( $H_3PO_4$ ) donates three  $H^+$  ions, thereby successively forming  $H_2PO_4^-$ ,  $HPO_4^{2-}$ , and  $PO_4^{3-}$ . The buffer pair  $HPO_4^{2-}/H_2PO_4^-$  with a  $pK_a$  of 6.8 is important in human physiology ( $\rightarrow$  p. 174ff.).

The absolute slope,  $d[A^-]/d(pH)$ , of a buffering curve (plot of pH vs.  $[A^-]$ ) is a measure of **buffering capacity** ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot [\Delta pH]^{-1}$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 138).

## Powers and Logarithms

**Powers of ten** are used to more easily and conveniently write numbers that are much larger or smaller than 1.

*Examples:*

$$100 = 10 \cdot 10 = 10^2$$

$$1000 = 10 \cdot 10 \cdot 10 = 10^3$$

$$10000 = 10 \cdot 10 \cdot 10 \cdot 10 = 10^4, \text{ etc.}$$

In this case, the exponent denotes the amount of times ten is multiplied by itself. If the number is not an exact power of ten (e.g., 34 500), divide it by the next lowest decimal power (10 000) and use the quotient (3.45) as a multiplier to express the result as  $3.45 \cdot 10^4$ .

The number 10 can also be expressed exponentially ( $10^1$ ). Numbers much smaller than 1 are annotated using negative exponents.

*Examples:*

$$1 = 10 \div 10 = 10^0$$

$$0.1 = 10 \div 10 \div 10 = 10^{-1}$$

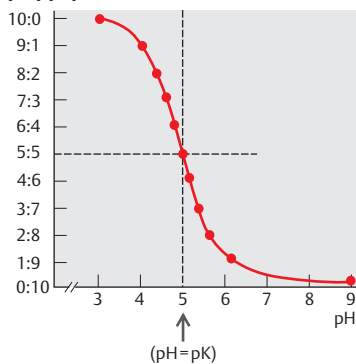
$$0.01 = 10 \div 10 \div 10 = 10^{-2}, \text{ etc.}$$

Similar to the large numbers above, numbers that are not exact powers of ten are expressed using multipliers, e.g.,

$$0.04 = 4 \cdot 0.01 = 4 \cdot 10^{-2}.$$

*Note:* When writing numbers smaller than 1, the (negative) exponent corresponds to the

Concentration ratio of buffer pair  $[AH]:[A^-]$



**B. Buffering Curve.** Graphic representation of the relationship between pH and the concentration ratio of buffer acid/buffer base  $[AH]/[A^-]$  as a function of pH. The numerical values are roughly equivalent to those of the buffer pair *acetic acid/acetate* ( $pK_a = 4.7$ ). The buffering power of a buffer system is greatest when  $[AH] = [A^-]$ , i.e., when the pH of the solution equals the  $pK_a$  of the buffer (broken lines).

position of the 1 after the decimal point; therefore,  $0.001 = 10^{-3}$ . When writing numbers greater than 10, the exponent corresponds to the number of decimal positions to the left of the decimal point minus 1; therefore,  $1124.5 = 1.245 \cdot 10^3$ .

Exponents can also be used to represent **units of measure**, e.g.,  $m^3$ . As in the case of  $10^3$ , the base element (meters) is multiplied by itself three times ( $m \cdot m \cdot m$ ;  $\rightarrow$  p. 372). Negative exponents are also used to express units of measure. As with  $1/10 = 10^{-1}$ ,  $1/s$  can be written as  $s^{-1}$ ,  $\text{mol/L}$  as  $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ , etc.

There are specific rules for performing calculations with powers of ten. Addition and subtraction are possible only if the exponents are identical, e.g.,

$$(2.5 \cdot 10^2) + (1.5 \cdot 10^2) = 4 \cdot 10^2.$$

Unequal exponents, e.g.,  $(2 \cdot 10^3) + (3 \cdot 10^2)$ , must first be equalized:

$$(2 \cdot 10^3) + (0.3 \cdot 10^3) = 2.3 \cdot 10^3.$$

The exponents of the multiplicands are added together when multiplying powers of 10, and the denominator is subtracted from the numerator when dividing powers of ten.

**Examples:**

$$10^2 \cdot 10^3 = 10^{2+3} = 10^5$$

$$10^4 \div 10^2 = 10^{4-2} = 10^2$$

$$10^2 \div 10^4 = 10^{2-4} = 10^{-2}$$

The usual mathematical rules apply to the multipliers of powers of ten, e.g.,

$$(3 \cdot 10^2) \cdot (2 \cdot 10^3) = (2 \cdot 3) \cdot (10^{2+3}) = 6 \cdot 10^5.$$

**Logarithms.** There are two kinds of logarithms: common and natural. Logarithmic calculations are performed using exponents alone. The **common (decimal) logarithm** ( $\log$  or  $\lg$ ) is the power or exponent to which 10 must be raised to equal the number in question. The common logarithm of 100 ( $\log 100$ ) is 2, for example, because  $10^2 = 100$ . Decimal logarithms are commonly used in physiology, e.g., to define pH values (see above) and to plot the pressure of sound on a decibel scale ( $\rightarrow$  p. 363).

**Natural logarithms** ( $\ln$ ) have a natural base of 2.71828..., also called *base e*. The common logarithm ( $\log x$ ) equals the natural logarithm of  $x$  ( $\ln x$ ) divided by the natural logarithm of 10 ( $\ln 10$ ), where  $\ln 10 = 2.302585$ . The following rules apply when converting between natural and common logarithms:

$$\log x = (\ln x) / 2.3$$

$$\ln x = 2.3 \cdot \log x.$$

When performing mathematical operations with logarithms, the type of operation is reduced by one rank—multiplication becomes addition, potentiation becomes multiplication, and so on.

**Examples:**

$$\log(a \cdot b) = \log a + \log b$$

$$\log(a/b) = \log a - \log b$$

$$\log a^n = n \cdot \log a$$

$$\log \sqrt[n]{a} = (\log a) / n$$

**Special cases:**

$$\log 10 = \ln e = 1$$

$$\log 1 = \ln 1 = 0$$

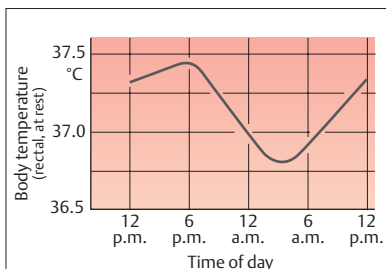
$$\log 0 = \ln 0 = \pm \infty$$

## Graphic Representation of Data

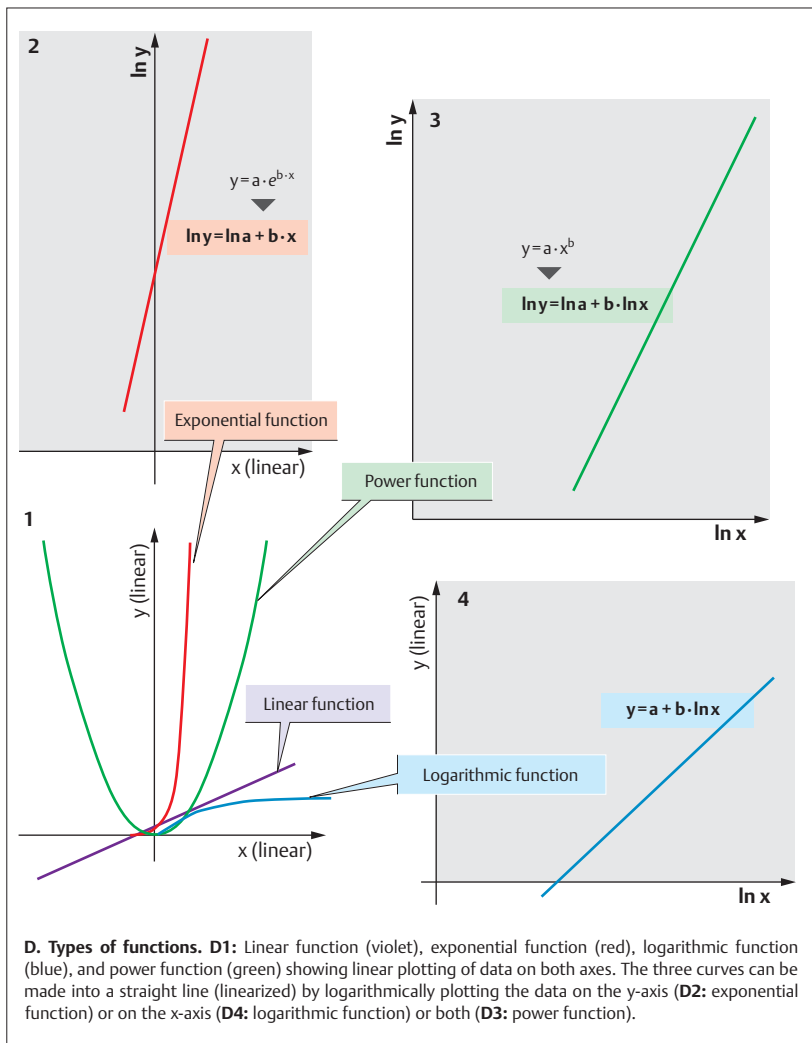
Graphic plots of data are used to provide a clear and concise representation of measurements, e.g., body temperature over the time of day ( $\rightarrow$  C). The axes on which the measurements (e.g., temperature and time) are plotted are called **coordinates**. The vertical axis is referred to as the *ordinate* (temperature) and the horizontal axis is the *abscissa* (time). It is customary to plot the first variable  $x$  (time) on the abscissa and the other dependent variable  $y$  (temperature) on the ordinate. The abscissa is therefore called the *x-axis* and the ordinate the *y-axis*. This method of graphically plotting data can be used to illustrate the connection between any two related dimensions imaginable, e.g., to describe the relationship between height and age, lung capacity and intrapulmonary pressure, etc. ( $\rightarrow$  p. 117).

Plotting of data makes it easier to determine whether two variables correlate with each other. For example, the plot of height (ordinate) over age (abscissa) shows that the height increases during the growth years and reaches a plateau at the age of about 17 years. This means that height is related to age in the first phase of life, but is largely independent of age in the second phase. A correlation does not necessarily indicate a causal relationship. A decrease in the birth rate in Alsace-Lorraine, for example, correlated with a decrease in the number or nesting storks for a while.

When plotting variables of wide-ranging dimensions (e.g., 1 to 100 000) on a coordinate



**C. Illustration of how to plot data on a coordinate system.** The plot in this example shows the relationship between body temperature (rectal, at rest) and time of day.



system, it can be impossible to plot small values individually without having the axes become extremely long. This problem can be solved by plotting the data as powers of 10 or logarithms. For example, 1, 10, 100, and 1000 are written as  $10^0$ ,  $10^1$ ,  $10^2$ , and  $10^3$  or as logarithms 0, 1, 2, and 3. This makes it possible to

obtain a relatively accurate graphic representation of very small numbers, and all the numbers fit on an axis of reasonable length (cf. sound curves on p. 363 B).

Correlations can be either linear or non-linear. *Linear correlations* ( $\rightarrow$  D1, violet line) obey the linear relationship

$$y = ax + b,$$

where  $a$  is the slope of the line and  $b$  is the point, or *intercept* (at  $x = 0$ ), where it intersects the  $y$ -axis.

Many correlations are nonlinear. For simpler functions, graphic linearization can be achieved via a nonlinear (logarithmic) plot of the  $x$  and/or  $y$  values. This allows for the extrapolation of values beyond the range of measurement (see below) or for the generation of calibration curves from only two points. In addition, this method also permits the calculation of the “mean” correlation of scattered  $x$ - $y$  pairs using *regression lines*.

An **exponential function** ( $\rightarrow$  D1, red curve), such as

$$y = a \cdot e^{b \cdot x},$$

can be linearized by plotting  $\ln y$  on the  $y$ -axis ( $\rightarrow$  D2):

$$\ln y = \ln a + b \cdot x,$$

where  $b$  is the slope and  $\ln a$  is the intercept.

A **logarithmic function** ( $\rightarrow$  D1, blue curve), such as

$$y = a + b \cdot \ln x,$$

can be linearized by plotting  $\ln x$  on the  $x$ -axis ( $\rightarrow$  D4), where  $b$  is the slope and  $a$  is the intercept.

A **power function** ( $\rightarrow$  D1, green curve), such as

$$y = a \cdot x^b,$$

can be graphically linearized by plotting  $\ln y$  and  $\ln x$  on the coordinate axes ( $\rightarrow$  D3) because

$$\ln y = \ln a + b \cdot \ln x,$$

where  $b$  is the slope and  $\ln a$  is the intercept.

Note: The condition  $x$  or  $y = 0$  does not exist on logarithmic coordinates because  $\ln 0 = \infty$ . Nevertheless,  $\ln a$  is still called the intercept in the equation when the logarithmic abscissa ( $\rightarrow$  D3,4) is intercepted by the ordinate at  $\ln x = 0$ , i.e.,  $x = 1$ .

Instead of plotting  $\ln x$  and/or  $\ln y$  on the  $x$ - and/or  $y$ -axis, they can be plotted on **logarithmic paper** on which the ordinate or abscissa (semi-log paper) or both coordinates (log-log paper) are plotted in logarithmic units. In such cases,  $a$  is no longer treated as the intercept because the position of  $a$  depends on site of intersection of the  $x$ -axis by the  $y$ -axis. All values  $> 0$  are possible.

Other nonlinear functions can also be graphically linearized using an appropriate plotting method. Take, for example, the **Michaelis-Menten equation** ( $\rightarrow$  E1), which applies to

many enzyme reactions and carrier-mediated transport processes:

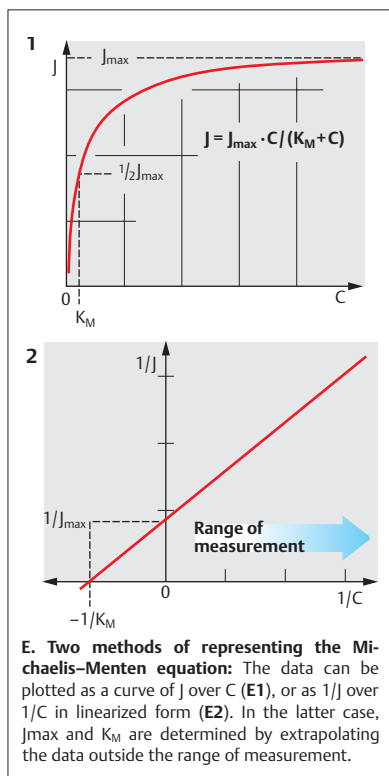
$$J = J_{\max} \cdot \frac{C}{K_M + C} \quad [13.10]$$

where  $J$  is the actual rate of transport (e.g., in  $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ),  $J_{\max}$  is the maximal transport rate,  $C$  ( $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ) is the actual concentration of the substance to be transported, and  $K_M$  is the concentration (half-saturation concentration) at  $1/2 J_{\max}$ .

One of the three commonly used linear rearrangements of the Michaelis-Menten equation, the *Lineweaver-Burk plot*, states:

$$1/J = (K_M/J_{\max}) \cdot (1/C) + 1/J_{\max}, \quad [13.11]$$

Consequently, a plot of  $1/J$  on the  $y$ -axis and  $1/C$  on the  $x$ -axis results in a straight line ( $\rightarrow$  E2). While a plot of  $J$  over  $C$  ( $\rightarrow$  E1) does not



permit accurate extrapolation of  $J_{\max}$  (because an infinitely high concentration of C would be required), the linear rearrangement ( $\rightarrow$  E2) makes it possible to generate a regression line that can be extrapolated to  $C = \infty$  from the measured data. Since  $1/C$  is equal to  $1/\infty = 0$ ,  $1/J_{\max}$  lies on the y-axis at  $x = 0$  ( $\rightarrow$  E2). The reciprocal of this value is  $J_{\max}$ . Insertion of  $1/J = 0$  into equation 13.11 yields

$$0 = (K_M/J_{\max}) \cdot (1/C) + 1/J_{\max} \quad [13.12]$$

or  $1/K_M = -1/C$ , so that  $K_M$  can be derived from the negative reciprocal of the x-axis intersect, which corresponds to  $1/J = 0$  ( $\rightarrow$  E2).

### The Greek Alphabet

$\alpha$	A	alpha
$\beta$	B	beta
$\gamma$	$\Gamma$	gamma
$\delta$	$\Delta$	delta
$\epsilon$	E	epsilon
$\zeta$	Z	zeta
$\eta$	H	eta
$\vartheta, \theta$	$\Theta$	theta
$\iota$	I	iota
$\kappa$	K	kappa
$\lambda$	$\Lambda$	lamda
$\mu$	M	mu
$\nu$	N	nu
$\xi$	$\Xi$	xi
$\omicron$	O	omicron
$\pi$	$\Pi$	pi
$\rho$	P	rho
$\sigma, \varsigma$	$\Sigma$	sigma
$\tau$	T	tau
$\upsilon$	Y	upsilon
$\phi$	$\Phi$	phi
$\chi$	X	chi
$\psi$	$\Psi$	psi
$\omega$	$\Omega$	omega

## Reference Values in Physiology

### Total body and cells

Chemical composition of 1 kg fat-free body mass of an adult

720 g water, 210 g protein, 22.4 g Ca, 12 g P, 2.7 g K, 1.8 g Na, 1.8 g Cl, 0.47 g Mg

Distribution of water in adult (child) as percentage of body weight (cf. p. 168)

Intracellular: 40% (40%); interstitium: 15% (25%); plasma: 5% (5%)

Ion concentrations in ICF and ECF

See p. 93 C

### Cardiovascular system

Weight of heart

250–350 g

Cardiac output at rest (maximal)

5–6 L/min (25 L/min); cf. p. 186

Resting pulse = sinus rhythm

60–75  $\text{min}^{-1}$  or bpm

AV rhythm

40–55  $\text{min}^{-1}$

Ventricular rhythm

25–40  $\text{min}^{-1}$

Arterial blood pressure (Riva-Rocci)

120/80 mm Hg (16/10.7 kPa) systolic/diastolic

Pulmonary artery pressure

20/7 mm Hg (2.7/0.9 kPa) systolic/diastolic

Central venous pressure

3–6 mm Hg (0.4–0.8 kPa)

Portal venous pressure

3–6 mm Hg (0.4–0.8 kPa)

Ventricular volume at end of diastole/systole

120 mL/40 mL

Ejection fraction

0.67

Pressure pulse wave velocity

Aorta: 3–5 m/s; arteries: 5–10 m/s;  
veins: 1–2 m/s

Mean velocity of blood flow

Aorta: 0.18 m/s; capillaries: 0.0002–0.001 m/s;  
venae cavae: 0.06 m/s

**Blood flow in organs at rest**

(See also pp. 187A, 213A)	% of cardiac output	per gram of tissue
Heart	4%	0.8 mL/min
Brain	13%	0.5 mL/min
Kidneys	20%	4 mL/min
GI tract (drained by portal venous system)	16%	0.7 mL/min
Liver (blood supplied by hepatic artery)	8%	0.3 mL/min
Skeletal muscle	21%	0.04 mL/min
Skin and miscellaneous organs	18%	—

**Lungs and gas transport**

	Men	Women
Total lung capacity (TLC)	7 L	6.2 L
Vital capacity (VC); cf. p. 112	5.6 L	5 L
Tidal volume ( $V_T$ ) at rest	0.6 L	0.5 L
Inspiratory reserve volume	3.2 L	2.9 L
Expiratory reserve volume	1.8 L	1.6 L
Residual volume	1.4 L	1.2 L
Max. breathing capacity in 30 breaths/min	110 L	100 L
Partial pressure of $O_2$	Air: 21.17 kPa	(159 mm Hg)
	Alveolar: 13.33 kPa	(100 mm Hg)
	Arterial: 12.66 kPa	(95 mm Hg)
	Venous 5.33 kPa	(40 mm Hg)
Partial pressure of $CO_2$	Air: 0.03 kPa	(0.23 mm Hg)
	Alveolar: 5.2 kPa	(39 mm Hg)
	Arterial: 5.3 kPa	(40 mm Hg)
	Venous: 6.1 kPa	(46 mm Hg)
Respiratory rate (at rest)	16 breaths/min	
Dead space volume	150 mL	
Oxygen capacity of blood	180–200 mL $O_2$ /L blood = 8–9 mmol $O_2$ /L blood	
Respiratory quotient	0.84 (0.7–1.0)	

**Kidney and excretion**

Renal plasma flow (RPF)	480–800 mL/min per 1.73 m <sup>2</sup> body surface area
Glomerular filtration rate (GFR)	80–140 mL/min per 1.73 m <sup>2</sup> body surface area
Filtration fraction (GFR/RPF)	0.19
Urinary output	0.7–1.8 L/day
Osmolality of urine	250–1000 mOsm/kg H <sub>2</sub> O
Na <sup>+</sup> excretion	50–250 mmol/day
K <sup>+</sup> excretion	25–115 mmol/day
Glucose excretion	< 300 mg/day = 1.67 mmol/day
Nitrogen excretion	150–250 mg/kg/day
Protein excretion	10–200 mg/day
Urine pH	4.5–8.2
Titrateable acidity	10–30 mmol/day
Urea excretion	10–20 g/day = 166–333 mmol/day
Uric acid excretion	300–800 mg/day = 1.78–6.53 mmol/day
Creatinine excretion	0.56–2.1 g/day = 4.95–18.6 μg/day



<b>Nutrition and metabolism</b>	<b>Men</b>	<b>Women</b>
Energy expenditure during various activities		
• Bed rest	6500 kJ/d (1550 kcal/d)	5400 kJ/d (1300 kcal/d)
• Light office work	10 800 kJ/d (2600 kcal/d)	9600 kJ/d (2300 kcal/d)
• Walking (4.9 km/h)	3.3 kW	2.7 kW
• Sports (dancing, horseback riding, swimming)	4.5–6.8 kW	3.6–5.4 kW
Functional protein minimum	1 g/kg body weight	
Vitamins, optimal daily intake (IU = international units)	A: 10 000–50 000 IU; D: 400–600 IU E: 200–800 IU; K: 65–80 µg; B <sub>1</sub> , B <sub>2</sub> , B <sub>5</sub> , B <sub>6</sub> : 25–300 mg of each; B <sub>12</sub> : 25–300 µg; folate: 0.4–1.2 mg; H: 25–300 µg; C: 500–5000 mg Ca: 1–1.5 g; Cr: 200–600 µg; Cu: 0.5–2 mg; Fe: 15–30 mg; I: 50–300 µg; K <sup>+</sup> : 0.8–1.5 g; Mg: 500–750 mg; Mn: 15–30 mg; Mo: 45–500 µg; Na <sup>+</sup> : 2 g; P: 200–400 mg; Se: 50–400 µg; Zn: 22–50 mg	
Electrolytes and trace elements, optimal daily intake		
<hr/>		
<b>Nervous Systems, muscles</b>		
Duration of an action potential	Nerve: 1–2 ms; skeletal muscle: 10 ms; myocardium: 200 ms	
Nerve conduction rate	See p. 49 C	
<hr/>		
<b>Blood and other bodily fluids</b>	<i>(see also Tables 9.1, and 9.2 on pp. 186, 187)</i>	
<b>Blood</b> (in adults)	<b>Men:</b>	<b>Women:</b>
Blood volume (also refer to table on p. 88)	4500 mL	3600 mL
Hematocrit	0.40–0.54	0.37–0.47
Red cell count (RBC)	4.5–5.9 · 10 <sup>12</sup> /L	4.2–5.4 · 10 <sup>12</sup> /L
Hemoglobin (Hb) in whole blood	140–180 g/L (2.2–2.8 mmol/L)	120–160 g/L (1.9–2.5 mmol/L)
Mean corpuscular volume (MCV)	80–100 fL	
Mean corpuscular Hb concentration (MCHC)	320–360 g/L	
Mean Hb concentration in single RBC (MCH)	27–32 pg	
Mean RBC diameter	7.2–7.8 µm	
Reticulocytes	0.4–2% (20–75 · 10 <sup>9</sup> /L)	
Leukocytes (also refer to table on p. 88)	3–11 · 10 <sup>9</sup> /L	
Platelets	170–360 · 10 <sup>9</sup> /L	180–400 · 10 <sup>9</sup> /L
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)	< 10 mm in first hour < 20 mm in first hour	
<b>Proteins</b>		
Total	66–85 g/L serum	
Albumin	35–50 g/L serum	55–64% of total
α <sub>1</sub> -globulins	1.3–4 g/L serum	2.5–4% of total
α <sub>2</sub> -globulins	4–9 g/L serum	7–10% of total
β-globulins	6–11 g/L serum	8–12% of total
γ-globulins	13–17 g/L serum	12–20% of total
<b>Coagulation</b>	<i>(See p. 102 for coagulation factors)</i>	
Thromboplastin time (Quick)	0.9–1.15 INR (international normalized ratio)	
Partial thromboplastin time	26–42 s	
Bleeding time	< 6 min	

**Parameters of glucose metabolism**

Glucose concentration in venous blood	3.9–5.5 mmol/L	(70–100 mg/dL)
Glucose concentration in capillary blood	4.4–6.1 mmol/L	(80–110 mg/dL)
Glucose concentration in plasma	4.2–6.4 mmol/L	(75–115 mg/dL)
Limit for diabetes mellitus in plasma	> 7.8 mmol/L	(> 140 mg/dL)
HBA <sub>1c</sub> (glycosylated hemoglobin A)	3.2–5.2%	

**Parameters of lipid metabolism**

Triglycerides in serum	< 1.71 mmol/L	(< 150 mg/dL)
Total cholesterol in serum	< 5.2 mmol/L	(< 200 mg/dL)
HDL cholesterol in serum	> 1.04 mmol/L	(> 40 mg/dL)

**Substances excreted in urine**

Urea concentration in serum	3.3–8.3 mmol/L	(20–50 mg/dL)
Uric acid concentration in serum	150–390 μmol/L	(2.6–6.5 mg/dL)
Creatinine concentration in serum	36–106 μmol/L	(0.4–1.2 mg/dL)

**Bilirubin**

Total bilirubin in serum	3.4–17 μmol/L	(0.2–1 mg/dL)
Direct bilirubin in serum	0.8–5.1 μmol/L	(0.05–0.3 mg/dL)

**Electrolytes and blood gases**

Osmolality	280–300 mmol/kg H <sub>2</sub> O	
Cations in serum:	Na <sup>+</sup>	135–145 mmol/L
	K <sup>+</sup>	3.5–5.5 mmol/L
	Ionized Ca <sup>2+</sup>	1.0–1.3 mmol/L
	Ionized Mg <sup>2+</sup>	0.5–0.7 mmol/L
Anions in serum:	Cl <sup>-</sup>	95–108 mmol/L
	H <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> <sup>-</sup> + HPO <sub>4</sub> <sup>2-</sup>	0.8–1.5 mmol/L
pH	7.35–7.45	
Standard bicarbonate	22–26 mmol/L	
Total buffer bases	48 mmol/L	
Oxygen saturation	96% arterial; 65–75% mixed venous	
Partial pressure of O <sub>2</sub> at half saturation (P <sub>0.5</sub> )	3.6 kPa (27 mmHg)	

**Cerebrospinal fluid**

Pressure in relaxed horizontal position	1.4 kPa (10.5 mmHg)
Specific weight	1.006–1.008 g/L
Osmolality	290 mOsm/kg H <sub>2</sub> O
Glucose concentration	45–70 mg/dL (2.5–3.9 mmol/L)
Protein concentration	0.15–0.45 g/L
IgG concentration	< 84 mg/dL
White cell count	< 5 WBC/μL

## Important Equations in Physiology

1. **Fick's law of diffusion** for membrane transport (see also p. 20ff.)

$$J_{\text{diff}} = F \cdot D \cdot \frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x} \quad [\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]$$

$J_{\text{diff}}$  = net diffusion rate [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$A$  = area [ $\text{m}^2$ ];

$D$  = diffusion coefficient [ $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$\Delta C$  = concentration difference [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ];

$\Delta x$  = membrane thickness [ $\text{m}$ ]

*Alternative 1:*

$$\frac{J_{\text{diff}}}{F} = P \cdot \Delta C \quad [\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]$$

$P$  = permeability coefficient [ $\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$J_{\text{diff}}$ ,  $A$  and  $\Delta C$ ; see above

*Alternative 2 (for gas diffusion)*

$$\frac{V_{\text{diff}}}{F} = K \cdot \frac{\Delta P}{\Delta x} \quad [\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}]$$

$V_{\text{diff}}$  = net diffusion rate [ $\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$K$  = Krogh's diffusion coefficient [ $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{Pa}^{-1}$ ]

$\Delta P$  = partial pressure difference [ $\text{Pa}$ ]

2. **Van't Hoff–Stavermann equation**

(see also p. 377)

$$\Delta \pi = \sigma \cdot R \cdot T \cdot \Delta c_{\text{osm}} \quad [\text{Pa}]$$

$\Delta \pi$  = osmotic pressure difference [ $\text{Pa}$ ]

$\sigma$  = reflection coefficient [dimensionless]

$R$  = universal gas constant [ $8.3144 \text{ J} \cdot \text{K}^{-1} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$ ];

$T$  = absolute temperature [ $\text{K}$ ];

$\Delta c_{\text{osm}}$  = concentration difference of osmotically active particles [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ].

3. **Michaelis-Menten equation**

(see also pp. 28, 383ff.)

$$J_{\text{sat}} = J_{\text{max}} \cdot \frac{C}{K_M + C} \quad [\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}],$$

$J_{\text{sat}}$  = substrate transport (turnover) [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$J_{\text{max}}$  = maximum substrate transport (turnover) [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ];

$C$  = substrate concentration [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ];

$K_M$  = Michaelis constant = substrate concentration at  $1/2 J_{\text{max}}$  [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ].

4. **Nernst equation** (see also p. 32)

$$E_x = -61 \cdot z_x \cdot \log \frac{[X]_i}{[X]_o} \quad [\text{mV}]$$

$E_x$  = equilibrium potential of ion X [ $\text{mV}$ ];

$z_x$  = valency of ion X;

$[X]_i$  = intracellular concentration of ion X [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ]

$[X]_o$  = extracellular concentration of ion X [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ].

5. **Ohm's Law** (see also pp. 32, 188)

a. *For ion transport at membrane*

$$I_x = g_x \cdot (E_m - E_x) \quad [A \cdot \text{m}^{-2}]$$

$I_x$  = ionic current of ion X per unit area of membrane [ $A \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ];

$g_x$  = conductance of membrane to ion X [ $S \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ];

$E_m$  = membrane potential [ $\text{V}$ ];

$E_x$  = equilibrium potential of ion X [ $\text{V}$ ]

b. *For blood flow:*

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{\Delta P}{R} \quad [L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$\dot{Q}$  = flow rate (total circulation:

cardiac output, CO) [ $L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ]

$\Delta P$  = mean blood pressure difference

(systemic circulation:  $\bar{P}_{\text{aorta}} - \bar{P}_{\text{vena cava}}$ ;

lesser circulation:  $\bar{P}_{\text{pulmonary artery}} - \bar{P}_{\text{pulmonary vein}}$ ) [ $\text{mmHg}$ ]

$R$  = flow resistance (systemic circulation:

total peripheral resistance = TPR)

[ $\text{mmHg} \cdot \text{min} \cdot L^{-1}$ ].

6. **Respiration-related equations**

(see also pp. 106, 120)

a. *Tidal volume ( $V_T$ ):*

$$V_T = V_D + V_A \quad [L]$$

b. *Respiratory volume per minute*

( $\dot{V}_E$  oder  $\dot{V}_T$ ):

$$\dot{V}_E = f \cdot V_T = (f \cdot V_D) + (f \cdot V_A) = \dot{V}_D + \dot{V}_A \quad [L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

c.  *$O_2$  consumption,  $CO_2$  emission, and RQ (total body):*

$$\dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{V}_T (F_{IO_2} - F_{EO_2}) = CO \cdot avDO_2 \quad [L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$$\dot{V}_{CO_2} = \dot{V}_T \cdot F_{ECO_2} \quad [L \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$$RQ = \frac{\dot{V}_{CO_2}}{\dot{V}_{O_2}}$$

$V_D$  = dead space [L];  
 $V_A$  = alveolar fraction of  $V_T$  [L];  
 $f$  = respiration rate [ $\text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $\dot{V}_D$  = dead space ventilation [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $\dot{V}_A$  = alveolar ventilation [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  =  $O_2$  consumption [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$  =  $CO_2$  emission [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ];  
 $F_{iO_2}$  = inspiratory  $O_2$  fraction [L/L];  
 $F_{eO_2}$  = expiratory  $O_2$  fraction [L/L];  
 $F_{eCO_2}$  = expiratory  $CO_2$  fraction [L/L];  
 $RQ$  = respiratory quotient (dimensionless)

d.  *$O_2$  consumption and  $CO_2$  emission (organ):*

$$\dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{Q} \cdot avD_{O_2} [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$$\dot{V}_{CO_2} = \dot{Q} \cdot avD_{CO_2} [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$$\dot{Q} = \text{blood flow in organ} [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$avD_{O_2}$ ,  $avD_{CO_2}$  = arteriovenous

$O_2$  and  $CO_2$  difference in total circulation and organ circulation [L/L blood]

e. *Fick's principle:*

$$CO = \frac{\dot{V}_{O_2}}{avD_{O_2}} [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

$CO$  = cardiac output [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ]

f. *Gas partial pressure  $\leftrightarrow$  gas concentration in liquids:*

$$[X] = \alpha \cdot P_X [\text{mmol/L plasma}]$$

$[X]$  = concentration of gas X [ $\text{mmol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

$\alpha$  = (Bunsen's) solubility coefficient [ $\text{mmol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1} \cdot \text{kPa}^{-1}$ ]

$P_X$  = partial pressure of gas X [kPa]

g. *Bohr's formula* (see also p. 115)

$$V_D = V_T \frac{(F_{ACO_2} - F_{ECO_2})}{F_{ACO_2}}$$

$V_D$  = dead space [L];

$V_T$  = tidal volume [L];

$F_{ACO_2}$  = alveolar  $CO_2$  fraction

$F_{ECO_2}$  = expiratory  $CO_2$  fraction [L/L]

h. *Alveolar gas equation* (see also p. 136)

$$P_{AO_2} = P_{iO_2} - \frac{P_{AO_2}}{RQ} [\text{kPa}]$$

$P_{AO_2}$  and  $P_{iO_2}$  = alveolar and inspiratory partial pressure of  $O_2$  [kPa]

$P_{ACO_2}$  = alveolar partial pressure of  $CO_2$  [kPa]

$RQ$  = respiratory quotient [dimensionless].

**Henderson-Hasselbalch equation**

(see also pp. 138ff., 379)

a. *General equation:*

$$pH = pK_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[AH]}$$

b. *for bicarbonate/ $CO_2$  buffer (37 °C):*

$$pH = 6.1 + \frac{[HCO_3^-]}{\alpha \cdot P_{CO_2}}$$

$pH$  = negative common logarithm of  $H^+$  activity

$pK_a$  = negative common logarithm of dissociation constant of buffer acid in denominator (AH or  $CO_2$ )

$[A^-]$  and  $[HCO_3^-]$  = buffer base concentration;  $\alpha \cdot P_{CO_2} = [CO_2]$ ; see Equation 6f.

**8. Equations for renal function**

(see also p. 150ff.)

a. *Clearance of a freely filtrable substance X ( $C_X$ ):*

$$C_X = \dot{V}_U \cdot \frac{U_X}{P_X} [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

b. *Renal plasma flow*

$$RPF = \dot{V}_U \cdot \frac{U_{PAH}}{0.9 \cdot P_{PAH}} [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

c. *Renal blood flow (RBF):*

$$RBF = \frac{RPF}{1 - HCT} [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

d. *Glomerular filtration rate (GFR):*

$$GFR = \dot{V}_U \cdot \frac{U_{in}}{P_{in}} [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

e. *Free water clearance ( $C_{H_2O}$ )*

$$C_{H_2O} = \dot{V}_U \cdot \left(1 - \frac{U_{osm}}{P_{osm}}\right) [\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}]$$

f. *Filtration fraction*

$$FF = \frac{GFR}{RPF} [\text{dimensionless}]$$

g. *Fractional excretion of substance X ( $FE_X$ ):*

$$FE_X = \frac{C_X}{GFR} [\text{dimensionless}];$$

h. *Fractional reabsorption of substance X ( $FR_X$ ):*

$$FR_X = 1 - FE_X [\text{dimensionless}];$$

$\dot{V}_U$  = urinary excretion rate [ $\text{L} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}$ ]

$U_X$ ,  $U_{PAH}$ ,  $U_{in}$  = urinary concentration of substance X, para-aminohippuric acid, and indicator (e.g., inulin, endogenous creatinine) [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ] or [ $\text{g} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

$P_{\text{osm}}$  = osmolality of urine [ $\text{Osm} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

$P_X, P_{\text{PAH}}, P_{\text{in}}$  = plasma concentration of substance X, para-aminohippuric acid, and indicator (e.g., inulin, endogenous creatinine) [ $\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ] or [ $\text{g} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

$P_{\text{osm}}$  = osmolality of plasma [ $\text{Osm} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$ ]

HCT = hematocrit [L of blood cells/L of blood]

## 9. Equations for filtration

(see also pp. 152, 208)

a. *Effective filtration pressure at capillaries*

( $P_{\text{eff}}$ )

$$P_{\text{eff}} = P_{\text{cap}} - P_{\text{int}} - \pi_{\text{cap}} + \pi_{\text{int}} \text{ [mmHg]}$$

b. *Effective filtration pressure at capillaries of renal glomerulus:*

$$P_{\text{eff}} = P_{\text{cap}} - P_{\text{Bow}} - \pi_{\text{cap}} \text{ [mmHg]}$$

c. *Filtration rate ( $\dot{Q}$  at glomerulus = GFR)*

$$\dot{Q} = P_{\text{eff}} \cdot F \cdot k \text{ [m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}\text{]}$$

$P_{\text{cap}}$  ( $P_{\text{int}}$ ) = hydrostatic pressure in capillaries (interstitium) [mm Hg]

$\pi_{\text{cap}}$  ( $\pi_{\text{int}}$ ) = oncotic pressure in capillaries (interstitium) [mm Hg]

$P_{\text{eff}}$  = mean effective filtration pressure [mm Hg]

A = area of filtration ( $\text{m}^2$ )

k = permeability to water (hydraulic conductance) [ $\text{m}^3 \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{mm Hg}^{-1}$ ]

## 10. Law of Laplace

(see also pp. 118, 188, and 210)

a. *Elliptical hollow body (with radii  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ )*

$$P_{\text{tm}} = T \left( \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} \right) \text{ [Pa];}$$

b. *Elliptical hollow body, considering wall thickness:*

$$P_{\text{tm}} = S \cdot w \left( \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} \right) \text{ [Pa];}$$

c. *Spherical hollow body ( $r_1 = r_2 = r$ ):*

$$P_{\text{tm}} = 2 \frac{T}{r} \text{ [Pa] or } P_{\text{tm}} = 2 \frac{S \cdot w}{r} \text{ [Pa];}$$

d. *Cylindrical hollow body*

( $r_2 \rightarrow \infty$ , therefore  $1/r_2 = 0$ ):

$$P_{\text{tm}} = \frac{T}{r} \text{ [Pa] or } P_{\text{tm}} = \frac{S \cdot w}{r} \text{ [Pa]}$$

$P_{\text{tm}}$  = transmural pressure [Pa]

T = wall tension [ $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-1}$ ]

S = wall tension [ $\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ]

w = wall thickness [m]

## 11. Equations for cardiovascular function

(see also items 2, 5b, 6c, and 9 as well as p. 186ff.)

a. *Cardiac output (CO):*

$$\text{CO} = f \cdot \text{SV} \text{ [l} \cdot \text{min}^{-1}\text{]}$$

b. *Hagen–Poiseuille equation*

$$R = \frac{8 \cdot l \cdot \eta}{\pi \cdot r^4};$$

f = heart rate [ $\text{min}^{-1}$ ]

SV = stroke volume [L]

R = flow resistance in a tube [ $\text{Pa} \cdot \text{s} \cdot \text{m}^{-3}$ ] of known length l [m] and inner radius r [m]

$\eta$  = viscosity [ $\text{Pa} \cdot \text{s}$ ]

## Further Reading

### Physiology

- Berne RM, Levy MN, Koepfen BM, Stanton BA. *Physiology*. 4th ed. St Louis: Mosby; 1998.
- Berne RM, Levy MN. *Principles of Physiology*. 3rd ed. St Louis: Mosby; 2000.
- Greger R, Windhorst U. *Comprehensive Human Physiology*. Berlin: Springer; 1996.
- Guyton AC, Hall JE. *Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 10th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2000.
- Vander AJ, Sherman JH, Luciano DS. *Human Physiology: The Mechanisms of Body Function*. 8th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2000.

### Cell Physiology

- Alberts B, Bray D, Johnson A, et al. *Essential Cell Biology: An Introduction to the Molecular Biology of the Cell*. New York: Garland Publishers; 1998.
- Byrne, JH, Schultz, SG. *An Introduction to Membrane Transport and Bioelectricity*. 2nd ed. New York: Raven Press; 1994.
- Lodish H, Baltimore D, Berk A, Zipursky SL, Matsudaira P, Darnell J. *Molecular Cell Biology*. 3rd ed. New York: Scientific American Books; 1995.

### Neurophysiology, Muscle

- Bagshaw CR. *Muscle Contraction*. 2nd ed. London: New York: Chapman & Hall; 1993.
- Bear MF, Connors BW, Paradiso MA. *Neuroscience—Exploring the Brain*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001.
- Kandel ER, Schwartz JH, Jessell TM. *Principles of Neural Science*. 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000.

### Sensory Physiology

- Doty RL. *Handbook of Olfaction and Gustation*. New York: Dekker; 1995
- Kandel ER, Schwartz JH, Jessell TM. *Principles of Neural Science*. 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000.
- Moore BCJ. *Hearing*. 2nd ed. London: Academic Press; 1995

### Immunology

- Goldsby RA, Kindt TJ, Osborne BA. *Kuby Immunology*, 4th ed. New York: W.H. Freeman; 2000

### Respiration

- Crystal RG, West JB, Barnes PJ. *The Lung: Scientific Foundations*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1997.
- West JB. *Pulmonary Physiology and Pathophysiology: An Integrated, Case-based Approach*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001.

### Exercise and Work Physiology

- McArdle WD, Katch FI, Katch VL. *Exercise Physiology: Energy, Nutrition, and Human Performance*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001.
- Wilmore JH, Costill DL. *Physiology of Sport and Exercise*. 2nd ed. Champaign, IL : Human Kinetics; 1999.

### High Altitude Physiology

- Ward MP, Milledge JS, West JB. *High Altitude Medicine and Physiology*. 3rd ed. London: Arnold; New York: co-published by Oxford University Press; 2000.

### Heart and Circulation

- Alexander RW, Schlant RC, Fuster V, eds. *Hurst's the Heart, Arteries and Veins*. 9th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1998.
- Katz AM. *Physiology of the Heart*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001.

### Renal, Electrolyte and Acid-Base Physiology

- Halperin ML, Goldstein MB. *Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Physiology: A Problem-based Approach*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Co; 1999.
- Schnermann JB, Sayegh SI. *Kidney Physiology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1998.
- Seldin DW, Giebisch G. *The Kidney: Physiology and Pathophysiology*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2000.
- Valtin H, Schafer JA. *Renal Function: Mechanisms Preserving Fluid and Solute Balance in Health*. 3rd ed. Boston: Little, Brown, and Co; 1995.

## Gastrointestinal Physiology

- Arias IM, Boyer JL, Fausto N, Jakoby WB, Schachter D, Shafritz DA. *The Liver: Biology and Pathobiology*. 3rd ed. New York: Raven Press; 1994.
- Johnson, LR. *Physiology of the Gastrointestinal Tract*. 3rd ed. New York: Raven Press; 1994.
- Johnson LR, Gerwin TA. *Gastrointestinal Physiology*. 6th ed. St Louis: Mosby; 2001.

## Endocrinology

- Greenspan FS, Gardner DG. *Basic and Clinical Endocrinology*. 6th ed. Stamford, CT: Appleton & Lange; 2000.
- Kacsob H. *Endocrine Physiology*. Stamford, CT: Appleton & Lange; 2000.
- Larsen PR, Williams RH, Wilson JD, Foster DW, Kronenberg HM. *Williams Textbook of Endocrinology*. 10th ed. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Co; 2002.

## Reproduction and Sexual Physiology

- Knobil E, Neill JD. *The Physiology of Reproduction*. 2nd ed. New York: Raven Press; 1994.
- Masters WH, Johnson VE, Kolodny RC. *Human Sexuality*. 5th ed. New York: HarperCollins College Publishers; 1995.
- Yen, SS, Jaffe RB. *Reproductive Endocrinology: Physiology, Pathophysiology, and Clinical Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Co; 1999.

## Animal Physiology

- Land MF, Nilsson D-E. *Animal Eyes*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2002.
- Randall DJ, Burggren WW, French K. *Eckert Animal Physiology: Mechanisms and Adaptations*. 5th ed. New York: W.H. Freeman and Co; 2001.
- Schmidt-Nielsen K. *How Animals Work*. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press; 1972.
- Schmidt-Nielsen K. *Animal Physiolog: Adaptation and Environment*. Cambridge, England; New York: Cambridge University Press; 1997.
- Schmidt-Nielsen K, Davis KK. *The Camel's Nose: Memoirs of a Curious Scientist*. Washington, DC: Island Press; 1998.

## Pathophysiology/Pathology/Pharmacology

- Bennett JC, Plum F. *Cecil Textbook of Medicine*. 20th ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Co; 1996.
- Cotran RS, Kumar V, Collins T. *Robbins Pathologic Basis of Disease*. 6th ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Co; 1999.
- Hardman JG, Limbird L. *Goodman & Gilman's the Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001.
- McCance KL, Huether SE. *Pathophysiology: The Biologic Basis for Disease in Adults & Children*. 4th ed. St Louis: Mosby; 2002.
- McPhee S, Lingappa VR, Ganong W, Rosen A. *Pathophysiology of Disease: An Introduction to Clinical Medicine*. 3rd ed. Stamford, CT: Appleton & Lange; 1999.
- Silbernagl S, Lang F. *Color Atlas of Pathophysiology*. New York: Thieme; 2000.

## Dictionaries

- Anderson DM. *Mosby's Medical, Nursing & Allied Health Dictionary*. 6th ed. St Louis: Mosby; 2002.
- Dorland's Illustrated Medical Dictionary. 29th ed. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Co; 2000.
- Smith AD, Datta SP, Smith G, Campbell PN, Bentley R, McKenzie HA. *Oxford Dictionary of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*. Oxford, England; New York: Oxford University Press; 1997.
- Stedman TL. *Stedman's Medical Dictionary*. 27th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2000.
- Venes D, Thomas CL. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*. 19th ed. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis Co; 2001.





# Index, Abbreviations

## A

- a (atto-, submultiple of a unit)  
393
- A (ampere), unit 375  
band, muscle 60
- AA (amino acids) 240, 258, 182,  
184, 296
- Abdominal muscles 108  
pressure 108, 238, 264  
reflex 320
- Aberration, spherical 346
- ABO system 100
- Absolut threshold, eye 352  
smell 340  
ear 362
- Absorption, intestinal, of amino  
acids 258  
carbohydrates 258  
electrolytes 262  
fat 252  
iron 90  
lipids 252  
peptides 258  
vitamins 260
- Abstract thinking 336
- ABP (androgen-binding protein)  
306
- ACAT (acyl-CoA-cholesterol acyl  
transferase) 256
- Acceleration (unit) 374  
angular (rotational) 342  
detection 342  
linear (translational) 342  
sensor 314, 342
- Accessory nucleus 368
- Accident, electrical 200
- Acclimatization 224
- Accommodation, eye 342, 346  
range 342, 346  
reflex, intestine 244  
rectum 264  
stomach 240
- ACE (angiotensin-converting  
enzyme) 184  
inhibitor 184
- A cells, islets of Langerhans 282,  
284
- Acenocumarol 104
- Acetate, conjugates 160
- Acetazolamide 172
- Aceton 284
- Acetylcholine 34, 52, **78 ff.**, 236,  
242  
antagonists 82  
cerebral cortex 332  
control of circulation 212 ff.  
coronary vasodilatation 210  
esophagus 238  
esterase 56, 82  
gastrointestinal tract 234  
heart action 194  
motor end plate 56  
NO-synthase activation 82  
pancreas 246  
parietal cells 242  
release 82  
receptors → cholinceptors  
second messenger 55 F, 274,  
276  
synthesis 82
- Acetylcholinesterase 56, 82  
synaptic cleft 82
- Acetyl coenzyme A 284
- A chain, insulin 282
- Achalasia 238
- Acetylsalicylic acid 104  
cyclooxygenase inhibition  
269
- Achromat 356
- Acid, fixed 174  
production 174  
titratable 174, 178
- Acid-base balance 138, 142  
compensatory mechanisms  
142  
disturbances 142, 146, 176  
kidney 174  
liver 176  
metabolic disturbances 142  
normal parameters 142  
regulation 142  
respiratory disturbances 144  
status, assessment 146
- Acidosis **142**  
hyperkalemic 180  
influence on protein-bound  
Ca<sup>2+</sup> 290  
K<sup>+</sup> concentration, plasma 180  
lact- 76  
metabolic 142, 262, 284  
nonrespiratory (metabolic)  
142, 262, 284  
in diarrhea 262  
phosphaturia 178  
renal tubular 142, 176  
respiratory 126, 142, 144
- Acini, salivary gland 236
- Acne 306
- Aconitase, iron absorption 90
- Acoustic information, central  
processing 368  
pathways 368  
thresholds 362, 368
- Acrosomal reaction 308
- ACTH → corticotropin  
ACTH reserve 294
- Actin 14, 30, 56, 58, 62, 70, 82  
filament 14, 60  
molecular structure 60
- myosin interaction 68  
smooth muscle 70  
skeletal muscle 60
- Action potential 42, 62  
all-or-none depolarization  
46  
depolarization phase 46  
heart 59 A, 192, 194  
overshoot 46  
pacemaker, heart 192  
postsynaptic neurons 82  
propagation 48  
purkinje fibers 200  
repolarization phase 46  
retina 354  
skeletal muscle 56, 59 A  
smooth muscle 59 A
- Activating energy 40
- Activation system, subcortical  
336
- Active immunization 94  
transport 26, 44
- Activin, FSH secretion 306
- Activity coefficient 376
- Acuity, visual 348
- Acyl-CoA-cholesterol acyl trans-  
ferase (ACAT) 256
- Adam-Stokes attack 200
- Adaptation, eye 350, 352, 354,  
sensors 312  
smell 340  
taste 338  
thermosensation 314
- ADCC (antigen-dependent cell-  
mediated cytotoxic-  
ity) 96
- Addison's disease 182
- Adenin 8
- Adenohypophysis 268, 280
- Adenosine, coronary vasodilata-  
tion 210  
second messenger of 274
- Adenosine diphosphate → ADP  
monophosphat → AMP  
triphosphat → ATP
- Adenylate cyclase 37 C1, 274, 276  
inhibition with acetylcholine  
82
- ADH → adiuretin
- Adhesion molecule (VLA-4) 98
- Adhesion, platelets 102
- Adiadochokinesis 328
- Adiuretin 24, 162, 170, 269, 280  
activated Cl<sup>-</sup>-channels 162  
deficiency 166  
effects 212, 280  
receptor types 24, 55 F, 166,  
280  
salt/water homeostasis 173 B  
second messenger 24, 55 F

- secretion 170, 218  
ADP 72  
  role in autoregulation 212  
ADP-ribosylation factor (ARF) 30  
Adrenal cortex 254, 272, 294,  
  303, 306  
  androgens 306  
  fetal 304  
  glucocorticoids 296  
  HDL receptors 254  
  hormone synthesis 294 ff.,  
  304  
  progesterone 303  
  zones 294, 296  
  medulla 78, 86, 268, 272, 296  
  hormones 86  
Adrenalin → epinephrine  
Adrenergic transmission 84  
Adrenoceptors 84, 212, 214  
   $\alpha$ - 84, 212 f.  
   $\alpha_1$ - 80 ff., 214, 276, 304  
  renin secretion 184  
   $\alpha_2$ - 52, 80 ff., 86, 146, 230, 248  
  insulin secretion 282  
  second messenger 55, 274  
agonists 87 B  
antagonists 87 B  
   $\beta$ - 86, 212 f.  
   $\beta_1$ -, renin secretion 184  
  second messenger 85 ff., 274  
   $\beta_2$ -, 85 ff., 212, 284  
  coronary vasodilatation 210  
  second messenger 55, 85 ff.,  
  274  
  salivary glands 236  
   $\beta_3$ -, fatty tissue 84, 222  
  second messenger 55, 274  
  stomach 242  
distribution 81, 87 B  
G- proteins 55, 87 B  
kidney 214  
localisation 81 ff.  
receptor types 84 ff.  
skin 214  
types 84, 87 B  
uterus 304  
Adrenocortical hormones 294  
  insufficiency 182  
  tumor 216  
Adrenocorticotrophic hormone →  
  corticotropin  
Aerobic glucose metabolism 72  
Affinity, transport system 28  
Afterload, heart 204  
  maxima, curve 203  
Afterloaded contraction 66  
  heart 202  
Agglutination, red blood cells 100  
Aggregation, platelets 102  
AIP (aldosterone-induced pro-  
  teins) 182  
Air, composition 107 A, 385  
  sound conduction 364  
Air space, voice 370  
Airway resistance 134  
A-kinase (protein kinase A, PKA)  
  84, 274  
Akinesia 326  
Alanin, glucagon secretion 284  
Alarm reaction 86, 330  
Albumin 92, 154, 158, 268, 306  
  bilirubin binding 250  
  calcium binding 290  
  pressure, oncotic 208  
  renal filtration 154  
  reabsorption 158  
  testosterone binding 306  
  T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> transport 288  
Alcohol, energy source 226  
Aldosterone 162, 170, 182 ff., 184,  
  216  
  antagonists 172  
  deficiency 182  
  degradation 183 D  
  effects 182  
  induced protein (AIP) 182  
  K<sup>+</sup> metabolism 180  
  Na<sup>+</sup>-transport, intestinal 262  
  tubular 180 ff.  
  receptor 172  
  glucocorticoids 296  
  secretion 182, 183 D  
  synthesis 294  
Alkaline phosphatase 250  
Alkalosis 142  
  Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration, serum 290  
  hypokalemic 172, 180  
  K<sup>+</sup> plasma concentration 180  
  metabolic 142  
  nonrespiratory 142  
  phosphate reabsorption, renal  
  178  
  respiratory 142, 144  
  high altitude 136  
  vomiting 238  
Allergens 98, 100  
Allergy 100  
  anaphylactic shock 218  
  delayed type hypersensitivity  
  100  
  immediate reaction 100  
Allodynia 318  
All-or-none-response 46, 66, 192  
all-trans-retinal 348, 350  
Alternating current 50, 375  
Altitude gain 136  
Alveolar gas 114  
  partial pressure 120  
  equation 120, 136, 389  
  exchange 120, 124  
  pressure (P<sub>A</sub>) 108, 116  
Alveolar ventilation 106, 114,  
  120 ff.  
Alveoli 106, 118 ff.  
cell types 118  
contact time 120  
diffusion distance 120  
surface 118  
  tension 118  
Amacrine cells, retina 344, 354  
Ambient temperature pressure  
  H<sub>2</sub>O-saturated (ATPS)  
  112  
Amenorrhoea 230  
Amiloride 172  
L-Amino acid decarboxylase 84  
Aminoaciduria 258  
Amino acids (AA) 240, 258, 182,  
  184, 296  
  co-transport with Na<sup>+</sup> 158,  
  258  
  essential 226  
  glucagon secretion 284  
  gluconeogenesis from 282  
  influence on insulin release  
  282 ff.  
  intestinal absorption 258,  
  262  
  metabolism, cortisol effect  
  296  
  pylorus, effect on 240  
  renal transport 156, 158  
  storage 284  
  transmitter 55 F  
 $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABA) 52,  
  320  
p-aminohippurate 150, 160  
Aminopeptidases, small intestine  
  258  
Ammonia → NH<sub>3</sub>  
Ammonium → NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>  
Amnesia 336  
Amount of substance, unit 375  
5'-AMP 276  
AMP, cyclic 84, 236, 274, 286  
  adrenergic transmission 84  
  TSH 286  
AMPA receptors → glutamate  
  Ampere (A), unit 375  
Amplification, cochlear 366  
Ampulla, labyrinth 342  
Amygdala 310, 320, 330, 336,  
  340  
 $\alpha$ -amylase 246, 258  
Amylopectin 258  
Amylose 258  
Anabolic, action 280  
  insulin 284  
  STH 280  
  testosterone 306  
Anaerobic glycolysis 72  
  threshold 72  
Analgesic action 318  
Anal sphincters 264  
Anaphylaxis 100  
Anastomoses, arteriovenous 224

- Androgen-binding protein 306  
 Androgens 300, 306  
   adrenal cortex 294  
   synthesis 294, 306  
   follicle 300  
 Androstenedione 300  
 Anemia 226, 260  
   hyperchromic 90  
   hypochromic, iron deficiency 90  
   pernicious 260  
   sickle cell 92  
 Energy 98  
 ANF → Atriopeptin  
 Angina pectoris 318  
   ECG 198  
 Angiotensin I 184  
   lung 106  
 Angiotensin II (AT II) 158, 170, 182, **184**, 212  
   aldosterone secretion 182  
   effects 184, 212, 216  
   CSF 168  
   degradation, renal 158  
   receptors 184  
   second messenger 274  
 Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) 184  
 Angiotensinogen 184  
   synthesis, cortisol effect 296  
 Ångström (unit) 372  
 Anion exchange, red blood cells 124  
 Anode 50  
 Anomaloscope 356  
 Anovulatory cycle 298  
 Anoxia (→ also hypoxia) 130, 134  
 ANP → Atriopeptin  
 ANS (Autonomic nervous system) 78 ff., 194, 212 ff., 234, 266, 330  
 Anterior pituitary 268, 280  
 Anterolateral funiculus, tracts 318, 322  
 Antibodies (→ also immunoglobulins) 94, 98, 100  
 Anticoagulants 104  
 Anticodon 8, 10  
 Antidiuresis 164, 166  
 Antidiuretic hormone → adiuretin  
 Antigen-antibody complex 98  
   allergy 100  
   presentation 96, 98  
 Antigen-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) 96  
 Antigens 94, 98  
   incomplete 100  
   presentation 96, 98  
   thymus-dependent (TD) 98  
   thymus-independent (TI) 98  
 Antihemophilic factors 102  
 Antiovolatory effect 303  
 $\alpha_2$ -Antiplasmin 104  
 Antiport, definition 26  
 Antipyrine 168  
 Antithrombin 104  
 Antrum, stomach 240  
 $\alpha_1$ -Antitrypsin 104  
 Anulospiral endings 316  
 Anuria 164  
 Anus 264  
 Aorta 188  
   blood flow velocity 190  
   flow rate 191 A  
   pressure 190, 204  
     influence on heart functions 204  
     sensors 214  
     valves 190  
 APC (antigen-presenting cells) 96, 97 B, 98  
 Aphasia 370  
 Apnea 108, 132  
 Apolipoproteins 92, 254  
 Apomorphine 238  
 Apoptosis 98, 272, 300  
 Apotransferrin 90, 92  
 Apparatus, juxtaglomerular 172, 184  
 Aprotinin 105 C  
 AQP → Aquaporins  
 Aquaporins 24, 166, 174  
 Aqueous humor 344  
 Arachidonic acid 268, 276  
 Arachnoid villi 310  
 ARAS (ascending reticular activating system) 322, 332  
 Archeocerebellum 326  
 Area prostroma, chemosensors 238  
 Areflexia 320  
 ARF (ADP-ribosylation factor) 30  
 Arginine 174, 226, 258, 282, 284  
   glucagon secretion 284  
   intestinal absorption 258  
   insulin release 282  
 Aromatase 300, 306  
 Arousal activity 332  
 Arrhenius 40  
 Arrhythmia 218 ff  
   absolute 200  
 Areflexia 328  
 Arrestin 350  
 Arsenic (AS) 226  
 Arteries (→ also artery) 186 ff., 188  
   arcuate 150  
   bronchial 186  
   compliance 188  
   coronary, myocardial perfusion 186  
   interlobular 150  
   pressure 206  
   umbilical 220  
 Arteriole 186 ff.  
   afferent 184  
   efferent 184  
 Arteriosclerosis 208, 210, 302  
   coronary artery 210  
   hypertension 216  
 Artery (→ also arteries), carotid, pressure sensors 214  
   interlobular 150  
   pulmonary 122  
   pressure 122  
   fetus 221 B  
 Ascending reticular activating system (ARAS) 322, 332  
 Ascites 208  
 Ascorbate → vitamin C  
 Aspartate 174, 258  
   intestinal absorption 258  
   receptor types 55 F  
   second messenger 55 F  
 Aspirin® 104, 268, 318  
 Associative cortex 324, 329, 336  
 Asthma 100, 118  
 Astigmatism 346  
 Astrocytes 338  
 Astrup method 146  
 at, conversion into SI unit 374  
 AT I receptor 184  
 AT II (Angiotensin II) 158, 170, 182, **184**, 212  
   receptor 184  
 Ataxia 328  
 Atelectasis 118  
 Atenolol 87 B  
 Athosclerosis → Arteriosclerosis  
 atm, conversion into SI unit 374  
 Atmosphere, physical, 374  
   technical, 374  
 Atomic mass 374  
 ATP 41, 64, 72, 86, 228  
   control of K<sup>+</sup> channels 282  
   coronary vasodilatation 210  
   cotransmitter 84  
   creatine phosphate 228  
   free enthalpy 41  
   gain, glucose 73 B  
   neurotransmitter 86  
   production 12  
   aerobic 39 C  
   supply of energy, muscle 72  
   synthesis 12  
   transport, active 26  
   tubular epithelium 154  
 ATPase (→ also Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase, Ca<sup>2+</sup>-ATPase) 26, 58, 72, 84

- ATPS (Ambient temperature pressure H<sub>2</sub>O-saturated) 112
- ATP-synthetase 17
- Atrial fibrillation 200  
flutter 200  
septal defect 220  
tachycardia 200
- Atriopeptin (ANF, ANP) 152, 162, 170, 182, 218  
aldosterone secretion 182  
receptor 278
- Atrioventricular (AV) block 162, 200  
node 192, 194  
valves 190
- Atrophy, compensatory 272
- Atropine 82  
transport, tubular 160
- Attention 326, 336  
automated 336  
EEG 332  
selective 336
- Atto- (submultiple of a unit) 373
- Audiometer 366
- Auditory canal 364  
pathway 368  
threshold 339
- Auerbach plexus (myenteric plexus) 244
- Autoantibody 100  
TSH receptor 288
- Autogenous inhibition 316
- Autoimmune disease 94
- Automaticity, heart 192
- Autonomic nervous system (ANS) 78 ff., 194, 212 ff., 234, 266, 330
- Autophagia 12
- Autophagic vacuole 12
- Autophagosomes 12
- Autophosphorylation, receptor tyrosine kinase 278
- Autoreceptor 86  
presynaptic 52, 82, 146
- Autoregulation 4, 212  
coronary 210  
gastrointestinal 232  
renal 150
- Auxotonic contraction 64, 66
- AV → atrioventricular
- avD<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (arterial venous O<sub>2</sub> difference) 106, 107 A
- aVF (ECG leads) 196
- aVL (ECG leads) 196
- Avogadro's constant (N<sub>A</sub>) 20, 374
- aVR (ECG leads) 196
- Axolemma 42
- Axon 42  
capacitive flow of charge 48  
conduction velocity 48, 49 C  
diameter 48  
hillock 42  
membrane capacity 48  
myelin sheath 42  
nodes of Ranvier 42  
reflexes 214  
saltatory conduction 48
- Axonal transport 42, 280
- B**
- B7 protein 98
- B cells, islets of Langerhans 282  
lymphocytes 94, 98
- B chain, insulin 282
- B lymphocytes 94, 98
- Bacteria, defense 94 ff., 242  
intestinal 232, 240, 250, 264  
lysis 94
- Bainbridge reflex 216
- Balance, body 328, 342  
glomerulo-tubular 166
- Bar (unit) 374
- Barbiturates, tubular secretion 160
- Barium contrast medium 264
- Barotrauma 134, 110
- Barrier, blood-brain 18, 230, 238, 310, 330  
blood-CSF 18, 310
- Basal body temperature 298
- Basal ganglia 310, 324  
labyrinth of tubule cells 154  
metabolic rate 226
- Base, DNA 8  
excess 142  
measurement 146  
triplet, mRNA 8  
units, SI system
- Basic frequency of vowels 364, 366
- Basilar membrane 364, 366
- Basket cells 328
- Basolateral membrane, tubule cell 162
- Basophilic granulocytes 100
- Bathorhodopsin 348
- Bayliss effect 212
- BDGF (brain-derived growth factor) 338
- Beat tone 362
- Behavior, defensive 330  
nutritive 330  
programmed, hypothalamus 330  
reproductive 330  
thermoregulation 224, 330
- BEI → iodine
- Bel 339
- Beriberi 226
- Bicarbonate → HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>
- Bicycle ergometry 76
- Bilayer of membranes 14
- Bile 232, 248 ff., 256, 260  
acid → bile salts  
bilirubin excretion 250  
canaliculi 248  
components 248  
ductules 248  
excretory function 248  
formation 248  
hepatic 248  
salts 160, 246, 248, 252, 256  
absorption, terminal ileum 252  
body pool 248  
carrier 248  
conjugated 248, 252  
enterohepatic circulation 252  
function 252  
primary 248  
secondary 248  
synthesis 248  
steroid hormone excretion 294
- Bilirubin 248, 250  
direct 250  
diglucuronide 250  
excretion 250  
indirect 250
- Biliverdin 250
- Binary digit 312
- Biologic clock 224, 334
- Biotin, intestinal absorption 260
- Biotransformation 232, 250
- Bipolar cells, retina 344
- Birth 94, 304, 220  
circulation during 220
- 2,3-Bisphosphoglycerate (2,3 BPG) 128, 138
- Bit 312
- Bitemporal hemianopia 358
- Bitter sensors 338
- Bladder, urinary 70, 79 ff., 148  
control 79 ff., 308
- Bleeding 218  
time 102
- Blind spot, eye 348, 358
- Blindness 344
- Blinking 344
- Blood 88 ff.  
brain barrier 18, 230, 238, 280, 310, 330  
cells 88  
clotting 102  
activation 102, 104  
endogenous 102  
exogenous 104  
coagulation disorders 226  
estrogen effects 302  
factors 102  
composition 88  
CSF barrier 18, 126, 310  
fibrinolysis 102

- Blood flow 122, 212, 232  
 brain, control 212  
 central regulation 214  
 coronaries 210, 212  
 gastrointestinal 232  
 lungs 122, 186  
 muscle 214  
 properties 92  
 rate 188  
 regulation, neuronal 214  
 renal 150  
 skin 212, 214, 224  
 velocity 92, 188, 190  
   vessel segments 189 A
- function 88 ff.  
 glucose 282, 284  
 groups 100  
 HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> concentration 142, 146  
 hormone transport 268  
 lipids 256  
 loss 90, 173, 218  
 pH 138  
   puffer 138, 144  
   normal range 142  
   measurement 146  
 pressure 74, 86, 184, 188, 202,  
   **206**, 212, 214  
 arterial 206  
   amplitude 206  
   angiotensin II effect 184  
   fetal 220  
   mean 188, 189 A, 206  
   measurement 206  
   normal range 206  
   physical work 74  
   regulation 216  
     renin-angiotensin sys-  
     tem 184  
   salt deficit 170  
   sensors 214  
   shock 218  
 control 214, 216  
 diastolic 206  
 pulmonary 122, 206  
 sensors 214  
 systolic 190, 206  
 venous 204  
 sugar 282 ff.  
 testis barrier 306  
 transfusion 100  
 vessels 188, 212 ff.  
   autoregulation 212  
   chemosensors 212  
   cross-sectional area 189 A  
   diameter 189 A  
   function 188 ff.  
   holding capacity 189 A  
   nervous control 214  
   precapillary sphincter  
     188  
   skin 224  
   wall tension 188
- viscosity 92, 188  
 high altitudes 136  
 volume 88, 182, 186, 188, 206  
 central 204  
 determination 168  
 distribution 187 A  
 endurance athletes 77 C  
 measurement 168  
 sensors 214  
 total 186
- B-lymphocytes 94, 98  
 BMAL1 334  
 BMI (body mass index) 230  
 BMR (basal metabolic rate) 226  
 Body fluids 92, **168**  
   compartments 168  
   measurement 168  
   homeostasis 168  
   osmolality 170  
   mass index (BMI) 230  
   plethysmography 114  
   temperature 132, 222, 224,  
     298, 330, 375, 381 C  
   circadian variation 224,  
     381 C  
   measurement 224  
   menstrual cycle 298  
   pressure saturated (BTPS)  
     112  
   respiration 132  
   set point 224  
   water → body fluids  
   weight 230  
   regulatory mechanism 230,  
     280
- Bohr effect 128  
 equation, dead space 114, 115 A  
 Boiling point, water 375  
 Bomb calorimeter 228  
 Bone 290, 292  
   break down 290  
   calcitonin effect 292  
   calcitriol effect 292  
   conduction, sound 364  
   estrogen effects 302  
   growth 302  
   marrow 88, 90, 94  
     Fe homeostasis 90  
     megakaryocytes 102  
     preprocessed precursor cells  
       94  
   metabolism 290  
   mineralization 292  
   PTH effect 290
- Botulinum toxin 56  
 Bowman's capsule 148  
 Bradycardia, sinus 200  
 Bradykinesia 326  
 Bradykinin 184, 208, 214, 269,  
   318  
   coronary vasodilatation 210  
   salivary glands 236
- second messenger 276  
 Bradypnea 108  
 Brain 310 ff.  
   anatomy 310  
   blood flow 186  
     regulation 212  
   cortex  
     afferents 324  
     area 1 311 E, 324, 325 C  
     area 2 311 E, 324, 325 C  
     area 3 311 E, 324, 325 C  
     area 4 311 E, 324, 325 C  
     area 5 311 E, 324, 325 C  
     area 6 331 E, 324, 325 C  
     area 7 311 E, 324, 325 C  
     area 22 311 E, 370  
     area 44 311 E, 370  
     area 45 311 E, 370  
     area MI 324, 325 C  
     area PM 324, 325 C  
     area S1 318, 322, 323 A  
     area S2 318, 323 A  
     area SMA 324, 325 C  
     association areas 328, 336  
     auditory 368  
     Brodmann's areas 311 E  
     columns 332  
     corticocortical signal loops  
       324  
     cortical afferents 324  
     efferents 324  
     ultrastructure 332  
     motor 324, 328  
     motosensory 370  
     neuronal circuitry 332  
     orbitofrontal area 340  
     organisation 332  
     potentials 332  
     prefrontal association 324  
     premotor area (PMA) 324  
     prepiriform 340  
     primary motor area (MI) 324  
     pyramidal cells 332  
     scarring 338  
     sensory association 324  
       input 322  
     supplementary motor area  
       (SMA) 324  
   death, diagnosis 332  
   derived growth factor (BDGF)  
     338  
   glucose deficit 242  
   glutamate, transmitter 336  
   hemisphere, dominant 337  
   metabolism 282  
   nerve cells 338, 340, 359  
   stem (→ also medulla oblong-  
     ata, pons, and mid-  
     brain) 310, 318  
     motor centers 324, 328  
   survival time, anoxia 130  
   swelling 172

- visual areas 328, 354, 356, 358
- Breathing capacity, maximum (MBC) 118
- flat 120
- gas (→ also O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub>) 106
- mechanics 108
- Breast 302, 303
- development 304
- estrogen effect 302
- progesterone effect 303
- prolactin effect 303
- enlargement 304
- feeding 303
- iodine 288
- Brightness channel, visual pathways 356
- Bristle cell, olfactory bulb 340
- Broca's area 370
- Brodman's map 310
- Bronchi 370
- epithelium 110
- innervation 79 ff.
- Bronchial mucus 110
- tree 186
- Bronchitis 118
- Brown fat 224, 288
- Brown-Sequard syndrom 322
- Brunner's glands 244
- Brush border 9 f., 154, 158
- intestinal mucosa 244
- renal tubule 154
- stomach, parietal cells 242
- BSC (bumetanide-sensitive cotransporter) 162
- NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> reabsorption 176
- BSEP (bile salt export pump) 248, 250
- BTPS (body temperature pressure saturated) 112
- α-BTX (α-bungarotoxin) 56
- Buffer 124, 138, 140, 142, 144, 378 f.
- base 140
- blood 138
- concentration 138, 142
- total 146
- capacity 138, 140
- closed system 140
- curve 380 B
- hemoglobin 124, 128
- nonbicarbonate 126, 140, 144
- open system 140
- titration curve 380
- Bulb, ocular 344
- Bumetanide 172
- Bundle of His 192
- Bundle-branch 200
- block 200
- α-bungarotoxin (α-BTX) 56
- Bunsen solubility coefficient 126
- Bunte glass burette 114
- Burning 218
- Butanol-extractable iodine (BEI) 288
- Byte 312
- C**
- c (submultiple of a unit) 373
- C17/C20-lyase 300
- C cells, thyroid gland 292
- °C, conversion to °F 375
- Ca<sup>2+</sup> (→ also Calcium) 36, 226, 262
- absorption, intestine 262, 278, 290, 292
- antagonists 194
- ATPase 17 A, 17 B2, 26, 36, 178, 292
- heart 194
- muscle 64
- renal 178
- balance 290
- calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II 36, 50
- cell regulation 36
- channels 36, 62, 178, 348
- activation 276
- β-adrenoceptors 84
- hair cells 342
- heart muscle 63 B3, 65 D, 194
- inhibition 84, 276
- muscle 62
- photosensors 348
- regulation 36
- renal 178
- ryanodine-sensitive 194
- voltage-gated 194
- clotting process 102
- complexed 290
- concentration 50
- cytosolic 36, 66, 236
- adrenergic transmission 84
- electromechanical coupling 62, 194
- epinephrine 87 B
- exocytosis 30
- extracellular 36, 46
- heart 194
- intracellular 36, 276
- muscle 63 B
- smooth 71 B
- norepinephrine 87 B
- oscillations 36
- photosensors 350, 352
- smooth muscle 70
- muscle fibers 62, 64, 194
- neurons 336, 338
- serum 290
- conductance, GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors 320
- daily requirement 226, 290
- darkness-induced 350
- deficiency 290
- equilibrium potential 44
- excretion 178, 290
- exocytosis 30
- fat absorption 252
- fetal 290
- free 178, 290
- hormone release 280
- intake 290
- intestinal absorption 262, 290, 292
- intracellular stores 36
- ionized 178, 290
- light sensors 352
- metabolism 178, 290
- milk 290
- muscle contraction 60 ff
- /3 Na<sup>+</sup> antiport 36
- plasma 178, 290
- pregnancy 290
- protein bound 178, 288, 290, 292
- reabsorption, renal 156, 178
- paracellular 172
- renal excretion 178
- saliva 236
- sensors 36, 292
- kidney 178
- serum 290
- smooth muscle 70
- solubility 290
- store, intracellular 10,36
- IP<sub>3</sub> 276
- myocard 194
- skeletal muscle 60
- third messenger 276
- trigger effect 62
- urine 290, 178
- CaBP (calcium-binding protein) 262, 278, 292
- Cabrera circle (ECG) 198
- Caffeine 276
- Caisson disease 134
- Cajal cells 240, 244
- Cajal's horizontal cells, retina 344, 354
- cal (calorie), unit 374
- Calcidiol (25-OH-cholecalciferol) 158, 292
- Calciferol 226, 292
- 1,25-(OH)<sub>2</sub>-calciferol → calcitriol
- CalcioI (= cholecalciferol = Vitamin D) 260, 292
- Calcitonin 36, 37 C2, 274, 286, 290, 292
- gene-related peptide (CGRP) 214, 234, 306, 318



- Calcitriol (1,25-(OH)<sub>2</sub>-cholecalciferol, D-hormone) 158, 262, 268, 278, **290f.**, 292
- deficiency 290
  - nuclear receptor 278
  - PTH effect on formation 290
- Calcium → also Ca<sup>2+</sup>
- Calcium-binding protein (CaBP) 262, 278, 292
- Calcium oxalate, urinary stones 178
- Calcium phosphate, solubility product 290
- urinary stones 178
- Caldesmon 70
- Calmodulin 36, 276, 278, 336
- smooth muscle 70
  - photo sensors 350
- Calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II 36, 50
- neurons 336
- Caloric equivalent 228
- value, physical 228
- Calorie 228
- conversion into SI unit 374
- Calorimetry 228
- cAMP → AMP, cyclic
- Canaliculi 248
- bile 248
  - lachrymal 344
  - parietal cells 242
- Canals, semicircular 342
- Can sugar → saccharose 258
- Capacitation of sperm 302, 308
- Capacitive current, membrane 48
- Capacity, buffering 140
- electric, nerve 48
- Capillaries 188
- blood pressure in 150, 209 B
  - lung 208
  - characteristics 188
  - diffusion processes 208
  - exchange processes 208, 377
  - filtration 208
  - fluid exchanges 208
  - glomerular 150
  - peritubular 150, 151 A, 166
  - permeability 208, 377
  - pulmonary 106, 122
  - reabsorption 208
- Capsaicin sensors 314, 318
- Carbamate, CO<sub>2</sub> transport in blood 124
- Carbohydrate 226, 228, 246, 258, 282, 296
- absorption, intestinal 258
  - caloric equivalent 228
  - digestion 258
  - pancreatic enzymes 246
  - energy substrate 228
  - metabolism 282
- cortisol effect 296
  - nutrition 226
- Carbon dioxide → CO<sub>2</sub>
- monoxide (CO) 128
- Carbonic anhydrase 124, 174, 236
- gastric 242
  - inhibitors 142, 172, 344
  - red blood cells 124
  - renal 174
  - salivary glands 236
- γ-carboxylation 102
- Carboxylesterase 246, 252, 256
- Carboxypeptidase 258
- Cardia 240
- Cardiac (→ also heart)
- arrest 200
  - arrhythmias 180, 200
  - cycle 190
  - failure 204
  - muscle 68
  - output (CO) 70, 74, 122, 136, 186, 188, 204, 206, 218, 220
  - fetus 220
  - paralysis 198
  - valves 190
  - work 202
- Carnosine 158
- Carotinoids 350
- Carrier 22
- affinity to 28
  - free fatty acids 252
  - liver cells 250
  - passive 28
  - transport 158
- CART (cocaine and amphetamine-regulated transcript) 230
- Cartilage 280
- Catabolism, cortisol 296
- Catalase 14, 96
- Cataract 346, 358
- Catecholamines **84**, 268, 274
- receptor types 55 F
- Catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT) 86
- Cathode 50
- cBAT (canalicular bile acid transporter) 248
- CBG (cortisol binding-globulin = transcortin) 296, 303
- C cells, parafollicular 36, 286
- CCK → Cholecystokinin
- CD4 protein 98
- CD8 protein 98
- CD28 protein 98
- CD40 ligand 98
- CD40 protein 98
- CD45 receptor 278
- CD95 protein (= Fas) 98
- Cecum 232, 264
- Cell(s) 8 ff.
- antigen-presenting (APC) 98
  - body 42
  - chief 240
  - dendritic 96
  - dedifferentiation 272
  - differentiation 272
  - division 8
  - excitable 42
  - fat 254
  - ganglion, retina 344, 358
  - granular 326
  - granulosa 300
  - killer 96, 98
  - Leydig, interstitial 306
  - mast 100, 256
  - membrane 2, 8, 14
    - apical 18
    - basolateral 18
    - function 2, 14
    - ion conductance 32
    - proteins 14
    - structure 14
    - permeability 2  - migration 30, 58
  - neuroendocrine 266
  - nuclear pores 10
  - nucleus 8, 288
    - structure and function 8 ff.  - organelles 8 f.
  - pacemaker 244
  - parietal 240, 242
  - principal (chief) 162, 180
  - potential 366
  - replacement 244
  - retina 358
  - Sertoli 306
  - structure and function 8 ff.
  - T-helper 98
- Cellulose 226, 264
- Celsius, conversion to °F 375
- Centi- (submultiple of a unit) 373
- Central blood volume 204
- canal 310
- chemosensors 126
  - nervous system (CNS) 303, 310 ff.
    - anatomy 310
    - autonomic centers 78
    - venous pressure 186, **190**, 204
    - shock 218
- Centralization, circulation 218
- Centrosome 14
- Cerebellum 310, 322, 324, **326ff.**,
- 328, 342, 360, 370
  - eye movement 360
  - lesions 328
  - nystagmus 360
  - speech 370
- Cerebrosides 14
- Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) 126, 144, 168, 310
- CO<sub>2</sub> 126, 144

- pH 126, 144  
Cerebral cortex 310  
  function, glucocorticoid effect 296  
Ceruloplasmin, iron oxidation 90  
Cervix uteri 298, 302  
  menstrual cycle 298  
  os 298, 303  
  progesterone effects 303  
cGMP → GMP, cyclic  
cGMP phosphodiesterase, retina 348  
CGRP (calcitonin gene-related peptide) 214, 234, 306, 318  
  gallbladder 248  
  second messenger 274  
  stomach 242  
Chamber, eye 344  
Channels, ion 34  
Chaperone protein 10  
Chemokines 94, 266, 274  
  receptors 94  
Chemosensors 142  
  area postrema 238  
  central 126, 132, 144  
  for glucose 282  
  respiratory control 132  
  small intestine 240  
Chemotaxis 94, 308  
Chenodeoxycholic acid 248  
Chest 108  
Chest leads (ECG) 196  
Chiasma, optic 358  
Chief (principal) cells, kidney 162  
  stomach 240, 242  
Chinin, taste 338  
Chloramphenicol 250  
Chloride → Cl<sup>-</sup>  
CHO (cholesterol) 14, 114, 254, 268, 294, 303  
Cholagogue 248  
Cholates (→ also bile salts) 248  
Cholecalciferol (calciferol = Vitamin D) 260, 292  
  formation in skin 292  
25-OH-cholecalciferol (calcidiol) 158  
1,25(OH)<sub>2</sub>-cholecalciferol (calcitriol, D-hormone) 292  
Cholecystokinin (CCK) 230, 234, 240, 248  
  cerebral cortex 332  
  esophagus 238  
  gallbladder 248  
  pancreas secretion 246  
  receptors  
    gallbladder 248  
    hypothalamus 330  
    pancreas 246  
    stomach 242  
    types 55 F  
    second messenger 55 F, 276  
    stomach 242  
Cholera toxin 262, 276  
Choleresis 248  
Cholesterol (CHO) 14, 114, 254, 268, 294, 303  
  bile 248  
  crystals 248  
  esters 252, 256  
    hydrolase 252  
    LDL 254  
  lipoproteins 254  
  feces 256  
  LDL 254  
  lipoproteins 256  
  membranes 14  
  micelles 248  
  steroid hormone synthesis 294  
  storage 255 B  
  synthesis 256  
Cholesterol-7 $\alpha$ -hydroxylase 248  
Cholic acids (cholates) 248  
Choline 82, 160  
  acetyl transferase 82  
  nerve terminals 82  
  receptor → cholinceptors  
  tubular transport 160  
Cholinesterase 56  
  inhibitors 56  
Cholinceptors 82  
  antagonist 82  
  heart 194  
  ionotropic 56  
  M-types, second messenger 274, 276  
  nicotinic 56  
  salivary glands 236  
  stomach 242  
  types 55 F, 56  
Chorda tympani 339 C  
Chorionic gonadotropin, human (HCG) 304  
Choroid plexus 310  
Christmas factor 102  
Chromium (Cr) 226, 228  
Chromatin 8  
Chromosomes 8  
  single set (haploid) 306  
Chronotropism, heart 194  
Chylomicron 254, 260  
  remnants 254, 256  
Chyme 232, 258  
  pH 240  
Chymotrypsin 246, 258  
Chymotrypsinogen 246  
Cilia, bronchial 58, 110  
  hair cells 342, 364  
Ciliary body 70  
  muscle 344  
  process 344  
  zonules 344  
Circulation, blood 186 ff., 212 ff.  
  autoregulation 212  
  Bayliss-effect 212  
  hormonal 212  
  myogenic effect 212  
  neuronal 214  
  local metabolic effect 212  
  sympathetic nervous system 214  
  birth 220  
  centralisation, flow 214, 218  
  control 212  
  coronary 210  
  fetal 220  
  portal 232  
  pulmonary 186, 188  
  pulse wave velocity 190  
  regulation 212, 214 ff.  
  resistances 187 A, 188, 206  
  total peripheral resistance 206  
  venous return 204  
cholehepatic 248  
enterohepatic 248, 252  
  bile salts 252  
  bilirubin 250  
Circulatory "center" 214  
  failure 216  
  reflexes, homeostatic 216  
  sensors 214  
  shock 218  
Circumventricular organs 280, 310, 330  
11-*cis* retinal 348  
Cisterns, endoplasmic reticulum 10  
Citrate 12, 102  
  complex former 178  
  cycle 12, 73 B3  
  inhibition of blood clotting 102  
  renal excretion 174  
Citric acid → citrate  
Cl<sup>-</sup> 378  
  absorption in intestine 262  
  balance, body 170  
  channels, lysosomes 14  
    tubular 162  
  concentration, intracellular 44  
  conductance membrane 34, 44  
  distribution, active/passive 34  
  equilibrium potential 44  
  excretion 162  
  renal handling 156, 162  
  secretion in intestine 262  
    in pancreas 246  
    salivary glands 236  
  stomach, parietal cells 242  
Clarifying factor → Heparin  
Clathrin 14, 28  
Clearance factor (heparin) 256  
  esophagus 238  
  renal 152

- Cleft, synaptic 42, 56, 82  
Climacteric 298  
Climax 308  
Climbing fibres, cerebellum 328  
Clitoris 308  
CLOCK 334  
Clock, biological 224, 240, 334, 354  
Clonal selection 98  
Clonidine 84, 87 B  
Closed system, thermodynamics  
    41  
    buffer 140  
Clothing 224  
Clotting, blood (→ also coagulation) 102 ff.  
    disorders 226  
cmH<sub>2</sub>O, conversion into SI unit 374  
cMOAT (canaliculus multispecific organic anion transporter) 250  
CNS → central nervous system  
CO (carbon monoxide) 128  
    binding to hemoglobin 129 C  
CO → also cardiac output  
CO<sub>2</sub> (carbon dioxide) 106, 120, 264  
    binding, blood 124 ff.  
    buffer system 138  
    concentration  
        blood 124 ff.  
        influence of O<sub>2</sub> saturation 126  
        cerebrospinal fluid 126, 144  
        influence O<sub>2</sub> saturation 126  
chemosensors 134, 144  
chronic retention 132  
diffusion, tissue 130  
dissociation curve 126  
dissolved in plasma 124 ff.  
distribution in blood 124  
elimination 106  
/HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> buffer 138, 140  
Krogh's diffusion coefficient 120  
large intestine 264  
partial pressure 124  
    alveolar 120  
    diving 134  
    blood 126  
    increased 144  
    chemical respiratory stimulant 132  
    chronical increase 132  
    hyperventilation 120  
    normal range 142  
    regulation by respiration 140  
    venous blood 120  
plasma 124 ff., 138, 144  
production 142, 228  
response curve 132  
    solubility coefficient 126  
    total 126  
    transport, blood 124  
α-γ-Coactivation 316, 320  
Coagulation, disseminated intravascular 104  
Coagulopathy consumptive 104  
Coated pits 28  
Coatomer 30  
Coatmer-coated vesicles 30  
Cobalamines (vitamin B 12) 90, 92, 226, 260  
    absorption 260  
    deficiencies 90, 260  
    receptor 28  
    storage 260  
    transport proteins 260  
Cobalt (Co) 226  
Cocaine and amphetamine-regulated transcript (CART) 230  
Cochlea 364, 368  
Cochlear duct → scala media amplifier 366  
    nucleus 368  
Code, genetic 8  
Coding, neuronal signals 312  
Codogen 8  
Codon 10  
Coital capacity, testosterone 306  
Cold sensors 224, 314  
Colipase 246, 252  
Collaps, orthostatic 204  
Collagen 102, 103 A  
Collaterals, axon 42  
Collecting duct 148, 162, 166, 174  
Colliculus superior 326  
Colloid, thyroid 286  
Colloidal osmotic pressure 92, 378  
Colon 262, 264  
    H<sub>2</sub>O absorption 262  
    K<sup>+</sup> secretion 262  
Color blindness 352, 356  
    constancy 356  
    opponency 354  
    perception 356  
    triangle 356  
    vision 356  
    contrast 354  
Colors, additive mixture 356  
    complementary 356  
    subtractive mixture 356  
Comfort zone (ambient temperature) 224, 226  
Compensation, renal 144  
    respiratory 142  
Compensatory atrophy 272  
    hypertrophy 272  
    pause 200  
Competitive inhibition 56  
Complement cascade 96  
    factors 94, 96  
Complementary colors 356  
Compliance  
    blood vessels 188, 206  
    lung and thorax 116, 118  
    measurement 112  
COMT (catechol-O-methyltransferase) 86  
Concentration, units 372 f.  
Conception 308  
Conditioned reflexes 236, 242  
Conductance 46, 375  
    electrical 22  
    for Cl<sup>-</sup> 44  
    for K<sup>+</sup> 44  
    hydraulic 24  
    ionic 32  
    unit 375  
Conduction, atrioventricular (ECG) 198  
    deafness 364  
    defects, heart 200  
    heart 192, 194, 200  
    heat 222  
    nerve fibres 42, 50  
    saltatory, nerve 48  
    velocity, measurement 50  
Conductivity → conductance  
Cones 344, 348, 350, 356  
    adaptation 352  
    classes 356  
    density 348  
    light absorption maximum 356  
Conjugate eye movement 360  
Conjugation processes 160  
    with glucuronic acid in liver 150, 250  
    with glutathione in liver 160, 250  
Connectin (= titin) 60, 66  
Connexin 16, 19 C  
Connexons 16  
Conn's syndrome 182  
Consciousness 322, 336  
Consensual light response 359  
Consolidation, memory 336  
Consonants 370  
Constancy, of color 356  
    of shape 356  
    of size 356  
Constipation 264  
Contact phase, blood clotting 103 B2  
Contraceptives 300, 303  
Contractility, heart muscle 194  
Contraction, afterloaded 66  
    auxotonic 64, 66  
    isometric 64, 66  
    isotonic 64, 66  
    velocity, skeletal muscle 68  
    myocard 204  
Contracture 66

- Contrast, auditory pathway 368  
enhancement 368  
of stimuli 312, 328  
retina 354  
simultaneous 354  
successive 352, 354
- Control circuit 4  
humoral 272  
system 4
- Controller 4
- Convection 24, 222
- Converting enzyme, angiotensin-  
(ACE) 184
- Convergence of signals 358  
response, eyes 360
- Cooperativity, positive, hemo-  
globin 128
- Copper (Cu) 226  
iron oxidation 90
- Coprosterol 256
- Core sleep 334  
temperature 222, 224
- Cornea 344, 346
- Corneal reflex 320, 358
- Corona radiata 308
- Coronary blood flow 210  
insufficiency 210  
reserve 210
- Corpus amygdaloideum 310, 330,  
336  
callosus 310  
geniculatum laterale 356, 358  
mediale 368  
luteum 298, 300  
pregnancy 304  
progesterone production 303  
stomach 240
- Correlations 383
- Corresponding areas, retina 360
- Cortex, auditory 368  
associative 326  
cerebellum 326  
cerebral 332, 310, 326  
frontal 330
- Corticoids, albumin binding 268  
globulin binding 268, 303
- Corticoliberin (= CRH) 230, 269,  
272, 274, 280, 296,  
304  
birth 304  
cortisol secretion 296  
placenta 304  
receptors, hypothalamus 330  
second messenger 274  
secretion, interleukin effect  
296
- Corticosterone 182  
synthesis 294
- Corticotropin (ACTH) 269, 272,  
280, 294, 296  
aldosterone synthesis 182  
cortisol synthesis 296  
receptors, hypothalamus 330  
second messenger 274  
releasing factor → cortico-  
liberin  
hormone → corticoliberin  
Corti's tunnel 364
- Cortisol 92, 182, 256, 272, 280,  
296  
binding-globulin (CBG) 296,  
303  
effect, permissive 296  
fight or flight 330  
hypothalamus 330  
precursors 296  
stress 296  
synthesis 296  
transport 296
- Cortisone 296
- Cotransmitter 52, 84, 86, 326
- Cotransport, definition 26
- Costimulatory signal 98
- Coughing 132, 320, 370
- Coumarin 104
- Countercurrent exchange, heat 224  
kidney 164  
system 164
- Countertransport 26
- Coupling, electromechanical 62
- COX (cyclooxygenase) 104, 262,  
269
- CPPV (continuous positive pres-  
sure ventilation) 110
- Creatine 72
- Creatine phosphate 72, 76, 228  
muscle reserve 73 B  
standard free enthalpy 41  
clearance, endogenous 152
- Cretinism 288
- CRF → cortiboliberin  
CRH → corticoliberin  
Grigler-Najjar syndrome 250
- Cristae, mitochondria 12
- Crista, ampulla 342
- Cross test, blood types 100
- Crypts, large intestine 264  
small intestine 244, 262
- Crypts of Lieberkühn 244, 262
- CSF → cerebrospinal fluid
- Cupula 342
- Curare 56, 110
- Current, alternating 50, 375  
direct 50, 375  
endplate 56  
miniature endplate 56  
unit 375
- Current-voltage curve 33 B3, 34
- CVP (central venous pressure)  
190, 204
- Cyanide 130
- Cyanosis 110, 130
- Cyclic AMP → AMP, cyclic  
GMP → GMP, cyclic
- Cyclooxygenase (COX) 242, 269  
inhibitors 104
- Cyclosporin A 98
- Cystic fibrosis 110, 246
- Cystine 158, 174
- Cystinuria 158, 258
- Cytochrome oxidase 130
- Cytochrome P450-epoxygenase  
269
- Cytokines 266, 268, 274  
cortisol 296  
receptors 278
- Cytokinesis 58
- Cytolysis 96
- Cytoplasm 8
- Cytosin 8
- Cytosol 28, 58
- Cytoskeleton, migration 30
- Cytosol 8  
ions 45 B, 93 C

**D**

- d (submultiple of a unit) 373  
da (multiple of a unit) 373
- DAG (Diacylglycerol) 36, 82, 84,  
274, 276
- Dalton (Da), unit 374
- Dalton's law 106
- Dark adaptation, eye 348, 352,  
354  
receptive field 354
- Darkness-induced  $Ca^{2+}$  350
- Dead space, artificial respiration  
110  
functional, respiration 114,  
122, 134  
increase 120  
functions 114  
snorkel breathing 134  
ventilation 106  
volume ( $V_D$ ) 114
- Deafness 364f., 370
- Debré-Toni-Fanconi syndrome  
158
- Deca- (multiple of a unit) 373
- D cells, islets of Langerhans 282,  
284  
stomach 242
- DCT (distal convoluted tubule)  
148
- Deceleration, unit 374
- Deci- (submultiple of a unit) 373
- Decibel (dB), unit 362
- Decompression sickness 134
- Decurination 56
- Dedifferentiation, cells 272
- Defecation 264
- Defense mechanism 96 ff., 232,  
330  
intestine 232

- Defensins 96  
Defibrillation 200  
Deflation reflex 132  
Deglutition 238  
Degrees Celsius 375  
    Fahrenheit 375  
7-dehydrocholesterol 292  
Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)  
    295, 304, 306  
    adrenal cortex 296  
    sulfate (DHEA-S) 304  
Deiodinase 286, 288  
Deiter's nucleus 326, 328  
Delayed immune reaction 100  
Deletion, clonal 94  
Dendrites 42  
Deoxycholate 248  
Depth perception, visual 358  
Depolarization 46, 66  
    action potential 46  
    permanent, muscle 56, 60  
    smooth muscle 70  
Derepression 8  
Dermatitis, allergy 100  
Dermographism 214  
Desensitization 52, 276, 318  
    smell sensors 340  
Desmin filaments 14  
Desoxycorticosterone 295  
Desoxyribonucleic acid → DNA  
Desoxyribose 8  
Detoxication processes 160  
Deuteranomaly 356  
Deuteranopia 356  
Dextrin,  $\alpha$ -limit 258  
DHEA → dehydroepian-  
    drosterone  
DHPR (dihydropyridine receptor)  
    62, 63 B, 65 D  
DHT (5 $\alpha$ -dihydrotestosterone)  
    306  
Diabetes insipidus 166, 218  
    mellitus 142, 158, 218, 230, 284  
    coma 218  
    osmotic diuresis 172  
    type II, obesity 230  
Diacylglycerol (DAG) 36, 82, 84,  
    274, 276  
Diadochokinesia 328  
Diapedesis 94  
Diaphragm 108  
Diarrhea 138, 142, 173, 258, 262,  
    264  
    acid-base balance 138  
    lactase deficiency 258  
    salt and water homeostasis  
    173 B  
Diastole, heart 190  
Diastolic depolarization 192  
Diathermy 50  
Dicarboxylates, tubular transport  
    158, 160  
Diencephalon 310  
Diet 226  
    induced thermogenesis (DIT)  
    228  
    vegetarian 142  
Differential threshold, sound,  
    frequency 368  
    intensity 368  
    optical 352  
    smell 340  
    taste 338  
Differentiation, cells 272  
Diffusion 20, 208  
    capacity 22  
    capillaries 208  
    coefficient (D) 20  
    Krogh's (K) 22  
    conductance 22  
    distance 20  
    driving force 20, 22  
    equilibrium 20  
    facilitated 23, 158, 258  
    Fick's first law 20, 22, 120  
    gas 22  
    ions 22  
    net 20  
    non-ionic 22, 156, 176  
    potential 22, 32, 44  
    rate 20  
    "simple" 20  
    unidirectional 20  
Digestion 232, 236, 252, 258  
    carbohydrates 236, 258  
    impaired 246  
    lipids 252  
    organs 232  
    proteins 258  
Digitalis 194  
Dihydropyridine receptor (DHPR)  
    62, 63 B, 65 D  
    heart 194  
5 $\alpha$ -Dihydrotestosterone (DHT)  
    306  
    synthesis 294  
    testes 306  
1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol →  
    calcitriol  
Diiodotyrosin residues (DIT) 286  
Dilator muscle, pupil 344  
Dim-light vision 348  
Diopters (dpt) 346  
Dipeptidases 258  
Dipeptides 158, 258  
Diplopia 360  
Direct bilirubin 250  
Disaccharide, digestion 258  
Disinhibition 340  
    thalamus 326  
Dissociation constant 378 f.  
Distal stomach 240  
    tubule 148, 162, 166, 178  
Distant hearing 368  
    vision 360  
DIT (diet-induced thermogene-  
    sis) 228  
DIT (diiodotyrosine residues) 286  
Diuresis 164, 172  
    osmotic 172, 176  
    influence on K<sup>+</sup> excretion 182  
    salt and water homeostasis  
    173 B  
Diuretics 172, 182, 218  
    influence on Ca<sup>2+</sup> reabsorption  
    178  
    K<sup>+</sup> excretion 172, 182  
    osmotic 172  
    tubular secretion of 156, 160,  
    172  
Diurnal rhythm 334  
Diving 134  
    oxygen toxicity 136  
DNA (desoxyribonucleic acid) 8  
    double helix 8  
DNases, pancreas 246  
Döderlein bacilli 302  
Dominance columns, ocular 358  
L-Dopa 84  
Dopamine 84, 268, 269, 274, 280,  
    303, 326  
    cerebral cortex 332  
    menstrual cycle 298  
    neurons 330  
    receptor, striatum 326  
    second messenger 274  
    synthesis 84  
    transmitter 326  
Dopamine- $\beta$ -hydroxylase 84  
Dorsal root, spinal cord 322  
Double helix, DNA 8  
    vision 360  
Down regulation, hormone recep-  
    tors 30  
    Na<sup>+</sup>-phosphate symport carrier  
    178  
Dreams 334  
Driving "force" 20, 38  
    pressure difference 108  
Dromotropism, heart 194  
D-Sensor 312, 314, 316  
Dubin-Johnson syndrome 250  
Duct, collecting 174  
Ductus arteriosus 220  
    patent 220  
    venous 220  
Duodenum (→ also intestine)  
    234, 244, 258  
    gastrin production 234  
    GIP production 234  
    secretin production 234  
Dwarfism, T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> deficiency 288  
Dynamic work, negative 74  
    positive 74  
Dyne, conversion into SI unit 374  
Dynein 58

- Dynorphin 86, 318  
 Dysmetria 328  
 Dyspnea 108  
 Dystrophin 60
- E**
- E (multiple of a unit) 373  
 E1 → estrone  
 E2 → estradiol  
 E3 → estriol  
 Ear 362, 364, 366, 368  
 drum 364  
 in diving 134  
 Eavesdropping 368  
 ECF → extracellular fluid  
 ECL (enterochromaffin-like cells)  
 242  
 ECG (electrocardiogram) 190,  
 196ff.  
 atrial depolarization 196  
 cardiac cycle 190  
 electrical axis 198  
 electrolyte disturbances 198  
 integral vector 196  
 leads 196  
 myocardial infarction 198  
 ventricular depolarization 196  
 repolarisation 196  
 Ectopic pacemaker, heart 200  
 Edema 172, 208  
 causes 208  
 extracellular 172, 208  
 intracellular 172  
 local 302  
 pulmonary 118, 120, 122, 132,  
 144, 172, 208  
 Edinger-Westphal nucleus 360  
 EDHF (endothelium-derived  
 hyperpolarizing  
 factor) 214  
 EDTA (ethylenedinitrilo-  
 tetraacetat), blood  
 clotting 102  
 EDV (end diastolic volume) 190,  
 202  
 EEG (electroencephalogram) 332,  
 334  
 11,12-EET (Epoxyeicosatrienoate)  
 214, 269  
 EGF (epidermal growth factor)  
 278  
 Eicosanoids 214, 269, 272, 276  
 Einthoven leads (ECG) 196, 198  
 Ejaculate 308  
 Ejaculation 308  
 Ejaculatory center 308  
 Ejection fraction 190  
 phase, heart 190, 202  
 Elastase 258  
 Electrocardiogram → ECG  
 Electrochemical gradient 26  
 potential 32  
 Electrodiffusion 22, 34  
 Electroencephalogram → EEG  
 Electrolyte homeostasis 168ff.  
 Electromotility, outer hair cells  
 366  
 Electrophoresis 93 B  
 Electrotonic transmission 48,  
 54 D  
 Embolisms 104  
 diving 134  
 Eminence, median 280  
 Emission, sperms 308  
 Emissions, evoked otoacoustic  
 366  
 Emotions 336  
 expression 330  
 limbic system 330  
 Emphysema 114, 118  
 Emptying rates, gastrointestinal  
 tract 233, 240  
 Emulsification of fats 252  
 Encoding, information 312  
 End diastolic pressure 202  
 volume (EDV) 190, 202  
 systolic volume (ESV) 190, 202,  
 220  
 Endergonic reaction 38  
 Endings, annulospiral 316  
 Endocochlear potential 366  
 Endocrine cells 268  
 gland 268  
 growth 272  
 system 266ff.  
 Endocytosis 12, 28, 90, 286  
 receptor-mediated 12  
 kidney 158  
 thyroid gland 286  
 transferrin 90  
 Endolymph 342, 364  
 Endometrium 303  
 Endopeptidases 242, 246, 258  
 gastric juice 242  
 renal tubule 158  
 Endoplasmic reticulum 10, 12, 26  
 Endorphin 280, 318  
 Endosomes 12  
 receptors 28  
 transcytosis 28  
 Endothel(ium) 102  
 exchange processes 208  
 function 18  
 heparin source 254  
 lipoprotein lipase (LPL) 254,  
 256  
 NO synthase 82  
 Endothelium-derived hyper-  
 polarizing factor  
 (EDHF) 214  
 Endothelin 212, 280  
 second messenger 276  
 Endothermic reaction 38  
 Endplate current 56  
 motor 56  
 blocking substances 56  
 reversal potential 56  
 potential (EPP) 56  
 Endurance limit 72  
 Enema 264  
 Energy, activating 39  
 basic daily 226  
 chemical 228  
 expenditure, total (TEE) 226  
 homeostasis 230  
 metabolism 38, 222, 228, 282  
 cortisol effect 296  
 need 226  
 production 38, 228  
 reserves 282  
 sources 226  
 storage 230  
 substrates 72, 226ff., 254, 282,  
 254  
 turnover 38, 226, 228  
 units 374  
 Enkephalin 52, 86, 234, 258, 326  
 ENS (enteric nervous system)  
 234  
 Enteroglucagon (= GLP-1) 282,  
 284  
 Enterohepatic circulation 248,  
 250  
 Enteropeptidase 246  
 Enthalpy 38  
 Entrainment, brainwaves 332  
 Entropy 38  
 Environment, internal 2, 78, 266  
 Enzyme, function 40  
 Ependymal cells 338  
 EpETrE (= Epoxyeicosatrienoates  
 EE) 269  
 Epidermal growth factor (EGF)  
 278  
 Epilepsy, EEG 332  
 Epinephrine (= adrenalin) 84ff.,  
 160, 194, 212, 256,  
 268, 274, 282, 288  
 adrenal medulla 86  
 circulatory shock 218  
 coronary vasodilatation 210  
 defensive behavior 330  
 heart 194  
 influence on insulin release  
 282  
 on K<sup>+</sup> uptake 180  
 lipolysis 218  
 metabolic effect 283 A, 285 C  
 pheochromocytoma 216  
 production, cortisol influence  
 296  
 receptor types → adrenocep-  
 tors

- Epinephrine second messengers  
 → adrenoceptors  
 synthesis 84  
 tubular transport 160  
 vasoactivity 212
- Epiphysis (= pineal gland) 334
- Epiphysis (of bones), estrogens 302  
 testosterone 306
- Epithel, function 18
- Epoxyeicosatrienoates (EpETE = EE) 269
- 11,12-Epoxyeicosatrienoic acid (11,12 EET) 214
- EPP (endplate potential) 56
- EPSP (excitatory postsynaptic potential) 52, 56, 82, 320  
 cerebral cortex 332  
 early 82  
 late 82  
 peptidergic 82
- Eq (equivalent), unit 375
- Equilibrium organ 328, 342  
 nystagmus 360  
 concentration 32  
 constant (K) 40  
 potential 32, 44  
 ions 45 B
- Equivalent, caloric 228  
 mass 375
- ER → endoplasmic reticulum
- Erection, genital organs 214, 308
- Erg, conversion into SI unit 374
- Ergocalciferol 292
- Ergometry 76
- Erogenous areas 308
- Erythroblasts 90
- Erythrocytes 88, 90  
 crenation 92  
 effect of hypertonicity 88, 100, 124, 128  
 fluidity 92  
 life span 88  
 maturation 88  
 mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH) 88  
 concentration (MCHC) 88  
 volume (MCV) 88
- metabolism 282  
 pH 126  
 proliferation 88  
 viscosity 92
- Erythropoiesis 90  
 cobalamin 90  
 folic acid 90  
 high altitude 136  
 inefficient 90
- Erythropoietin 88, 148, 218
- Escalator, ciliary 110
- Esophagus 232, 238, 240
- ECG leads 196  
 pleural pressure, measurement 108  
 sphincter 238
- Essential amino acids 226  
 fatty acids 226
- Estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>) 294, 298, 300, **302**, 306  
 synthesis 294  
 testis 306
- Estriol (E<sub>3</sub>) 294, 300, 302, 304
- Estrogens 268, 294, 298, 300, **302**, 304  
 actions 302  
 comparison 302  
 degeneration 302  
 menstrual cycle 298  
 oral therapy 302  
 placenta 304  
 synthesis 294, 302
- Estrone (E<sub>1</sub>) 300, 302  
 synthesis 294
- ESV (end systolic volume) 190, 202
- Euphoria, diving 134
- Evans blue, indicator 168
- Evaporation of water, heat loss 222
- Exa- (multiple of a unit) 373
- Exchange carrier, Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> 26 f., 162, 174 f., 276
- Excitable cells 42, 44, 46
- Excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP) 52, 56, 82, 320
- Excretion (→ also kidney) 160, 174  
 fractional 152
- Exercise 72, 76, 107, 120, 282  
 cardiac output 76, 74  
 O<sub>2</sub> uptake 74  
 respiration 74
- Exergonic reaction 38
- Exocrine glands 246
- Exocytosis 28 f., 30, 50, 86, 286
- epinephrin 86  
 constitutive 30  
 glucagon 284  
 salivary enzymes 236  
 thyroid glands 286
- Exopeptidases 246
- Exothermic Reaction 38
- Expansion, clonal 94, 98
- Expectancy potential, cortical 324
- Expiration 108  
 maximum flow rate 118  
 muscle 108, 132  
 pressure difference, driving force 108  
 work 116
- Expiratory curves, maximal 117  
 flow, maximum 118
- volume, forced 118  
 first second (FEV<sub>1</sub>) 118  
 relative 118
- Expired air 107 A
- Exponent, calculation with 380 f.
- Export protein, synthesis 12
- External auditory canal 364  
 intercostal muscle 108
- Extracellular fluid (ECF) (→ also H<sub>2</sub>O) 34, 93 C, 148, 152, 168  
 indicators 168  
 ions 93 C
- Extrafusal fibers, muscle 316
- Extrasystole 200
- Eye (→ also visual, retina and opt...), accommodation 344, 346  
 adaptation to light 352  
 blind spot 348  
 color vision 356  
 dark adaptation 356  
 far point 344  
 focal length 346  
 point 346  
 intraocular pressure 346  
 light rays, physics 346  
 movements 360  
 muscles, external 360  
 near point 344  
 nodal point 344  
 optical axis 346  
 photochemistry 348  
 postural motor control 328  
 reflex movements 342  
 refraction 346  
 structure 344
- Eyelids 359
- F**
- F (Faraday constant) 22, 32 F (fluorine) 226
- f (submultiple of a unit) 373
- °F, conversion to °C 375
- Facilitated diffusion 158
- Fähræus-Lindqvist effect 92
- Fahrenheit, conversion 375
- Fallopian tube 308
- Falsetto 346
- Fanconi-Debré-Toni syndrome 158
- Faraday constant (F) 22, 32
- Far point, vision 344, 346
- Farsightedness 346
- Fas (= CD95) 98  
 ligand 98
- Fascicular zone, adrenal cortex 294
- Fasting 282  
 T3 synthesis 288



- Fat 228, 246, 252, 256, 282  
absorption, intestine 252  
brown 224, 288  
caloric equivalent 228  
cells 256  
chemical structure 227 B  
daily intake 252  
depots 230, 282  
digestion 236, **252**  
pancreas 246  
phases 253 B  
emulsification 240, 252  
energy substrate 228  
metabolism, insulin 284
- Fatigue 72, 76
- Fat-soluble vitamins 252, 260
- Fattened animals 284
- Fatty acids 210, 252, 254, 262, 282, 284  
cycloxygenase 269  
essential 226  
free (FFA) 282  
carrier 252  
glucagon action 284  
lipoprotein lipase 254  
myocard metabolism 210  
sources 257 D  
storage 257 D  
target sites 256  
transport in blood 254  
uptake in cells 254  
supply of energy 72  
liver 254, 284
- Fe (iron) 88, 90, 92, 128, 226, 262  
absorption in intestine 90  
carrier, intestinal mucosa 90  
deficiency 90  
functional 90  
hemoglobin 128  
degradation 250  
intake 90, 226  
metabolism 90  
overload 90  
poisoning 90  
pool 90  
recycling 90  
storage 90  
transferrin 90  
transport, plasma 90
- FE (fractional excretion) 152
- Feces 250, 262, 264
- Fechner's law 354
- Feedback, control, hormones 272  
negative 4, 272, 286, 300, 306, 318  
TSH secretion 288  
neuroendocrine 272  
positive 272, 300, 304  
tubuloglomerular (TGF) 172, 184
- Feet, conversion into SI unit 372
- Femto- (submultiple of a unit) 373
- Ferrireductase 90
- Ferritin 90
- Fertility 306
- Fertilization 308
- Fetal circulation 220  
zone, adrenal cortex 304
- Fetoplacental unit 304
- Fetus 220  
O<sub>2</sub> supply 220
- FEV<sub>1</sub> (forced expiratory volume, first second) 118
- Fever 100, 224, 288
- FF (filtration fraction) 24, 152, 389
- FGF (fibroblast growth factor) 278
- Fiber → nerve, neuron, motor neuron and muscle
- Fibers, diet 264
- Fibrillation, atrial 200  
ventricular 200
- Fibrin 102, 104
- Fibrinogen 102, 104
- Fibrinolysis 102, 104
- Fibrinopeptides 104
- Fibrin-stabilizing factor 102, 104
- Fibroblast 94  
interferons, release 96  
migration 30
- Fibroblast growth factor (FGF) 278
- Fibronectin 102
- Fick's first law of diffusion 20, 120, 388
- Fick's principle 106, 130, 389  
kidney 150
- Field, receptive 314, 354  
visual 358
- Fila olfactoria 340
- Filament sliding, smooth muscle 71 B  
striated muscle 62
- Filling phase, heart 190  
pressure, receptors for, heart 214
- Filtration 24  
capillaries 208  
coefficient 208  
equilibrium 150  
fraction, glomerular (FF) 24, 152, 389  
glomerular 148  
pressure, effective 208  
kidney 152  
shock 218
- First messenger → hormones
- Fitzgerald factor 102
- Fixed acids 174
- Fletcher factor 102
- Flexion reflex 320
- Flexor muscles 328  
withdrawal reflex 320
- Floccunodular lobe 326
- Flow rate, blood 188  
unit 374  
resistance, blood circulation 188  
velocity 188  
unit 374
- Fluid compartments 168  
measurement 168
- Fluid exchange, capillaries 208  
extracellular 168  
intracellular 92, 168  
ounce, conversion into SI unit 374
- Fluidity of erythrocytes 92
- Fluorine (F) 226
- Flutter, atrial 200
- Folic acid 90, 226, 260  
absorption, intestine 260  
daily requirement 260  
deficiencies 90  
storage 260
- Follicle, dominant 298, 300, 303  
graafian 298  
primordial 298  
progesterone synthesis 303  
stimulating hormone → folitropin  
thyroid gland 286
- Follicle-stimulating hormone-releasing hormone → gonadoliberin
- Follicular phase 298, 300
- Follitropin (FSH) 269, **298**, 300, 306  
man 306  
menstrual cycle 298  
peak 300  
receptor density 300  
second messenger 274  
secretion, activin 306  
DHT 306  
estrogens 300, 306  
inhibin 300, 306  
neuropeptid Y 300  
norepinephrine 300  
progesterone 300  
pulsatile 298  
testosterone 306
- Food deprivation, energy reserve 282
- Foot, conversion into SI unit 372
- Foramen ovale 220  
patent 220
- Force, unit 374
- Forced expiratory volume (FEV) 118  
vital capacity 118
- Force-velocity curve, muscle 68

- Forgetfulness of words 370  
 Formant 370  
 Formata reticularis 238, 322, 328, 340  
     vomiting center 238  
 Formic acid, non-ionic diffusion 22  
 Forskolin 276  
 Fovea centralis, retina 344, 348, 358  
 Fraction, respiration gas 106  
     units 376  
 Fractional concentration → fraction  
     excretion (FE) 152, 154  
 Frank-Starling mechanism, heart 68, 202, 204, 216, 218  
 FRC (functional residual capacity) 112, 114, 116  
 Free enthalpy 38  
     fatty acids 210, 252, 254  
     water, urine 172  
 Freezing point, H<sub>2</sub>O 375  
 Frequency, fundamental 362, 370  
     inotropism 194, 204  
     unit 374  
 Fructose, intestinal, absorption 258  
     renal reabsorption 158  
 FSF (fibrin-stabilizing factor) 102  
 FSH → follitropin  
     /LH-RH → gonadoliberin  
 Fuel value, physiological 228  
 Functional minimum, protein intake 226  
     residual capacity (FRC) 112, 114, 116  
 Fundamental frequency, vowels 370  
 Fundus, stomach 240  
 Fungi, defense against 94  
 Funicular myelosis 260  
 Furosemide 172  
 Fusimotor set 316
- G**
- ΔG (free enthalpy) 38  
 g (multiple of a unit) 373  
 G (membrane conductance) 32  
 GABA (γ-aminobutyric acid) 34, 52, 284, 320, 326f.  
     cerebral cortex 332  
     Gn-RH secretion 300  
     receptors 52, 55 F, 320  
     second messenger 55 F, 274  
 Galactorrhea 303  
 Galactose, intestinal absorption 258  
     renal reabsorption 158  
 Galanin 52, 86  
     insulin secretion 282  
 Gall bladder 248  
     stones 248  
     posthepatic jaundice 250  
 Gallon, conversion into SI unit 374  
 Ganglia, vegetative 78, 83 A  
     neurotransmission 83 A  
 Ganglion cells, retina 344, 354, 358  
     vestibular 342  
 GAP (GTPase-activating protein) 350  
 Gap junction 18, 58  
     astrocytes 338  
     heart muscle 192  
     regulation 37 A  
     smooth muscle 70  
     uterus 304  
 Gas constant 20, 24, 32  
     equation, alveolar 120, 136, 389  
     ideal 112  
     exchange 106, 120  
     impairment 120  
 Gases 106, 264  
 Gastric (→ also stomach), acid 242  
     function, glucocorticoid effect 296  
     inhibitory peptide (obsolete name for GIP) 240  
     juice 238, 242, 258  
     pH 242  
     reflux 238  
     mucosa, protection 242  
     secretion 242  
     ulcers 242  
 Gastrin 234, 240, 242  
     esophagus 238  
     insulin secretion 282  
     second messenger 276  
     stomach 234, 240  
 Gastrin-releasing peptide → GRP  
 Gastrocolic reflex 264  
 Gastrointestinal (GI) tract 78, 232ff.  
     bacteria 240, 264  
     blood flow 186, 232  
     hormones 234  
     interdigestive phase 240  
     neuronal and hormonal integration 234  
     neurotransmitters 234  
     passage time 232, 233 A  
 Gauer-Henry reflex 170  
 GCAP (guanylyl cyclase-activating protein) 350  
 G cells, antrum 242  
 GDNF (glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor) 338  
 GDP (guanosine diphosphate) 274, 276  
     transducin 348  
 Gene expression 8  
     regulation 12  
 Genetic code 8  
 Genital tract 214, 298, 306  
     female 298  
     male 306  
     innervation 79ff.  
 Germ cell 306  
 Gestagens 303  
 GFR → glomerular filtration  
 GH (growth hormone) → somatotropin  
 GH-IH → somastotatin  
 GH-RH → somatoliberin  
 GI → gastrointestinal  
 Gibbs-Donnan distribution 44  
 Gibbs-Helmholtz equation 38  
 Giga- (multiple of a unit) 373  
 GIP (glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide) 234, 240  
     esophagus 238  
     insulin secretion 282  
     stomach 242  
 Glands, Brunner 244  
     bulbo-urethral 309  
     endocrine 268  
     exocrine 246  
     gastrointestinal 232ff., 244, 262  
     parathyroid 236  
     pineal 334  
     salivary 214  
     sublingual 204, 236  
     submandibular 236  
     sweat 222  
 Glasses 346  
 Glaucoma 344  
 Glia 338  
 Glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) 338  
 Glioma 338  
 Globulin 92  
     cortisol-binding 296  
     testosterone-binding 307  
     thyroxin-binding 288  
 Globus pallidus 310  
 Glomera aortica 132  
     carotica 132  
 Glomerular filter 148  
     zone, adrenal cortex 294, 296  
 Glomeruli olfactorii 340  
 Glomerulotubular balance 166  
 Glomerulus, renal 148  
     filtration 154, 156  
     pressure 150  
     rate (GFR) 152

- GLP-1 (glucagon-like peptide = enteroglucagon) 282, 284
- Glucagon 230, 256, 272, 274, 282, 284, 288  
actions 283 A, 284, 285 C  
gluconeogenesis 284  
influence on insulin release 282  
lipolysis 256  
second messenger 274  
secretion 284
- Glucagon-like peptide (GLP-1) 230, 282, 284
- Glucocorticoids (→ also cortisol) 296  
receptors 10, 296  
synthesis 294, 296
- Gluconeogenesis 72, 282, 284  
renal 148
- Glucose 72, 154 ff., 172, 210, 228, 258, 284  
aerobic oxidation 72, 282  
anaerobic degradation 142, 282  
blood 282  
caloric equivalent 228  
value 228  
carrier 22, 26, 156, 158, 258, 262, 284  
chemosensors 282  
co-transport with Na<sup>+</sup> 262  
deficiency 242  
energy substrate 72, 210  
glucagon secretion 284  
intestinal absorption 258, 262  
metabolism 72, 282, 296  
influence of cyclic AMP 274  
muscle 72  
myocard 210  
osmotic diuresis 172  
plasma concentration 282  
pregnancy 304  
regulation 272  
production 72, 148, 282, 284  
renal reabsorption 156, 158  
storage 282  
uptake 86
- Glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide (GIP) 234
- Glucose-6-phosphate 41, 72
- Glucosuria 158, 172, 284
- Glucuronic acid 160, 250, 294  
conjugates, carrier 250  
steroid hormones 294
- Glucuronides 156, 160
- Glucuronyl transferase 250
- GLUT (Glucose transporter) 23, 158, 258, 284
- GLUT2 158, 258  
GLUT4 284  
GLUT5 158, 258
- Glutamate 34, 52, 174, 258, 274  
AMPA-receptors 55 F, 336  
cochlear transmitter 366  
astrocytes 338  
dehydrogenase, renal 176  
genetic code 8  
intestinal absorption 258  
long-term potentiation 336  
NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> excretion 176  
NMDA receptor 52, 55 F, 336  
receptor types 55 F  
second messenger 55 F, 274, 276  
taste quality 338  
transmitter function 326, 336  
hair cells 342  
photosensors 350, 354
- Glutaminase, kidney 176
- Glutamine 176  
astrocytes 338  
formation, hepatic 176  
gluconeogenesis 282  
renal metabolism 176
- Glutathione 158, 160, 286  
conjugates 250  
secretion 160  
conjugation 160, 250  
S-transferase 250
- Glycerol 282, 284
- Glycine 34, 52, 248, 255  
conjugation 250  
receptor 52, 55 F  
second messenger 55 F  
transmitter function 320
- Glycocalyx 12, 14
- Glycogen 58, 72, 246, 282  
metabolism 282  
phosphorylase 274  
skeletal muscle 58, 73 B  
synthase 274  
synthesis 274
- Glycogenesis 282, 284
- Glycogenolysis 72, 85, 274, 282, 284  
STH 280
- Glycolipids 14
- Glycolysis 142, 282  
anaerobic 72  
muscle 72
- Glycoprotein 274, 286  
hormones 274
- Glycosylation 12
- GMP, cyclic 268, 274, 278, 348, 350  
photosensors 350
- GnRH → gonadoliberin
- GNRP (guanine nucleotide-releasing protein) 30
- Goal-directed movement 328
- Goblet cells 244, 264
- Goiter 272, 286, 288
- Goldberger leads, ECG 196, 198
- Golgi apparatus 12, 286  
cells, cerebellum 328  
tendon organs 316
- Gonadoliberin (GnRH) 230, 269, 280, 298, 300, 306  
menstrual cycle 298, 300  
Gonadotropic hormone-releasing hormone → gonadoliberin
- Gonotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) → gonadoliberin
- Gonads 294, 306
- G proteins 37 C1, 55 F, 84, 274, 276, 338  
adrenoceptors 84, 87 B  
subunits 274  
types, G<sub>i</sub> 36, 82, 84, 274  
G<sub>o</sub> 36, 276  
G<sub>olf</sub> 340  
G<sub>q</sub> 82, 276  
G<sub>s</sub> 84, 274, 340, 348  
G<sub>t</sub> (transducin) 348
- Graafian follicle 298
- Gradient, electrochemical 26, 32, 44
- Granular cells, cerebellum 328, 340  
olfactory bulb 340
- Granular mesangial cells 184
- Granules, secretory 268
- Granulocytes 88, 104  
basophilic 100, 254  
eosinophile 94  
neutrophilic 30, 94  
allergy 100  
immune defense 94  
migration 30  
production 94
- Granulosa cells 300
- Granzyme B 98
- Graves' diseases 288
- Grey matter, spinal cord 310
- GRH → somatoliberin
- Growth 282, 284, 288, 306, 330  
factors 88, 232, 268, 278, 280, 338  
nerval 338  
receptor types 268, 278  
hormone → somatotropin  
release-inhibiting hormone (or factor) → somatostatin  
releasing factor (or hormone) → somatoliberin  
influence of thyroid hormones 288  
insulin 284  
T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> 288  
GRP (gastrin-releasing peptide) 86, 230, 234, 240, 242

- GRP second messenger 276  
stomach 242
- GSC (glomerular sieving coefficient) 154
- GTP (guanosine triphosphate) 274, 276, 278  
transducin 348
- GTPase 276  
transducin 350
- GTPase-activating protein (GAP) 350
- Guanine 8
- Guanine nucleotide-releasing protein (GNRP) 30
- Guanosine  
diphosphate → GDP  
monophosphate, cyclic → GMP, cyclic  
triphosphate → GTP
- Guanosylmonophosphate → GMP
- Guanylyl cyclase-activating protein (GCAP) 350
- Guanylyl cyclase, coronary arteries 210  
cytoplasmatic 278  
retina 350
- $\alpha$ -gustducin 338
- Gut 234 ff.  
absorption, amino acids 262  
Ca<sup>2+</sup> 262  
Cl<sup>-</sup> 262  
mechanisms 263 D  
glucose 262  
Mg<sup>2+</sup> 262  
Na<sup>+</sup> 262  
mechanisms 263 D  
phosphate 262  
H<sub>2</sub>O 262  
mechanism 263 B  
bacteria 232, 250, 264  
Brunner's glands 244  
calcitriol effect 292  
CCK production 234  
defecation 264  
gases 264  
motility 244  
structure 244
- Gynecomastia 294
- Gyrus, angularis 370  
cingulate 310, 330  
parahippocampal 330  
postcentral 322, 338
- H**
- h (multiple of a unit) 373
- H zone, muscle 62
- H<sup>+</sup> 138, 140, 142, 144, 242  
buffering 138, 140, 142, 144  
chemosensors 132  
concentration, blood 138  
normal range 142  
excretion 174  
renal 142  
gradient 158  
Na<sup>+</sup> antiport 26 ff., 161 C, 162, 174 ff.  
secretion, renal 174  
symport 158, 258  
uniporter (UCP) 222, 230  
H<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase 26 ff., 28, 174, 182, 242  
collecting duct 174, 182  
colon 262  
production 174  
renal excretion 174  
secretion, gastric 242  
renal tubular 174  
H<sup>+</sup>-ATPase 14, 26, 174  
lysosomes 14  
H<sup>+</sup>-peptide cotransport 26 ff., 158, 258  
H<sup>+</sup>-phosphate cotransport 17 B2  
H<sup>+</sup>-pyruvate cotransport 17 B2  
H<sub>2</sub>, large intestine 264  
Habituation 336  
Hageman factor 102  
Hagen-Poiseuille's equation 188, 390  
Hair cells 58, 342  
inner 364  
outer 364, 368  
electromotility 366  
potential 366  
sensor potential 366  
vestibular ganglion 342  
follicle receptors 314  
Haldane effect 124, 126  
Hamburg shift 124  
Haptenes 100  
Haptoglobin 90  
Haustriation 264  
Hay fever 100  
hbSEP (human bile salt export pump) 248  
H (histamine) cells, stomach 242  
hCG (human chorionic gonadotropin) 304  
hCL (human placental lactogen) 304  
HCl (hydrochloric acid) 142, 238  
gastric 238, 242, 258  
production in metabolism 174  
HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (bicarbonate) 124, 126, 140, 146, 236, 262  
actual 146  
blood 142  
concentration, actual 142  
measurement 146  
normal range 142, 146  
standard 142  
measurement 146
- buffer system 138  
/Cl<sup>-</sup> antiport 124  
/CO<sub>2</sub> buffer 140, 144  
CO<sub>2</sub> transport, blood 124  
erythrocytes 124  
excretion 138, 142, 144, 172, 176  
high altitude 136  
gastric mucosa 242  
intestinal absorption 262  
loss, diarrhea 262  
plasma 142, 146  
production, amino acid metabolism 176  
renal 145 B2  
renal reabsorption 156, 174  
saliva 236  
secretion 242, 246  
bile ducts 248  
pancreas 246  
salivary glands 236  
stomach 242  
titration curve 147
- hCS (human chorionic somatotropin) 304
- HDL (high density lipoproteins) 254, 256  
estrogen effect 302  
Head's reflex 132  
Head's zones 318  
Hearing (→ also sound) 362 ff.  
audibility limit 362  
auditory cortex 368  
pathway 368, 370  
binaural 368  
cochlear amplification 366, 368  
direction 368  
threshold 368  
loss 364, 366  
sensors 364 ff.  
thresholds 362, 366, 368
- Heart (→ also cardiac and myocard) 86, 186, 210  
action potential 192, 193 A  
afterload 202, 204  
all-or-none contraction 68, 192  
arrhythmias 180  
atrial contraction 190  
flutter 200  
fibrillation 200  
septum defect 220  
tachycardia 200  
atrioventricular block 200  
node 192  
valves 190  
automaticity 192  
autonomic nervous system 194  
beats → heart rate  
bundle of His 192  
cholinergic transmission 83 B

- conduction 192, 194, 200  
disturbances 200  
system 192  
velocity 195 C
- contractility 194, 204  
influences 194, 296
- coronary blood flow 186, 190, 212, 210  
vessels 210, 212
- cycle 190
- diastolic time 190
- ejection fraction 190  
phase 202
- electric activity, action potential 58, 192  
arrhythmias 180, 200  
AV block 200  
AV rhythm 192  
bundle branch block 200  
cholinoceptors 82  
chronotropism 194  
dromotropism 194  
ECG 196  
ectopic 200  
electrolyte disturbances 198  
extrasystoles 200
- impulse generation 192  
disturbances 200  
inotropism 194, 204  
pacemaker 192  
diastolic depolarization 192  
ectopic 192  
potential 192  
reentry 194, 200  
spreading time 195 C  
vulnerable phase 193 A, 200
- electrical axis 198
- end diastolic volume (EDV) 190, 202  
systolic volume (ESV) 190, 202  
influence of aortic pressure 204
- energy sources 210
- exercise 74
- failure 208, 216, 218  
cause of edema 208  
salt and water homeostasis 173 B
- filling phase 202
- Frank-Starling mechanism 68  
frequency → heart rate  
glycosides 194  
influence of  $Ca^{2+}$  194  
inotropism 194, 204  
isovolumetric contraction 190, 202
- muscle 46, 58, 68, 192 ff.  
action potential 46, 59 A  
adrenoceptors 214
- blood flow 186  
 $Ca^{2+}$ -ATPase 194  
 $Ca^{2+}$  channels 194  
 $Ca^{2+}$  concentration, cytosolic 194
- contraction 59 A  
isovolumetric 190  
velocity 204
- dihydro-pyridine receptors 194
- ECG 196
- electromechanical coupling 194
- frequency inotropism 204
- impulse generation 192
- infarction 218  
ECG 198
- influence of  $Ca^{2+}$  194  
contractility 194  
inotropism 194, 204  
ischemia, ECG 198
- isotonic maxima 203
- isovolumetric maximum 203
- metabolism 210
- $Na^+/Ca^{2+}$  exchange carrier 194
- $Na^+/K^+$ -ATPase 194
- $O_2$  supply 210  
tension-time index 210
- mechanics 202
- metabolic activity 210
- $O_2$  supply 210
- output, cardiac (CO) 74, 106, 122, 186, 188, 218  
fetus 220  
high altitude 136  
maximum 77 C  
endurance, athletes 77 C  
physical work 74  
shock 218
- power 202  
preload 202, 204
- pressure-volume diagram 68  
relation 202  
work 202
- Purkinje fibers 192
- rate 74, 136, 186, 194, 288  
AV block 200  
blood pressure regulation 4, 218  
fetus 220  
high altitude 136  
influence of  $Ca^{2+}$  influx 194  
maximum 77 C  
endurance, athlete 77 C  
normal 186  
physical work 74  
shock 218  
 $T_3/T_4$  effect 288
- reentry 194  
reflexes 216
- resting pressure-volume curve 202
- semilunar valves 190
- sinoatrial node 192  
rhythmicity 192  
threshold potential 192
- sounds 190, 191 A
- stroke volume 186, 190, 202, 204  
maximum 77 C  
endurance, athlete 77 C  
measurement 106  
regulation 204  
training 76
- ventricles, stretch sensors 214
- ventricular diastolic volume 190  
pressure 190  
curve 191 A  
work diagram 202  
volume load 204  
weight, endurance athlete 77 C  
work 202
- Heat 222, 228, 288  
countercurrent exchange 164  
flow, external 222  
internal 222  
loss by evaporation of water 222  
of maintenance 74  
production 222, 228, 288  
energy metabolism 228  
influence of thyroid hormones 288  
sensors (→ also warm sensors) 314  
unit 375
- Heat shock proteins (HSP) 278
- Hecto- (multiple of a unit) 373
- Helicine arteries 308
- Helicotrema 364, 366
- Helium 114
- Helium dilution, measurement of residual volume 114
- Helper cells, T- 98
- Hematocrit 88, 150, 168  
blood viscosity 92  
high altitude 136
- Hematopoiesis 88  
testosterone 306
- Heme 88, 128  
Fe(II) 90  
oxygenase 90
- Hemeralopia → night blindness
- Hemochromatosis 90
- Hemoglobin 88, 90, 92, 124, 126, 128, 138, 140, 146, 250  
blood puffer 124, 128, 138, 140, 146  
carbamate 124  
concentration, blood 128  
degradation 250  
fetal 128  
synthesis 10, 90  
types 128

- Hemolysis 88, 100, 250  
  fetus 100  
  prehepatic jaundice 250
- Hemopexin 90
- Hemophilia 104
- Hemoproteins 250
- Hemorrhage 218
- Hemorrhagic diatheses 104
- Hemosiderin 90
- Hemostasis 102
- Henderson-Hasselbalch equation  
  138, 139 A, 140, 146,  
  379, 389
- Henry-Gauer reflex 170, 218
- Heparin 104, 254
- Hepatic → liver
- Hepatocyte growth factor (HGF)  
  278
- Hering-Breuer reflex 132
- Hering's opponent color theory  
  354
- Hertz, unit 362, 374
- HGF (hepatocyte growth factor)  
  278
- hGH → chorionic growth hor-  
  mone
- HLA protein (human leukocyte  
  antigen) 96, 98
- High altitude 130, 132  
  respiration 136  
  erythropoietin secretion 88  
  hypoxic hypoxia 130  
  density lipoproteins (HDL) 256  
  pressure system 186
- Hippocampus 330, 336
- Hippurate, transcellular secre-  
  tion, renal 156
- Histamine 70, 100, 160, 208, 212,  
  214, 218, 234, 242,  
  269, 274, 276  
  allergy 100  
  cerebral cortex 332  
  coronary vasodilatation 210  
  gastrointestinal tract 234  
  gastric juice secretion 242  
  influence on vessel permeabil-  
  ity 214  
  receptors, types 55 F  
    H<sub>1</sub>- 212, 276  
    H<sub>2</sub>- 242, 274  
  second messenger 274  
  shock 218  
  tubular transport 160  
  vasodilator 214
- Histidine 174, 226
- 3-HMG-CoA-reductase 256
- HMK (high-molecular-weight  
  kininogen) 102
- hNaDC-1 (human Na<sup>+</sup>-dicarboxy-  
  late transporter) 160
- hNBC (human Na<sup>+</sup>-bicarbonate  
  cotransporter) 162,  
  174
- H<sub>2</sub>O (→ also extracellular fluid  
  and body fluid),  
  balance 148, 166, 168  
  disturbances 172, 173 B  
  clearance 164  
  concentration 24  
  daily intake 168, 262  
  deficit 170, 180  
  diffusion 24  
  diuresis 164, 166, 172  
    maximum 166  
    urea excretion 166  
  excess 170  
  excretion, feces 262  
  renal → kidney, excretion  
  flow, osmotic 24  
  free, urine 164, 172  
  homeostasis 168  
  intake 168  
  intestinal absorption 262  
  intoxication 170  
  losses 170  
  partial pressure 106  
  permeability 208  
  reabsorption 154, 164  
  renal handling 166, 170  
  regulation 170  
  transport 24  
  turnover 168
- Hoffmann's reflex 316
- Homeostasis 2, 4, 212, 266
- Homeothermy 222
- Horizontal cells, retina 344, 354
- Hormone(s) 234, 266, 268  
  abbreviations 268, 269  
  adrenocorticotropin (= ACTH)  
    269  
  aglandotropic 266, 280  
  anabolic 306  
  autocrine 266  
  binding proteins 268  
  catecholamines 274  
  chemical structure 268  
  down regulation 30  
  endocrine 266, 268  
  feedback mechanism 272  
  femal sex 294, 298, 302  
  follicle-stimulating (= FSH) 269  
  gastrointestinal 234  
  gland, atrophy 272  
  hypertrophy 272  
  influence of hormonal medi-  
  cation 272  
  glandotropic 266, 269, 280  
  glycoprotein 274, 268  
  hierarchy 268  
  hypothalamic 268, 280  
  lactogenic 269  
  lipophilic 268
- male sex 306
- mammotropic 269
- medication 272
- α-melanocyte-stimulating hor-  
  mone (α-MSH) 269
- menstrual cycle 300
- natriuretic 170
- nomenclature 269
- pancreatic 282
- paracrine 266, 268
- peptide 268, 274  
  placenta 304
- pregnancy 304
- principle functions 272
- receptors 266, 268, 274 ff.
- second messengers 274 ff.
- steroid 248, 268  
  placenta 304
- therapeutic administration 272
- thyroid 286  
  stimulating (TSH) 269
- tissue 268
- transport, blood 268
- types 268
- Horopter 360
- Horse power (hp), metric, unit  
  374
- 5-HPETE (= 5-hydroperoxyeico-  
  satrienoate) 269
- hPL (human placental lactogen)  
  304
- H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (sulfuric acid) production  
  142, 174
- HSP (heat shock protein) 278
- H<sub>1</sub>(istamine)-receptor, second  
  messenger 55 F, 212,  
  276
- H<sub>2</sub>-receptor, second messenger  
  55 F, 274
- Hüfner number 128
- Human chorionic gonadotropin  
  (hCG, HCG) 304  
  somatotropin (hCS) 304  
  leukocyte-associated antigen  
  (HLA) 96  
  Na<sup>+</sup>-bicarbonate cotransporter  
  (hNBC) 162, 174  
  placental lactogen (hPL, HPL)  
  304
- Humidity, air 222, 224
- Humor, aqueous 344
- Hunger 142  
  edema 208  
  energy reserves 282  
  metabolic effect 283 A
- Hydraulic filter, arteries 188
- Hydrocarbon continuum 252
- Hydrocephalus 310
- Hydrochloric acid → HCl
- Hydrocortisone → cortisol
- Hydrogen ion → H<sup>+</sup> and pH  
  peroxide 94

- $\beta$ -Hydroxybutyrate 142  
 1 $\alpha$ -Hydroxylase, calcitriol synthesis 292  
 11-Hydroxylase  
   adrenal cortex 294  
 17-Hydroxylase  
   adrenal cortex 294  
 21-Hydroxylase  
   adrenal cortex 294  
 24-Hydroxylase, calcidiol 292  
 17 $\beta$ -Hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase 300  
 11 $\beta$ -Hydroxysteroid oxidoreductase 182, 296  
 Hyperalgesia 318  
 Hyperaldosteronism 182, 238  
 Hyperaminoaciduria 158  
 Hyperbicarbonaturia, osmotic diuresis 172  
 Hypercalcemia 178, 198, 290, 292  
   ECG 198  
   renal phosphate reabsorption 178  
 Hypercapnia 144  
 Hypercholesterolemia 256  
 Hypercolumns, cerebral cortex 358  
 Hyperemesis gravidarum 238  
 Hyperemia, reactive 212  
 Hyperglycemia 284  
   osmotic diuresis 172  
 Hyperkalemia 142, 180 ff., 198  
   ECG 198  
 Hyperlipoproteinemia 256  
 Hypermagnesemia 178  
 Hyperopia 346  
 Hyperosmolality, extracellular fluid 172  
 Hyperoxia 136  
 Hyperparathyroidism 292  
 Hyperpnea 108  
 Hyperpolarization, action potential 46  
   afterpotential 46  
   photo sensors 354  
 Hyperprolactinemia 303  
 Hyperreflexia 320  
 Hypersensitivity, delayed type 100  
   immediate type 100  
 Hypertension 184, 206, 216  
   renal 184, 216  
   resistance 216  
 Hyperthyroidism 288  
 Hypertrophy, compensatory 272  
 Hyperventilation 108, 120, 136, 144, 290  
   diving 134  
   high altitude 136  
   H<sub>2</sub>O losses 168  
   nonrespiratory acidosis 142  
   salt and water homeostasis 173 B  
 Hypervitaminosis 226  
 Hypervolemia 178  
 Hypocalcemia 178, 198, 290, 292  
   ECG 198  
   renal phosphate reabsorption 178  
 Hypocapnia 144  
 Hypoglycemia 86, 284  
   glucagon secretion 284  
 Hypokalemia 172, 198, 262  
   diarrhea 262  
   ECG 198  
   vomiting 238  
 Hyponatremia 170  
 Hypoosmolality, extracellular fluid 172  
 Hypoparathyroidism 290, 292  
 Hypophosphatemia 290, 292  
 Hypopnea 108  
 Hypotension 206  
   orthostatic 182  
 Hypothalamus 78, 134, 170, 224, 230, 266, 268, 280, 300, 310, 330, 358, 359  
   afferents 330  
   angiotensin II 184  
   body weight 230  
   function 266  
   hormones, regulation 268, 280  
   limbic system 340  
   nuclei, arcuate 230  
     dorsomedial 230  
     lateral 230  
     paraventricular 224  
     magnocellular 224  
     ventromedial 224  
   osmosensors 170  
   smell 340  
   somatostatin secretion 286  
   testosterone effect 306  
   thermoregulation 222, 224  
   thirst center 168  
   TRH secretion 286  
 Hypothyroidism 288, 303  
 Hypoventilation 108, 144  
 Hypovitaminosis 226  
 Hypovolemia 218  
   chronic vomiting 238  
   shock 218  
 Hypoxia 130, 136, 142  
   autoregulation 210  
   brain 186  
   fetus 220  
   vasoconstriction 122, 212, 220  
 Hypoxic vasoconstriction, lung 122  
 Hz, unit 374
- I**  
 I band, muscle 62  
 ICAM (intercellular adhesion molecule) 96  
 ICF  $\rightarrow$  intracellular fluid  
 IC<sub>50</sub> (= LH)  $\rightarrow$  lutropin  
 Icterus 250  
 IDDM (insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus) 284  
 IDL (intermediate-density lipoproteins) 254, 256  
 IEL (intraepithelial lymphocytes) 232  
 IgA (immunoglobulin A) 98, 232, 236, 344  
 IgE (immunoglobulin E) 93, 98, 100  
 IGF-1 (insulinlike growth factor) 278, 280  
 IgG (immunoglobulin G) 93, 98  
 IgM (immunoglobulin M) 93, 98, 100  
 Ileum ( $\rightarrow$  also intestine) 232, 244  
   bile salt reabsorption 248  
   cobalamin absorption 260  
 Immune defense 94 ff., 232, 244  
   antigen presentation 96  
   cellular 94, 232  
   gastrointestinal 232, 244  
   specific 98  
     cellular 96  
     humoral 98  
     unspecific 94  
   response, delayed 96  
   secondary antigen contact 100  
 Immunity 94  
   nonspecific 94  
   specific 98  
 Immunization 100  
   active 94  
   passive 94  
 Immunoglobulins (Ig) 93 f., 94, 98, 232  
   class switching 98  
   concentration, serum 93 D  
   IgA 98, 232, 344  
   saliva 236  
   IgE 93, 98, 100  
   IgG 93, 98  
   IgM 93, 98  
     ABO system 100  
     function 94  
     placental barrier 92  
     receptors 96  
     infections 94  
 Immunologic tolerance, central 94  
   peripheral 98  
 Immunological memory 94  
 Immunosuppression 98



- Impedance matching, middle-ear 364
- Implantation of fertilized ovum 298
- Impotence 303
- Inch, conversion into SI unit 372
- Incus 364
- Indicator dilution technique 168
- Indifference point, hydrostatic 204
- Indirect bilirubin 250
- Indoor climate 224
- Induction, hormon-dependent 278
- Infarction, myocardial 198
- Inflammation 96, 100, 269, 318 neurogenic 318
- Information 312 encoding 312 storage 336 unit 312
- Inhibin 300, 306 FSH secretion 306 menstrual cycle 298
- Inhibition, antagonistic 320 autogenic 316 competitive 28, 56 descending 318 feed-forward 320 lateral 312, 368 acoustic pathway 368 postsynaptic 320 presynaptic 320 recurrent 316, 320
- Inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP) 52
- Inner ear 364 ff. potentials 366
- Inositol-1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>) 82, 84, 268, 274, 276
- Inotropism, heart muscle 194, 204
- Inspiration 108, 110, 204 pressure differences, driving force 108 work 116
- Inspiratory pressure, maximum 116
- Inspired air, composition 107 A
- Instinctive behavior, limbic system 330
- Insulin 180, 230, 254 ff., 256, 268, 272 ff., 274, **282 ff.**, 284, 288 anabolic effects 284 deficiency, diabetes 284 degradation 282 effects 180, 283 A, 284, 285 C half-life 282 K<sup>+</sup> homeostasis 180 lipoproteinlipase 254 lipolysis 256 overdose 218 receptor 268, 278 regulation of secretion 282 secretion 282 amino acids 282  $\beta_2$ -adrenoceptors 84 GIP 234 inhibition 330 synthesis 282
- Insulin-like growth factors (IGFs) 278, 280
- Insulin receptor substrate-1 (IRS-1) 278, 284
- Integration of body functions 266, 310
- Intention tremor 328
- Intercalated cells, tubule 174, 182
- Intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM) 96
- Intercostal muscles 108
- Intercourse 308
- Interdigestive phase 240 motility 234
- Interferon (IFN) 95 f. IFN $\gamma$  95, 98
- Interleukin (IL) 94, 224, 232 IL1 296 IL2 98, 296 IL4 98 IL5 98 IL6 98 IL8 94
- Intermediate filaments 14 type, heart axis 198
- Internal clock 240, 334 heat flow 222, 224 intercostal muscles 108 milieu 168, 266 tissue respiration 130
- Interneuron 316, 320, 324 inhibitory 320 stimulatory 320
- Interstice 45 B, 92, 93 C, 168
- Interstitial cell-stimulating hormone (ICSH)  $\rightarrow$  lutropin fluid 92, 93 C, 168
- Internode region 48
- Intestinal absorption ( $\rightarrow$  also absorption) 244 ff. amino acids 258 Ca<sup>2+</sup> 262, 292 electrolytes 262 glucose 258 vitamins 260 water 262 bacteria 264 blood flow 232 glands 244, 262 lymph 232, 254 movements 244 neurons 244 phase in gastric secretion 242
- Intestine 232 Cl<sup>-</sup> secretion 263 defense mechanism 232 lymphatics 232 mucosal surface 244 small 240 structure 244 passage time 232
- Intracellular fluid 168 composition 92 ions 93 C
- Intraesophageal leads (ECG) 196
- Intrafusal fibers, muscle 316
- Intrapleural pressure 108
- Intrapulmonic pressure 108
- Intrathoracic pressure 108
- Intrinsic factor 260 cobalamin deficiency 90 gastric juice 242
- Intron 8
- Inulin, indicator for extracellular space 168 kidney, clearance 152, 154
- 5-iodinase 286
- Iodine/iodide, butanol-extractable (BEI) 286 ff. daily requirement 226, 288
- Ion channels 32, 34 control 34, 276 with ligands 34, 55 F diffusion 22 open-probability 34, 46, 50 pump (ATPases) 26
- Ionic conductance 32, 375 current 32, 375
- Ions ( $\rightarrow$  also individual ions) 375 body fluid 93 C concentrations 45 B
- IP<sub>3</sub> (inositol-1,4,5-trisphosphate) 82, 274, 276
- IPPV (intermittant positive pressure ventilation) 110
- IPSP (inhibitory postsynaptic potential) 52 cerebral cortex 332 peptidergic 82
- Iris 344
- Iron ( $\rightarrow$  also Fe)
- Iron lung 110
- IRS-1 (insulin receptor substrate-1) 278
- Ischemia 130, 198
- Islets of Langerhans 282
- Isoleucine 226
- Isomaltase 258
- Isophones 362
- Isoprenaline 84, 87 B
- Isotonic peak cuve 202
- Isovolumetric contraction, heart 190 relaxation, heart 190 work diagram 203

peak curve 202  
 IP<sub>3</sub> (inositol-1,4,5-trisphosphate)  
 274, 276

## J

J (Joule), unit 298, 374  
 Jaundice 250  
 Jejunum (→ also intestine) 234,  
 244  
 Jet lag 334  
 JGA (juxtaglomerular apparatus)  
 172, 184  
 Joint position, information on  
 316  
 Joule (J), unit 298, 374  
 J sensors 132  
 Junctions, tight 154  
 Juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA)  
 172, 184

## K

k (multiple of a unit) 373  
 K (dissociation constant) 378 f.  
 K (Kelvin), unit 375  
 K<sup>+</sup>, absorption 180  
 balance 180  
 in intestine 262  
 adaptation 182  
 balance 182  
 effect of aldosterone 182  
 cellular uptake, influences on  
 180  
 channels, activation 32 ff.  
 adrenoceptors 84  
 G-proteins 276  
 ATP-controlled 282  
 collecting duct 180  
 conductance, action poten-  
 tial 44, 46  
 GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors 320  
 hair cells 342  
 pacemaker cells, heart 192  
 resting potential 44  
 voltage-gated 46  
 renal 162, 180  
 concentration, intracellular 26,  
 44  
 contracture, skeletal muscle 66  
 deficiency 172, 180  
 diffusion 32  
 distribution 284  
 equilibrium potential 44  
 excretion 172, 180, 182  
 diuretics 172  
 influence 182  
 intake, high 180  
 loss 262  
 outflow, motor end plate 56

renal handling 156, 180 ff.  
 role in autoregulation 212  
 secretion, intestine 262  
 saliva 236  
 tubule 172  
 stomach, parietal cells 242  
 K<sub>M</sub> (Michaelis-Menten constant)  
 28  
 Kallidin 214  
 Kallikrein 104, 214  
 salivary gland 236  
 Karyocytes 88  
 Karyolymph 8  
 kcal, conversion into SI unit 374  
 Kelvin (K), unit 375  
 Keratin filaments 14  
 Kerckring's fold 244  
 α-Ketoglutarat, renal production  
 176  
 renal transport 160  
 Ketosis 284  
 17-ketosteroids 294, 302, 306  
 synthesis 294  
 Kidney (→ also tubule and renal)  
 148 ff., 292  
 acid base balance 138, 174  
 α<sub>1</sub>-adrenoceptors 214  
 ADH receptors 166  
 aldosterone effect 182  
 anatomy 148, 149 A, B  
 aquaporin (AQP) 166  
 ATP 154  
 atriopentin effect 152  
 autoregulation 150, 212  
 range of 151 C  
 balance glomerulotubular 166  
 blood flow 150, 186  
 measurement 150  
 medullary 172  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> excretion 178, 292  
 sensors 178  
 calcitriol synthesis 292  
 capillaries 148 f., 151 A, 164,  
 184  
 pressure 151 B  
 hypertension 216  
 circulation 150  
 clearance 152, 389  
 ratio of 152  
 water 164  
 concentration and dilution  
 164, 389  
 mechanism 164, 166  
 conjugation process 160  
 connecting tubule 166  
 cortex 164, 166  
 countercurrent exchange 164  
 diuresis 172, 176  
 endopeptidase 158  
 energy metabolism 150  
 excretion

ammonia/ammonium 76,  
 174  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> 178  
 electrolytes 157 D  
 fractional (FE) 152 f.  
 H<sup>+</sup> 142, 174  
 titratable acid 178  
 HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> 138, 144  
 Mg<sup>2+</sup> 178  
 organic substances 157 D,  
 158, 160  
 phosphate 176 f.  
 steroid hormones 294  
 urobilinogen 250  
 water 154, 157 D, 164  
 glucocorticoid effect 296  
 extraction fraction 152  
 filtration 148, 152  
 amount of a substances 158  
 dissolved substances 154  
 equilibrium 152  
 fraction (FF) 152  
 pressure, effective 152, 390  
 function 148 ff.  
 glomerular filtration rate (GFR)  
 150  
 glucocorticoid effect 296  
 glomerulotubular balance  
 glomerulus 148 ff.  
 glucocorticoid effect 296  
 glutaminase 176  
 glutamine 176  
 H<sup>+</sup>/K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase 174, 181 B4  
 H<sup>+</sup>-ATPase 174  
 H<sup>+</sup>-excretion 142, 174  
 H<sup>+</sup>-secretion 174  
 handling of amino acids 158  
 angiotension 158  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> 178, 292  
 diuretics 156  
 drugs 156  
 glucose 158  
 glucuronides 156  
 glutathione 158  
 H<sup>+</sup> 144, 174  
 HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> 142, 174  
 K<sup>+</sup> 156, 180 ff.  
 lactate 158  
 Na<sup>+</sup> 156, 162, 170  
 oxalate 158  
 peptides 158  
 phosphate 176, 178, 290,  
 292  
 proteins 158  
 urea 166  
 uric acid 156, 158  
 inulin clearance 152, 154  
 juxtaglomerular apparatus  
 184  
 juxtamedullary nephrons 150  
 K<sup>+</sup> channels 162  
 homeostasis 180

- Kidney loss 172  
loop of Henle 164  
Ca<sup>2+</sup>-reabsorption 178  
Mg<sup>2+</sup>-reabsorption 178  
Na<sup>+</sup> transport 162  
water permeability 166  
medulla 150  
medullary blood flow 166, 172  
metabolism 150, 282  
Mg<sup>2+</sup> sensors 178  
Na<sup>+</sup> channels 172  
Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase 154, 156, 162  
function 154  
nephron types 148, 166  
O<sub>2</sub> consumption 150  
PAH clearance 150  
pH homeostasis 142, 174  
plasma flow 150  
potential, transepithelial 156, 162  
PTH effect 178  
reabsorption  
Ca<sup>2+</sup> 172, 290  
Cl<sup>-</sup> 162  
electrolytes 157 D  
fractional 154  
D-glucose 158  
HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> 174  
K<sup>+</sup> 180  
Mg<sup>2+</sup> 172  
Na<sup>+</sup> 162  
collecting duct 182  
driving force 156  
organic substances 157 D, 158  
phosphate 178  
PTH effect 292  
water 154, 164  
renal failure 142, 176  
vitamin D 292  
renin 184  
secretion 156  
K<sup>+</sup> 172, 180  
organic substances 160  
solvent drag 162  
structure 148  
tight junctions 154  
transport processes 154 ff., 155 B,C  
tubuloglomerular feedback (TGF) 172  
ultrafiltrate 154  
urea 166  
Killer cells, natural 94, 96  
T-killer cells 98  
Kilo- (multiple of a unit) 373  
Kilowatt hour (kWh), conversion into SI unit 374  
Kinase cascades 274  
Kinesia 238  
Kinesin 42, 58, 62  
Kininogen 102, 214, 236  
high-molecular-weight (HMK) 102  
salivary gland 236  
Kinocilium 342  
Knee jerk reflex 316  
Kohlransch's fold 264  
Kohlransch break 352  
Korotkow sounds 206  
Korsakoff syndrome 337  
Krebs cycle → citrate cycle  
Krogh's diffusion coefficient 22, 120, 388  
Krogh's cylinder model 130  
Kupffer cells 96, 232  
kWh (kilowatt hour), unit 374
- L**
- Labia minora, glands 308  
Labyrinth 364  
basal, tubulus epithelium 154  
Labyrinth reflexes, tonic 328  
Lacrimal canaliculi 344  
glands 344  
sac 344  
Lactacidosis 72, 76  
Lactase 258  
Lactate 72, 73 B2, 74, 142, 174, 282  
concentration in plasma 76  
gluconeogenesis from 282  
muscle metabolism 72  
myocard metabolism 210  
physical work 76  
renal reabsorption 156, 158  
vagina 302  
Lactation 292  
reflex 303  
Lactic acid → lactate  
Lactogenesis 303, 304  
Lactose 258  
Lamellipodia 30  
L-amino acids → amino acids  
Landolt rings 349 A  
Langerhans cells 96  
Language 337, 370  
Lanosterol 294  
Laplace's law 118, 188, 202, 210, 390  
Large intestine 232, 264  
Larynx 370  
testosterone 306  
Lateral geniculate body 356, 358  
lemniscus 368  
signal flow, retina 354  
Lateralization, sound 364  
Latency, hearing 368  
Law of mass actions 379  
Laxatives 262  
LCCS (limited capacity control system) 336  
LCAT (lecithin cholesterol acyl transferase) 254  
LDL (low density lipoproteins) 254, 256, 302  
estrogen effect 302  
receptors 254, 256  
L-dopa 84  
Learning 336  
Lecithin 14, 248, 252  
bile 248  
cholesterol acyl transferase (LCAT) 254  
Left axis (heart) 198  
Lemniscus, medial 322  
trigeminalis 372  
Length, units 372  
Lens 344, 346  
Leptin 230  
receptors 230, 330  
Leucine 226  
insulin release 282  
Leu-enkephalin 234  
Leukocytes 88  
interferon secretion 96  
Leukotrien 268, 269  
allergy 100  
second messenger 276  
Lewis's response 214  
Leydig cells 302, 306  
LFA 1 (lymphocyte function-associated antigen 1) 99  
LH → lutropin  
LHRH → gonadoliberin  
Libido 306  
Lids 344  
Light, adaptation 350, 354  
sensors 344  
stimuli 354  
wavelength 356  
Light chain protein, myosin II 60  
Lignin 226, 264  
Limb leads (ECG) 196  
Limbic system 310, 330  
α-limit dextrin 246, 258  
Limited capacity control system (LCCS) 336  
Linear velocity, unit 374  
Linoleic acid 226  
Lipase 246, 252, 256  
acid 256  
gastric fundus 252  
hepatic 254  
in human milk 252  
lingual 252  
non-specific 252  
pancreatic 252  
saliva 236  
Lipid membrane 14  
Lipids 252, 256  
absorption 252  
digestion 252  
distribution 254

- storage 254  
synthesis 12, 13 F, 282
- Lipogenesis 282
- Lipolysis 86, 222, 246, 256, 282,  
284  
influence 256  
insulin effect 284  
STH effect 280  
stimulation, thermoregulation  
222
- Lipoproteinlipase (LPL) 254, 256  
insulin effect 284  
thermoregulation 222
- Lipoproteins 254 ff.  
receptors 28, 254
- Lipostasis 230
- Lipoxygenase 269
- Liter, definition 372 f.
- Lithocholate 248
- Liver 90, 160, 176, 232, 248, 250,  
282  
acid-base homeostasis 144, 176  
bypass 232  
calcidiol synthesis 292  
coagulation factors, synthesis  
102  
conjugation process 160  
damage, blood clotting 104  
excretory function 160, 248 ff.  
fatty 254  
Fe homeostasis 90  
fetal blood cell formation 88  
formation of 7-dehydro-  
cholesterol 292  
gluconeogenesis 282  
glutamine formation 176  
glycogenesis 282  
icterus 250  
jaundice 250  
metabolism 282  
steroid hormones, degradation  
294  
urea production 176
- Load, filtered 158
- Locus coeruleus 328
- Logarithms, calculations 380 f.
- Longitudinal tubules, muscle 60
- Long-term potentiation (LTP) 336
- Loop, cortico-thalamo-cortical  
326  
diuretics 172, 178  
oculomotor 324, 326  
skeletalomotor 326
- Loop of Henle 148, 164, 166, 178
- Loudness 362, 370  
level 362  
voice 370
- Low density lipoproteins (LDL)  
256
- Low pressure system 186
- LRH → gonadoliberin
- LTH → prolactin
- LTP (long-term potentiation) 336
- Luminous intensity, unit 372
- Lumirhodopsin 348
- Lung (→ also pulmonary) 106,  
108, 110, 112  
acid base balance 138 ff.  
alveolar contact time 141 B  
blood flow 106, 122, 186  
fetus 220, 221 B  
bronchial, obstruction 120  
capacity, total (TCL) 112, 113 A  
capillaries 106  
blood pressure 122  
disease, obstructive 118  
restrictive 118  
edema 118, 120, 122, 132, 144,  
172, 208  
fetal 220  
function test, dynamic 112, 118  
gas exchange 120 ff.  
hypoxic vasoconstriction 122  
inflation 118  
iron 110, 111 A2  
O<sub>2</sub> diffusion capacity 22  
opening pressure 118  
perfusion → lung, blood  
flow 122  
stretch receptors 132  
surface tension 118  
total capacity (TCL) 112  
ventilation/perfusion ratio  
122  
volumes 112 ff.  
measurement 112 ff.
- Lung and thorax  
compliance 116, 118  
pressure-volume relationship  
116
- Luteal phase 298, 300
- Luteinization 300
- Luteinizing hormone (LH) →  
lutropin  
releasing hormone (LTH) →  
gonadoliberin
- Luteotropic hormone (LTH) →  
prolactin
- Luteotropin (LTH) → prolactin
- Lutropin 269, 280, 294, 306  
menstrual cycle 298  
peak 300  
receptor, cells of Leydig 306  
secretion, pulsatile 298
- Lymph flow 208, 209 B  
intestinal 232, 254  
nodes 88, 96  
vessels 244
- Lymphocyte function-associated  
antigen 1 (LFA 1) 98
- Lymphocytes 88, 94  
B- 94, 98  
activation 98  
clonal selection 98  
differentiation 98  
clonal deletion 94  
expansion 94  
selection 94  
intraepithelial (IEL) 232  
naive 94  
T- 94  
"armed" 94, 96  
CD4 98  
CD8 98  
cytotoxic cells 98  
clonal expansion 98  
selection 98  
differenziation 98  
naive 96  
T helper cells 98  
T<sub>H1</sub> cells 98  
T<sub>H2</sub> cells 98  
T killer cells 94, 98, 232  
receptor 98
- Lymphocytopoiesis 88
- Lymphokins, cortisol 296
- Lysine 174, 226, 258  
intestinal absorption 258
- Lysis, bacterial 94
- Lysosomes 12, 14, 26 f., 28, 286
- Lysozyme 94, 96, 232  
renal absorption 158  
saliva 236  
tears 344

**M**

- μ (submultiple of a unit) 373
- M (multiple of a unit) 373
- m (submultiple of a unit) 373
- M line, muscle 60
- α<sub>2</sub>-Macroglobulins 104
- Macrophages 30, 94, 96, 98, 224,  
250  
activation 96  
break down of red blood cells  
88  
hemoglobin degradation 250  
immune defense 94, 96  
iron metabolism 90  
migration 30  
respiratory tract 110
- Macula densa 148, 172, 184
- Maculae 342
- Magnesium → Mg<sup>2+</sup>
- Magnetoencephalography (MEG)  
332
- Maintenance heat 74
- Major histocompatibility com-  
plex (MHC) 96, 98
- Malabsorption, folic acid 90
- Maldigestion, enzyme deficit 246
- Malpighian bodies 148
- Malleus 364

- Maltase 258  
 Maltose 246, 258  
 Maltotriose 246, 258  
 Mammary glands 292  
 Mammatropic hormone → prolactin  
 Manganese (Mn) 226  
 Mannitol, osmotic diuresis 172  
 Mannose-6-phosphate 12, 14  
 Mannose-binding protein (MBP) 96  
 MAO (monoamine oxidase) 86  
 MAP kinase (mitogen-activated protein kinase) 276  
 Margination 94  
 Masking, sound 362  
 Masklike facial expression 326  
 Mass, units 374  
 Mass actions, law 379  
 Mass concentration 376  
 Mass movement, large intestine 264  
 Mast cells 104, 256  
   allergy 100  
 Maturation, influence of thyroid hormones 288  
   sexual 298, 306  
 Matrix, extracellular 14  
 Maximal breathing capacity (MBC) 118  
 Maximum diastolic potential (MDP) 192  
 MBC (maximal breathing capacity) 118  
 MBP (mannose-binding protein) 96  
 M cells, mucosal epithelium 232  
 MCH (mean corpuscular hemoglobin) 88 f., 89 C  
 MCHC (mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration) 88, 89 C  
 MCV (mean corpuscular volume) 88, 89 C  
 MDR1 (multidrug resistance protein 1) 250  
 MDR3 250  
 Measles 94  
 Mechanosensors, skin 314, 316  
 Medial geniculate body 368  
 Mediators 268  
 Medications, bile excretion 248  
 Medulla, adrenal 272  
   oblongata 132, 310, 322  
   circulatory "center" 214  
   rhythm generator, respiration 132  
   vomiting center 238  
 MEG (magnetoencephalography) 332  
 Mega- (multiple of a unit) 373  
 Megakaryocytes 88, 102  
 Meiosis 306  
 Meiotic division, spermatocyte 306  
   first, ovum 300  
   second, ovum 308  
 Meissner's corpuscles 314  
 Meissner's plexus (plexus submucous) 244  
 $\alpha$ -Melanocortin (=  $\alpha$ -MSH =  $\alpha$ -melanotropin) 230, 269, 280  
 Melanocortin receptor (MC4 receptor) 230  
 Melanocytes 280  
 Melanocyte-stimulating hormone → melanotropin  
 $\alpha$ -Melanocyte-stimulating hormone ( $\alpha$ -MSH) 230, 269, 280  
 Melanopsin 334  
 Melanotropin ( $\alpha$ -MSH) 230, 269, 280  
   release-inhibiting factor → melanostatin  
   releasing hormone → melanoliberin  
 Melatonin 334  
   second messenger 274, 276  
 Membrane  
   apical 18  
   basolateral 18, 162, 180  
   capacity, nerve 48  
   conductance 32  
   fractional 32  
   electric properties 42, 52  
   function 2  
   permeability for K<sup>+</sup> 46, 180  
   influence of cyclic AMP 274  
   for Na<sup>+</sup> 46, 56, 162  
   postsynaptic 42, 50  
   potential 32, 44, 48  
   hair cells 366  
   photosensors 354  
   renal tubule 156  
   smooth muscle 70  
   presynaptic 42, 50  
   proteins, glycosylation 12  
   synthesis 12  
   structure 14  
   transport 16 f.  
   active 26 f.  
   carrier-mediated 22 f.  
   intracellular 16  
   nonionic 22  
   paracellular 18  
   passive 20  
   potential, driving force 22, 32  
 Memory 336  
 immunological 94  
 knowledge 336  
 loss 336  
 motoric 326  
   short-term 336, 368  
 Menaquinone (Vitamin K<sub>2</sub>) 260  
 Menarche 298  
 Menopause 298, 302  
 Menses 280, 298 f.  
 Menstrual cycle 224, 298, 300, 303  
   body temperature 224, 298  
   hormonal control 300  
   interactions 300  
 Menstruation 280, 298 f.  
 Mercapturic acid 250  
 Merkel's cells 314  
 Mesencephalon 310  
 Mesentery 244  
 Messenger, first (→ also hormones) 268, 274  
   ribonucleic acid → mRNA  
   second 268, 274  
   substances 266  
   third 268  
 Metabolic alkalosis, 142  
   rate 226, 228  
   basal (BMR) 226  
   total 226  
 Metabolism, amino acids 158  
   bone 174, 292  
   carbohydrate 282, 296  
   energy 72, 284  
   glucose 282, 296  
   heart 210  
   iron 90  
   lipids 254, 282  
   muscle 254  
 Metarhodopsin I 348  
 Metarhodopsin II 348, 352  
   phosphorylation 350  
 Metastasis 30  
 Met-enkephalin 234  
 Methan, intestine 264  
 Methemoglobin (MetHb) 128  
   reductase 128  
 Methionine 174, 226  
 Methotrexate 260  
 5-Methyltetrahydrofolic acid 260  
 Methopyrapone 294  
 Metopyrone 294  
 Mg<sup>2+</sup> 178, 262, 274  
   absorption, intestine 262  
   inhibition of Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels, 50  
   CNS 336  
   excretion, renal 178  
   plasma concentration 178  
   renal reabsorption 156, 172, 178  
   sensors, kidney 178  
 mGLU-receptors, second messenger 274, 276

- MgSO<sub>4</sub> 248  
MHC (major histocompatibility complexes) 96  
MHC proteins 96, 98  
MI (cortex area) 324  
Micelle, bile 248  
  intestine 252, 260  
Michaelis-Menten constant (K<sub>M</sub>)  
  28, 158, 383 f., 388  
  kinetics 28, 158, 383 f., 388  
  renal glucose transport 158  
Micro- (submultiple of a unit)  
  373  
Microfilaments 14, 16  
Microglia 96, 338  
Micrography 326  
α<sub>1</sub>-Microglobulin, renal reabsorption 158  
β<sub>2</sub>-Microglobulin, renal reabsorption 158  
Micron, conversion into SI unit 372  
Microtubules 14  
Micturition 79 ff., 148  
Middle ear 364  
MIF → melanostatin  
Migrating motor complex (MMC)  
  240  
Migrating wave 366  
Migration 30  
  phagocytes 94  
MIH → melanostatin  
Mile, conversion into SI unit 372  
Milk 252, 260, 290  
  Ca<sup>2+</sup> 290  
  ejection 280, 303  
  fat 252  
  human, lipase 252  
  lactation reflex 303  
  oxytocin 303  
  production 303  
  prolactin 303  
  sugar (lactose) 258  
Milli (submultiple of a unit) 373  
Mineralocorticoids (→ also aldosterone) 182, 296  
  production 294  
Minerals, intake 226  
  intestinal absorption 262  
  nutrition 226  
Miniature endplate current 56, 57 B2  
Mini-pill 303  
Miosis 344, 358 f.  
MIT (monoiodotyrosine residue)  
  286  
Mitochondria 12, 288  
  critical O<sub>2</sub> pressure 130  
  skeletal muscle 58, 63 A  
  structure and function 12  
  T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> effect 288  
  thermal balance 222  
Mitral cells, olfactory bulb 340  
  valves 190  
MLCK (myosin light chain kinase)  
  36  
MMC (migrating motor complex)  
  240  
mmHg, conversion into SI unit 374  
Modification, posttranscriptional  
  10  
  posttranslational 12, 268  
Mol, unit 374 f.  
Molality 374 ff.  
Molarity 374 ff.  
Mole, unit 374 f.  
Molecular layer 326, 328  
  "weight", unit 374 f.  
Molybdenum (Mo) 226  
2-Monoacylglycerol 246, 252  
Monoamine oxidase (MAO) 86  
Monoaminergic pathways system 330  
Monocytes 88, 94, 96  
Monoiodotyrosine residue (MIT)  
  286  
Mononuclear phagocytotic system (MPS) 96  
Monosaccharides (→ also glucose) 258  
Monooxygenases 250  
Monosynaptic stretch reflex 316  
Morning sickness 238  
Morphine 318  
  tubular transport 160  
Moss fibre, cerebellum 328  
Motilin 240  
  esophagus 238  
  interdigestive motility 234  
  secretion 234  
Motility, molecular basis 58  
Motion sickness 238  
Motivation, limbic system 330  
Motor activity 56 ff., 316 ff., **324**  
  basal ganglia 324  
  cerebellum 326 f.  
  influence on circulation 74  
  pyramidal tract 324  
  voluntary motor function 324  
  postural motor control 328  
  aphasia 370  
  cortex 324 ff.  
  end-plate 56  
  function, control center 326  
  supportive 326  
  neuron 42, 58  
α- 320, 324  
γ- 316, 320  
  paralysis 322  
  proteins 58, 62  
  system 324  
  unit 58, 66  
  recruitment 58  
  types 58  
Mouth-to-mouth resuscitation  
  110  
MPS (mononuclear phagocytotic system) 96  
MRF → melanoliberin  
MRH → melanoliberin  
mRNA (messenger ribonucleic acid) 8  
MRP2 (multi-drug-resistance protein type 2) 160, 250  
MSH → also melanotropin  
α-MSH (α-melanocyte-stimulating hormone) 230, 269, 280  
Mucoviscidiosis 246  
Mucus 110, 236, 244  
  bronchial 110  
  cervical os 298  
  intestine 242, 244, 264  
  neck cells (MNC), stomach 240  
  saliva 236  
  stomach 242  
Müller's maneuver 116  
Multidrug resistance protein 1 (MDR1) 160, 250  
  3 (MDR3) 250  
Multi organ failure 218  
Muramidase → lysozyme  
Muscarine 82  
Muscle 42, 44, 46, 56 ff., 58, 59 A, 254  
  abdominal 108  
  activity, heat production 224  
  ATP 72  
  afterloaded contraction 66  
  cardiac 46, 192 ff.  
  ciliary 344  
  contractile machinery 60 ff.  
  contraction 66  
  afterloaded 66, 202  
  auxotonic 66 ff.  
  isometric 66  
  isotonic 66  
  role of Ca<sup>2+</sup> 64  
  dilator 344  
  energy supply 72, 254, 283  
  extensibility 66  
  titin 68  
  fatigue 76  
  fiber 60 ff.  
  force-velocity diagram 68  
  hypertrophy 76  
  inspiratory 108  
  intercostal 108  
  length-force curve 68  
  length, regulation 316  
  mechanical features 66  
  metabolism 282  
  middle ear 364  
  multi-unit type 70

- Muscle myofibrils 60  
 O<sub>2</sub> extraction 72  
 pump 204  
 puporectal 264  
 reflexes 316  
 relaxants 56  
 respiratory 108, 132  
 resting length 68  
   force 68  
   tension curve 66  
 single-unit type 70  
 short-term high performance 72  
 skeletal 56 ff.  
 smooth 70  
   action potential 59 A  
   caldesmon 70  
   contraction 70  
   M<sub>3</sub>-receptors 82  
   softening effect of ATP 64  
 soreness 76  
 spindle 316  
 sphincter 344  
 stapedius 364  
 stiffness 76  
 striated (→ also skeletal muscle, heart muscle) 59 ff.  
   contraction, molecular mechanism 62  
   cycle 64  
   summation of excitation 66  
   tension, regulation 316  
   tensor tympani 364  
   tone 66  
   types of contractions 66  
   weakness 56
- Musculus bulbocavernosus 308  
 ischiocavernosus 308
- Myasthenia gravis 118
- Mycobacteria, immune defense 96
- Mydriasis 344
- Myelin 42, 48  
 sheath, nerve fibers 42, 48
- Myelopoiesis 88
- Myelosis, funicular 260
- Myenteric plexus 244
- Myocard → heart
- Myocardial function 190 ff.  
 infarction 198, 218  
 metabolism 210  
 O<sub>2</sub> consumption 210  
 oxygen supply 210
- Myofibrils 60
- Myogenic tonus 70
- Myoglobin 58, 72, 90, 128
- Myometrium → uterus
- Myopia 346
- Myosin 58, 60  
 light chain kinase (MLCK) 36  
 smooth muscle 70
- Myosin I 30
- Myosin-II 58, 60  
 striated muscle 60 ff.  
 smooth muscle 70
- N**
- n (submultiple of a unit) 373
- N (newton), unit 374
- N (nitrogen), balance 226
- N<sub>2</sub> dissolved in plasma 134
- role in diving 134  
 toxicity 134
- Na<sup>+</sup> 56, 158, 162, 170, 182, 184, 258, 378  
 absorption in intestine 262  
 antiport carrier 26 f.  
 balance, effect of aldosterone 182  
 body content, total 170  
 channels 46, 56, 172, 262, 348  
 activation 46  
 collecting duct 162, 180  
 conductance 46  
   action potential 46  
 inactivation 46  
 intestine 262  
 kidney 162, 172  
 photosensors 348  
 resting potential 46  
 voltage-gated, heart 192
- Cl<sup>-</sup> symportcarrier 26  
 concentration, cytosolic 26, 44  
 co-transport 258  
 distribution 93  
 excretion, renal 162  
 feces 262  
 /H<sup>+</sup> antiport carrier (= Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger, NHE) 26, 28, 162, 174, 176  
 exchange carrier → Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> antiport carrier  
 kidney 174  
 PKC 276  
 stomach, parietal cells 242
- influx, motor end plate 56  
 intake, hypertension 216  
 renal reabsorption 156  
 handling 162  
 retention 216  
 saliva 236  
 symport carrier 26 f.  
 amino acids 258  
 bile salts 248  
 Cl<sup>-</sup> 28, 162, 172, 236  
 glucose 156 f., 258  
 HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (hNBC) 162, 174  
 intestine 262  
 iodide (NIS) 286  
 phosphate (NaPi) 178  
 vitamins 260
- transport 44, 162, 170, 266  
 paracellular 236  
 tubular resorption 162
- Na<sup>+</sup>-Ca<sup>2+</sup> antiport carrier 36, 194  
 -kidney 178, 182  
 -myocard 194  
 -photosensors 350
- Na<sup>+</sup>-2 Cl<sup>-</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-cotransport 236  
 inhibition 172  
 kidney 162  
 saliva 236
- Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup>-ATPase (→ also ATPase) 26, 28, 46, 180, 242, 288  
 cardiac glycosides 26, 194  
 electrogenicity 46  
 hyperpolarizing afterpotential 46  
 heart muscle 194  
 ouabain 26  
 phosphorylation 26  
 renal collecting duct 180  
 tubule 154, 156, 162  
 resting potential 44  
 salt reabsorption, intestine 262  
 stomach, parietal cells 242  
 T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> effect 288  
 transport cycle 26
- Na<sup>+</sup>-taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide (NTCP) 248
- NaCl, homeostasis 170  
 disturbances 172  
 regulation 170  
 deficiency 170  
 excess, counter regulation 170  
 hypertension 216  
 reabsorption, salivary glands 236  
 sense of taste 338  
 uptake 170
- NADH 39 C
- NaP<sub>i</sub> (Na<sup>+</sup>-phosphate symport carrier) 178
- nano- (submultiple of a unit) 373
- Natriuretic hormone 170
- Natural killer cells 94, 96
- Nausea 238, 328
- Near point, eye 322, 346  
 sightedness 346  
 vision 344  
 response 359, 360
- Necrosis 98
- Neck reflex, tonic 328
- Neocerebellum 326
- Neostigmine 56
- Nephrine 148
- Nephrocalcin 178
- Nephron 148, 150  
 cortical 150



- juxtamedullary 150  
 sections 148  
 structure 148  
 transport processes 154
- Nernst equation 32, 44, 388
- Nerve (→ also neuron and nerve) 78, 84, 310  
 antidromic conduction 48  
 cell 42  
 cholinergic 78, 82  
 conduction velocity 48  
 endings, free, smell 340  
 fiber 42, 48  
 diameter 42, 49 C  
 myelinated 42, 48  
 unmyelinated 42, 48  
 fibers Ia 316  
 Ib 316  
 Ia 316  
 glossopharyngeal 132  
 neurosecretory 280  
 optical 344  
 pelvic splanchnic 308  
 stimulation 50  
 structure 42  
 trigeminal 318, 322, 340, 359
- Nerve growth factor (NGF) 42, 278, 338
- Nervous system 42  
 autonomic 78 ff., 80/81 A, 82, 266  
 centers 78  
 cotransmitter 86  
 innervation, organs 78  
 peripheral 266  
 central 266, 310  
 enteric 234, 266  
 somatic 266
- Nervus opticus 344, 359  
 vagus 132, 242, 248, 370
- Net diffusion 20
- Neuroendocrine system 266 ff., 280 ff.
- Neurofibrils 42
- Neurofilaments 14
- Neurogenic tonus 70
- Neurohypophysis 268, 280
- Neuron (→ also nerve) 42, 50  
 Aδ 318  
 adrenergic 78 ff., 330  
 axolemma 42  
 axon 42  
 axon hillock 42  
 axonal transport 42  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> conductance 44  
 cholinergic 78 ff.  
 Cl<sup>-</sup>-conductance 44  
 collaterals 42  
 conduction velocity 48, 49 C  
 cortex area 332  
 dendrites 42  
 diameter 49 C  
 dopaminergic 326, 330  
 GABAergic 326  
 glutamatergic 326  
 Ia- 316, 320, 324  
 Ib- 316  
 II- 316  
 instestinal 244  
 internal longitudinal resistance 48  
 membrane capacity 48  
 α-motor 320  
 γ-motor 320  
 motoric 324, 328  
 neurosecretory 280  
 nitroenergetic 278  
 parasympathetic 78, 82  
 postganglionic 78, 82  
 preganglionic 78, 82  
 sensoric 312 ff.  
 serotoninergic 330  
 soma 42  
 summation, spatial 52  
 temporal 52  
 structure 42, 43 A1  
 sympathetic 78, 82, 84  
 terminal buttons 42  
 action potential 48  
 transmission, electrotonic 48  
 visceral afferent 78, 234, 266
- Neuropeptid Y (NPY) 84, 86, 230, 280, 300  
 cotransmitter 84  
 receptor types 55 F  
 second messenger 55 F, 274
- Neurosecretion 280
- Neurotensin 55 F  
 second messenger 276
- Neurotransmitter 42, 50, 52, 55 F, 234, 266  
 autonomic nervous system 78 ff.  
 excitatory 52  
 exozytosis 50  
 function 42  
 inhibitory 52  
 ionotropic 34, 55 F  
 metabotropic 34, 55 F  
 release 50  
 re-uptake 52  
 termination of action 54 E
- Neurotubuli 42
- Newborn 93 D, 94, 118, 128, 136, 220, 224, 250, 288, 305  
 distress syndrome 118
- Newton (N), unit 374
- NF-κB (necrosis factor) 276
- NGF (nerve growth factor) 42, 278, 338
- NH<sub>3</sub> 22, 156, 174, 176  
 diffusion 22  
 production 176
- renal cellular secretion 156, 174 f.  
 renal excretion 174  
 secretion, renal tubular 176
- NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> 145 B2, 174 ff.  
 excretion 176 ff.  
 nonionic transport 174  
 production 176
- NHE3 → Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> Antiportcarrier
- Niacin, intestinal absorption 260
- Niacinamide 226
- Nickel (Ni) 226
- Nicotine 82
- Nidation 298, 303
- NIDDM (non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus) 284
- Night blindness 226, 350, 352
- Nipples, erection 308
- NIS (2 Na<sup>+</sup>-I<sup>-</sup>-symport carrier) 286
- Nitric oxide → NO  
 synthase (NOS) 82, 278
- Nitrogen → N and N<sub>2</sub>
- N<sub>M</sub>-receptors 82
- N<sub>N</sub>-receptors 82
- NO 74, 86, 94, 210, 212, 214, 238, 278  
 coronary vasodilatation 210  
 erection 308  
 immune defense 94  
 synthase 82, 278
- Nociception 318, 320, 322  
 tract 318
- Nocisensors 318, 322
- Nodal point, eye 346
- Nodes of Ranvier 42, 48
- Noise suppression, auditory pathway 368
- Non-bicarbonate buffers 126, 138, 140, 144 f.
- Non-ionic diffusion 22, 156, 176
- Norepinephrine (→ also catecholamines) 52, 78, 84, 194, 230, 236, 268, 280, 300  
 adrenal medulla 86  
 cerebral cortex 332  
 coronary vasodilatation 210  
 extraneuronal uptake 86  
 heart 194  
 inactivation 86  
 insulin secretion 282  
 intestinal tract 234  
 neurons 330  
 pheochromocytoma 216  
 receptor types 55 F  
 release 84  
 re-uptake 86  
 saliva secretion 236  
 second messenger 55 F, 274, 276  
 synthesis 84

- Norepinephrine thermoregulation 222
- NOS (nitric oxide synthase) 82, 278
- NPY (Neuropeptid Y) 84, 86, 230, 280, 300
- cotransmitter 84
  - receptor types 55 F
  - second messenger 55 F, 274
- NREM (non-REM) sleep 334
- NTCP (Na<sup>+</sup> taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide) 248
- Nuclear bag fibers 316
- chain fibers 316
  - envelope 10
  - pores 10
    - function 16
    - signal sequences 10
- receptors, calcitriol 292
- Nucleolus 8, 10
- Nucleotides 8
- Nucleus/nuclei, accessory 368
- amygdaloid 330
  - anterior olfactory 340
  - arcuate 230
  - caudate 310, 326
  - cuneatus 322
  - Deiter 326, 328
  - dentate 328
  - dorsomedial 230
  - emboliformis 328
  - fastigial 328
  - gracilis 322
  - lateral 230
  - lemniscus 368
  - localisation signal 10
  - olivaris superior lateralis 364
  - paraventricular 230
  - pedunculus pontinus 326
  - RNA synthesis 8
  - red 328
  - septal 330
  - subthalamic 326
  - suprachiasmatic (SCN) 334
  - thalamic, anterior 330
  - tractus solitarii 338
  - ventromedial 230
  - vestibular 342
- Nuel's spaces 364
- Nursing mother, Ca<sup>2+</sup> requirement 290
- Nutrition 226
- integration 234, 330
  - passage time, stomach 233, 240
  - reflex 320
  - vegetarian 142
- Nystagmus 360
- caloric 342
  - optokinetic 360
  - pathological 360
  - postrotatory 342
- radicals, immune defense 94
- role in autoregulation 212
- saturation (S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) 126, 128
- fetus 220, 221 A
  - influence on CO<sub>2</sub> binding curve 126
- solubility coefficient 128
- in plasma 126
- supply, fetus 220
- myocard 210
- therapy 136
- toxicity 134, 136
- diving 136
  - transport in blood 128
  - uptake, exercise 74
    - maximum 72, 76, 77 C
- endurance athlete 77 C
- OAT1 (organic anion transporter type 1) 160, 268
- Obesity 230
- OCT (organic cation transporter) 160
- Ocular chamber 344
- muscle, nuclei 342
  - pressure, internal 320
- Oculomotor control 326, 329, 342
- Ocytocin → Oxytocin
- Odorant molecules 340
- OFF-bipolar cells 354
- field (central) 354
  - ganglion cells 354, 358
- OH<sup>-</sup>-Ionen 138 ff.
- Ohm (Ω), unit 375
- Ohm's law 32, 116, 188
- ion transport 32, 388
  - circulation 188, 388
  - ventilation 116
- Oil-and-water partition coefficient 20
- Olfactory epithelium 340
- pathway 340
  - sensor cells, primary 340
  - tract 340
- Oligodendrocytes 42, 338
- Oligopeptides, digestion 258
- renal handling 158
- Oligosaccharides 258
- Oliguria 164
- shock 218
- Olive inferior 328
- superior 368
- Oncotic pressure 24, 94, 152, 166, 208, 378
- influence on capillary fluid exchange 208, 379
  - plasma 152
- One-half maximum velocity constant (K<sub>0.5</sub>) 28
- ON-bipolar cells 354
- field (central) 354
  - ganglion cells 354, 358
- O**
- Ω (ohm), unit 375
- O<sub>2</sub> (Oxygen) 72, 106
- arterio-venous difference 132, 210
    - in myocard 210
- artificial respiration 132
- binding curve
- in blood 126, 128
  - fetal hemoglobin 220, 129 C
  - myoglobin 129 C
- breathing 136
- capacity of blood 126, 128
- chemosensors 132, 136
- concentration, blood, maximum 128
- difference, heart muscle 210
- consumption 106, 120, 150, 228, 288
- heart muscle 210
  - maximum 74, 76
  - measurement 112, 120
  - organs 130, 187 A
  - renal 150
  - T<sub>3</sub>/T<sub>4</sub> effect 288
- debt 72
- deficiency 72, 130, 136, 210, 212
- ventilation 136
- demands 72, 74, 130
- heart muscle 210
  - increased 130
  - organ difference 130
- difference, alveolar-arterial 122
- arteriovenous 74, 106, 130
- diffusion 21 A, 130
- lung 22
  - tissue 130
- dissociation curve 128
- fetal hemoglobin 220
- dissolved in plasma 128
- extraction 72 f., 130, 210
- coefficient 210
  - heart muscle 210
  - exercise 74
  - organs, difference 130
  - skeletal muscle 72
- half saturation pressure 128
- high altitude 136
- Krogh's diffusion coefficient 22, 120
- partial pressure 20
- alveolar 120, 128
  - diving 134
  - arterial blood 128
  - chemical respiratory stimulant 132
  - critical, mitochondria 130
  - high altitude 136
  - hyperventilation 120
  - mixed venous blood 120, 128
  - plasma 132

- Oocyte stage, primary 298  
Oogenesis 298  
Oogonia 298, 306  
Open-probability, ion channels 34  
Open system, thermodynamics 40  
Opioids 274, 280  
  endogenous 318  
  exogenous 318  
  Gn-RH secretion 300  
  receptor types 55 F  
  gastrointestinal tract 234  
  second messenger 55 F, 274  
Opponent color channel 356  
Opsin 348, 350  
Opsonization 94, 96  
Optic chiasm 358  
  nerve 358  
  lesion 358  
  tract 354, 358  
Optical apparatus 344  
  nerve 344  
  system, simple 346  
Optokinetic nystagmus 360  
Orexin 230  
Organ of balance 360  
  Corti 364  
Organelles 8  
Organs, blood flow 187 A, 212, 214  
  fetus 221 A  
  transplanted 98  
Organum vasculosum laminae terminalis (OVLT) 280, 310, 330  
Orgasm 308  
Orgasmic cuff 308  
Ornithine 258  
Orthopnea 108  
Orthostasis 5 C, 6 f., 204, 216  
Orthostatic hypotension 182  
  reflex 7 E, 204, 216  
Oscillation, unstable 6  
Osmol 377  
Osmolality, blood pressure 92  
  unit 377  
  urine 164, 172  
Osmolarity 377  
  saliva 236  
  unit 377  
Osmometer 377  
Osmoregulation 170  
Osmosensors 170, 272, 330  
Osmosis 24  
Osmotic coefficient 377 ff.  
  diuresis 172, 176  
  effect on K<sup>+</sup> excretion 182  
  pressure 24, 377  
  colloidal 92, 377  
Ossicles, auditory 364  
Osteoclasts 290, 292  
Osteolysis, malignant 292  
Osteomalacia 292  
Osteoporosis 302  
Otoliths 342  
Ouabain 26, 170  
Ounce, conversion into SI unit 374  
Outer ear 364  
Oval window 364, 366  
Ovaries 254, 268, 294, 298, 306  
  HDL receptor 254  
  menstrual cycle 298  
  pregnancy 304  
  production, fertilizable egg 298  
  testosterone production 306  
Overshoot, action potential 46  
Overtone 362  
Overweight 226, 230  
OVLT (organum vasculosum laminae terminalis) 280, 310, 330  
Ovulation 298, 300, 302  
  antioviulatory effect 303  
  inhibitors 300  
Ovum 298, 302  
  first meiotic division 300  
  second meiotic division 308  
  implantation 298, 303  
Oxalate 102, 158, 160, 262  
  inhibition, blood clotting 102  
  renal secretion 158, 160  
Oxidation, biological molecules 41  
  of glucose, aerobic 72  
   $\beta$ -oxidation 256  
  2-oxoglutarate 176  
   $\beta$ -oxybutyric acid (284  
  Oxygen  $\rightarrow$  O<sub>2</sub>  
  Oxygenation 128  
  Oxyntic cells  $\rightarrow$  parietal cells  
  Oxytocin 269, 274, 280, 303, 304  
  receptors 55 F  
  second messenger 55 F, 274, 276  
  uterus 304, 308
- P**  
P  $\rightarrow$  progesterone  
P<sub>0.5</sub> (half saturation pressure) 128  
P<sub>A</sub> (alveolar pressure) 108  
P sensors 314  
P (multiple of a unit) 373  
p (submultiple of a unit) 373  
P wave, ECG 196  
Pa (Pascal), unit 374  
Pacemaker 70, 240  
  heart 192, 194, 200  
  artificial 200  
  tertiary 192  
  ventricular 192, 200  
  intestine, motility 244  
  potential, heart 192  
  stomach 240  
Pacini corpuscles 314  
PAF (platelet-activating factor) 100, 102  
PAH  $\rightarrow$  p-aminohippurate  
Pain 318, 320, 322  
  assessments 318  
  components 318  
  post-exercise muscle ache 77 D  
  related behavior 318  
Palaeocerebellum 326  
Pallidum 310, 326  
Pancreas 232, 246  
  cell types 282, 284  
  enzymes 246  
  exocrine 246  
  gastrin release 252  
  hormones 282, 284  
  islets 268  
  juice 246, 252  
  somatostatin 284  
Pancreatic lipase 252  
  necrosis, acute 246  
  polypeptide 282  
  secretions 246  
Pantothenic acid 226  
Papilla nervi optici 344, 358  
Para-aminohippurate (PAH) 150, 160  
Paracellular transport 154  
Paracrine action of hormones 282  
Paraflocculus 326  
Parallel fibres, cerebellum 328  
Paralysis, dissociated 322  
Paraplegia 320, 328  
Parasites, defense against 94  
Parasympathetic fibers, genital tract 214  
  heart 194  
  innervated organs 82  
  ganglia 78 ff.  
  nervous system, gastrointestinal tract 234  
  saliva secretion 236  
  stimuli, salivary glands, blood flow 214  
Parathormone  $\rightarrow$  parathyrin  
Parathyrin (PTH) 36, 37 C3, 178, 290  
  calcitriol 292  
  chemistry 290  
  deficiency 290  
  effects 290  
  influence on Ca<sup>2+</sup> and phosphate excretion 178  
  regulation 290  
  renal Ca<sup>2+</sup> reabsorption 178

- Parathyroid glands, 268 290  
hormone → parathyrin  
Paravertebral ganglionic chain  
78  
Parkinson's disease 326  
Parietal cells, gastric 240, 242  
Parotid glands 236  
Pars recta, renal tubule 148  
Partial pressure 106, 120  
Dalton law 106  
Parvalbumin, muscle fibers 64  
Pascal (Pa), unit 374  
PAS domains 334  
Passive immunization 94  
Patch-clamp technique 34  
Pause, compensatory 200  
post-extrasystolic 200  
PBI → iodine  
PCT (proximal convoluted  
tubule) 164  
PDGF (platelet-derived growth  
factor) 102, 278  
PD-Sensors 312, 314  
Peak expiratory pressure 116  
inspiratory pressure 116  
Pendular movements, intestine  
motility 244  
nystagmus 328  
Penicillin, tubular secretion  
156  
Penis 308  
erection 278  
REM sleep 334  
Pepsin 238, 242, 258  
Pepsinogens 242, 258  
PepT1 (peptide transporter 1),  
intestine 258  
PepT2, kidney 158  
Peptidase 158, 242, 246, 258  
Peptide(s), catabolism, renal  
148  
carrier PepT1 258  
PepT2 158  
digestion 258  
hormones 268, 274, 304  
placenta 304  
messenger 274  
renal reabsorption 156, 158  
handling 128  
transmitter 55 F  
Peptide-H<sup>+</sup>-symport carrier 28,  
158, 258  
PER 334  
Perception, visual 312  
color 356  
form 314  
shape 314  
spatial nature 314  
Perfusion, cerebral 186  
pulmonary 120  
imbalance 120, 122, 130  
Performance limit 76  
Periglomerular cells 340  
Perilymph 364, 366  
Perimeter 358  
Peripheral resistance 188, 206  
influence on heart function  
206  
Peristalsis 234  
esophagus 238  
intestine 244  
large 264  
stomach 240  
ureter 148  
Permeability, Ca<sup>2+</sup> 82  
Cl<sup>-</sup> 44  
coefficient (P) 22  
K<sup>+</sup> 44, 56, 82  
Na<sup>+</sup> 44, 56, 82  
Peroxidase thyroid (TPO) 286  
Peroxisomes 14  
Perspiration insensibilis 222  
Perspiration 222  
water losses 168  
Pertussis toxin 276  
Peta- (multiple of a unit) 373  
Peyer's patches 232  
pH 138, 146, 378  
blood 132, 138  
buffer 138  
normal range 142  
cerebrospinal fluid 126, 132  
clearance, esophagus 238  
erythrocytes 126  
esophagus 238  
homeostasis, kidney 174  
role of liver 176  
influence on diffusion 22  
on protein bound Ca<sup>2+</sup> 290  
measurement 146  
plasma 126, 136, 138, 142  
K<sup>+</sup> metabolism 180  
saliva 236  
tubule lumen 174  
urine 156  
Phagocytes 94  
Phagocytosis 12, 28, 96  
Phase, vulnerable, heart 200  
Phenol red, tubular secretion  
160  
Phenprocoumon 104  
Phentolamine 84  
Phenylalanine 226  
Phenylephrine 87 B  
Phenylethanolamine-N-methyl-  
transferase 84  
Pheochromocytoma 216  
Phon 362  
Phosducin 350, 352  
Phosphatase 276  
alkaline 250  
Phosphate 138, 158, 175, 178,  
290, 292  
absorption, intestine 262  
blood buffer 138  
calcium complex former 178  
concentration, serum 290  
deficiency 178, 292  
DNA 8  
excess 178  
excretion 176, 178, 292  
H<sup>+</sup> secretion 176  
homeostasis 290  
intake 290  
intestinal absorption 292  
metabolism 290  
plasma 290  
renal reabsorption 158  
solubility 290  
Phosphadidyl choline (lecithin)  
14, 248, 252  
bile 248  
inositol-4,5-bisphosphate  
(PIP<sub>2</sub>) 276  
Phosphatidylethanolamine 14  
Phosphatidylserine 14  
Phosphaturia 178  
Phosphodiesterase 276, 348, 350  
cGMP-specific 278  
Phospholipase A2 246, 252, 268,  
276  
Phospholipase Cβ (PLCβ) 37 C1,  
82, 84, 276  
Phospholipids 252, 254  
blood clotting 102  
lipoproteins 254  
cell membrane 14  
Phosphoric acid (→ also  
phosphate) 142, 174  
Phosphorylation 274  
Photochemistry, eye 348  
Photosensors 344, 346, 348  
retinal distribution 348  
sensor potential 354  
Photopic vision 348  
Phyllochinone 260  
Physical activity 72 ff.  
energy reserve 282  
exercise capacity 76  
core temperature 224  
energy supply 226  
heat production 222  
measure 74  
measurement 76  
work 72 ff., 142, 282  
activation of the sympathetic  
nervous system 74  
heat production 222  
O<sub>2</sub> consumption 74  
threshold, aerobic 76  
anaerobic 76  
ventilation 74  
respiratory control 74, 133  
A5  
unit 374  
Physiologic integration 266

- Phytin 262  
Pico- (submultiple of a unit) 373  
PIF → prolactostatin  
Pigmented epithelium 344  
PIH (prolactin-release inhibiting hormone) → dopamine  
Pineal body (= pineal gland = epiphysis) 334  
Pinocytosis 28  
PIP<sub>2</sub> (inositol-4,5-bisphosphate) 276  
Pirenzepine 82  
Pituitary gland **280**, 286  
  anterior 268, 280  
  influence of neurotransmitters 280  
  TSH secretion 286  
  TRH receptors 286  
  hormones 268  
  posterior 180, 268, 280  
  ADH secretion 170  
  hormone secretion 280  
  testosterone effect 306  
pK<sub>a</sub> value 138, 140, 378 f.  
PKA (protein kinase A = A kinase) 84, 274  
PKC (protein kinase C) 36, 37 C1, 70, 84, 276  
PKG (protein kinase G) 278  
PKK (prekallikrein) 102  
Placenta 100, 220, 292, 302, 304  
Placental barrier, function 304  
  hormones 304  
  immunoglobulins 92  
  transfusion 220  
Plasma 88, 92  
  albumin 92  
  cells 94, 98  
  CO<sub>2</sub> 124  
  components 88, 92  
  factors 100  
  globulins 92  
  osmolality 92, 171  
  proteins 88, 92, 154, 158, 377 f.  
  binding 24, 25 C, 88, 154  
  Ca<sup>2+</sup> 178, 290  
  blood puffer 138  
  function 88, 92, 377 f.  
  types 92  
pH 126  
thromboplastin antecedent (PTA) 102  
  volume 170  
  measurement 168  
  salt deficiency 170  
Plasmin 104  
Plasminogen 104  
Plasticity of smooth muscle 70  
  pyramidal cells 332  
Platelet(s) (→ also Thrombocytes) 88, 102  
  activating factor (PAF) 100, 102  
  activation 102  
  aggregation 102  
  inhibitors 104  
  derived growth factor (PDGF) 102, 278  
PLC<sub>β</sub> (Phospholipase C<sub>β</sub>) 37 C1, 82, 84, 276  
Plethysmography 114  
Pleura 108  
  pressure (P<sub>pl</sub>) 108  
Plexus myentericus (Auerbach) 234, 244  
  submucous (Meissner) 234, 244  
PMA (premotor area) 324  
Pneumothorax 110  
  diving 134  
  types 110  
Podocytes, glomerulus 148  
Poikilothermy 222  
Point, low 72  
Polkissen 184  
Polyethylene glycol, intestine 262  
Polypeptide, pancreatic 282  
Polyribosomes 10  
Polysaccharides, chemical structure 227 B  
  digestion 258  
Polysomes 10  
Polysynaptic reflexes 320  
Polyuria 164  
POMC (pro-opiomelanocortin) 230, 280  
  placenta 304  
Pond, conversion into SI unit 374  
Pons 132, 310  
  eye movement 360  
Pontocerebellum 326  
Porphyrin 128  
Portal circulation 232, 248  
  hypothalamus 280  
  vein 208, 232  
Positive pressure ventilation  
  continuous (CPPV) 110  
  intermittent (IPPV)  
Postcentral gyrus 322  
Posterior funiculus, nuclei 322  
Postextrasystolic pause 200  
Postsynaptic inhibition 320  
  membrane 42, 50  
Posttranslational modification 10, 12  
Posttranscriptional modification 12  
Postural control 328  
  motor function 324, 326, **328**, 342  
  system 324  
  reflex 328  
  labyrinthine 328  
Posture 324, 328  
  maintaining 324  
Potassium → K<sup>+</sup>  
Potentia coeundi 306  
Potential, action 46 ff., 48  
  unit 375  
  difference, inner ear 366  
  diffusion 44  
  electrochemical 32  
  endocochlear 366  
  end-plate 56  
  equilibrium 44  
  excitatory postsynaptic (EPSP) 52, 56, 320  
  inhibitory postsynaptic (IPSP) 52, 82, 332  
  maximum diastolic, heart pacemaker 192  
  resting membrane 44  
  reversal 47 B, 56  
  threshold 46, 48  
  transepithelial 156, 180  
  lumen-neagative (LNTP) 162, 236, 262  
  lumen-positive (LPTP) 162, 172, 178, 180  
Pound, conversion into SI unit 374  
Power, unit 374  
Powers of ten, calculation with 380 f.  
PP (pulse pressure) 194, 206  
ppb (parts per billion), unit 376  
ppm (parts per million), unit 376  
P<sub>pi</sub> (pleural pressure) 108  
PQ interval, ECG 196  
PQ segment, ECG 196  
Prazosin 87 B  
Prealbumin, thyroxin-binding (TBPA) 288  
Precapillary sphincter 188  
Pregnancy 90, 260, 290, 292, 300, 302  
  Ca<sup>2+</sup> 290  
  central venous pressure 204  
  hormon concentrations 302  
  hormonal control 304, 330  
  nausea 238  
  Rh system 100  
  tests 294, 304  
  vitamin D-binding protein 292  
  vomiting 238  
Pregnenediol 294, 303, 304  
Pregnenolone 294, 303  
  17-OH 294  
Prekallikrein (PKK) 102  
Preload, heart 202, 204  
Prepotential, heart 192  
Preproinsulin 282  
Presbycusis 362, 366, 370  
Presbyopia 346  
Presentation of antigens 96  
Pressure (unit) 374

- Pressure arterial sensors 214  
capillary 208  
central venous (CVP) 190, 204  
colloidal osmotic 378  
diuresis 170, 172  
hydrostatic 208  
feet 208  
internal ocular 344  
intrapleural 108  
intrapulmonic 108  
intrathoracic 108  
oncotic 24, 208, 166, 378  
peritubular capillaries 166  
plasma 152  
osmotic 24, 378  
transmural 188  
ventricular 190, 202  
volume curve, heart 68  
lung and thorax 116  
wave, pulse wave 190
- Pressosensors, arterial 314  
skin
- Presynaptic inhibition 320  
membrane 42, 50
- Pretecal region 359
- Previtamin D 292
- Primary, response, antigen contact 94  
saliva 236  
urine 164
- Principal cells, kidney 162, 180  
point, optical apparatus 346
- PRL → prolactin
- Proaccelerin 102
- Probenecid 160
- Procarboxypeptidase 246
- Process, ciliary 346
- Procolipase 246, 252
- Proconvertin 102
- Procreative capacity 306
- Proelastase 246
- Progesterone 132, 294, 298, 300, 303, 304  
actions 292, 303, 304  
chemistry 303  
degradation 303  
esophagus sphincter 238  
menstrual cycle 298  
17-OH- 294  
placenta 304  
plasma concentration 302  
transport 303  
production 294, 303  
respiration 132  
secretion rate 303
- Proglucagon 284  
intestinal 282
- Proinsulin 280, 282
- Prolactin 268, 269, 274, 280, 303, 306  
lactation reflex 303  
menstrual cycle 298  
receptor 278  
release inhibiting hormone →  
prolactostatin 268 ff.,  
280, 298, 303  
secretion, pulsatile 298  
TRH effect 303
- Prolactostatin (PIH = dopamine)  
268 ff., 280, 298, 303
- Proliferation 272  
lymphocytes 94
- Proliferative phase, menstrual cycle 298
- Prolipase 246
- Pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC)  
230, 280, 304
- Prophospholipase A2 252
- Proportional sensors 312, 314, 316
- Proprioception 314, 316, 322
- Propriosensors 316, 324  
neck 328
- Prostacyclin (PGI<sub>2</sub>) 104, 214, 268, 269
- Prostaglandin(s) (PG) 162, 232, 234, 242, 268, 274, 276  
autoregulation 212  
E<sub>2</sub> 214, 318  
fever 224  
effects 269  
F<sub>2α</sub><sup>-</sup> 214  
fetal circulation 220  
HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> secretion, stomach 242  
I<sub>2</sub> (Prostacyclin) 104, 214, 268, 269  
coronary vasodilatation 210  
intestine 262  
prostate 308  
second messenger 274, 276  
synthesis 269  
inhibition 269, 318  
uterus 304, 308
- Prostate 306, 308
- Prostanolmy 356
- Protanopia 356
- Proteases, pancreatic juice 246, 258
- Protective reflexes 238, 320
- Protein C 104  
S 104
- Protein 154, 148, 226, 228  
absorption, intestine 258  
binding 24, 154  
bound iodine 286, 288  
caloric equivalent 228  
capillary permeability 208  
catabolism, renal 148  
chemical structure 227 B  
concentration in cerebrospinal fluid 144  
digestion 246, 258  
enzymes 242, 246  
energy supply 228  
filtrability, glomerulus 154  
functional minimum 226  
hormones 268  
kinase A (PKA) 84, 274  
kinase C (PKC) 36, 37 C1, 70, 84, 276  
kinase G (PKG) 278  
kinase II (calmodulin-dependent protein) 36, 50  
kinase, tyrosine specific 282  
minimum intake 226  
nuclear, nuclear pores 10  
nutrition 226  
phosphorylated 274  
plant 226  
plasma 92, 158  
renal reabsorption 156  
synthesis 10, 13 F  
influence of cyclic AMP 274
- Proteinuria 158, 208
- Proteolysis 246
- Prothrombin 102, 104
- Prothrombinase 104
- Protons → H<sup>+</sup>
- Proximal stomach 240
- P-Sensors 312, 314, 316
- Pseudohypoparathyroidism 290
- Psychotropic drugs 330
- PTA (plasma thromboplastin antecedent) 102
- Pteroylglutamic acid 260
- Pteroylpolyglutamate hydrolase 260
- PTH → parathyrin
- Ptyalin 236, 258
- Puberty 302  
spermatogonia 306
- Puborectal muscles 264
- Pudendal nerve 264
- Pulmonary (→ also lung) artery  
122, 186, 190  
partial pressures 122  
pressure 120, 190, 206  
blood flow 122  
capillaries 106, 122, 124  
circulation 186, 188  
resistance 206  
edema 118, 120, 122, 132, 144, 172, 208  
infarction 120  
stretch receptors 132  
valves 190  
ventilation, exercise 74  
ventilation/perfusion ratio 122
- Pulse pressure (PP) 190, 206  
receptors 214  
wave, velocity (PWV) 190
- Puncts, lacrimal 344
- Pupilla 344, 346  
contraction 344  
dilatation 344, 352, 358

- role in adaptation to light 352
  - Pupillary reflex 352, 358
  - Purine, receptor types 55 F
    - second messenger 55 F
  - Purkinje cells, cerebellum 326, 328
    - fibers 192
      - action potential 200
  - Pursuit eye movement 360
  - Putamen 314, 324, 326
  - P wave (ECG) 190, 196
  - PWV (pulse wave velocity) 190
  - Pylorus 240
  - Pyramidal cells, motosensory cortex 332
    - tract 324
  - Pyridoxal 260
  - Pyridoxamine 260
  - Pyridoxine 260
  - Pyrogens 224
  - Pyruvate 73 B2
  - Pyruvic acid 73 B2
- Q**
- Q10 value 40
  - QRS axis, ECG 198
  - QRS complex, ECG 196
  - QRS vector, mean 196, 198
  - QT interval, ECG 196, 198
  - Quinidine, tubular transport 160
  - Quinine 338
  - Quotient, respiratory 120, 136, 228
  - Q wave, ECG 196, 198
    - abnormalities 198
- R**
- R (gas constant) 20, 32, 34, 112
  - R wave, ECG 196
  - Radiation 222, 224
  - Rahn valve 114
  - Raphe nuclei 328
  - RAS (renin-angiotensin system) 170, 184, 218
  - RA sensor (rapidly adapting pressure sensor) 314
  - Rate constant 40
  - RBC (red blood cell) → erythrocyte
  - RBF (renal blood flow) → kidney
  - RCC (red cell count) 90
  - Reabsorption, capillaries 208
    - renal tubule 148, 152 ff., 162, 174 ff., 180 ff.
  - Reaction, acrosomal 308
    - coupled 41
    - endergonic 38
    - endergonic 38
    - endothemic 38
  - equilibrium constant 40
  - exergonic 38
  - exothermic 38
  - hypersensitivity (allergy) 100
  - rate of 40
    - constant 40
  - Reactive hyperemia 212
  - Reading 336
    - presbyopia 346
  - Rebound effect 272
    - phenomenon 328
  - Receptive field 314, 354
    - retina 354
    - relaxation 238, 240
  - Receptor (sensory receptors → sensors) 6, 55 F, 268, 312
    - acetylcholin → cholinceptor
      - second messenger 274 f.
    - ADH 55 F, 212
    - adrenalin → adrenoceptors
    - adrenergic → adrenoceptors
    - angiotensin II 212
    - CCK 55 F
      - gallbladder 248
      - stomach 242
    - cobalamine 28
    - cholinergic 82
    - dopamin 248
    - epinephrine → adrenoceptors
    - endothelin 212
    - G protein-dependent 52
    - histamin 55 F, 212, 242, 274, 276
    - hormone 266, 268, 274
    - immunoglobulins 96
    - insulin 268, 282
    - internalization 52
    - ionotropic 52, 55 F, 82
    - LDL 28
      - mediated endocytosis 12 f.
    - metabotropic 52, 55 F, 82
    - noradrenaline → adrenoceptors
    - norepinephrin → adrenoceptors
    - proteins 268, 278, 296
    - recycling 12, 13 F, 29 C
    - synapse 50, 55 F
    - transferrin 90
    - tyrosinkinase 282
  - Receptor guanylyl cyclase 278
  - Receptor serine/threonine kinase 278
  - Receptor tyrosine kinases 278, 282
  - Receptor tyrosine phosphatases 278
  - Recoverin 350, 352
  - Recruitment, motoric unit 58
    - acoustic neurons 368
  - Rectum 232, 264
  - Recurrent inhibition 316, 320
  - Red blood cells → erythrocytes
  - 5 $\alpha$ -Reductase, testosterone 306
  - Reentry, excitation, heart 194, 200
  - Reference values 384 ff.
  - Reflection coefficient ( $\sigma$ ) 24, 208, 377
  - Reflex 78, 316 ff.
    - abdominal 320
    - absence of 320
    - accommodation 240
    - arc 78
    - autonomic 320
    - conditioned 236, 242
      - saliva secretion 236
    - consensual 359
    - corneal 320
      - crossed 320
    - diagnostic 320
    - endogenous 234
    - extensor 320
    - flexion 320
    - gastrocolic 264
    - gastrointestinal tract 234
    - Henry-Gauer 218
    - Hoffmann's 316
    - knee jerk 316
    - labyrinthine postural 328
    - load compensation 316
    - locomotor 320
    - monosynaptic 316
    - neck, tonic 328
    - nutrition 320
    - orthostatic 204
    - peristaltic 234, 244
    - plantar 320
    - polysynaptic 320
    - postural 328
    - proprioceptive 316
    - protective 238, 320
    - pupillary 359
    - spreading 320
    - statokinetic 328
    - time 316, 320
    - tone 66
      - labyrinth 328
    - vagovagal, esophagus 238
    - vestibulo-ocular 342
    - withdrawal 320
  - Refraction, eye 346
  - Refractive power 346
  - Refractory period (action potential) 46
    - absolute 46
    - relative 46
    - heart 200
  - Regulation 4, 266
  - Reissner's membrane 366
  - Relaxation, receptive 238, 240
  - Release-inhibiting hormones 268, 269, 280



- Releasing hormones 268, 269, 280
- REM sleep (rapid eye movement) 334
- Remnants of chylomicrons 256 of VLDL 254
- Renal (→ also kidney) artery, stenosis 184
- blood flow 150
- failure 142, 176
- function, glucocorticoid effect 296
- Renin 148, 184
- hypertension 216
- Renin-angiotensin system (RAS) 170, 184, 218
- control 184
- Renshaw cells 316, 320, 324
- Replication, cell 8
- Repolarisation (action potential) 46
- Repressor protein 8
- Reproduction 298 ff., 330
- RES (Reticuloendothelial system) (→ also macrophage and mononuclear phagocytotic system) 96
- Reserve volume, expiratory 112
- inspiratory 112
- Residual capacity, functional (FRC) 112, 114, 116
- volume (RV) 112, 114
- Resistance peripheral 186, 206
- hypertension 216
- unit 375
- vessels 186, 188
- Respiration (→ respiratory) 106
- artificial 110
- control 132
- dead space 110, 114
- effects of diving 134
- functions 106
- high altitude 132, 136
- influence on venous return 110
- internal 106
- mechanical 110
- mechanics 108, 110, 112, 144, 116
- mouth-to-mouth 110
- muscles 108
- pressure-volume relationships 116
- work of breathing 116
- Respiratory acidosis 144
- alkalosis 142, 144
- air, purification 110
- chain 12, 73 B3
- compensation 142
- control 132, 214
- drive, high altitude 136
- insufficient 144
- equivalent 74, 106
- exchange rate 120
- muscles 132
- quotient (RQ) 120, 136, 228
- rate 106, 118
- sensors 132
- stimulants 132
- volumes 112
- conversion 112
- standardization 112
- ways, flow resistance 116
- Response, local 46
- Resting expiratory level 112
- membrane potential 44
- metabolic rate 226
- position, respiration 112
- pressure-volume curve, heart 202
- lung and thorax 116
- skeletal muscle 66
- tidal volume 112, 114, 118
- tremor 226
- Resuscitation 110
- Reticular zone, adrenal cortex 296
- Reticuloendothelial system (RES) (→ also macrophage) 96
- Reticulocytes 88
- Reticulum, endoplasmic 10, 12, sarcoplasmic 60, 194
- Retina (→ also visual and eye) 344, 346, 356, 358
- contrast of a stimulus 354
- corresponding points 360
- ganglion cells 354, 358
- processing of visual stimuli 354
- receptive field 354
- sensors 344, 348
- potential 354
- 11-*cis*-Retinal 348
- Retinol 260, 350
- Return, venous 204
- Reversal potential 47 B, 56
- Reverse-T<sub>3</sub> (rTr<sub>3</sub>) 288
- Rhesus system 100
- Rhinencephalon 340
- Rhodopsin 348, 350, 352, 356
- kinase 350
- Rhythm, circadian 296, 334
- diurnal 334
- generator 334
- Rhythmicity, heart 192
- Riboflavin, intestinal absorption 260
- Ribonucleic acid → RNA
- Ribose 8
- Ribosomal ribonucleic acid → rRNA
- Ribosomes 10
- Rickets 226, 292
- Rigidity, decerebrate 328
- Right axis (heart) 198
- Rigor complex 64
- mortis 64, 326
- Rinne's test 364
- Riva-Rocci (blood pressure measurement) 206
- RNA (ribonucleic acid) 8 ff.
- RNA polymerases 8
- RNAses, pancreas 246
- Rods 344, 348, 350, 356
- adaptation 352
- monochromatism 352
- light absorption maximum 356
- Roots, spinal cord 310
- Rotation, sensors 342
- Round window, ear 364, 366
- RPF (renal plasma flow) → kidney
- RQ → respiratory quotient
- rRNA (ribosomal ribonucleic acid) 8, 10
- rTr<sub>3</sub> (reverse-T<sub>3</sub>) 288
- Ruffini's corpuscle 314
- RV (residual volume) 112, 114
- R wave (ECG) 196
- Ryanodine receptors (RYR) 62, 64
- RYR 65 D
- RYR1 63 B
- RYR2 63 B
- S**
- σ (reflection coefficient) 24, 377
- S hormones → glucocorticoids and cortisol
- S wave, ECG 196
- S (siemens), unit 375
- SA → sinoatrial
- SA1 (slow adapting pressosensor) 314
- SA2 314
- Saccadic eye movement 360
- Saccharin, taste 338
- Saccharase 258
- Saccharose 258
- Sacculle 342
- Salbutamol 87 B
- Saliva 232, 236, 258, 260
- primary 236
- secondary 236
- Salivary glands 236
- blood flow 214
- Salt (→ also Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup>), balance 148, 162, 170
- disturbances 170, 172, 173 B
- regulation 170
- excretion 162, 170
- role in hypertension 216
- retention 170, 182
- Saltatory conduction 48

- Saluretics 172  
Sarcolema 56, 60  
Sarcomere 60 f.  
    resting length 68  
Sarcoplasm 60  
Sarcoplasmic reticulum 60  
Sarcosomes 60  
Satiety peptides 230  
Scala media 364  
    tympani 364, 366  
    vestibuli 364, 366  
Scalene muscles 108  
Scavenger receptors, LDL 256  
Schlemm's canal 344  
Schwann cells 42  
Sclera 344  
Sclerosis 216  
SCN (suprachiasmatic nucleus)  
    334  
Scotoma 358  
Scotopic vision 348  
Scurvy 226  
Second messenger 268, 274, 276  
    adrenoceptors 84 f.  
    M-cholinoceptors 82  
    neurotransmitter receptors  
        52, 55 C  
Secondary active cotransport  
    with Na<sup>+</sup> 26, 258  
    of Cl<sup>-</sup> 262  
    response, immune defense 94  
    saliva 236  
Secretin 234, 240, 246, 274  
    esophagus 238  
    insulin secretion 282  
    pancreas secretion 246  
    second messenger 274  
    stomach 242  
Secretion, renal → kidney  
    constitutive 13 F  
Secretory granules 12, 268  
    phase, menstrual 298  
Segmentation (intestine) 244  
Seizures 136  
Selectins 14, 98  
Selection, clonal 98  
Selenium (Se) 226  
Self-awareness 336  
Semen emission 308  
    production 306  
Semilunar valves, heart 190  
Seminal vesicles, testosterone  
    effect 306, 308  
Seminiferous tubules 306  
Senses 312, 314, 322, 338, 340,  
    342  
    balance 342  
    chemical 338  
    hearing 362 ff.  
    movement 316, 342  
    position 316, 342  
    smell 340  
    somatovisceral 314  
    strength 316  
    taste 338  
    touch 314  
    vision 344 ff.  
Sensibility, somatovisceral 314  
Sensitization 94, 318  
    reflex pathways 336  
    Rh blood groups 100  
Sensor(s) 312, 337  
    blood pressure 214  
    volume 214  
    cold 224  
    D- 314, 316  
    filling pressure 214  
    heat 314  
    light sensitive 344  
    olfactory 340  
    potential 312  
        hair cells 366  
        photosensors 350, 354  
    primary 312, 340  
    P- 314  
    pressure 314  
    proprioceptive 316  
    pulse rate 214  
    retina 344, 348  
    secondary 312, 338, 342  
        organ of corti 364  
    skin 314  
    smell 340  
    touch 314  
    vibration 314  
    warm 314  
Sensory aphasia 370  
    impression 312  
    input, central processing 322  
    modality 312  
    physiology 312 ff.  
    receptors → sensors  
SERCA (sarcoplasmic endo-  
    plasmic reticulum  
    Ca<sup>2+</sup>-transporting  
    ATPase) 16, 64  
Serotonin 102, 160, 230, 274, 276,  
    330, 332  
    cerebral cortex 332  
    neurons 330  
    platelets 102, 103 A  
    receptor types 55 F, 274, 276  
    second messenger 55 F, 274,  
        276  
    tubular transport 160  
Sertoli cells 306  
Serum 88  
    disease 100  
    electrolytes, ECG 198  
    sickness 100  
Servocontrol 6  
Servomechanism 6  
Set point, variation 6  
    value 4  
Sex characteristics, female 302  
    male 306  
    chromosomes 306  
    genetic 306  
    hormones, binding globulin  
        268, 302, 306  
        female 294, 298, 300  
        male 294, 304, 306  
        synthesis 294  
Sexual arousal 308  
    behavior 330  
    development 306  
        delayed 288  
    differentiation 306  
    maturation 298  
    reflexes 308  
    response 308  
SGLT1 (sodium glucose trans-  
    porter, type 1) 158  
SGLT2 26, 158  
SH2 (src[sarcoma]-homology)  
    domains 278, 282,  
    284  
SHBG (sex hormone-binding  
    globulin) 268, 302,  
    306  
Shear force 92  
Shivering, thermoregulation  
    222 f.  
Shock 100, 186, 206, 218  
    anaphylactic 100, 218  
    causes 218  
    compensation mechanisms  
        218  
    hypoglycemic 218, 284  
    index 218  
    irreversible 218  
    lung 122  
    manifest (progressive) 218  
Shunt 120  
    alveolar 120  
    arteriovenous 122  
    blood flow 122, 220  
    extra-alveolar 120  
    left-to-right 220  
    right-to-left 220  
SI units 372 f.  
Sickle cell anemia 92  
Siemens (S), unit 375  
Sieving coefficient 24  
    glomerular (GSC) 154  
Siggaard-Andersen nomogram  
    146, 147 C  
Signal recognition particle (SRP)  
    12  
Signal sequence 12  
    transduction 274  
Sildenafilcitrate (Viagra®) 278  
Silibants, voice 370  
SIH → somatostatin  
Silicon (Si) 226  
Simultaneous contrast 354

- Singing 370  
 Single-unit, muscle typ 70  
 Sinoatrial (SA) node 190, 192, 200  
 Sinus arrhythmia 200  
   bradycardia 200  
   rhythm 192  
   tachycardia 200  
 Skeletal growth, STH 280  
 Skeletal muscle 56 ff., 324 ff.  
   actin-myosin interaction 68  
   action potential 56, 59 A  
   all-or-none response 66  
   blood flow 74  
     regulation 214  
   Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration, cytosolic 66  
   contracture 66  
   difference cardiac/smooth muscle 68  
   fibers  
     extrafusal 316  
     intrafusal 316  
     stimulation 62  
     types 58  
   glycogen concentration 58  
   glycogenesis 282  
   gradation of contraction force 66  
   lactate production 76  
   length-force curve 68  
   mechanical features 66  
   mitochondria 63 A  
   motor units 58, 66  
   myoglobin function 72, 128  
   persistent local depolarization 66  
   reflex tone 66  
   rigor 66  
     complex 64  
     summation 66  
     superposition 66  
     tetanus 58, 66  
 Skin 74, 222, 224  
    $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptors 214  
   blood flow 186, 222  
     physical work 74  
     regulation 214  
   formation of cholecalciferol 292  
   mechanosensors 314  
   nocisensors 318  
   sensitivity 314  
   sensory functions 222 ff., 314, 322  
     temperature 222, 224  
     thermosensors 222 ff.  
 Sleep 332, 334  
   deprivation 334  
   phases 334  
   stages 334  
 Sleep-wake cycle 334  
 Sliding filament hypothesis 62, 64  
 Slit membrane, glomerular 148  
 SMA (supplementary motor area) 324  
 Small intestine 232, 240  
   Ca<sup>2+</sup> absorption 290  
   cell replacement 244  
   function 244  
   motility 244  
   structure 244  
 Smell 340  
 Smooth muscle 70  
   intestine 244  
   M<sub>3</sub>-receptors 82  
 SNAP-25 (synaptosome-associated protein 25) 50  
 SNARE (synaptosome-associated protein receptor) 30  
 Sneezing 132, 320  
 Snorkel diving 134  
 S<sub>O</sub><sub>2</sub> (O<sub>2</sub> saturation) 126  
 Sodium → Na<sup>+</sup>  
 Softening effect, ATP 64  
 Solubility coefficient, CO<sub>2</sub> 126  
   O<sub>2</sub> 128  
 Solubility product, calcium phosphate 290  
 Solutes, activity 24, 376  
 Solutions 376  
 Solvent drag 24, 156, 162  
 Soma, nerve cell 42  
 Somatic sensory functions 314  
 Somatoliberin 230, 234, 268, 269, 280  
 Somatomedins 280, 284  
 Somatosensory centers 314, 322  
 Somatostatin (SIH) 84 ff., 230, 234, 240, 268 ff., 280 ff., **284 f.**  
   actions 284  
   cotransmitter 84  
   effects 284  
   influence on glucagon secretion 272, 284  
     on insulin release 272, 282, 284  
   pancreas 282  
   receptors 55 F  
   second messenger 55 F, 274  
   secretion 284  
   stomach 234, 242  
 Somatotopic representation 322, 324  
 Somatotropin (= STH = growth hormone = GH) 269, 278, 280, 284, 288, 303  
   influence on insulin release 284  
   receptor 278  
 release-inhibiting hormone → somatostatin  
 releasing hormone → somatoliberin  
 Somatovisceral senses 314  
 Sone 362  
 Sorbitol 262  
 Sorting 12, 13 F  
 Sound 362  
   analysis 368  
   central processing 368  
   conduction 364, 366  
     air 364  
   deafness 364  
   direction 368  
   distance 368  
   frequencies 362, 368  
   intensity 362, 368  
   loudness 362  
   perception 362  
   physics of 362  
   pressure 362, 366, 368  
     level 362  
   sensors 364, 366  
   speech 370  
   stimulus 362  
 Space travel 136  
 Spatial orientation 342, 368  
 Spatial summation 52, 320, 352, 354, 358  
 Specific dynamic action → diet-induced thermogenesis  
 Spectrum, visible 356  
 Speech 236, 362, 370  
   fundamental frequencies 370  
 Sperm 30, 302, 306  
   capacitation 302, 308  
   emission 308  
   estrogens 302  
   fertilization 308  
   maturation 306  
   motility 30, 58  
   testosterone 306  
   uterus 302 f.  
 Spermatids 306  
 Spermatocytes 306  
 Spermatogonia 306  
 Spermatogenesis 306  
 Spermatozoa 306  
 Spherical aberration 346  
 Sphincter, esophagus 238  
   precapillar 188  
   pupil 344  
 Spines, cerebral cortex 332  
 Spinal cord 78, 310, 320, 322, 324, 326  
   anterior roots 310  
   dorsal roots 310  
   grey matter 310  
   hemisection 322  
   ipsilateral paralysis 322

- reflexes 320  
segments 310  
transection 328  
white matter 310  
ganglion 310, 318  
nerves 310  
shock 328  
Spinocerebellum 326  
Sphingomyelin 14  
Spinnbarkeit of cervix mucus 298  
Spiral ganglion 366, 368  
Spirometer 112, 116  
Spironolactone 172  
SPL (sound pressure level) 362  
Spleen 232  
  blood cell formation 88  
Spliceosome 10  
Splicing 8  
  variable 268  
Split-brain patient 337  
Spot, blind 348, 358  
Squalene 294  
Src (sarcoma) protein 278  
SRF → somatoliberin  
SRH → somatoliberin  
SRP (signal recognition particle)  
  12  
Standard bicarbonate concentra-  
  tion 142  
  measurement 146  
Standard temperature pressure  
  dry (STPD) 112  
Stapedius muscle 364  
Stapes 364  
Staphylokinase 104  
Starch, digestion 246, 258  
Starling relationship 208  
Start codon 10  
Starvation 142  
Static (postural) work 74  
Stataliths 342  
Steady state 41  
Stellate cells 328  
Stem cells 88, 306  
Step test, Margaria 76  
Stercobilin 250  
Stercobilinogen 250  
Stereocilia 342  
Stereognosis 314  
Steroid diabetes 296  
Steroid hormones → steroids  
Steroids 248, 250, 268, 304  
  biosynthesis 294  
  degradation 294  
  metabolism 294  
  placenta 304  
  producing glands 294  
  receptors 278  
  secretion 248, 250, 294  
  sex, male 306  
STH → somatotropin  
Stimulus 42  
adequate 312  
contrast 354  
transduction 312  
transformation 312  
Stokes-Einstein equation 20  
Stomach (→ also gastric) 240,  
  242, 252, 258, 264  
  anatomy 240  
  chief cells 240  
  digestive activity 258  
  distal 232, 240  
  emptying time 232  
    rate 240  
  function 240  
  gastric acid 242  
  gastrin production 234  
  glands 242  
  juice 242  
  motility 240  
  mucus neck cells 240  
  parietal cells 240, 242  
  protein digestion 258  
  proximal 232, 240  
  secretion 242  
  size 240  
  ulcer 242  
Stool 262, 264  
  color 250  
Stop codon 10  
Storage in memory 336  
  of energy 282  
STPD (standard temperature  
  pressure dry) 112  
Strabismus 360  
  amblyopia 360  
Strength, ionic 376  
  training 76  
Streptokinase 104  
Stress, CRH secretion 296  
  cortisol secretion 296  
  hyperprolactinemia 303  
Stretch sensors 214  
  rectum 264  
  reflex 316, 328  
Stria vascularis 366  
Striatum 326  
Stroke volume (SV), heart 76,  
  106, 186, 190, 202,  
  204  
  increased afterload 204  
  preload 204  
  physical work 74  
Strophantoin 194  
Struma 286  
STS → somatostatin  
ST segment (ECG) 196  
  elevation 198  
Stuart-Prower factor 102  
Subfornical organ 280  
Sublingual gland 236  
Submandibular gland 236  
Substance P 52, 86, 248, 318, 324,  
  326  
  gallbladder 248  
Substantia nigra 324, 326  
Subsynaptic Potential 50  
Successive contrast 352  
  color 354  
Succinate, tubular transport 160  
Suckling 236, 280, 303  
  reflex 320, 330  
Sucrose, digestion 258  
Sugar hormones → glucocorti-  
  coids and cortisol  
Sulci, brain 310  
Sulfate 156, 158, 160, 250, 262,  
  294  
  conjugates 160, 250  
  carrier 250  
  tubular secretion 156, 160  
  steroids 294  
  transcellular secretion 156,  
  160  
  intestinal absorption 262  
Sulfuric acid (→ also sulfate) 142,  
  174  
Summation 320  
  skeletal muscle 66  
  spatial 320, 354, 358  
  neuron 52  
  vision 352  
temporal 320  
  neuron 52  
  vision 352  
Superoxid dismutase 96  
Superposition, skeletal muscle 66  
Suppository 264  
Suppression, saccadic 360  
  T helper cells 98  
Supraventricular arrhythmias  
  200  
Surface sensitivity 314  
  tension 118  
Surfactant (surface-active agent)  
  118, 122  
  hyperoxia 136  
Suxamethonium 46, 56  
SV (stroke volume), heart 76, 106,  
  186, 190, 202, 204  
Swallowing 132, 236, 238, 240,  
  320  
S wave (ECG) 196  
Sweat 222, 224  
  glands 214, 222  
  innervation 78, 79 ff., 224  
  secretion 224  
SWS (slow-wave sleep) 334  
Symbiosis hypothesis, mitochon-  
  dria 12  
Sympathetic → also adrenergic  
  and autonomic  
Sympathetic nervous system,  
  activation 74

- Sympathetic nervous system  
 constriction, veins 218  
 flight or fight behavior 330  
 gallbladder 248  
 gastrointestinal tract 234  
 heart 194  
 physical work 74  
 saliva secretion 236  
 regulation of circulation 214
- Symport, definition 26
- Synapse 42, 50 ff., 266  
 axoaxonic 320  
 electrical 18, 50  
 latency 52  
 postsynaptic receptors 50, 55 F  
 functions 42  
 reciprocal 340  
 valve-like function 48
- Synaptic cleft 42, 50  
 delay 52  
 facilitation 50  
 inhibition 320  
 knobs 42  
 potentiation 50  
 transmission 42  
 termination 52, 56
- Synapsin 50
- Synaptobrevin 50
- Synaptosome-associated protein  
 25 (SNAP-25) 50
- Synaptosome-associated protein  
 receptor (SNARE) 30
- Synaptotagmin 50
- Synchronization to day-night  
 cycle 334
- Syncytium 16, 18
- Synovial A-cells 96
- System, closed 40  
 conicellular 358  
 endocrine 266 ff.  
 limbic 310, 330  
 magnocellular 358  
 opened 40  
 parvicellular 358
- Systole 190
- T**
- t (ton), unit 374
- T (multiple of a unit) 373
- T wave, ECG 196
- T<sub>3</sub> → triiodothyronine and thy-  
 roid hormones
- T<sub>4</sub> → thyroxine and thyroid hor-  
 mones
- Tachycardia 200, 218  
 atrial 200  
 in shock 218  
 sinus 200  
 ventricular 200
- Tachykinin 55 F
- second messenger 276
- Tachypnea 108
- Tactile motor function 314
- TAL (thick ascending limb) 162
- Tanning lamps, calcitriol synthe-  
 sis 292
- Target value (control circuit) 4
- Taste 338
- Taurine 248
- Tawara's bundle branches 192
- TBG (thyroxine-binding globulin)  
 288
- TBPA (thyroxine-binding pre-  
 albumin) 288
- TCT → calcitonin
- Tears 344
- Tectorial membrane 364
- Tectum 326
- TEE (total energy expenditure)  
 226
- Telencephalon 310
- Temperature 375  
 body 132, 222, 224  
 circadian variation 224, 381  
 C  
 regulation 222 ff.  
 skin 222  
 unit 375
- Temporal lobe system 336
- Temporal summation, visual re-  
 ceptors 352
- Tendon, Golgi apparatus 316
- Tension time index, heart muscle  
 210
- Tensor tympani muscle 364
- Terminal button 42
- Testis 254, 268, 294, 306  
 FSH effect 306  
 HDL receptors 254
- Testosterone, 5- $\alpha$ -dihydro 306
- Testosterone 268, 300, **306**  
 receptor 306  
 synthesis 294
- Tetanus 56  
 skeletal muscle 66  
 smooth muscle 70
- Tetany 46, 290, 292
- Tetrahydrofolate 260
- Tetraiodothyronine (T<sub>4</sub>) 286
- Tetrodotoxin (TTX) 47 B
- TGF(tubuloglomerular feedback)  
 172, 184
- TGF(transforming growth factor)-  
 $\beta$  receptor 278
- Thalamus 310, 318, 322, 338, 340,  
 368  
 auditory pathway 368  
 disinhibition 326  
 visual pathway 358
- Theca cells 300
- Theophylline 276
- Thermal balance 222
- neural factors in 225 D
- Thermodynamics, laws 38 ff.
- Thermogenin 222, 230, 288
- Thermogenesis, non-shivering 224
- Thermoneutral zone 224
- Thermoregulation 222, 224  
 TRH release 286
- Thermosensors 224, 314  
 hypothalamus 330  
 central 224
- Thiamine, intestinal absorption  
 260
- Thiazide 162, 172
- Thick ascending limb (TAL) 162
- Thiocyanate 286
- Thiouracil 286
- Thirst 168, 170, 224, 236  
 center 168  
 shock 218
- Thorax 108 ff.
- Three-dimensional vision 360
- Threonin 226
- Threshold(s) 312, 340  
 aerobic 76  
 anaerobic 72, 76  
 audiogram 366  
 auditory 362 ff.  
 potential 46, 48, 192  
 recognition, smell 340  
 taste 338  
 visual 352
- Thrombin 102, 104
- Thrombocyte (→ also platelet)  
 88, 102 f.  
 aggregation 102  
 inhibition 85, 104
- Thrombocytopathia 104
- Thrombocytopenia 100, 104
- Thrombokinase 104
- Thrombopoietin 88, 148
- Thromboprotection 104
- Thrombosis 104
- Thromboxane A<sub>2</sub> 102, 214, 269,  
 276  
 second messenger 276
- Thrombus 102, 104
- Thryptophan 226
- Thymine 8
- Thymosin 266
- Thymus 88, 94
- Thyrotropic hormone-releasing  
 hormone (TRH) →  
 thyroliberin
- Thyrocalcitonin → calcitonin
- Thyroglobulin 286
- Thyroid gland 36, 286  
 hormones 286  
 nuclear receptors 278, 288  
 actions 288  
 control of release 288  
 parafollicular C cells 36, 286,  
 292

- peroxidase (TPO) 286  
Thyroid-stimulating hormone →  
thyrotropin  
Thyroliberin 268, 269, 280, 286,  
303  
  second messenger 274, 276  
Thyrotropic hormone (TSH) →  
thyrotropin  
Thyrotropin (TSH) 269, 280, 286  
receptor, autoantibody 288  
releasing hormone → thy-  
roliberin  
  second messenger 274, 276  
Thyroxine (T<sub>4</sub>) 268, 286  
Thyroxine-binding globulin  
(TBG) 288  
  prealbumin (TBPA) 288  
Tidal volume 106, 112, 114, 118,  
120  
  alveolar part (V<sub>A</sub>) 114, 120  
  exercise 74  
  maximum 77 C  
  physical work 74  
  training 76  
Tiffeneau test 118  
Tight junction, function 18  
  renal tubule 154  
Timbre 362  
Tin (Sn) 226  
Tip links 342, 366  
Tissue, hormones 268  
  injury, blood clotting 103 B1  
  plasminogen activator (tPA)  
  104  
  respiration 106, 130  
  thrombinase 104  
  thromboplastin 102  
  inhibitor 104  
Titin 60, 66  
Titratable acid 174  
Titration curve 380  
T-killer cells 94, 98, 232  
TLC (total lung capacity) 112, 113  
  A  
TNF(tumor necrosis factor) $\alpha$ , ef-  
fect on CRH secretion  
296  
Tocopherol 260  
Tolerance, immunologic, periph-  
eral 98  
  central 94  
Ton, unit 374  
Tone (sound) 362  
Tongue 338  
Tonicity 377 f.  
Tonotopicity, auditory pathway  
368  
Tonus, skeletal muscle 328  
  smooth muscle 70  
  myogenic 70  
  neurogenic 70  
Tonus fibers 66  
  neurogenic 70  
Torr, conversion into SI unit 374  
Touch sensor 314  
tPA (tissue plasminogen activa-  
tor) 104  
TPO (thyroid peroxidase) 286  
TPR (total peripheral resistance)  
186 f.  
Trace elements 226  
Trachea 370  
Tractus, corticospinalis lateralis  
324  
  olfactorius 340  
  opticus 358  
  reticulospinalis lateralis 328  
  medialis 328  
  retinohypothalamic 334  
  rubrospinalis 328  
  spinocerebellaris anterior 328  
  spinoreticular 318  
  spinothalamic ventralis 318,  
  322  
  vestibulospinalis 328  
Training 76  
Tranexamic acid 104, 105 C  
Transcellular transport 18, 154  
Transcobalamine 92, 260  
Transcortin 92, 296  
Transcription factor, hormon-ac-  
tivated 278, 288  
Transcytosis 18, 28  
Transducin 276, 348, 350, 352  
Transduction 312, 348  
  channels, hair cells 366  
  photoelectric 348  
  signal 274  
  stimulus 312  
Transfer ribonucleic acid  
  → tRNA  
Transferrin 90  
Transformation 312  
Transforming growth factor  
(TGF)- $\beta$  278  
Transfusion, placental 220  
Translational 10  
Translocation, hormone-receptor  
protein complex 278  
Translocator protein 12  
Transmembrane proteins 12  
Transmission, hereditary 8 f.  
Transmitter → neurotransmitter  
Transplant rejection, primary 100  
  immunosuppression 98  
Transport, active 26  
  axoplasmic 42, 58, 280  
  convection 24  
  electrogenic 26, 28  
  electroneutral 28  
  energy-dependent 26  
  non-ionic 174  
  paracellular 18, 154  
  passive 20  
  primary active 26  
  rate, maximal (J<sub>max</sub>) 383 f.  
  rheogenic 26, 28  
  saturable 28  
  secondary active 26  
  specific 28  
  tertiary active 29 B  
  transcellular 18, 154  
  transmembrane 16  
  all-trans-retinal 348  
Treadmill ergometry 76  
Trehalose 258  
  Trehalose 258  
Tremor, intention 328  
  of resting 326  
TRF → thyroliberin  
TRH → thyroliberin  
Triacylglycerol 252, 254  
  absorption 252, 254  
  chemical structure 227 B  
  digestion 246, 254  
  hydrolase 252  
  lipoproteins 254  
  source 257 D  
  fate 257 D  
  synthesis, from free fatty acids  
  256  
Triads 60, 62  
Trigger effect, Ca<sup>2+</sup>, heart 62, 194  
Trigger zone, chemosensory 238  
Triglycerides → Triacylglycerol  
Triiodothyronine (T<sub>3</sub>) 268, 278,  
286  
Trimetaphan 82  
Tripalmitin 228  
Tripeptides, intestinal absorption  
258  
Tricuspid valve 190  
Tritanomaly 356  
Tritanopia 356  
tRNA (transfer ribonucleic acid) 8  
Tropomyosin 60  
Troponin 60, 62  
Troponin-tropomyosin complex  
64  
Trypsin 246, 252, 258, 260  
  activation 247 D  
  CCK secretion 246  
  colipase activation 252  
  phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> activation  
  252  
  effects 247 D  
Trypsinogen 246  
TSC (thiazide sensitive co-trans-  
porter) 162  
TSH → thyrotropin  
T(arsenal tubules) system,  
  skeletal muscle 60  
TTX (Tetrodotoxin) 47 B  
Tube, uterine 308, 309 A  
Tuberculum olfactorium 340  
Tubocurarine 56, 82

- Tubular excretion 154  
 reabsorption 154, 158  
 secretion 154
- Tubule (→ also Kidney), distal 148  
 convoluted (DCT) 148  
 driving forces for resorption 162  
 epithelium, structure 154  
 proximal 148, 162, 166, 174  
 convoluted (PCT) 164
- Tubules, longitudinal, skeletal muscle 60  
 semiferous 306  
 transverse, skeletal muscle 60
- Tubulin 30, 58
- Tubuloglomerular feedback (TGF) 172, 184
- Tumor cells, immune defense 96
- Tumor necrosis factor (TNF) $\alpha$  296
- Tuning, hearing 368
- T wave, ECG 196, 198
- Two-point discrimination 314, 322
- TXA<sub>2</sub> (thromboxan A<sub>2</sub>) 102, 269
- Tympanic cavity 364
- Tyrosine 84  
 derivatives, hormonal 268
- Tyrosine kinase-associated receptors 278
- U**
- UCP (uncoupling protein) 230
- UDP(uridindinucleotid)-glucuronic acid 250
- Ulcer, gastric 242
- Ultrafiltrate 154
- Ultrafiltration coefficient 152
- Umami 338
- Umbilical artery 220  
 vein 220
- Unconsciousness, anoxia 130
- Uncoupling protein (UCP) 230
- Uniporter 28
- Units, basic 372  
 derived from SI units 372  
 information 312  
 multiples 373  
 SI 372  
 submultiples 373
- Unmyelinated nerve fibers 48
- Uracil 8
- Urate → uric acid
- Urea 158, 166, 176  
 carrier 166  
 excretion 166  
 production 176  
 reabsorption, renal 156, 158  
 recirculation 166  
 urine concentration 166
- Ureter 148  
 innervation 79 ff.
- Urethra 308
- Uric acid 158, 176  
 excretion, renal 174  
 reabsorption 156, 158  
 secretion 156,
- Urinary bladder 70, 148, 308  
 innervation 79 ff.  
 calculi 158, 178
- Urine 148 ff., 184  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> 290  
 concentration mechanism 164, 166  
 disorders 166  
 flow rate 152  
 17-ketosteroids 294  
 NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> 176  
 osmolality 166  
 pH 156, 174, 176  
 primary 164  
 titratable acid 174  
 volume 152
- Urobilinogen 250
- Urokinase 104
- UT1 (urea transporter Typ 1) 166
- UT2 166
- Uterine tube 308, 309 A
- Uterus 70, 303, 304  
 $\alpha_1$ -adrenoceptor 304  
 contractions 280  
 erection 308  
 estrogens 302  
 gap junctions 304  
 menstrual cycle 298  
 muscle 303  
 oxytocin 303  
 progesteron 303  
 prostaglandins 304, 308
- UTP (uridine triphosphate) 250
- Utricle 342
- UV light, exposure 292  
 formation of vitamin D 292  
 deficiency 292
- Uvula, cerebellum 326
- V**
- $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  → O<sub>2</sub> utilization
- V<sub>A</sub> (alveolar part of tidal volume) 114
- V<sub>D</sub> (dead space volume) 114
- V<sub>T</sub> (tidal Volume) 114
- Vaccination 94
- Vagina 302, 308  
 estrogens 302  
 pH 302
- Vagus nerve (→ also cholinergic) 242, 248, 370
- val, unit 375
- Valence, ion 375
- Valine 226
- Valsalva's maneuver 116
- Vanadium (V) 226
- Vanilloid receptor Typ 1 (VR1) 314
- Van't Hoff's law 24, 377, 388  
 Staverman 24
- Vas afferens, glomerulus 148, 184  
 deferens 308  
 efferens, glomerulus 148, 184
- Vasa recta, renal medulla 150, 164
- Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP) 52, 86, 232, 234, 236, 262, 280  
 cerebral cortex 332  
 substances 212
- Vasoconstriction 122, 212, 213 B, 214, 220  
 cortisol 296  
 hypoxic 122, 212, 220  
 fetus 221 C  
 shock 218  
 thermoregulation 224  
 veins 218
- Vasodilatation 212, 213 B, 214, 278  
 NO 278  
 thermoregulation 224
- Vaso-intestinal peptide (VIP) 52, 86, 232, 234, 236, 238, 262, 274, 280  
 cerebral cortex 332  
 neurons 240  
 rectum 264  
 second messenger 274
- Vasopressin (→ also adiuretin) 166, 274, 276
- Vegetarian diet 142
- Vectorcardiogram 196
- Vein(s) 188, 204  
 pulmonary 186  
 umbilical 220  
 valves 204
- Veith-Müller horopter 360
- Velocity, blood flow 188  
 of conduction, in nerve fibres 48  
 detectors 314, 316  
 linear, unit  
 volume 374
- Venae cavae 188
- Venoles 189 A  
 postcapillary 188
- Venous central pressure 186, 190, 204, 218  
 circulation 204  
 flow 204  
 pressure 204  
 curve 191 A  
 indifference point 204



- influence on capillary fluid exchange 208  
shock 218  
return 110, 204  
  artificial respiration 110  
  Bainbridge reflex 216  
  driving forces 204  
  respiration 204  
  artificial 110
- Ventilation (→ also lung) 74, 106, 108, 120, 130  
  alveolar 106, 120  
  high altitude 136  
  peak expiratory pressure 116  
  inspiratory pressure 116  
  pressure differences 108  
  dead space 106, 114  
  diving 134  
  driving force for 108  
  exercise 74  
  high altitude 136  
  mechanical 110  
  muscle 108, 132  
  /perfusion ratio 122  
  regulation 126  
  chemosensors 126  
  rhythm generator 132  
  total 106  
    acidosis 142  
    hypoxia 136  
    maximum 77 C  
    endurance athletes 77  
    physical work 74  
    hypoxia 136  
  venous return 204
- Ventilation-perfusion ratio 122
- Ventricles, cerebrospinal fluid 310
- Ventricular (→ also heart)  
  arrhythmias 200  
  fibrillation 200  
  pressure 190, 202  
  tachycardia 200  
  volume 202  
  work diagram 202
- Veratridine 47 B
- Verbalization 336
- Vergence, eye movement 360
- Vermis 326
- Vertical type (heart) 198
- Vertigo 328, 342
- Very low density lipoproteins (VLDL) 254, 256, 260
- Vesicles 28  
  chromaffin 84  
  secretory 12, 30
- Vessels, capacitance 188  
  wall tension 188
- Vestibular ganglia 342  
  nuclei 328, 342  
  organ 342  
  reflex 342
- Vestibulocerebellum 326
- Viagra® (sildenafilcitrate) 278
- Vibration, sensors 314
- Villi, intestinal 244
- Vimentin 14
- VIP → vasointestinal peptide
- Virilization 306
- Virus, immune defense 94, 96, 98
- Visceral afferents 78, 234
- Viscosity, blood 92, 188
- Viscous-isotropic phase, lipid digestion 252
- Visible spectrum 356
- Vision (→ also eye and retina) 346  
  binocular 358, 360  
  color 356  
  day 348  
    threshold 352  
  depth 360  
  dim-light 348  
  movement 358  
  night 348  
  photopic 348  
  scotopic 348  
  three dimensional 360
- Visual (→ also eye and retina)  
  acuity 348, 354, 358  
  cortex 358  
  field 358  
    binocular 360  
    pathways 358  
  pigment 344, 348, 350  
    role in adaptation 350  
  sensors, spatial summation 352  
    temporal summation 352  
  thresholds 352  
    absolute 352
- Vital capacity 112  
  forced 118
- Vitamin A 226, 252, 260, 350  
  deficiency 350  
  intestinal absorption 260  
  B<sub>1</sub> (thiamin) 226, 260  
  B<sub>2</sub> (riboflavin) 226, 260  
  B<sub>6</sub> (pyridoxin) 226, 260  
  B<sub>12</sub> (cobalamines) 90, 226  
    absorption 260  
  C 90, 226, 260  
    intestinal absorption 260  
    renal reabsorption 156  
  D 226, 252, 292  
    daily intake 292  
    deficiency 262, 292  
    optimal 386  
    binding protein (DBP) 158, 292  
  D<sub>2</sub> (= ergocalciferol) 226, 292  
  D<sub>3</sub> (= cholecalciferol = calciferol) 226, 260, 292
- E (D- $\alpha$ -tocopherol) 226, 252, 260
- H (biotin) 226, 260
- K (Phytonadion) 102, 104, 226, 252, 264  
  antagonists 104  
  deficiency 104  
  K<sub>1</sub> 226, 260  
  K<sub>2</sub> 226, 260
- Vitamins 226  
  absorption 260  
  deficiencies 226  
  fat-soluble 226, 252, 260, 302  
  toxicity 226  
  water-soluble 260
- Vitrous body 344  
  opacification 136
- VLA-4 (adhesion molecule) 98
- VLDL (very low density lipoproteins) 254, 256, 260  
  estrogen effect 302  
  remnants 254
- Vocal cord 370  
  paralysis 118
- Voice 370  
  change 306
- Volume clearance, esophagus 238  
  deficit 170, 173 B  
    compensation 218  
    shock 218  
  excess 170, 173 B  
  extracellular → ECF 168  
  hypertension 216  
  interstitial 168  
  intracellular → ICF 168  
  ratio 376  
  regulation 170  
  unit 372  
  velocity 374
- Voluntary motor function 324  
  inhibition 326
- Voltage clamp 34
- Vomiting 78, 142, 238  
  center 238  
  salt and water homeostasis 173 B
- von Willebrand factor 102, 103 A
- Vowels 370
- V<sub>1</sub> receptor (ADH), second messenger 276
- V<sub>2</sub> receptor (ADH) 24  
  second messenger 276
- VR1 receptor (vanilloid receptor type 1) 314
- Vulnerable phase (myocard) 200

**W**

W (watt), unit 374 f.  
Wakefulness 322, 332  
Warfarin 104  
Warm sensors 222 ff., 314  
Water → H<sub>2</sub>O  
Watt second, unit 374 f.  
Waves, EEG 332  
    paroxysmal 332  
    slow, intestine 244  
    stomach motility 240  
W cells, retina 358  
Weber's rule 352  
Weber's test 364  
Weight, unit 374  
Wernicke's area 370  
Whispering 370  
White matter, spinal cord 310  
Wilson leads (ECG) 196

Window, oval/round 364, 366  
Wind space 370  
Windkessel 188, 202  
Withdrawal reflex 320  
Work, muscle 74  
    negative dynamic 74  
    physical 74, 142  
    positive dynamic 74  
    pressure/volume, heart 202  
    static postural 74  
    unit 374  
Writing 330, 336  
Ws, unit 374

**X**

X cells, retina 358  
X-chromosome 8, 307 B,C  
Xenobiotics 160

**Y**

Yard, conversion into SI unit 372  
Yawning 132  
Y cells, retina 358  
Y-chromosome 8, 307 B,C  
Yohimbin 87 B

**Z**

Zeitgeber, external 334  
Zero-current potential 34  
Z-plates, muscle 60  
Zona fasciculata → adrenal cortex  
    glomerulosa → adrenal cortex  
    pellucida 308  
    reaction 308  
    reticularis → adrenal cortex  
Zone, comfort 224, 226  
    thermoneutral 224  
Zonular fibers 344